Gestetner LANIER RICOH savin



A292/A293/A292P/A293P

B098

SERVICE MANUAL

(To be used in conjunction with A229 Service Manual)

000930MIU

RICOH GROUP COMPANIES

Gestetner®
LANIER
RICOH®
savin®

A292/A293/A292P/A293P/B098

SERVICE MANUAL

RICOH GROUP COMPANIES

Gestetner LANIER RICOH savin

A292/A293/A292P/A293P
B098
SERVICE MANUAL

000930MIU

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Corporation and its member companies.

NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR PERMISSION OF RICOH CORPORATION.

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.

They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

© 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Corporation

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE				
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
A292	3355	5455	Aficio 551	2055DP
A293	3370	5470	Aficio 700	2070DP
A292 w/G594 Controller	--		Aficio 551P	--
A293 w/G594 Controller	--		Aficio 700P	--
B098	5502	LD055	Aficio 1055	2555

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	5/2000	Original Printing
1	10/2002	B098 Addition

TABLE OF CONTENTS

COMPARISON BETWEEN A292/A293 AND A229

OVERALL INFORMATION

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION 1-1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 1-1
1.1.1 COPIER ENGINE 1-1
1.1.2 ADF 1-5
1.2 MACHINE CONFIGURATION 1-6
1.3 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 1-7
1.3.1 COPIER ENGINE 1-7
1.3.2 ADF 1-9
1.4 PAPER PATH 1-10
1.5 COPY PROCESS 1-11
1.6 DRIVE LAYOUT 1-13
1.6.1 COPIER ENGINE 1-13
1.6.2 ADF 1-14
1.7 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION 1-15
1.7.1 COPIER ENGINE 1-15
1.7.2 ADF 1-21

DETAILED DESCRITPIONS

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 2-1
2.1 DOCUMENT FEEDER 2-1
2.1.1 PICK-UP ROLLER RELEASE 2-1
2.1.2 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT 2-2
2.1.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION 2-3
2.1.4 ORIGINAL FEED 2-4
2.1.5 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION 2-5
Original Length 2-5
Original Width 2-5
2.1.6 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT 2-6
2.1.7 ORIGINAL SKEW CORRECTION 2-7
2.1.13 ORIGINAL INVERSION AND FEED-OUT 2-8
General Operation 2-8
Original Inversion 2-9
Original Exit (Single-Sided Original Mode) 2-10
Original Exit (Double-Sided Original Mode) 2-11
2.1.9 JAM CONDITIONS 2-12
Feed-in 2-12
Feed-out 2-12
Inversion 2-12

2.2 SCANNING....2-13
2.2.1 OVERVIEW....2-13
2.2.2 SCANNER DRIVE....2-14
2.2.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION IN BOOK MODE....2-15
2.3 IMAGE PROCESSING....2-16
2.3.1 OVERVIEW....2-16
2.3.2 SBU....2-17
2.3.3 AUTO IMAGE DENSITY (ADS)....2-18
2.3.4 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)....2-19
Overview....2-19
2.3.5 IMAGE PROCESSING STEPS AND RELATED SP MODES....2-20
2.3.6 AUTO SHADING....2-25
Black Level Correction....2-25
White Level Correction....2-25
2.3.7 BACKGROUND ERASE....2-26
Background Erase....2-26
2.3.13 INDEPENDENT DOT ERASE....2-27
2.3.9 FILTERING, MAIN SCAN MAGNIFICATION/REDUCTION....2-28
Overview....2-28
Filtering....2-28
Main Scan Magnification/Reduction....2-29
Sub Scan Magnification....2-29
2.3.10 GAMMA (G) CORRECTION....2-30
2.3.11 GRADATION PROCESSING....2-30
Three-graduation Processing....2-30
Four-graduation Processing....2-31
Error Diffusion and Dithering....2-31
2.3.12 LINE WIDTH CORRECTION....2-31
2.4 LASER EXPOSURE....2-32
2.4.1 AUTO POWER CONTROL....2-32
2.4.2 DUAL BEAM WRITING....2-33
2.4.3 LASER BEAM PITCH CHANGE MECHANISM (FOR A292/A293 ONLY)....2-34
2.4.4 LD SAFETY SWITCHES....2-35
2.5 DRUM UNIT....2-36
2.5.1 PROCESS CONTROL....2-36
Overview....2-36
Drum potential sensor calibration....2-37
VSG adjustment....2-37
VG Adjustment....2-38
LD power adjustment....2-39
Toner Density Adjustment....2-39
VREF Update....2-40
2.5.2 DRUM UNIT COMPONENTS....2-41
2.5.3 DRUM CHARGE....2-42
Overview....2-42
Charge Corona Wire Cleaning Mechanism....2-43
2.5.4 DRUM CLEANING AND TONER RECYCLING....2-44
Overview....2-44

Drive Mechanism 2-45
Cleaning Blade Pressure Mechanism and Side-to-Side Movement....2-46
2.5.5 OTHERS....2-47
Air Flow Around the Drum....2-47
Pick-off Mechanism 2-48
2.6 DEVELOPMENT AND TONER SUPPLY 2-49
2.6.1 OVERVIEW 2-49
2.6.2 DEVELOPMENT MECHANISM....2-50
2.6.3 DEVELOPMENT BIAS 2-51
2.6.4 TONER DENSITY CONTROL 2-52
Overview....2-52
Sensor control mode....2-52
Image pixel count control....2-53
2.6.5 TONER END DETECTION....2-54
Toner Near End 2-54
Toner End....2-54
2.6.6 TONER END RECOVERY 2-54
2.6.7 ABNORMAL TD AND ID SENSOR CONDITIONS 2-55
2.7 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION....2-56
2.7.1 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION MECHANISM ...2-56
2.7.2 TRANSFER BELT UNIT LIFT MECHANISM....2-57
2.7.3 TRANSFER BELT CLEANING MECHANISM 2-58
2.13 PAPER FEED....2-59
2.13.1 OVERVIEW 2-59
2.13.2 DRIVE MECHANISM....2-60
2.13.3 TANDEM LCT – TRAY 1 2-61
Overview....2-61
Connecting the Left and Right Sides of the Tray 2-62
Paper Lift/Remaining Paper Detection....2-63
Fence Drive 2-65
Rear Fence Drive....2-66
Tray Positioning 2-67
2.13.4 TRAY POSITIONING MECHANISM – TRAYS 1 TO 3 2-68
2.13.5 PAPER LIFT MECHANISM - TRAYS 2 AND 3....2-69
2.13.6 VERTICAL TRANSPORT MECHANISM 2-70
2.13.7 PAPER REGISTRATION....2-71
Overview....2-71
2.13.13 PAPER SIZE DETECTION – TRAY 2 2-72
2.9 IMAGE FUSING 2-73
2.9.1 OVERVIEW 2-73
2.9.2 FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE 2-74
2.9.3 FUSING DRIVE MECHANISM 2-75
2.10 PAPER EXIT/DUPLEX....2-76
2.10.1 OVERVIEW 2-76
2.10.2 INVERTER 2-77
Feed-in and Jogging 2-77
Feed-out 2-78
2.10.3 DUPLEX TRAY FEED MECHANISM 2-79
2.10.4 BASIC DUPLEX FEED OPERATION....2-80

Longer than A4 / Letter lengthwise 2-80
2.11 ENERGY SAVER MODES 2-83
2.11.1 LOW POWER MODE 2-83
Entering low power mode 2-83
What happens in low power mode 2-83
Return to stand-by mode 2-83

INSTALLATION

3. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-1
3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS 3-1
3.1.1 ENVIRONMENT 3-1
3.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL 3-1
3.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS 3-2
3.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS 3-2
3.2 COPIER (A292/A293/B0913) 3-3
3.2.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-3
3.2.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-4
3.3 LCT (11/B5137) 3-14
3.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-14
3.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-15
3.4 3,000-SHEET FINISHER (9/B5136) 3-20
3.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-20
3.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-21
3.5 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (A1312) FOR 9/B5136 FINISHER 3-24
3.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-24
3.5.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION 3-25
3.6 FINISHER (B302) 3-28
3.6.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-28
3.7 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (A1312) FOR B302 FINISHER 3-31
3.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-31
3.7.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION 3-32
3.13 KEY COUNTER INSTALLATION 3-35
3.9 COPY CONNECTOR KIT INSTALLATION (10) 3-36
3.10 LG KIT (B375/B51313) 3-39
3.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-39
3.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-40

SERVICE TABLES

4. SERVICE TABLES 4-1
4.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS 4-1
4.1.1 DRUM 4-1
4.1.2 DRUM UNIT 4-1
4.1.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT 4-2
4.1.4 SCANNER UNIT 4-2
4.1.5 LASER UNIT 4-2
4.1.6 CHARGE CORONA 4-3

4.1.7 DEVELOPMENT 4-3
4.1.13 CLEANING 4-4
4.1.9 FUSING UNIT....4-4
4.1.10 PAPER FEED....4-4
4.1.11 USED TONER....4-4
4.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE....4-5
4.2.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION....4-5
Service Program Access Procedure 4-5
Accessing Copy Mode from within an SP Mode 4-7
Selecting the Program Number....4-8
Inputting a Value or Setting for an SP Mode....4-9
4.2.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES....4-10
4.2.3 TEST PATTERN PRINTING (SP2-902) 4-66
Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-2: Test Pattern Printing – IPU) 4-66
Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-3: Test Pattern Printing – Printing) 4-66
4.2.4 INPUT CHECK 4-67
Main Machine Input Check (SP5-1303) 4-67
ADF Input Check (SP6-007) 4-71
4.2.5 OUTPUT CHECK 4-72
Main Machine Output Check (SP5-1304) 4-72
ADF Output Check (SP6-0013) 4-73
4.2.6 SYSTEM PARAMETER AND DATA LISTS (SMC LISTS) 4-73
4.2.7 MEMORY ALL CLEAR (SP5-1301)....4-74
4.2.13 SOFTWARE RESET 4-75
4.2.9 SYSTEM SETTING AND COPY SETTING (UP MODE) RESET ...4-75
System Setting Reset 4-75
Copy Features Reset....4-75
4.3 PROGRAM AND DATA DOWNLOAD....4-76
4.3.1 OVERVIEW 4-76
4.3.2 DOWNLOAD THE BICU SOFTWARE FROM BICU TO FLASH MEMORY CARD 4-77
4.3.3 DOWNLOAD NVRAM DATA TO THE BICU 4-78
4.3.4 DOWNLOAD NVRAM DATA FROM BICU TO FLASH MEMORY CARD 4-79
4.3.5 DOWNLOAD STAMP DATA TO THE BICU 4-80
4.4 USER PROGRAM MODE 4-81
4.4.1 HOW TO ENTER AND EXIT UP MODE....4-81
4.4.2 UP MODE TABLE 4-81
System Setting Table....4-81
Copy Features Table 4-82
4.4.3 IMAGE QUALITY SETTING BY UP MODE....4-86
Text Mode....4-86
Text/Photo Mode 4-90
Photo Mode 4-91
Pale Mode....4-92
Generation Mode 4-92
4.5 TEST POINTS/DIP SWITCHES/LEDS....4-93
4.5.1 DIP SWITCHES....4-93
4.5.2 TEST POINTS 4-93

4.5.3 FUSES....4-94
4.5.4 VARIABLE RESISTORS....4-95
4.5.5 LEDS....4-95
4.6 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS....4-95
4.6.1 SPECIAL TOOLS....4-95
4.6.2 LUBRICANTS....4-95
4.7 FIRMWARE HISTORY....4-96

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE 5-1
5.1 PM TABLE....5-1

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

6. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT.... 6-1
6.1 EXTERIOR....6-1
6.1.1 FILTERS....6-1
Ozone Filter: Duct....6-1
Filter Vacuum....6-1
6.2 DOCUMENT FEEDER....6-2
6.2.1 COVER REMOVAL....6-2
6.2.2 FEED UNIT REMOVAL AND SEPARATION ROLLER REPLACEMENT....6-4
6.2.3 FEED BELT REPLACEMENT....6-5
6.2.4 PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT....6-6
6.2.5 SENSOR REPLACEMENT....6-7
Entrance and Registration Sensors....6-7
Width Sensor....6-8
Exit Sensor and Inverter Sensor....6-9
6.2.6 TRANSPORT BELT REPLACEMENT....6-10
6.3 SCANNER UNIT....6-11
6.3.1 EXPOSURE GLASS....6-11
6.3.2 LENS BLOCK....6-12
6.3.3 ORIGINAL SIZE SENSORS....6-13
6.3.4 EXPOSURE LAMP....6-14
6.3.5 SCANNER MOTOR / MCU....6-15
Scanner Motor....6-15
MCU....6-15
6.3.6 SCANNER WIRES....6-16
Rear Scanner Drive Wire....6-19
Front Scanner Drive Wire....6-20
Reinstallation....6-21
6.4 LASER UNIT....6-23
6.4.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS....6-23
6.4.2 LD UNIT REPLACEMENT....6-24
6.4.3 LASER BEAM PITCH ADJUSTMENT....6-25
6.4.4 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR REPLACEMENT....6-29

6.5 DRUM UNIT 6-30
6.5.1 DRUM POTENTIAL SENSOR REPLACEMENT 6-30
6.5.2 DRUM MOTOR REPLACEMENT 6-31
6.5.3 TONER OUTPUT AND RECYCLING PUMP UNIT REPLACEMENT 6-32
6.6 DEVELOPMENT AND TONER SUPPLY 6-34
6.6.1 DEVELOPMENT AND AIR DUST FILTER REPLACEMENT 6-34
6.6.2 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT 6-35
6.6.3 TONER END SENSOR REPLACEMENT 6-37
6.6.4 DEVELOPMENT MOTOR REPLACEMENT 6-37
6.7 TRANSFER BELT UNIT 6-38
6.7.1 TRANSFER BELT UNIT REMOVAL/INSTALLATION 6-38
- Removal - 6-38
- Installation - 6-38
6.13 PAPER FEED 6-40
6.13.1 PAPER TRAY REMOVAL 6-40
Tandem Tray Removal 6-40
Universal trays (Customer adjust/Technician adjust) Removal 6-42
6.13.2 REAR FENCE RETURN SENSOR REPLACEMENT 6-43
6.13.3 REAR FENCE HP SENSOR REPLACEMENT 6-44
6.13.4 BOTTOM PAPER SENSOR REPLACEMENT 6-45
6.13.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT 6-46
6.13.6 TANDEM LCT PAPER SIZE CHANGE 6-48
6.13.7 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE BOARD REPLACEMENT 6-51
6.13.13 PAPER FEED CLUTCH/RELAY CLUTCH REMOVAL 6-53
6.13.9 BY-PASS FEED MOTOR/CLUTCH REMOVAL 6-56
6.13.10 REGISTRATION MOTOR REMOVAL 6-57
6.13.11 PAPER TRAY UNIT REMOVAL 6-58
6.9 FUSING UNIT 6-59
6.9.1 FUSING UNIT REMOVAL 6-59
6.9.2 FUSING THERMISTOR/THERMOFUSE/THERMOSTAT REPLACEMENT 6-60
Fusing Thermistor Replacement 6-60
Fusing Thermofuse Replacement (for A292/A293 only) 6-60
Fusing Thermostat Replacement (for B0913 only) 6-61
Fusing Thermostat Replacement (for B0913 only) 6-61
6.9.3 FUSING LAMP REPLACEMENT 6-62
6.9.4 HOT ROLLER REPLACEMENT 6-63
6.9.5 OIL SUPPLY/CLEANING ROLLER REPLACEMENT 6-65
6.9.6 PRESSURE ROLLER CLEANING ROLLER REPLACEMENT 6-66
6.9.7 MAGNET POSITION ADJUSTMENT 6-67
6.9.13 HOT ROLLER STRIPPER PAWL REPLACEMENT 6-68
6.10 PAPER EXIT/DUPLEX UNIT 6-70
6.10.1 1ST AND 2ND EXIT SENSOR 6-70
6.10.2 JOGGER MOTOR 6-71
6.10.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR 6-71
6.10.4 DUPLEX TRANSPORT/DUPLEX FEED CLUTCHES 6-72
6.10.5 DUPLEX TRANSPORT SENSOR 1 6-72
6.10.6 DUPLEX TRANSPORT SENSORS 2 & 3 6-73

6.10.7 INVERTER EXIT CLUTCH 6-74
6.10.13 DUPLEX INVERTER SENSOR 6-74
6.11 BOARDS AND OTHER ITEMS 6-75
6.11.1 BICU BOARD 6-75
6.11.2 I/O BOARD 6-76
6.11.3 PSU 6-77
6.11.4 PAPER FEED CONTROL BOARD (PFC) 6-77
6.12 COPY IMAGE ADJUSTMENTS: PRINTING/SCANNING 6-78
6.12.1 PRINTING 6-78
Registration - Leading Edge 6-78
Registration – Side-to-Side 6-78
Tray 1 6-79
Tray 2 6-79
Tray 3 6-80
By-pass Tray 6-80

TROUBLESHOOTING

7. TROUBLESHOOTING 7-1
7.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 7-1
7.1.1 SUMMARY 7-1
7.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS 7-2
7.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS 7-46
7.2.1 SENSORS 7-46
7.2.2 SWITCHES 7-50
7.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS 7-51

FIRMWARE HISTORY

8. A292/A293 FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY 8-1

3,000-SHEET FINISHER (B312/B586)

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION 9-1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 9-1
1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 9-4
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION 9-6
1.4 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 9-8
1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT 9-9

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 9-10
2.1 TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM 9-10
Upper tray mode 9-10
Sort/stack mode 9-10
Staple mode 9-10
2.2 PRE-STACK MECHANISM 9-11
2.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM 9-12

Vertical Paper Alignment 9-12
Horizontal Paper Alignment 9-12
2.4 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM 9-13
Side-to-side: 9-13
Rotation: 9-13
2.5 STAPLER 9-14
2.6 FEED-OUT MECHANISM 9-15
2.7 SHIFT TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISM 9-16
2.13 SHIFT TRAY SIDE-TO-SIDE MECHANISM 9-17
2.9 PUNCH UNIT DRIVE MECHANISM 9-18
2.10 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION MECHNISM 9-19
2.11 JAM CONDITIONS 9-20

3. SERVICE TABLES 9-21
3.1 DIP SWITCHES 9-21
3.2 TEST POINTS 9-21
3.3 FUSES 9-21

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 9-22
4.1 COVER REPLACEMENT 9-22
Rear Cover 9-22
Upper Left Cover 9-22
Upper Cover 9-22
Front Door 9-22
Left Front Cover 9-22
Shift Tray 9-23
Lower Left Cover 9-23
Right Cover 9-23
Front Shift Tray Cover 9-23
Rear Shift Tray Cover 9-23
4.2 POSITIONING ROLLER REPLACEMENT 9-24
4.3 ALIGNMENT BRUSH ROLLER REPLACEMENT 9-25
4.4 SENSOR REPLACEMNT 9-26
4.4.1 STACK HEIGHT SENSOR 1 AND 2 9-26
4.4.2 UPPER TRAY PAPER LIMIT AND EXIT SENSOR 9-27
Upper Tray Paper Limit Sensor 9-27
Upper Tray Exit Sensor 9-27
4.4.3 SHIFT TRAY EXIT SENSOR 9-28
4.4.4 ENTRANCE AND STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSOR 9-29
Entrance Sensor 9-29
Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor 9-29
4.4.5 STAPLER ROTATION HP SENSOR 9-30
4.5 STAPLER REMOVAL 9-31
4.6 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT 9-32
Right to left 9-32
Front to rear 9-32

BOOKLET FINISHER A763

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION 10-1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 10-1
1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION 10-3
1.3 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 10-7

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 10-8
2.1 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM 10-8
2.1.1 SHIFT TRAY MODE 10-8
A4/LT sideways or shorter 10-8
Longer than A4 sideways 10-8
2.1.2 PROOF TRAY MODE 10-9
2.1.3 BOOKLET STITCH MODE 10-9
2.2 PRE-STACK MECHANISM 10-10
2.3 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM 10-11
2.4 PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM 10-12
2.5 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM 10-13
2.5.1 DRIVE 10-13
2.5.2 MOVEMENT 10-13
Front and Rear Stapling 10-13
Tow-position Stapling 10-13
2.6 STAPLER 10-14
2.7 SHIFT TRAY MECHANISM 10-15
2.13 BOOKLET UNIT GATE MECHANISM 10-16
2.9 RELAY ROLLER AND POSITIONING PLATE MECHANISM 10-18
2.10 POSITIONING ROLLER MECHANISM 10-19
2.11 BOOKLET UNIT JOGGER MOVEMENT MECHANISM 10-20
2.12 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT 10-21
2.13 PAPER FOLDER MECHANISM 10-22

3. INSTALLATION 10-24
3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 10-24
3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 10-25

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 10-30
4.1 REMOVAL 10-30
4.1.1 UPPER DOOR 10-30
4.1.2 UPPER REAR COVER 10-31
4.1.3 LOWER REAR COVER 10-31
4.1.4 TOP COVER 10-32
4.1.5 UPPER INNER COVER 10-32
4.1.6 SHIFT TRAY UNIT 10-33
4.1.7 UPPER SHIFT GUIDE 10-34
4.1.13 LOWER SHIFT GUIDE 10-34
4.1.9 EXIT UNIT 10-35
4.1.10 BUFFER ROLLER UNIT 10-36
4.1.11 STAPLER 10-37

4.1.12 FINISHER BOARD 10-38
4.1.13 BOOKLET UNIT 10-39
4.1.14 FOLDER ROLLERS 10-41
4.1.15 FOLDER PLATE 10-44
Removal 10-44
Reinstalling 10-45
4.1.16 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT 10-46
Removal 10-46
Adjustment 10-47
4.1.17 BOOKLET BOARD 10-49
4.1.113 POSITIONING PLATE UNIT 10-49
4.1.19 1ST AND 2ND BOOKLET UNIT GATES 10-50
4.2 ADJUSTMENT 10-51
4.2.1 SHIFT TRAY HEIGHT 10-51
4.2.2 JOGGER FENCE POSITION 10-52
4.2.3 STAPLING POSITOIN 10-53
4.2.4 BOOKLET STAPLING POSITION 10-54

COPIER CONNECTION KIT B322

1. SPECIFICATIONS 11-1

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 11-2
2.1 OVERVIEW 11-2
2.2 BASIC OPERATION 11-3
2.2.1 NO SORT AND NO STAPLE MODE 11-3
2.2.2 SORT, STAPLE MODE 11-4
2.2.3 OPERATION IN IRREGULAR CONDITIONS 11-5
Paper end during copying 11-5
Copy tray full 11-5
Paper jam 11-5

LCT A698/B587

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION 12-1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 12-1
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 12-2
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 12-3
1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS 12-4
1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT 12-5

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 12-6
2.1 PAPER FEED MECHANISM 12-6
2.2 TRAY LIFT MECHANISM 12-7
Tray lifting conditions 12-7
Tray lowering conditions 12-7
2.3 PAPER STACK HEIGHT DETECTION 12-9

3. SERVICE TABLES 12-10
3.1 TEST POINTS 12-10

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 12-11
4.1 COVER REMOVAL 12-11
Tray Cover 12-11
Right Cover 12-11
Front Cover 12-11
Upper Rear Cover 12-11
Lower Rear Cover 12-12
Feed Unit Cover 12-12
4.2 ROLLER REPLACEMENT 12-13
4.2.1 PAPER FEED, SEPARATION, AND PICK-UP ROLLERS 12-13
Pick-up Roller 12-13
Paper Feed Roller 12-13
Separation Roller 12-13
4.3 PAPER END SENSOR REPLACEMENT 12-14
4.4 PAPER FEED SENSOR REPLACEMENT 12-15
4.5 PAPER POSITION SENSOR REPLACEMENT 12-16
4.6 PICK-UP SOLENOID REPLACEMENT 12-17
4.7 LIFT MOTOR REPLACEMENT 12-18
4.13 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE 12-19

3,000-SHEET FINISHER B302

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION 13-1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 13-1
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT 13-3
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION 13-4
1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT 13-6

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 13-7
2.1 TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATE 13-7
Upper Tray Mode 13-7
Sort/Stack Mode 13-7
Staple Mode 13-7
2.2 PAPER PRE-STACKING 13-8
2.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING 13-9
Vertical Paper Alignment 13-9
Horizontal Paper Alignment 13-9
Paper Stack Correction 13-9
2.4 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT 13-10
Side-to-Side 13-10
Rotation (1) 13-11
Rotation (2) 13-11
2.5 STAPLER 13-12
2.6 FEED-OUT 13-14
2.7 SHIFT TRAY UP/DOWN MOVEMENT 13-15

2.13 SHIFT TRAY SIDE-TO-SIDE MOVEMENT 13-16
2.9 PUNCH UNIT DRIVE 13-17
2.10 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION 13-18
2.11 JAM CONDITIONS 13-19

3. SERVICE TABLES 13-20
3.1 DIP SWITCHES 13-20
3.2 TEST POINTS 13-20
3.3 FUSES 13-20

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 13-21
4.1 COVER REPLACEMENT 13-21
Front Door 13-21
Left Inner Cover 13-21
Inner Cover 13-21
Table 13-22
Upper Tray 13-22
Left Upper Cover 13-22
Left Lower Cover 13-22
Upper Cover 13-22
Rear Cover 13-22
Shift Tray 13-23
Front Shift Tray Cover 13-23
Rear Shift Tray Cover 13-23
4.2 POSITIONING ROLLER REPLACEMENT 13-24
4.3 ALIGNMENT BRUSH ROLLER REPLACEMENT 13-25
4.4 SENSOR REPLACEMENT 13-26
4.4.1 STACK HEIGHT 1, 2 AND EXIT GUIDE OPEN SENSOR 13-26
Stack Height Sensors 1 and 2 13-26
Exit Guide Open Sensor 13-26
4.4.2 UPPER TRAY PAPER LIMIT AND EXIT SENSOR 13-27
Upper Tray Paper Limit Sensor 13-27
Upper Tray Exit Sensor 13-27
4.4.3 SHIFT TRAY EXIT SENSOR 13-28
4.4.4 ENTRANCE AND STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSORS 13-29
Entrance Sensor 13-29
Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor 13-29
4.4.5 PRE-STACK STOPPER SENSOR 13-30
4.4.6 STAPLE WASTE HOPPER SENSOR 13-31
4.4.7 STAPLER ROTATION HP AND STAPLER RETURN SENSORS 13-32
Stapler Rotation HP Sensor 13-32
Stapler Return Sensor 13-32
4.5 STAPLER REMOVAL 13-33
4.6 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT 13-34
Right to Left 13-34
Front to Rear 13-34

⚠IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the copier power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
5. If the Start key is pressed before the copier completes the warm-up period (the Start key starts blinking red and green alternatively), keep hands away from the mechanical and the electrical components as the copier starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
6. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

1. Never operate the copier without the ozone filters installed.
2. Always replace the ozone filters with the specified ones at the specified intervals.
3. Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The NVRAM on the system control board has a lithium battery which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace the NVRAM only with an identical one. The manufacturer recommends replacing the entire NVRAM. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used NVRAM must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

1. **SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL**
   Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

LASER SAFETY

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

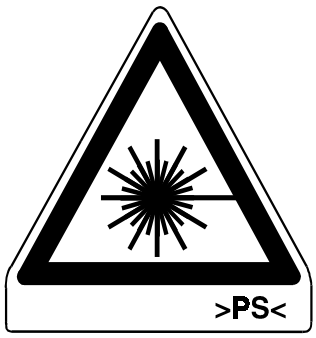
⚠WARNING

Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

⚠WARNING

WARNING: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

CAUTION MARKING:





OVERALL INFORMATION A292/A293/B098
3,000 SHEET FINISHER B312/B586
TAB POSITION 1

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS A292/A293/B098
BOOKLET FINISHER A763
TAB POSITION 2

INSTALLATION A292/A293/B098
COPIER CONNECTION KIT B322
TAB POSITION 3

SERVICE TABLES A292/A293/B098
LCT A698/B587
TAB POSITION 4

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE A292/A293/B098
3,000 SHEET FINISHER B302
TAB POSITION 5

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT A292/A293/B098
TAB POSITION 6

TROUBLESHOOTING A292/A293/B098
TAB POSITION 7

FIRMWARE HISTORY A292/A293/B098
TAB POSITION 8

COMPARISON BETWEEN A292/A293 AND A229

SECTION 1: OVERALL INFORMATION

Section	Item	Description	Page
Specifi-cations	Copy Size	Minimum: A5/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" Lengthwise in 2nd Tray	1-1
	Zoom	Minimum: 25% (A229: 32%)	1-2
	Copying Speed	70/55 cpm (A229: 65/55 cpm)	1-2
	1 to 1 Copying Speed with ADF	70 cpm (A229: 50 cpm) ARDF: New A294	N/A
	Resolution	Scanning: 600 dpi (A229: 400 dpi) Printing: 600 dpi (A229: 400 dpi)	1-2
	First Copy Time	Face Up: 3.5 seconds, Face Down: 5.3 seconds (A229: Face Up: 3.7 seconds, Face Down: 5.5 seconds)	1-2
	Copy Paper Capacity	Tray 1: 3,100 sheets (A229: 1,000 sheets) Tray 3: 550 sheets (A229: 1,500 sheets)	1-2
	Memory Capacity	RAM: 48 MB (A229: 12 MB) HDD: 4.3 GB (A229: 1.7 GB)	N/A
	Power Consumption	(Refer to service manual)	1-3
	Additional Feature	Document Server function is available as a standard function.	N/A
	Additional Feature	User Stamp, etc.	N/A
	Peripherals	Finisher (B312): Pre-stack function Finisher (A763): Folds paper in half with 2 staples Finisher (B302): Pre-stack function, 100 sheets for staple Punch Unit (for B312 B302, A812): 2 holes (80 mm / 6.5 mm) (Same as A229) 3 holes (108-108 mm / 8 mm) (Same as A229) 4 holes (21-70-21 mm / 6.5 mm) (New) 4 holes (80-80-80 mm / 6.5 mm) (New) 2 holes (70 mm / 8 mm) (New) LCT (A698): Upgraded version Copy Connector Unit (B322) Output Tray (B333) Tab Sheet Holder (B373) 8 1/2" x 14" Size Kit (B375)	1-4
	Consumable	New Toner (NA: Type 5105D, EU/Asia: Type 5205D) New Developer (Type 15) Toner Particle: 9.5 μm (A229: 7.5 μm)	2-49

SECTION 2: DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

Section	Item	Description	Page
Scanning	Overview	• The number of exposure lamp is one. (A229: 2 lamps) • The CCD is changed to 4-channel type because of a higher processing speed. (A229: 2 channels) • A reflector is added to 1st scanner. • The Scanner Motor has been changed to a DC Servo type because of a higher processing speed. • The location of Lamp Regulator moves onto the 1st scanner.	2-13
Laser Exposure	Overview	• The LD unit and Polygon Motor have been changed because of a higher processing speed. • The method controlling the LD has been changed because the standard resolution has been changed from 400 dpi to 600 dpi.	N/A
Process Control	Image Density Control	The toner amount in the development unit is updated using Vsp/Vsg data in addition to the Vref update.	2-36
Drum Unit	Drum Flange	The holes for airflow have been added to Drum Flange to make cooling power up because of higher processing speed.	2-47
Drum Unit	Rotation Speed	362 mm/s (A229: 330 mm/s) This is because a higher copying speed.	N/A
	Corona Wire Cleaner	One of the conditions making the cleaner start moving “only if the fusing temperature is lower than 100°C” has not been used any more because the other condition “only when 5000 or more copies have been made since the last movement” is effective enough to function.	2-43
Cleaning	Cleaning Brush	• The turning direction of the brush has been changed to the counter direction to increase the cleaning ability. • The brush has been changed from a rope type to a straight type. A rope type scrapes off the drum surface too much because of the change of the turning direction.	2-44
	Cleaning Blade Side-to-Side Movement	The location of the cam gear is changed onto the main frame to increase reliability.	2-46
Develop-ment	Toner Supply Control	TBA	N/A
	ID Sensor Pattern	The pattern has become darker to increase reliability of toner supply control.	N/A
	Lower Development Roller	The shaft of the roller does not turn. It is not necessary to lubricate conductive grease on the shaft.	N/A

Section	Item	Description	Page
Transfer	Transfer Belt	The surface treatment has been changed to increase cleaning ability.	N/A
	Cleaning Bias Roller	The nylon tube has been added as the surface of the cleaning bias roller to increase the cleaning ability. This allows to increasing the maximum charging voltage up to 1000 V (A229: 330 V).	N/A
	Bushing	A bearing has been added to the bushing to make the movement smoother.	N/A
	Gear	The gear has been changed to a diagonal type with the color of black to decrease a jitter level.	2-58
	Transfer Current	1st Copy (Front): 65µA (A229: 60µA) 2nd Copy (Front): 65µA (A229: 60µA) By-pass Tray (Front): 75µA (A229: 70µA) Post Card (Front): 165µA (A229: 150µA) This is because of a higher drum rotation speed.	SP 2-301
Paper Feed	Torque Limitter	The type of the Torque Limitter has been changed from a non-contact magnet type to a metal powder type to increase reliability.	N/A
	Paper size setting in 2nd tray	The paper size setting can be done at the front side of the tray for easier operation.	2-72
	By-pass Tray Switch	The By-pass Tray Switch has been deleted. The by-pass tray indicator is always on the operation panel and turns on when paper is placed in the tray.	N/A
	Paper Feed Mode	The thick paper mode is used for any paper type in all paper feed stations to increase paper transportation ability.	N/A
Toner Recycling	Condition of “Full Toner Collection Bottle”	The number of copies, which can be made after the toner overflow switch is activated and the “full toner collection bottle” indication lights, becomes only “up to 100 copies”. The other one “the copy job is allowed to end” is not effective any more.	N/A
Fusing	Inner Cover	The grip and the jam removal decal have been changed. The procedure of jammed paper removal has also been changed.	N/A
	Fusing Sensor	The Fusing Sensor has been added to detect a jammed paper with an accordion shape.	2-73
Paper Exit/Duplex	Inverter Exit Clutch	The Inverter Exit Clutch has been added to stop a paper coming into the duplex unit for a while. This is to keep the maximum productivity of printing even when it takes a longer time for image processing for a paper coming out of the duplex unit. When the clutch is ON, paper stops.	N/A
	Duplex Inverter Sensor	The Inverter Exit Sensor has been added to control the ON/OFF timing of the Inverter Exit Clutch.	2-79
	Jogger Start Timing	The Jogger Fences start moving 83 ms after the trailing edge of paper passes the Duplex Entrance Sensor. (A229: 100 ms)	N/A
Ozone Filter		An inlet is added to change the airflow direction of the exhaust fan to downward. This is to increase the cooling ability and decrease the ozone smell level. The shape of the rear cover has been changed.	N/A

DIFFERENT POINTS

Section	Item	Description	Page
Electrical Compo-nents	BICU Board	• Scanner control circuit has been independent from SBICU as MCU (Motor Control Unit) and Scanner Motor Drive Board is deleted. The name of SBICU is changed to BICU. This is because the Scanner Motor has been changed from a stepper motor to a servomotor to enable the copying speed in the ADF 1 to 1 mode to be 70 cpm. • The exposure lamp, APS sensor and scanner HP sensor are also connected to the MCU.	N/A
	I/O Board	The RDS function has been independent from the I/O board as RDS Board and has been controlled by the BICU board because of the following reasons: 1. The I/O board can completely turn off in the weekly timer off mode. 2. It has been possible that only the RDS board is replaced.	N/A
	PSU	A 38V output has been added for the scanner motor that is changed from a stepper motor to a servo-motor.	N/A
	CNB (Connector Board)	This is a new name of the Interface Board which the functions for the registration motor, by-pass motor and development motor are deleted from. Those functions are on the DRB (Driver Board) as a new board. This is to reduce the harnesses used.	N/A
	12V Power Supply Board	The DC/DC converter has been deleted and its function has moved to the PSU.	N/A
	DRB (Driver Board)	This is an interface board for the signal lines of the registration motor, by-pass motor and development motor. The power line for each motor is connected to the CNB.	N/A
	Copy Connect Board	The connection between the BICU and Copy Connect Board has been changed from via the FCC cable to via the interface board. This is to make installation easier.	N/A
	Printer Controller	The connection between the BICU and Printer Controller has been changed from only via the FCC cable to via the interface board and the FCC cable. This is to make installation easier.	N/A

SECTION 3: INSTALLATION

Section	Item	Description	Page
Installation Procedure	Finisher (B302, B312)	• The caps on the upper left cover of the copier have not been equipped, so that it is not necessary to remove them when a finisher is installed. • New type of grounding bracket.	3-22 3-29
Installation Procedure	Output Tray	• A cavity has been made in each Paper Exit Roller and a plug is prepared beside each roller on the shaft. The plugs are necessary to be inserted into the cavities. • The caps on the upper left cover have become accessories of the Output Tray and are necessary to be installed. • The stack height sensors at the paper exit area have become accessories of the Output Tray and are necessary to be installed.	

SECTION 4.2.2.: SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLE

Mode No.	Mode	Description	Page
1-901	CPM change for thick paper	The setting range is changed from 0 to 2 to 0 to 3 as follows: 0: None 1: 55 cpm at 165°C (A229: 50 cpm) 2: 45 cpm at 165°C (A229: 45 cpm) 3: 35 cpm (newly added)	4-12
2-001-3	Charge Corona Bias Adjustment	Factory setting: -1300 μA (A229: -1200 μA) This is because the copy speed is increased.	4-12
2-201-2	ID Sensor Pattern	Factory setting: -400 V (A229: -440 V)	4-14
2-201-3	OHP Sheet	Factory setting: -300 V (A229: -550 V)	4-15
2-201-4	Development Performance	Factory setting: -280 V (A229: -320 V)	4-15
2-210	ID Sensor Interval	Factory setting: 10 copies (A229: 50 copies)	4-15
2-220	VREF Manual Setting	Factory setting: 3.0 V or 2.5 V (A229:2.5 V)	4-15
2-301-1	Transfer Current Adjustment	Factory setting: 65 μA (A229: 60 μA) This is because the copy speed is increased.	4-16
2-301-2	Transfer Current Adjustment	Factory setting: 65 μA (A229: 60 μA) This is because the copy speed is increased.	4-16
2-301-3	Transfer Current Adjustment	Factory setting: 75 μA (A229: 70 μA) This is because the copy speed is increased.	4-16
2-301-4	Transfer Current Adjustment	Factory setting: 165 μA (A229: 150 μA) This is because the copy speed is increased.	4-16
2-301-6	Transfer Current Adjustment	This function is new.	4-16
2-801	TD Sensor Initial Setting	This function can also be performed in the Wait condition.	4-17
2-902-4 2-902-5	Printing Test Pattern	These functions are new.	4-17
2-906-2	Vcont Manual Setting	This function is new.	4-18
2-962	Auto Process Control	This function can also be performed in the Wait condition.	4-19
2-963	Toner Supply From Toner Bottle	This function can also be performed in the Wait condition.	4-19
2-966	Periodical Auto Process Control	This function is new.	4-20
2-967	Auto Image Density Adjustment	This function is new.	4-20
2-970	Transfer Belt Resistance Value Display	This function is new.	4-20
2-971	Output Value Measured Between Copies	This function is new.	4-20
3-001-2	ID Sensor PWM Setting	This function can also be performed in the Wait condition.	4-20
3-902-7	Process Control Data Display	This function is new.	4-21
4-015	Scanner Speed Adjustment	This function is new.	4-22
4-902	SBU Setting	All the functions in SP4-901-X are shifted to SP4-902-X.	4-23 to 4-27

Mode No.	Mode	Description	Page
5-824	Upload NVRAM Data	This function is new.	4-50
5-825	Download NVRAM Data	This function is new.	4-50
5-826	Program Upload	This function is new.	4-50
5-829	Stamp Data Download	This function is new.	4-50
5-921	Stamp Data Download	This function is new.	4-51
5-922	Counter Operation Setting	This function is new.	4-51
5-923	Edge Erase Standard	This function is new.	4-51
5-954	Copy Server password Display	(A229: SP5-940)	4-51
5-965	All Copy Server File Delete	This function is new.	4-51
6-116	Thick Paper Count	This function is new.	4-53
6-801	Copy Connect I/F Test	This function is new.	4-53
6-901	Original Exchange Time Adjustment	This function is new.	4-53
6-902	Saddle Stitch Adjustment	This function is new.	4-53
7-304-24 7-304-25 7-304-26	Total Copies By Copy Mode	These functions are new.	4-56
7-330	Connect Copy Job	This function is new.	4-58
7-331	Connect Copy: Copy	This function is new.	4-58
7-332 7-333	Connect Copy: Copy Number by Copy Mode	These functions are new.	4-58 4-59
7-504-35 to 7-504-40	Copy Jam Counter by Jam Location	These functions are new.	4-61
7-808	Counters Reset	The counters which are reset: SP7-003, SP7-006, SP7-206 and SP7-101-132 (A229: SP7-003, SP7-006 and UP1-19-2)	4-64
7-830	Copy Counter by Paper Size	This function is new.	4-64

SECTION 4.2.4: INPUT CHECK

Class 3 no.	Bit no.	Description	Reading	
			0	1
9 (Motor Lock /Transport)	7	Drum Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	6	By-pass Feed Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	5	Development Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	4	Fusing Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	3	***LD Unit Home position Sensor***	***Detected***	***Not detected***
	2	***Fusing Sensor***	***Paper detected***	***No paper***
	1	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	0	Tray Paper Limit Sensor	Not full	Full
12 (LCT2)	***7***	***Fusing Cooling Fan Motor Lock***	***Overload***	***Normal***
	6	Not Used		
	5	Front Door Safety Switch	Closed	Open
	4	Not Used		
13 (By-pass)	7	LCT Paper Position Sensor	Detected	Not detected
	6	Toner End Sensor	Toner End	Not toner end
	5	***Not Used***		
	4	Relay Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	3	By-pass Paper End Sensor	Not paper end	Paper end
	2	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	1	Not Used		
	0	Not Used		
14 (Unit Set)	***7***	***Inverter Exit Sensor***	***Detected***	***Not detected***
	6	Not used		
	5	Key Counter Set	Set	Not set
	4	Total Counter Set	Set	Not set
	3	Polygon Motor Cooling Fan Lock	No lock	Lock
	2	Toner Recycling Sensor	Pulse	Pulse
	1	Drum Unit Set	Set	Not set
	0	Fusing Unit Set	Set	Not set

SECTION 4.2.5: OUTPUT CHECK

No.	Description	No.	Description
47	***Inverter Exit Clutch***	***71***	
72		***73***	
74		***77***	
78		***79***	

SECTION 5.1: PM TABLE

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life	NOTE
SCANNER/OPTICS						
1st, 2nd, 3rd Mirror		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Reflectors		***C***	***C***	***C***		***Optics cloth (Newly added)***
White Reference Plate		***I***	***I***	***I***		***Water (Newly added)***
Scanner Guide Rails		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Exposure Glass	C	C	C	C		Dry cloth or alcohol
Toner Shield Glass		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Optics Dust Filter		I	R	I		Blower brush
AROUND THE DRUM						
Charge Corona Wire		***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	***Dry Cloth*** ***A229: 150K-Replacement***
Charge Corona Casing		C	C	C		Damp cloth
Corona Wire Cleaner		***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	***A229: 150K-Cleaning***
Drum Potential Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Charge Corona Grid		***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	***Blower brush*** ***A229: 150K-Cleaning***
ID Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush; initialize with SP3-001-2 after cleaning.
Quenching Lamp		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Pick-off Pawls		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary.
Cleaning Blade					***300K***	***A229: 150K-Replacement***
Cleaning Brush					***300K***	***A229: 300K-Replacement***
Cleaning Brush Seal			C			Dry cloth
Cleaning Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth
Cleaning Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary
DEVELOPMENT UNIT ***"Development Roller Shaft (Lower)" is deleted. (A229: 150K-Lubricate)***						
Developer			R			
Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth or blower brush
Development Filter		R	R	R		
Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush
Air Filter – Large/ Small		R	R	R		
Drive Gears		C	C	C		Blower brush
Toner Bottle Holder		C	C	C		Dry cloth or vacuum cleaner
Toner Hopper Entrance		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Development Roller Shaft		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life	NOTE
PAPER FEED						
Registration Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Relay Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Dust Remover		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Registration Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Relay Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Paper Feed Rollers		***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	***Replace pick-up, feed and separation roller as a set. Check the counter value for each paper tray station (SP7-204). If the value has reached 300K, replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816). A229: 150K-Replacement***
Paper Feed Guide Plate		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Vertical Transport Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Feed Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
TRANSFER BELT UNIT						
Transfer Belt		***C***	***C***	***C***	***450K***	***Dry cloth A229: 300K-Replacement***
Cleaning Roller Cleaning Blade				***C***	***450K***	***A229: 300K-Replacement***
Transfer Entrance Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Belt Drive/Guide/ Bias Roller/Cleaning Roller		***C***	***C***	***C***		***Alcohol A229: 300K-Cleaning***
Transfer Exit Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
FUSING/PAPER EXIT ***"Pressure Roller Cleaning Brush" (EU/Asia only) is deleted. (A229: 150K-Replacement)***						
Hot Roller		***I***	***I***	***I***	***200K***	***A229: 150K-replacement***
Hot Roller Bearings		***I***	***I***	***I***	***600K***	***A229: Replace if necessary***
Pressure Roller		***I***	***I***	***I***	***450K***	***Replace as a set.***
Pressure Roller Bearings		***I***	***I***	***I***	***450K***	***A229: 300K-replacement***
Fusing Thermistor	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary
Hot Roller Strippers	***C***	***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	***Water or alcohol A229: 300K-replacement***
Oil Supply Roller Bushings	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary
Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller and Bushings		R	R	R		Replace as a set
Oil Supply Roller		R	R	R		Replace as a set
Oil Supply Cleaning Roller		R	R	R		
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates		C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol
Transport/Exit Rollers			C			Water
Exit Anti-static Brush			***I***			***A229:150K-Inspection***

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life	NOTE
DUPLEX						
Entrance Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Reverse Roller		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Separation Rollers		C	C	C		
Duplex Roller		C	C	C		
Feed Rollers		C	C	C		
Entrance Anti-static Brush		I	I	I		
Reverse Junction Gate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
OTHERS						
Ozone Filter: PCU			R			
Ozone Filter: Duct			***R***			***Newly added***
Filter: Vacuum		***R***	***R***	***R***		***Newly added***
Used Toner Tank	***I***	***I***	***I***	***I***		***Clean or Replace if necessary (about 1,000K copies). A229:1,500K-Inspection***

	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
ADF (the PM interval is for the number of originals that have been fed)					
Transport Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Feed Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Separation Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Sensors	C	C	C	C	Belt brush
Drive Gears		L	L	L	Grease G501

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life	NOTE
LCT						
Paper Feed Roller		***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	***Check the counter value for the LCT (SP7-204-5). If the value has reached 200K, replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816-5). A229: 150K-Replacement***
Pick-up Roller		***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	
Separation Roller		***C***	***C***	***C***	***300K***	
Bottom Plate Pad		C	C	C		Dry or damp cloth
Paper Feed Clutch					***1,200K***	***A229: 1,500K-Replacement***
Relay Clutch					***1,200K***	***A229: 1,500K-Replacement***
Pick-up Solenoid					***2,400K***	***A229: 1,500K-Replacement***

DIFFERENT POINTS

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life	NOTE
3,000-SHEET FINISHER (50-SHEET STAPLER): B312						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	***I***	***I***	***I***	***I***	***2,400K***	***A229: Replace if necessary.***
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I		Empty the hopper.

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life	NOTE
3,000-SHEET FINISHER (100-SHEET STAPLER): B302						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	I	I	I	I	2,000K	Check the counter value for the total copies by copy mode for staple (SP7-304-6). If the value has reached 600K, replace the brush roller.
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I		Empty the hopper.

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life	NOTE
BOOKLET FINISHER: A763						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	I	I	I	I		
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I		Empty the hopper.

SECTION 7: TROUBLESHOOTING

Section	Item	Description	Page
Service Call Conditions	SC124	Scanner motor encoder signal error (New)	7-3
	SC125	Scanner motor speed error 1 (New)	7-3
	SC126	Scanner motor speed error 2 (New)	7-3
	SC127	Scanner motor encoder rotating direction error (New)	7-3
	SC128	Scanner motor start error (New)	7-4
	SC129	Scanner motor speed control error (New)	7-4
	SC130	SBU error (New)	7-4
	SC300	Charge corona output error 1 (A229: SC302-01)	7-5
	SC301	Charge corona output error 2 (A229: SC302-02)	7-5
	SC302	Charge corona output error 3 (A229: SC302-03)	7-5
	SC303	Charge corona output error 4 (A229: SC302-04)	7-5
	SC305	Charge corona wire cleaner error 1 (A229: SC303-01)	7-5
	SC306	Charge corona wire cleaner error 2 (A229: SC303-02)	7-6
	SC310	Potential sensor error 1 (A229: SC370-01)	7-6
	SC311	Potential sensor error 2 (A229: SC370-02)	7-6
	SC312	Potential sensor error 4 (A229: SC370-04)	7-7
	SC314	Potential sensor error 5 (A229: SC370-05)	7-7
	SC329	LD unit home position error 3 (A229: SC329)	7-9
	SC330	LD unit no initial setting (A229: SC329)	7-9
	SC331	LD unit home position error 4 (A229: SC329)	7-10
	SC332	LD unit present position error (A229: SC329)	7-10
	SC335	Polygonal mirror motor error 1 (A229: SC320)	7-10
	SC336	Polygonal mirror motor error 2 (A229: SC320)	7-11
	SC337	Polygonal mirror motor error 3 (A229: SC320)	7-11
	SC338	Polygonal mirror motor error 1 (A229: SC320)	7-11
	SC340	TD sensor output error (A229: SC390-01)	7-12
	SC341	TD sensor adjustment error 1 (A229: SC390-02)	7-12
	SC342	TD sensor adjustment error 2 (A229: SC390-03)	7-13
	SC345	Development bias leak (A229: SC391)	7-13
	SC350	ID sensor error 1 (A229: SC350-01)	7-13
	SC351	ID sensor error 2 (A229: SC350-02)	7-14
	SC352	ID sensor error 3 (A229: SC350-03)	7-14
	SC353	ID sensor error 4 (A229: SC350-04)	7-15
	SC354	ID sensor error 5 (A229: SC350-05)	7-15
	SC360	Hard disk detection error 1 (A229: SC360)	7-15
	SC362	Hard disk detection error 2 (A229: SC360)	7-16
	SC364	Hard disk drive error (A229: SC361)	7-16
	SC366	Hard disk bad sector maximum (New)	7-16
	SC367	Hard disk (HDD:R) bad sector maximum (New)	7-16
	SC370	IMAC (image compression IC) input FIFO error (A229: SC362)	7-17
	SC372	IMAC (image compression IC) output FIFO error (A229: SC362)	7-17
	SC374	IMAC (image compression IC) modes setting error (A229: SC362)	7-17
	SC376	Data transmission error (A229: SC363)	7-17
	SC380	Data transmission time out (video input) (New)	7-18
	SC382	Data transmission time out (video output) (New)	7-18
	SC384	Data transmission time out (connect copy) (A229: SC364)	7-18
	SC386	Data transmission time out (Hard disk write) (New)	7-18
	SC388	Data transmission time out (Hard disk read) (New)	7-18
	SC390	CRC error (A229: SC366)	7-19

DIFFERENT POINTS

Section	Item	Description	Page
Service Call Conditions	SC391	Image storage address error (A229: SC365)	7-19
	SC400	Transfer roller leak error (A229: SC401-01)	7-19
	SC401	Transfer roller open error (A229: SC401-02)	7-19
	SC493	Exhaust fan motor lock (New)	7-20
	SC494	Fusing exhaust fan motor lock (New)	7-20
	SC501	1st tray lift malfunction (A229: SC501)	7-21
	SC502 SC503	2nd tray lift malfunction (A229: SC502) 3rd tray lift malfunction (A229: SC503)	7-22
	SC505	LCT tray malfunction (optional LCT) (A229: SC510)	7-22
	SC510	Paper feed motor lock (A229: SC506)	7-22
	SC511	LCT motor lock (optional LCT) (A229: SC507)	7-23
	SC515	Tandem rear fence motor error (A229: SC508)	7-23
	SC516	Tandem side fence motor error (A229: SC511)	7-23
	SC520	Duplex jogger motor error 1 (A229: SC521-1)	7-23
	SC521	Duplex jogger motor error 2 (A229: SC521-2)	7-24
	SC543	Fusing overheat error 1 (software) (A229: SC543)	7-25
	SC544	Fusing overheat error 1 (hardware) (A229: SC543)	7-25
	SC546	Fusing temperature stability error (A229: SC546)	7-26
	SC547	Zero cross signal malfunction (A229: SC547)	7-26
	SC620	Communication error between BICU and ADF 1 (A229: SC620-1)	7-27
	SC621	Communication error between BICU and ADF 2 (A229: SC620-2)	7-27
	SC622	Communication error between BICU and ADF 3 (A229: SC620-3)	7-27
	SC625	Communication error between BICU and finisher 1 (A229: SC621)	7-28
	SC626	Communication error between BICU and finisher 2 (A229: SC621)	7-28
	SC635	Communication error between BICU and paper feed board 1 (A229: SC623)	7-28
	SC636	Communication error between BICU and paper feed board 2 (A229: SC623)	7-29
	SC650	Key card error 1 (Japan only)	-
	SC651	Key card error 2 (Japan only)	-
	SC652	Key card error 3 (Japan only)	-
	SC653	Key card error 4 (Japan only)	-
	SC701	ADF original pick-up malfunction 2 (New)	7-29
	SC702	ADF feed-in motor lock (New)	7-30
	SC703	ADF transport motor lock (New)	7-30
	SC704	ADF feed-out motor lock (New)	7-30
	SC705	ADF bottom plate motor error (New)	7-31
	SC720	Finisher transport motor error (New)	7-31
	SC731	Finisher paper exit guide plate motor lock (New)	7-33
	SC735	Finisher pre-stack motor error (New)	7-33
	SC736	Finisher paper exit guide plate motor error (New)	7-34
	SC737	Finisher disposal staple full (New)	7-34
	SC738	Finisher shift tray lift motor error (New)	7-34
	SC740	1,000-sheet finisher error in finisher area (New)	7-34
	SC741	1,000-sheet finisher error in saddle stitching area (New)	7-34
	SC901	Mechanical total counter error (New)	7-35
	SC956	Scanner parameter setting ID error (New)	7-36
	SC957	Scanner return ID error (New)	7-36
	SC958	Scanner ready ID error (New)	7-36
	SC959	Printer setting ID error (A229: SC959)	7-36
	SC960	Printer return ID error (A229: SC960)	7-37

Section	Item	Description	Page
Service Call Conditions	SC970	Scanner ready error (New)	7-38
	SC984	HDD response error (A229: SC981)	7-38
	-	SC370-3 is deleted. (A229: Page 7-9)	-
	-	SC370-6 is deleted. (A229: Page 7-10)	-
	-	SC370-7 is deleted. (A229: Page 7-11)	-
	-	SC491 is deleted. (A229: Page 7-13)	-
Electrical Compo-nent Defect	Con-nector Number	Connector numbers are changed.	7-40 to 7-44
	Sensors	Duplex Inverter Sensor (S35) and Fusing Exit sensor (S43) are added	7-42 7-43
Blown Fuse Conditions	Fuse	The number of fuses is decreased.	7-45

SECTION 9: OPTION – 3,000-SHEET FINISHER ("B312")

Section	Item	Description	Page
Specifications	Paper weight in punch mode	The maximum paperweight, that the 2-hole and 3-hole punch units can handle, has become 157 g/m^2. (A229: 128 g/m^2) The 4-hole types can handle up to 128 g/m^2.	B312-1
	Paper size in staple mode	The paper sizes with the same width like A3 and A4 sideways and LG and LT sideways can be stapled together.	B312-1
Component Layout		• A motor and a sensor to move the Paper Exit Guide Plate have been added. • A motor and a junction gate solenoid for the Pre-stack function have been added.	B312-4 to B312-9
Paper feed	Pre-stack function	The pre-stack tray and a junction gate have been added to increase the productivity when using A4, LT and B5 sideways. The pre-stack tray holds the first paper of next job until the stapling for the present job is finished and sends it to the staple tray together with the second paper.	B312-11
Feed-out Mechanism	Number of stoppers	There are 2 stack stoppers to increase the productivity of when a small number of papers are stapled. (A229: 1 stopper)	B312-15
	Shift Tray Exit Plate	The Shift Tray Exit Plate has become a Open/Close type because of the following reasons: • To reduce a noise generated when a stapled set of papers hits the paper exit guide plate. • To feed a stapled set of papers out more smoothly. • A motor and a sensor for this function have been added to control the movement of the plate.	B312-15
Jam Conditions		• Entrance sensor ON check: 2 s (A229: 450 ms) • *Entrance sensor OFF check: 850 ms (A229: 1325ms) • Upper tray exit sensor ON check: 1,050 ms (A229: 1,630 ms) • *Upper tray exit sensor OFF check: 850 ms (A229: 1,325 ms) • Shift tray exit sensor ON check: 1,345 ms (A229: 2,090 ms) • *Shift tray exit sensor OFF check: 850 ms (A229: 1,325 ms) • Staple tray entrance sensor ON check: 2,405 ms (A229: 3,700 ms) • *Staple tray entrance sensor OFF check: 850 ms (A229: 1,325 ms) • Staple tray paper sensor OFF check: 466 pulses (A229: 250 pulses) The mark of * means the value in case of A4 sideways.	B312-20
Service Tables	DIP Switches	• DPS100 is not used any more. • DPS101-1,2,3,4 0,0,0,0: Default 1,1,1,0: Free run (one cycle)	B312-21

SECTION 10: OPTION – 1,000-SHEET FINISHER ("A763")

Section	Item	Description
Finisher	Paper Size	A3 to A5, DLT to LT
	Output Tray	Proof tray, Shift tray and Saddle stitching (Center stapling) tray
	Paper Weight	Proof tray: 64 to 80 g/m^2 , 17 to 21 lb Shift tray: 64 to 128 g/m^2 , 17 to 34 lb Saddle stitching tray: 64 to 128 g/m^2 , 17 to 34 lb
	Paper Capacity	Proof tray: A4/LT or smaller: 50 sheets Larger than A4/LT: 30 sheets Shift tray: A4/LT or smaller: 1,000 sheets (without staples) 750 sheets (with staples) Larger than A4/LT: 500 sheets (With/without staples)
	Staple Position	3 positions 1 staple (Front Slant or Rear Slant) 2 staples
	Stapler Capacity	A4/LT or smaller: 50 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20 lb) Larger than A4/LT: 30 sheets (80 g/m2, 20 lb)
	Stapler Replenishment	Cartridge (5,000 staples) Type H (5 cartridges/box)
	Paper Size for Stapling	1 staple: A3 to B5, DLT to LT 2 staples: A3 to A4/B5 sideways, DLT to LT sideways
	Power Source	24 Vdc (from copier)
	Power Consumption	55 W
	Weight	45 kg, 20.5 lb
	Dimension	689 x 582 x 1,047 mm, 27 x 23 x 41 inches
Saddle Stitching	Saddle Stitching	Folding in half with/without stapling
	Paper Size	A3 to A4 lengthwise, DLT to LT lengthwise
	Stapler Capacity	15 sheets (including a cover page)
	Paper Weight	64 to 80 g/m^2 , 17 to 21 lb (Cover page: up to 128 g/m^2, 34 lb)
	Tray Capacity	25 sets (Up to 5 sheets/set) 20 sets (Up to 10 sheets/set) 10 sets (Up to 15 sheets/set)
	Staple Position	2 staples (adjustable)
	Stapler Replenishment	Cartridge (2,000 staples) Type E (4 cartridges/box)
	Power Consumption	160 W

OVERALL INFORMATION

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

1.1.1 COPIER ENGINE

Configuration:	Console
Copy Process:	Dry electrostatic transfer system
Originals:	Sheet/Book
Original Size:	Maximum A3/11" x 17" Minimum B6, 5 1/2"x 8 1/2" (using ADF)
Original Alignment:	Rear left corner
Copy Paper Size:	Maximum A3/11" x 17" (2nd/3rd Tray, By-pass) Minimum A5/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" (2nd/3rd Tray) A6/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" lengthwise (By-pass) Tandem LCT (1st Tray) A4/8 1/2" x 11" sideways only
Duplex Copying:	Maximum A3/11" x 17" Minimum A5/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" lengthwise
Copy Paper Weight:	Paper tray: 52.3 ~ 127.9 g/m^2, 14 ~ 34 lb Bypass feed table: 52.3 ~ 157 g/m^2, 14 ~ 41.7 lb Duplex copying: 64 ~ 104.7 g/m^2, 17 ~ 28 lb
Reproduction Ratios:	6 reduction and 5 enlargement

	Metric Version	Inch Version
Enlargement	400% 200% 141% 122% 115%	400% 200% 155% 129% 121%
Full Size	100%	100%
Reduction	93% 82% 75% 71% 65% 50%	93% 85% 78% 73% 65% 50%

Zoom: 25 ~ 400%

Copy Speed: A292: Max. 55 cpm (A4 / 8 1/2" x 11" sideways)
A293: Max. 70 cpm (A4 / 8 1/2" x 11" sideways)
B098: Max. 55 cpm (A4 / 8 1/2" x 11" sideways)

Resolution:

	Scanning	Printing
A292/A293	600 dpi	400/600 dpi
B098	600 dpi	600 dpi

Gradation: 256 levels

Warm-up Time: Less than 330 s (from Off-mode)
Less than 30 s (from Low Power Mode)

First Copy Time: (1st Tray) Less than 3.5 s (A4/LT, Face up mode)
Less than 5.3 s (A4/LT, Face down mode)

Copy Number Input: Ten-key pad, 1 to 999

Copy Paper Capacity: Tray 1: 3100 sheets (when used as a tandem tray)
Tray 2: 550 sheets
Tray 3 : 550 sheets
By-pass Tray: 50 sheets

Copy Tray Capacity: (Output Tray) A4/8 1/2" x 11" : 500 sheets (100 μm thickness paper)
A3/11" x 17" : 250 sheets

Memory Capacity: RAM: 48 MB
HDD: 4.3 GB

Toner Replenishment: Cartridge exchange (1220g/ cartridge)

Toner Yield: A292/A293: 42k copies/cartridge
B098: 46k copies/cartridge
46k copies/cartridge
(A4 sideways, 6% full black, 1 to 5 copying, including toner recycling ratio 20%)

Power Source: North America:
120V, 60Hz, 20A
Europe/Asia:
220 ~ 240 V, 50Hz/60Hz, 10A

Power Consumption: A292/A293 copier (120 V Model)

	Copier only	Full system*
Warm-up	About 1.290 kW	About 1.300 kW
Stand-by	About 0.255 kW	About 0.270 kW
Copying	About 1.630 kW	About 1.650 kW
Maximum	Less than 1.75 kW	Less than 1.75 kW
Energy Saver	About 0.230 kW	About 0.240 kW
Low Power	About 0.225 kW	About 0.235 kW
Off Mode	About 0.009 kW	About 0.009 kW

A292/A293 copier (220 to 240 V Model)

	Copier only	Full system*
Warm-up	About 1.255 kW	About 1.300 kW
Stand-by	About 0.270 kW	About 0.285 kW
Copying	About 1.610 kW	About 1.590 kW
Maximum	Less than 1.75 kW	Less than 1.75 kW
Energy Saver	About 0.245 kW	About 0.255 kW
Low Power	About 0.240 kW	About 0.250 kW
Off Model	About 0.012 kW	About 0.012 kW

B098 copier (120 V Model)

	Copier only	Full system*
Warm-up	About 1.200 kW	About 1.200 kW
Stand-by	About 0.271 kW	About 0.292 kW
Copying	About 1.400 kW	About 1.500 kW
Maximum	Less than 1.75 kW	Less than 1.85 kW
Energy Saver	About 0.260 kW	About 0.290 kW
Low Power	About 0.207 kW	About 0.230 kW
Off Model	About 0.009kW	About 0.023 kW

B098 copier (220 to 240 V Model)

	Copier only	Full system*
Warm-up	About 1.200 kW	About 1.200 kW
Stand-by	About 0.281 kW	About 0.303 kW
Copying	About 1.400 kW	About 1.400 kW
Maximum	Less than 1.75 kW	Less than 1.75 kW
Energy Saver	About 0.256 kW	About 0.278 kW
Low Power	About 0.212 kW	About 0.2400 kW
Off Model	About 0.012 kW	About 0.025 kW

*Full System: A292/A293 :Mainframe with LCT (A698) and Finisher (B302)
B098: Mainframe with LCT (B587, Finisher (B586) and Printer Controller (B590)

Noise Emission:

Sound Power Level: The measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 at the operator position.

	Copier only		Full system	
	A292/A293	B098	A292/A293	B098
Stand-by	Less than 49 dB(A)	Less than 49dB(A)	Less than 49 dB(A)	Less than 49 dB(A)
Copying (ADF 1 to 1)	Less than 75 dB(A)	Less than 74dB(A)	Less than 75 dB(A)	Less than 74dB(A)
Copying (From Memory)	Less than 71 dB(A)	Less than 71 dB(A)	Less than 71 dB(A)	Less than 71 dB(A)

Sound Pressure Level: The measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 at the operator position.

	Copier only		Full system	
	A292/A293	B098	A292/A293	B098
Stand-by	Less than 35 dB(A)	Less than 58 dB(A)	Less than 35 dB(A)	Less than 58 dB(A)
Copying (ADF 1 to 1)	Less than 65 dB(A)	Less than 64 dB(A)	Less than 65 dB(A)	Less than 64 dB(A)
Copying (From Memory)	Less than 58 dB(A)	Less than 58 dB(A)	Less than 58 dB(A)	Less than 58 dB(A)

Dimensions: (W x D x H) 690 x 750 x 1138 mm (27.2" x 29.5" x 44.8") (without ADF right exit tray, and options)

Weight: 188 kg (without options)

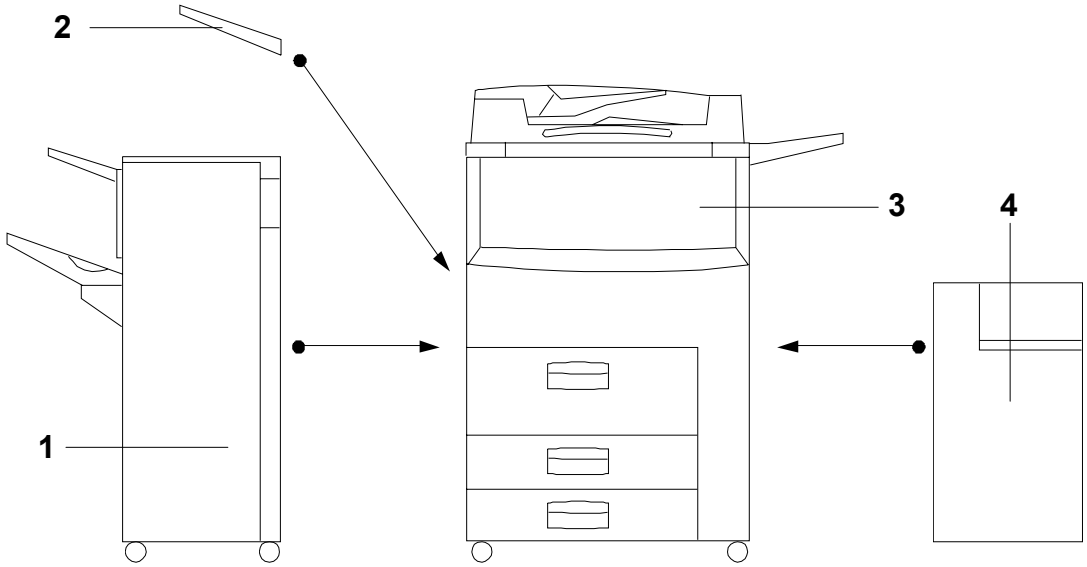
Optional Equipment:

A292/A293	B098
• Output tray (B333-17) • Finisher (A763) • Finisher (B302)Finisher (B312) • Punch unit (A812-30, -31, -32, -57, 67) • Large capacity tray (A698) • Copy connector kit (B322) • LG kit (A375) • Tab sheet holder (B373	•)Output tray (B476-17 • Finisher (B586) • Punch unit (A812-30, -31, -32, -57, 67) • Large capacity tray (B587) • Copy connector kit (B322) • LG kit (B588) • Tab sheet holder (B373

1.1.2 ADF

Original Size:	Normal Original Mode: A3 to B6, DLT to HLT Thin Original Mode: A3 to B6 sideways, DLT to HLT Duplex Original Mode: A3 to B5, DLT to HLT
Original Weight:	Normal Original Mode: 52 ~ 156 g/m^2, 14 ~ 42 lb Thin Original Mode: 40 ~ 156 g/m^2, 11 ~ 42 lb Duplex Original Mode: 52 ~ 128 g/m^2, 14 ~ 34 lb
Table Capacity:	100 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20 lb)
Original Standard Position:	Rear left corner
Separation:	FRR
Original Transport:	One flat belt
Original Feed Order:	From the top original
Power Source:	DC 24 V and DC 38 V from the copier
Power Consumption:	130 W
Dimensions (W x D x H):	680 x 560 x 150 mm

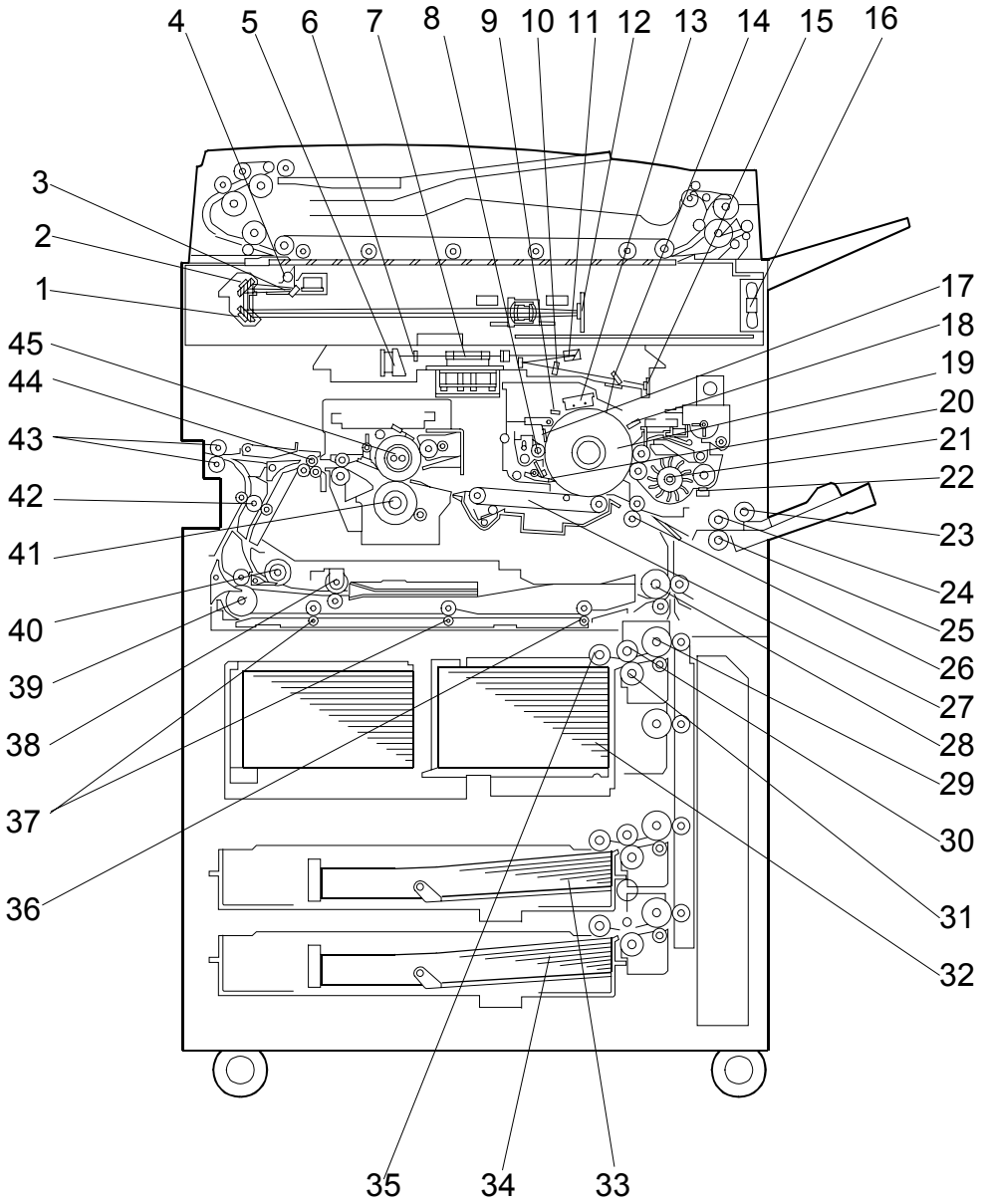
1.2 MACHINE CONFIGURATION



Item	Machine Code		No.
Mainframe	A292/A293	B098	3
Output Tray	B333	B476	2
Finisher	A763, B302, B312	B586	1
Large Capacity Tray	A698	B587	4
Punch Unit (Option for Finisher)	A812-30 (4 holes) A812-31 (4 holes) A812-32 (2 holes) A812-57 (3 holes) A812-67 (2 holes)		Inside the Finisher
Copy Connector Kit (for the tandem copy feature)	B322		
LG Kit (Option for large capacity tray)	B375	B588	
Tab Sheet Holder	B373	N/A	

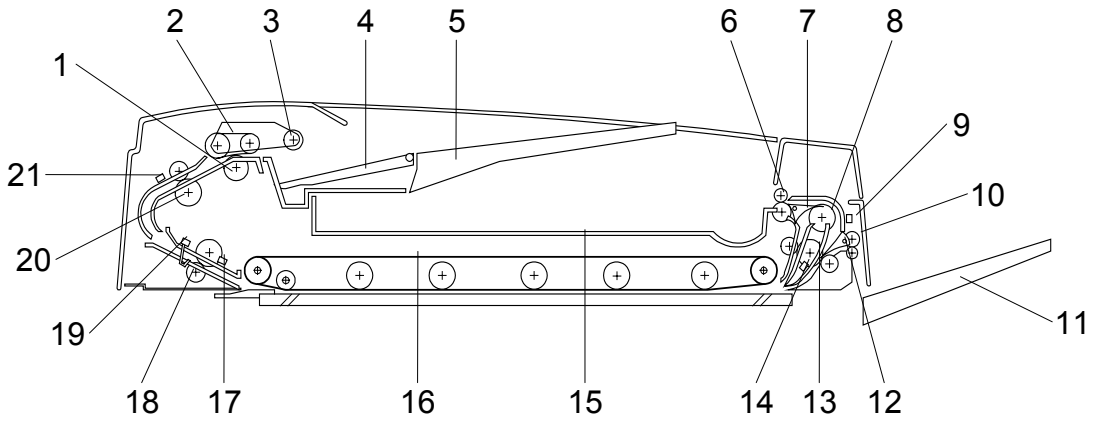
1.3 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT

1.3.1 COPIER ENGINE



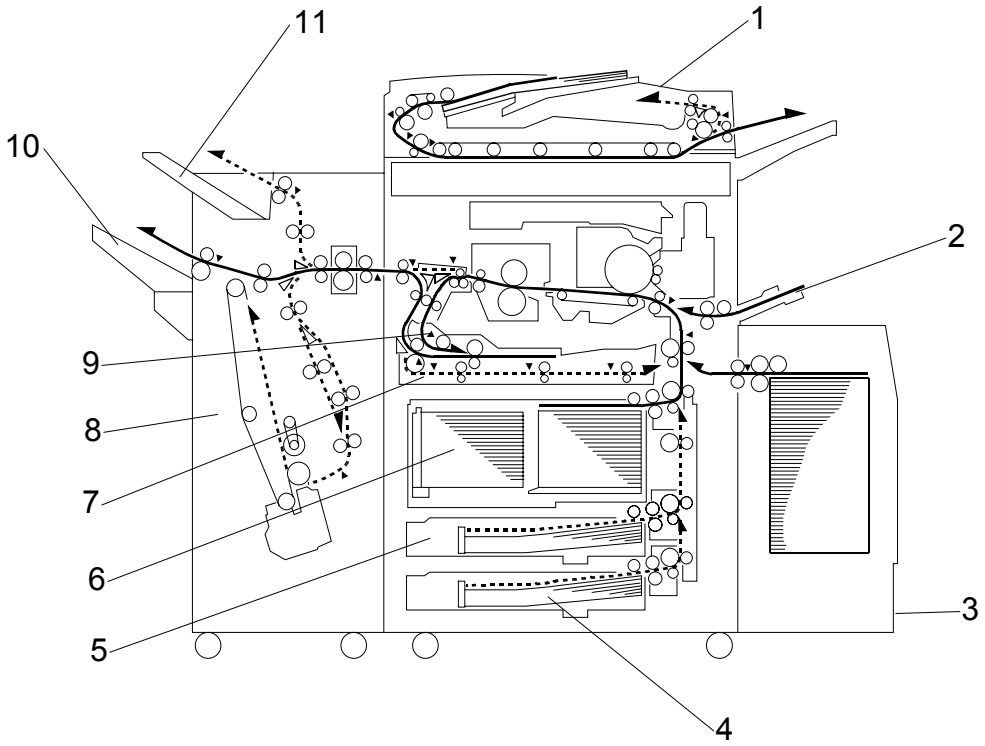
1. 3rd Mirror
2. 2nd Mirror
3. 1st Mirror
4. Exposure Lamps
5. LD Unit
6. Cylindrical Lens
7. Polygonal Mirror
8. Cleaning Brush
9. Quenching Lamp
10. Barrel Toroidal Lends (BTL)
11. F-theta Mirror
12. SBU
13. Charge Corona Unit
14. Shield Glass
15. Laser Synchronization Detector
16. Optics Cooling Fan Motor
17. Drum Cleaning Blade
18. Drum Potential Sensor
19. Drum
20. Pick-off Pawl
21. Development Unit
22. TD Sensor
23. Pick-up Roller
24. Feed Roller (By-pass Tray)
25. Separation Roller
26. Registration Rollers
27. Transfer Belt Unit
28. Relay Roller
29. Vertical Transport Rollers
30. Feed Roller
31. Separation Roller
32. Tray 1 (Tandem LCT)
33. Tray 2 (550-sheet Tray)
34. Tray 3 (550-sheet Tray)
35. Pick-up Roller
36. Duplex Feed Roller
37. Duplex Transport Rollers
38. Reverse Trigger Roller
39. Inverter Unit Paper Exit Roller
40. Inverter Feed Roller
41. Pressure Roller
42. Transport Rollers
43. Paper Exit Rollers
44. Curl Correction Roller
45. Hot Roller

1.3.2 ADF



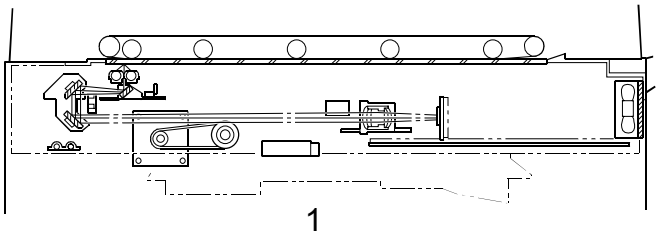
1. Separation Roller
2. Feed Belt
3. Pick-up Roller
4. Bottom Plate
5. Original Tray
6. Upper Tray Exit Roller
7. Inverter Gate
8. Inverter Guide Roller
9. Inverter Sensor
10. Right Tray Exit Roller
11. Right Exit Tray
12. Exit Gate
13. Inverter Roller
14. Exit Sensor
15. Upper Exit Tray
16. Transport Belt
17. Registration Sensor
18. Lower Transport Roller
19. Width Sensor
20. Upper Transport Roller
21. Entrance Sensor

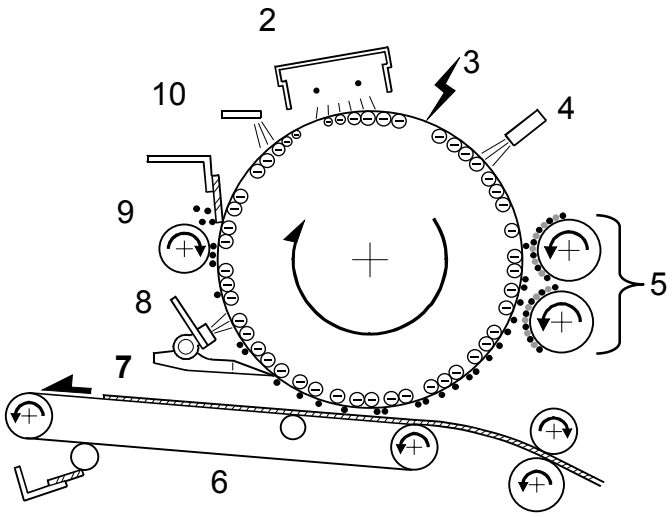
1.4 PAPER PATH



1. ADF
2. By-pass Tray
3. Optional LCT
4. Tray 3 (550-sheet Tray)
5. Tray 2 (550-sheet Tray)
6. Tray 1 (Tandem LCT)
7. Duplex Unit
8. Finisher
9. Inverter Unit
10. Shift Tray
11. Upper Tray

1.5 COPY PROCESS





1. EXPOSURE

A xenon lamp exposes the original. Light reflected from the original passes to the CCD, where it is converted into an analog data signal. This data is converted to a digital signal, processed, and stored in the memory. At the time of printing ,the data is retrieved and sent to the laser diode. For multi-copy runs, the original is scanned once only and stored to the hard disk.

2. DRUM CHARGE

An OPC (organic photoconductor) drum is used in this machine. In the dark, the charge corona unit gives a negative charge to the drum. The grid plate ensures that corona charge is applied uniformly. The charge remains on the surface of the drum because the OPC layer has a high electrical resistance in the dark.

3. LASER EXPOSURE

The processed data from the scanned original is retrieved from the hard disk and transferred to the drum by two laser beams, which form an electrostatic latent image on the drum surface. The amount of charge remaining as a latent image on the drum depends on the laser beam intensity, which is controlled by the BICU board.

4. DRUM POTENTIAL SENSOR

The drum potential sensor detects the electric potential on the drum to correct various process control elements.

5. DEVELOPMENT

The magnetic developer brush on the development rollers comes in contact with the latent image on the drum surface. Toner particles are electrostatically attracted to the areas of the drum surface where the laser reduced the negative charge on the drum.

6. IMAGE TRANSFER

Paper is fed to the area between the drum surface and the transfer belt at the proper time to align the copy paper and the developed image on the drum. Then, the transfer bias roller applies a high positive charge to the reverse side of the paper through the transfer belt. This positive charge pulls the toner particles from the drum to the paper. At the same time, the paper is electrically attracted to the transfer belt.

7. PAPER SEPARATION

Paper separates from the drum as a result of the electrical attraction between the paper and the transfer belt. The pick-off pawls also help separate the paper from the drum.

8. ID SENSOR

The laser forms a sensor pattern on the drum surface. The ID sensor measures the reflectivity of the pattern. The output signal is one of the factors used for toner supply control.

9. CLEANING

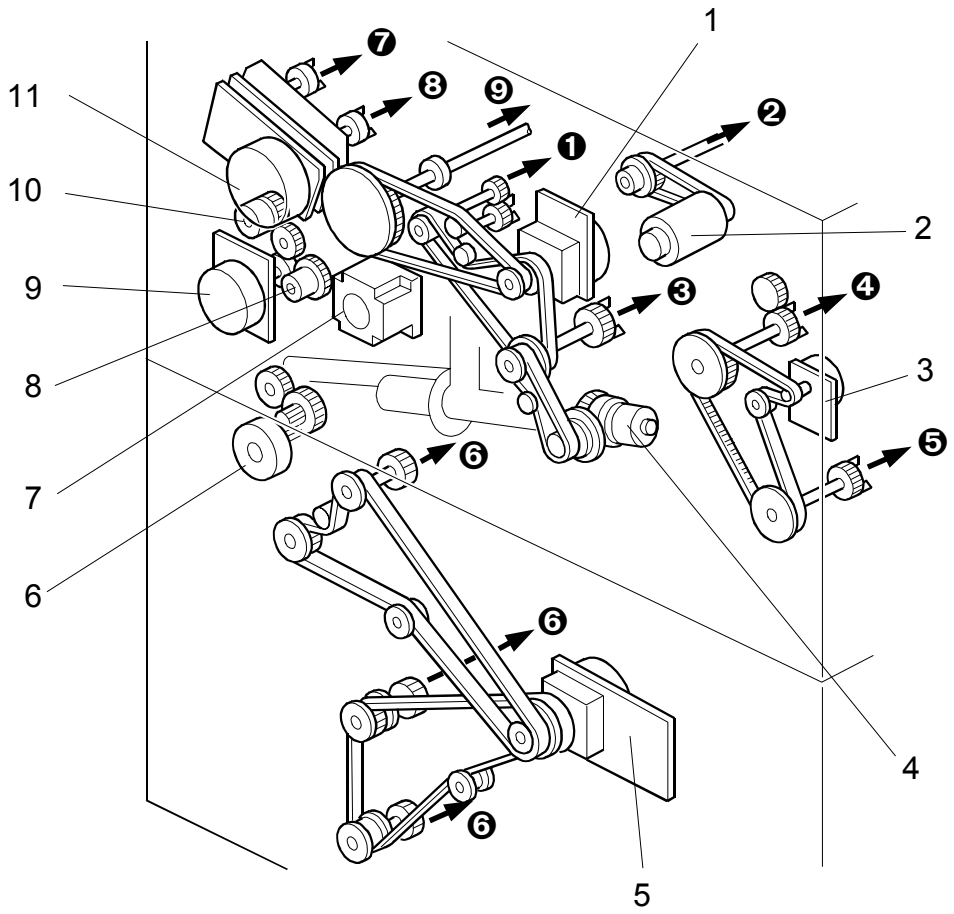
The cleaning brush removes toner remaining on the drum after image transfer and the cleaning blade scrapes off all remaining toner.

10. QUENCHING

The light from the quenching lamp electrically neutralizes the charge on the drum surface.

1.6 DRIVE LAYOUT

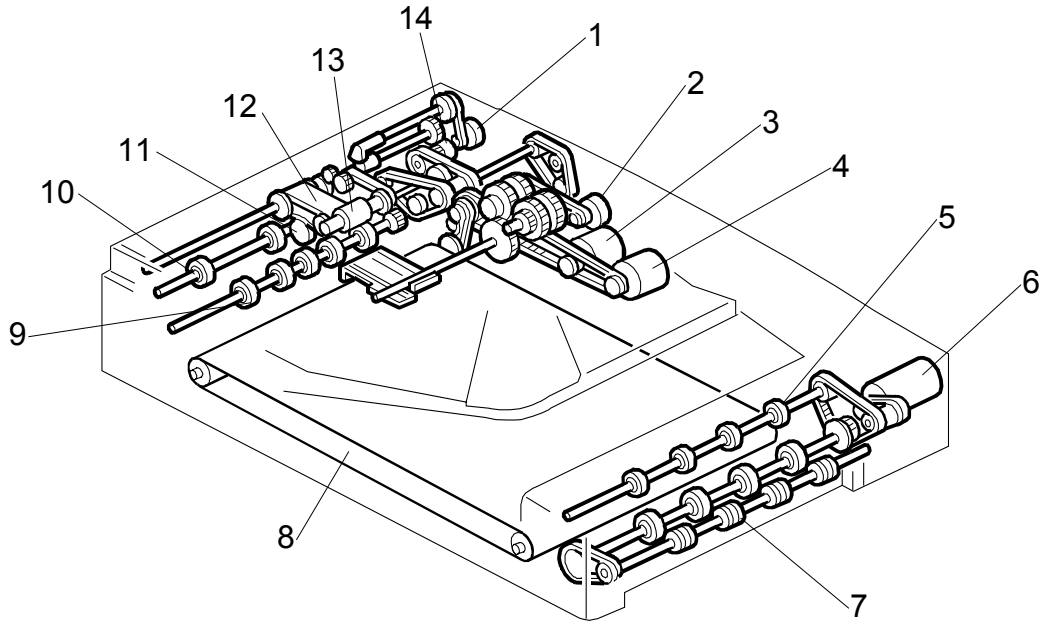
1.6.1 COPIER ENGINE



1. Drum Motor
2. Scanner Motor
3. Fusing/Duplex Motor
4. Toner Recycling Clutch
5. Paper Feed Motor
6. Toner Collection Motor
7. Registration Motor
8. Relay Clutch
9. By-pass Feed Motor
10. By-pass Feed Clutch
11. Development Motor

❶ Cleaning Unit
❷ Scanner Unit
❸ Transfer Belt Unit
❹ Fusing Unit
❺ Duplex Unit
❻ Paper Feed Units
❼ Toner Hopper
❽ Development Unit
❾ Drum

1.6.2 ADF



1. Pick-up Motor
2. Bottom Plate Motor
3. Feed-in Motor
4. Transport Motor
5. Upper Exit Roller
6. Feed-out Motor
7. Right Exit Roller
8. Transport Belt
9. Lower Transport Roller
10. Upper Transport Roller
11. Separation Roller
12. Feed Belt
13. Pick-up Roller
14. Feed-in Clutch

1.7 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Refer to the electrical component layout on the reverse side of the point-to-point diagram for the location of the components using the symbols and index numbers.

1.7.1 COPIER ENGINE

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Scanner	Drives the 1st and 2nd.	15
M2	Polygonal Mirror	Turns the polygonal mirror.	22
M3	LD Positioning *(for A292/A293 only)*	Rotates the LD unit to adjust the LD beam pitch when a different resolution is selected.	25
M4	Drum	Drives the drum and cleaning unit.	36
M5	Development	Drives the development unit.	37
M6	Toner Supply	Rotates the toner bottle to supply toner to the development unit.	43
M7	Charge Corona Wire Cleaner	Drives the charge corona wire cleaner.	68
M8	Fusing/Duplex	Drives the fusing unit, duplex unit, inverter unit, and paper exit rollers.	44
M9	Toner Collection	Transports the collected toner to the toner collection bottle.	3
M10	Toner Recycling	Drives the air pump to send recycled toner to the development unit.	6
M11	Paper Feed	Drives all feed and transport rollers in the paper tray unit.	124
M12	1st Tray Lift	Raises and lowers the bottom plate in the 1st paper tray.	125
M13	2nd Tray Lift	Raises the bottom plate in the 2nd paper tray.	127
M14	3rd Tray Lift	Raises the bottom plate in the 3rd paper tray.	128
M15	By-pass Feed	Drives the by-pass feed rollers.	41
M16	Registration	Drives the registration rollers.	40
M17	Rear Fence	Moves the paper stack in the left tandem tray to the right tandem tray.	136
M18	Jogger	Drives the jogger fences to square the paper stack in the duplex unit.	94
M19	Optics Cooling Fan	Removes heat from the optics unit.	21
M20	Drum Cooling Fan	Sends the air to the drum inside.	38
M21	Exhaust Fan	Removes heat from around the fusing unit.	35
M22	Fusing Fan	Removes heat from around the fusing unit.	34
M23	Duplex Cooling Fan	Removes heat from around the duplex unit.	42

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
M24	Exit Cooling Fan ***(for A292/A293 only)***	Removes heat from the exit unit.	45
M25	PSU Cooling Fan	Removes heat from around the PSU.	54
M26	SBU Cooling	Removes the heat from around CCD.	19
M27	Exit Cooling Fan 1 ***(for B098 only)***	Removes heat from around the PSU	145
M28	Exit Cooling Fan 2 ***(for B098 only)***	Removes heat from around the PSU	146
Magnetic Clutches			
MC1	Toner Supply	Turns the toner supply roller to supply toner to the development unit.	39
MC2	Toner Recycling	Drives the toner recycling unit.	1
MC3	1st Paper Feed	Starts paper feed from tray 1.	100
MC4	2nd Paper Feed	Starts paper feed from tray 2.	104
MC5	3rd Paper Feed	Starts paper feed from tray 3.	109
MC6	By-pass Feed	Starts paper feed from the by-pass table.	78
MC7	Inverter Exit Clutch	Drives the inverter exit roller.	88
MC8	Duplex Transport	Drives the duplex transport rollers to transport the paper to the duplex feed rollers.	89
MC9	Duplex Feed	Starts paper feed out of the duplex tray back into the machine via to the relay rollers.	91
MC10	1st Vertical Relay	Drives the 1st vertical transport rollers.	101
MC11	2nd Vertical Relay	Drives the 2nd vertical transport rollers.	105
MC12	3rd Vertical Relay	Drives the 3rd vertical transport rollers.	108
MC13	Bank Relay	Drives the bank relay roller.	103
MC14	Relay	Drives the relay rollers.	81
Switches			
SW1	Main Power	Provides power to the machine. If this is off, there is no power supplied to the machine.	9
SW2	Operation	Provides power for machine operation. The machine still has power if this switch is off.	27
SW3	Front Door Safety Switch 1	Cuts the +5 V LD dc power line.	10
SW4	Front Door Safety Switch 2	Detects if the front door is open or not, and cuts the +24 V dc power line.	11
SW5	Front Door Safety Switch 3	Cuts the +5 V LD dc power line.	12
SW6	Lower Front Door Safety	Cuts the +24 V dc power line.	8
SW7	Toner Collection Bottle Set	Detects if the toner collection bottle is set or not.	5

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
SW8	Toner Overflow	Detects when the toner collection bottle is full.	4
SW9	Paper Size	Determines the size of paper in tray 2.	129
Solenoids			
SOL1	Transfer Belt Lift	Controls the up-down movement of the transfer belt unit.	70
SOL2	1st Pick-up	Controls the up-down movement of the pick-up roller in tray 1.	99
SOL3	2nd Pick-up	Controls the up-down movement of the pick-up roller in tray 2.	106
SOL4	3rd Pick-up	Controls the up-down movement of the pick-up roller in tray 3.	110
SOL5	By-pass Pick-up	Controls the up-down movement of the pick-up roller for by-pass feed.	76
SOL6	1st Separation Roller	Controls the up-down movement of the separation roller in tray 1.	102
SOL7	2nd Separation Roller	Controls the up-down movement of the separation roller in tray 2.	107
SOL8	3rd Separation Roller	Controls the up-down movement of the separation roller in tray 3.	111
SOL9	Right Tray Lock	Locks the right tandem tray during paper feed from tandem tray.	126
SOL10	Left Tray Lock	Locks the left tandem tray during more the paper from left tray to right tray.	123
SOL11	Front Side Fence	Opens the front side fence of right tandem tray.	134
SOL12	Rear Side Fence	Opens the rear side fence of right tandem tray.	130
SOL13	Duplex Inverter Gate	Moves the junction gate to direct copies to the duplex tray or to the paper exit.	96
SOL14	Reverse Roller	Controls the up-down movement of the reverse trigger roller.	95
SOL15	Guide Plate	Opens the guide plate when a paper misfeed occurs around this area.	80
SOL16	Inverter Gate	Opens the inverter gate during a duplex job.	74
Sensors			
S1	Scanner HP	Informs the CPU when the 1st and 2nd scanners are at home position.	32
S2	Original Width	Detects original width. This is one of APS (Auto Page Select) sensors.	33
S3	Original Length 1	Detects original length. This is one of APS (Auto Page Select) sensors.	16
S4	Original Length 2	Detects original length. This is one of APS (Auto Page Select) sensors.	18
S5	LD Unit Home Position ***(for A292/A293 only)***	Informs the CPU when the LD unit is at home position.	24
S6	Drum Potential	Detects the drum surface potential.	66

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
S7	Toner Density (TD)	Detects the amount of toner in the developer.	73
S8	Image Density (ID)	Detects the density of the ID sensor pattern on the drum.	69
S9	Toner End	Detects toner end.	72
S10	Toner Collection Motor	Monitors the toner collection motor.	7
S11	Toner Recycling	Monitors the toner recycling and collection unit operation.	2
S12	1st Paper Feed	Controls the 1st paper feed clutch off/on timing and the 1st pick-up solenoid off timing.	120
S13	2nd Paper Feed	Controls the 2nd paper feed clutch off/on timing and the 2nd pick-up solenoid off timing.	116
S14	3rd Paper Feed	Controls the 3rd paper feed clutch off/on timing and the 3rd pick-up solenoid off timing.	114
S15	1st Tray Lift	Detects when the paper in tray 1 is at the correct height for paper feed.	122
S16	2nd Tray Lift	Detects when the paper in tray 2 is at the correct height for paper feed.	118
S17	3rd Tray Lift	Detects when the paper in tray 3 is at the correct height for paper feed.	112
S18	1st Paper End	Informs the CPU when tray 1 runs out of paper.	121
S19	2nd Paper End	Informs the CPU when tray 2 runs out of paper.	117
S20	3rd Paper End	Informs the CPU when tray 3 runs out of paper.	113
S21	By-pass Paper End	Informs the CPU that there is no paper in the by-pass feed table.	77
S22	1st Paper Near End	Informs the CPU when the paper in tray 1 is almost finished.	140
S23	2nd Paper Near End	Informs the CPU when the paper in tray 2 is almost finished.	119
S24	3rd Paper Near End	Informs the CPU when the paper in tray 3 is almost finished.	115
S25	Rear Fence HP	Informs the CPU when the tandem tray rear fence is in the home position.	139
S26	Rear Fence Return	Informs the CPU when the tandem tray rear fence is in the return position.	132
S27	Front Side Fence Open	Defects that the front side fence of tandem tray is opened.	135
S28	Front Side Fence Close	Defects that the front side fence of tandem tray is closed.	138
S29	Rear Side Fence Open	Defects that the rear side fence of tandem tray is opened.	142
S30	Rear Side Fence Close	Defects that the rear side fence of tandem tray is closed.	141

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
S31	Right Tray Down	Detects when the bottom plate of the right tandem tray is completely lowered to stop the 1st tray lift motor.	133
S32	Right Tray Paper	Detects whether there is paper or not in the right tray of tandem tray.	131
S33	Left Tandem Tray Paper	Detects whether there is paper or not in the left tray of tandem tray.	137
S34	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Detects the leading and trailing edges of the paper to determine the reverse roller solenoid on or off timing.	98
S35	Duplex Inverter	Defects the leading edge and tray edges of the paper to determine the inverter exit clutch on or off timing.	97
S36	Duplex Transport Sensor 1	Detects the position of paper in the duplex unit.	87
S37	Duplex Transport Sensor 2	Detects the position of paper in the duplex unit.	93
S38	Duplex Transport Sensor 3	Detects the position of paper in the duplex unit.	92
S39	Duplex Jogger HP	Detects if the duplex jogger fences are at the home position or not.	90
S40	Relay	Detects misfeeds.	82
S41	Registration	Detects misfeeds and controls registration clutch off-on timing.	83
S42	Guide Plate Position	Detects whether the registration guide plate is closed or not.	75
S43	Fusing Exit	Defects misfeeds	62
S44	1st Exit	Detects misfeeds.	84
S45	2nd Exit	Detects misfeeds.	85
S46	Tray Paper Limit (option)	Detects paper overflow on the output tray.	86
PCBs			
PCB1	BICU	Controls all base engine functions both directly and through other control boards.	20
PCB2	PSU	Provides dc power to the system and ac power to the fusing lamp and heaters.	53
PCB3	IOB	Controls the mechanical parts of the machine (excluding the scanner unit section), and the fusing lamp.	47
PCB4	SBU	Contains the CCD, and outputs a video signal to the SBICU board.	17
PCB5	MCU	Controls the components in the scanner unit.	46
PCB6	Lamp Regulator	Provides dc power to the exposure lamp.	14
PCB7	CNB	Passes signals and dc supplies from the PSU and IOB to motors and other components.	59

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
PCB8	DRB	Drives the registration, by-pass feed and development motor.	50
PCB9	Paper Feed Control Board (PFB)	Controls the mechanical parts of all paper feed sections.	52
PCB10	Operation Panel 1	Controls the components on the right-hand side of the operation panel.	28
PCB11	Operation Panel 2	Controls the components on the left-hand side of the operation panel.	31
PCB12	LCD Control	Controls the LCD.	30
PCB13	By-pass Paper Size	Detects the paper width on the by-pass tray.	79
PCB14	Mother (Option)	Connects the printer control board.	–
PCB15	Printer Control (Option)	Receives print data from a PC.	–
PCB16	Copy Connect	Receives and sends data to other copier.	–
PCB17	RSS Board	Passes signal for RDS function	51
Lamps			
L1	Exposure Lamp	Apply high intensity light to the original for exposure.	13
L2	Fusing Lamp 1	Provides heat to the hot roller.	64
L3	Fusing Lamp 2	Provides heat to the hot roller.	63
L4	Quenching	Neutralizes any charge remaining on the drum surface after cleaning.	67
Power Packs			
PP1	Charge	Provides high voltage for the charge corona wires and the grid plate.	65
PP2	Development	Provides high voltage for the development unit.	49
PP3	Transfer	Provides high voltage for the transfer belt.	71
Others			
TF1	Fusing Thermofuse ***(for A292/A293 only)***	Opens the fusing lamp circuit if the fusing unit overheats.	61
TH1	Fusing Thermistor	Detects the temperature of the hot roller.	60
H1	Drum	Turns on when the main switch is off to prevent moisture from forming around the drum.	58
H2	Tray Heater 1	Turns on when the main switch is off to keep paper dry in the paper tray.	57
H3	Tray Heater 2	Turns on when the main switch is off to keep paper dry in the paper tray.	55
CB1	Circuit Breaker	Provides back-up high current protection for the electrical components.	56
HDD 1	HDD	Scanned image data is compressed and held here temporarily.	48

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
LCD 1	LCD	Displays the operation menus and messages.	29
LSD 1	Laser Synchronization Detector	Detects the laser beam at the start of the main scan.	23
LDU1	Laser Diode Unit	Controls the laser diode.	26
TP1	Touch Panel	Monitors the key matrix.	(29)
TS 1	Thermostat 1 ***(for B098 only)***	Opens the fusing lamp circuit if the fusing unit overheats.	143
TS 2	Thermostat 2 ***(for B098 only)***	Opens the fusing lamp circuit if the fusing unit overheats.	144

1.7.2 ADF

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Pick-up	Moves the pick-up roller up and down.	3
M2	Feed-in	Drives the feed belt, and the separation, pick-up, and transport rollers.	8
M3	Transport Belt	Drives the transport belt.	9
M4	Feed-out	Drives the exit and inverter rollers.	14
M5	Bottom Plate	Moves the bottom plate up and down.	7
Sensors			
S1	APS Start	Informs the CPU when the DF is opened and closed (for platen mode) so that the original size sensors in the copier can check the original size.	12
S2	DF Position	Detects whether the DF is lifted or not.	13
S3	Original Set	Detects whether an original is on the table.	19
S4	Bottom Plate HP	Detects whether the bottom plate is in the down position or not.	20
S5	Bottom Plate Position	Detects when the original is at the correct position for feeding.	4
S6	Pick-up Roller HP	Detects whether the pick-up roller is up or not.	2
S7	Entrance	Detects when to restart the pick-up motor to lift up the pick-up roller, detects when to change the feed motor direction, detects the trailing edge of the original to finish checking the original length, and checks for misfeeds.	26
S8	Registration	Detects the leading edge of the original to check the original length, detects when to stop the original on the exposure glass, and checks for misfeeds.	21
S9	Original Width 1	Detects the original width.	22

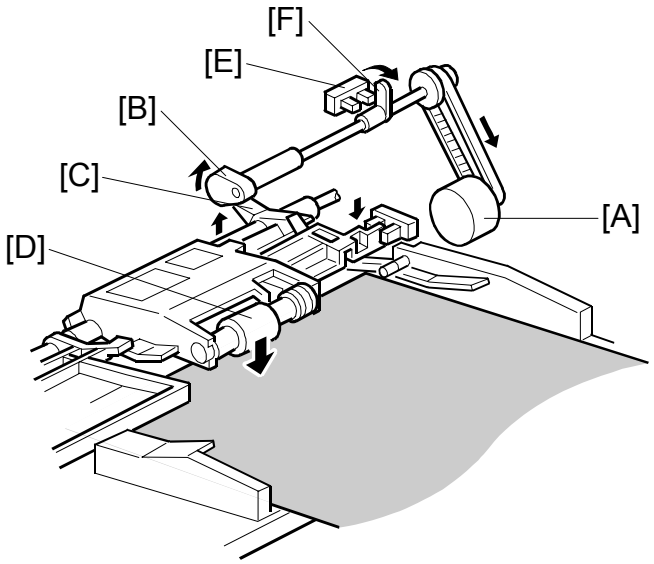
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
S10	Original Width 2	Detects the original width.	23
S11	Original Width 3	Detects the original width.	24
S12	Original Length	Detects the original length.	25
S13	Exit	Detects when to stop the transport belt motor and checks for misfeeds.	18
S14	Inverter	Detects when to turn the inverter gate and exit gate solenoids off and checks for misfeeds.	17
S15	Feed Cover	Detects whether the feed cover is open or not.	5
S16	Exit Cover	Detects whether the exit cover is open or not.	15
Solenoids			
SOL1	Exit Gate	Opens and closes the exit gate.	16
SOL2	Inverter Gate	Opens and closes the inverter gate.	11
Magnetic Clutches			
MC1	Feed-in	Drives the feed belt, separation roller, and pick-up roller.	1
PCBs			
PCB1	DF Main	Controls the DF and communicates with the main copier boards.	10
PCB2	DF Indicator	Indicates whether an original has been placed in the feeder, and indicates whether SADF mode has been selected.	6

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 DOCUMENT FEEDER

2.1.1 PICK-UP ROLLER RELEASE

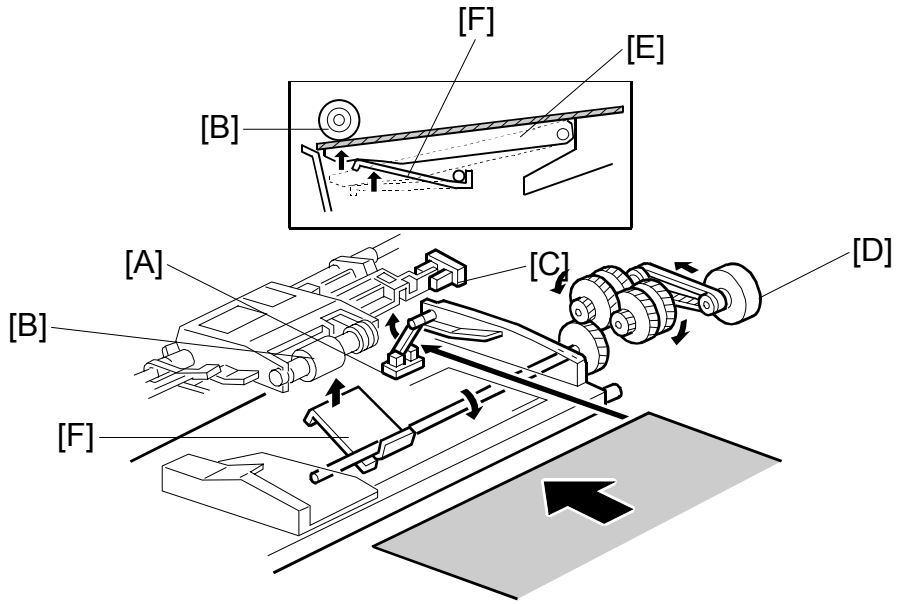


When the original set sensor is off (no original on the original tray), the pick-up roller stays in the up position.

When the original set sensor turns on (or when the trailing edge of a page passes the entrance sensor while pages remain on the original tray), the pick-up motor [A] turns on. The cam [B] rotates away from the pick-up roller release lever [C]. The lever then rises and the pick-up roller [D] drops onto the original.

When the original reaches the entrance sensor, the pick-up motor turns on again. The cam pushes the lever down, and the pick-up roller rises until the pick-up roller HP sensor [E] detects the actuator [F].

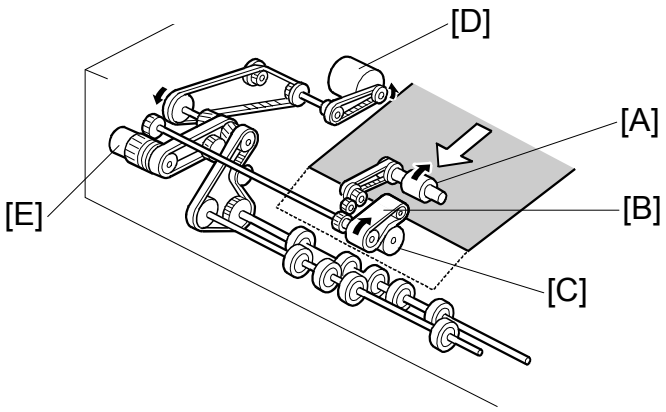
2.1.2 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT

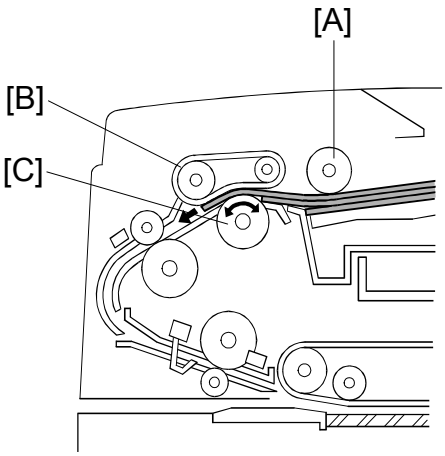


When an original is placed on the original tray, the original set sensor [A] turns on, the pick-up roller [B] drops on to the original, and the bottom plate position sensor [C] turns off. Then the bottom plate motor [D] turns on and lifts the bottom plate [E] by raising the lift lever [F] until the bottom plate position sensor turns on.

The level of the pick-up roller drops as the stack of originals becomes smaller, and eventually, the bottom plate position sensor [C] turns off. Then, the bottom plate motor turns on and lifts the bottom plate until the bottom plate position sensor turns on. This keeps the original at the correct height for feeding.

2.1.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION



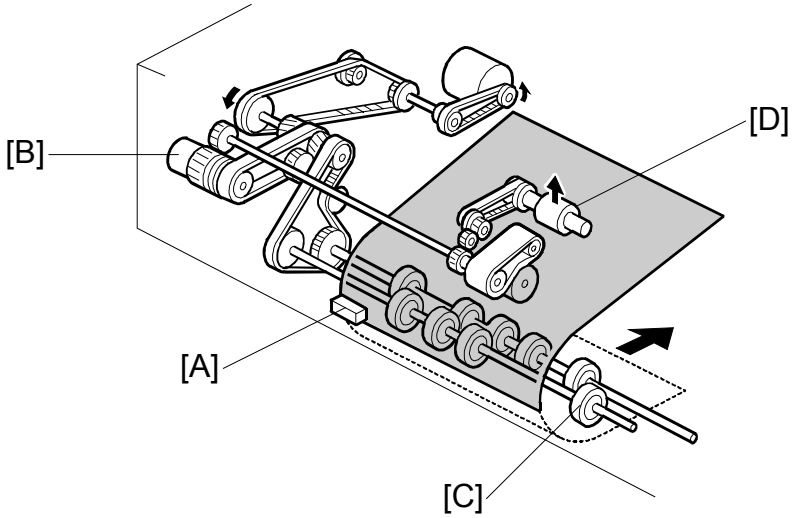


The original separation system is a Feed and Reverse Roller (FRR) system. The pick-up roller [A], feed belt [B], and separation roller [C] are driven by the feed-in motor [D].

To drive this mechanism, the feed-in motor [D] and feed-in clutch [E] turn on.

When two sheets of originals are fed by the pick-up roller, the separation roller turns in the opposite direction to the feed belt and the 2nd sheet is pushed back to the original tray. When there is only one sheet between the feed belt and separation roller, the separation roller rotates in the same direction as the feed belt. This is because the separation roller contains a torque limiter.

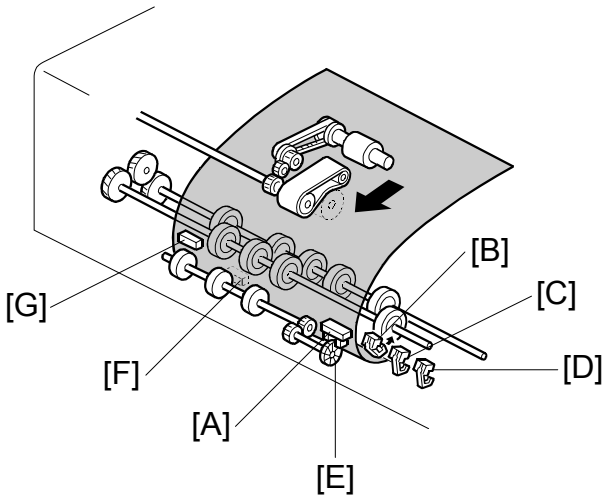
2.1.4 ORIGINAL FEED

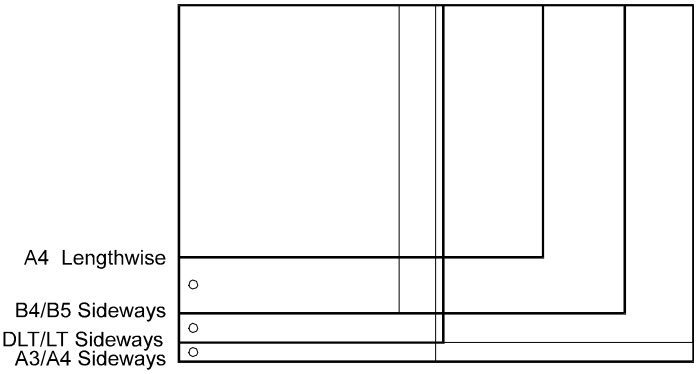


When the leading edge of the original turns the entrance sensor [A] on, the feed-in clutch [B] turns off and the drive for the feed belt is released. The original is fed by the transport rollers [C].

At the same time, the pick-up motor starts again and the pick-up roller [D] is lifted up. When the pick-up roller HP sensor turns on, the pick-up motor stops (see Pick-up Roller Release).

2.1.5 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION





The DF detects the original size by combining the readings of original length sensor [A], and original width sensors-1 [B], -2 [C], and -3 [D].

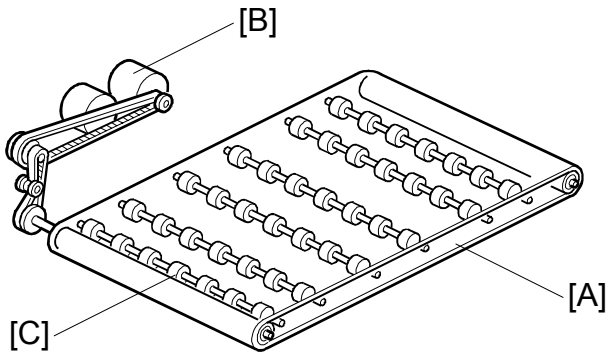
Original Length

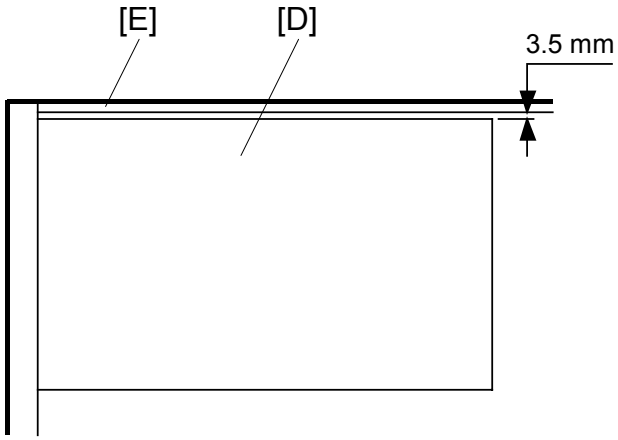
The original length sensor and the disk [E] (connected to the transport roller) generate a pulse signal. The CPU counts pulses, starting when the leading edge of the original turns on the registration sensor [F], until the trailing edge of the original turns off the entrance sensor [G].

Original Width

The CPU detects original width using three original width sensors -1, -2, -3 as shown above. Three small circles on the diagram indicate the positions of the sensors.

2.1.6 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT





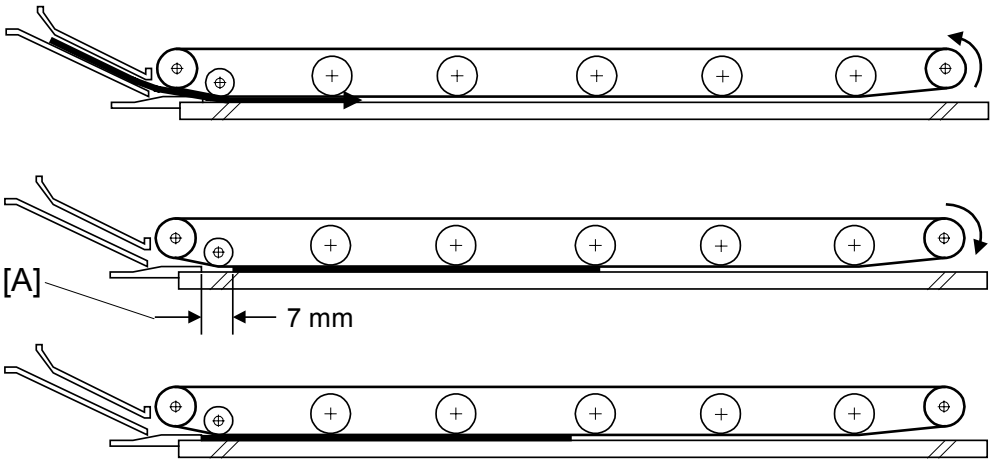
The transport belt [A] is driven by the transport belt motor [B]. The transport belt motor starts when the copier sends an original feed-in signal.

Inside the transport belt are six pressure rollers which maintain the correct pressure between the belt and original. The pressure roller [C] closest to the left original scale is made of rubber for the stronger pressure needed for thick originals. The other rollers are sponge rollers.

Normally, originals are manually placed at the left rear corner, so an original [D] fed from the DF must also be at this position. But if the original is fed along the rear scale [E], original skew, jam, or wrinkling may occur.

To prevent such problems, the original transfer position is set to 3.5 mm away from the rear scale as shown. The 3.5 mm gap is compensated for by changing the starting position of the main scan.

2.1.7 ORIGINAL SKEW CORRECTION



The transport belt motor remains energized to carry the original about 7 mm past the left scale [A] (see the middle drawing). Then the motor stops and reverses to feed the original back against the left scale (see the bottom drawing). This forces the original to hit the left scale, which aligns the trailing edge to minimize original skew on the exposure glass.

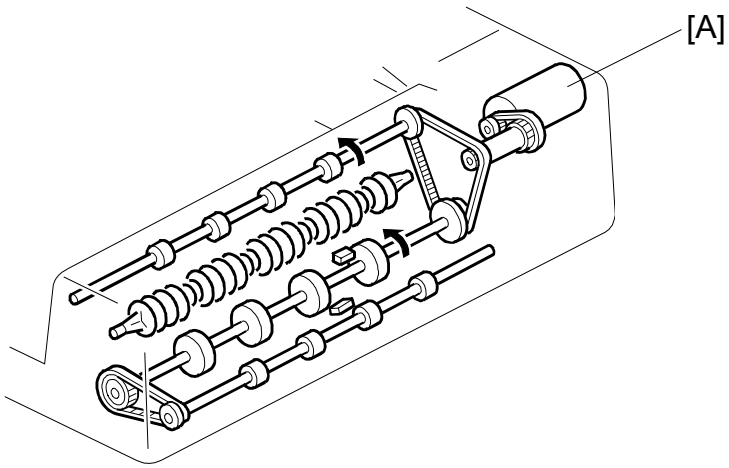
If thin original mode is selected, the original is not forced back against the left scale. This is to prevent damage to the original.

After a two-sided original has been inverted to copy the 2nd side, it is fed in from the inverter against the left scale (see the bottom drawing; the top two drawings do not apply in this mode).

The amount of reverse feed against the left scale can be adjusted with SP modes.

2.1.8 ORIGINAL INVERSION AND FEED-OUT

General Operation

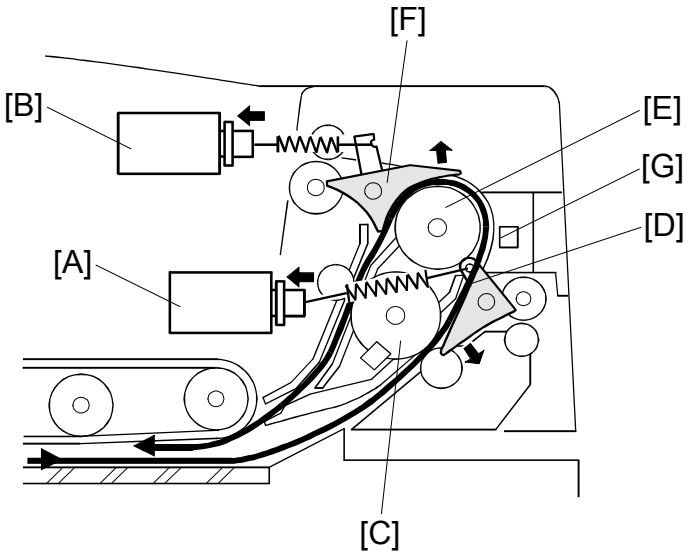


When the scanner reaches the return position, the copier's CPU sends the feed-out signal to the DF. When the DF receives the feed-out signal, the transport belt motor and feed-out motor [A] turn on. The original is then fed out to the exit tray or fed back to the exposure glass after reversing in the inverter section.

This DF has two exit trays. For single-sided original mode, the original is fed out to the right exit tray and for double-sided original mode, the original is fed out to the upper exit tray.

This causes the originals to be fed out in the correct order on the exit trays and allow the maximum one-to-one copy speed for each mode. The user can change the exit tray to the upper exit tray for single-sided mode (for example, if there is not enough space in the room for the right exit tray to be installed). However, one-to-one copy speed for this mode is reduced.

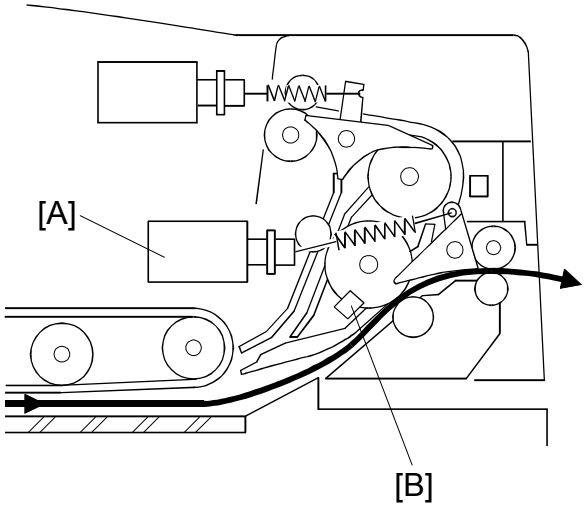
Original Inversion



When the DF receives the original invert signal from the copier, the transport belt motor, feed-out motor, exit gate solenoid [A], and inverter gate solenoid [B] turn on and the original is fed back to the exposure glass through the inverter roller [C], exit gate [D], inverter guide roller [E], inverter gate [F], and inverter roller.

The transport belt motor turns in reverse shortly after the leading edge of the original turns on the inverter sensor [G], and feeds the original to the left scale.

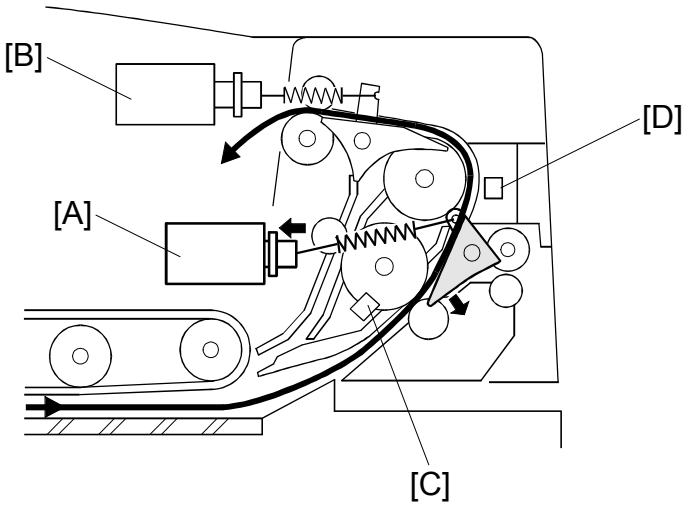
Original Exit (Single-Sided Original Mode)



The exit gate solenoid [A] remains off and the original is fed out to the right exit tray. The transport belt motor turns off after the exit sensor [B] turns off.

To stack the originals neatly on the exit tray, the feed-out motor speed is reduced 30 mm before the trailing edge of the original turns off the exit sensor.

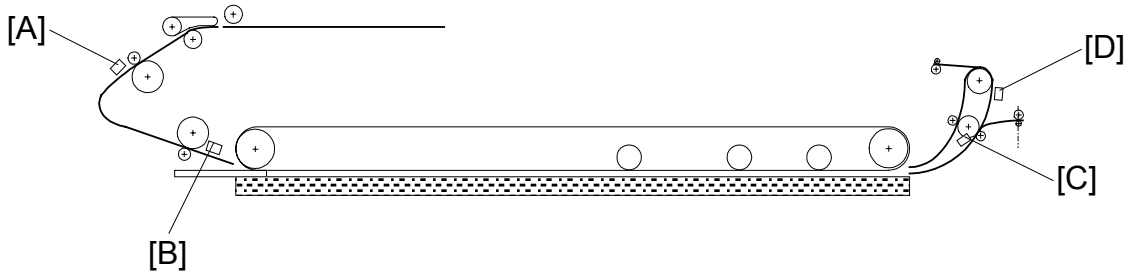
Original Exit (Double-Sided Original Mode)



The exit gate solenoid [A] turns on and the inverter gate solenoid [B] remains off, and the original is fed out to the upper tray. The transport belt motor turns off when the trailing edge of the original passes through the exit sensor [C].

To stack the originals neatly on the upper tray, the feed-out motor speed is reduced shortly after the trailing edge of the original turns off the inverter sensor [D].

2.1.9 JAM CONDITIONS



Feed-in

1. The entrance sensor [A] is still off 500 ms after the feed-in motor turned on.
2. The registration sensor [B] is still not off 300 ms after the feed-in motor speed increased.
3. The entrance sensor is still on when the feed-in and transport motors have fed the original 442 mm after the registration sensor turned on.

Feed-out

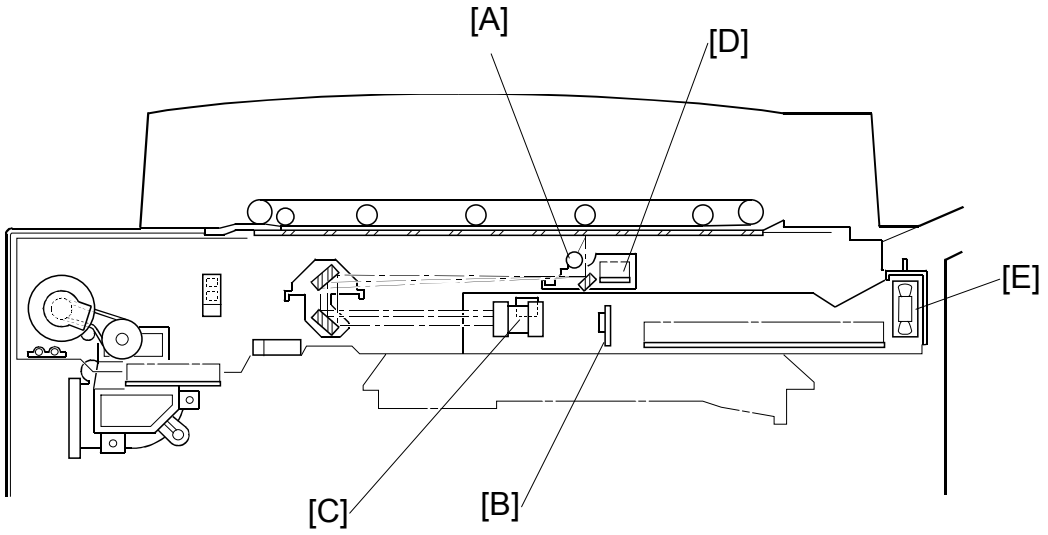
4. The registration sensor is still on when the feed-in and transport motors have fed the original 751 mm after the registration sensor turned on.
5. The exit sensor [C] is still off when the transport and feed-out motors have fed the original 129 mm after the feed-out motor turned on.
6. The exit sensor is still on when feed-out motor has fed the original X mm (X = original length x 1.3) after the exit sensor turned on.

Inversion

7. The exit sensor is still off when the transport and exit motors have fed the original 198 mm after the transport motor turned on to feed the original to the inverter section.
8. The exit sensor is still on when the feed-out motor has fed the original X mm (X = original length x 1.3) after the exit sensor turned on.
9. The inverter sensor [D] is still off when the transport and feed-out motors have fed the original 96 mm after the exit sensor turned on.
10. The inverter sensor is still off when the transport and feed-out motors have fed the original 96 mm to the exposure glass after the exit sensor turned off.

2.2 SCANNING

2.2.1 OVERVIEW



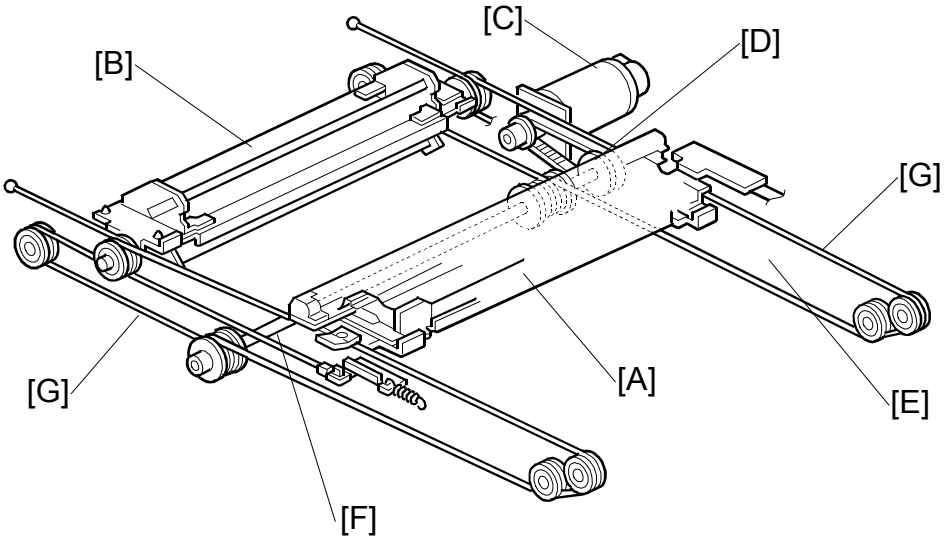
The original is illuminated by the exposure lamp (a xenon lamp in this model) [A]. The image is reflected onto a CCD (charge coupled device) [B] via the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd mirrors, and through the lens [C].

The 1st scanner consists of the exposure lamp, the 1st mirror and the lamp regulator [D].

The exposure lamp is energized by a dc supply (24 V) to avoid uneven light intensity while the 1st scanner moves in the sub scan direction (down the page). The entire exposure lamp surface is frosted to ensure even exposure in the main scan direction (across the page).

There is an optics cooling fan [E] on the right side of the optics cavity to draw cool air inside. The hot air exits through the vents in the upper cover. The fan operates whenever the operation switch is turned on.

2.2.2 SCANNER DRIVE



The scanner drive motor is a dc servo motor. The 1st and 2nd scanners [A, B] are driven by the scanner drive motor [C] through the timing belt [D], scanner drive pulley [E], scanner drive shaft [F], and two scanner wires [G].

The MCU board controls the scanner drive motor. In full size mode, the 1st scanner speed is 425 mm/s during scanning. The 2nd scanner speed is half that of the 1st scanner.

In reduction or enlargement mode, the scanning speed depends on the magnification ratio. The returning speed is always the same, whether in full size or magnification mode. The image length is changed in the sub scan direction by changing the scanner drive motor speed, and in the main scan direction it is changed by image processing on the BICU board.

Magnification in the sub-scan direction can be adjusted by changing the scanner drive motor speed using SP4008.

2.2.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION IN BOOK MODE

Original Size		Length Sensor		Width Sensor			SP4301 Display
A4/A3 Version	LT/DLT Version	2	1	3	4	5	
A3	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O	O	10011111
B4	10" x 14"	O	O	O	O	X	10011110
F4	8 1/2" x 14" (8" x 13")	O	O	O	X	X	10011100
A4-L	8 1/2" x 11"	X	O	O	X	X	10001100
B5-L	–	X	O	X	X	X	10001000
A5-L	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	X	X	X	X	X	10000000
A4-S	11" x 8 1/2"	X	X	O	O	O	10000111
B5-S	–	X	X	O	O	X	10000110
A5-S	8 1/2" x 5 1/2"	X	X	O	X	X	10000100

-L: Lengthwise, -S: Sideways, O: High (Paper Present), X: Low

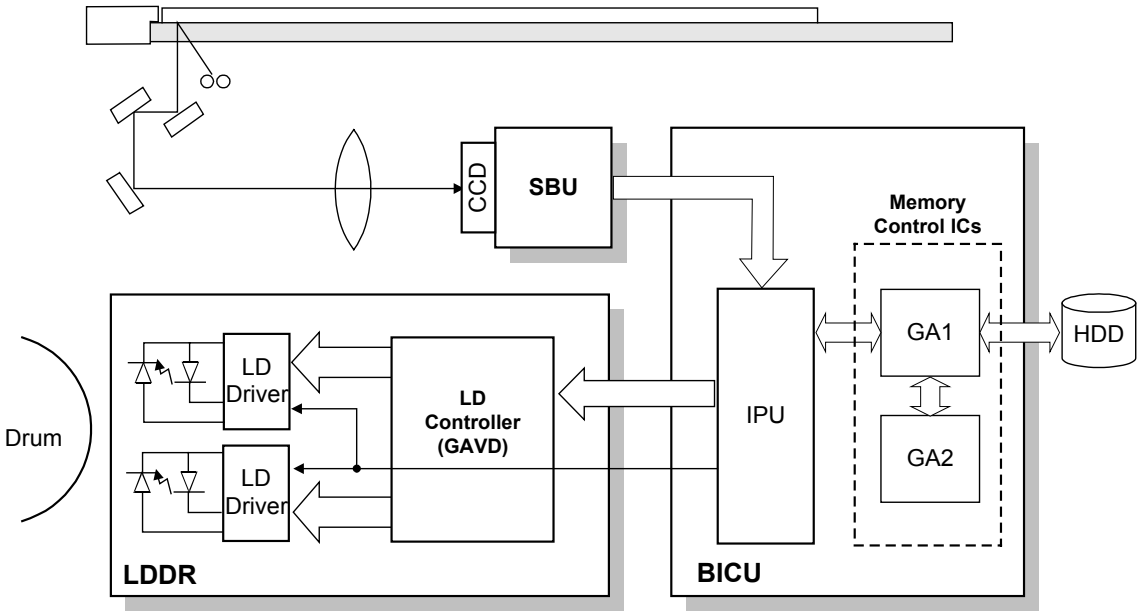
The original size data is taken by the main CPU when the DF position sensor is activated. This is when the DF is positioned about 15 cm above the exposure glass. At this time, only the sensor(s) located underneath the original receive the reflected light and switch on. The other sensor(s) are off. The main CPU can recognize the original size from the on/off signals from the five sensors.

If the copy is made with the platen open, the main CPU decides the original size from the sensor outputs when the Start key is pressed.

The above table shows the outputs of the sensors for each original size. This original size detection method eliminates the necessity for a pre-scan and increases the machine's productivity. However, if the by-pass tray is used, the machine assumes that the copy paper is lengthwise. For example, if A4 sideways paper is placed on the by-pass tray, the machine thinks it is A3 paper and scans the full A3 area, disregarding the original size sensors. However, for each page, the data signal to the laser diode is stopped to match the copy paper length detected by the registration sensor. This means that copy time for the first page may be slower (because of the longer time required for scanning), but it will be normal for the rest of the job.

2.3 IMAGE PROCESSING

2.3.1 OVERVIEW



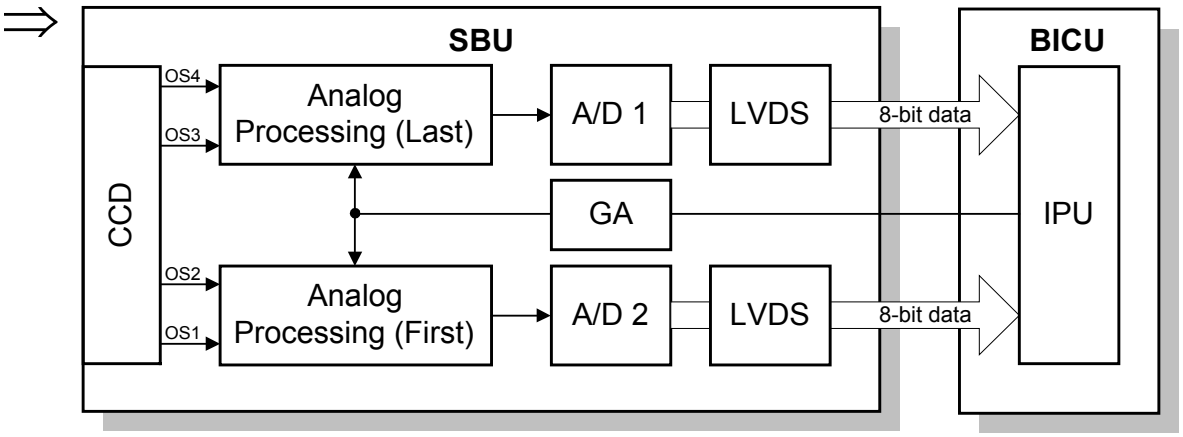
The CCD generates an analog video signal. The SBU (Sensor Board Unit) converts the analog signal to an 8-bit digital signal, then it sends the digital signal to the BICU (Base-engine, and Image Processing Control Unit) board.

The BICU board can be divided into two image processing blocks; the IPU (Image Processing Unit) and the memory control IC. These two ICs mainly do the following:

- **IPU:** Auto shading, filtering, magnification, γ correction, gradation processing, and video path control
- **Memory Controller:** Image compression, image rotation, interface with HDD controller, image repeat, and combine originals

Finally, the BICU board sends the video data to the LD drive board.

2.3.2 SBU



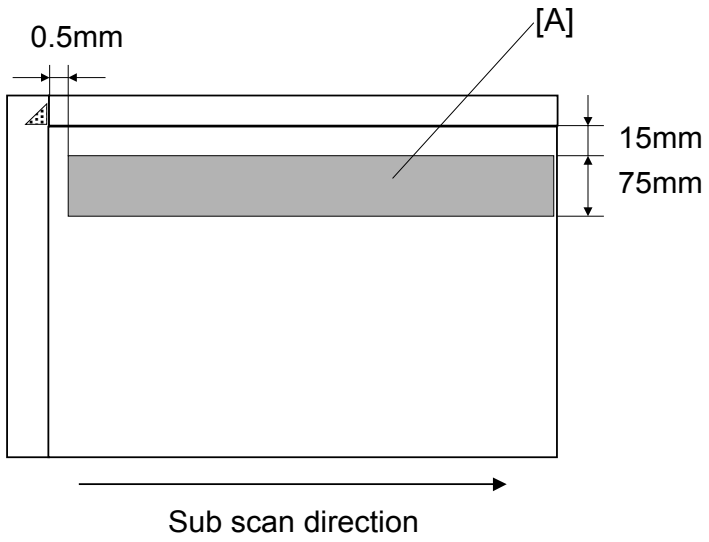
The CCD converts the light reflected from the original into an analog signal. The CCD line has 7,500 pixels and the resolution is 600 dpi (23.6 lines/mm).

The CCD has four output lines: OS1, OS2, OS3, and OS4. OS1 and OS2 are for the first half of the scan line (Non-operation side), and OS3 and OS4 are for the last half of the scan line (Operation side). There are two analog processing ICs; one handles the first half line (OS 1 and OS2) and the other handles the last half line (OS3 and OS4). The analog processing IC performs the following operations:

1) Combines the odd and even signals into one line signal.
2) Adjust the black reference level of each CCD output channel.
3) Amplifies the analog signal from the CCD.

After the above processing, the analog signals are converted to 8-bit signals by the A/D converter. This gives a value for each pixel on scale of 256 grades. Then, the two 8-bit signals are sent to the BICU board through the LVDS (Low Voltage Differential Signaling). The LVDS is a noise-resistant interface.

2.3.3 AUTO IMAGE DENSITY (ADS)



This mode prevents the background of an original from appearing on copies.

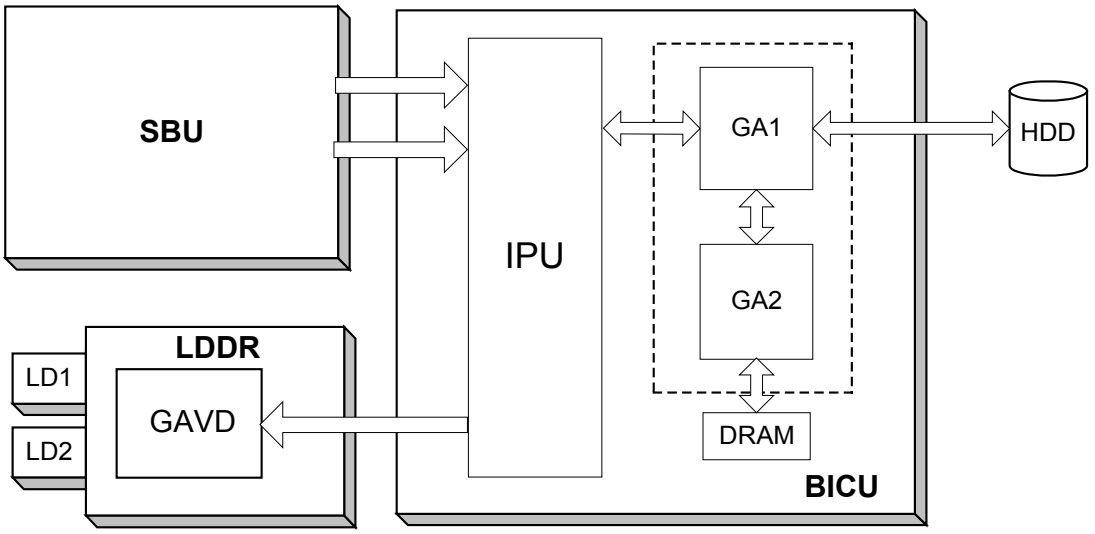
The copier scans the auto image density detection area [A]. This corresponds to a narrow strip at one end of the main scan line, as shown in the diagram. As the scanner scans down the page, the IPU on the BICU detects the peak white level for each scan line, within this narrow strip only. From this peak white level, the IPU determines the reference value for A/D conversion for the scan line. Then, the IPU sends the reference value to the A/D controller on the SBU.

When an original with a gray background is scanned, the density of the gray area is the peak white level density. Therefore, the original background will not appear on copies. Because peak level data is taken for each scan line, ADS corrects for any changes in background density down the page.

As with previous digital copiers, the user can select manual image density when selecting auto image density mode and the machine will use both settings when processing the original.

2.3.4 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)

Overview



The image data from the SBU goes to the IPU (Image Processing Unit) IC on the BICU board, which carries out the following processes on the image data.

1. Auto shading
2. Text/Photo separation
3. Background/Independent dot erase
4. Filtering (MTF and smoothing)
5. Magnification
6. γ correction
7. Grayscale processing
8. Error diffusion
9. Dithering
10. Video path control
11. Test pattern generation

2.3.5 IMAGE PROCESSING STEPS AND RELATED SP MODES

Text Mode

MTF filtering is used in text mode. The MTF filtering coefficient and strength can be adjusted individually for both main and sub scan. Low density originals are produced better when a stronger MTF filter is selected, but in this case, moiré tends to appear.

With UP Mode (Copy Features – General Features – Original Mode Quality Level), the user can select 'Soft', 'Normal', 'Sharp', and 'SP Mode Changed'. The settings of the SP modes indicated with an asterisk (*) are not used unless the user selects 'SP Mode Changed'.

	Image Processing Steps	Related SP Modes
Input Correction 1	Auto Shading	
Input Correction 2	Background Erase	• SP4903-065 * (Scanner Gamma Threshold Level) • SP4903-070 * (Background Erase Level)
	Independent Dot Erase	• SP4903-060 (Independent Dot Erase Level)
Filtering	MTF	• SP4903-010 to 011 * (Pre-Filter Coefficient) • SP4903-020 to 035 * (MTF Filter Strength)
Magnification	Main Scan Magnification	• SP2909-001 (Main Scan Magnification)
ID Control	γ Correction	• SP4903-84 * (Scanner gamma setting)
Gradation	Error Diffusion/ Line Width Correction	• SP4903-78 to 80 *, 4904-20 (Line Width Correction Type)

Photo Mode

Normally, the smoothing filter is used in photo mode but MTF filtering can also be selected with SP mode.

With UP Mode (Copy Features – General Features – Original Mode Quality Level), the user can select 'Screen Printed', 'Normal', 'Continuous Tone', and 'SP Mode Changed'. The settings of the SP modes indicated with an asterisk (*) are not used unless the user selects 'SP Mode Changed'.

When the user selects "Normal Paper" and "Continuous Tone", error diffusion is used for the gradation process. However, if the user selects "Screen Printed", dither processing is used.

	Image Processing Path	Related SP Modes
Input Correction 1	Auto Shading	
Input Correction 2	Background Erase	• SP4903-66 * (Scanner Gamma Thresh Level) • SP4903-071 * (Background Erase Level)
Filtering	Smoothing/MTF	• SP4903-012 * (Pre Filter Coefficient) • SP4903-009 * (Filter Type Selection) • SP4903-036 to 038 * (Smoothing/MTF Filter Coefficient Level in Photo Mode) • SP4904-006 (Smoothing Filter Level)
Magnification	Main Scan Magnification	• SP2909-001 (Main Scan Magnification)
ID Control	γ Correction	
Gradation	Error Diffusion/ Dither Matrix	• SP4904-002 * (Grayscale Process Selection: Dither or Error Diffusion)

Text/Photo Mode

MTF filtering is used for text/photo mode.

With UP Mode (Copy Features – General Features – Original Mode Quality Level), the user can select 'Photo Mode', 'Normal', 'Text Mode', and 'SP Mode Changed'. The settings of the SP modes indicated with an asterisk (*) are not used unless the user selects 'SP Mode Changed'.

	Image Processing Path	Related SP Modes
Input Correction 1	Auto Shading	
Input Correction 2	Background Erase	• SP4930-67 * (Scanner Gamma Thresh Level) • SP4903-072 * (Background Erase Level) • SP4906 * (On/Off in Text/Photo Mode)
	Independent Dot Erase	• SP4903-062 (Independent Dot Erase Level)
Filtering	MTF	• SP4903-013 to 014 * (Pre Filter Coefficient) • SP4903-039 to 054 * (Filter Level and Strength) • SP4904-007 (Texture Erase Filter Level)
Magnification	Main Scan Magnification	• SP2909-001 (Main Scan Magnification)
ID Control	γ Correction	• SP4903-85 * (Scanner gamma setting)
Gradation	Error Diffusion/ Line Width Correction	• SP4904-003, 005 * (Error Diffusion) • SP4903-81 to 83 *, SP4904-22 (Line Width Correction Type)

Pale Mode

The image processing for pale mode is basically the same as in text mode. However, the contrast of the original is low. So, to preserve details, a stronger MTF filter is used. Also, the independent dot erase level is set at a lower level, so that only the faintest of dots are deleted; this ensures that dotted lines and periods are not deleted.

With UP Mode (Copy Features – General Features – Original Mode Quality Level), the user can select 'Soft', 'Normal', 'Sharp', and 'SP Mode Changed'. The settings of the SP modes indicated with an asterisk (*) are not used unless the user selects 'SP Mode Changed'.

	Image Processing Path	Related SP Modes
Input Correction 1	Auto Shading	
Input Correction 2	Background Erase	• SP4903-068 * (Scanner Gamma Thresh Level) • SP4903-73 * (Background Erase Level)
	Independent Dot Erase	• SP4903-063 (Independent Dot Erase Level)
Filtering	MTF	• SP4903-015 * (Pre Filter) • SP4903-055 to 056 * (MTF Filter Coefficient – Pale Originals)
Magnification	Main Scan Magnification	• SP2909-001 (Main Scan Magnification)
ID Control	γ Correction	
Gradation	Grayscale Processing/ Line Width Correction	• SP4904-23 (Line Width Correction Type)

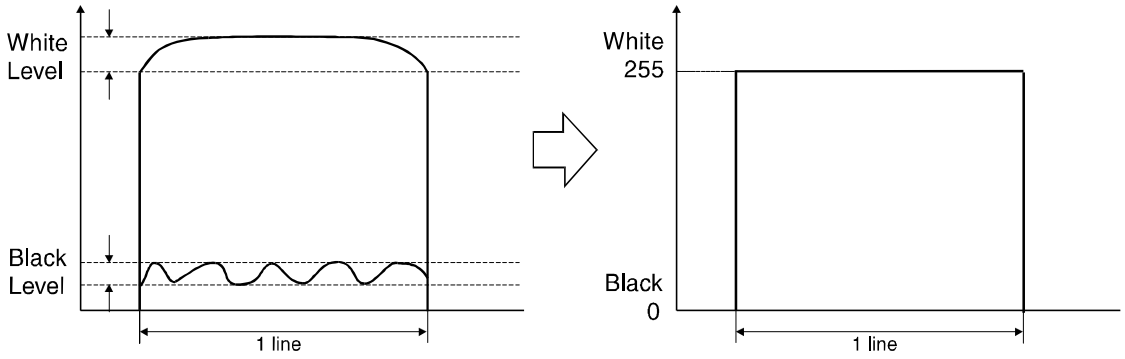
Generation Copy Mode

The image processing for generation mode is basically the same as in text mode, except that in order to prevent lines in the main scan direction from being reproduced too thickly, line width correction is applied for the final gradation treatment. Also, to reduce unwanted black dots, a weaker MTF filter is used; this ensures that isolated dots do not get bigger, and are spread out. These dots will then be deleted by the independent dot erase feature. This feature, however, is kept at a low setting to ensure that important details such as dotted lines and periods are not deleted.

With UP Mode (Copy Features – General Features – Original Mode Quality Level), the user can select 'Soft', 'Normal', 'Sharp', and 'SP Mode Changed'. The settings of the SP modes indicated with an asterisk (*) are not used unless the user selects 'SP Mode Changed'.

	Image Processing Path	Related SP Modes
Input Correction 1	Auto Shading	
Input Correction 2	Background Erase	• SP4903-069 * (Scanner Gamma Thresh Level) • SP4903-074 * (Background Erase Level)
	Independent Dot Erase	• SP4903-064 (Independent Dot Erase Level)
Filtering	MTF	• SP4903-016 * (Pre Filter Coefficient) • SP4903-057 to 058 * (MTF Filter Coefficient – Generation Copy)
Magnification	Main Scan Magnification	• SP2909-001 (Main Scan Magnification)
ID Control	γ Correction	
Gradation	Grayscale Processing/ Line Width Correction	• SP4903-75 to 77*, SP4904-24 (Line Width Correction Type)

2.3.6 AUTO SHADING



Two things happen during auto shading.

Black Level Correction

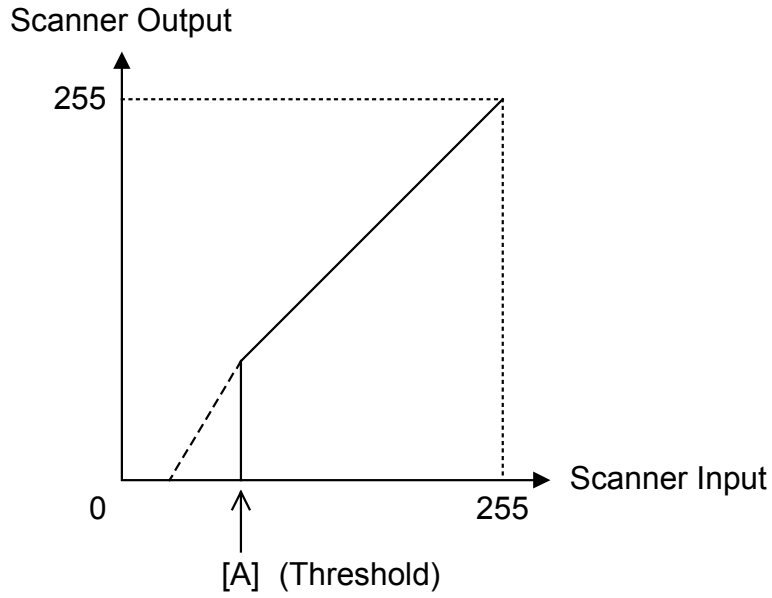
The black level is zeroed for each scan line of data by reading the dummy elements at the end of the CCD signal for each scan line, which should be black.

White Level Correction

The data is corrected for variations in white level across the main scan. To do this, a white reference plate is scanned before each original (book mode) or every 30 s (ADF mode). This corrects for the following effects on each pixel:

- Loss of brightness at the ends of the exposure lamp and the edges of the lens
- Variations in sensitivity among the CCD elements
- Distortions in the light path

2.3.7 BACKGROUND ERASE



Background Erase

The background erase process is used only when setting of SP 4-903-70 to 75 is changed from the default setting (the default is 'disabled').

Usually, dirty background is erased using Auto Image Density (ADS). Background Erase should be used when ADS cannot fully erase the dirty background.

There are two Background Erase modes. The one that is being used depends on the SP mode setting. Setting 2 has a stronger effect than setting 1, but setting 2 may cause sudden changes in the data around the threshold level.

Setting 1: MTF correction is not applied to any low image density data that remains after auto shading if the data is lower than a threshold level [A]. The overall effect is to reduce the background in a similar way to that shown by the dotted line in the diagram. This process can be applied for each image mode (except for photo mode) by changing the setting of SP4-903-70, 72, 73 or 74.

Setting 2: Any low image density data that remains after auto shading will be treated as "0" if the data is lower than a threshold level [A]. The background is cut off as shown by the solid vertical line in the diagram at [A]. This process can be applied for each image mode by changing the setting of SP4-903-70, 71, 72, 73 or 74.

The thresholds can be changed with SP4-903-65 to 69.

2.3.8 INDEPENDENT DOT ERASE

By default, this process is used in all image processing modes except for photo mode. This function allows independent black dots appearing on copies to be erased.

As shown in the drawing below, the software compares each pixel with the pixels in the surrounding 5 x 5 area (except for the immediately adjacent pixels).

If all of the surrounding pixels are white, and the difference between the value of the object pixels and the average of the surrounding pixel is larger than the threshold level, the object pixel is either changed to 0 (white) or reduced in density. The combination of the threshold value and the pixel data reduction ratio depends on the setting of SP4-903-60, 62, 63 or 64. If a larger number is selected, the effect of independent dot erase will be stronger. If 0 is selected, independent dot erase is disabled.

20	40	30	20	40
30	0	70	30	30
30	10	50	20	30
60	20	0	30	0
20	30	40	30	30



Object pixel



Surrounding pixels to be used for calculation



Ignored pixels

2.3.9 FILTERING, MAIN SCAN MAGNIFICATION/REDUCTION

Overview

After auto shading, the image data is processed by both filtering and main scan magnification. However, to reduce the occurrence of moiré in the image, the processing order depends on the reproduction ratio, as follows.

1. 64% reduction or less
   Main Scan Reduction → Filtering
2. 65% reduction or higher
   Filtering → Main Scan Magnification

Filtering

By default, an individual MTF filter is used for each image processing mode, to enhance the desired image qualities. (For Photo mode, smoothing filter is selected as the default setting.)

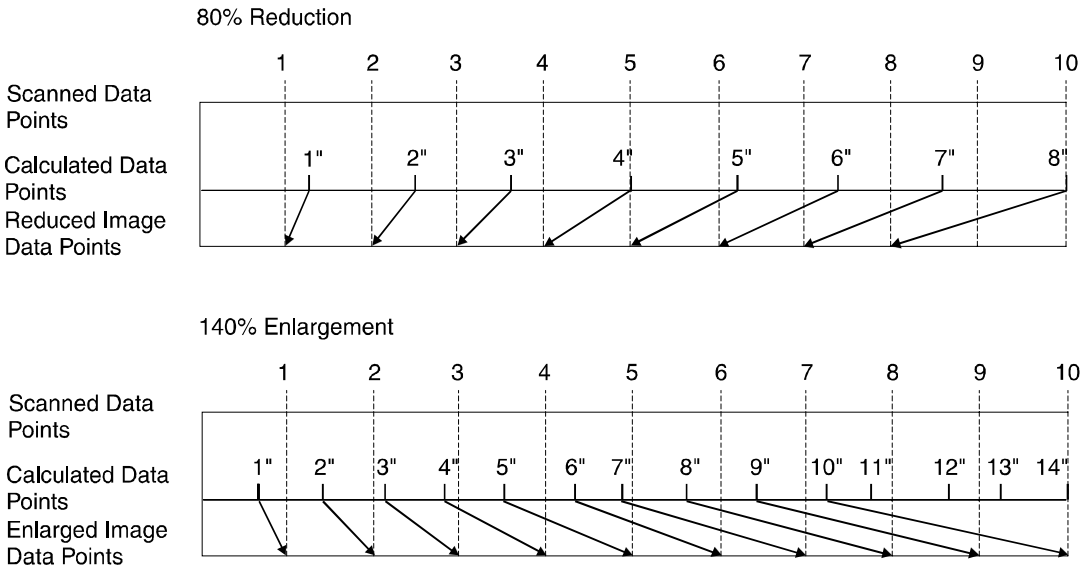
A stronger MTF filter emphasizes sharpness and leads to better reproduction of low image density areas, but may leads to the occurrence of moiré in the image.

The MTF filter strength can be changed by changing the coefficient (MTF Filter Level) and strength of the MTF filter in combination using SP mode. Refer to the combination chart in 'Image Quality Setting by UP Mode' in section 4. The filter coefficient and strength can be adjusted in the main scan and sub scan directions individually. This allows the copy quality to be adjusted more precisely, to match the originals normally scanned by a particular customer.

Example: In a case when vertical lines (sub scan) are reproduced clearly, but horizontal lines (main scan) are not reproduced clearly, the technician can adjust the main scan filter only.

For photo mode, the smoothing filter is the default filter, but the MTF filter may be selected by SP mode 4-903-9. This is effective when putting more weight on improving the resolution when copying from "continuous tone" originals.

Main Scan Magnification/Reduction



However, reduction and enlargement in the main scan direction are handled by the IPU chip on the BICU board.

Scanning and laser writing are done at a fixed pitch (the CCD elements cannot be squeezed or expanded). So, to reduce or enlarge an image, imaginary points are calculated that would correspond to a physical enlargement or reduction of the image. The correct image density is then calculated for each of the imaginary points based on the image data of the nearest four true points. The calculated image data then becomes the new (reduced or enlarged) image data.

Main scan magnification can be disabled with SP4-903-5 to test the IPU chip.

Sub Scan Magnification

When the selected magnification is 50% or larger, the image magnification in the sub scan direction is changed by changing the scanner speed. (As the magnification ratio increases, the scanner speed is reduced.)

However, when a magnification ratio smaller than 50% is selected, the required scanner speed exceeds the limit of the scanner motor. So, the scanner speed is reduced to half of the required speed for that reduction ratio. As a result, there are twice as many scan lines as needed. So alternate lines are removed.

Foe example, if a 49% magnification ratio is selected, the scanner speed is the same as the speed of 98% magnification, but the number of sub scan lines used for the image is half of that for 98% magnification.

2.3.10 GAMMA (γ) CORRECTION

Gamma correction ensures accurate generation of the various shades in the gray scale from black to white, accounting for the characteristics of the scanner and printer.

Scanner gamma correction corrects the data output to the IPU to account for the characteristics of the scanner (e.g., CCD response, scanner optics).

Printer gamma correction corrects the data output from the IPU to the laser diode to account for the characteristics of the printer (e.g., the characteristics of the drum, laser diode, and lenses).

The scanner and printer gamma settings can be changed for the 'Service Mode' original type of text and text/photo modes, using SP4-903-84 and 85.

2.3.11 GRADATION PROCESSING

Various processes are available to try to reproduce various types of original as faithfully as possible.

The following processes are used in combination depending on the image mode settings.

1) Three-graduation processing
2) Four-graduation processing
3) Error diffusion
4) Dithering

These three processes are used as follows:

Text Mode:	Error diffusion + line width correction and four-graduation processing
Text/Photo Mode:	Error diffusion + line width correction and four-graduation processing
Photo Mode:	Error diffusion or dithering, and three-graduation processing
Generation Copy Mode:	Error diffusion + line width correction, and three-graduation processing
Pale Mode:	Error diffusion and four-graduation processing

Three-graduation Processing

This mode is used in Photo mode.

The image density data after gamma correction is changed into three-graduation data (full dot, half dot, or blank) using two thresholds. With this processing, halftone images are reproduced smoother than with four-graduation processing because of stable dot image reproduction due to only one intermediate density level.

Four-graduation Processing

This process is used in Text mode and Text/Photo mode.

The image density data after gamma correction is changed into 2-bit data using 3 thresholds. The four graduations are reproduced by laser power control. This process is suitable for reproducing fine originals which do not include halftone areas.

Error Diffusion and Dithering

Error diffusion reduces the difference in contrast between light and dark areas of a halftone image. Each pixel is corrected using the difference between it and the surrounding pixels. The corrected pixels are then corrected using an error diffusion matrix.

With dithering, each pixel is compared with a pixel in a dither matrix. Several matrixes are available, to increase or decrease the detail on the copy.

Comparing with dithering, error diffusion gives a better resolution, and is more suitable for “continuous toned” originals. On the other hand, dithering is more suitable for “screen printed” originals.

In Photo mode, when the user selects “Normal Paper” or “Continuous Tone”, error diffusion is used. However, if the user selects “Screen Printed”, dither processing is used. If the user selects “SP Mode Changed”, then error diffusion or one of three types dither matrix can be selected with SP4-904-002. There are three types of dither matrix, 8" x 8", 6" x 6", and 4" x 4". A larger dither matrix causes halftone areas to become coarser.

2.3.12 LINE WIDTH CORRECTION

This function is effective for Text, Text/Photo and Generation modes.

The software compares each pixel with adjacent pixels. If the differences between the object pixel and adjacent pixels are more than a threshold, the software judges that the pixel is on a line edge, and line width correction is applied.

The line width correction setting can be changed separately for Text, Text/Photo and Generation modes. The widths of vertical and horizontal lines can be corrected separately.

- Thinner 1: If the pixel is on the edge of a line, its density is multiplied by 0.75
- Thinner 2: If the pixel is on the edge of a line its density is multiplied by 0.5
- Thicker: If the pixel is on the edge of a line, 48 is added to its density

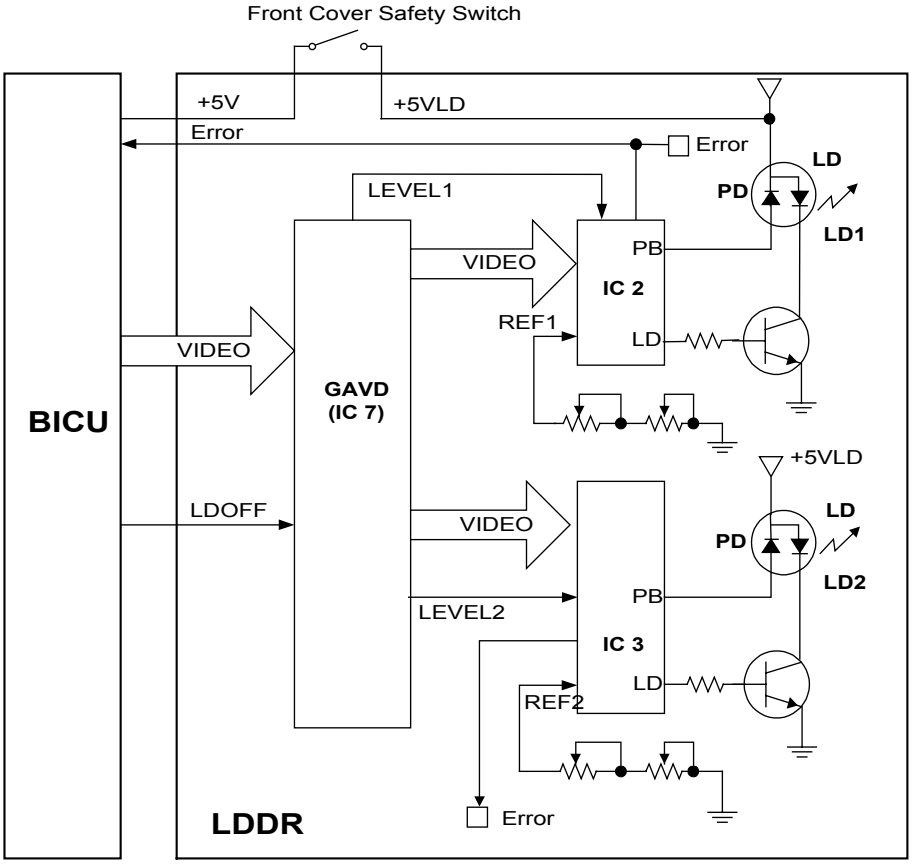
The threshold for detecting edges of lines can also be changed separately for vertical lines and horizontal lines.

Use SP4-903-75 to 83 to adjust the line width correction settings.

Line width can also be corrected by adjusting the laser output (SP4904-20 to 24).

2.4 LASER EXPOSURE

2.4.1 AUTO POWER CONTROL

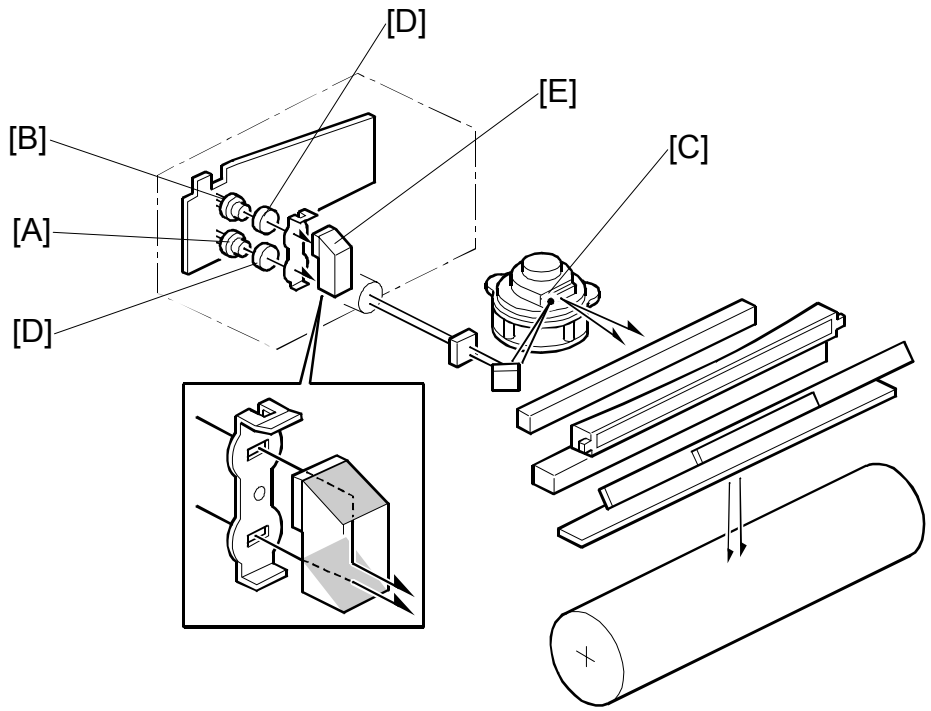


IC2 and IC3 on the LDDR drive the laser diodes. Even if a constant electric current is applied to the laser diode, the intensity of the output light changes with the temperature. The intensity of the output decreases as the temperature increases.

In order to keep the output level constant, IC2 and IC3 monitor the current passing through the photodiode (PD). Then they increase or decrease the current to the laser diode as necessary, comparing it with the reference levels (REF1 and REF2). This auto power control is done just after the machine is turned on and during printing while the laser diode is active.

The reference levels are adjusted on the production line. Do not touch the variable resistors on the LDDR in the field.

2.4.2 DUAL BEAM WRITING



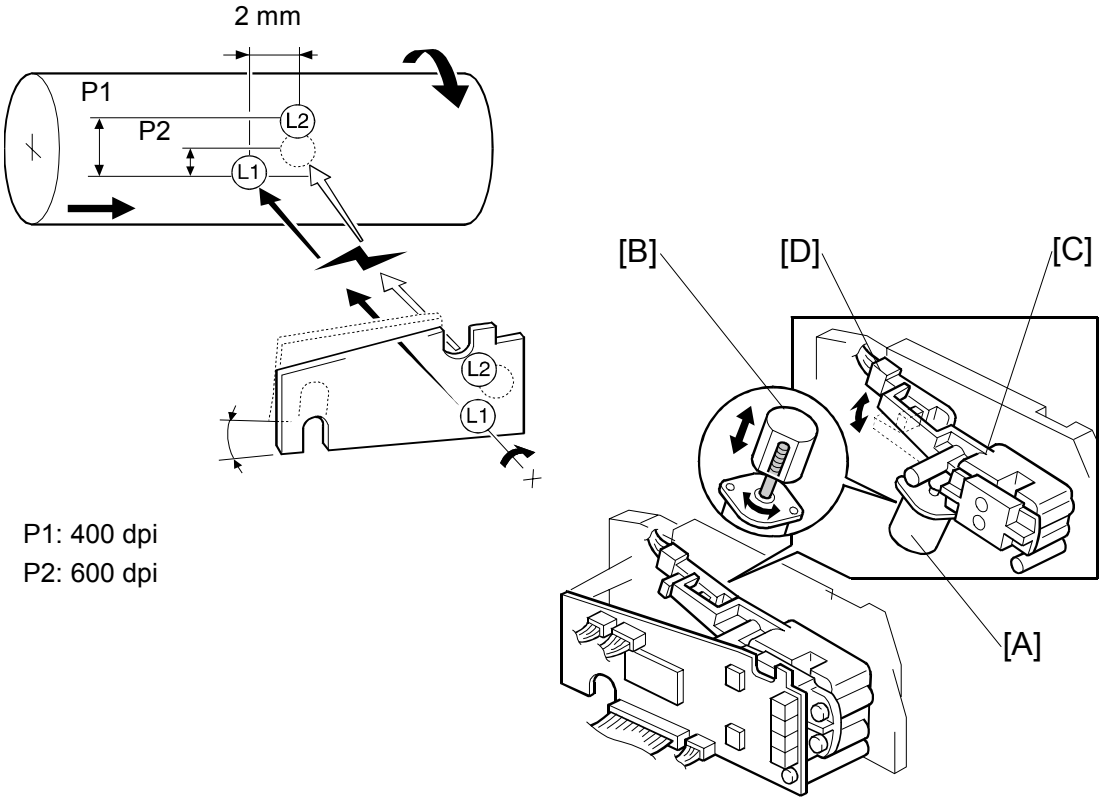
This LD unit has two laser diodes; LD1 [A] and LD2 [B] for writing the image. This means that each face of the polygon mirror writes two main scan lines, and twelve main scans are produced when the polygon mirror rotates once. The reasons for this mechanism are as follows.

1) To reduce the polygon motor rotation speed
2) To reduce the noise generated by the polygon motor
3) To reduce the frequency of the image data clock

Two laser beams are transferred to the polygon mirror [C] through collimating lens [D] and prism [E]. The two laser beams arrive on the drum surface about 2 mm away from each other in the main scan direction and about 0.04 mm (at 600 dpi) in the sub scan direction (see the next page).

The reason for the two-mm difference in the main scan direction is so that the machine can detect a laser synchronization signal for each beam.

2.4.3 LASER BEAM PITCH CHANGE MECHANISM
(FOR A292/A293 ONLY)



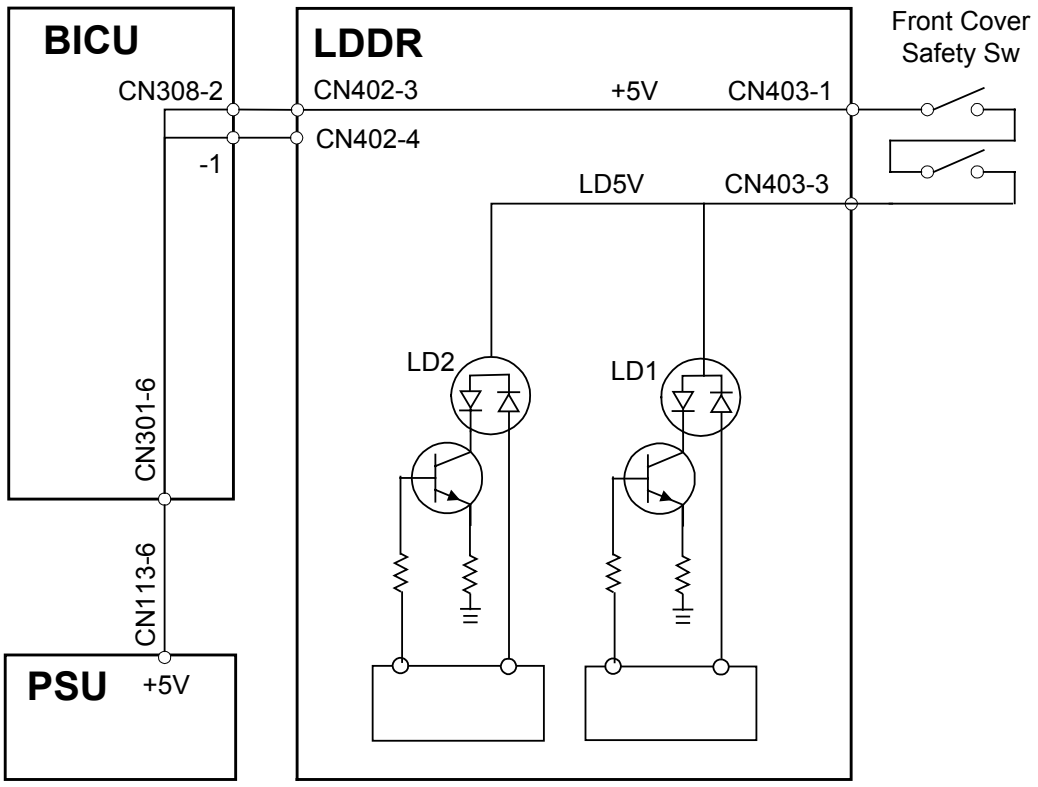
P1: 400 dpi
P2: 600 dpi

A printer option is available for this machine and the resolution of the printer is 400 dpi or 600 dpi. The machine changes the resolution between 400 and 600 dpi by rotating the LD unit.

When the LD positioning motor [A] turns, the metal block [B] (which contacts the LD unit housing [C]) moves up and down. This changes the position of the L2 laser beam (L1 does not move).

Both LD unit positions are at fixed distances from the LD home position sensor [D] (measured by motor pulses). Usually, the LD unit moves directly to the proper position. However, when the number of times that the resolution has changed reaches the value of SP2-109-5, the LD unit moves to the home position (the home position sensor activates), then it moves to the proper position. This recalibrates the LD unit positioning mechanism.

2.4.4 LD SAFETY SWITCHES



To ensure technician and user safety and to prevent the laser beam from inadvertently switching on during servicing, there are two safety switches located at the front cover. These two switches are installed in series on the LD5 V line coming from the power supply unit (PSU) through the BICU board.

When the front cover or the upper right cover is opened, the power supply to the laser diode is interrupted.

2.5 DRUM UNIT

2.5.1 PROCESS CONTROL

Overview

The drum potential will gradually change because of the following factors.

⟹ • Dirty charge corona casing and grid plate

• Changes in drum sensitivity

To maintain good copy quality, the machine does the following just after the main switch has been turned on (if the fusing temperature is less than 100 °C and SP3-901 is on).

1) Potential Sensor Calibration

2) V_{SG} Adjustment

3) V_G(Grid Voltage) Adjustment

4) LD Power Adjustment

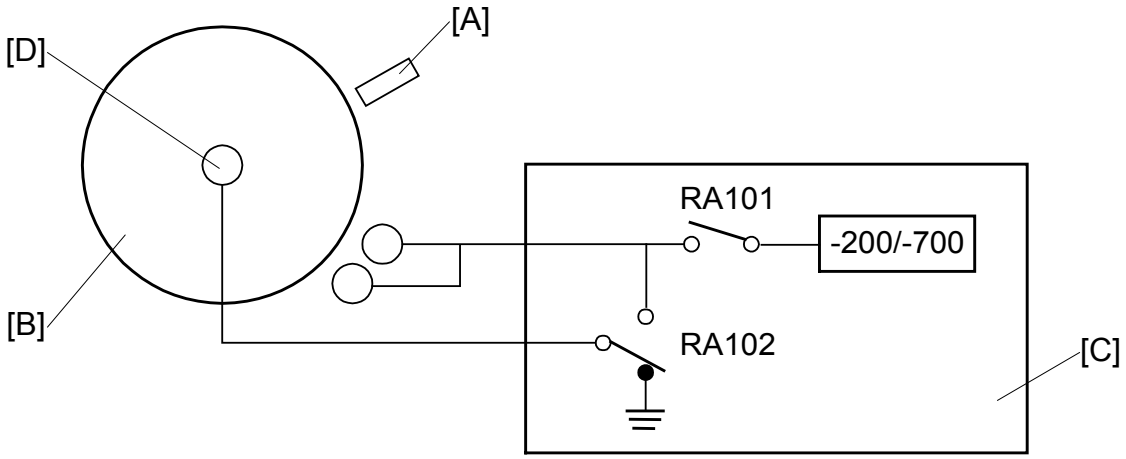
5) V_{REF} Update

6) Density Adjustment

This process is known as 'Process Control Initial Setting'. The rest of this section will describe these steps in more detail.

Processes 1, 3, and 4 in the above list compensate for changes in drum potential. Processes 2 and 5 are for toner density control; see the "Development and Toner Supply" section for more details.

Drum potential sensor calibration



The drum potential sensor [A] detects the electric potential of the drum surface [B].

Since the output of the sensor is affected by environmental conditions, such as temperature and humidity, the sensor needs recalibration at times. This is done during process control initial setting.

The development power pack [C] has two relay contacts. Usually RA102 grounds the drum. However, to calibrate the sensor, the BICU switches RA102 and RA101 over, which applies the power pack output voltage to the drum shaft [D].

The machine automatically calibrates the drum potential sensor by measuring the output of the sensor when –200V and –700V are applied to the drum. From these two readings, the machine can determine the actual drum potential from the potential sensor output that is measured during operation.

During calibration, if the rate of change in drum potential sensor response to applied voltage is out of the target range, SC310 or 311 is logged and auto process control turns off. The V_G and LD power adjustments are skipped; V_G is set to the value stored in SP2-001-01, and LD power is set to the values stored in SP2-103.

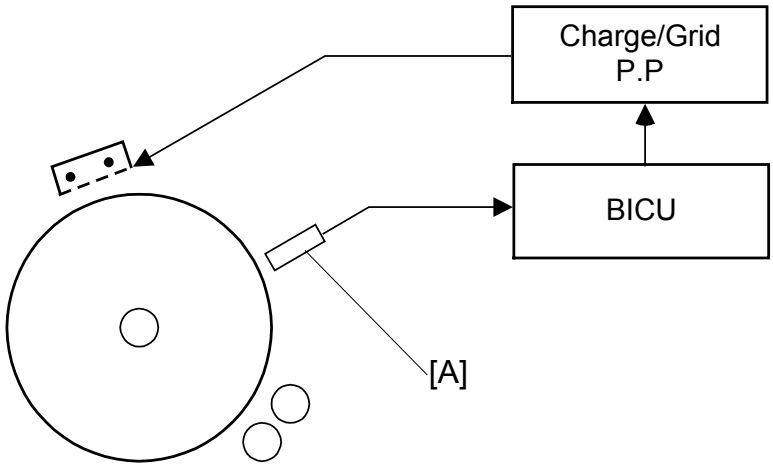
V_{SG} adjustment

This calibrates the ID sensor output for a bare drum to 4.0 $\pm$ 0.2V. It does this by changing the intensity of the light shining on the drum from the sensor. This is done automatically during process control initial setting, and it can also be done manually with SP3-001-002.

If the ID sensor output cannot be adjusted to within the standard, SC353 or 354 is logged and toner density control is done using the TD sensor only.

For details of how the machine determines an abnormal sensor detection, see section 7 (Troubleshooting).

VG Adjustment



The potential on unexposed areas of the drum (VD) gradually changes during drum life. To keep VD constant, the grid voltage (VG) is adjusted during process control initial setting.

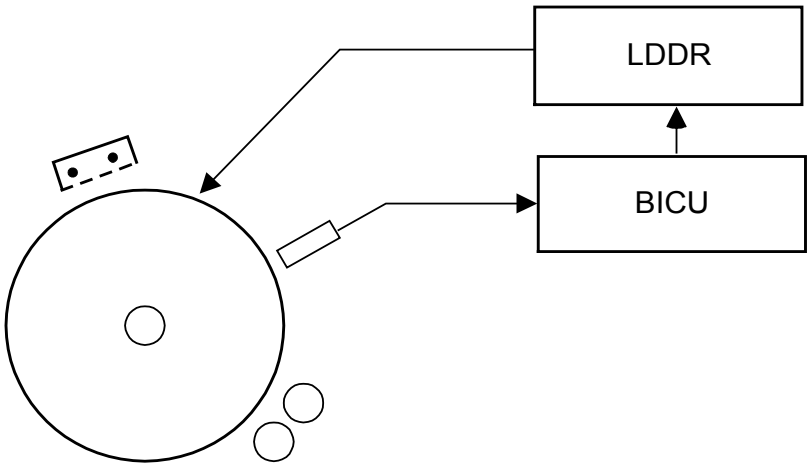
The BICU checks VD using the drum potential sensor [A]. If it is not within the target range (-900V ± 10V), the BICU adjusts VG (Grid Voltage) through the Charge/Grid power pack to get the correct target voltage.

The most recently detected values can be displayed with SP3-902-2 (VD) and 3-902-4 (VG).

If the CPU cannot get VD within the target range by changing VG, VG is set to the value in SP2001-001 and SC312 is logged.

For details of how the machine determines an abnormal sensor detection, see section 7 (Troubleshooting).

LD power adjustment



This adjustment uses the drum potential sensor to keep the ID sensor pattern at the same density, so that V_{REF} will be updated correctly (see the next page).

The V_H pattern is developed using the current LD power. The drum potential sensor detects the potential on this pattern. The LD power is adjusted until V_H becomes –300V ±20V.

This is done only during process control initial setting.

The latest V_H can be displayed using SP3-902-3. The corrected LD power can be displayed using SP3-902-5 (the default is stored in SP2-103-1-4). See “Laser exposure” for more details about laser power.

If V_H cannot be adjusted to within the standard within 25 attempts, LD power is set to the latest value (the one used for the 25th attempt) and SC314 is logged.

For details of how the machine determines an abnormal sensor detection, see section 7 (Troubleshooting).

Toner Density Adjustment

This adjustment uses the ID sensor to maintain the toner density in the development unit to around the target range as follows.

Vsp/Vsg ≥ Target range: Supply Toner
Vsp/Vsg ≤ Target range: Consume Toner

VREF Update

The TD sensor reference voltage (VREF) is updated to stabilize the concentration of toner in the development unit as follows;

New VREF = Current VREF + ΔVREF

ΔVREF is determined using the following Vsp/Vsg and VREF– VT table

	Vsp/Vsg (B)				
VREF– VT (A)		B < 0.055	0.055 < B =< 0.07	. . . . .	0.15 < B
	A =< –0.2	0.25	0.22	:	–0.03
	–0.2< A =<–0.1	0.25	0.22	:	–0.05
	: :	: :	: :	: :	: :
	0.2 < A	0	0.05	:	–0.25

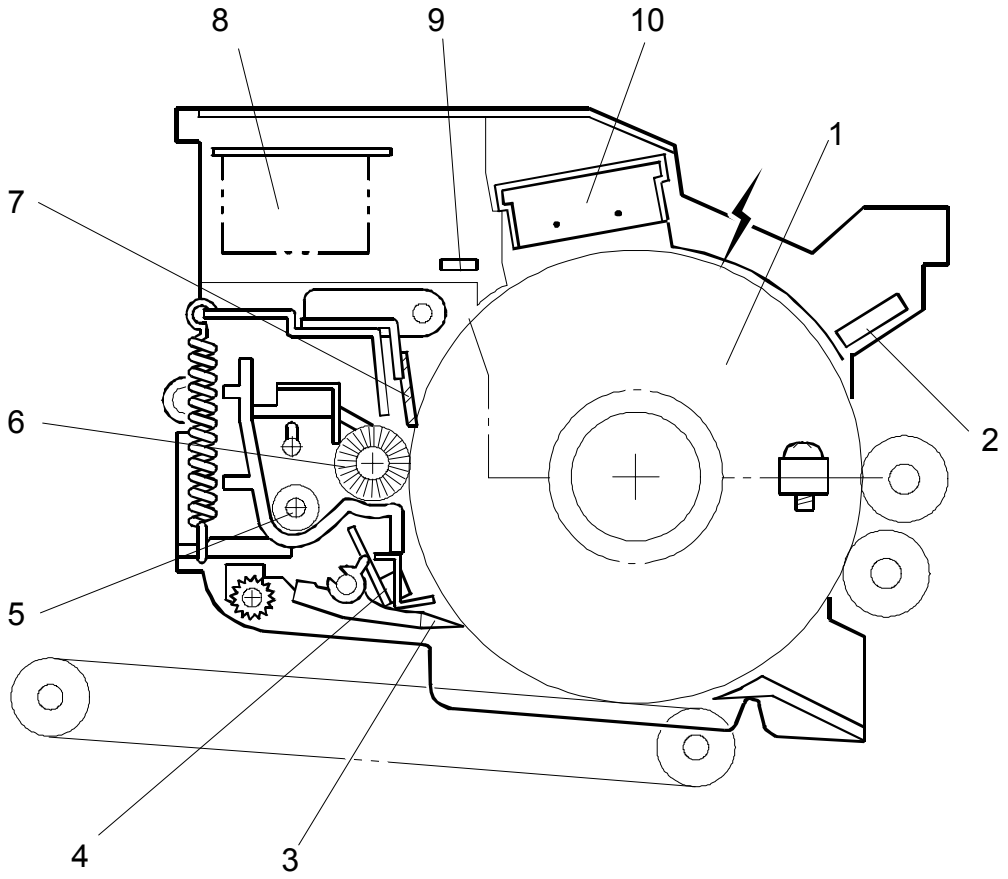
VT : TD Sensor Output

When SC350, 351 or 352 (ID Sensor Abnormal) is generated, VREF is not updated. The machine uses the current value.

VREF is updated during process control initial setting. It is also updated if both of the following conditions exist:

- 10 or more copies have been made since the last VREF update
- The copy job is finished

2.5.2 DRUM UNIT COMPONENTS

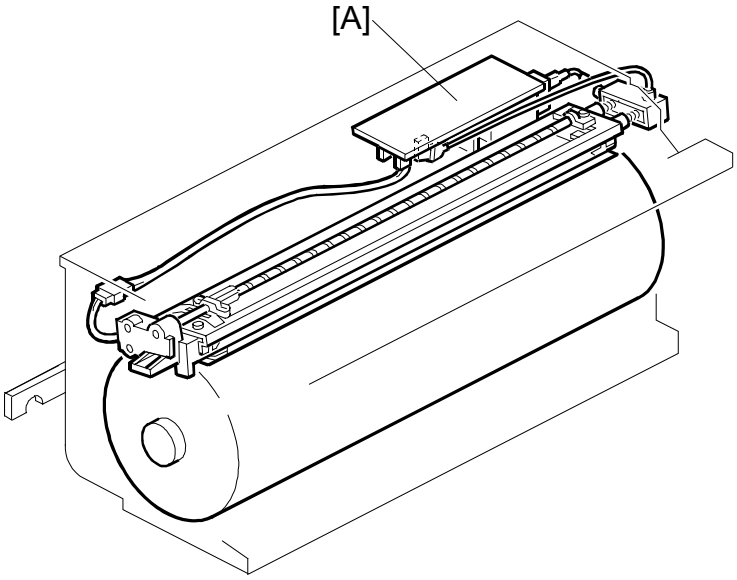


The drum unit consists of the components shown in the above illustration. An organic photoconductor drum (diameter: 100 mm) is used for this model.

1. OPC Drum
2. Drum Potential Sensor
3. Pick-off Pawl
4. Image Density Sensor
5. Toner Collection Coil
6. Cleaning Brush
7. Cleaning Blade
8. Charge Power Pack
9. Quenching Lamp
10. Charge Corona Unit

2.5.3 DRUM CHARGE

Overview

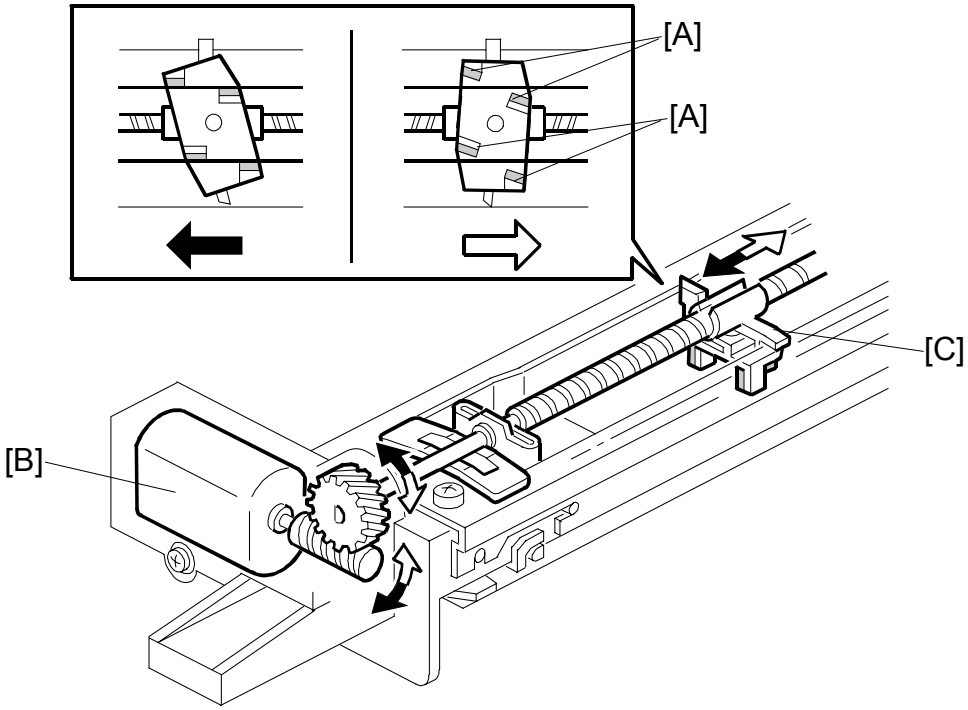


This copier uses a double corona wire scorotron system to charge the drum. Two corona wires are needed to give a sufficient negative charge to the drum surface. The stainless steel grid plate makes the corona charge uniform and controls the amount of negative charge on the drum surface by applying a negative grid bias voltage.

The charge power pack [A] gives a constant corona current to the corona wires (-1300 μA).

The bias voltage to the grid plate is automatically controlled to maintain the correct image density in response to changes in drum potential caused by dirt on the grid plate and charge corona casing. This is described in the Process Control section in more detail.

Charge Corona Wire Cleaning Mechanism



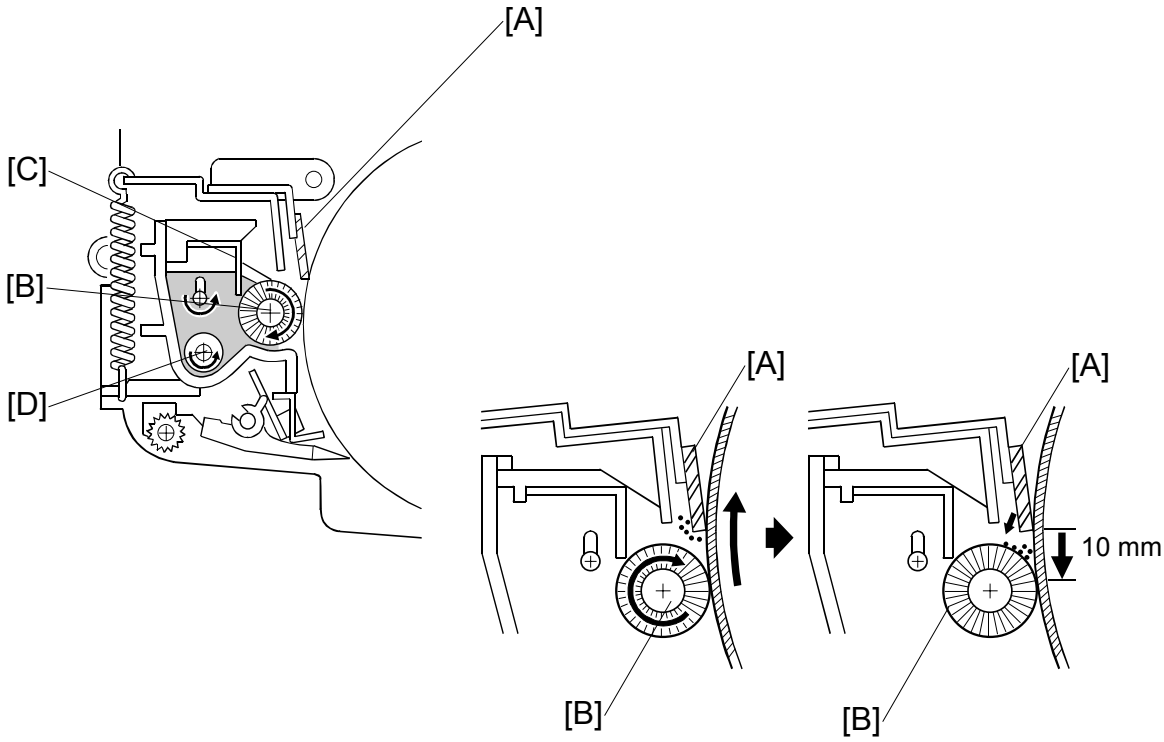
Air flowing around the charge corona wire may deposit toner particles on the corona wires. These particles may interfere with charging and cause low density bands on copies.

The wire cleaner pads [A] automatically clean the wires to prevent such a problem.

The wire cleaner is driven by a dc motor [B]. Normally the wire cleaner [C] is located at the front end (this is the home position). Just after the main switch is turned on, the wire cleaner motor turns on to bring the wire cleaner to the rear and then back to the home position. When the wire cleaner moves from the rear to the home position (black arrow in the illustration), the wire cleaner pads clean the wires. This is only done when 5000 or more copies have been made since the wires were cleaned last.

2.5.4 DRUM CLEANING AND TONER RECYCLING

Overview



This copier uses a counter blade system to clean the drum. In a counter blade system, the drum cleaning blade [A] is angled against drum rotation. The counter blade system has the following advantages:

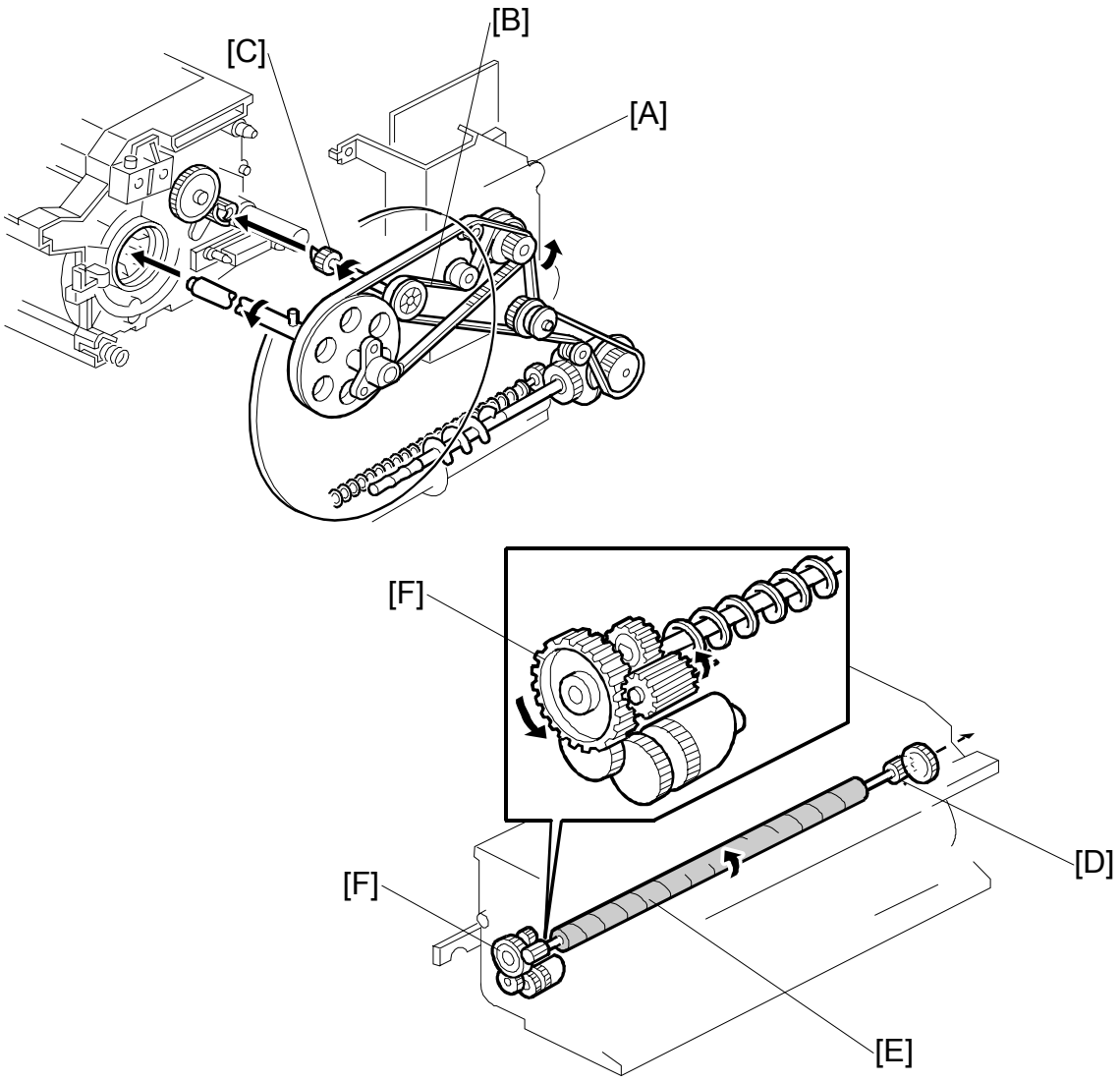
- Less wearing of the cleaning blade edge
- High cleaning efficiency

Due to the high efficiency of this cleaning system, the pre-cleaning corona and cleaning bias are not used for this copier.

The cleaning brush [B] supports the cleaning blade. The brush removes toner from the drum surface and any remaining toner is scraped off by the cleaning blade. Toner on the cleaning brush is scraped off by the mylar [C] and falls onto the toner collection coil [D]. The coil transports the toner to the toner collector bottle.

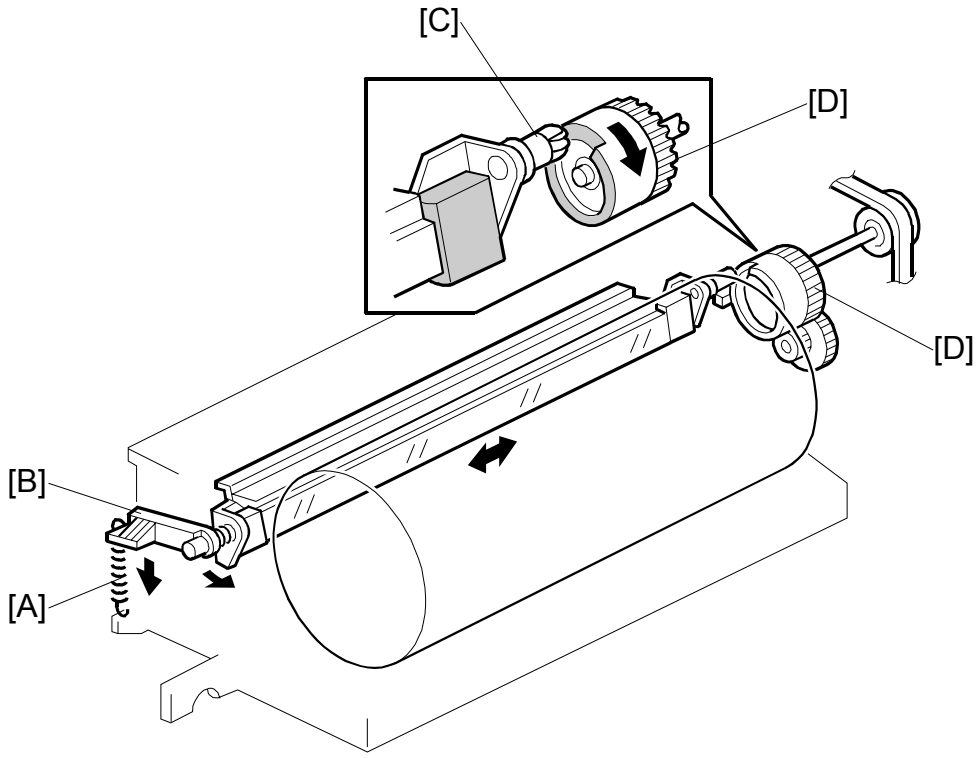
To remove any accumulated toner at the edge of the cleaning blade, the drum turns in reverse for about 10 mm at the end of every copy job. The accumulated toner is deposited on the drum and is removed by the cleaning brush.

Drive Mechanism



Drive from the drum motor [A] is transmitted to the cleaning unit drive gear via the timing belt [B] and the cleaning unit coupling [C]. The cleaning unit drive gear [D] then transmits the drive to the front through the cleaning brush [E]. The gear at the front drives the toner collection coil gear [F].

Cleaning Blade Pressure Mechanism and Side-to-Side Movement

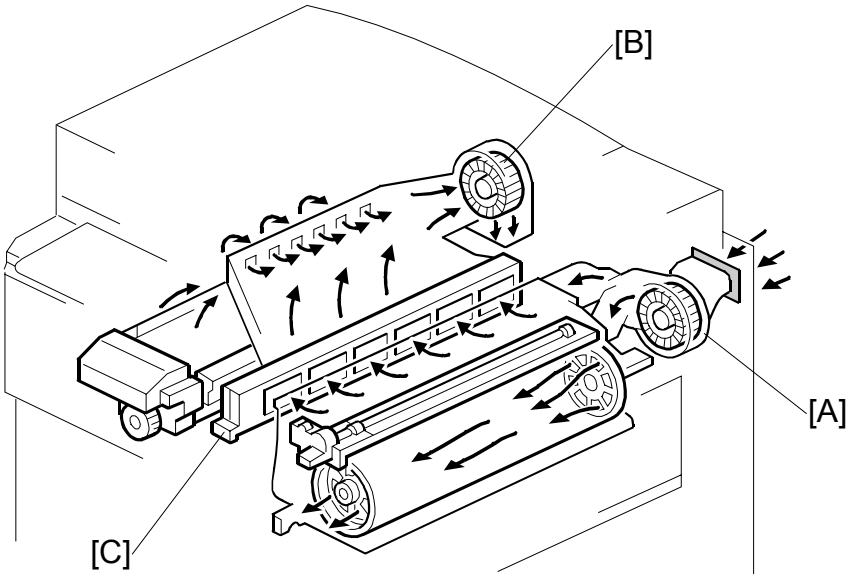


The spring [A] always pushes the cleaning blade against the drum. The cleaning blade pressure can be manually released by pushing up the release lever [B]. To prevent cleaning blade deformation during transportation, the release lever must be locked in the pressure release (upper) position.

The pin [C] at the rear end of the cleaning blade holder touches the cam gear [D], which moves the blade from side to side. This movement helps to disperse accumulated toner to prevent early blade edge wear.

2.5.5 OTHERS

Air Flow Around the Drum

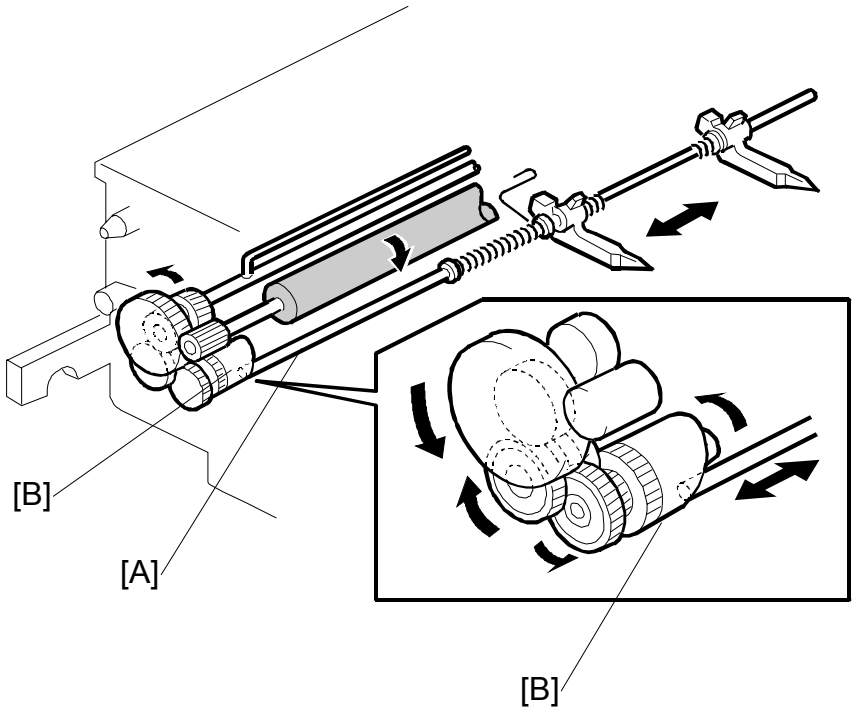


The drum cooling fan [A] provides air flow into the drum to cool the drum and the charge corona unit to prevent uneven build-up of negative ions that can cause uneven drum surface charge. The exhaust fan [B] located above the fusing unit causes air to flow out of the machine.

An ozone filter [C] absorbs the ozone around the drum.

To keep the temperature inside the machine constant, the drum cooling fan and the exhaust fan turn slowly during stand-by, and turn quickly during copying.

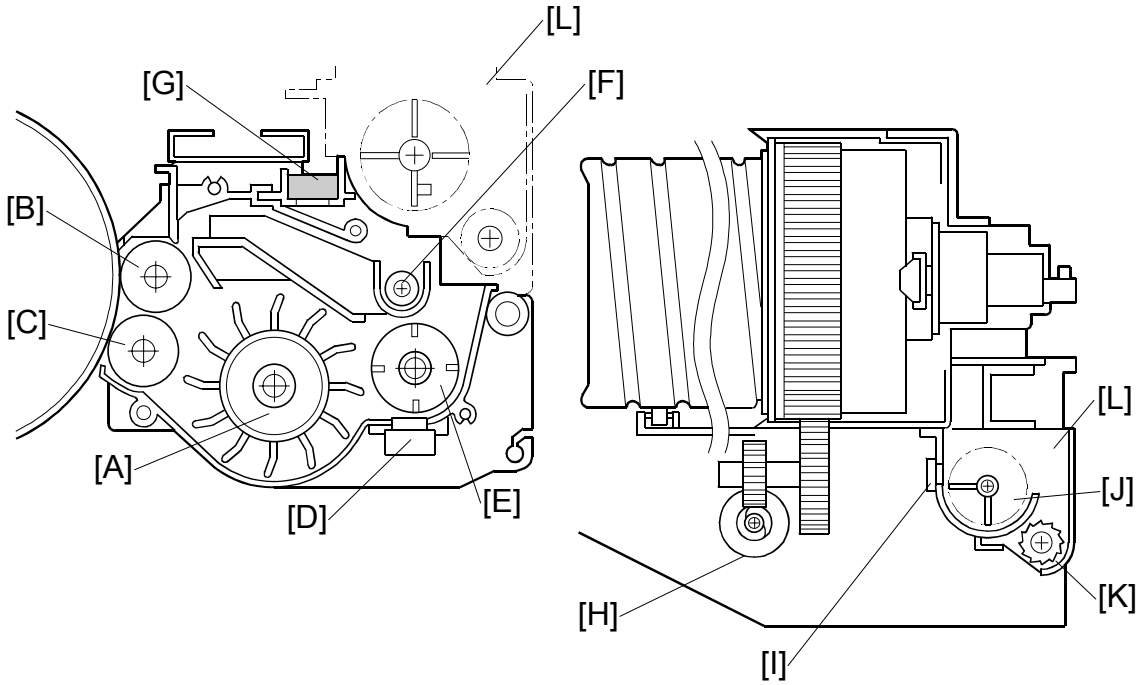
Pick-off Mechanism



The pick-off pawls are always in contact with the drum surface as a result of weak spring pressure. They move from side to side during the copy cycle to prevent drum wear at any particular location. This movement is made via a shaft [A] and an a cam [B].

2.6 DEVELOPMENT AND TONER SUPPLY

2.6.1 OVERVIEW



- Paddle Roller [A]
- Upper Development Roller [B]
- Lower Development Roller [C]
- Toner Density Sensor [D]
- Developer Agitator [E]
- Toner Auger [F]
- Development Filter [G]
- Toner Supply Motor [H]
- Toner End Sensor [I]
- Toner Agitator [J]
- Toner Supply Roller [K]
- Toner Hopper [L]

This copier uses a double roller development (DRD) system. Each roller has a diameter of 20 mm.

This system differs from single roller development systems in that:

(1) It develops the image in a narrower area

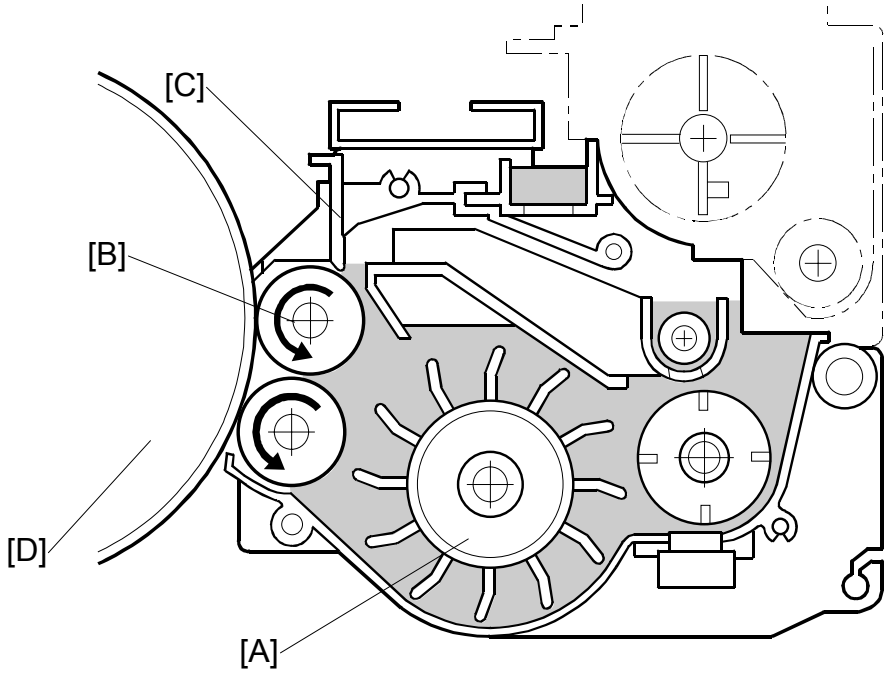
(2) It develops the image twice

(3) The relative speed of each development roller against the drum is reduced.

Also, this machine uses fine toner (about 9.5 μm) and developer (about 80 μm). Both the DRD system and new consumables improve the image quality, especially of thin horizontal lines, the trailing edges of the half-tone areas, and black cross points.

The machine contains a toner recycling system. The recycled toner is carried to the toner hopper [L] by the toner recycling motor and mixed with new toner by the toner agitator [J]. (The toner recycling system is described in the “Drum Cleaning And Toner Recycling section”.)

2.6.2 DEVELOPMENT MECHANISM



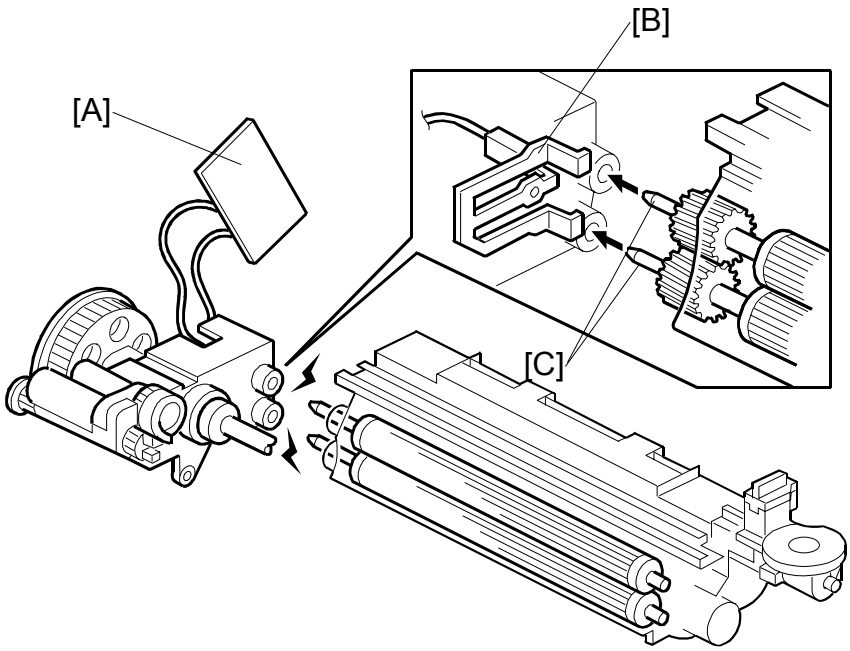
The paddle roller [A] picks up developer and transports it to the upper development roller [B]. Internal permanent magnets in the development rollers attract the developer to the development roller sleeve. The upper development roller carries the developer past the doctor blade [C]. The doctor blade trims the developer to the desired thickness and creates backspill to the cross mixing mechanism.

In this machine, black areas of the latent image are at a low negative charge (about –120 V) and white areas are at a high negative charge (about –900 V).

⟹ The development roller is given a negative bias (-550 V) to attract negatively charged toner to the black areas of the latent image on the drum.

The development rollers continue to turn, carrying the developer to the drum [D]. When the developer brush contacts the drum surface, the low-negatively charged areas of the drum surface attract and hold the negatively charged toner. In this way, the latent image is developed.

2.6.3 DEVELOPMENT BIAS



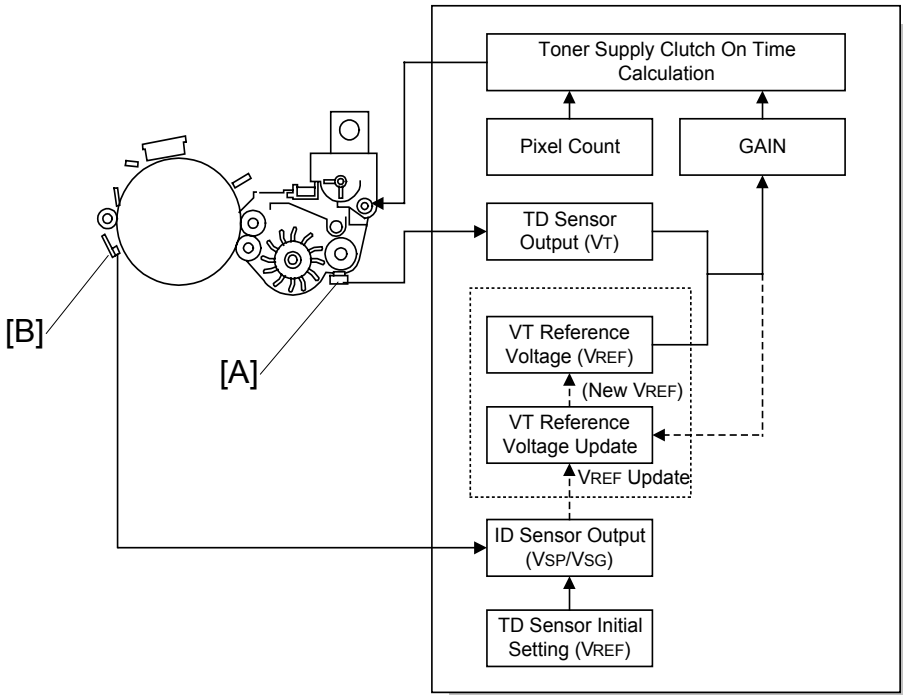
To attract negatively charged toner to the black areas of the latent image on the drum, the development power pack [A] applies the negative development bias to the upper and lower sleeve roller through the terminal [B] and roller shafts [C].

Also, the bias is applied to the lower casing through the spring which is mounted on the front lower development shaft. The bias applied to the lower casing prevents toner from being attracted back from the drum.

2.6.4 TONER DENSITY CONTROL

Overview

There are two modes for controlling toner supply: sensor control mode and image pixel count control mode. The mode can be changed with SP2-208. The factory setting is sensor control mode. Image pixel count mode should only be used if the TD and ID sensor are defective.



Sensor control mode

In sensor control mode, the machine varies toner supply for each copy to maintain the correct proportion of toner in the developer and to account for changes in drum reflectivity over time. The adjustment depends on two factors.

- The amount of toner required to print the page (based on the black pixel amount for the page)
- Readings from the TD sensor [A] and ID sensor [B].

Toner density sensor initial setting

When the new developer is installed, TD sensor initial setting must be done using SP2-801. This sets the sensor output to 3.0V. This value will be used as the TD sensor reference voltage (VREF).

If Vt cannot be adjusted to within standard, SC341 or 342 is generated and the machine cannot make copies.

VSP and VSG detection

The ID sensor detects the following voltages.

- VSG: The ID sensor output when checking the drum surface
- VSP: The ID sensor output when checking the ID sensor pattern

In this way, the reflectivity of both the drum and the pattern on the drum are checked.

The ID sensor pattern is made on the drum with the charge corona and laser diode.

VSP/VSG is detected at the end of a copy job of more than 10 pages to update the TD sensor reference voltage (VREF). This interval can be changed using SP2-210. This compensates for any variations in the reflectivity of the pattern on the drum or the reflectivity of the drum surface.

VREF Update

VREF is updated using VSP/VSG and VT. This is done (or at the end of a copy job of more than 10 pages, and during process control initial setting. See "VREF Update" in the Process Control section for details.

VT detection

The toner density in the developer is detected once every copy cycle after the trailing edge of the image passes through the development roller.

Image pixel count

For each copy, the CPU adds up the image data value of each pixel and converts the sum to a value between 0 and 255. (The value would be 255 if the page was completely black.)

Gain Determination

GAIN is another factor in the toner supply clutch on time calculation. Its value can be 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4. It is calculated every copy using "VREF – VT".

Toner Supply Clutch On Time Calculation

The toner supply clutch on time for each copy is decided using the following formula: (GAIN $\times$ Image pixel count $\times$ 0.7mg/cm^2 /Toner Supply Rate) + 50ms

The toner supply rate can be changed using SP2-209.

Image pixel count control

This mode should only be use as a temporary countermeasure while waiting for replacement parts, such as a TD sensor. This mode controls the toner supply using the same formula for the toner supply clutch on time. However, the GAIN value is fixed at 0.7.

2.6.5 TONER END DETECTION

Toner near end and toner end are detected every copy using the toner end sensor and toner supply motor as follows.

Toner Near End

When the toner end sensor is on for two consecutive pages, the toner supply motor turns on for 1.1s. If the toner supply motor has turned on more than 30 times during the last 100 prints, “Toner Near End” is displayed.

The “Toner Near End” condition is cleared if the toner end sensor turns off.

Toner End

If the toner end sensor has been continuously on for 200 copies (toner end sensor copy counter), “Toner End” is displayed.

If the toner end sensor is off twice consecutively, the toner end sensor copy counter is reset to 0.

2.6.6 TONER END RECOVERY

If the front door is opened and closed while a toner near end or toner end condition exists, the machine will attempt to recover using measurements from the toner end sensor and TD sensor.

At this time, the drum and development motor, charge and development bias turn on.

The toner supply motor turns on for 1.1s, then the toner supply clutch turns on for 1s. Then the CPU checks the toner end sensor output.

If the toner end sensor is off (meaning that there is toner in the toner hopper), the CPU compares VT and V_{REF}.

If VT is less than or equal to V_{REF} (meaning that there is enough toner in the development unit), the CPU waits for 20s to mix the toner in the developer evenly. Then the above components turn off, and the toner end or toner near end is cleared.

If VT is more than V_{REF}, the CPU turns on the toner supply clutch for 1s again until VT becomes less than or equal to V_{REF}.

If the toner end sensor output remains on even after trying the above procedure 7 times, the components turn off and “Toner End” remains on.

2.6.7 ABNORMAL TD AND ID SENSOR CONDITIONS

If the TD sensor and/or ID sensor is/are defective, the toner supply mode is changed as follows.

TD Sensor Defective

The toner supply amount is controlled by the ID sensor. ID sensor output is used to decide the GAIN factor for the toner supply clutch on time calculation.
SC340 is logged.

ID Sensor Defective

The toner supply amount is controlled by the TD sensor. However, TD sensor reference output VREF is not updated.
SC350, 351, 352, 353 or 354 is logged.

TD and ID sensor defective

Toner supply mode is changed to image pixel count mode.

2.7 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION

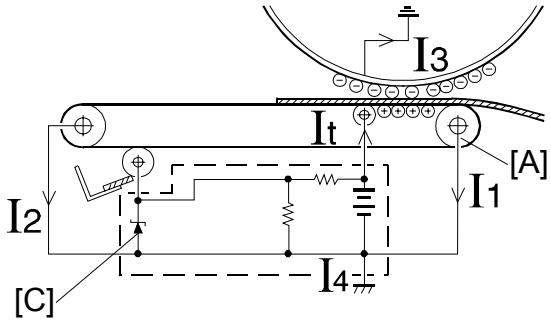
2.7.1 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION MECHANISM

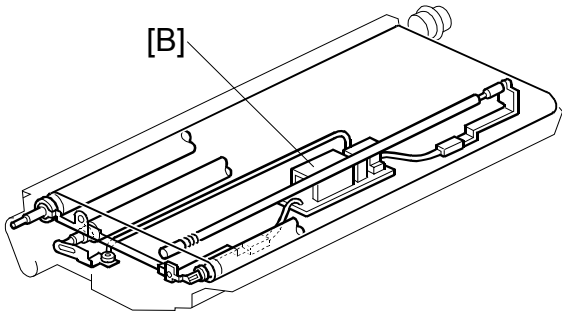
After the image transfer is completed, the charge on the transfer belt holds the paper to the transfer belt. After separating the paper from the transfer belt, the transfer belt is discharged by the transfer belt drive roller [A].

The transfer power pack [B] inside the transfer belt unit monitors the current (I_1 and I_2) fed back from the drive rollers at each end of the transfer belt.

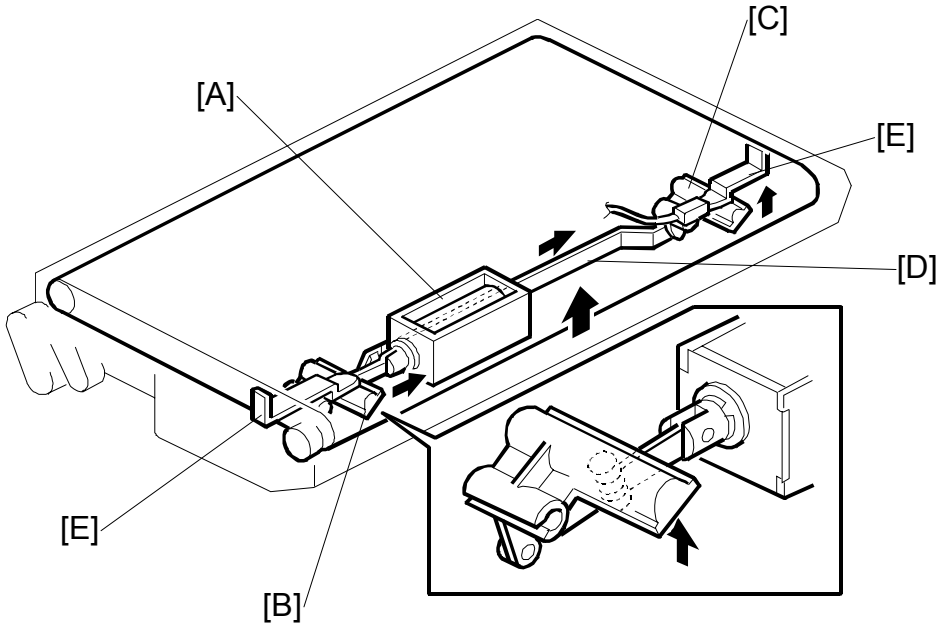
Then, the power pack adjusts I_t to keep the current (I_4) constant, even if the paper, environmental conditions, or transfer belt surface resistance change.

The varistor [C] keeps the voltage at the cleaning bias roller [D] constant if there are fluctuations.





2.7.2 TRANSFER BELT UNIT LIFT MECHANISM

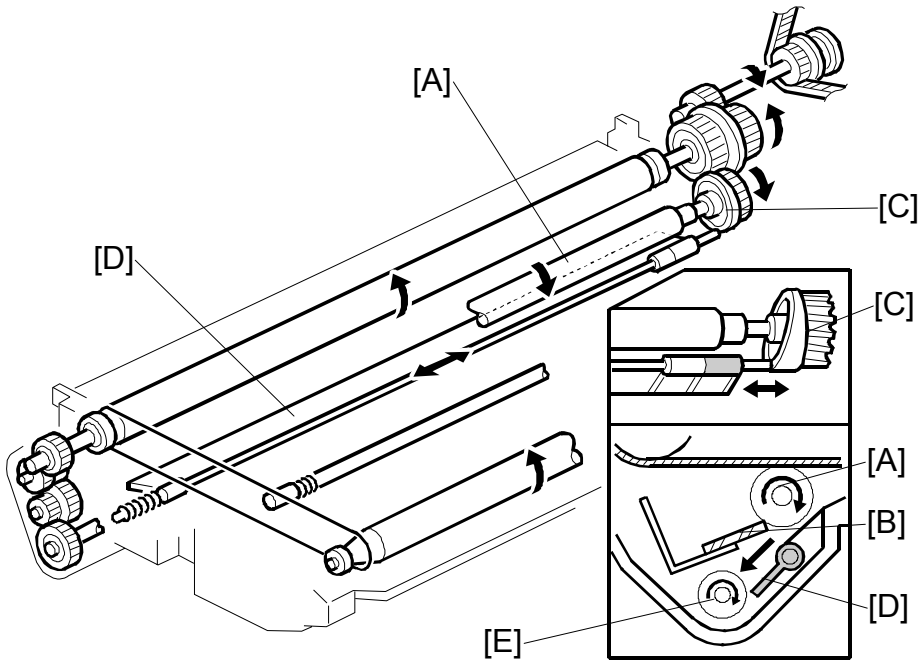


The transfer belt lift solenoid [A] inside the transfer belt unit turns on to raise the transfer belt into contact with the drum. The front lever [B] and the rear lever [C] are connected to the solenoid by links [D], and they push up the stays [E] when the solenoid turns on.

The solenoid turns off after the copy job is finished. The transfer belt must be released from the drum for the following reasons:

1. To prevent the ID sensor pattern on the drum from being rubbed off by the transfer belt, because the transfer belt is located between the development unit and the ID sensor.
2. To decrease the load on the bias roller cleaning blade, it is better to prevent toner on non-image areas (for example V_D, V_H, ID sensor patterns developed during process control data initial setting) from being transferred onto the transfer belt.
3. To prevent drum characteristics from being changed by coming into contact with material of the rubber belt.

2.7.3 TRANSFER BELT CLEANING MECHANISM



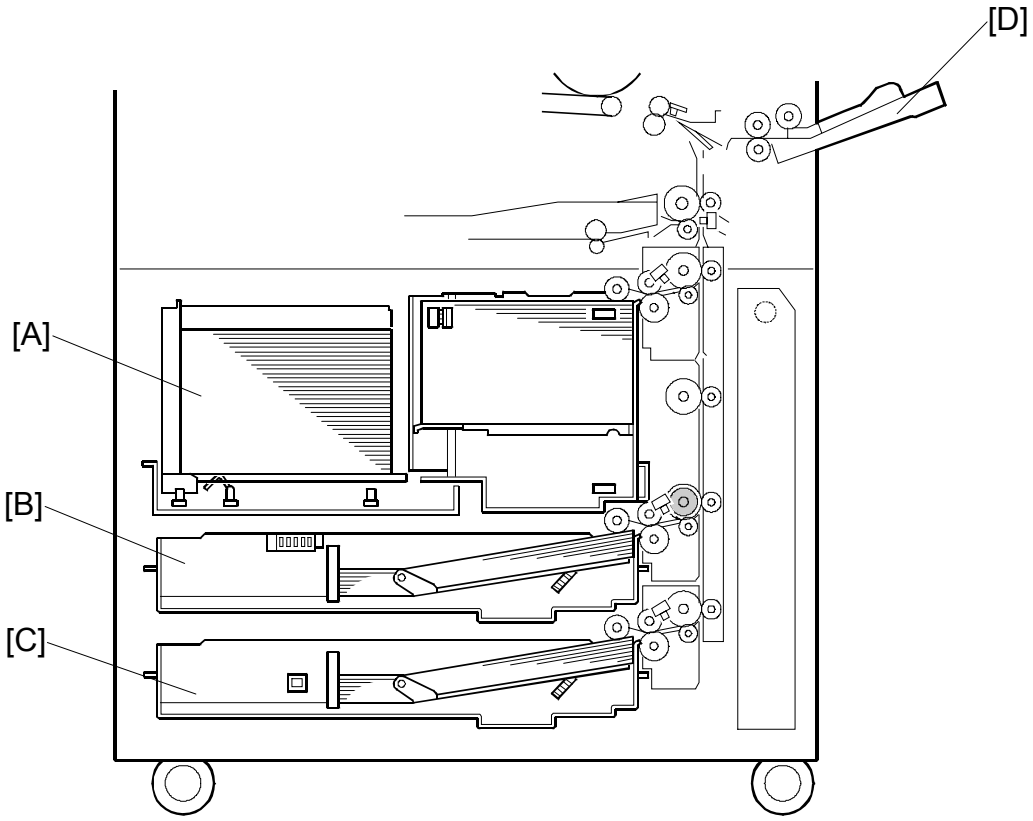
Some toner may adhere to the transfer belt when paper jams occur, or when the by-pass feed table side fences are set in the wrong position. The adhered toner must be removed to prevent the rear side of the copy paper from getting dirty.

The cleaning roller [A] is always in contact with the transfer belt. It collects toner and paper dust adhering to the surface of the transfer belt. This is because a positive bias is applied to the cleaning roller and this attracts the negatively charged toner on the transfer belt.

A counter blade system cleans the cleaning roller. The cleaning blade [B] scrapes off toner collecting on the cleaning roller [A]. The gear [C] moves the agitator plate [D] from side to side to transport toner to the toner collection coil [E]. Toner cleaned off the transfer belt is transported to the waste toner collection bottle by the coil.

2.8 PAPER FEED

2.8.1 OVERVIEW

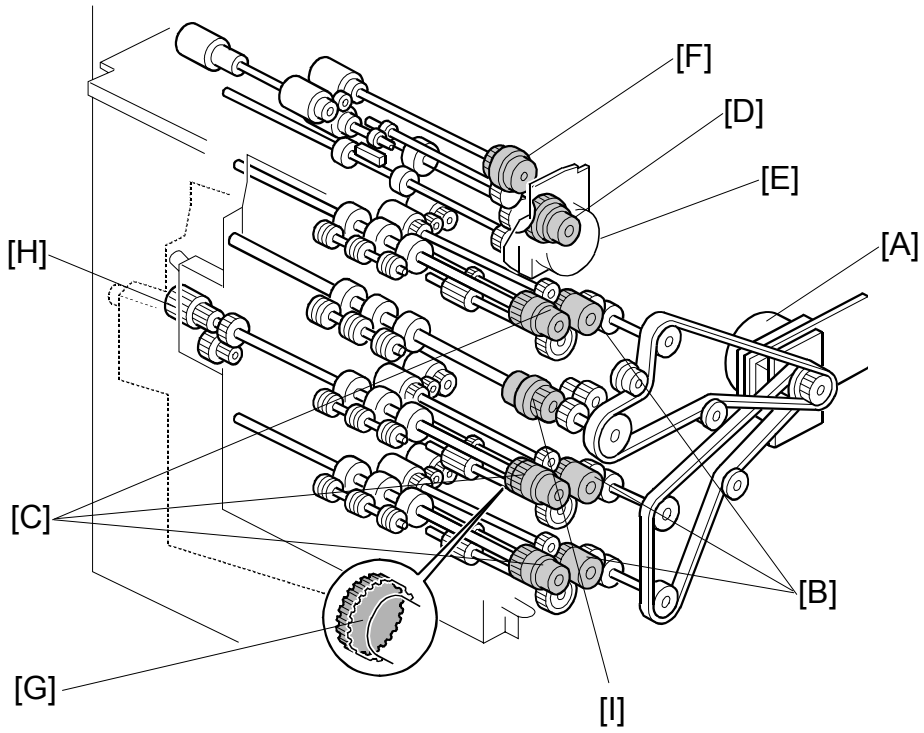


This model has three built-in paper feed trays: tandem LCT (1st tray) [A] (1550 + 1550 sheets), universal tray (2nd tray) [B] (550 sheets), and single-size tray (3rd tray) [C] (550 sheets).

Paper can also be fed using the by-pass feed table [D] which has an independent feed mechanism. The by-pass feed table can hold 50 sheets of paper.

All feed stations use an FRR feed system.

2.8.2 DRIVE MECHANISM



[A] Paper Feed Motor
[B] Paper Feed Clutches
[C] Vertical Relay Clutches
[D] Relay Clutch
[E] By-pass Feed Motor
[F] By-pass Feed Clutch
[I] Bank Relay Clutch

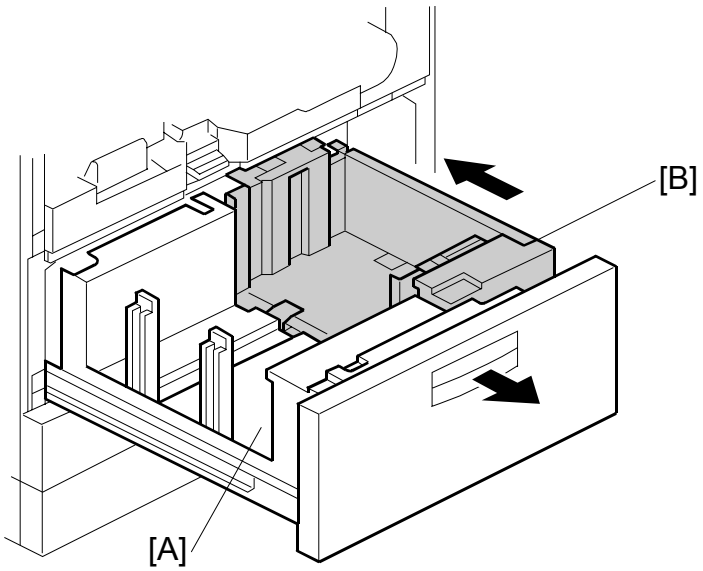
The paper feed motor [A] drives feed, pick-up, and separation rollers in the trays via timing belts, clutches [B], and gears. The paper feed motor also drives the vertical transport rollers and the relay roller. Drive is transferred to each of the four vertical transport rollers by a vertical relay clutch [C], and to the relay roller by the relay clutch [D].

The by-pass feed motor [E] drives all the rollers in the by-pass tray via gears and a clutch [F].

The second vertical relay clutch has a one-way-gear [G]. This prevents the clutch from slipping when the knob [H] is turned to remove jammed paper in the paper feed tray and vertical transport area.

2.8.3 TANDEM LCT – TRAY 1

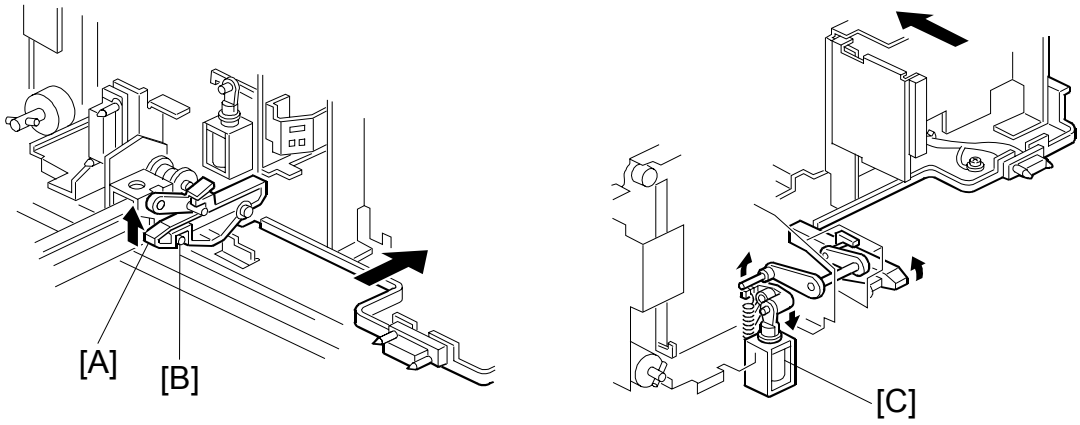
Overview

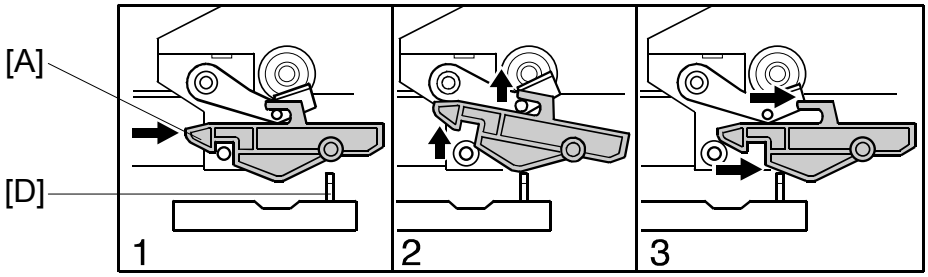


1,550 sheets of paper can be set in each of the left [A] and right trays [B]. Paper is fed from the right tray. When the paper in the right tray runs out, the paper in the left tray automatically transfers to the right tray. After the paper transfer to the right tray, paper feeding resumes.

Normally both the right and the left trays are joined together. However, during copying, if there is no paper in the left tray, the left tray can be pulled out to load paper. During that time, the right tray stays in the machine and paper feed continues.

Connecting the Left and Right Sides of the Tray



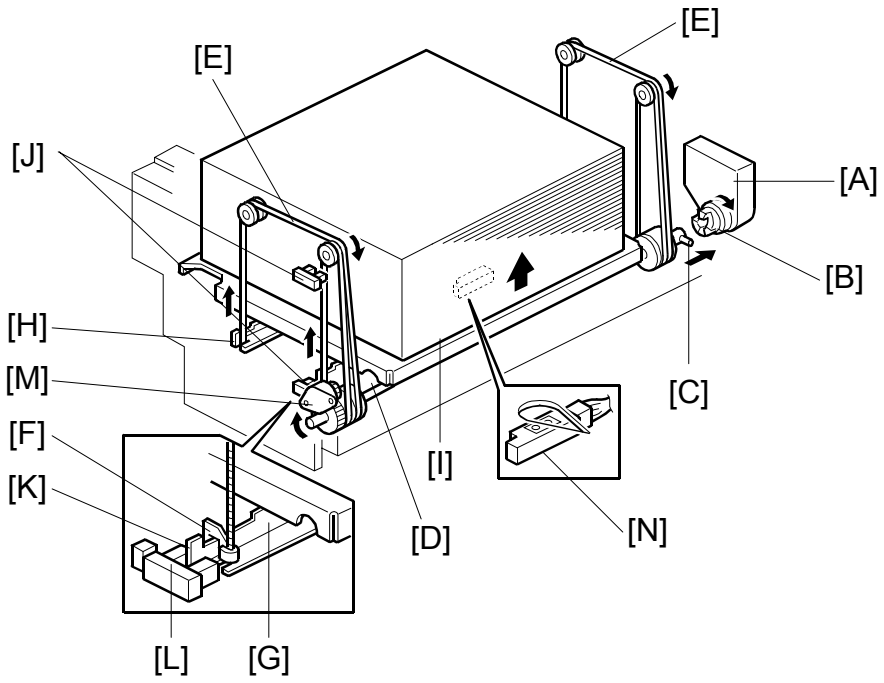


Normally the left tray lock lever [A] in the left tray catches the pin [B] in the right tandem tray. During copying, if there is no paper in the left tray, the tandem tray connect solenoid [C] turns on to release the tray lock lever so that the left tray separates from the right tray. Therefore, the left tray can be pulled out to load paper while paper is still being fed into the machine from the right tray.

When the tandem tray is drawn out fully, the projection [D] pushes up the left tray lock lever [A] so that both trays separate for easier paper loading.

Paper Lift/Remaining Paper Detection

The machine detects when the 1st tray has been placed in the machine by monitoring the tray set signal through the connector.



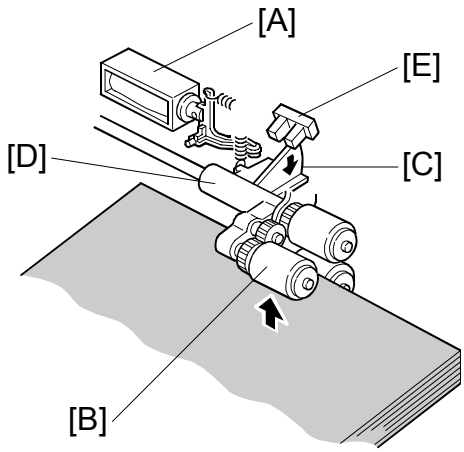
When the machine detects that the 1st paper tray is set in the machine, the right 1st tray paper sensor [N] (under the tray) checks whether there is paper in the right tandem tray.

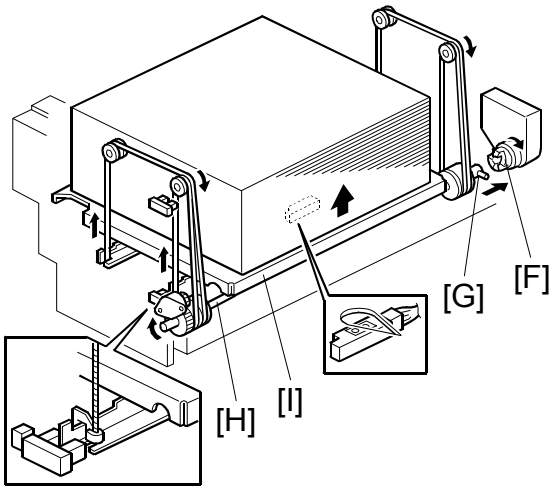
NOTE: The right half of the tray holds up to 1,550 sheets. So, if the right 1st tray paper sensor was not present and the tray was empty, the bottom plate would have to lift up fully until the paper end sensor at the top of the tray detected that there was no paper, and this would waste several seconds.

If paper is detected, the lift motor [A] rotates and the coupling gear [B] on the tray lift motor engages the pin [C] of the lift shaft [D]. The tray wires [E] are fixed in the slots [F] at the ends of the tray support rods [G, H]. When the lift motor rotates clockwise, the tray support rods and the tray bottom plate [I] move upward. The tray goes up until the top paper pushes up the pick-up roller and the lift sensor in the 1st feed unit is activated, and the paper end sensor at the top of the tray is deactivated.

When the actuator [K] on the front end of the right support rod [G] activates the paper near end sensor [J], the paper near end condition is detected.

When removing the tray, the coupling gear [B] separates from the pin [C], so that the tray bottom plate moves downward. The tray lowers until the actuator activates the tray down sensor [L]. The damper [M] lets the tray bottom plate drop down slowly.





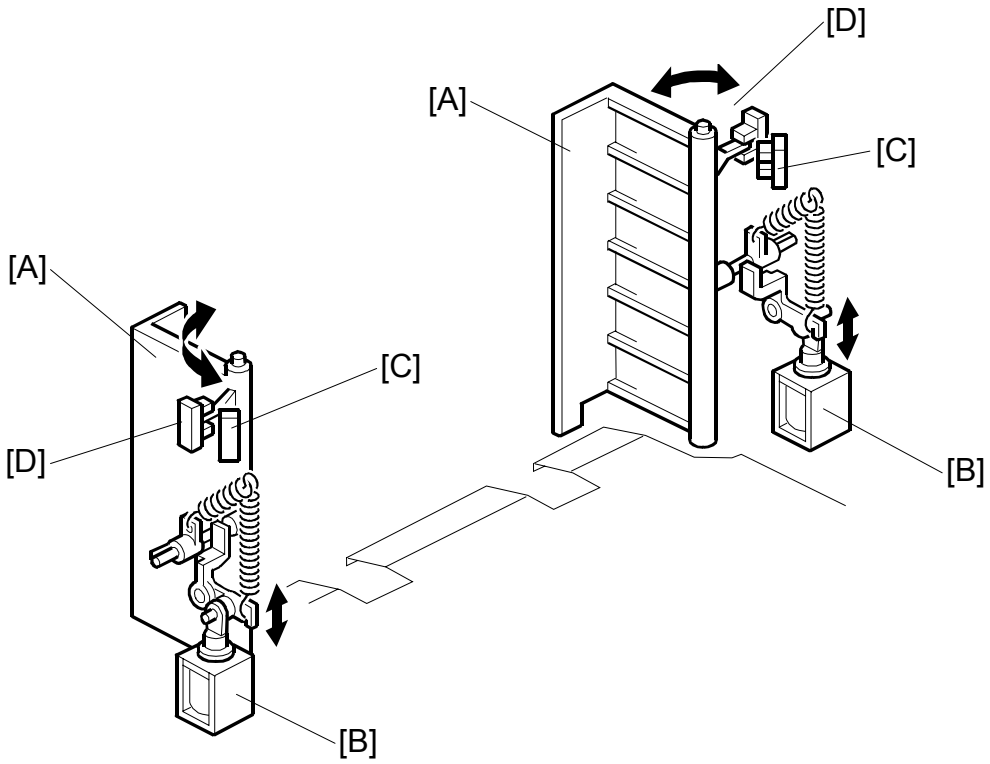
When the lift motor turns on, the pick-up solenoid [A] activates to lower the pick-up roller [B]. When the top sheet of paper reaches the correct height for paper feed, the paper pushes up the pick-up roller and the actuator [C] on the pick-up roller supporter [D] activates the lift sensor [E] to stop the lift motor.

After several paper feeds, the paper level gradually lowers then the lift sensor is de-activated and the lift motor turns on again until the lift sensor is activated again.

When the tray is drawn out of the feed unit, the lift motor coupling gear [F] disengages the pin [G] of the lift shaft [H], then the tray bottom plate [I] drops (the damper slows the fall, as explained on the previous page).

There is also a paper end sensor for the 1st tray, which works in the same way as the sensor in the 2nd and 3rd trays.

Fence Drive

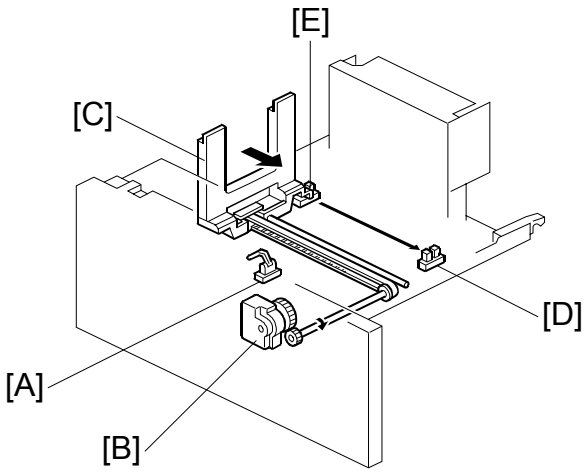


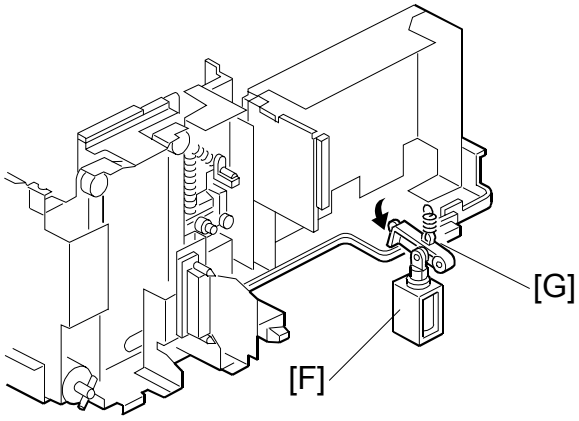
The side fences [A] of the right tray are normally closed. They open only when paper in the left tray goes to the right tray.

The side fence solenoids [B] drive the side fences. When the paper loaded in the left tray transfers to the right tray, the side fence solenoids turn on to open the side fences until the side fence positioning sensor [C] activates.

When the rear fence in the left tray has pushed the paper stack into the right tray, the side fence solenoids turn off to close the side fences. Then, when the side fence close sensor [D] actuates after pushing the tandem tray in, the LCD displays a message advising the user to set some paper in the left side of the tandem tray.

Rear Fence Drive



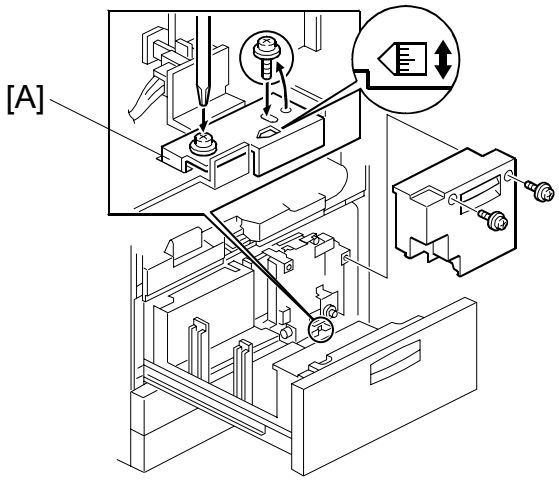


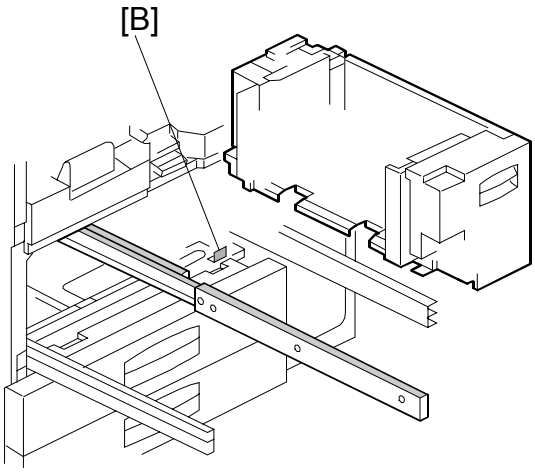
When the left 1st tray paper sensor [A] detects paper but the right 1st tray paper sensor does not, the rear fence drive motor [B] (a DC motor) in the left tray turns counter-clockwise causing the rear fence [C] to push the paper stack into the right tray.

When the actuator on the rear fence activates the rear fence return position sensor [D], the rear fence drive motor turns clockwise until the actuator activates the rear fence HP sensor [E].

While the rear fence is moving, the left 1st tray lock solenoid [F] turns on and the lock lever [G] locks the left tray.

Tray Positioning

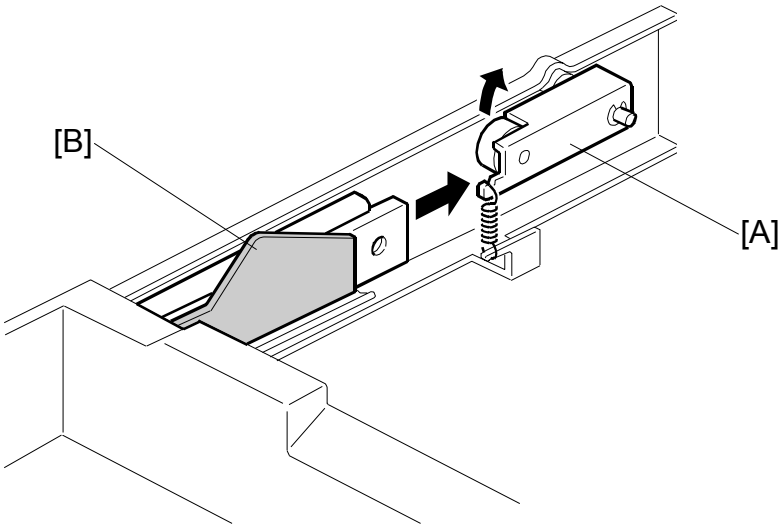




Side-to-side Positioning

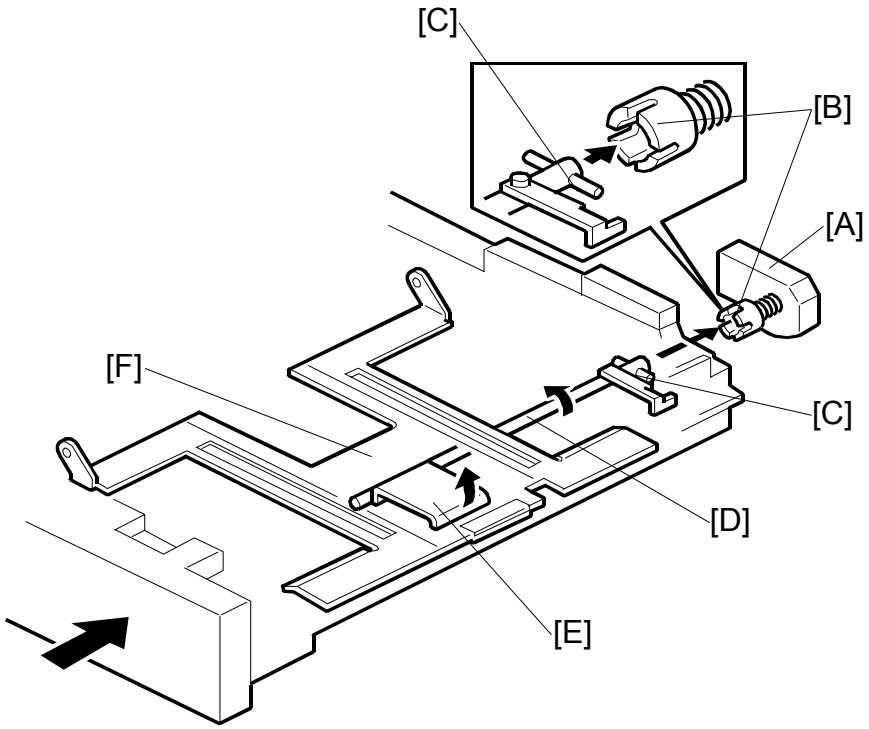
When the feed tray is set in the paper feed unit, the side-to-side positioning plate [A] presses the feed tray against the stopper [B]. By moving the positioning plate, the tray position can be changed to adjust the side-to-side registration.

2.8.4 TRAY POSITIONING MECHANISM – TRAYS 1 TO 3



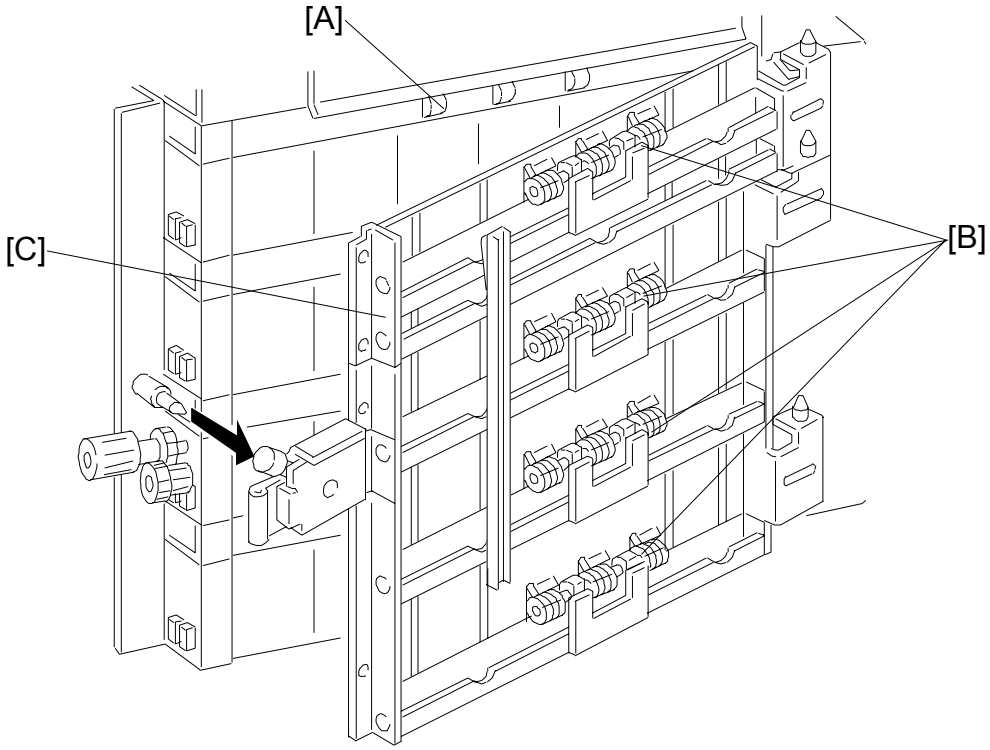
When the tray is placed in the paper feed unit, the lock lever [A] drops behind the lock plate [B] on the support bracket to lock the tray in the proper position.

2.8.5 PAPER LIFT MECHANISM - TRAYS 2 AND 3



When the machine detects that the paper tray has been placed in the machine, the lift motor [A] turns on. The coupling gear [B] on the tray lift motor engages the pin [C] on the lift arm shaft [D], then it turns the tray lift arm [E] to lift the tray bottom plate [F].

2.8.6 VERTICAL TRANSPORT MECHANISM

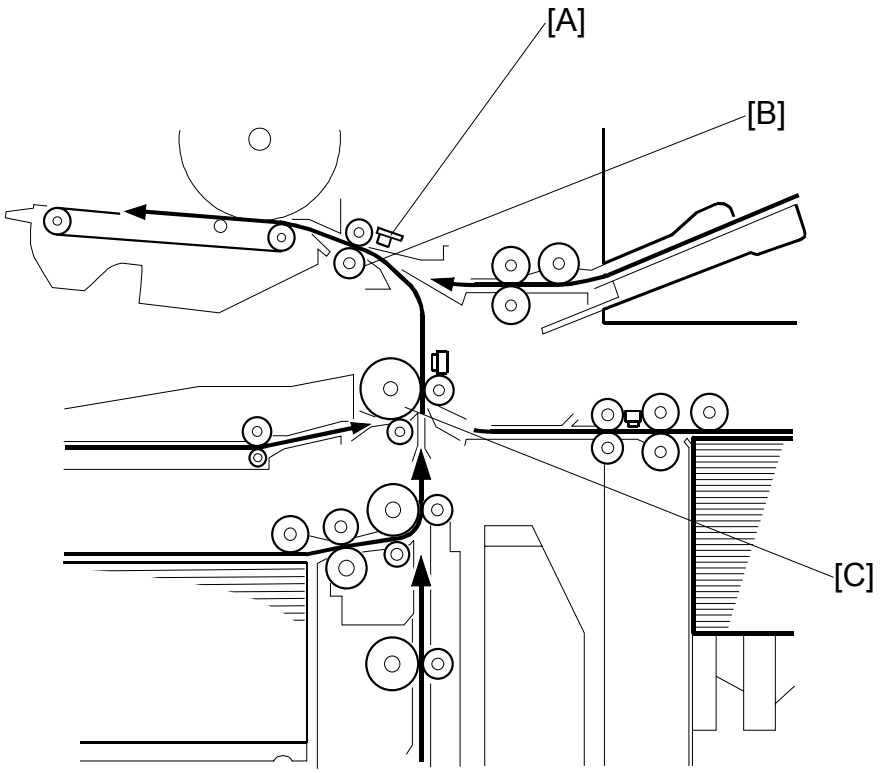


The vertical transport rollers [A] in each feed unit are all driven by the paper feed motor. The vertical transport rollers and the idle vertical transport rollers [B], on the inner and outer vertical guide plates, transport the paper up from each feed unit towards the relay and registration rollers.

The vertical transport guides [C] can be opened to remove jammed paper in the vertical transport area.

2.8.7 PAPER REGISTRATION

Overview

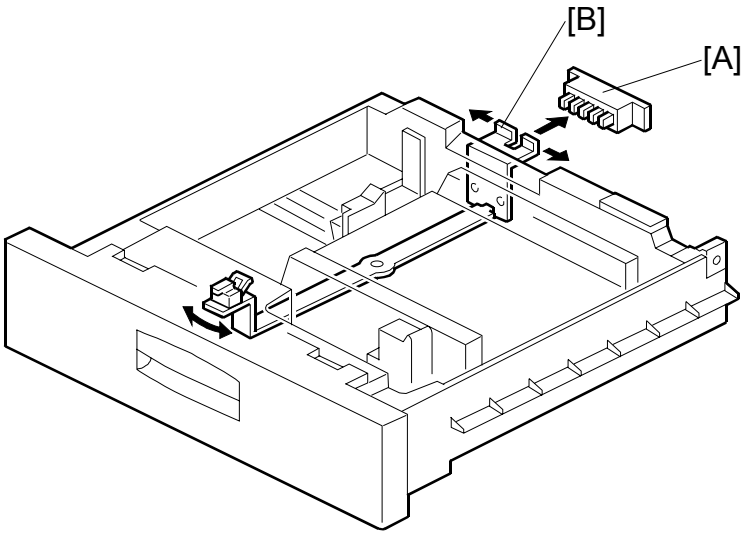


The registration sensor [A] is positioned just before the registration rollers [B].

When the paper leading edge activates the registration sensor, the registration motor is off and the registration rollers are not turning. However, the relay clutch [C] stays on for a bit longer. This delay allows time for the paper to press against the registration rollers and buckle slightly to correct skew. Then, the registration motor energizes and the relay clutch re-energizes at the proper time to align the paper with the image on the drum. The registration and relay rollers feed the paper to the image transfer section.

The registration sensor is also used for paper misfeed detection.

2.8.8 PAPER SIZE DETECTION – TRAY 2



SW Actuated – 0 De-actuated – 1	Paper size	L: Lengthwise S: Sideways
	A4/A3 Version	LT/DLT Version
01111	A3-L	11" x 17"-L
00111	8 1/4" x 13"	8 1/2" x 14"-L
10011	A4-L	8 1/2" x 11"-L
01001	A4-S	8 1/2" x 11"-S
00100	8 1/2" x 13"	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"-L
00010	A5-L	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"-S
00001	A5-S	8" x 10 1/2"-L
10000	–	8" x 10"-L
11000	–	8" x 13"-L
11100	–	10" x 14"-L
11110	*	*

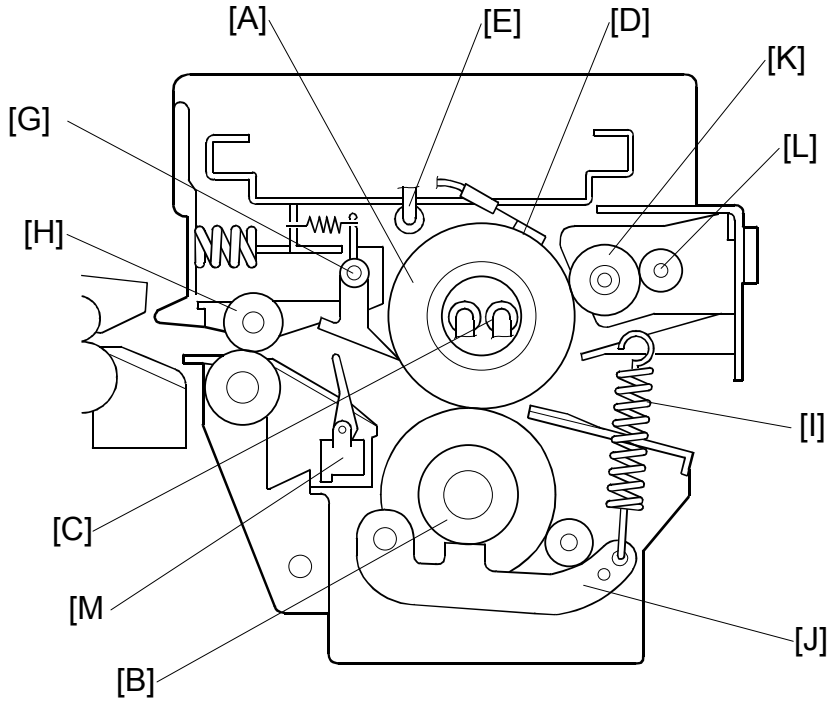
For the first and the third feed trays, the paper size has to be stored with a UP mode.

For the second feed tray (universal tray), the paper size switch [A] detects the paper size. The paper size switch contains five microswitches. The paper size switch is actuated by an actuator plate [B] at the rear of the tray. Each paper size has its own unique combination as shown in the table and the CPU determines the paper size by the combination.

Using the asterisk setting (*), a wider range of paper sizes can be used, but the size has to be entered with a UP mode.

2.9 IMAGE FUSING

2.9.1 OVERVIEW



After the developed latent image is transferred from the drum to the paper, the copy paper enters the fusing unit. Then the image is fused to the copy paper by a heat and pressure process through the use of a hot roller [A] and a pressure roller [B].

There are two fusing lamps [C] in the hot roller. Both lamps are 550 W lamps. They switch on and off at the same time.

The fusing lamps turn on and off to keep the operating temperature at 185°C. The CPU monitors the hot roller surface temperature through a thermistor [D] which is in contact with the hot roller surface. A thermofuse (A292./A293) [E] /thermostats (B098) [F] protects the fusing unit from overheating.

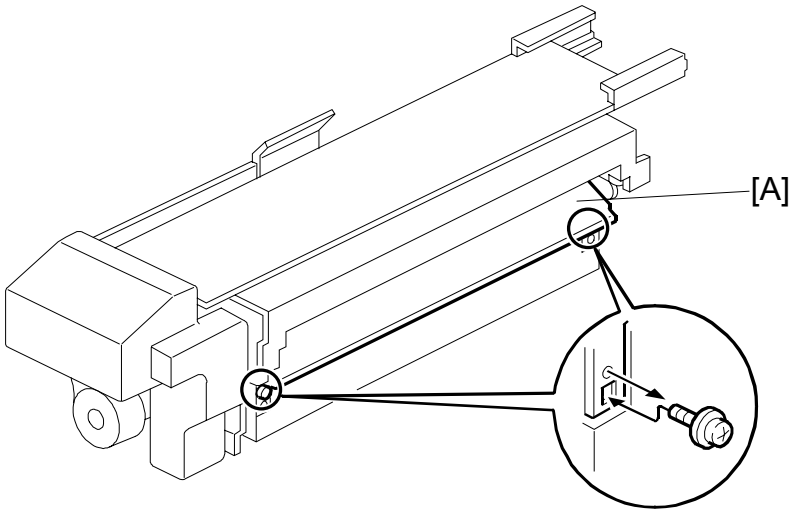
The hot roller strippers [G] separate the copy paper from the hot roller and direct it to the fusing exit rollers [H]. The exit sensor in the inverter and paper exit unit monitors the progress of the copy paper through the fusing unit and acts as a misfeed detector while the exit rollers feed the copy paper to the inverter section.

The hooking position of the tension springs [I] on the pressure lever [J] adjusts the roller pressure.

The oil supply roller [K] applies a light coat of silicone oil to the hot roller. The oil supply cleaning roller [L] removes the paper dust attached to the cleaning roller.

The fusing sensor [M] detects concertina jams at the fusing unit exit. This sensor is needed because the user may not see this type of jam inside the machine when removing jams at the exit.

2.9.2 FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE



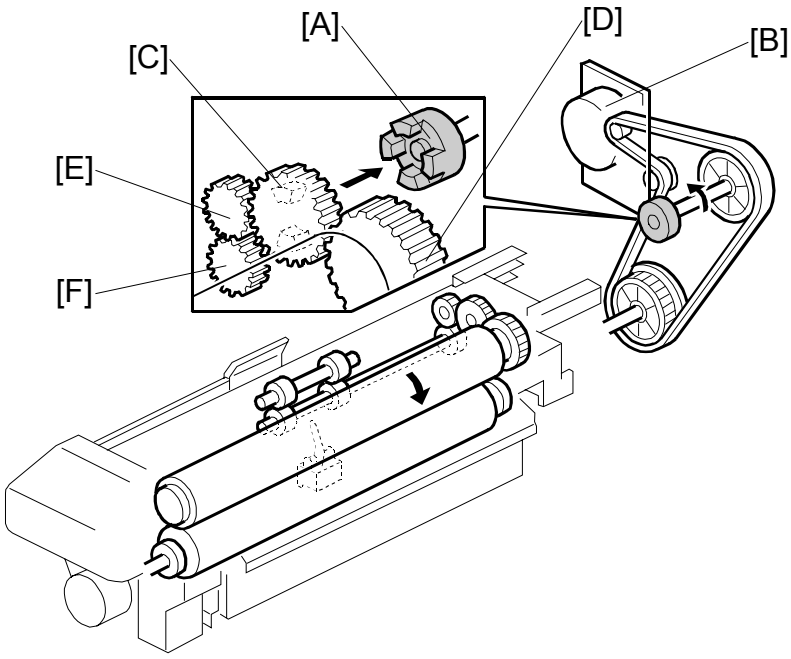
The entrance guide [A] for this machine is adjustable for thick or thin paper.

For thin paper, the entrance guide should be in the upper position (this is the standard position). This slightly lengthens the paper path which prevents the paper from creasing in the fusing unit.

For thick paper, move the entrance guide to the lower position. This is because thick paper does not bend as easily, and is therefore less prone to creasing. Also, the lower setting allows more direct access to the gap between the hot and pressure rollers. This prevents thick paper from buckling against the hot roller, which can cause blurring at the leading edge of the copy.

In this model, the transfer belt improves paper transport and the paper path to the fusing entrance is stabilized. This reduces the chance of paper creasing due to paper skew in the fusing unit.

2.9.3 FUSING DRIVE MECHANISM



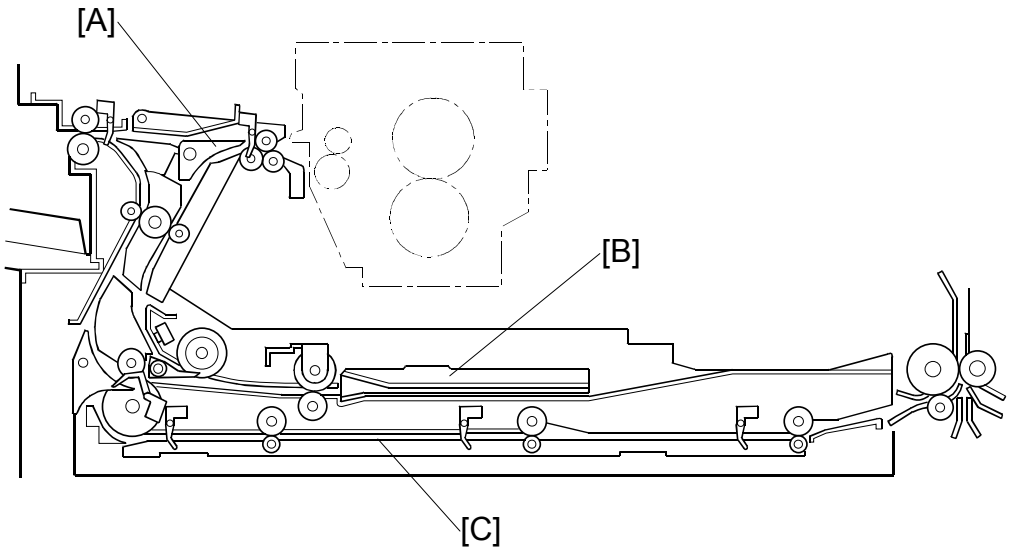
The fusing drive gear [A] transmits drive from the fusing/duplex drive motor [B] to the gear [C], which drives the hot roller gear [D].

Rotation passes from the gear [C] through the idle gear [E] to the exit roller drive gear [F].

The pressure roller is driven by the friction between the hot and pressure rollers.

2.10 PAPER EXIT/DUPLEX

2.10.1 OVERVIEW



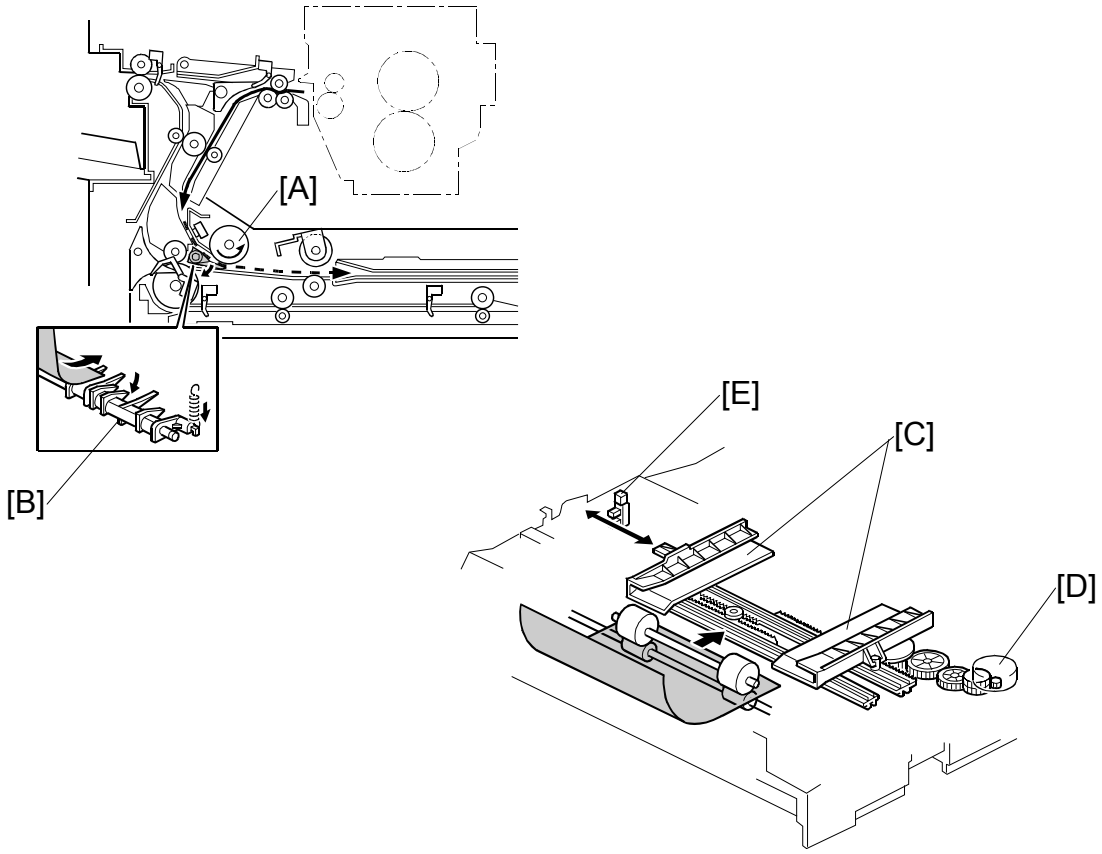
The printed page from the fusing unit goes either straight through to the output tray or finisher, or downward through to the inverter or duplex unit, depending on the position of the junction gate [A].

If the page is fed out directly, it arrives on the tray face-up. If the user selected face-down output, the page goes to the inverter [B] before being fed out.

If the user selects duplex mode, the page is directed to the duplex tray [C] after inverting, and back to the machine for printing the second side.

2.10.2 INVERTER

Feed-in and Jogging



When the paper is fed to the jogger section by the inverter feed roller [A], it pushes down the gate [B]. After the paper passes through the gate [B], the jogger fences [C] move to square the paper. This happens every page.

NOTE: The gate has no solenoid. A spring pushes the gate back up again after the paper has gone.

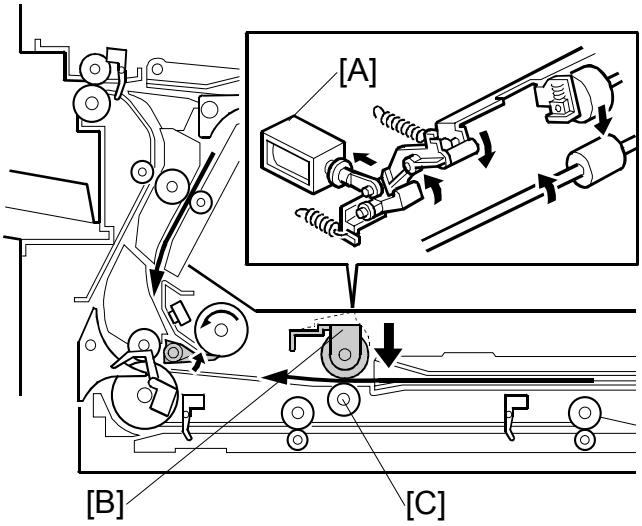
The jogger motor (a stepper motor) [D] moves the jogger fences [C] inward or outward.

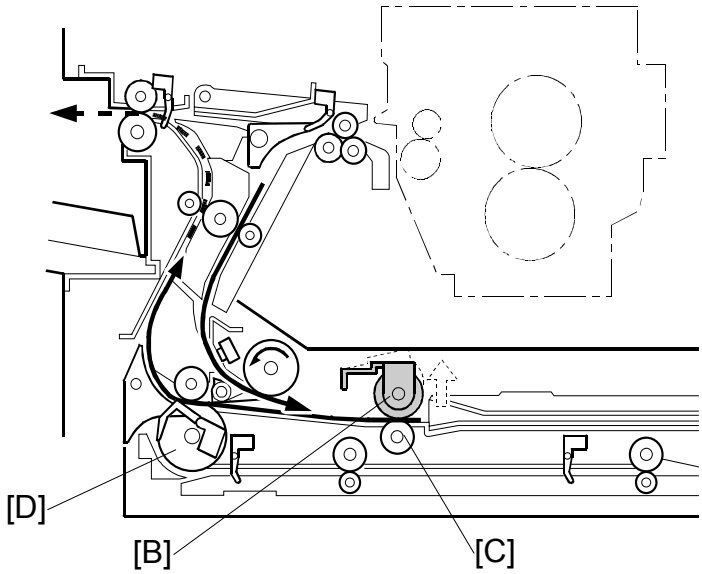
When the main switch is turned on, the jogger motor places the jogger fences at the home position, which is determined by monitoring the signal from the jogger home position sensor [E].

When the start key is pressed, the jogger motor positions the jogger fences 10 mm away from the selected paper size to wait for the paper.

When the paper is delivered to the jogger fences, the jogger fences move inward to square the paper. After this, the jogger fences move back to the previous position (10 mm away from the paper).

Feed-out

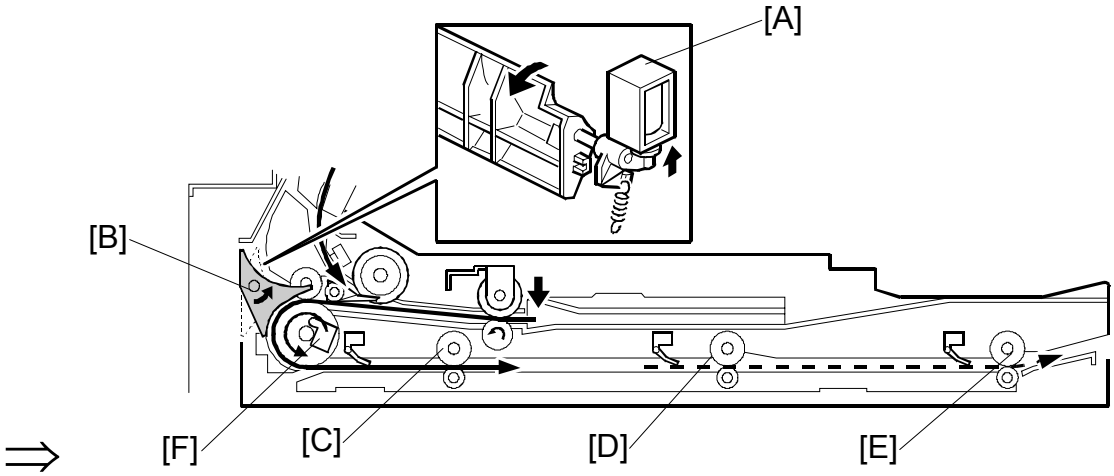




After jogging, the reverse roller solenoid [A] energizes to push down the reverse trigger roller [B]. The reverse roller [C] turns counterclockwise continuously, so the paper starts to reverse when the reverse trigger roller is down and catches the paper between the rollers.

The paper is fed from the reverse roller to the inverter exit roller [D]. After the paper starts to be fed by the inverter exit roller, the reverse trigger roller moves back up.

2.10.3 DUPLEX TRAY FEED MECHANISM



In duplex mode, after the paper leaves the inverter, the duplex inverter solenoid [A] switches the junction gate [B] to direct the paper to the duplex tray. The paper is fed through the duplex tray by duplex transport rollers 1 [C] and 2 [D], and the duplex feed roller [E].

If duplex mode is not selected, the solenoid does not switch the junction gate, and the paper goes to the output tray or finisher face down.

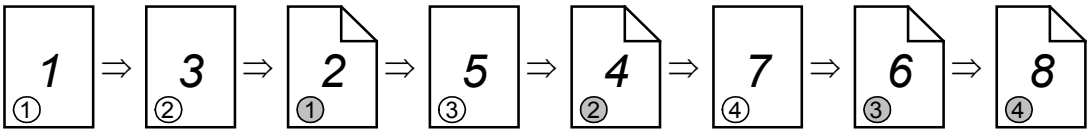
The duplex inverter sensor [F] controls the on/off timing of the inverter exit clutch which stops paper coming into the duplex unit for a while. If image processing for the page coming out of the duplex unit is taking a long time, this mechanism prevents the paper entering the duplex unit from slipping over the paper at the duplex unit exit and accidentally being fed out of the unit first. The mechanism maintains the maximum productivity of printing while preventing this type of duplex feed error. When the clutch is on, paper stops.

2.10.4 BASIC DUPLEX FEED OPERATION

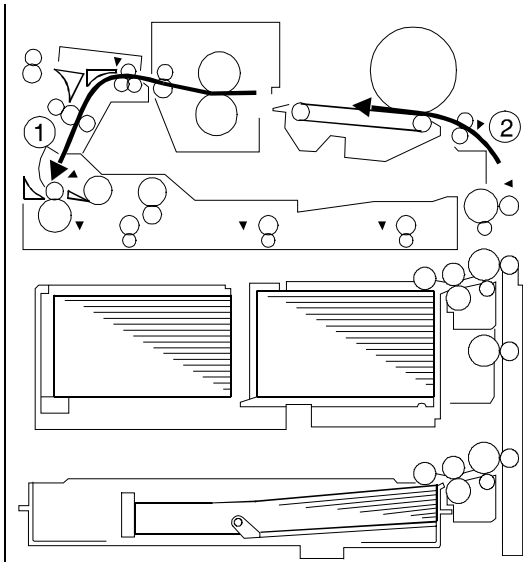
⟹ *Longer than A4 / Letter lengthwise (8.5 x 11 L)*

The duplex unit can process two sheets of copy paper

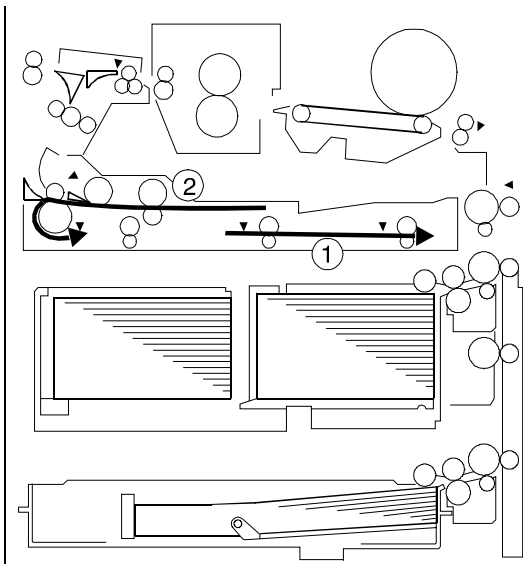
Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of copy paper (if shaded, this indicates the second side).



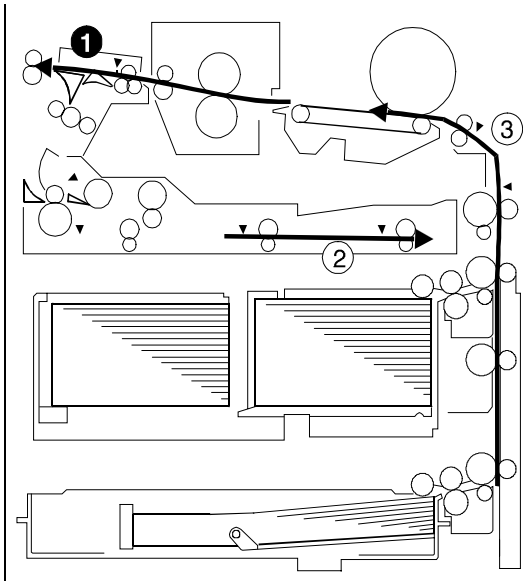
1. The first 2 sheets are fed and printed.
   1) 1st sheet printed (1st page)
   2) 2nd sheet printed (3rd page)



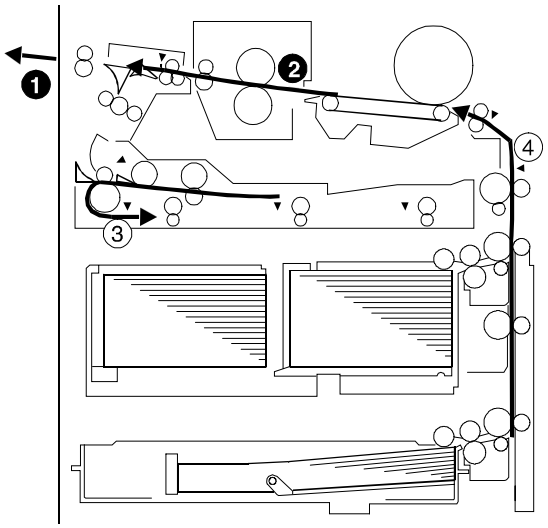
2. The first 2 sheets go into the duplex unit



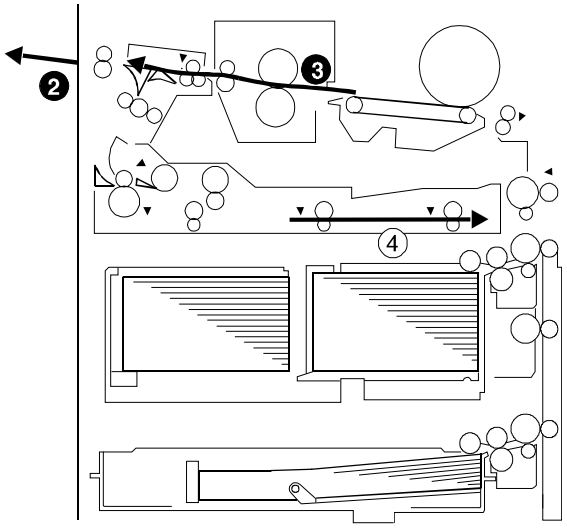
3. The back of the 1st sheet (2nd page) is printed.
4. The 3rd sheet (5th page) is fed and printed.



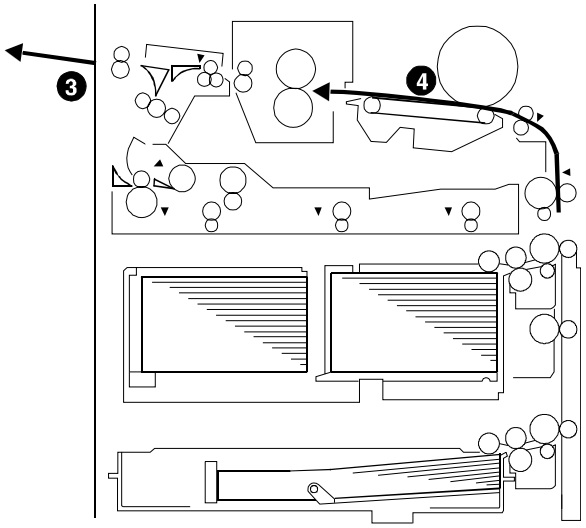
5. The 1st sheet (1st and 2nd pages) is fed out.
6. The back of the 2nd sheet (4th page) is printed.
7. The 4th sheet (7th page) is fed and printed.



8. The 2nd sheet (3rd and 4th pages) is fed out
9. The back of the 3rd sheet (6th page) is printed.



10. The 3rd sheet (5th and 6th pages printed) is fed out.
11. The back of the 4th sheet (8th page) is printed.
12. The 4th sheet (7th and 8th pages) is fed out.



2.11 ENERGY SAVER MODES

2.11.1 LOW POWER MODE

Entering low power mode

The low power shift timer runs out after the end of a job.

What happens in low power mode

The fusing lamp drops to a certain temperature, that depends on the setting of SP5-920. The other conditions are the same as for energy saver mode.

Return to stand-by mode

The machine returns to standby mode in exactly the same way as from energy saver mode.

The recovery time from low power mode depends on the setting of SP5-920.

Model	Recovery Time	Operation Switch	Energy Saver LED	Fusing Temp. (SP5-920)	System +5V	Main Power LED
A292/	About 20 seconds	On	On	170 °C (NA) 160 °C (EU)	On	On
A293	About 20 seconds	On	On	177 °	On	On
B098	About 20 seconds	On	On	160 °C (NA) 155 °C (EU)	On	On

INSTALLATION

3. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

3.1.1 ENVIRONMENT

1. Temperature Range: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 89.6°F)
2. Humidity Range: 15% to 80% RH (27°C 80%, 32°C 54%)
3. Ambient Illumination: Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight or strong light.)
4. Ventilation: Room air should turn over at least 3 times per hour
5. Ambient Dust: Less than 0.10 mg/m^3 (2.7 x 10^{-6} oz/yd^3)
6. If the place of installation is air-conditioned or heated, do not place the machine where it will be:
   1) Subjected to sudden temperature changes
   2) Directly exposed to cool air from an air-conditioner
   3) Directly exposed to heat from a heater
7. Do not place the machine where it will be exposed to corrosive gases.
8. Do not install the machine at any location over 2,000 m (6,500 feet) above sea level.
9. Place the copier on a strong and level base.
10. Do not place the machine where it may be subjected to strong vibrations.

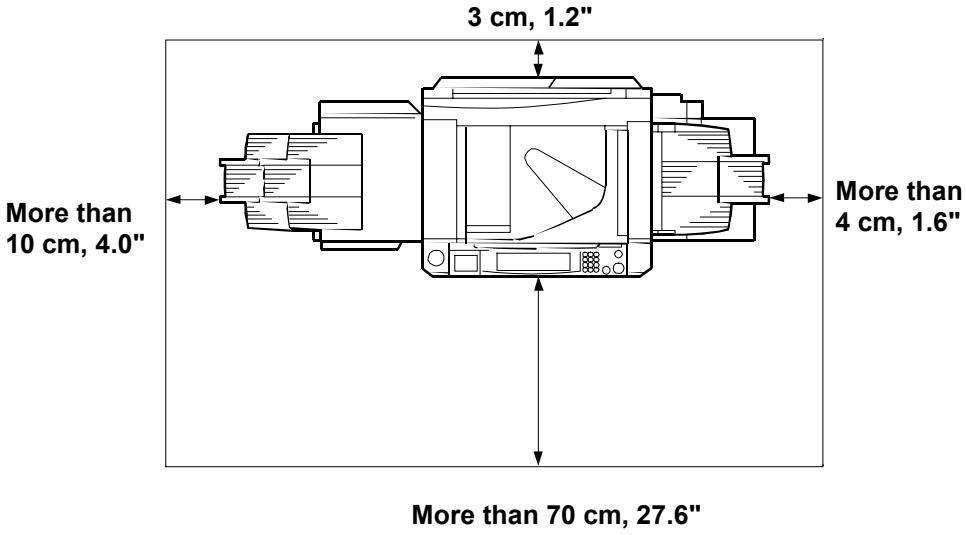
3.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

1. Front to back: Within 5 mm (0.2") of level
2. Right to left: Within 5 mm (0.2") of level

NOTE: The machine legs may be screwed up or down in order to level the machine. Set a carpenter's level on the exposure glass.

3.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

Place the copier near the power source, providing clearance as shown below. The same amount of clearance is necessary when optional equipment is installed.



3.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

⚠CAUTION
1. Make sure the plug is firmly inserted in the outlet.
2. Avoid multi-wiring.
3. Do not set anything on the power cord.

1.	Input voltage level:	120 V/60 Hz: More than 20 A 220~240 V/50-60 Hz: More than 10 A
2.	Permissible voltage fluctuation:	10%

3.2 COPIER (A229/A293/B098)

3.2.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description Q'ty

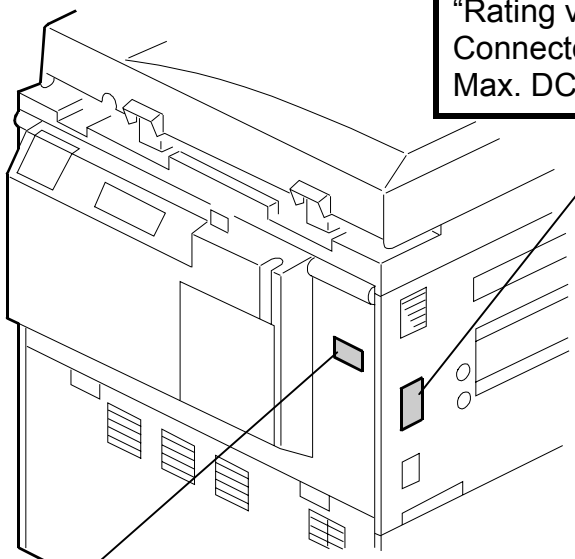
1. Model Name Decal (-15, -22 machines) 1
   A292/A293: -15, -22 machines
   B098: -22 machines
2. Operation Instructions – English
   A292/A294: -15 -15, -17, -22, -26, -29 machines
   B098: 17, -26, -29 machines
3. Operations Instructions – Chinese (-19, -69 machines) 1
4. Operations Instructions – Korean (-28 machines).....1
5. NECR with Envelope – English (-17 machines).....1
6. NECR – Multi-language (-27, -29 machines) 1
7. Operation Panel Brand Decal (-22 machines) 1
8. Paper Size Decal 1
9. Decal – Face Up 1
10. Original Exit Tray 1
11. Tapping Screw – M4 x 8 3
12. Plastic Mylar – Large 2
13. Plastic Mylar – Small 1
14. Leveling Shoes 2
15. Operation Instruction Holder 1

3.2.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

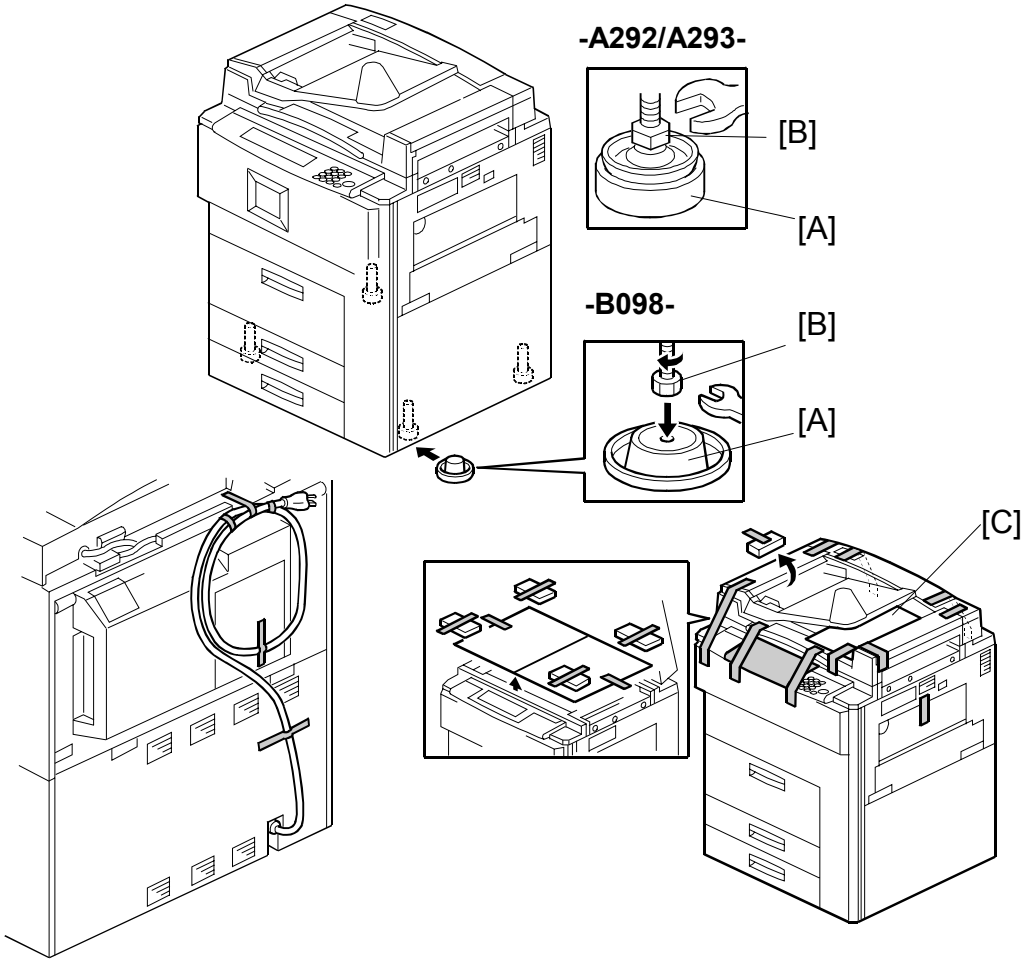
⚠CAUTION

Rating Voltage for Peripherals

Make sure to plug the cables into the correct sockets.



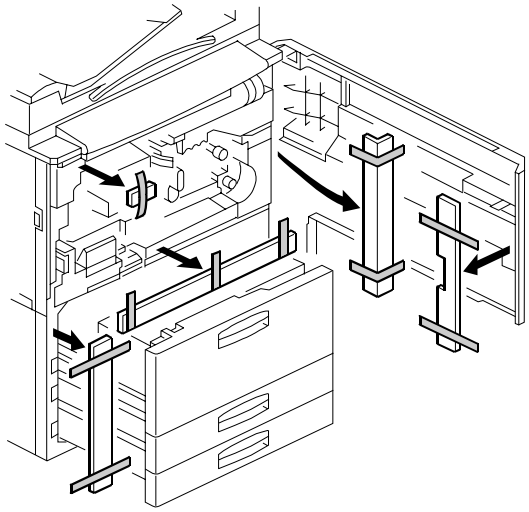
NOTE: Since the installation procedure is not packed with the copier as an accessory, always bring this manual with you.

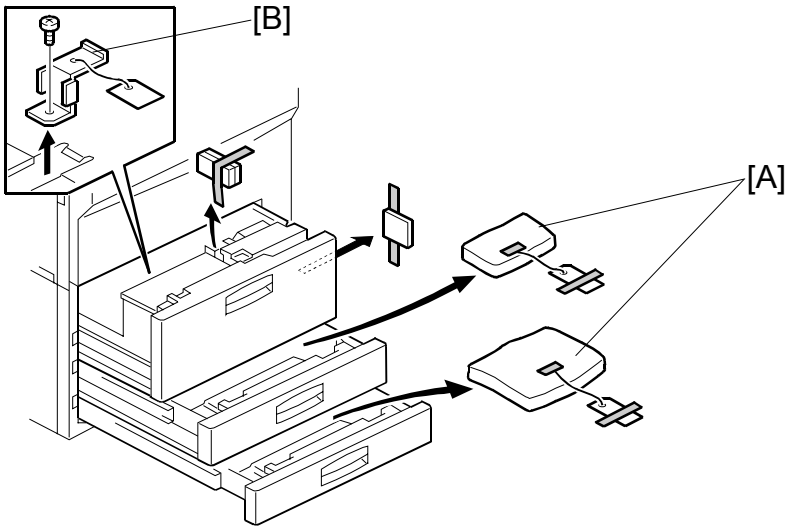


⚠CAUTION
Keep the power cord unplugged when starting the following procedure.

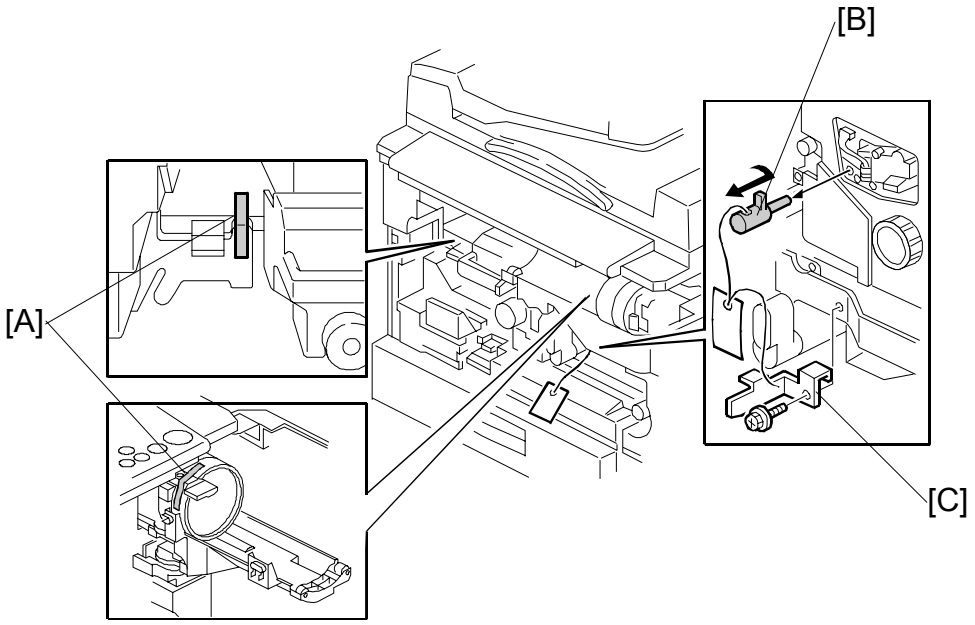
NOTE: 1) Keep the shipping retainers after installing the machine. They will be reused if the machine is moved to another location in the future.
2) Insert the leveling shoes [A] under the leveling feet [B] at the front, and level the machine before starting the installation. (The leveling feet [B] can be screwed up or down.) Extra leveling shoes and leveling feet are available as spare parts.

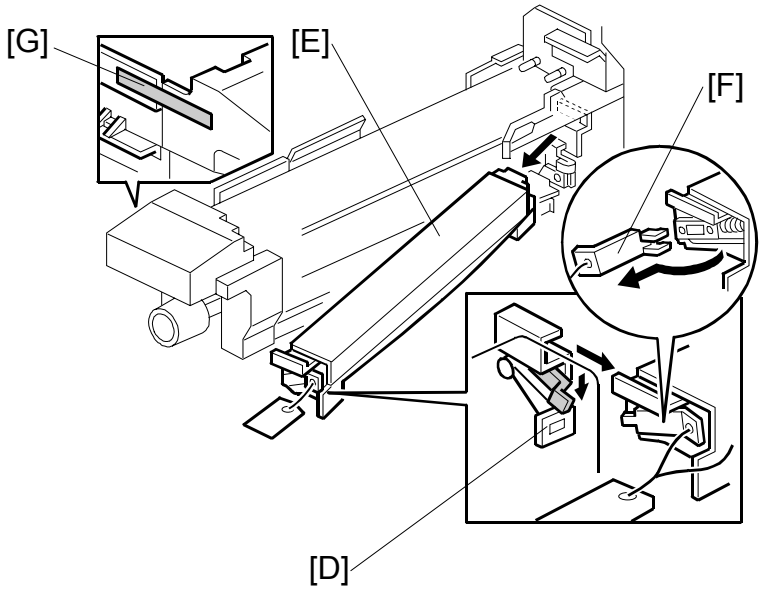
1. Remove the strips of tape from the outside as shown above.
2. Keep the factory setting data sheet [C] for future usage.



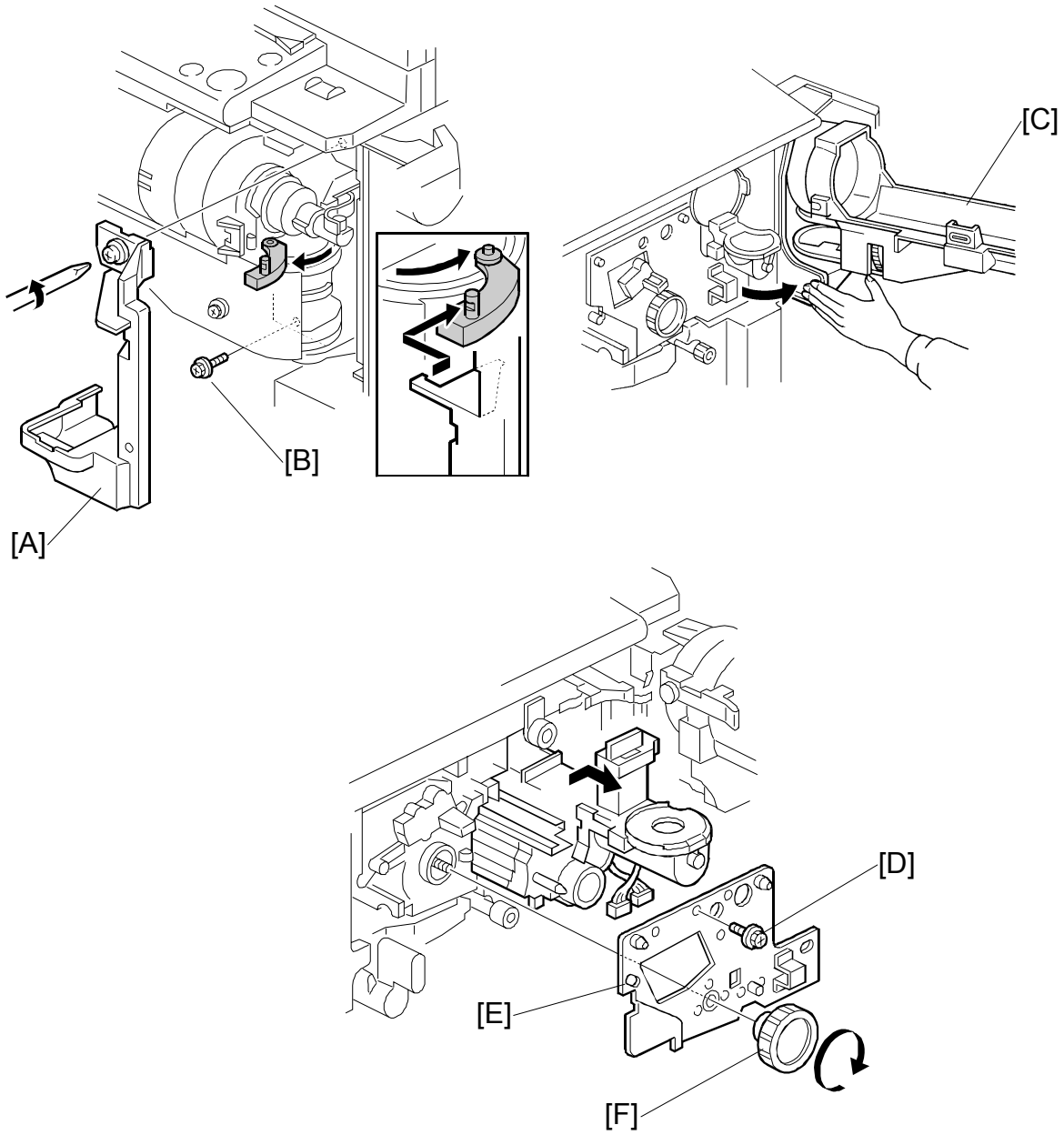


3. Draw out trays 1 and 2, and take out the accessory items [A] placed inside.
4. Remove the strips of tape from the inside and spring retainer [B] as shown above.

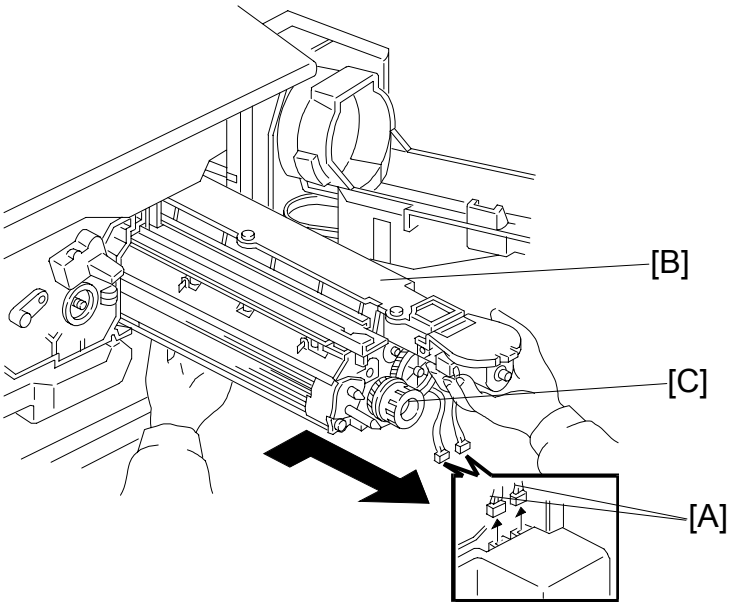


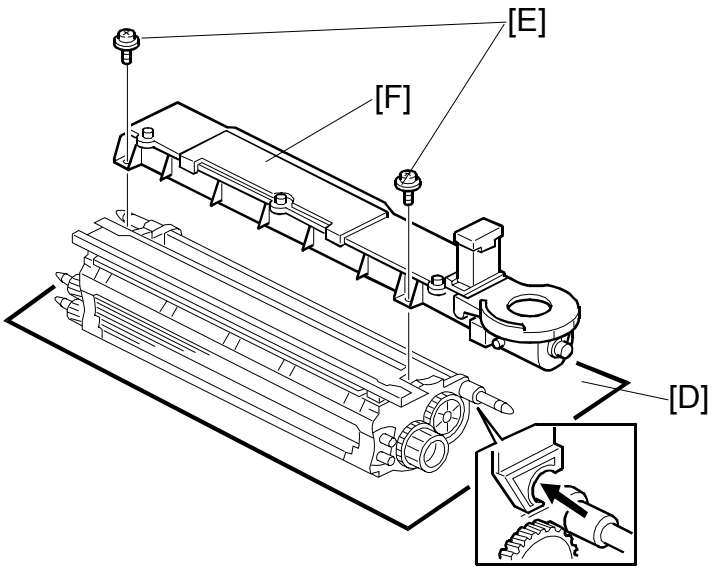


5. Open the front cover and remove the strips of tape [A].
6. Remove the blade release pin [B] together with the transfer belt lock plate [C] (1 screw).
7. Pull out the fusing unit. Lower the lever [D], remove the oil supply unit [E], and remove the front and rear clamps [F]. Reinstall the oil supply unit and push in the fusing unit. Remove the strip of filament tape [G] from the fusing unit.

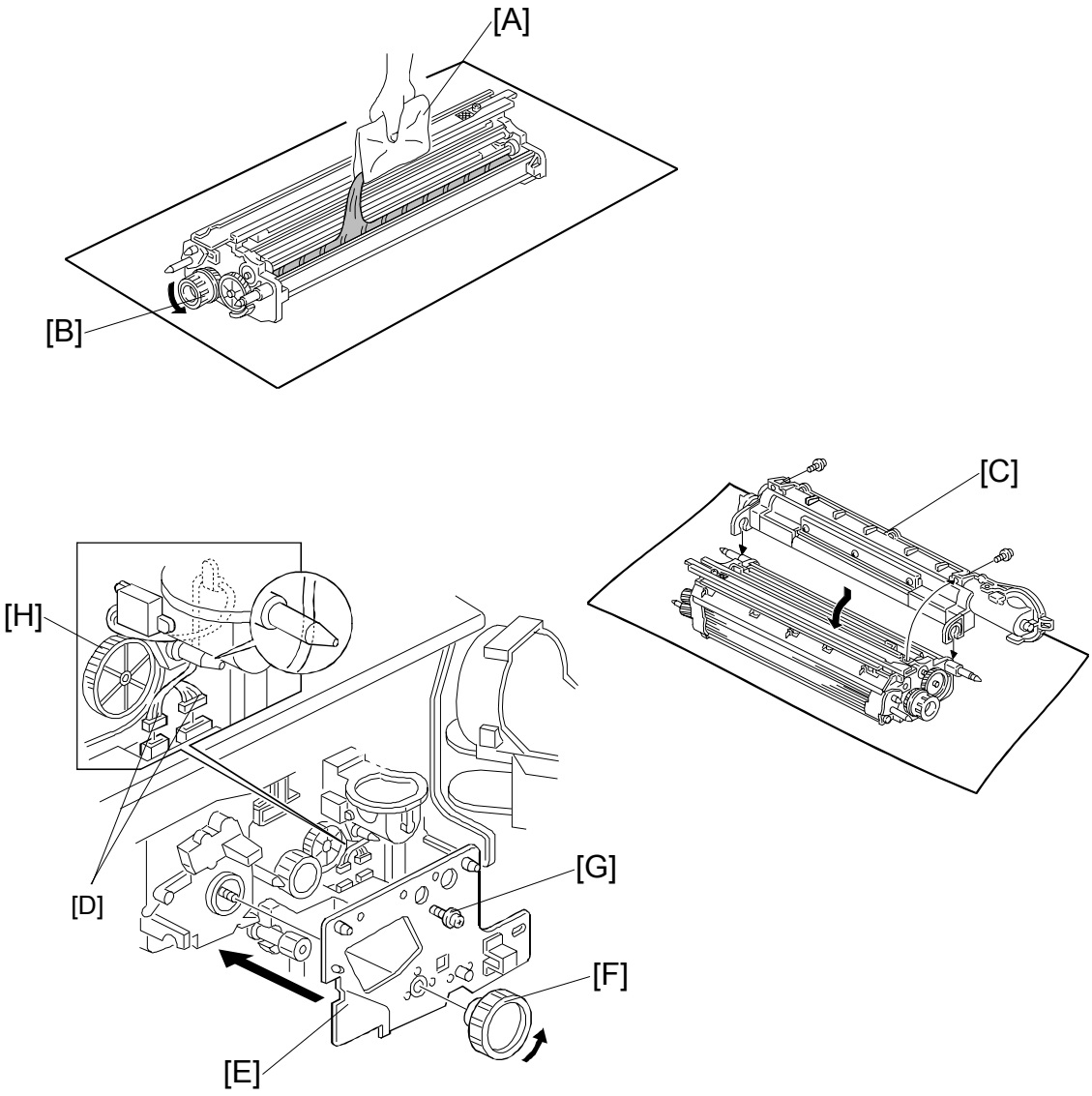


8. Remove the shutter inner cover [A] (1 screw).
9. Remove the screw [B] securing the toner bottle holder.
10. Swing out the toner bottle holder [C].
11. Remove the screw [D] that holds the drum stay [E].
12. Remove the drum stay knob [F] and the drum stay (turn the knob clockwise to remove it).

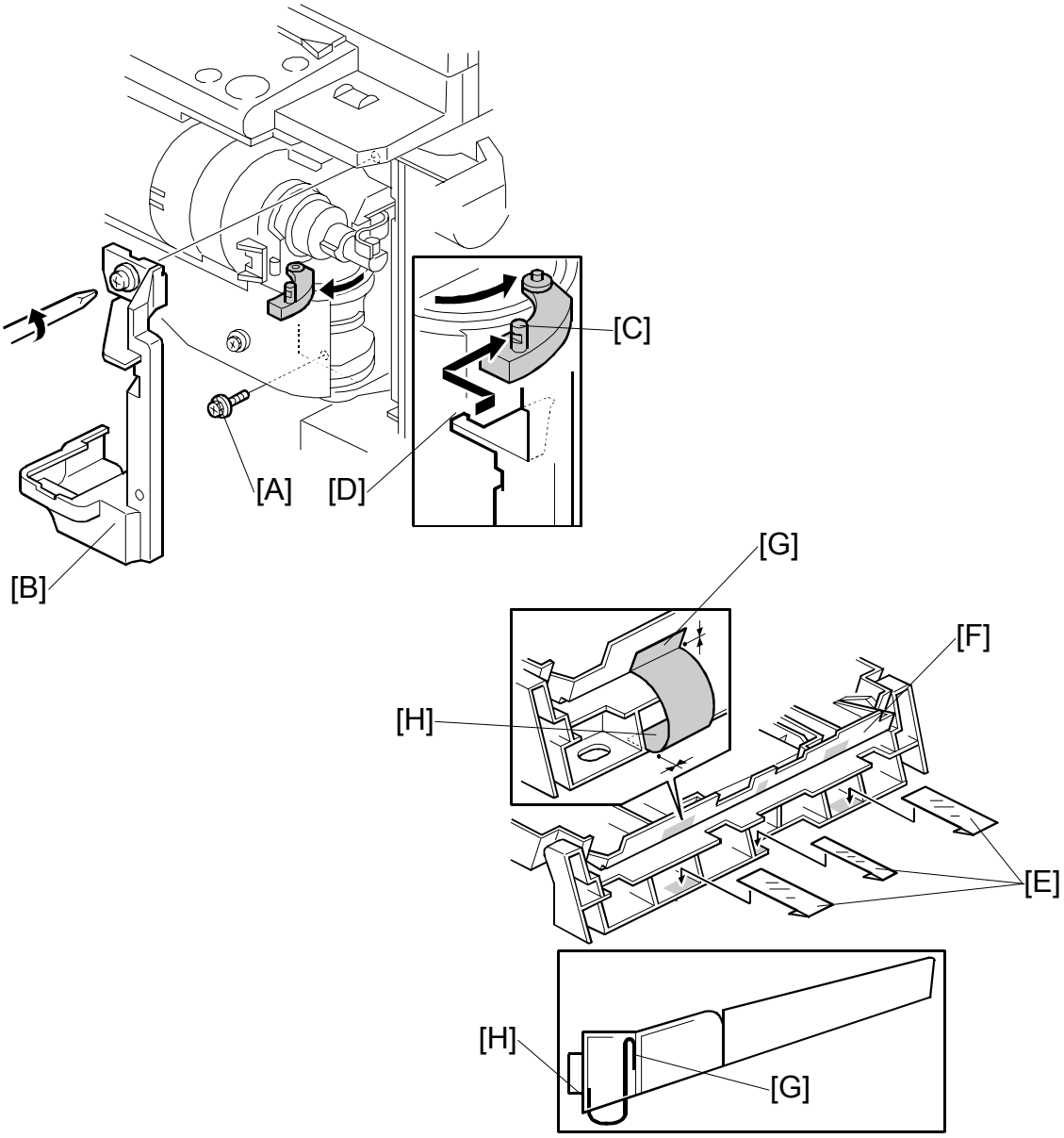




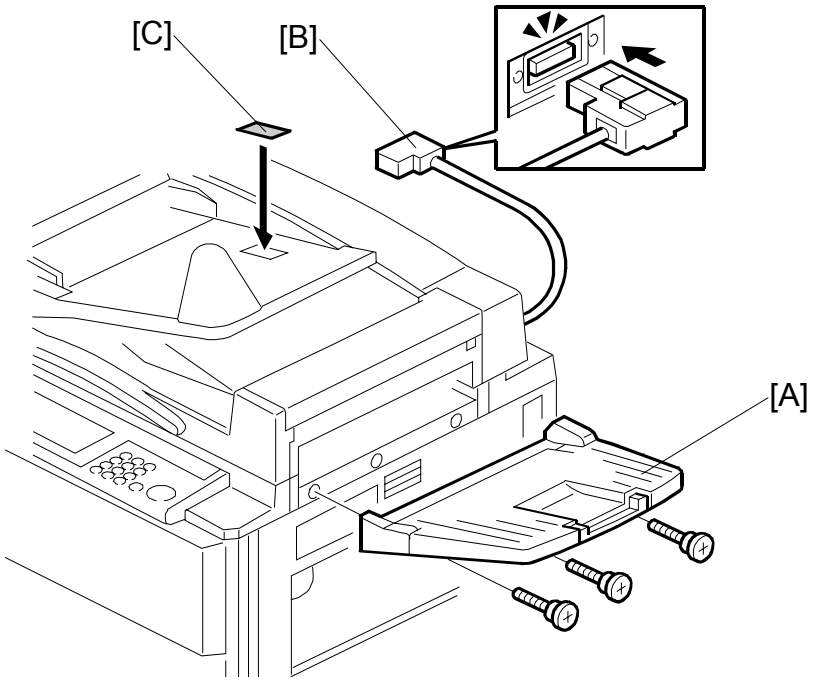
13. Disconnect two connectors [A].
14. Pull out the development unit [B] as shown.
    NOTE: 1) To prevent scratches on the drum, push the development unit to the right while pulling it out.
    2) When pulling out the development unit, do not pull the knob [C].
    3) Place the development unit on a clean sheet of paper [D], to prevent foreign matter from being attracted to the sleeve rollers.
15. Remove the two screws [E] that hold the toner hopper [F].
16. Remove the toner hopper by lifting it out.



17. Pour in one pack of developer [A] while turning the knob [B]. Distribute the developer evenly along the development unit.
18. Attach the toner hopper [C] to the development unit (2 screws).
19. Install the development unit in the machine.
20. Connect two connectors [D].
21. Attach the drum stay [E] and attach the drum stay knob [F] and one screw [G].
    NOTE: When installing the drum stay, be careful not to pinch the cables, and keep the cables away from the gear [H].



22. Set the toner bottle holder in position (1 screw [A]) and attach the shutter inner cover [B] (1 screw).
    NOTE: When attaching the shutter cover, make sure that the pin [C] in the shutter engages the stopper [D].
23. Install a toner bottle by following the instructions on the decal.
24. Attach the three plastic mylar strips [E] to the back of the original exit tray [F].
    NOTE: 1) The small mylar strip should be in the middle.
    2) The mylar strips must be attached to the tray side [G] first, then to the base copier side [H].



25. Install the original exit tray [A] (3 screws).
26. Connect the ARDF connector [B] to the socket at the rear of the copier.
27. Attach the face up decal [C] to the feed tray as shown.
28. Plug in the power cord, then turn on the main power switch and the operation switch.
    NOTE: Do not make any copies until after SP2963 has finished in step 30.

29. Before the machine automatically starts the Auto Process Control (within approximately 2 minutes after the main switch is turned on), enter SP mode as follows:
    1) Press the clear modes key.
    2) Enter “107”
    3) Hold down the clear/stop key for more than 3 seconds.

    → 1 → 0 → 7 →

NOTE: If you cannot enter the SP mode before the machine automatically starts Auto Process Control, do not turn off the main switch until step 30 finishes.

30. Select “Copy SP” on the LCD, and perform the initial setting as follows:
    1) Enter “2963” using the numeric keys.
    2) Press the “Enter” key.
    3) Press the “Start” key on the LCD.
    NOTE: This SP mode performs the TD initial setting and the forced toner supply. It will stop automatically when both procedures have finished.
31. **For B098 only:** Exit SP mode.
32. **For B098 only;** Set the date and time for the copier’s clock inside “User tools”:
    1) Press “User Tools/Counter” key.
    2) Select “System setting”, then “Set Time” on the LCD.
    3) Select “Set Day” and enter the current date.
    4) Select “Set Time” and enter the current time.
    NOTE: Make sure to set the date and time before initializing the electrical copy counter (Step34 below)
33. **For B098 only:** Exit “User Tools” and enter SP mode.
34. Initialize the electrical copy counter using SP7-825.
35. If necessary, select the correct display language (SP5-009).
36. Press the “Exit” key on the LCD to exit SP mode.
37. Change the paper size for all paper trays to suit the customer’s requests. (See section 3.3 “Paper Size Change” for details.)
38. Attach the appropriate paper size decals, which are included as accessories, to each paper feed tray.
39. Check copy quality and machine operation.

3.3 LCT (A698/B587)

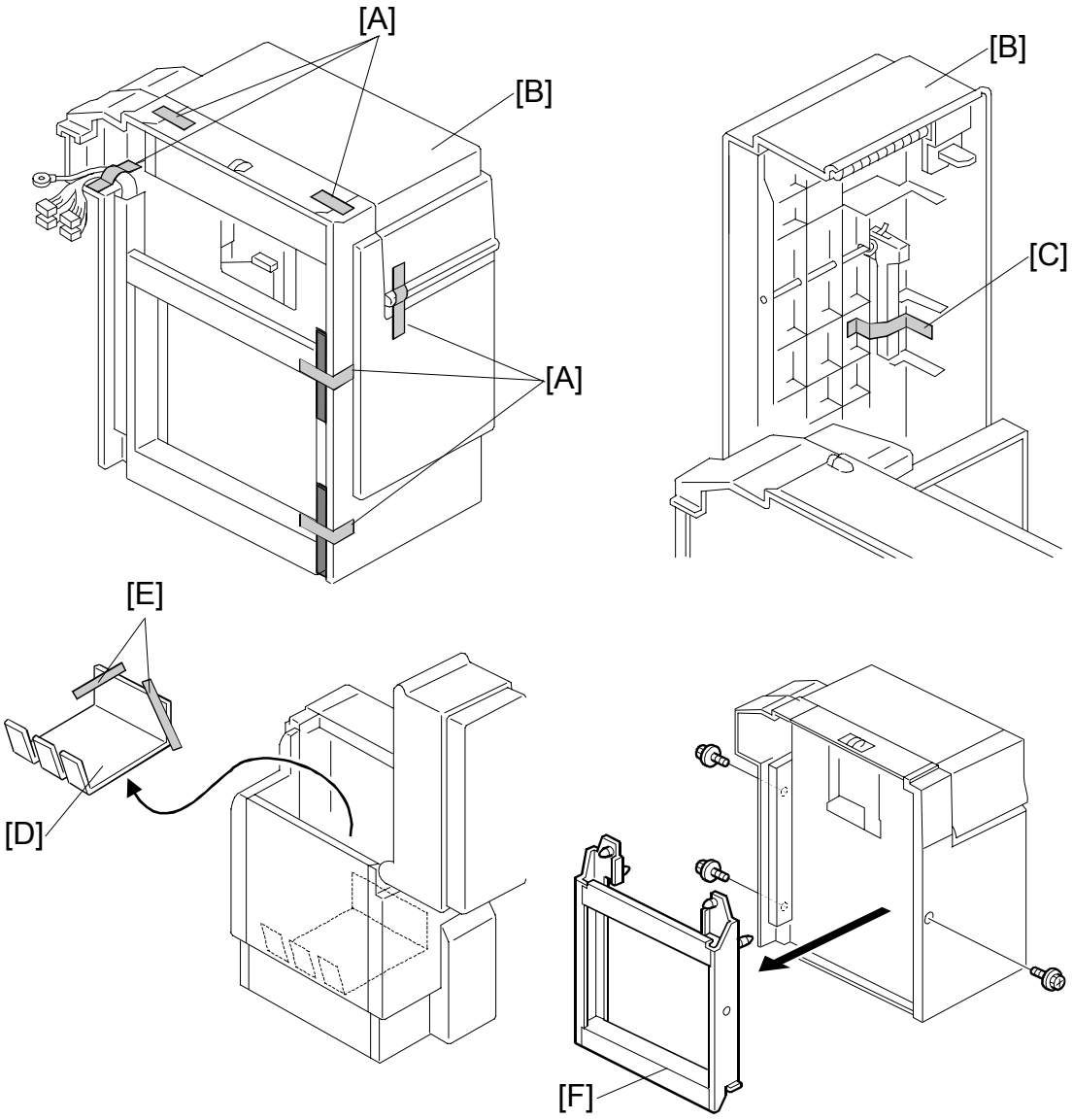
3.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

The LCT: A698 is for the A292/A293 copiers.

The LCT: B587 is for the B098copier only.

Description	Q'ty
1. LCT Feed Unit	1
2. Small Cap - Left Cover	1
3. Tapping Screw - M4 x 8	3
4. Philips Pan Head Screw - M4 x 16	3
5. Philips Pan Head Screw - M4 x 6	1
6. Installation Procedure (English)	1
7. New Equipment Condition Report (A698 only)	1

3.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

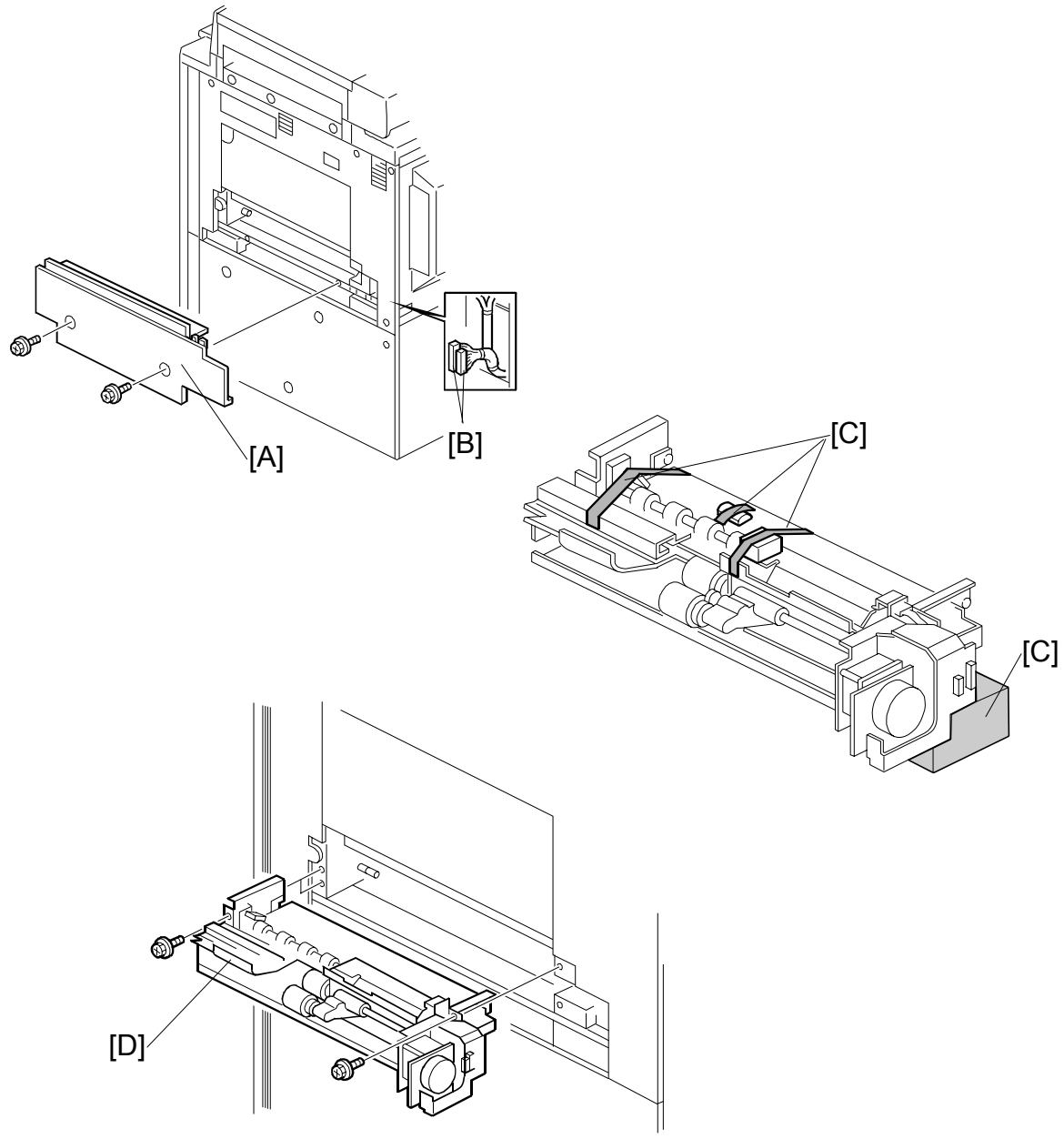


F

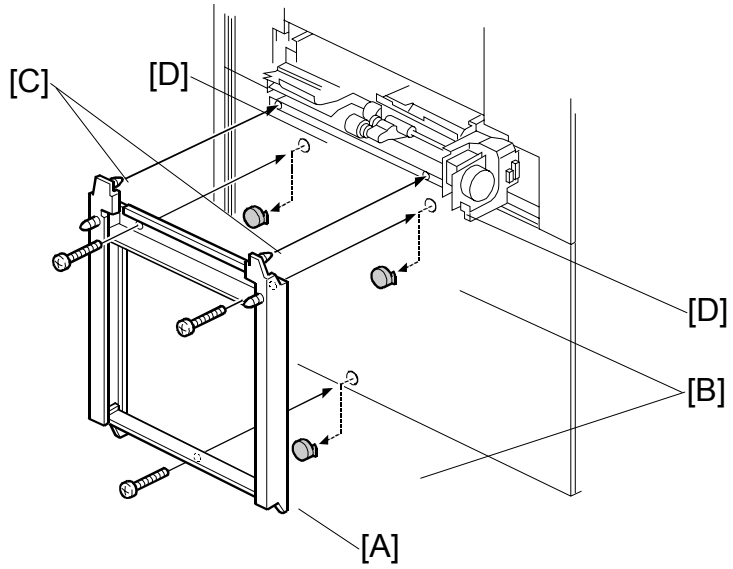
⚠CAUTION

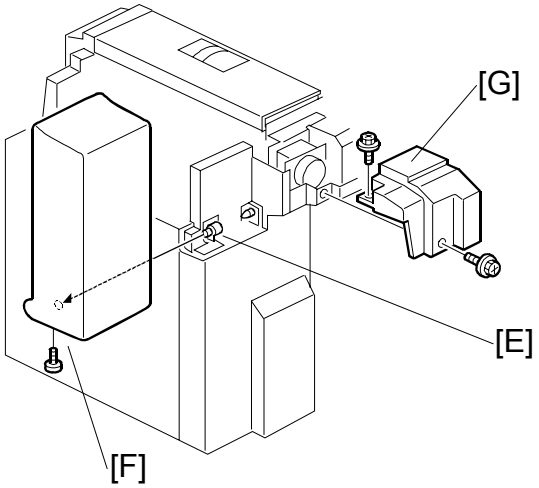
Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Remove the four strips of tape [A].
2. Open the LCT cover [B] and remove the tape [C] fixing the paper trailing edge stopper.
3. Remove the tray cushion [D] secured with strips of tape [E].
4. Remove the LCT connector [F] (3 screws).

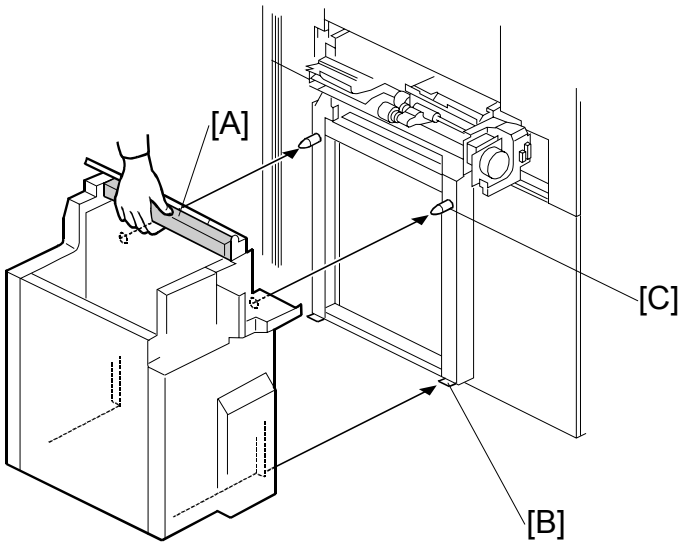


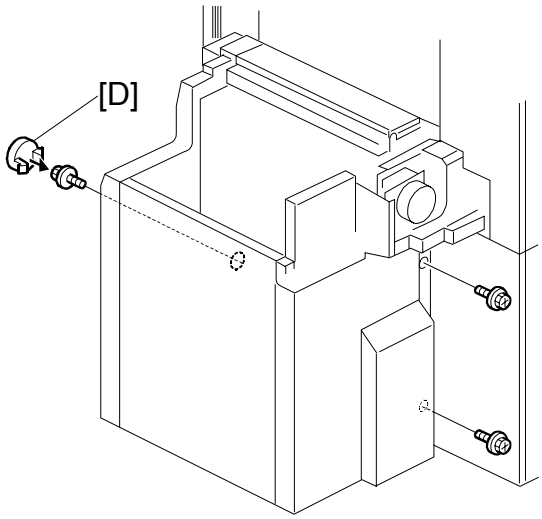
5. Remove the feed unit cover [A] (2 screws) and free the LCT connectors [B].
6. Remove the shipping retainers [C].
7. Install the LCT feed unit [D] to the copier (3 screws - M 4 x 8).





8. Install the LCT connector [A] to the copier.
   1) Remove the three caps [B].
   2) Set the two pins [C] of the LCT connector into the two holes [D] on the copier.
   3) Install the LCT connector to the copier (3 screws - M4 x 16).
9. Remove the screw fixing the upper cover hinge [E] then slide and remove the LCT cover [F] (1 screw).
10. Remove the rear upper cover [G] (2 screws).

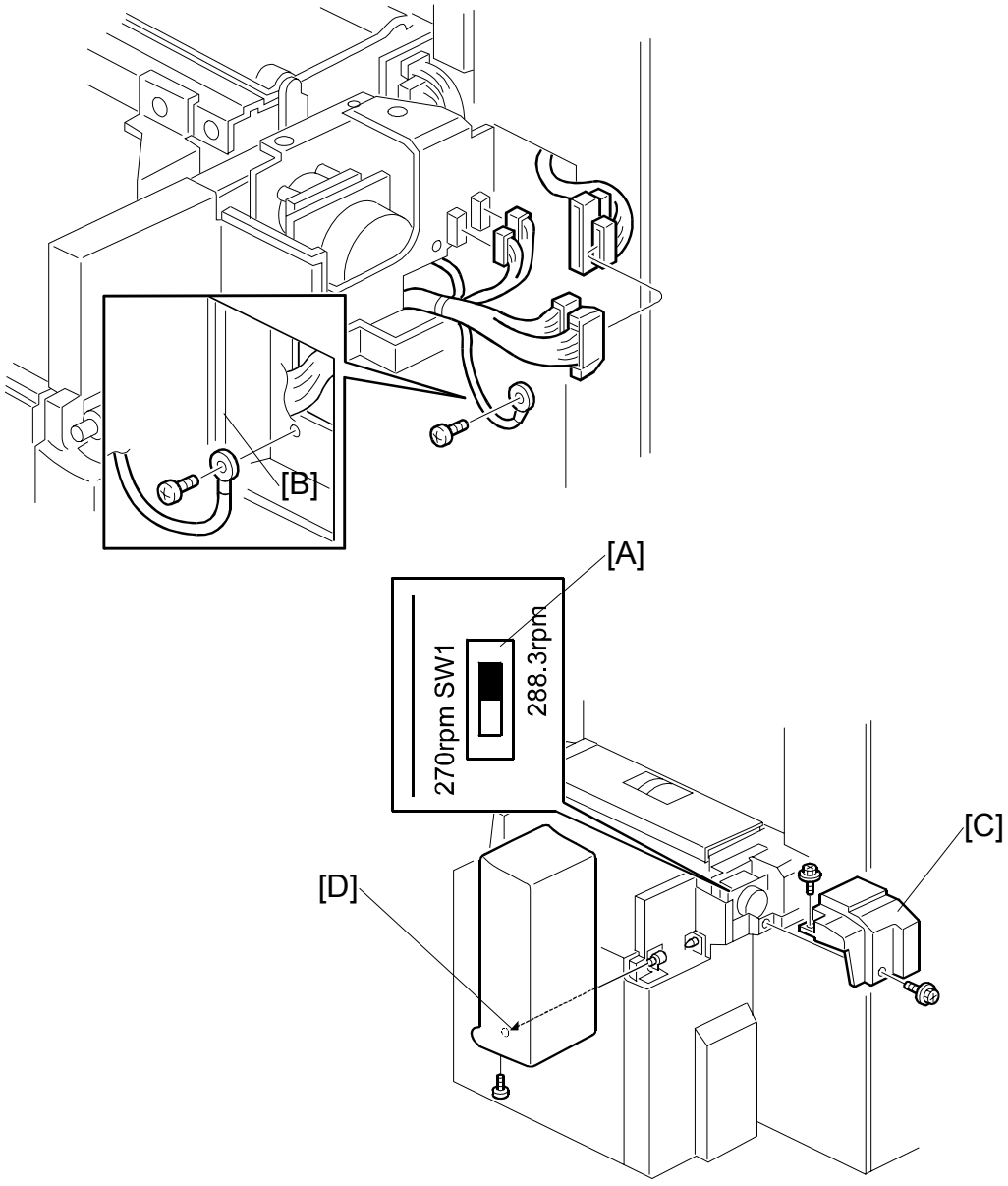




11. Hold the upper stay [A] of the LCT and place the LCT on the plates [B] of the LCT connector.

⚠CAUTION
Properly place the LCT on the plate [B] of the LCT connector.

12. Insert the two pins [C] on the LCT connector into the two holes on the LCT.
13. Secure the LCT to the LCT connector (3 screws).
14. Set the cap [D] in the front screw access hole.



15. Connect the connectors.
    - Between the copier and the LCT (2 connectors).
    - Between the LCT and the LCT feed unit (2 connectors).

    NOTE: Confirm that DIPSW1 [A] is set to 288.3rpm. If it is not, change the switch to this setting.

    Factory setting of the DIPSW1: A698 ---270 rpm
    B587 ---288.3 rpm
16. Secure the protective earth wire [B] on the copier (1 screw – M4 x 6).
17. Install the rear upper cover [C] (2 screws).
18. Install the LCT cover [D] (1 screw).
19. Plug in the copier and check machine operation.

    NOTE: The copier automatically recognizes that the LCT has been installed.

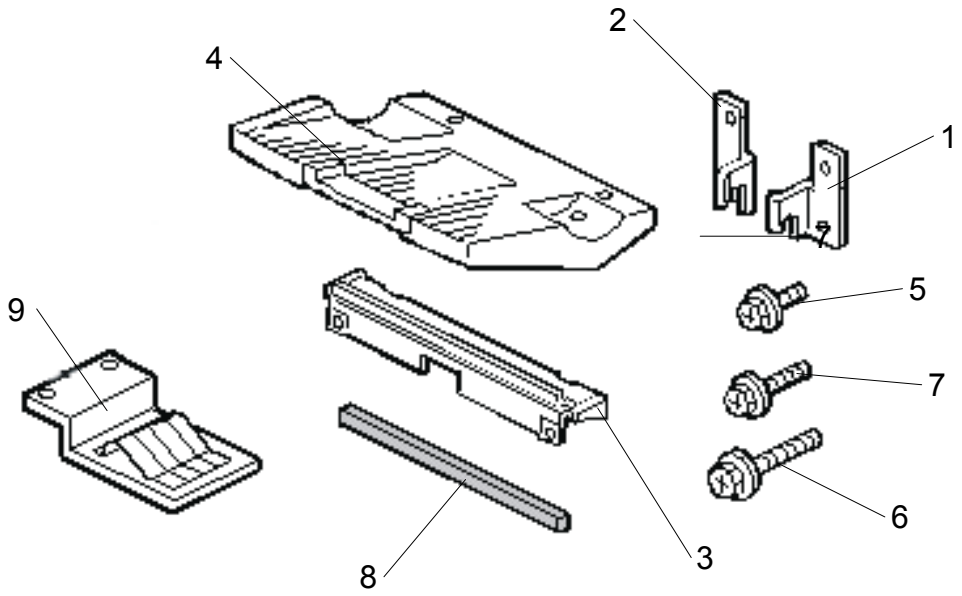
3.4 3,000-SHEET FINISHER (B312)

The 3,000-sheet finisher: B312 is for the A292/A293 copiers.
The 3,000-sheet finisher: B586 is for the B098 copier only.

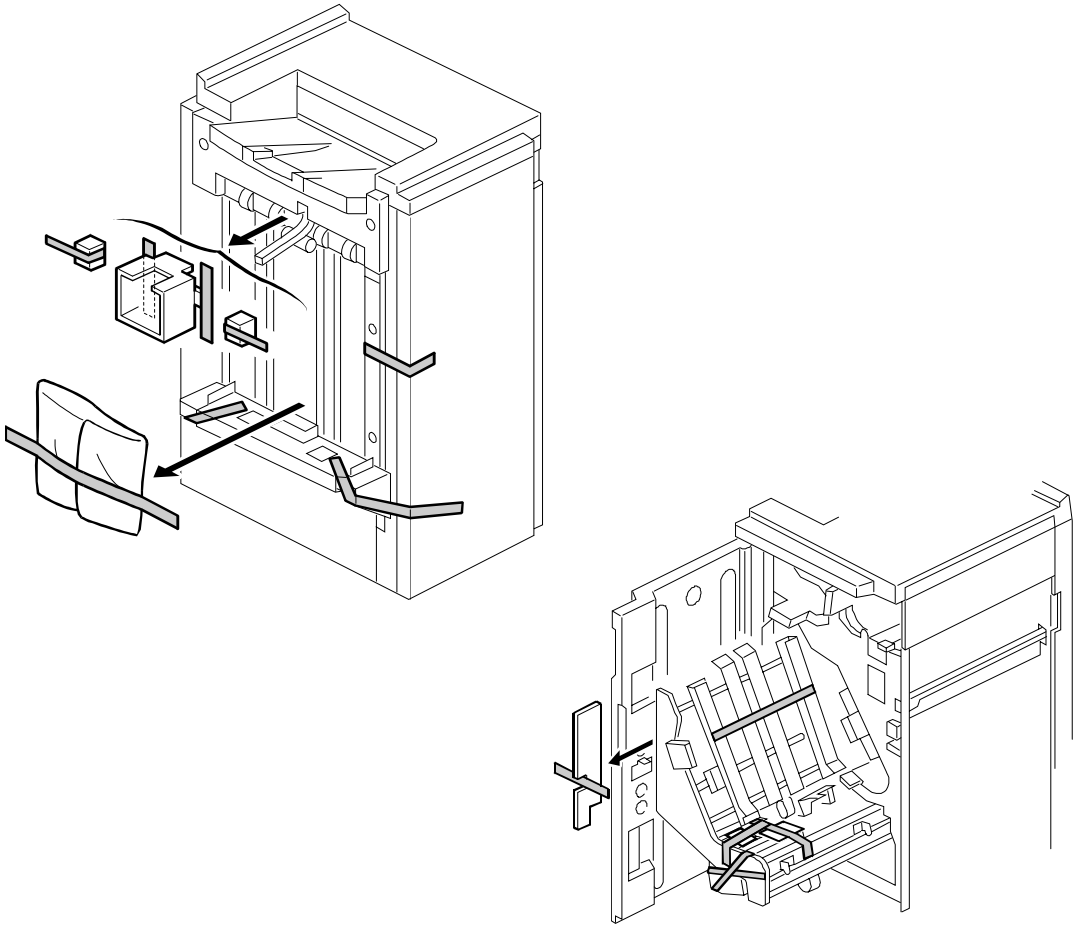
3.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the accessories in the box according to the following list:

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Front Joint Bracket	1
2	Rear Joint Bracket	1
3	Entrance Guide Plate	1
4	Shift Tray	1
5	Tapping Screw - M3 x 6	1
6	Tapping Screw - M4 x 14	1
7	Tapping Screw - M3 x 8	1
8	Cushion	4
9	Lower Grounding Plate	4
10	Installation Procedure (English)	1
11	Exit Guide Mylar (B312 only)	1
12	Staple Position Decal (B312 only)	1
13	New Equipment Condition Report (B312 only)	1

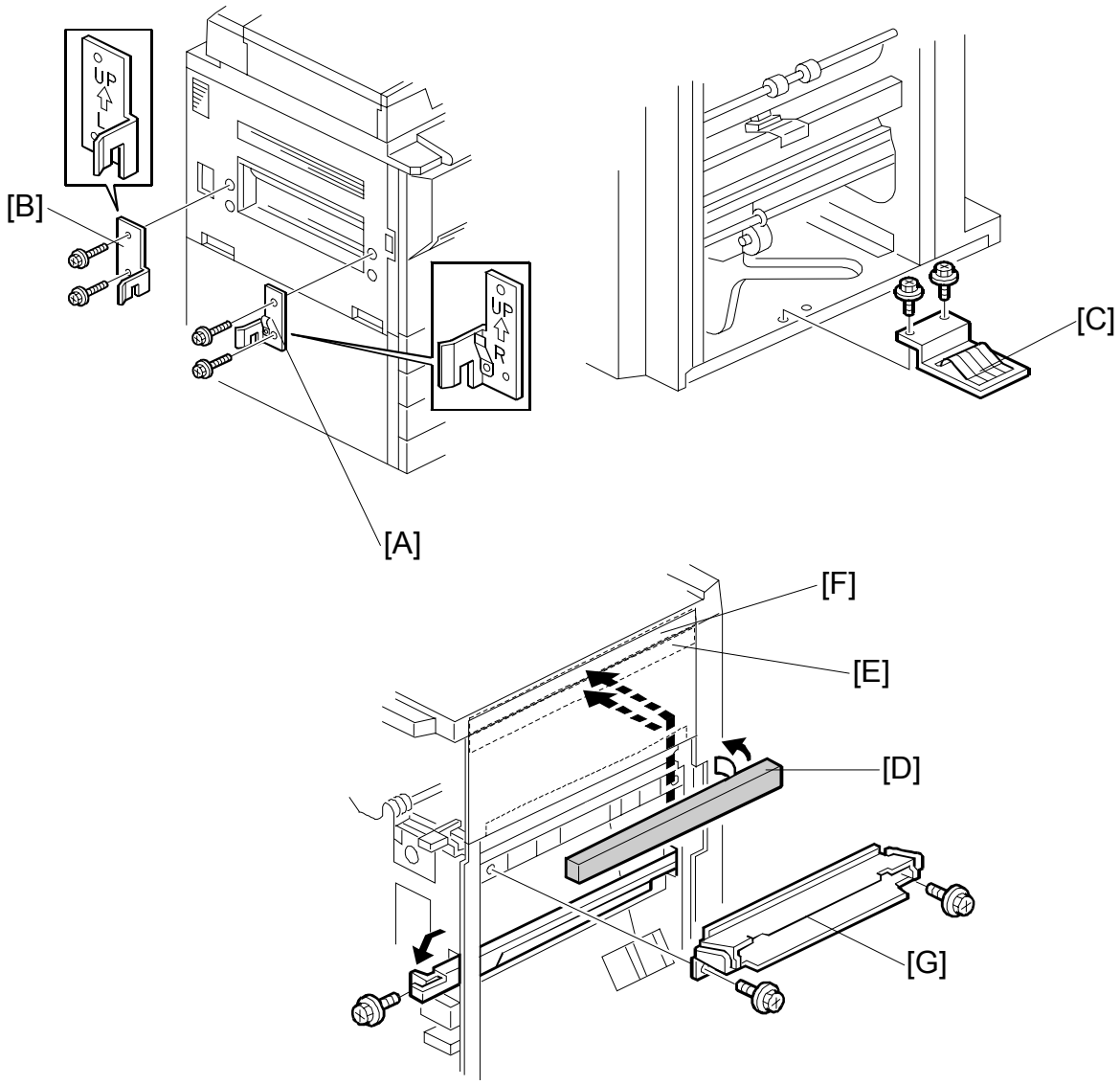


3.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

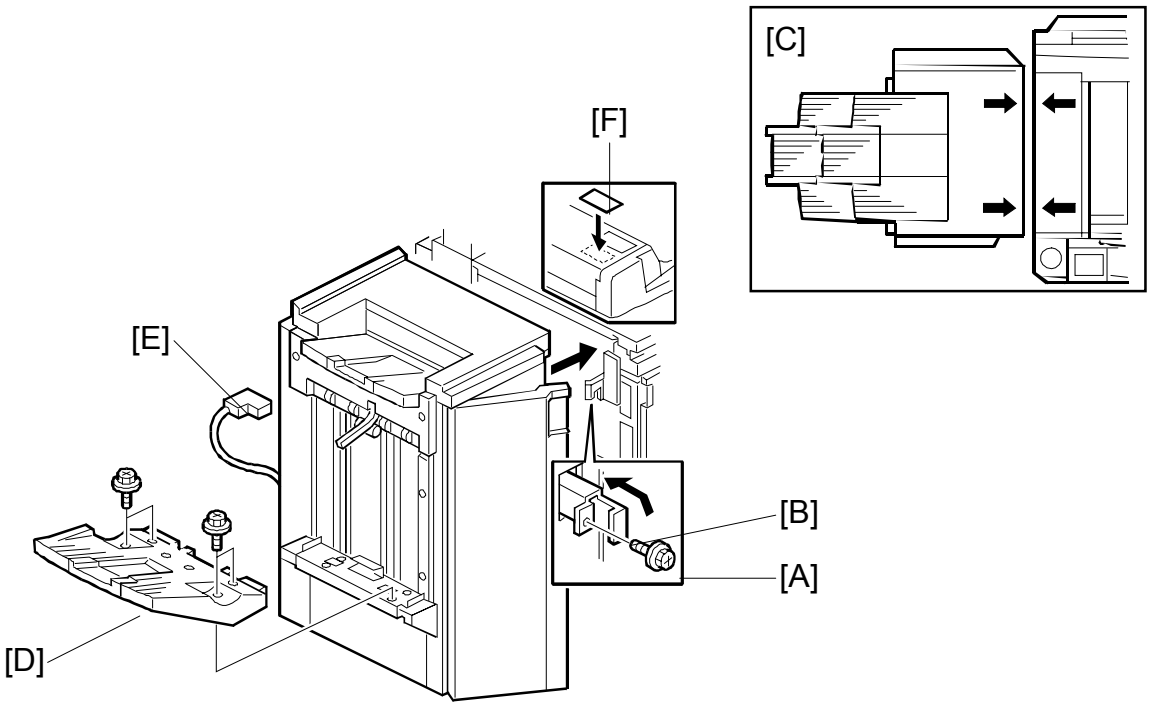


⚠CAUTION
Unplug the main machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes.



2. Install the front joint bracket [A] and rear joint bracket [B] (2 screws - M4 x 14 each).
3. Install the lower grounding plate [C].
4. The position of the cushion [D] varies depending on which base copier or peripherals that are installed. Attach the cushion on the plate as follows
   - Position [E] for A292/A293 and B098 copiers.
   - Position [F] when the optional mailbox (G909 for A292/A293) in installed.
5. Install the entrance guide plate [G] (2 screws).



6. Open the front door of the finisher, and remove the screw [A] which secures the locking lever [B]. Then pull the locking lever.
7. Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever.
   NOTE: Before securing the locking lever, make sure that the top edges of the finisher and the copier are parallel from front to rear as shown [C].
8. Secure the locking lever (1 screw) and close the front door.
9. Install the shift tray [D] (4 screws).
10. Connect the finisher cable [E] to the main machine.
11. **For B312 only:** Attach the staple position decal [F] to the ARDF as shown.
12. Turn on the main power switch and check the finisher operation.

3.5 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (A812) FOR B312/B586 FINISHER

The 3,000-sheet finisher: B312 is for the A292/A293 copiers.

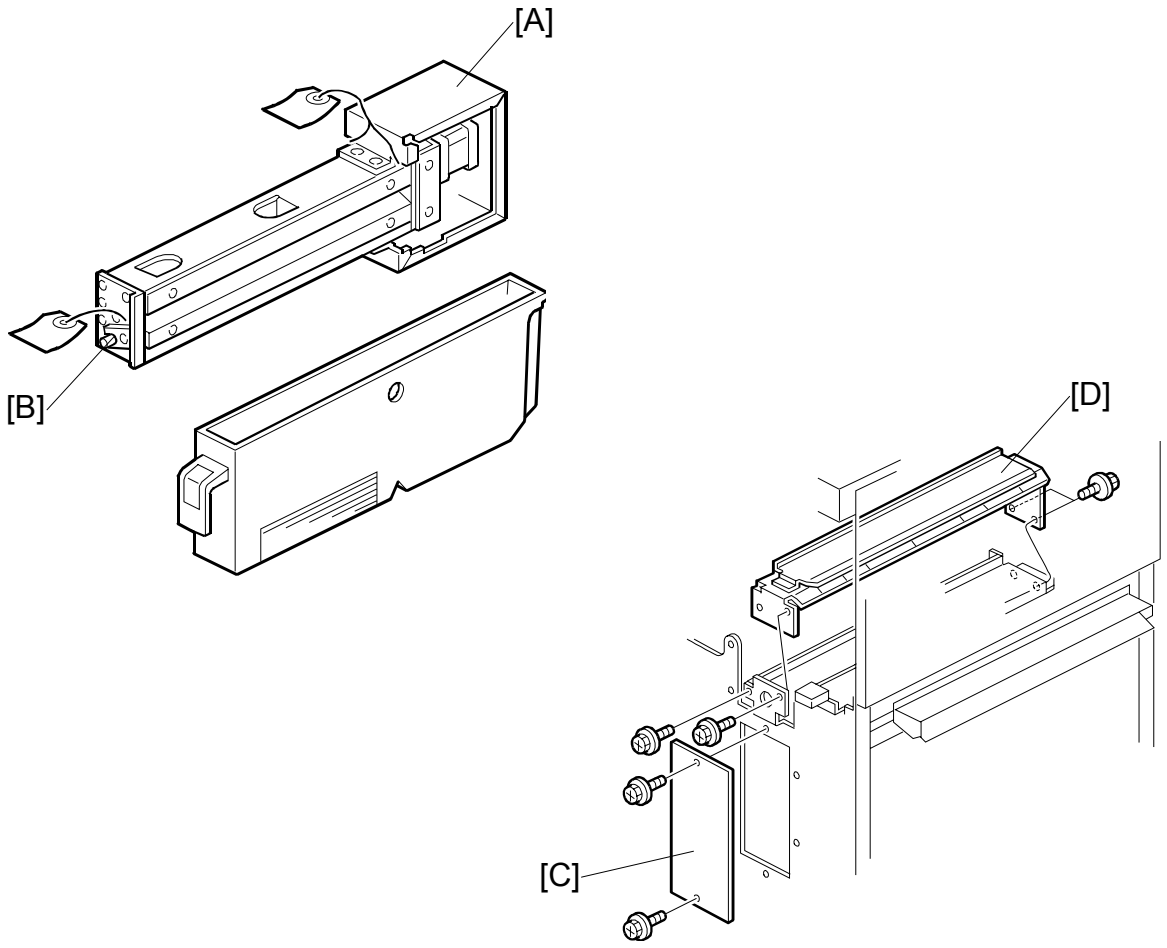
The 3,000-sheet finisher: B586 id for the B098 copier only.

3.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the accessories in the box against the following list.

Description	Q'ty
1. Spacer –2 mm	1
2. Spacer – 1 mm	2
3. Stepped Screw – Short	1
4. Stepped Screw – Long	1
5. Punch Unit Knob	1
6. Spring	1
7. Harness – Long	1
8. Harness – Short	1
9. Hopper	1
10. Punch Position Decal	1
11. Tapping Screw – M4 x 10	2
12. Screw with Flat Washer – M4 x 6	1

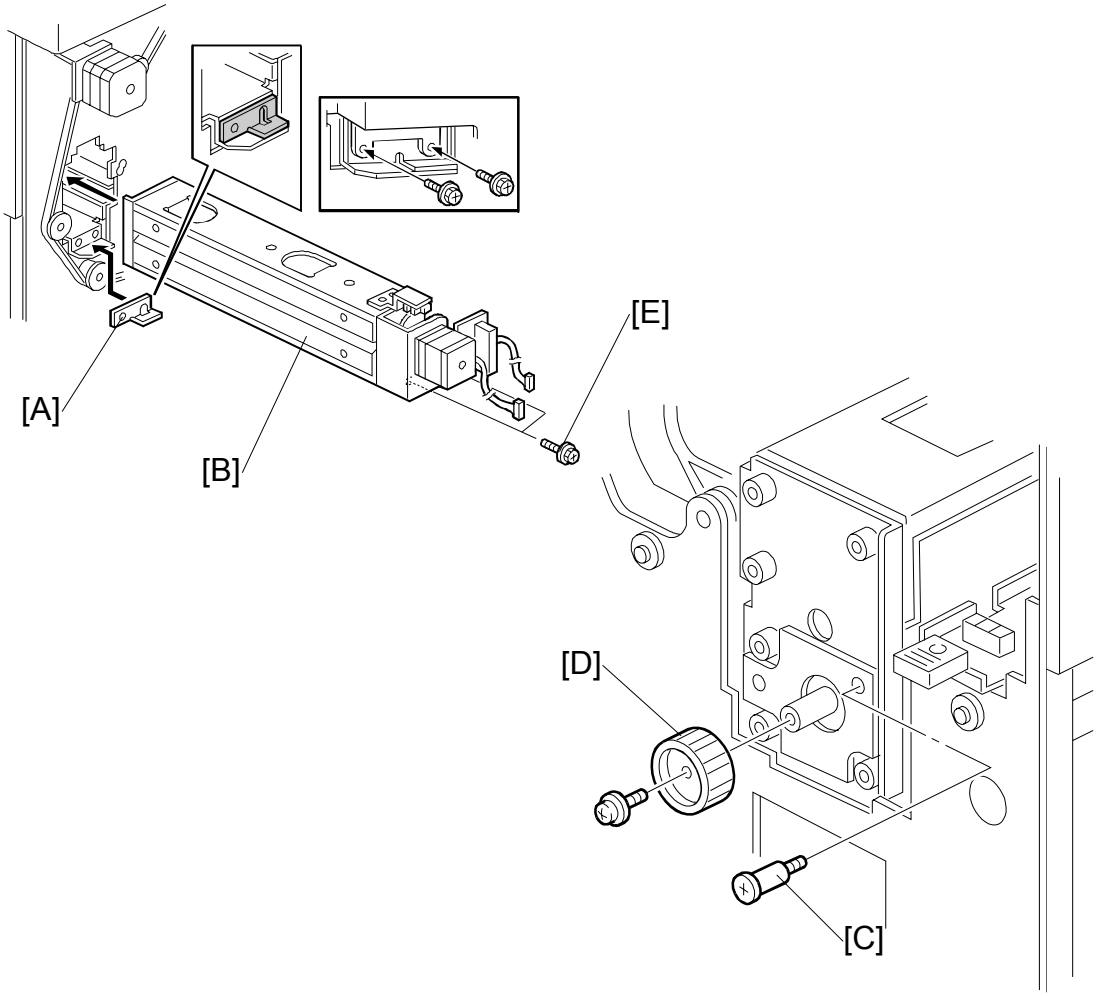
3.5.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION



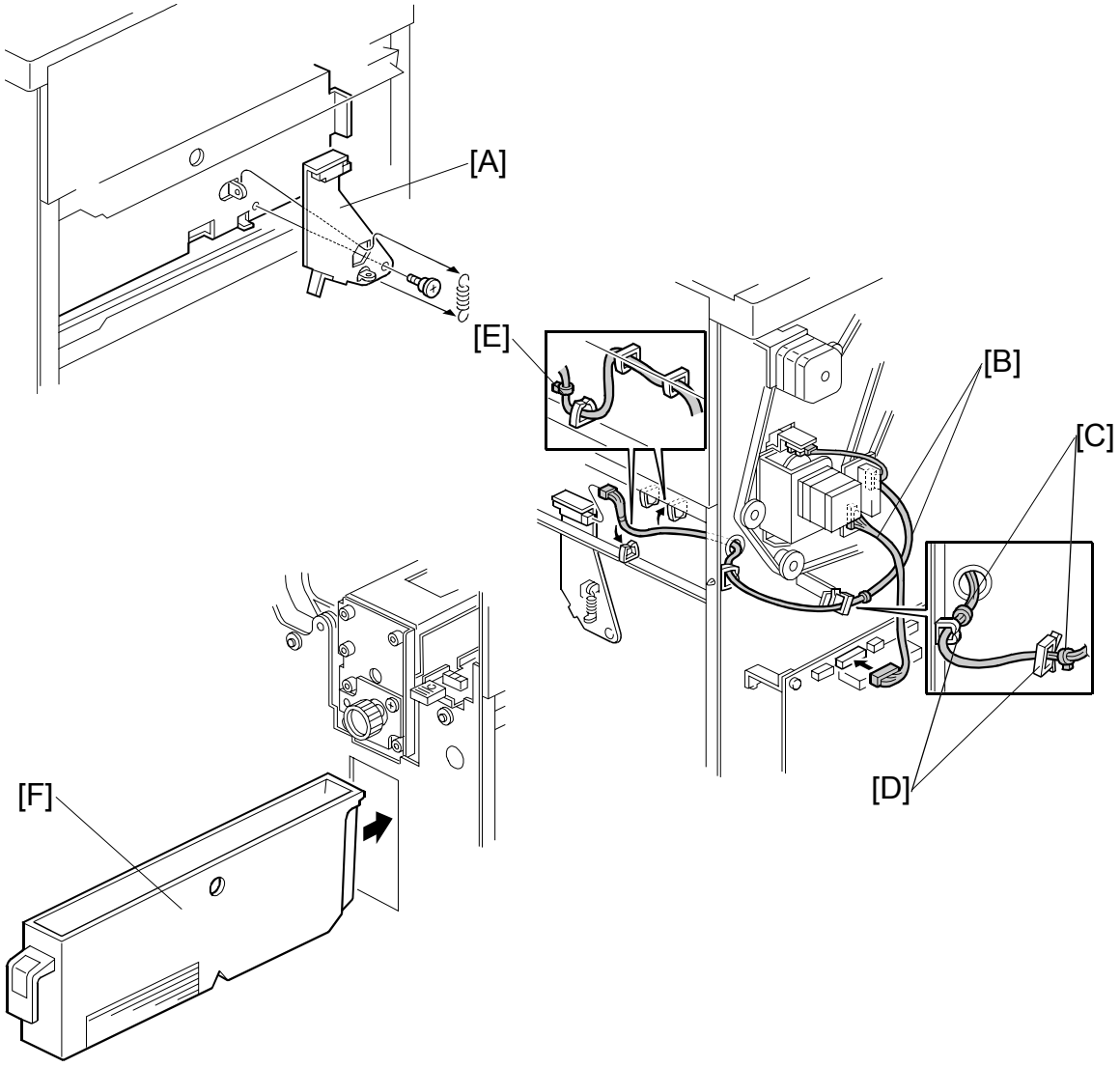
⚠CAUTION

Unplug the copier power cord and remove the 3,000-sheet finisher from the copier before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the punch unit and remove the shipping retainers [A] (4 screws) and [B] (1 screw).
2. Open the front door and remove the hopper cover [C] (2 screws).
3. Remove the rear cover (2 screws) and remove the transport guide plate [D] (4 screws).



4. Install the spacer [A] (thickness = 2 mm).
   NOTE: There are three spacers in the accessory box. Do not lose the other two spacers (1 mm), because they are used for adjusting the punch hole position.
5. Install the punch unit [B] and secure it with a long stepped screw [C].
6. Install the punch unit knob [D] (1 screw).
7. Secure the rear of the punch unit (2 screws [E]).



8. Install the sensor bracket [A] (1 short stepped screw, 1 spring).
9. Connect the cables [B].

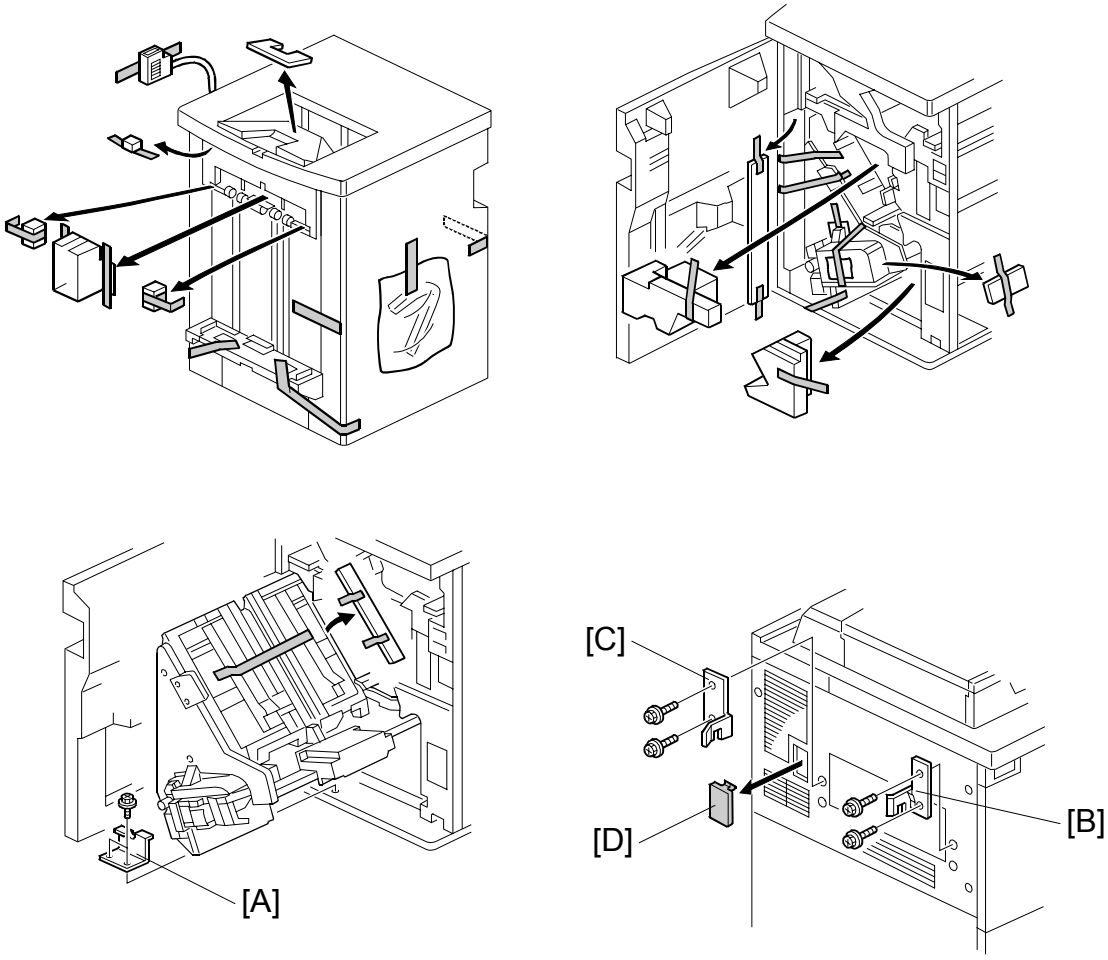
NOTE: 1) The cable binders [C] must not be between the cable clamps [D].
2) The cable binder [E] must be positioned to the left of the cable clamp.

10. **When a three-punch-hole-unit is installed:** Change switch 1 of DIP SW 100 on the punch drive board has been set to ON.
11. Slide the hopper [F] into the finisher.
12. Reassemble the finisher and attach it to the copier. Then check the punch unit operation.

3.6 FINISHER (B302)

The finisher: B302 is for the A292/A293 copiers

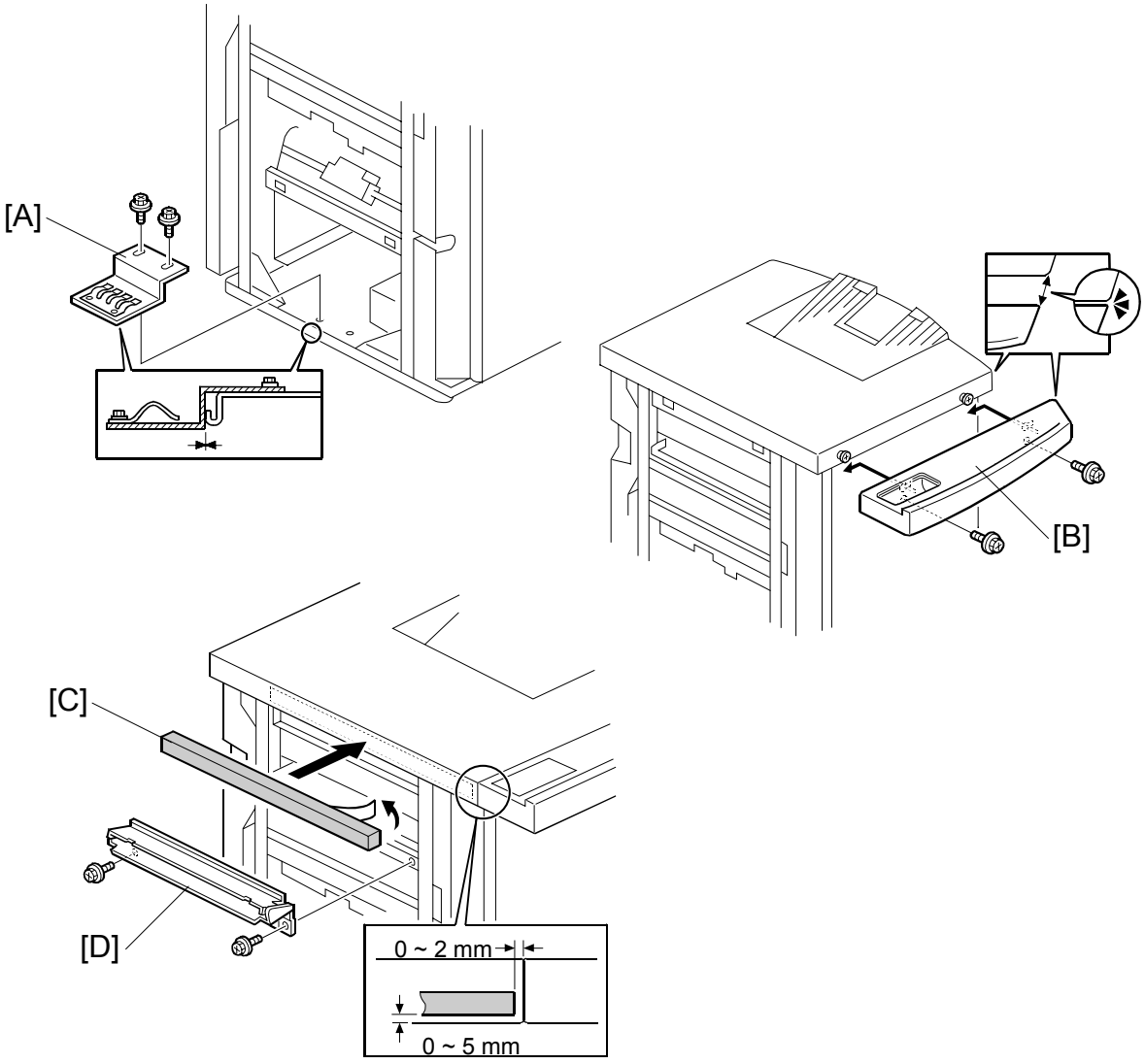
3.6.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



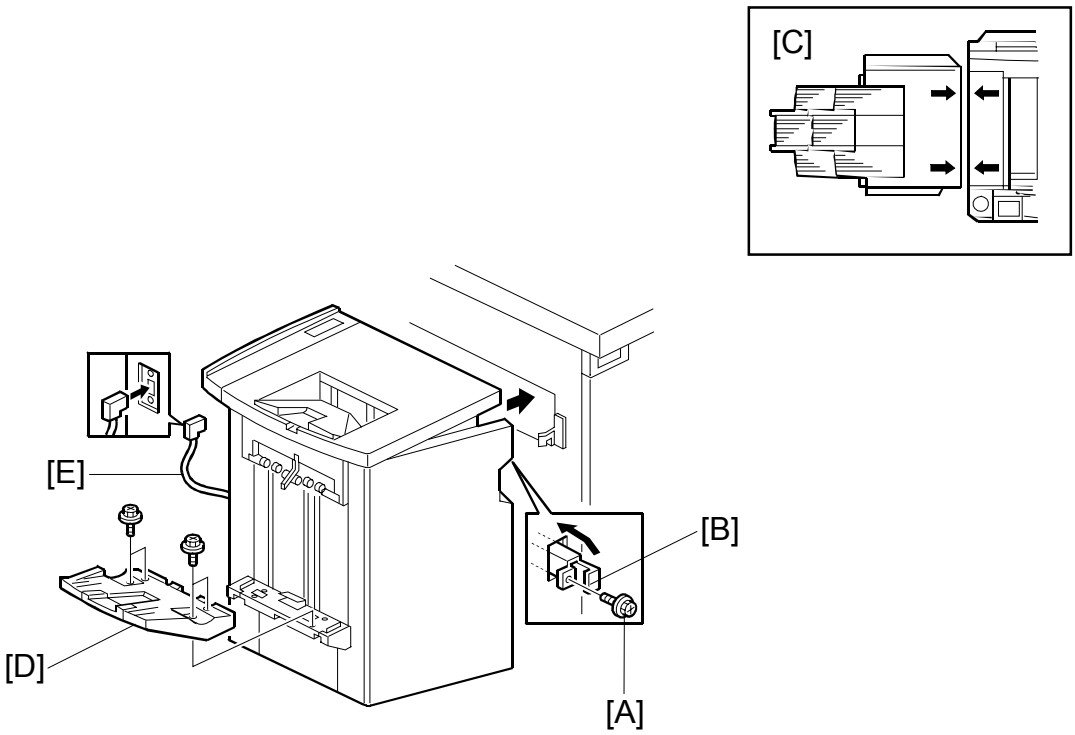
⚠CAUTION

Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

1. Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes and shipping retainers as shown above.
2. Open the front door and remove the shipping retainers. Remove the bracket [A] (2 screws) securing the stapler unit.
3. Install the front joint bracket [B] and rear joint bracket [C] (two M4 x 14 screws each) on the left side of the copier.
4. Remove the connection plate [D].



5. Install the grounding plate [A] (two M3 x 6 screws).
   NOTE: Set the grounding plate so that there is no gap between the grounding plate and the bottom frame of the finisher (as shown).
6. **- A294/A295 copiers only -**
   Install the rear tray as shown [B] (two M4 x 8 screws).
   NOTE: The edge of the rear tray should be aligned with the edge of the finisher (as shown).
7. Attach the cushion [C] to the right side of the upper cover.
8. Install the entrance guide plate [D] (two M3 x 6 screws).

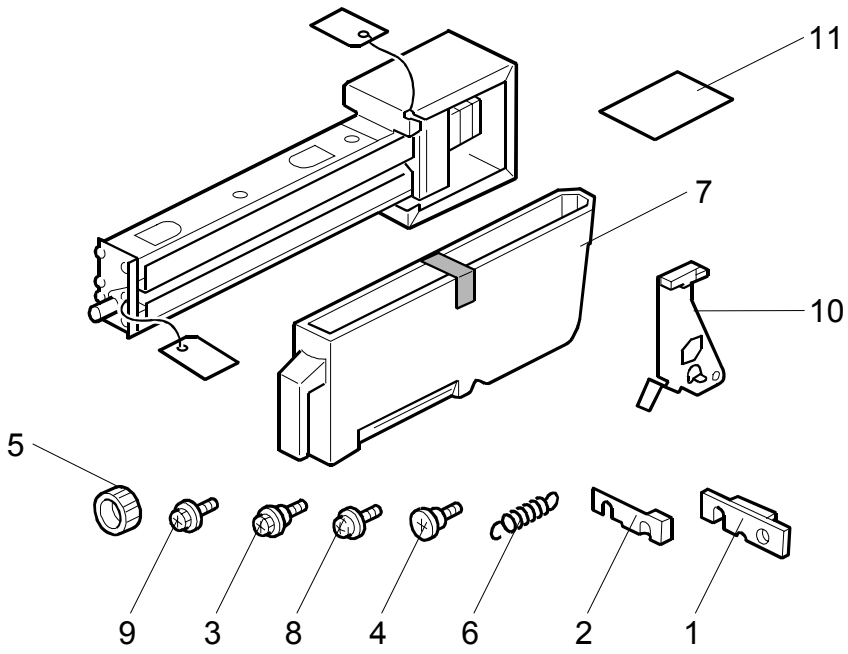


9. Open the front door of the finisher, and remove the screw [A] which secures the locking lever. Then pull the locking lever [B].
10. Align the finisher on the joint brackets, and lock it in place by pushing the locking lever [B].
    NOTE: Before securing the locking lever, make sure that the top edges of the finisher and the copier are parallel from front to rear as shown [C].
11. Secure the locking lever (1 screw) and close the front door.
12. Install the shift tray [D] (four M3 x 8 screws).
13. Connect the finisher cable [E] to the copier.

3.7 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (A812) FOR B302 FINISHER

The finisher: B302 is for the A292/A293 copiers.

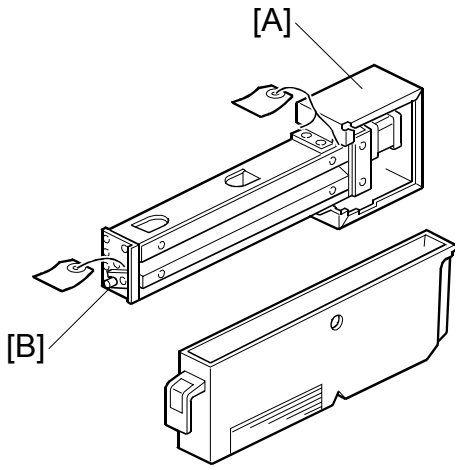
3.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

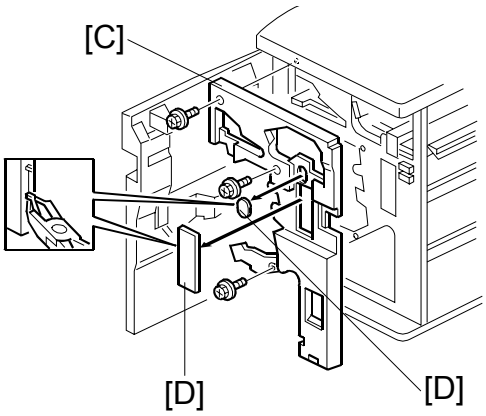


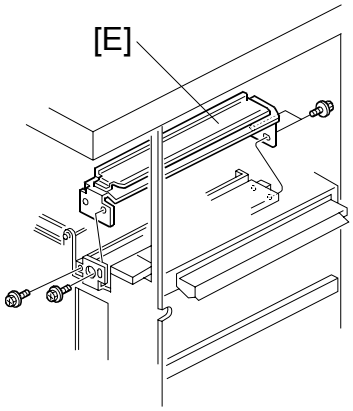
Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Quantity
1. Spacer - 2 mm	1
2. Spacer - 1 mm	2
3. Stepped Screw - Short	1
4. Stepped Screw - Long	1
5. Punch Unit Knob	1
6. Spring	1
7. Hopper	1
8. Tapping Screw - M4 x 10	2
9. Screw with Flat Washer - M4 x 6	1
10. Sensor Bracket	1
11. Punch Position Decal	1

3.7.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION





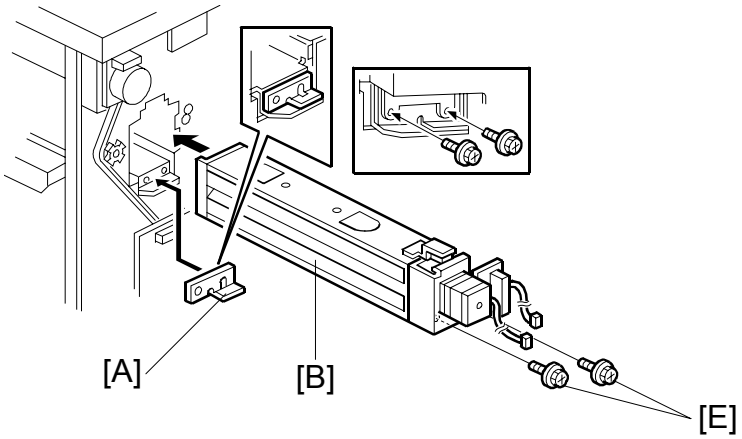


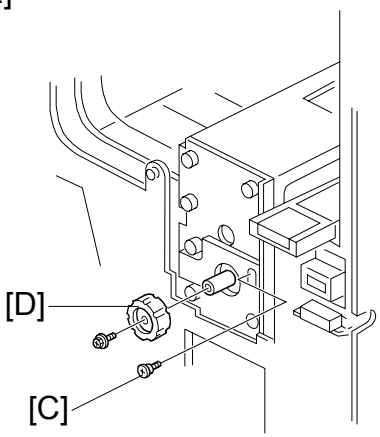
⚠CAUTION

Unplug the copier power cord and remove the finisher from the copier before starting the following procedure.

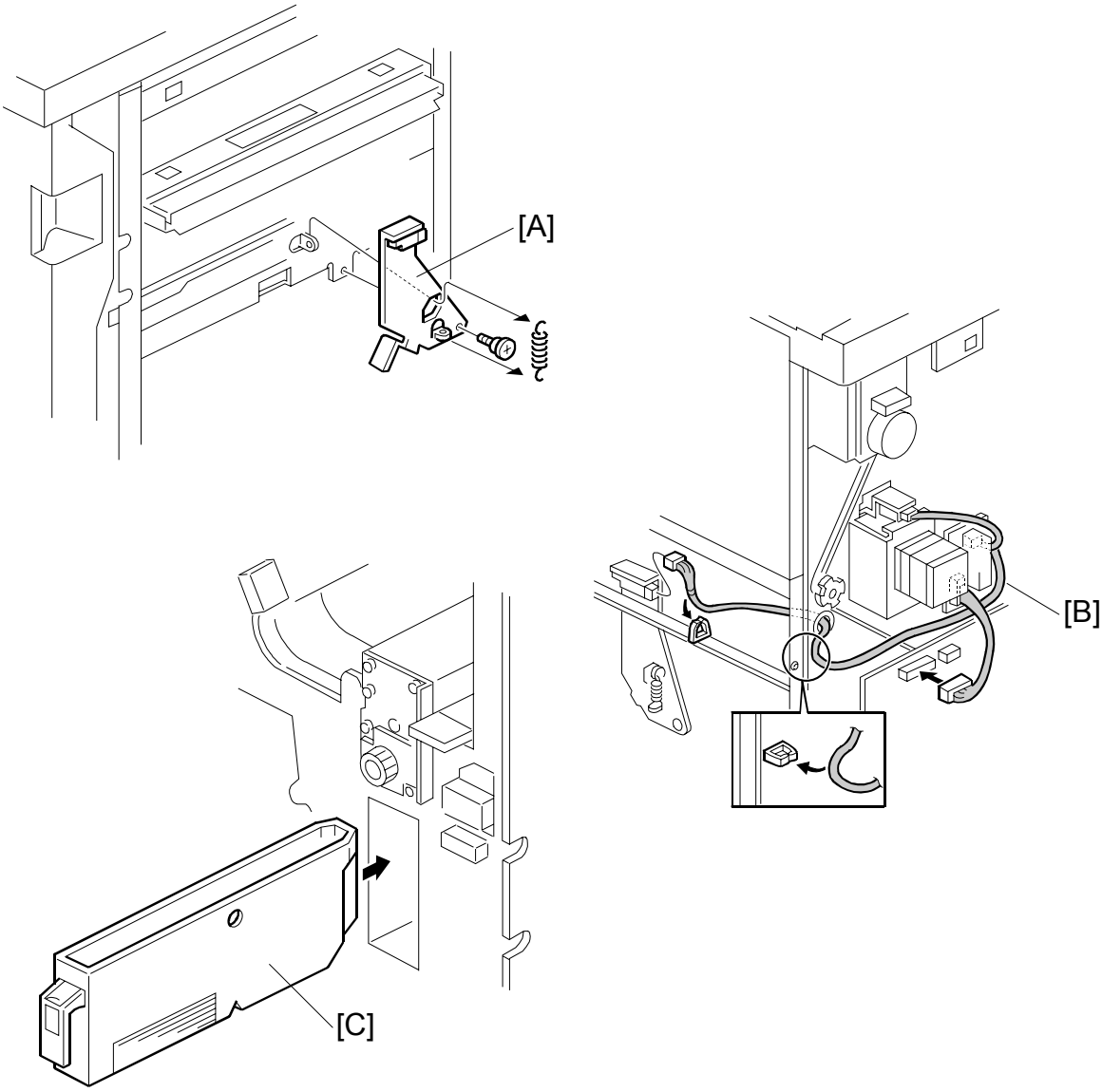
Unpack the punch unit and remove the shipping retainers [A] (4 screws) and [B] (1 screw)

1. Remove the inner cover [C] of the finisher and remove the caps [D].
2. Remove the rear cover of the finisher (2 screws) and remove the transport guide plate [E] (4 screws).



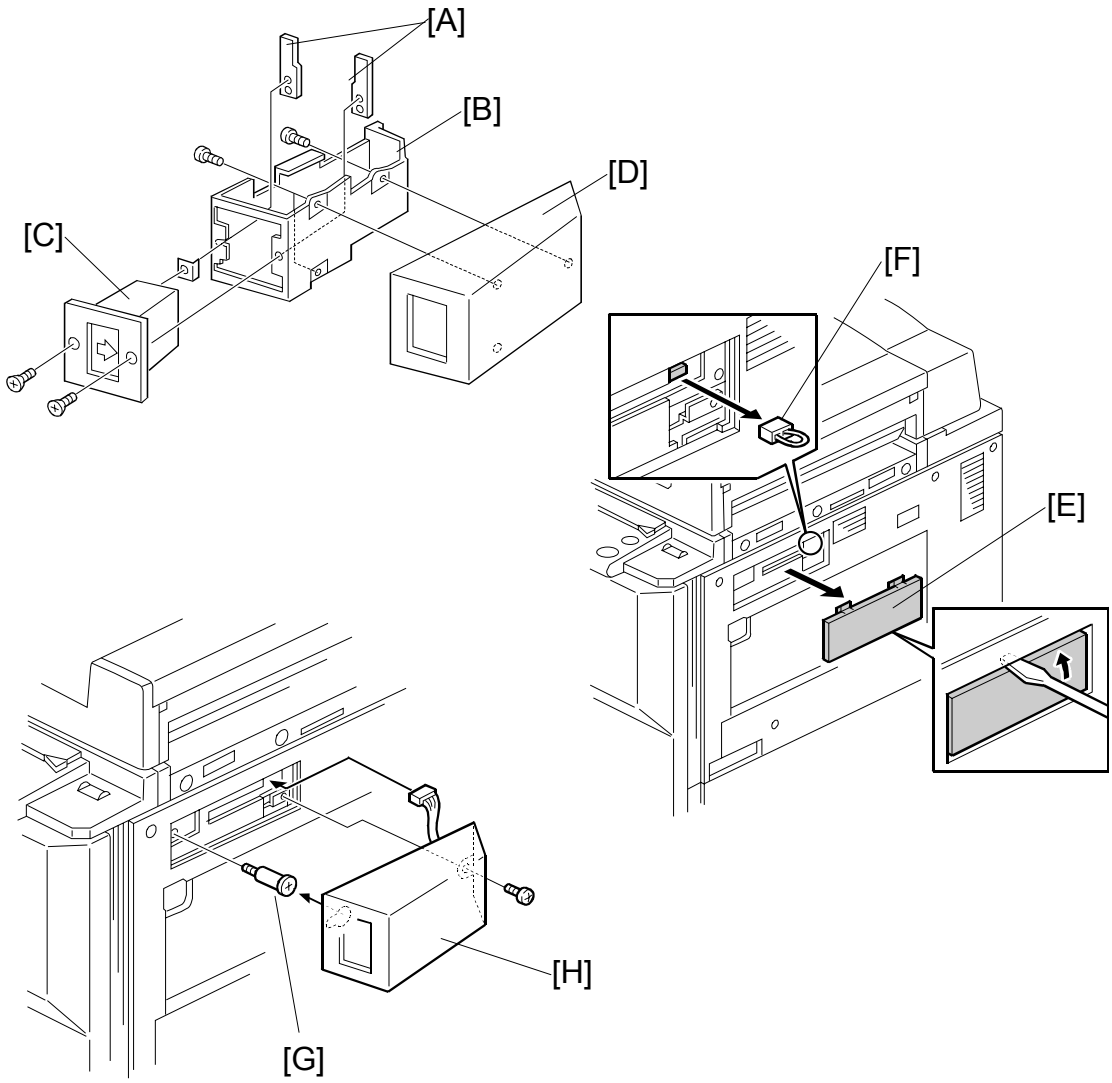


3. Install the spacer [A] (thickness = 2 mm).
   NOTE: There are three spacers in the accessory box. Do not lose the other two spacers (1 mm), because they are used for adjusting the punch hole position.
4. Reinstall the inner cover.
5. Install the punch unit [B] and secure it with a long stepped screw [C].
6. Install the punch unit knob [D] (1 screw).
7. Secure the rear of the punch unit (2 screws [E]).



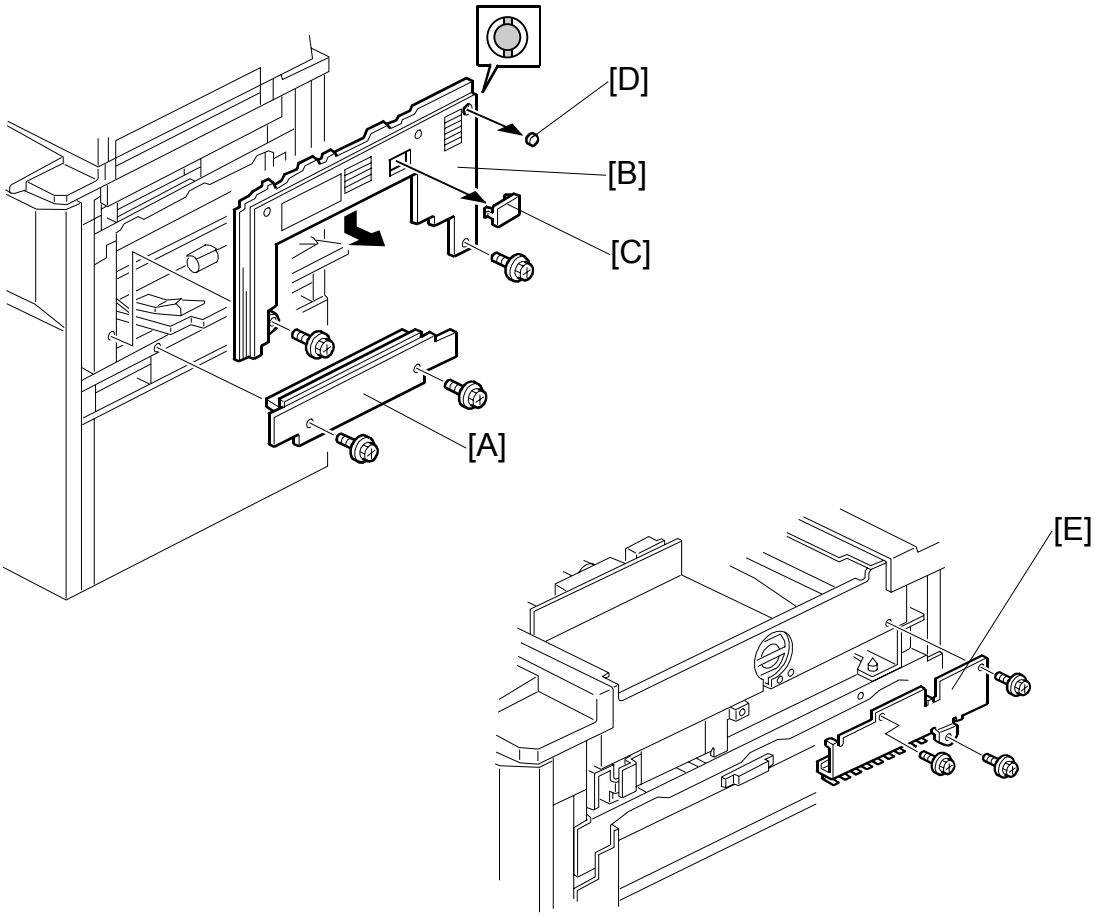
8. Install the sensor bracket [A] (1 short stepped screw, 1 spring).
9. Connect the cables [B] as shown.
10. Slide the hopper [C] into the finisher.
11. Reassemble the finisher and attach it to the copier. Then check the punch unit operation.

3.8 KEY COUNTER INSTALLATION

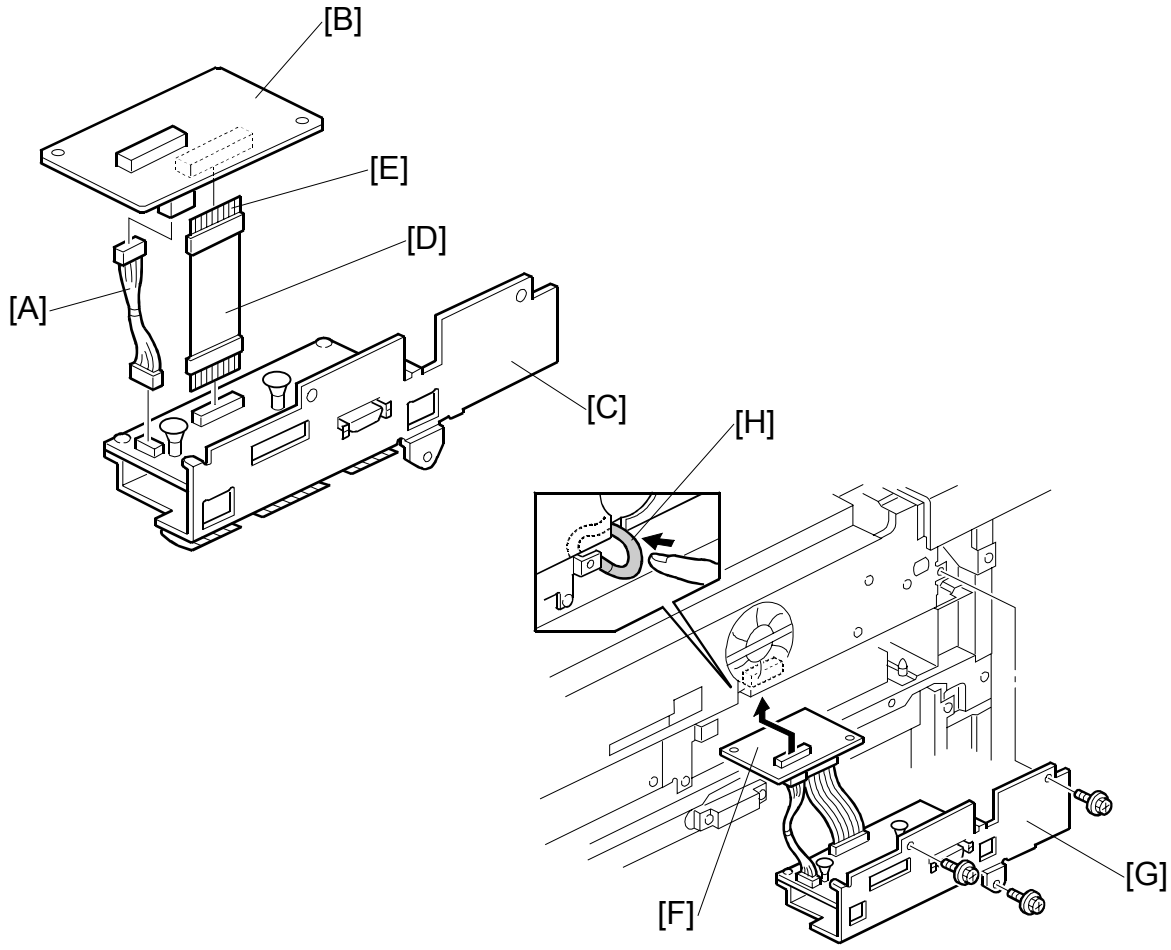


1. Hold the key counter plates [A] on the inside of the key counter bracket [B] and insert the key counter holder [C].
2. Secure the key counter holder to the bracket (2 screws).
3. Attach the key counter cover [D] (2 screws).
4. Remove the small cover [E] on the right side of the copier as shown.
5. Remove the jumper connector [F].
6. Install the stepped screw [G].
7. Install the key counter assembly [H] (1 screw).
8. Instruct the user's key operator to enable the key counter with the User Tools (User Tools – System Settings – Count Manager – Key Counter).

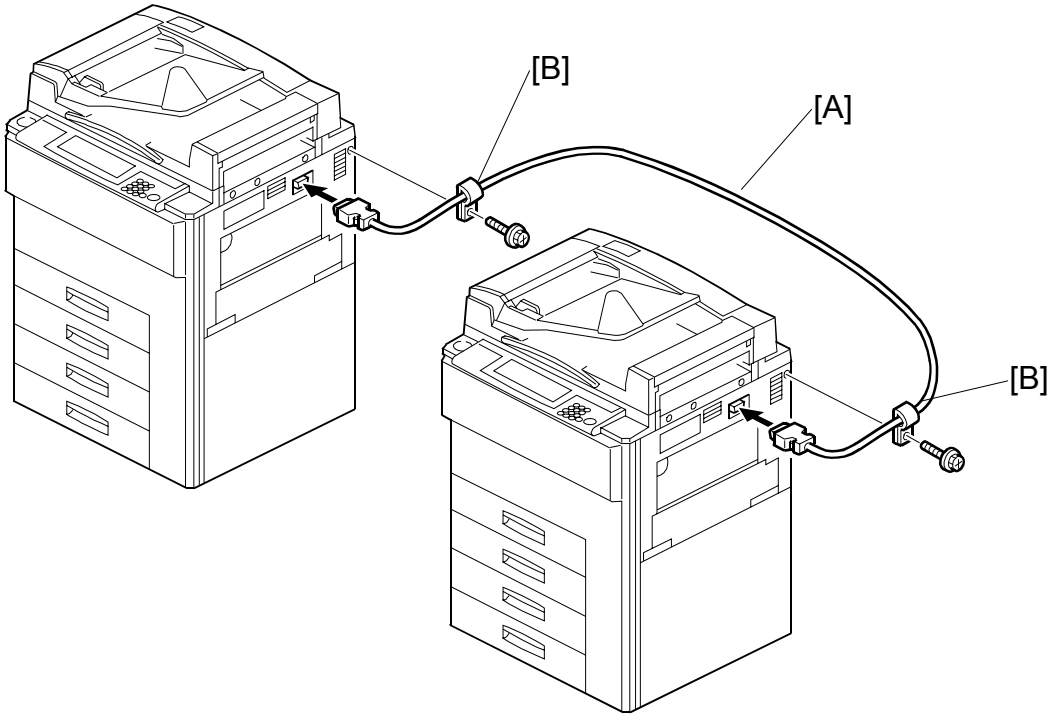
3.9 COPY CONNECTOR KIT INSTALLATION



1. If the optional LCT is installed, remove it from the copier.
2. Remove the original exit tray.
3. Remove the paper feed cover [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the upper right cover [B] (2 screws).
5. Remove the connector cover [C] and the clamp cover [D] from the upper right cover.
6. Remove the connecting plate [E] (3 screws).



7. Connect the harness [A] between the interface board [B] and the connector board [C].
8. Connect the cable [D] to the boards.
   NOTE: The terminals [E] must face the right hand side of the machine.
9. Install the interface board [F] (1 connector).
10. Install the connector board [G] (3 screws).
    NOTE: Push the HDD cable [H] into the inside of the machine.
11. Reassemble the machine.



12. Install the other copy connector kit in the other machine.
13. Connect the two machines with the cable [A] and secure it with clamps [B] (1 screw each).
14. Check the operation.

⇒ **NOTE:** To enable the Connect Copy Feature:
1. Select User Tools.
2. Select Copy/Document Server Features
3. Select Count Manager
4. Set Connect Copy Master to YES.

⇒ 3.10 COPY TRAY TYPE 700 INSTALLATION

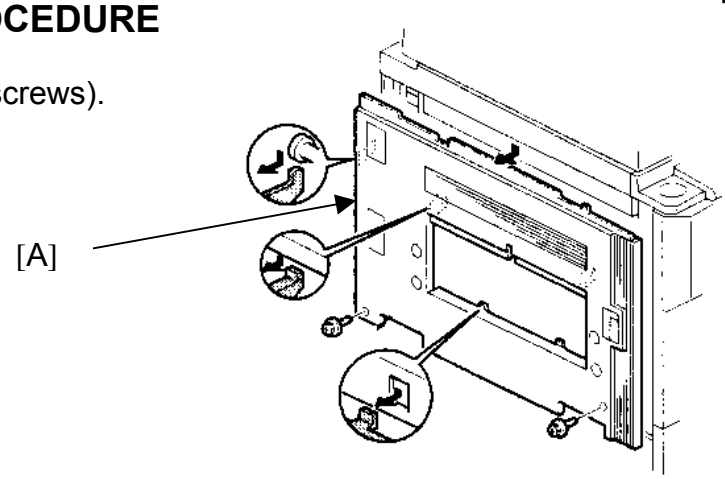
3.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the accessories in the box against the following list.

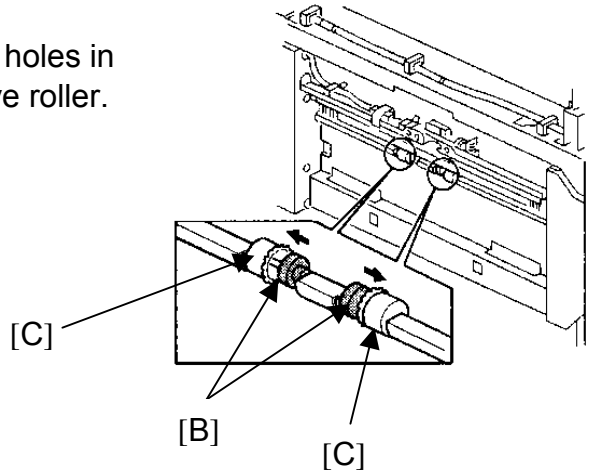
Description	Q'ty
1. Copy Tray	1
2. Tray Paper Limit Sensor Assembly	1
3. Cap - ϕ22	4
4. Connector Cap	1
5. Philips Tapping Screw – M4x8	2

3.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1) Remove the left cover [A] (2 screws).

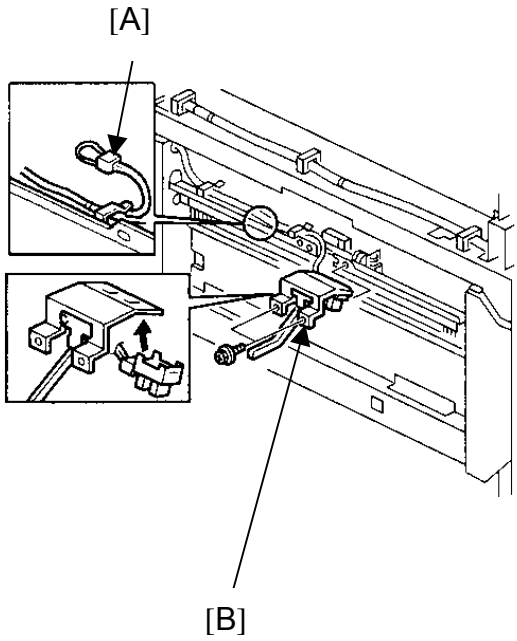


2) Slide the collars (black) [B] into the holes in the rubber rollers [C] of the exit drive roller.

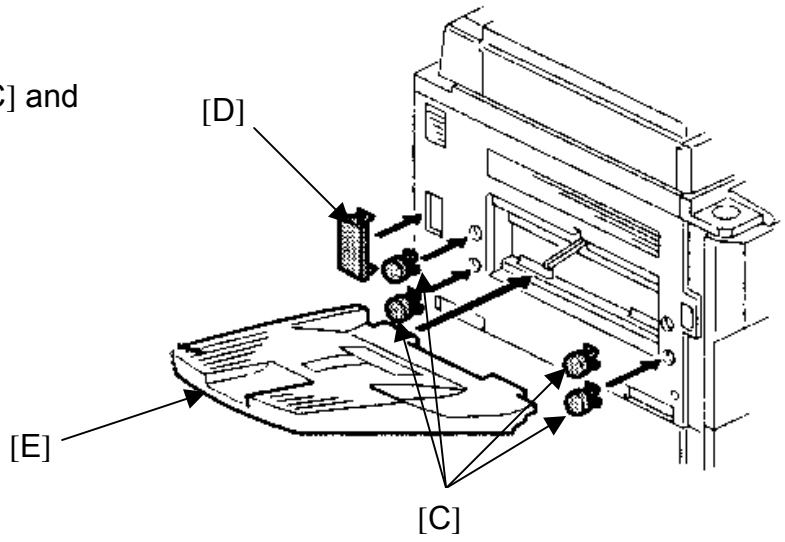


⇒

3) Remove the shorting connector [A].
4) Install the tray paper limit sensor assembly [B].



5) Reinstall the left cover.
6) Install the four caps (ϕ22) [C] and the connector cap [D].
7) Install the copy tray [E].



3.11 LG KIT (B375)

The LG Kit: B375 is for the A292/A293 copiers.

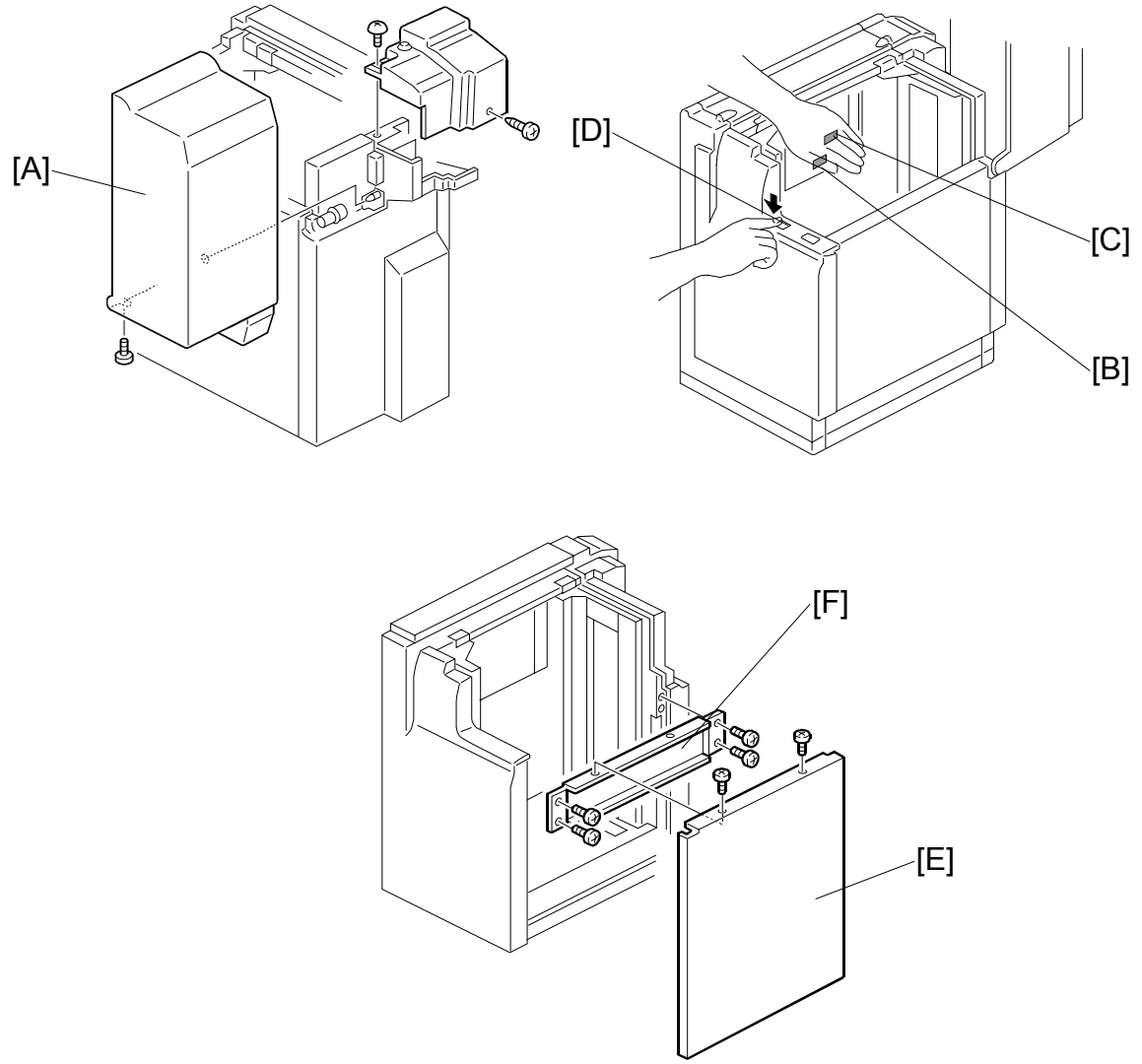
The LG Kit: B588 is for the B098 copiers.

3.11.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

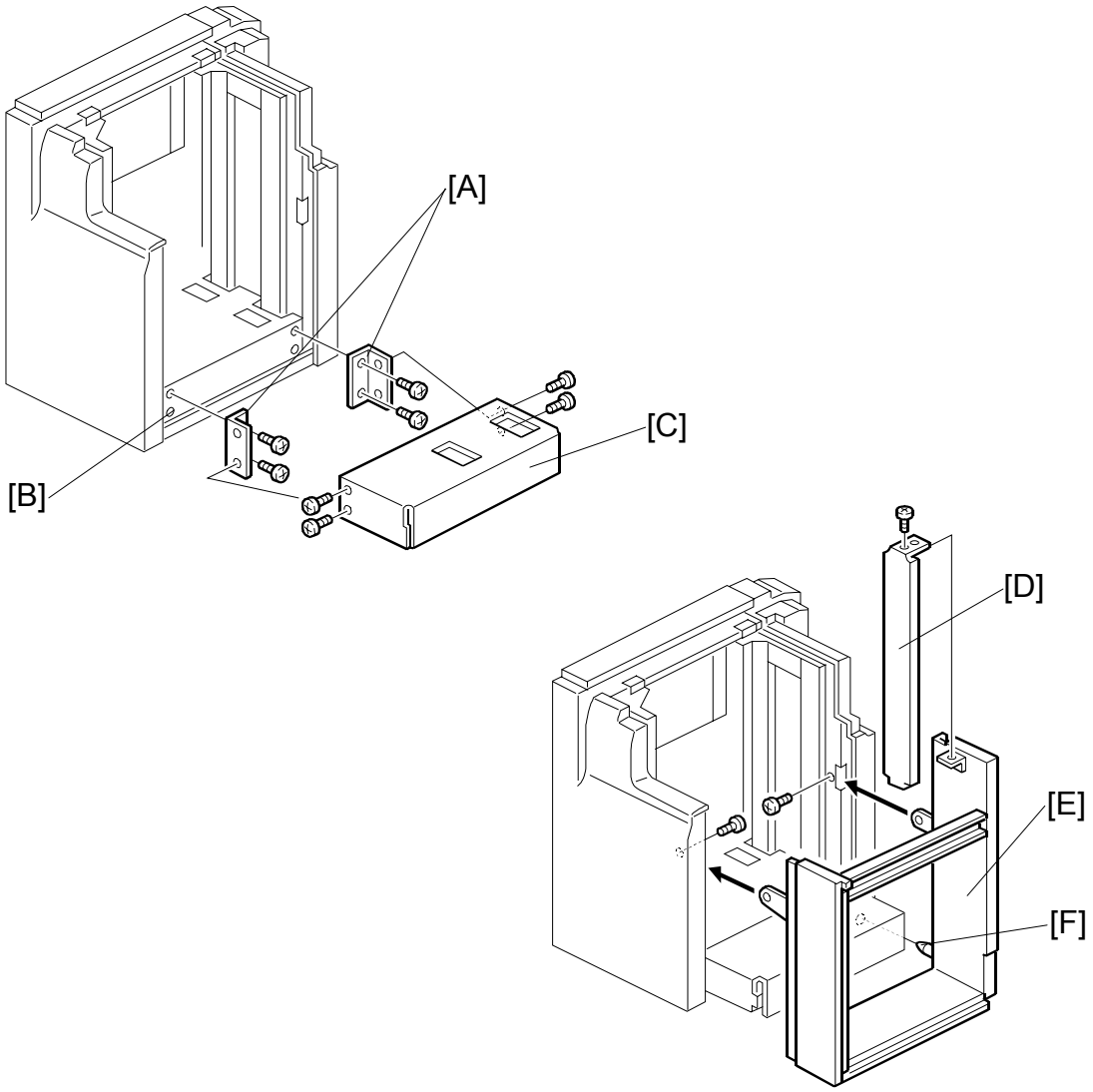
Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

Description	Q'ty
1. LG Tray Frame	1
2. LG Tray Cover	1
3. LG Bottom Plate	1
4. Securing Plate	2
5. Philips Pan Head Screw – M4 x 6……	6
6. Tapping Bind Screw – M4 x 6	4

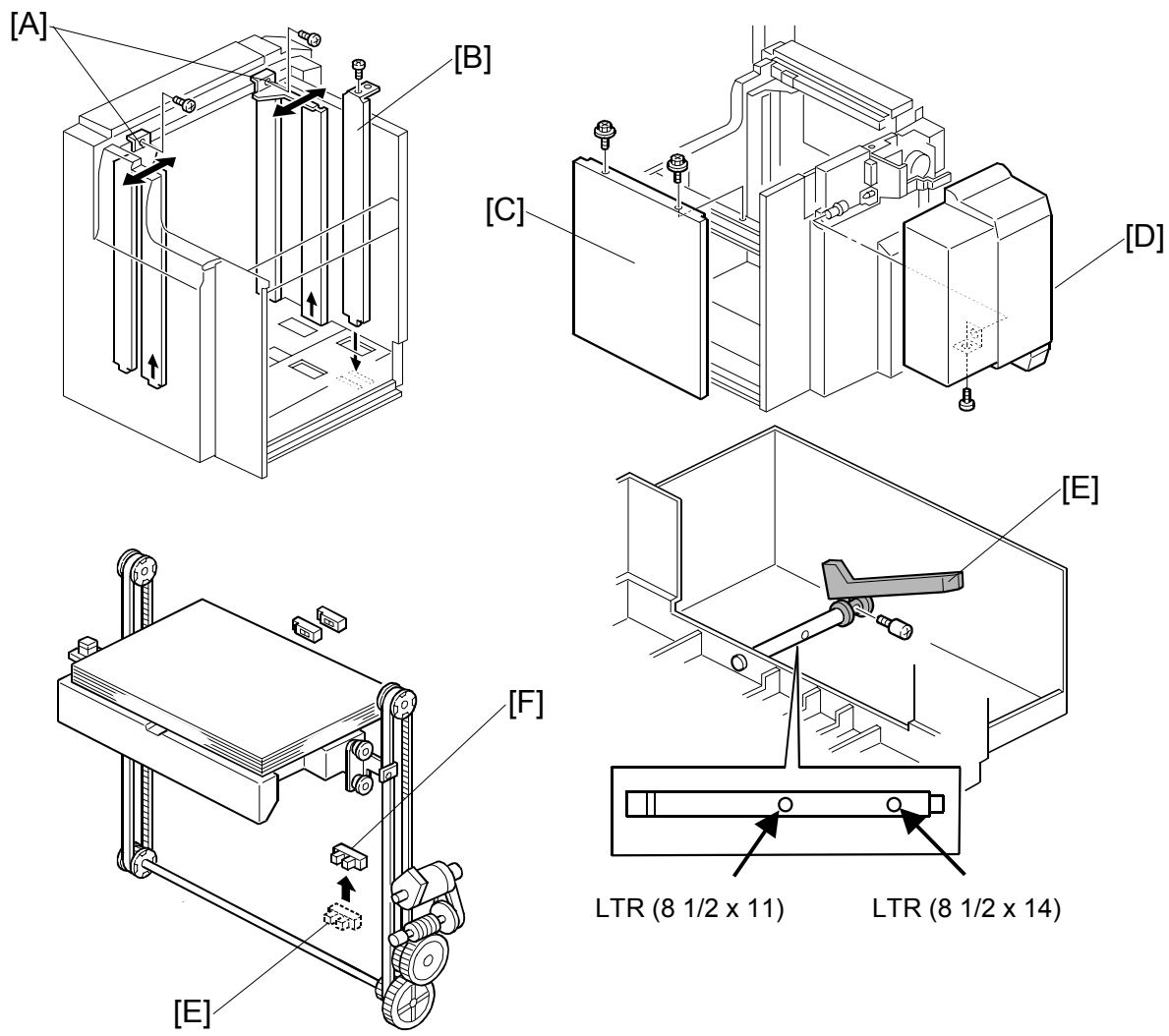
3.11.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE



1. Open the LCT cover [A] and while covering the paper position sensor [B] and paper near end sensor [C] with your hand, press the tray down switch [D] to lower the tray bottom plate to its lowest position.
2. Turn off the copier main switch.
3. Remove the LCT cover (1 screw).
4. Remove the LCT right cover [E] (2 screws).
5. Remove the LCT right stay [F] (4 screws).



6. Attach the securing plates [A] to the LCT paper tray [B] (2 screws each).
7. Mount the LG paper tray to the securing plates [C] (2 screws each).
8. Remove the side fence [D] of the LG tray frame [E] (1 screw).
9. Insert the positioning pin [F] to the LCT and secure the LG tray frame (2 screws).



10. Remove the front and rear side fences from the LCT [A] (1 screw each).
11. Position the LCT and LG tray side fences [A,B] to LG paper size and secure them (1 screw each).
12. Install the LCT right cover [C] and LG tray cover [D] (3 screws).
    NOTE: For B588 only:
    If the customer requests to the LTR (lengthwise) size paper, reposition the end fence [E] from original to LTR size paper position (1 screw).
13. Turn on the copier main switch and input the LG paper size with SP5-019.
    For B375: LG
    For B588: LG or LTR (lengthwise)
14. Turn off the copier main switch. After perform the LCT initialization, turn off the copier main switch and remove the LCT right cover.
15. Reposition the down sensor [E] from original position to LG size paper positioning [F] which is 82cm higher than original position (1 screw).
    NOTE: The down sensor repositioning procedure should be done after reposition the side fences.

SERVICE TABLES

4. SERVICE TABLES

4.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS

Do not turn off either of the power switches while any of the electrical components are active. Doing so might cause damage to units such as the transfer belt, drum, and development unit when they are pulled out of or put back into the copier.

4.1.1 DRUM

An organic photoconductor (OPC) drum is more sensitive to light and ammonia gas than a selenium drum. Follow the cautions below when handling an OPC drum.

1. Never expose the drum to direct sunlight.
2. Never expose the drum to direct light of more than 1,000 Lux for more than a minute.
3. Never touch the drum surface with bare hands. When the drum surface is touched with a finger or becomes dirty, wipe it with a dry cloth or clean it with wet cotton. Wipe with a dry cloth after cleaning with wet cotton.
4. Never use alcohol to clean the drum; alcohol dissolves the drum surface.
5. Store the drum in a cool, dry place away from heat.
6. Take care not to scratch the drum as the drum layer is thin and is easily damaged.
7. Never expose the drum to corrosive gases such as ammonia gas.
8. Always keep the drum in the protective sheet when keeping the drum unit, or the drum itself, out of the copier. Doing so avoids exposing it to bright light or direct sunlight, and will protect it from light fatigue.
9. Dispose of used drums in accordance with local regulations.
10. When installing a new drum, do the Auto Process Control Data Adjustment (SP 2-962).

4.1.2 DRUM UNIT

1. Before pulling out the drum unit, place a sheet of paper under the drum unit to catch any spilt toner.
2. Make sure that the drum unit is set in position and the drum stay is secured with a screw before the main switch is turned on. If the drum unit is loose, poor contact of the drum connectors may cause electrical noise, resulting in unexpected malfunctions (RAM data change is the worst case).
3. To prevent drum scratches, remove the development unit before removing the drum unit.

4.1.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT

1. Never touch the transfer belt surface with bare hands.
2. Take care not to scratch the transfer belt, as the surface is easily damaged.
3. Before installing the new transfer belt, clean all the rollers and the inner part of the transfer belt with a dry cloth to prevent the belt from slipping.

4.1.4 SCANNER UNIT

1. When installing the exposure glass, make sure that the white paint is at the rear left corner.
2. Clean the exposure glass with alcohol or glass cleaner to reduce the amount of static electricity on the glass surface.
3. Use a cotton pad with water or a blower brush to clean the mirrors and lens.
4. Do not bend or crease the exposure lamp flat cable.
5. Do not disassemble the lens unit. Doing so will throw the lens and the copy image out of focus.
6. Do not turn any of the CCD positioning screws. Doing so will throw the CCD out of position.

4.1.5 LASER UNIT

1. Do not loosen the screws that secure the LD drive board to the laser diode casing. Doing so would throw the LD unit out of adjustment.
2. Do not adjust the variable resistors on the LD unit, as they are adjusted in the factory.
3. The polygon mirror and F-theta lenses are very sensitive to dust. Do not open the optical housing unit.
4. Do not touch the glass surface of the polygon mirror motor unit with bare hands.
5. After replacing the LD unit, do the laser beam pitch adjustment. Otherwise, an SC condition will be generated.

4.1.6 CHARGE CORONA

1. Clean the corona wires with a dry cloth. Do not use sandpaper or solvent.
2. Clean the charge corona casing with water first to remove NOx based compounds. Then clean it with alcohol if any toner still remains on the casing.
3. Clean the end block with a blower brush first to remove toner and paper dust. Then clean with alcohol if any toner still remains.
4. Do not touch the corona wires with bare hands. Oil stains from fingers may cause uneven image density on copies.
5. Make sure that the wires are correctly between the cleaner pads and that there is no foreign material (iron filings, etc.) on the casing.
6. When installing new corona wires, do not bend or scratch the wire surface. Doing so may cause uneven charge. Also be sure that the corona wires are correctly positioned in the end blocks. (See Charge Corona Wire Replacement)
7. Clean the grid plate with a blower brush (not with a dry cloth).
8. Do not touch the charge grid plate with bare hands. Also, do not bend the charge grid plate or make any dent in it. Doing so may cause uneven charge.

4.1.7 DEVELOPMENT

1. Be careful not to nick or scratch the development roller.
2. Place the development unit on a sheet of paper after removing it from the copier.
3. Never disassemble the development roller assembly. The position of the doctor plate is set with special tools and instruments at the factory to ensure the proper gap between the doctor blade and the development roller.
4. Clean the drive gears after removing used developer.
5. Dispose of used developer in accordance with local regulations.
6. Never load types of developer and toner into the development unit other than specified for this model. Doing so will cause poor copy quality and toner scattering.
7. Immediately after installing new developer, the TD sensor initial setting procedure should be performed to avoid damage to the copier. Do not perform the TD sensor initial setting with used developer. Do not make any copies before doing the TD sensor initial setting.
8. When using a vacuum cleaner to clean the development unit casing, always ground the casing with your fingers to avoid damaging the toner density sensor with static electricity.
9. When replacing the TD sensor, the developer should be replaced and then the TD sensor initial setting procedure (SP 2-801) should be done.

4.1.8 CLEANING

1. When servicing the cleaning section, be careful not to damage the edge of the cleaning blade.
2. Do not touch the cleaning blade with bare hands.
3. Before disassembling the cleaning section, place a sheet of paper under it to catch any toner falling from it.

4.1.9 FUSING UNIT

1. After installing the fusing thermistor, make sure that it is in contact with the hot roller and that it is movable.
2. Be careful not to damage the edges of the hot roller strippers or their tension springs.
3. Do not touch the fusing lamp and rollers with bare hands.
4. Make sure that the fusing lamp is positioned correctly and that it does not touch the inner surface of the hot roller.

4.1.10 PAPER FEED

1. Do not touch the surface of the pick-up, feed, and separation rollers.
2. To avoid paper misfeeds, the side fences and end fence of the paper tray must be positioned correctly to align with the actual paper size.

4.1.11 USED TONER

1. We recommend checking the amount of used toner at every EM.
2. Dispose of used toner in accordance with local regulations. Never throw toner into an open flame, for toner dust may ignite.

4.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

4.2.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE OPERATION

The service program (SP) mode is used to check electrical data, change modes, and adjust values.

Service Program Access Procedure

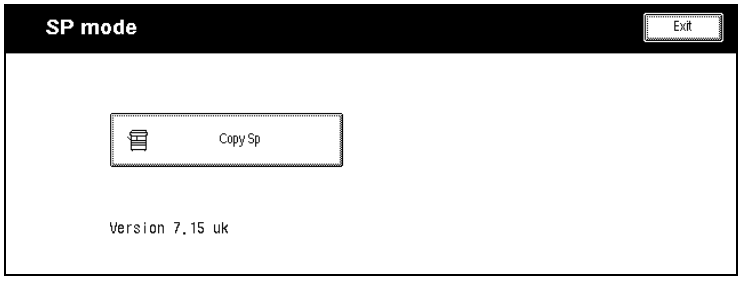
Entering SP mode

1) Press the following keys in sequence.

[#/P] → [1] → [0] → [7] → [C/⊘]

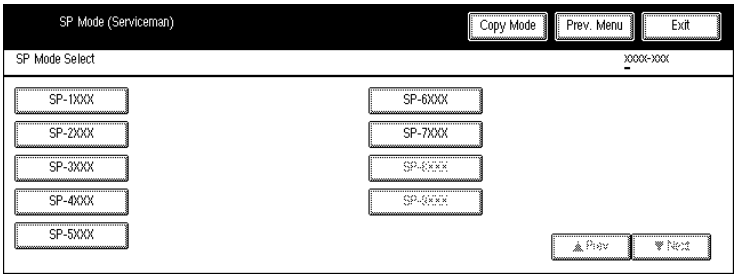
NOTE: Hold the [C/⊘] key for more than 3 seconds.

2) A menu of SP modes is displayed on the LCD.



NOTE: 1) The installed applications appear as Copy SP and Printer SP. If the printer application is not installed, its name does not appear.
2) The meaning of the bottom line is as follows.
- "Ver 7.15 uk" is the BICU board software version.

3) Touch the application which you need. Then, the application's SP mode display will appear, as shown.

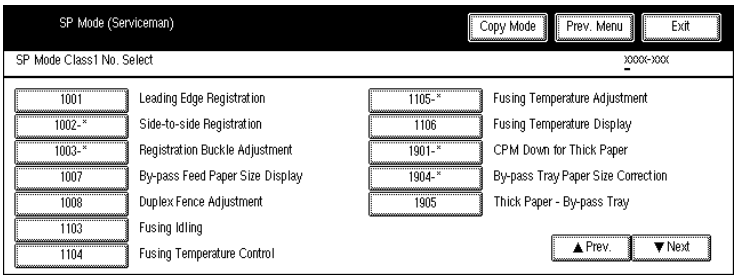


Exiting SP mode

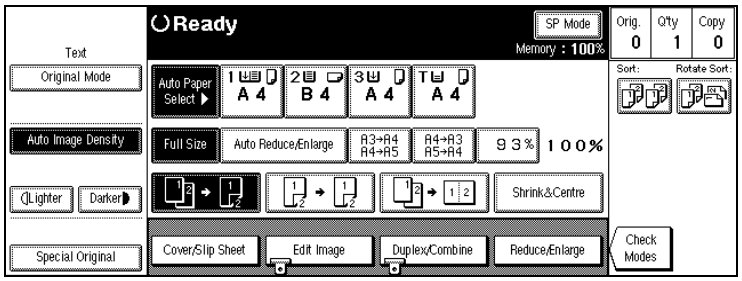
1) Touch the "Exit" keys to return to the standby mode display.

Accessing Copy Mode from within an SP Mode

1) Touch the “Copy Mode” key.



2) Select the appropriate copy mode and make trial copies.
3) To return to the SP mode, touch the “SP mode” key.



Selecting the Program Number

Program numbers are composed of two or three levels.

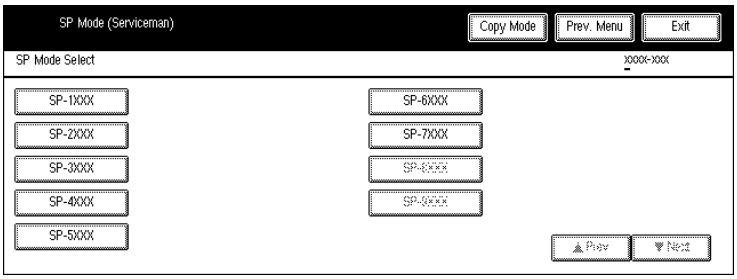
There are two ways to select the program number.

Ten-key Pad

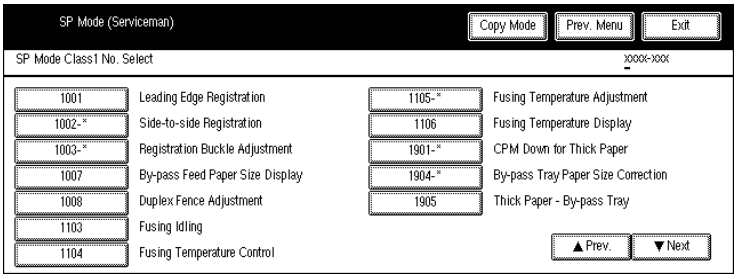
Input the required program number.

Touch Panel

1. Touch the 1st level program.

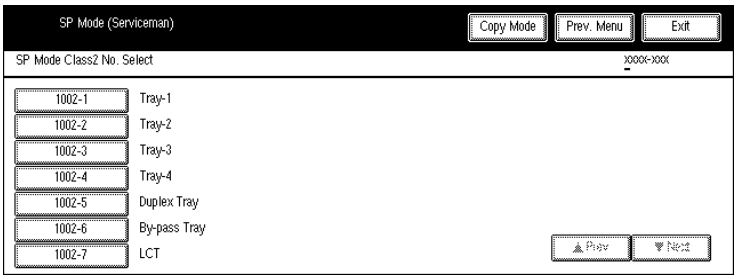


2. Touch the 2nd level program.



NOTE: A "*****" mark indicates that there are 3rd level programs.

3. Touch the 3rd level program.



Inputting a Value or Setting for an SP Mode

1. Select the required program mode as explained on the previous page.
2. Enter the required setting using the ten-key pad, then touch the “Start” key or OK key or # key.

   NOTE: 1) If you forget to touch the “Start” key or OK key, the previous value remains.
   2) Change between “+” and “-“ using the “•” key before entering the required value.
3. Exit SP mode.

4.2.2 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE TABLES

NOTE: 1) In the Function column, comments are in italics.
2) In the Settings column, the default value is in bold letters.
3) An asterisk (*) in the right hand side of the mode number column means that this mode is stored in the NVRAM. If you do a RAM reset, all these SP modes will be reset to their factory settings.

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
1-001	Leading Edge Registration				
			*	Adjusts the printing leading edge registration using the trimming area pattern (SP2-902-3, No.10). *The specification is 3 ±2 mm. See "Replacement and Adjustment - Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	+9 ~ -9 0.1 mm/step **+ 3.0 mm**
1-002	Side-to-Side Registration				
	1	Tray - 1	*	Adjusts the printing side-to-side registration from the feed stations using the trimming area pattern (SP2-902-3, No.10). *The specification is 0 ±2.0 mm in platen mode and 0 ± 4.0 mm in ADF mode.*	+9 ~ -9 0.1 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**
	2	Tray - 2			
	3	Tray - 3			
	4	Tray - 4	*	**Tray 4 is only for the Japanese version.**	
	5	Duplex Tray	*		
	6	By-pass Tray			
	7	LCT			
1-003	Paper Feed Timing				
	1	Tray, Duplex	*	Adjusts the relay clutch timing at registration. The relay clutch timing determines the amount of paper buckle at registration. (A +ve setting leads to more buckling.)	+9 ~ -9 1 mm/step **+ 0 mm**
	2	By-pass Tray	*	Adjusts the by-pass feed clutch timing at registration. The by-pass feed clutch timing determines the amount of paper buckle at registration. (A +ve setting leads to more buckling.)	
1-007	By-pass Feed Paper Size Display				
				Displays the paper width sensor data for the by-pass feed table. 132 : A3 160 : DLT 133 : A4 Lengthwise 164 : LG 134 : A5 Lengthwise 166 : LT Lengthwise 141 : B4 Lengthwise 172 : HLT Lengthwise 142 : B5 Lengthwise	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
1-008	Duplex Fence Position Adjustment				
				Adjusts the position of the fence (side-to-side position with reference to paper feed).	0 ~ -2 0.5 mm/step **-1.0 mm**
1-103	Fusing Idling				
			*	Selects whether fusing idling is done or not.	**0: 330 sec.** 1: 10 min. 2: 15 min. 3: No idling
				If fusing is incomplete on the 1st and 2nd copies, change the setting to a longer time. This may occur if the room is cold. *Refer to "Detailed Section Descriptions - Fusing Temperature Control" for more details.*	
1-104	Fusing Temperature Control				
			*	Selects the fusing temperature control mode. After changing the setting, turn the main switch off and on.	**On/Off control** Phase control
1-105	Fusing Temperature Adjustment				
	1	Normal	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for plain paper.	170 ~ 200 1°C/step **185°C**
	2	OHP	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for OHP sheets fed from the by-pass feed unit.	+10 ~ -10°C 1°C/step **0 (165°C)**
	3	Thick Paper 1	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for thick paper fed from the by-pass feed unit.	+5 ~ -10°C 1°C/step **0 (195°C)**
	4	Thick Paper 2	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for thick paper (105 g/m^2, 28 lb Bond or heavier) fed from the by-pass feed unit. (B098 only)	185 - 200°C 1°C/step 195°C
				This SP mode is useful when the Low Temp. environment is selected in the user tools. *When copying onto thick paper, the first copy time may be longer.*	
1-106	Fusing Temperature Display				
				Displays the fusing temperature.	
1-107	1st Copy Temperature Setting *(B098 only)*				
	1	Thick Paper 1	*	Adjusts the 1st copy temperature for thick paper 1 mode.	185 - 200°C 1°C/step 195°C
	2	Thick Paper 2	*	Adjusts the 1st copy temperature for thick paper 2 mode.	

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
1-108	Fusing Idling – Thick Paper 2 *(B098 only)*				
			*	Selects whether fusing idling is done or not in thick paper –2 mode. *The first copy time is longer when ON.*	0:OFF 1: ON
1-901	CPM Change for Special Paper (NA: North America, EU: Europe)				
	1	*for A292/A293* Thick Paper 1	*	Selects the copy speed when the paper setting for the by-pass table is thick paper.	0: 25 cpm 1: 35 cpm 2: 45 cpm 3: 55 cpm *for A292/A293* **NA: 3** **EU: 2** *for B098* **NA: 3** **EU: 3**
		for B098 Thick Paper 1	*	Select the copy speed when Thick Paper 1 is selected from user tools.	
	2	*for A292/A293* Tab Stack	*	Selects the copy speed when the paper setting for the 2nd tray is tab stack.	0: 25 cpm 1: 35 cpm 2: 45 cpm 3: 55 cpm *for A292/A293* **NA: 2** **EU: 0** *for B098* **NA: 1** **EU: 1**
		for B098 Thick Paper 2	*	Selects the copy speed when Thick paper 2 is selected from user tools.	
1-904	By-pass Tray Paper Size Correction				
	1	Minimum Size		Calibrates the minimum paper width position of the sensor (100 mm).	Start
	2	Maximum Size		Calibrates the maximum paper width position of the sensor (A3).	Start
1-905	Thick Paper Mode - By-pass Table				
			*	Selects the by-pass feed clutch on mode for thick paper mode.	**ON: Twice** OFF: Once
2-001	Charge Corona Bias Adjustment				
	1	Image Area	*	Adjusts the voltage applied to the grid plate during copying when auto process control is **off**. *Normally, there is no need to adjust this. If there is an ID or TD sensor problem, the machine goes into fixed toner supply mode.* *After replacing the drum or charge corona wire, change this value to the default.*	-600 ~ -1300 10 V/step **-1000 V**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-001	2	ID Sensor Pattern	*	Adjusts the voltage applied to the grid plate when making the ID sensor pattern. *Normally, there is no need to adjust this. If the user wants high density copies, the sensor pattern must be lighter, so this voltage must be a higher negative voltage .*	-600 ~ -1300 10 V/step **-650 V**
	3	Total Corona Current	*	Adjusts the current applied to the charge corona wire. Factory use only.	-900 ~ -1500 10 μA/step **–1300 μA**
	4	Image Area	*	Adjusts the voltage applied to the grid plate during copying when auto process control is **on**. This voltage changes every time auto process control starts up (every time the machine is switched on)	-600 ~ -1300 10 V/step **-1000 V**
	5	OHP Sheet	*	Adjusts the voltage applied to the grid plate when OHP mode is selected. Use this if there is a copy quality problem when making OHPs. Normally there is no need to adjust this. See 2-001-1.	-600 ~ -1300 10 V/step **–700 V**
	6	Thick Paper 1	*	Adjusts the voltage applied to the grid plate when thick paper 1 mode is selected. ***(B098 only)***	-600 ~ -1300 10 V/step **–1000 V**
	7	Thick Paper 2	*	Adjusts the voltage applied to the grid plate when thick paper 2mode is selected. ***(B098 only)***	-600 ~ -1300 10 V/step **–900 V**
2-101	Printing Erase Margin				
	1	Leading Edge	*	Adjusts the leading edge erase margin. *The specification is 3 ±2 mm. See "Replacement and Adjustment - Copy Image Adjustments" for more on SP2-101.*	0.0 ~ 9.0 0.1 mm/step **3.0 mm**
	2	Trailing Edge	*	Adjusts the trailing edge erase margin. *The specification is 3 ±2 mm.*	0.0 ~ 9.0 0.1 mm/step **3.0 mm**
	3	Left	*	Adjusts the left side erase margin. *The specification is 2 ±1.5 mm.*	0.0 ~ 9.0 0.1 mm/step **2.0 mm**
	4	Right	*	Adjusts the right side erase margin. *The specification is 2 +2.5/-1.5 mm.*	0.0 ~ 9.0 0.1 mm/step **2.0 mm**

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-103	LD Power Adjustment				
	1	LD1 - 400dpi	*	Adjusts the power of LD1 for 400 dpi resolution. *(A292/A293 only)* ***Do not change the value.***	-127 ~ +127 1/step 1=1.1 μW **+0**
	2	LD1 - 600dpi	*	Adjusts the power of LD1 for 600 dpi resolution. ***Do not change the value.***	
	3	LD2 - 400dpi	*	Adjusts the power of LD2 for 400 dpi resolution. *(A292/A293 only)* ***Do not change the value.***	
	4	LD2 - 600dpi	*	Adjusts the power of LD2 for 600 dpi resolution. ***Do not change the value.***	
	5	LD1 Power Adjustment (Start/End)	*	**Factory use only. Do not use this SP mode.**	Start Stop
	6	LD2 Power Adjustment (Start/End)	*	**Factory use only. Do not use this SP mode.**	Start Stop
2-109	Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment *(A292/A293 only)*				
	1	400 dpi	*	Adjusts the laser beam pitch value for 400 dpi resolution. *After replacing the LD unit or replacing or clearing the NVRAM, use this SP mode and SP2-109-3 to adjust the laser beam pitch. Refer to "Replacement and Adjustment - Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment" for details.*	0 ~ 262 4 pulses/step **144**
2-109	Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment *(A292/A293 only)*				
	2	600 dpi	*	Adjusts the laser beam pitch value for 600 dpi resolution. *After replacing the LD unit , replacing or clearing the NVRAM, use this SP mode and SP2-109-4 to adjust the laser beam pitch. Refer to "Replacement and Adjustment - Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment" for details.*	0 ~ 284 4 pulses/step **168**
	3	400 dpi Initial Setting	*	Initializes the laser beam pitch for 400 dpi to the SP2-109-1 value. *After inputting a value for SP2-109-1, this SP must be used.*	Start
	4	600 dpi Initial Setting	*	Initializes the laser beam pitch for 600 dpi to the SP2-109-2 value. *After inputting a value for SP2-109-2, this SP must be used.*	Start
	5	Auto Pitch Adjustment Interval	*	Inputs the interval for the automatic laser beam pitch adjustment *When the number of times that the resolution been changed reaches this value, the laser unit position is automatically corrected.*	0 ~ 65535 1/step **1000 times**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-109	Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment *(A292/A293 only)*				
	6	Current LD Unit Position	*	Displays the current LD unit position (number of pulses from home position). If this is different from the value of 2-109-1 or 2-109-2, LD unit positioning has failed.	
	7	Beam Pitch Change Counter	*	Displays how many times the LD unit position has been changed (how many times the resolution has changed.) *When the laser beam pitch adjustment is done, this counter is reset to "0".*	
	8	Beam Pitch Data Reset	*	Resets the values of SP2-109-6 and SP2-109-7. *After replacing the LD unit, this SP mode must be done.*	
2-110	Test Mode dpi *(A292/A293 only)*				
				Designer use only. Do not change this value.	**0: 400 dpi** 1: 600 dpi 2: 15.4 x 16 3: 16 x 15.4
2-114	Printer Dot Edge Parameter Setting				
	1	Leading Dot Level (600dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for the leading edge pixel in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 10
	2	Trailing Dot Level (600dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for the trailing edge pixel in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 10
	3	Multiple Dot Level (600dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for continuous edge pixel in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 10
	4	Independent Dot Level (600dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for independent dots in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 10
	5	Leading Dot Level (400dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for the leading edge pixel in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 8
	6	Trailing Dot Level (400dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for the trailing edge pixel in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 8
	7	Multiple Dot Level (400dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for continuous edge pixel in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 9
	8	Independent Dot Level (400dpi)	*	Change the LD power level for independent dots in printer mode, if FCI is off.	0 ~ 15 1/step 6
2-201	Development Bias Adjustment				
	1	Image Area	*	Adjusts the development bias for copying. *This can be adjusted as a temporary measure if faint copies appear due to an aging drum.*	-200 ~ -700 10 V/step **-550 V**

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-201	Development Bias Adjustment				
	2	ID Sensor Pattern	*	Adjusts the development bias for making the ID sensor pattern for Vsp measurement. *This should not be used in the field, because it affects ID sensor pattern density, which affects toner supply.*	-200 ~ -700 10 V/step **-400 V**
	3	OHP Sheet	*	Adjusts the development bias for copying onto OHP sheets.	-200 ~ -700 10 V/step **-300 V**
	4	Development Performance	*	Adjusts the development potential for making the ID sensor pattern for Vsp measurement. Do not adjust.	-140 ~ -380 1 V/step **-280 V**
	5	Thick Paper 1	*	Adjusts the development bias for thick paper .1 mode. (***B098 only***)	-200 ~ -700 10 V/step **-550 V**
	6	Thick Paper 2	*	Adjusts the development bias for thick paper .2 mode. (***B098 only***)	-200 ~ -700 10 V/step **-450 V**
2-207	Forced Toner Supply				
				Forces the toner bottle to supply toner to the toner supply unit for 7 seconds. *This mode finishes automatically after the toner is supplied 7 times (1 s for each time). This process is not normally needed in the field for this model.*	Start
2-208	Toner Supply Mode				
			*	Selects the toner supply mode. *Use image pixel count mode only as a temporary countermeasure if the ID or TD sensor is defective* .	**Sensor Control** Image Pixel Count
2-209	Toner Supply Rate				
			*	Adjusts the toner supply rate. *Increasing this value reduces the toner supply clutch on time. Use a lower value if the user tends to make lots of copies that have a high proportion of black.*	50 ~ 2000 5 mg/s/ step **850 mg/s**
⇒ 2-210	ID Sensor Interval				
				Changes the interval for making the ID sensor pattern (VSP/VSG detection). *If the user normally makes copies with a high proportion of black, reduce the interval.*	0 ~ 200 1 copy/step **10 copies**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-220	VREF Manual Setting				
			*	Adjusts the TD sensor reference voltage (VREF). *Change this value after replacing the development unit with another one that already contains toner.* *For example, when using a development unit from another machine for test purposes, do the following:* *1. Check the value of SP2-220 in both the machine containing the test unit and the machine that you are going to move it to.* *2. Install the test development unit, then input the VREF for this unit into SP2-220.* *3. After the test, put back the old development unit, and change SP2-220 back to the original value.*	1.0 ~ 4.0 0.01V/step **3.0 V** (When perform SP2801, SP2963) **2.5 V** (When SP2967 is on)
2-223	VT Display				
			*	Displays the current TD sensor output voltage.	
2-301	Transfer Current Adjustment				
	1	1st copy	*	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer belt during copying on the 1st side of the paper. *If the user uses thicker paper, the current may have to be increased to ensure sufficient transfer of toner.*	15 ~ 200 1 μA/step **65 μA**
	2	2nd Copy	*	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer belt during copying on the 2nd side of the paper. *See above.*	15 ~ 200 1 μA/step **65 μA**
	3	By-pass Tray	*	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer belt during copying from the by-pass feed table. *See above. If the user normally feeds thicker paper from the bypass tray, use a higher setting.*	15 ~ 200 1 μA/step **75 μA**
	4	Post Card	*	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer belt during copying on post cards from the by-pass feed table. *The post card mode is selected when the by-pass tray is selected and the width is detected as A6.*	15 ~ 200 1 μA/step **165 μA**
	5	Between Papers	*	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer belt between the pages.	15 ~ 200 1 μA/step **15 μA**
	6	Tab Sheet	*	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer belt during copying on tab sheet.	15 ~ 200 1 μA/step **75 μA**

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-506	Cleaning Interval – Multiple Copy				
	1	Operation (On/Off)	*	Selects whether multiple copy jobs are stopped at regular intervals for the following purposes. 1. Stop and turn the drum motor in reverse to clean the cleaning blade edge 2. Make an ID sensor pattern to correct the toner density control. The interval depends on SP2-506-2. Use if the drum gets dirty or images get too pale or too dark during a long job.	**1 : No** 2 : Yes
	2	Interval	*	Selects the interval at which multi copy jobs are stopped.	1 ~ 100 1 minute/step **15 minutes**
2-801	TD Sensor Initial Setting				
			*	Performs the TD sensor initial setting. This SP mode controls the voltage applied to the TD sensor to make the TD sensor output about 3.0 V. When SP2967 is on, TD sensor output is about 2.5 V. After finishing this, the TD sensor output voltage is displayed. *Use this mode only after changing the TD sensor or the developer.*	Start
2-803	Corona Wire Cleaner On				
				Turns on the corona wire cleaner manually. *When copy density across the paper is uneven at EM, clean the wire with this mode.*	Start
2-804	Corona Wire Cleaner Operation Setting				
	1	On/Off		Selects whether corona wire cleaner operation is done. *When 'Operate' is selected, the period is set with SP2-804-2.*	**1:Operate (yes)** 0:Not operate (No)
	2	Operation Interval	*	Selects the operation interval of the corona wire cleaner.	100 ~ 10 k 100 print/step **5 k**
2-813	γ-Table Printing Test Pattern				
				A γ-table is not used when printing the test pattern (SP2902-003) when "1" is selected. "1" is cleared when exiting from SP mode. Procedure for using this SP. 1. Select SP2902 -003 and pattern 2. Select this SP and "1". 3. Change to copy mode and press "Start".	0: Used (the γ-table for the selected image mode is used) **1: Not used (no γ-table is used)**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-902	Printing Test Pattern				
	2	IPU Test Pattern		Prints the test patterns for the IPU chip. See section 4.2.3. for how to print test patterns. *This SP mode is useful for finding whether the SBICU or the SBU is defective. If the printout is not OK, the BICU is defective.*	
	3	Printing Test Pattern		Prints the printer test patterns. See section 4.2.3. for how to print test patterns. Example: 10. Trimming Area *This SP mode is useful for finding whether the LDDR or the SBICU is defective. If the printout is not OK, the LDDR is defective.*	
	4	Application Test Pattern		Prints the test pattern from a PC application	**0: No** 1: Pattern 1 2: Pattern 2
	5	Pattern Density		Adjusts the image density of test patterns No. 12 and 13 of SP2902-002.	0 ~ 255 **255** 1/step
2-906	Vcont Manual Setting				
	1	Setting	*	**Factory use only.**	**9.7 V**
	2	Vctr	*	Store the VREF value at developer initialization.	
2-909	Main Scan Magnification				
	1	Copier	*	Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction for copy mode. *See "Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	- 2.0 ~+ 2.0 0.1 %/step **+ 0.0 %**
	2	Printer	*	Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction when printing from a personal computer. *See "Replacement and Adjustment - Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	- 2.0 ~+ 2.0 0.1 %/step **+ 0.0 %**
2-911	Transfer Current On/Off Timing				
	1	La(ON)	*	Adjusts the transfer current on timing at the leading edge.	-30 ~ +30 1 mm/step **0 mm**
	3	Lc(OFF)	*	Adjusts the transfer current off timing (for example: –5 mm is 5 mm after the trailing edge).	-30 ~ +30 1 mm/step **0 mm**
2-912	Drum Reverse Rotation Interval				
			*	**This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not change the value..**	0 ~ 20 1/step **2**

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)			Function	Settings
2-913	Test Pattern ID Adjustment			
			Adjusts the image density for printing test patterns (with SP2-902). Usually this SP mode is only used by designers. *The value is cleared when the main power switch is turned off and on.*	0 ~ 15 1/step **15**
2-920	LD Off Check			
			Checks whether the LD turns off or on when the front door is opened. 0 : On 1: Off ***Factory use only.***	
2-921	Shading Correction			
		*	***Designer use only***	**0 : No** 1 : Yes
2-930	Transfer Belt Cleaning			
		*	When resolution changes from 400 to 600 dpi, the LD writes a pattern on the drum. Toner is applied, and this must be cleaned off the belt. This SP mode determines whether bias is applied to the transfer belt cleaning bias roller at this time.	**0 : No** 1 : Yes
2-961	Developer Initialization (Factory)			
			Factory use only.	
2-962	Auto Process Control			
		*	Automatically adjusts the following process control factors. 1. ID sensor 2. Drum potential sensor 3. Charge grid voltage (by changing V_D) 4. LD power (by changing V_H) 5. Image density adjustment Before using this SP, auto process control should be on (SP3-901) *After changing the drum, ID sensor, drum potential sensor, LD unit, or toner density sensor, this SP should be used.*	Start
2-963	Toner Supply From Toner Bottle			
			When installing a new machine, the following two process are done automatically. 1. Developer initialization 2. Forced toner supply (sends toner to the toner hopper) *Do not use this SP after replacing the developer. Use SP2-801 (developer initialization)*	Start

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-964	Blade Protection				
	1	Pattern Interval	*	Selects the interval for applying a strip of toner across drum and transfer belt to prevent the drum cleaning blade and belt cleaning blade from peeling off.	0 ~ 50 1 /step **0 (not applied)**
	2	Pattern Density	*	Selects the LD power for making the toner strip on the drum and transfer belt to prevent the drum cleaning blade and belt cleaning blade from peeling off.	0 ~ 15 1 /step **1**
2-965	Toner Pump Adjustment				
	1	First Toner Waste Adjustment	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 100 1g /step **3 g**
	2	After First Toner Waste	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 100 1 g /step **3 g**
	3	Pump Clutch On Time	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 5 1 /step **2 s**
	4	Pump Motor On Time	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 20 1 s/step **6 s**
	5	Return to First Toner Waste	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 50 1 time/step **30 times**
2-965	Toner Pump Adjustment				
	6	Aggregate of Toner Waste	*	**Factory use only**	
2-966	Periodical Auto Process Control				
			*	When both the following conditions exist, auto process control and charge corona wire cleaning will be done automatically. 1. The main switch was not turned off since 24 hours after the last auto process control was done. 2. A copy job has finished.	**OFF: No** ON: Yes
2-967	Auto Image Density Adjustment				
			*	During the auto process control after the main switch is turned on, the toner amount in the development unit is checked and adjusted using the ID sensor.	**OFF: No** ON: Yes
2-970	Transfer Belt Resistance Value Display				
				XX.XM Unit is Ω Very High → 190 ← High → 90 ← Standard → 25 ← Low → 15 ← Very Low	

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-971	Output Value Measured Between Copies				
	1	Voltage		Displays the measurement condition of value in SP2-970.	
	2	Current			
3-001	ID Sensor PWM Setting				
	1	ID Sensor PWM Setting	*	This SP mode is added to recover the machine when an SC condition occurs because ID Sensor Initial Setting is not done after doing an NVRAM Clear or replacing the NVRAM. Reset this SP to the factory setting in this case. *The PWM data is stored when ID Sensor Initial Setting is done.*	0 ~ 255 1/step **90**
	2	Initialization	*	Performs the ID sensor initial setting. The ID sensor output for the bare drum (V_{SG}) is adjusted to 4.0 ± 0.2V. *This SP mode should be performed after:* *1. Replacing or cleaning the ID sensor* *2. Replacing the NVRAM or doing an NVRAM clear* *3. Replacing the BICU board*	Start
3-103	ID Sensor Output Display				
			*	Displays the current V_{SG} and V_{SP} output. V_{SP}= x.xx V V_{SG}= x.xx V *If the ID sensor does not detect the ID pattern, "V_{SP}=5.0V/V_{SG}=5.0V" is displayed and an SC code is generated.* *If the ID sensor does not detect the bare area of the drum, "V_{SP}=0.0V/V_{SG}=0.0V" is displayed and an SC code is generated.*	
3-901	Auto Process Control				
			*	Decides whether or not the machine checks and corrects the drum potential (V_D) and LD power when the fusing temperature is lower than 100°C at power-up.	**ON** OFF
3-902	Process Control Data Display				
	1	Auto Process Control	*	Displays whether auto process control is on or off. (O: OFF, 1: ON)	
	2	V_D	*	Displays the drum potential.	
	3	V_H (Half Tone)	*	Displays the drum potential in areas illuminated by the laser.	
	4	V_G	*	Displays the charge grid voltage which resulted from the latest V_D adjustment.	
	5	LD Power (Correction)	*	Displays the LD power correction value which resulted from the latest V_H adjustment.	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
3-902	Process Control Data Display				
	6	VID	*	Displays the latest drum surface voltage measured on the ID sensor pattern.	
	7	VQL	*	Displays the drum potential after quenching.	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-008	Scanner Sub Scan Magnification				
			*	Adjusts the magnification in the sub scan direction for scanning. If this value is changed, the scanner motor speed is changed. *See "Replacement and Adjustment - Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	- 0.9 ~ + 0.9 0.1 %/step **+ 0.0 %**
4-010	Scanner Leading Edge Registration				
			*	Adjusts the leading edge registration for scanning. *(-): The image moves in the direction of the leading edge* *See "Replacement and Adjustment - Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	- 9.0 ~ + 9.0 0.1 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**
4-011	Scanner Side-to Side Registration				
			*	Adjusts the side-to-side registration for scanning. *(-): The image disappears at the left side.* *(+): The image appears at the left side.* *See "Replacement and Adjustment - Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	- 6.0 ~ + 6.0 0.1 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**
4-012	Scanner Erase Margin				
	1	Leading Edge	*	Adjusts the leading edge erase margin for scanning. *Do not adjust this unless the user wishes to have a scanner margin that is greater than the printer margin.*	0.0 ~ 0.9 0.1 mm/step **0.5 mm**
	2	Trailing Edge	*	Adjusts the trailing edge erase margin for scanning. *See the comment for SP 4-012-1.*	
	3	Left	*	Adjusts the left side erase margin for scanning. *See the comment for SP 4-012-1.*	
	4	Right	*	Adjusts the right side erase margin for scanning. *See the comment for SP 4-012-1.*	
4-013	Scanner Free Run				
				Performs a scanner free run with the exposure lamp on.	**0: Stop** 1: Start
4-015	Scanner Speed Adjustment				
			*	Adjusts the scanner speed variation. Do not adjust unless instructed by senior technical staff.	-20 ~ 20 1/step **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-301	APS Sensor Output Display				
				Displays the APS sensor output signals when an original is placed on the exposure glass. Bit 0: Width sensor 1 Bit 1: Width sensor 2 Bit 2: Width sensor 3 Bit 3: Length sensor 1 Bit 4: Length sensor 2 See “Detailed Section Descriptions – Original Size Detection in Platen Mode” for more details.	00000000 0: Not detected 1: Detected
4-303	APS A5/HLT Size Original Detection				
			*	Selects whether or not the copier determines that the original is A5/HLT size when the APS sensor does not detect the size. *If "A5 length/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" is selected, paper sizes that cannot be detected by the APS sensors are regarded as A5 lengthwise or 5 1/2" x 8 1/2".* *If "Not detected" is selected, "Cannot detect original size" will be displayed.* *If not using 8 k and 16 k paper, select “0” or “1”.* *If using 8 k and 16 k paper, select “2” or “3”.*	**0: Not detected** 1: A5 length / 5 1/2" x 8 1/2" 2: Not detected 3: A5 length/ 5 1/2” x 8 1/2”
4-428	Scanner Adjustment				
	1	Flag Display	*	Displays whether or not the standard white level adjustment has been done.	Adjusted Not adjusted
	2	Standard		Corrects the standard white level from the white plate. ***This SP mode is for factory use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	Start
4-902	SBU Setting				
	1	Image data Path Setting	*	Changes the image data path in the SBU. ***This SP mode is for factory use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~5 1/step **0**
	2	SBU ID		Displays the ASIC ID of the SBU. ***This SP mode is for factory use only.***	
	3	First-side E/O Adjustment	*	Checks the difference value of the black level for the first side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **128**
	4	Last-side E/O Adjustment	*	Checks the difference value of the black level for the last side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **128**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-902	SBU Setting				
	7	First-side Bk Adjustment	*	Checks the value of the black level for the first side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **170**
	8	Last-side Bk Adjustment	*	Checks the value of the black level for the last side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **170**
	15	First-side Gain Range Adjustment	*	Checks the AGC gain range of the white level for the first side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **80**
	16	Last-side Gain Range Adjustment	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **80**
	19	First-side Gain Adjustment E-ch	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the first side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	20	First-side Gain Adjustment O-ch	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the first side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	21	Last-side Gain Adjustment E-ch	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	22	Last-side Gain Adjustment O-ch	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	25	Standard White Level Adjustment	*	Checks the value of the standard white level after adjusting the white level. ***This SP mode is for factory use only. Do not use this SP mode.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **117**
	31	First-side E/O Adjustment (Memory)	*	Checks the difference value of the black level for the First side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~255 1/step **128**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-902	SBU Setting				
	32	Last-side E/O Adjustment (Memory)	*	Checks the difference value of the black level for the last side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~255 1/step **128**
	35	First-side Bk Adjustment (Memory)	*	Checks the value of the black level for the first side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **170**
	36	Last-side Bk Adjustment (Memory)	*	Checks the value of the black level for the last side after adjusting the black level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **170**
	43	First-side Gain Range Adjustment (Memory)	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the first side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	44	Last-side Gain Range Adjustment (Memory)	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the first side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	47	First-side Gain Adjustment E-ch (Memory)	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	48	First-side Gain Adjustment O-ch (Memory)	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	49	Last-side Gain Adjustment E-ch (Memory)	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	50	Last-side Gain Adjustment O-ch (Memory)	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	53	Standard White Level Adjustment (Memory)	*	Checks the value of the standard white level after adjusting the white level. ***This SP mode is for factory use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **117**
	59	White Level Data		Checks either the maximum or minimum white shading data. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0: Maximum 1: Minimum
	61	First-side Gain Range Adjustment at Factory	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the first side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **80**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-902	SBU Setting				
	62	Last-side Gain Range Adjustment at Factory	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the first side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **80**
	65	First-side Gain Adjustment -E ch at Factory	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	66	First-side Gain Adjustment-O ch at Factory	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	67	Last-side Gain Adjustment-E ch at Factory	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the EVEN channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	68	Last-side Gain Adjustment-O ch at Factory	*	Checks the AGC gain value of the white level for the ODD channel of the last side after adjusting the white level at power-up. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	71	Standard White Level Adjustment at Factory	*	Checks the value of the standard white level after adjusting the white level. ***This SP mode is for factory use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **117**
	75	Overflow Flag		Checks the overflow flag data during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 1023 1/step **0**
	76	Time-out Flag		Checks the time out flag data during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 1023 1/step **0**
	78	SBU Reset Error Flag		Checks the error flag data during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 15 1/step **0**
	79	Error Flag		Checks the error flag data during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	80	Gain Adjustment First/Last Error Times	*	Counts the errors during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	81	Offset Level Read Error Times	*	Counts the errors during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-902	SBU Setting				
	82	Gain Level Read Error Times	*	Counts the errors during the automatic scanner adjustment ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	83	Offset Level Read Error Times	*	Counts the errors during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	84	Gain Level Read Error Times	*	Counts the errors during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	85	Retry to Adjust Error Fail Time	*	Counts the errors during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	86	Retry to Adjust Success Time	*	Counts the errors during the automatic scanner adjustment. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	87	White Peak Level – Front side (E ch)	*	Displays the white peak level when the main switch is turned on. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	88	White Peak Level – Front side (O ch)	*	Displays the white peak level when the main switch is turned on. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	89	White Peak Level – Front side (E ch)	*	Displays the white peak level when the main switch is turned on. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	90	White Peak Level – Front side (E ch)	*	Displays the white peak level when the main switch is turned on. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
	91	BIPU ID Display	*	***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	
4-903	Filter Setting				
	5	Full Size Mode		Selects whether the copy is always in full size mode even if the magnification ratio has been changed. *Set to 1 when checking the magnification in the main scan direction. If the magnification is not 100%, something is wrong with the image processing circuits.*	**0: Normal operation** 1: Always full size mode
	7	Image Shift in Magnification		Adjusts the pixel shift amount in the main scan direction in magnification mode. ***This SP mode is for designer use only.***	0 ~ 8191 1/step **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	9	Photo Mode Filter Selection	*	Selects the filter used in photo mode	0: MTF Filter **1: Smoothing Filter**
	10	Pre-filter Type (Text mode 25% ~ 49%)	*	Selects the pre-filter type. 0: None 1: Smoothing (Normal) 2: Smoothing (Weak) 3 ~ 5: Special smoothing filters which reduce moiré but do not weaken the edges of low contrast text. A suitable filter should be selected depending on the original type. 6: MTF (Weak) 7: MTF (Normal) 8 ~ 10: Special smoothing filters only for the main scan direction. These filters should be used if the edges of lines that are parallel to the sub scan line are weakened when a filter from 3 ~ 5 is selected. A suitable filter should be selected depending on the original type. This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.	0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	11	Pre-filter Type (Text mode 50% ~ 154%)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **0**
	12	Pre-filter Type (Photo mode)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	13	Pre-filter Type (Text/Photo mode 25% ~ 49%)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	14	Pre-filter Type (Text/Photo mode 50% ~ 154%)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **0**
	15	Pre-filter Type (Pale mode)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	16	Pre-filter Type (Generation mode)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	20	Filter Level-25% ~ 49% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 25% ~ 49% reduction for text mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	21	Filter Level-25% ~ 49% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 25% ~ 49% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **6**
	22	Filter Strength-25% ~ 49% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 25% ~ 49% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6:Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **1**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	23	Filter Strength-25% ~ 49% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 25% ~ 49% magnification for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **1**
	24	Filter Level-50% ~ 154% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 50% ~ 154% reduction for text mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	25	Filter Level-50% ~ 154% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 50% ~ 154% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **6**
	26	Filter Strength-50% ~ 154% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 50% ~ 154% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **1**
	27	Filter Strength-50% ~ 154% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 50% ~ 154% magnification for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong. *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **1**
	28	Filter Level-155% ~ 256% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 155% ~ 256% reduction for text mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	29	Filter Level-155% ~ 256% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 155% ~ 256% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **2**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	30	Filter Strength-155% ~ 256% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 155% ~ 256% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **0**
	31	Filter Strength-155% ~ 256% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 155% ~ 256% magnification for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **4**
	32	Filter Level-257% ~ 400% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 256% ~ 400% reduction for text mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	33	Filter Level-257% ~ 400% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 257% ~ 400% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **2**
	34	Filter Strength-257% ~ 400% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 257% ~ 400% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **0**
	35	Filter Strength-257% ~ 400% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 257% ~ 400% magnification for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **4**
	36	MTF Filter-Photo Mode	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient for photo mode, if MTF is enabled for this mode with SP4-903-9. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	37	Smoothing Filter-Photo mode	*	Selects the smoothing filter coefficient for photo mode, if smoothing is enabled for this mode with SP4-903-9. 0: Weak 7: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 7 1/step **4**
	38	Filter Strength-Photo mode	*	Selects the smoothing filter coefficient for photo mode, if MTF is enabled for this mode with SP4-903-9. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **1**
	39	Filter Level-25% ~ 49% (Main Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 25% ~ 49% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	40	Filter Level-25% ~ 49% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 25% ~ 49% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **3**
	41	Filter Strength-25% ~ 49% (Main Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 25% ~ 49% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **0**
	42	Filter Strength-25% ~ 49% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 25% ~ 49% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **0**
	43	Filter Level-50% ~ 154% (Main Scan Direction Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 50% ~ 154% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	44	Filter Level-50% ~ 154% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 50% ~ 154% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **3**
	45	Filter Strength-50% ~ 154% (Main Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 50% ~ 154% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **0**
	46	Filter Strength-50% ~ 154% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 50% ~ 154% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **1**
	47	Filter Level-155% ~ 256% (Main Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 155% ~ 256% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	48	Filter Level-155% ~ 256% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 155% ~ 256% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **3**
	49	Filter Strength-155% ~ 256% (Main Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 155% ~ 256% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	50	Filter Strength-155% ~ 256% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 155% ~ 256% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **3**
	51	Filter Level 257% ~ 400% (Main Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 257% ~ 400% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	52	Filter Level-257% ~ 400% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 257% ~ 400% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **3**
	53	Filter Strength-257% ~ 400% (Main Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the main scan direction for 257% ~ 400% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **0**
	54	Filter Strength-257% ~ 400% (Sub Scan Direction-Text/Photo)	*	Selects the MTF strength in the sub scan direction for 257% ~ 400% magnification for text areas in text/photo mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **3**
	55	Filter Level-Pale Mode	*	Selects the table of the MTF filter coefficient for pale original mode Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **3**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	56	Filter Strength-Pale Mode	*	Selects the table of the MTF filter strength for pale original mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **3**
	57	Filter Level-Generation Mode	*	Selects the table of the MTF filter coefficient for pale original mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	58	Filter Strength-Generation Mode	*	Selects the table of the MTF filter strength for generation original mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **1**
	60	Independent Dot Erase-Text Mode	*	Selects the independent dot erase level for text mode. *A larger number erases more dots. 0 means disabled. Refer to "Detailed Section Description – Independent Dot Erase" for details.*	0 ~ 14 1/step **3**
	62	Independent Dot Erase-Text/Photo Mode	*	Selects the independent dot erase level for text/photo mode. *A larger number erases more dots. 0 means disabled. Refer to "Detailed Sectional Description – Independent Dot Erase" for details.*	0 ~ 14 1/step **3**
	63	Independent Dot Erase-Pale Mode	*	Selects the independent dot erase level for pale mode. *A larger number erases more dots. 0 means disabled. Refer to "Detailed Section Description – Independent Dot Erase" for details.*	0 ~ 14 1/step **3**
	64	Independent Dot Erase - Generation Copy Mode	*	Selects the independent dot erase level for generation copy mode. *A larger number erases more dots. 0 means disabled. Refer to "Detailed Sectional Description – Independent Dot Erase" for details.*	0 ~ 14 1/step **3**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	65	Scanner Gamma Thresh Level - Text	*	Adjust the threshold level for the background erase function in letter mode. *A larger value reduces dirty background. This SP is ignored unless 1 or 2 is selected with SP4-903-70.*	0 ~ 255 1/step **0**
	66	Scanner Gamma Thresh Level - Photo	*	Adjust the threshold level for the background erase function in photo mode. *A larger value reduces dirty background. This SP is ignored unless 1 or 2 is selected with SP4-903-71.*	
	67	Scanner Gamma Thresh Level - Text/Photo	*	Adjust the threshold level for the background erase function in text/photo mode. *A larger value reduces dirty background. This SP is ignored unless 1 or 2 is selected with SP4-903-72.*	
	68	Scanner Gamma Thresh Level - Pale	*	Adjust the threshold level for the background erase function in pale mode. *A larger value reduces dirty background. This SP is ignored unless 1 or 2 is selected with SP4-903-73.*	
	69	Scanner Gamma Thresh Level - Generation	*	Adjust the threshold level for background erase in generation copy mode. *A larger value reduces dirty background. This SP is ignored unless 1 or 2 is selected with SP4-903-74.*	
	70	Background Erase Mode - Text	*	Selects the background erase function setting in text mode. 0: Not done 1: Weak background erase (the MTF filter is not used if the pixel is below the threshold selected with SP4-903-65.) 2: Strong background erase (the pixel is changed to 0 if it is below the threshold level selected with SP4-903-65.) *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 2 1/step **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	71	Background Erase Mode - Photo	*	Selects the background erase function setting in photo mode. 0: Not done 1: Strong background erase (the pixel is changed to 0 if it is below the threshold level selected with SP4-903-66.) *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 1 1/step **0**
	72	Background Erase Mode - Text/Photo	*	Selects the background erase function setting in text/photo mode. 0: Not done 1: Weak background erase (the MTF filter is not used if the pixel is below the threshold selected with SP4-903-67.) 2: Strong background erase (the pixel is changed to 0 if it is below the threshold level selected with SP4-903-67.) *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 2 1/step **0**
	73	Background Erase Mode - Pale	S	Selects the background erase function setting in pale mode. 0: Not done 1: Weak background erase (the MTF filter is not used if the pixel is below the threshold selected with SP4-903-68.) 2: Strong background erase (the pixel is changed to 0 if it is below the threshold level selected with SP4-903-68.) *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 2 1/step **0**
	74	Background Erase Mode- Generation	*	Selects the background erase function setting in generation mode. 0: Not done 1: Weak background erase (the MTF filter is not used if the pixel is below the threshold selected with SP4-903-69. 2: Strong background erase (the pixel is changed to 0 if it is below the threshold level selected with SP4-903-69. *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 2 1/step **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	75	Line Thickness Correction-Generation	*	Selects the line thickness setting in generation mode.	0 ~ 15 1/step **5**

	Main Scan	Sub Scan
0:	No Correction	No Correction
1:	No Correction	Thinner 1
2:	No Correction	Thinner 2
3:	No Correction	Thicker
4:	Thinner 1	No Correction
5:	Thinner 1	Thinner 1
6:	Thinner 1	Thinner 2
7:	Thinner 1	Thicker
8:	Thinner 2	No Correction
9:	Thinner 2	Thinner 1
10:	Thinner 2	Thinner 2
11:	Thinner 2	Thicker
12:	Thicker	No Correction
13:	Thicker	Thinner 1
14:	Thicker	Thinner 2
15:	Thicker	Thicker

Line Thickness:
Thicker > No Correction > Thinner 1 > Thinner 2

Refer 'Line Width Correction' in section 2.

	76	Line Thickness Correction - Threshold (Main Scan - Generation)	*	Selects the threshold to determine if line thickness correction is applied for a pixel. If a higher number is selected, the effectiveness of the line thickness correction selected with SP4-903-75 becomes stronger.	0 ~ 5 1/step **2**
	77	Line Thickness Correction - Generation (Sub Scan)	*	Selects the threshold to determine if line thickness correction is applied for a pixel. If a higher number is selected, the effectiveness of the line thickness correction selected with SP4-903-75 becomes stronger.	0 ~ 5 1/step **2**

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Mode No.
(Class 1 , 2 & 3)</th><th>Function</th><th>Settings</th></tr>
<tr><td>4-903</td><td colspan="3">Filter Setting</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>78</td><td>Line Thickness Correction - Text</td><td>*</td><td>Selects the line thickness setting in generation mode.

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Main Scan</th><th>Sub Scan</th></tr>
<tr><td>0:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>1:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>3:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
<tr><td>4:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>5:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>6:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>7:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
<tr><td>8:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>9:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>10:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>11:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
<tr><td>12:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>13:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>14:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
</table>
Line Thickness:
Thicker > No Correction > Thinner 1 > Thinner 2

Refer ‘Line Width Correction’ in section 2.</td><td>0 ~ 15
1/step
5</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>79</td><td>Line Thickness Correction - Threshold (Main Scan-Text)</td><td>*</td><td>Selects the threshold to determine if line thickness correction is applied for a pixel. If a higher number is selected, the effectiveness of the line thickness correction selected with SP4-903-78 becomes stronger.</td><td>0 ~ 5
1/step
2</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>80</td><td>Line Thickness Correction - Threshold (Sub Scan-Text)</td><td>*</td><td>Selects the threshold to determine if line thickness correction is applied for a pixel. If a higher number is selected, the effectiveness of the line thickness correction selected with SP4-903-78 becomes stronger.</td><td>0 ~ 5
1/step
2</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Mode No.
(Class 1 , 2 & 3)</th><th>Function</th><th>Settings</th></tr>
<tr><td>4-903</td><td colspan="3">Filter Setting</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>81</td><td>Line Thickness Correction - Text/Photo Mode</td><td>*</td><td>Selects the line thickness setting in generation mode.

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Main Scan</th><th>Sub Scan</th></tr>
<tr><td>0:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>1:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>3:</td><td>No Correction</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
<tr><td>4:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>5:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>6:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>7:</td><td>Thinner 1</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
<tr><td>8:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>9:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>10:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>11:</td><td>Thinner 2</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
<tr><td>12:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>No Correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>13:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>Thinner 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>14:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>Thinner 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>15:</td><td>Thicker</td><td>Thicker</td></tr>
</table>
Line Thickness:
Thicker > No Correction > Thinner 1 > Thinner 2

Refer ‘Line Width Correction’ in section 2.</td><td>0 ~ 15
1/step
5</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>82</td><td>Line Thickness Correction - Threshold (Main Scan-Text/Photo)</td><td>*</td><td>Selects the threshold to determine if line thickness correction is applied for a pixel. If higher number is selected, the effectiveness of the line thickness correction selected with SP4-903-81 becomes stronger.</td><td>0 ~ 5
1/step
2</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>83</td><td>Line Thickness Correction - Threshold (Sub Scan - Text/Photo)</td><td>*</td><td>Selects the threshold to determine if line thickness correction is applied for a pixel. If higher number is selected, the effectiveness of the line thickness correction selected with SP4-903-81 becomes stronger.</td><td>0 ~ 5
1/step
2</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>84</td><td>Scanner Gamma Selection - Text Mode</td><td>*</td><td>Selects the scanner and printer gamma settings used when ‘Service Mode’ for Text mode is selected.
0: Scanner gamma for ‘Soft’ is used.
1: Scanner gamma for ‘Normal’ is used.
2: Scanner gamma for ‘Sharp’ is used.</td><td>0 ~ 2
1/step
1</td></tr>
</table>

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	85	Scanner Gamma Selection - Text/Photo Mode		Selects the scanner and printer gamma settings used when 'Service Mode' for Text/Photo mode is selected. 0: Scanner gamma for 'Photo Priority' is used. 1: Scanner gamma for 'Normal' is used. 2: Scanner gamma for 'Text Priority' is used.	0 ~ 2 1/step **1**
4-904	IPU Setting -1				
	2	Gradation Processing Selection - Photo	*	Selects the gradation processing procedure. 0: Three-gradation error diffusion 1: Four-gradation error diffusion 2: 8" x 8" dither matrix 3: 6" x 6" dither matrix 4: 4" x 4" dither matrix *A larger dither matrix gives coarser reproduction of halftones. This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 4 **1**
	4	Forced Binary Mode	*	1: Binary processing is done for all image modes.	**0: No** 1: Yes
	6	Smoothing Filter Level in Photo Mode	*	Selects the smoothing filter level in photo mode. 0: None 1: Weak 5: Strong	0 ~ 5 **2**
	7	Texture Erase Filter Level in Text Mode	*	Selects the strength of the filter for erasing texture from the image in text/photo mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Strong	0 ~ 2 **0**
	20	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Text	*	Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for text mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 3: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**
	22	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Text/Photo	*	Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for text/photo mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 3: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-904	IPU Setting -1				
	23	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Pale		Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for pale mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 3: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**
	24	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Generation		Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for generation mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 2: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**
4-905	Image Data Path				
	1	Image Data Path – Filtering/Magnification		Selects one of the following video data outputs, which will be used for printing. 0: Magnification → Filtering 1: Filtering → Magnification 2: Pre-filtering → Magnification → Filtering 3: Pre-filtering → Filtering → Magnification 4**: Normal operation**	
				Do not change the value.	
	4	Printout Type Selection		Selects one of the following video data outputs, which will be used for the printer controller. **0: Normal operation** 1: Black/white conversion 2: Not printed out 3: Direct printing of data from the application	
				Do not change the value.	
4-906	Image Processing Priority in Text/Photo Mode				
			*	Selects either text priority or photo priority for text/photo mode. Photo priority: Background erase is off Letter priority: Background erase is on. *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'SP Mode Changed' in UP mode.*	1: Photo priority **0: Letter priority**
4-909	IPU Setting - 2				
	1	Data Through Setting in IPU (Image Processing)	*	***Do not change the value.***	0 ~255 1/step **0**
	2	Data Through Setting in IPU (I/F-1)	*	***Do not change the value.***	0 ~ 255 1 /step **0**
	3	Data Through Setting in IPU (I/F-2)	*	***Do not change the value.***	0 ~ 15 1 /step **13**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-909	IPU Setting - 2				
	15	Main Scan Data Conversion		***Do not change the value.***	0 ~ 1 **0**
	16	Image Data Path-Scanner Test		***Do not change the value.***	0 ~ 4 1 /step **0**
	17	Image Data Path-MSU		***Do not change the value.***	0 ~ 3 1 /step **3**
	18	Image Data Path-Application		***Do not change the value.***	0 ~ 4 1 /step **3**
	20	Image Data Path-Printer		***Do not change the value.***	0 ~ 4 1 /step **3**
4-910	Data Compression				
	3	ABS Core		***Do not change the value.***	**0: On** 1: Off
4-911	HDD				
	1	HDD Media Check		Checks for bad sectors on the hard disk that develop during machine use. This takes 4 minutes. *This SP mode should be done when an abnormal image is printed. There is no need to do this at installation as the hard disk firmware already contains bad sector information, and damage is not likely during transportation.* *Bad sectors detected with this SP mode will be stored in the NVRAM with the bad sector data copied across from the firmware.* *If the machine detects over 50 bad sectors, SC361 will be generated. At this time, use SP4-911-2.*	Start
	2	HDD Formatting		Formats the hard disk. This takes 4 minutes. **Do not turn off the main power switch during this process.**	
	6	HDD Bad Sector Information Reset		Resets the bad sector information which is stored in the NVRAM. *This SP should be used when the hard disk is replaced.*	Start
	7	HDD Bad Sector Display	*	Displays the number of bad sectors there are on the hard disk. *If the machine detects a total of over 50 bad sectors on the disk, SC361 will be generated. At this time, use SP4-911-2.*	Total: 0 Copy: 0 Printer: 0 Copy Server: 0

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-911	HDD				
	8	HDD Model Name Display		Displays the model name of the HDD. *If the HDD is not installed or the HDD connector is not connected, SC360 will be displayed. However, the user can make single copies.*	
5-019	Tray Paper Size Selection				
	5	LCT	*	Selects the paper size in the optional LCT.	A4 LT B5 LG LTR
5-024	mm/inch Display Selection				
			*	Selects what unit is used.	**0: mm** 1: inch
				After selecting the unit, turn the main power switch off and on.	
5-104	A3/DLT Double Count				
			*	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/11"x17" paper. *If "1" is selected, the total counter and the current user code counter count up twice when A3/11"x17" paper is used.*	**No** Yes
5-106	ID Shift Level				
	6	ADS Level Selection	*	Selects the image density level that is used in ADS mode.	1 ~ 7 1 notch /step **4**
5-112	Non-standard Paper Selection				
			*	Selects whether a non-standard paper size can be input for tray 2 (universal tray) or not. *If "1" is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using a UP mode.*	**No** Yes
5-113	Optional Counter Type				
			*	**Select the option counter type.** 0. None 1. Key card (Japan only) 2. Key card (Count down type) 3. Pre-paid card 4. Coin lock 5. Key card (Japan only)	0 ~ 5 1/step **0**
5-118	Disable Copying				
			*	Selects whether the copy function is disabled or not when printer controller is installed.	**0: No** 1: Yes

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-120	M/C Option Counter Removal				
			*	**This SP is for Japan only. Do not change the value.**	0 ~ 2 1/step **0**
5-121	Counter Up Timing				
			*	Determines whether the optional key counter counts up at paper feed-in or at paper exit. *The total counter is not affected by this SP mode.*	**0: Feed-in** 1: Exit
5-127	APS Mode				
			*	Selects whether the APS function is enabled or not.	No **Yes**
5-131	Paper Size Type Selection				
			*	Selects the paper size type (for originals and copy paper). (Only needs to be adjusted if the optional printer controller is installed) • *After changing the value, turn the main power switch off and on.* • *If the paper size type of the archive files stored in the HDD is different, abnormal copies will be made. So, after changing this setting, perform SP5-822 and ask the user to restore the archive files.*	0: Japan **1: North America** **2: Europe** **3: China**
5-212	Adjust Position on 2nd side Duplex Copying				
	3	Page Print Position – Side to Side		Adjusts the position (sub scan direction) of "Page Numbering" on 2nd side when making duplex copy	-10 ~ +10mm 1 mm step **0 mm**
	4	Page Print Position – Up and down		Adjusts the position (main scan direction) of "Page Numbering" on 2nd side when making duplex copy	-10 ~ +10mm 1 mm step **0 mm**
5-501	PM Alarm Interval				
			*	Sets the PM interval, with an alarm. *When set to "0", the alarm is disabled.*	0 ~ 255 1k copies/step **0 k copies**
5-504	Jam Alarm Level(RSS function)				
	1	Jam Alarm Level	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0: No 1: L 2: M **3: H**
	2	Jam Auto Call (RSS function)	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0: Off **1: On**
5-505	Error Alarm Level				
			*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0 ~ 255 copies/step 100

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-507	Paper Supply Call Level				
	128	Others	*	**Japanese version only.**	250 ~ 10000
	132	A3	*	**Do not change the values.**	1 page/step
	133	A4	*		**1000 pages**
	134	A5	*		
	141	B4	*		
	142	B5	*		
	160	DLT	*		
	164	LG	*		
	166	LT	*		
	172	HLT	*		
5-513	PM Alarm Interval Setting				
	1	Copy Paper Based	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0 ~ 9999k 1 k/step **300k**
	2	Original Based	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0 ~ 9999k 1 k/step **300k**
5-514	PM Alarm On/Off Setting				
	1	Copy Paper Based	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0: No **1: Yes**
	2	Original Based	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	**0: No** 1: Yes
5-590	Auto Call Setting				
	2	Door Open	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	**0: Off** 1: On
	3	Paper Supply	*		
	4	Stapler Supply	*		
	5	Toner Supply	*		
5-801	Memory All Clear				
				Resets all correction data for process control and all software counters. Also, returns all modes and adjustments to the default settings. See the "Memory All Clear" section for how to use this SP mode correctly. Touch “Start” for over 3 seconds, then turn the main power switch off and on. ***Normally, this SP mode should not be used.*** *It is used only after replacing the NVRAM, or when the copier malfunctions due to a damaged NVRAM.* The LCD coordinates are also cleared, see “LCD Touch Panel Calibration”.	Start

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-802	Printer Free Run				
			*	Performs a free run. The scanner scans once and the printer prints for the number of copies requested. *To perform the free run, select "ON"* *1) Select "ON".* 2) *Select "Exit".* 3) *Select "Copy Mode".* 4) *Make the required settings (such as the number of copies.).* 5) *Press the Start key.* *After finishing the free run, return this SP to "OFF"*	**Off** On
5-803	Input Check				
	1 ~ 14			Displays the signals received from sensors and switches. See the "Input Check" section for details.	
5-804	Output Check				
	1 ~ 97			Turns on the electrical components individually for test purposes. See the "Output Check" section for details.	On Off
5-807	Option Connection Check				
	1	ADF		Checks the connectors to the optional peripherals.	0: Not connected 1: Connected
	2	Bank			
	4	Finisher			
5-811	Machine Serial Number				
			*	Use to input the machine serial number. (Normally done at the factory.) *This serial number will be printed on the system parameter list.* *Use the " •" key to input "A".*	
5-812	Service Tel. No. Setting				
	1	Service Telephone Number at SC Condition	*	Use this to input the telephone number of the service representative (this is displayed when a service call condition occurs.) *Press the " •" key to input a pause.* *Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number.*	
	2	Service Fax Number for Counter Printing	*	Use this to input the fax number of the service representative (this is printed on the Counter Report – UP mode, System No.19) *Press the " •" key to input a pause.* *Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number.*	
5-816	CSS Function				
	1	Function Setting	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	**Off** On
	2	CE Call	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	**Off** On

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-821	CSS PI Device Code				
			*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the value.**	0 ~ 4 1/step **0**
5-823	Paper Supply Call Tray				
	1	1st Tray		***This SP is for Japan only. Do not change the value.***	**0: Call** 1: Not Call
	2	2nd Tray			
	3	3rd Tray			
	4	4th Tray			
	5	LCT			
	6	By-pass Tray			
5-824	Upload NVRAM Data				
				Uploads the NVRAM data to the flash memory card.	Start
				When uploading this SP mode data, the front door should be opened.	
5-825	Download NVRAM Data				
	1	All Data		*Downloads the NVRAM data from flash memory card to NVRAM.* *The following data are not downloaded when selecting 'All Data'.* *SP7-003-**** *SP7-006-**** *When the serial number of NVRAM and flash memory card are not the same, you cannot download the data.*	Start
	2	Mode Data			
5-826	Program Upload				
				Uploads the machine program to the flash memory card.	Start
5-829	Stamp Data Download				
				Downloads the stamp data from the flash memory card.	Start
⇒ 5-849	Counter Clear Data (***B098 only***)				
	1	Indication	*	Display the date when resets the electrical total counter (7-825).	
	2	Print out setting	*	Selects whether or not the counter date is printed on the counter print.	0: No Print 1: Print
5-907	Plug & Play (Brand Name and Production Name Setting)				
				Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows 95 Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again.	
				After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-914	Printer Counter Display				
			*	Selects whether or not the total printer counter is displayed in the UP mode.	**Off** On
5-915	Mechanical Counter Detection				
				Checks whether the mechanical counter inside the inner cover is connected or not.	0: Not detected 1: Detected 2: Unknown
5-920	Fusing Temperature in Low Power Mode				
			*	Adjusts the fusing temperature in low power mode. Default setting as follows:. For A292 NA: 170°C EU: 160°C For A293 NA: 177°C For B098 NA: 160°C EU: 155°C	170 ~ 182 1°C /step
				Do not change the value.	
5-921	Data Port Change				
			*	Changes the connector for sending the key card data.	**0: Key card connector** 1: Key counter connector
5-922	Counter Operation Setting				
			*	Selects the counter operation for the optional counter. **0: No Interleaf** (Productivity is slow in duplex mode.) 1: Interleaf (Productivity is high in duplex mode.)	
				When using a "count down type" key card and duplex mode, the last copy will sometimes be free if "1" is selected.	
5-923	Edge Erase Standard				
			*	Selects the standard for edge erase. 0: The margin is erased from the original data. 1: The margin is erased from the data sent to the laser diode. Note that the output resulting from each of the settings will be different when reduction or enlargement is used.	**0: Original** 1: Paper
5-924	Adjust Margin for each Original				
	1	Adjust margin for each original	*	Selects whether or not Margin per Original is enabled. **No:** Images are shifted with a binding margin during image writing. **Yes:** The margin is applied during scanning.	**No** Yes
				After Yes has been selected, the "per original" key is displayed. *This key must be pressed to activate the mode.*	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-924	Margin per Original				
	2	Per original priority		Selects whether or not Margin per Original is enabled as default. This setting is given priority over 5924-1. *When this mode is enabled, the ADF feed interval is longer.*	**On** Off
5-954	Copy Server Password Display				
				Selects whether to display the password when a file with a password is selected on the copy server. *If you forget the password, select "1" to check it.*	**Normal** Display password
5-965	All Copy Server File Delete				
				Delete the all copy server files.	Start Cancel
5-970	Printer Installed **(A292/A293 only)**				
			*	Selects whether the information " Now loading…. Please wait" is displayed or not.	**0: No** 1: Yes
5-971	Enhance Copy Setting				
	2	Effective Original Density	*	Selects the original image ratio at which the mode is activated (calc. From setting).	1 ~ 60% 1% step **4%**
	3	Effective Multiple Copy	*	Selects the sheet number at which the mode is activated with multi-copy jobs (calc. from setting).	1 ~ 50 sheets 1 sheet step **3 sheets**
5-972	Document Server Counter Selection				
			*	Selects the counter	**0: Copy** 1: Copy or Printer
5-990	SMC Print				
	1	All		Prints all the system parameter lists. See the "System Parameter and Data Lists" section for how to print the lists.	Start
	2	SP		Prints the SP mode data list. See the "System Parameter and Data Lists" section for how to print the lists.	Start
	3	User Program		Prints the UP mode data list. See the "System Parameter and Data Lists" section for how to print the lists.	Start
	4	Logged Data		Prints the machine status history data list. See the "System Parameter and Data Lists" section for how to print the lists.	Start
6-006	DF Registration Adjustment				
	1	Side-to-Side	*	Adjusts the printing side-to-side registration in the ADF mode.	-3 ~ +3 0.1 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
6-006	DF Registration Adjustment				
	2	Leading Edge (Thin Original)	*	Adjusts the original stop position.	-29 ~ +29 0.18 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**
	3	Leading Edge (Duplex-front)	*	Adjusts the original stop position against the original left scale in one-sided original mode.	-29 ~ +29 0.18 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**
	4	Reading Edge (Duplex-rear)	*	Adjusts the original stop position against the original left scale in two-sided original mode.	-29 ~ +29 0.1 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**
6-007	ADF Input Check				
	1	Group 1		Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the ADF. See the "Input Check" section for details.	
	2	Group 2		Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the ADF. See the "Input Check" section for details.	
6-008	ADF Output Check				
				Turns on the electrical components of the ADF individually for test purposes. See the "Output Check" section for details.	
6-009	ADF Free Run (Two-sided original)				
	1			Performs an ADF free run in two-sided original mode. Press “1” to start. *This is a general free run controlled from the copier. For more detailed free run modes, see the ‘Test Points/Dip Switches/LEDs’ section.*	**Off** On
⇒ 6-016	Adjust Motor Speed				
				Adjust the speed of the feed-in, transport and feed-out motors. Perform this SP when replacing the Main Board or above motors.	
6-020	ADF Speed Adjustment				
			*	When the customer points out noise form the ADF, use this to adjust the ADF speed to low.	High speed: 70 cpm Low Speed: 55 cpm
6-105	Stapling Position Adjustment				
			*	Adjusts the stapling position in the main scan direction *A larger value causes the stapling position to shift outward.*	- 3.5~ +3.5 0.5 mm/step **+0.0 mm**
6-113	Punch Hole Adjustment				
	1	2-Holes		Adjusts the punch hole position in the sub-scan direction for the punch unit with two punch holes. *A larger value shifts the punch holes towards the edge of the paper.*	- 7.5 ~ + 7.5 0.5 mm/step **0 mm**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
6-113	Punch Hole Adjustment				
	2	3-Holes		Adjusts the punch hole position in the sub-scan direction for the punch unit with three punch holes. *A larger value shifts the punch holes towards the edge of the paper.*	- 7.5 ~ + 7.5 0.5 mm/step **0 mm**
6-116	Thick Paper Count				
				Multiply the normal limit by this number to determine the staple limit number for thick paper mode.	1 ~ 3 1 sheet/step 3 sheets
⇒ 6-119	Enable Punch for Thick Paper				
				This SP functions with the B302 Finisher. Set this SP to "1" to enable the punch for thick paper. NOTE: 1. Before enabling SP6-119, please be sure that the customer is aware of the specific range of paper weights that can be used with this mode. 2. Do not enable this mode if the customer is using OHP transparencies.	Range: **0 Disabled** 1 Enabled
⇒ 6-120	Adjust Jogger Fence Position of the Staple Tray				
	001	A3	*		0.0 ~ 1.5 mm 0.5mm/step **0.0mm**
	002	B4			
	003	A4 lengthwise			
	004	A4 sideways			
	005	B5 lengthwise			
	006	B5 sideways			
	007	DLT			
	008	LG			
	009	LT lengthwise			
	010	LT sideways			
	011	Others			
6-801	Copy Connect I/F Test				
				Checks the copy connect kit connection.	
6-901	Original Exchange Time Adjustment				
	1	Normal Paper	*	Adjusts the original exchange time. This is based on the time that the machine estimates (from DF sensor outputs) that the paper has arrived on the exposure glass and stopped for scanning. If a higher value is set, 1-to-1 copying will be slower. If a lower value is set, scanning may start before the original has stopped on the glass.	500 ~ 700 ms 10 ms/step **620 ms**
	2	Thin Paper	*		500 ~ 700 ms 10 ms/step **520 ms**
6-902	Saddle Stitch Adjustment				
	1	A3/DLT	*	Adjusts the fold position.	–3.0 ~ +3.0 mm 0.5 mm/step **0.0 mm**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
6-902	Saddle Stitch Adjustment				
	2	B4	*		–2.0 ~ +2.0 mm 0.5 mm/step **0.0 mm**
	3	A4/LT	*		–1.5 ~ +1.5 mm 0.5 mm/step **0.0 mm**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-001	Main Motor (Drum Motor) Operation Time				
			*	Displays the total drum rotation time.	Min.
7-002	Original Counter				
	1	Total	*	Displays the total number of fed originals.	
	2	Copy	*	Displays the total number of fed originals in copy mode.	
	3	Document Server	*	Displays the total number of fed originals in document server mode.	
7-003	Copy Counter				
	1	Total Count	*	Displays the total number of prints in all modes.	
	2	Copy	*	Displays the total number of prints in copy mode.	
	4	Printer	*	Displays the total number of prints in printer mode.	
7-006	C/O, P/O Counter				
	1	C/O	*	Displays the number of sets of copies per original when making 10 or more sets of copies. e.g.: When making 15 sets of copies of an original, this counter value will increase by “6”.	
	2	P/O	*	Displays the number of sets of prints per original data when making 10 or more sets of prints. e.g.: When making 15 sets of prints of an original data, this counter value will increase by “6”.	
7-101	Copy Counter – Paper Size				
	5	A4 Sideways	*	Displays the total number of prints by paper size.	
	6	A5 Sideways	*		
	14	B5 Sideways	*		
	38	LT Sideways	*		
	44	HLT Sideways	*		
	128	Other Sizes	*		
	132	A3	*		
	133	A4 Lengthwise	*		
	134	A5 Lengthwise	*		
	141	B4	*		
	142	B5 Lengthwise	*		
	160	DLT	*		
	164	LG	*		
	166	LT Lengthwise	*		
	172	HLT Lengthwise	*		
7-201	Total Scan Count				
			*	Displays the total number of scanned originals.	

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-202	Original Counter By Size				
	4	A3	*	Displays the total number of scanned originals by original size.	
	5	A4	*		
	6	A5	*		
	13	B4	*		
	14	B5	*		
	32	DLT	*		
	36	LG	*		
	38	LT	*		
	44	HLT	*		
	128	Other Sizes	*		
7-204	Copy Counter – Paper Tray				
	1	1st Paper Tray	*	Displays the total number of sheets fed from each paper feed tray. **4th tray - Japanese version only**	
	2	2nd Paper Tray	*		
	3	3rd Paper Tray	*		
	4	4th Paper Tray	*		
	5	LCT	*		
	6	By-pass Feed	*		
7-205	Total ADF Counter				
			*	Displays the total number of originals fed by the ADF.	
7-206	Staple Counter				
	1	Normal	*	Displays the total number of staples used.	
	2	Booklet			
7-207	Punch Counter				
			*	Displays the total number of hole punch operations.	
7-301	Total Copy By Reproduction Ratio				
	1	25% ~ 49%	*	Displays the total number of prints by reproduction ratio.	
	2	50% ~ 99%	*		
	3	100%	*		
	4	101% ~ 200%	*		
	5	201% ~ 400%	*		
	6	Direct Mag.	*		
	7	Direct Size Mag.	*		
	8	Size Mag.	*		
	9	Fixed Mag.	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-304	Total Copies By Copy Mode				
	1	Letter	*	Displays the total number of prints by copy mode.	
	2	Letter/Photo	*		
	3	Photo	*		
	4	Generation	*		
	5	Pale	*		
	6	Punch	*		
	7	Multiple Copy	*		
	8	Sort	*		
	9	Staple	*		
	10	Combine	*	Displays the total number of prints by copy mode.	
	11	Erase Copy	*		
	12	Duplex Copy	*		
	13	ADF	*		
	14	Double	*		
	15	2-sided Original	*		
	16	Interrupt	*		
	17	Combine Mode - 1 Side	*		
	18	Combine Mode - 2 Side	*		
	19	Mini Book Mode	*		
	20	Magazine Mode	*		
	21	Batch (SADF) Mode	*		
	22	Mixed Size Mode	*		
	23	Thin Original	*		
	24	Stamp	*		
	25	Index	*		
	26	Slip Sheet	*		
7-305	Total Copies in Multiple Copy Mode				
	1	1 to 1	*	Displays the total number of prints by multiple copy quantity.	
	2	1 to 2 ~ 5	*		
	3	1 to 6 ~ 10	*		
	4	1 to 11 ~ 20	*		
	5	1 to 21 ~ 50	*		
	6	1 to 51 ~ 100	*		
	7	1 to 100 ~ 300	*		
	8	1 to 301 ~	*		
7-306	Copy : Each Mode Job				
	1	Electrical Sort	*	Displays the total number of copy jobs that have been done for various modes.	
	2	Staple	*		
	3	Punch	*		
	4	Next Job	*		
	5	Sample Copy	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-320	Document Server : Scanned Storage				
	1	Total Number of Original Scan	*	Displays the total number of stored originals in the document server.	
7-321	Document Server : Each Size of Original				
	4	A3	*	Displays the total number of stored originals in the document server by size.	
	5	A4	*		
	6	A5	*		
	13	B4	*		
	14	B5	*		
	32	DLT	*		
	36	LG	*		
	38	LT	*		
	44	HLT	*		
	128	Other Size	*		
7-323	Document Server : Each Size of Copies				
	5	A4 Sideways	*	Displays the total number of prints made from the document server by paper size.	
	6	A5 Sideways	*		
	14	B5 Sideways	*		
	38	LT Sideways	*		
	44	HLT Sideways	*		
	128	Other Sizes	*		
	132	A3	*		
	133	A4 Lengthwise	*		
	134	A5 Lengthwise	*		
	141	B4	*		
	142	B5 Lengthwise	*		
	160	DLT	*		
	164	LG	*		
	166	LT Lengthwise	*		
	172	HLT Lengthwise	*		
7-324	Document Server : Print Job				
	1	Duplex	*	Displays the total number of copy jobs made from the document server.	
	2	Electrical Sort	*		
	3	Staple Print Job	*		
	4	Punch Print Job	*		
	5	Sample Copy	*		
	6	First Page Print	*		
7-325	Document Server : Print Job Page Distribution				
	1	1	*	Displays the number of jobs by number of pages, made from the document server.	
	2	2	*		
	3	3 - 5	*		
	4	6 - 10	*		
	5	11 -	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-326	Document Server : Print Job File Distribution				
	1	1	*	Displays the number of jobs by the number of consecutive files in the job, made from the document server.	
	2	2 - 5	*		
	3	6 - 10	*		
	4	11 -	*		
7-327	Document Server : Print Job Set Distribution				
	1	1 to 1	*	Displays the total number of prints by multiple document quantity, using the document server.	
	2	1 to 2 ~ 5	*		
	3	1 to 6 ~ 10	*		
	4	1 to 11 ~ 20	*		
	5	1 to 21 ~ 50	*		
	6	1 to 51 ~ 100	*		
	7	1 to 100 ~ 300	*		
	8	1 to 301 ~	*		
7-328	Document Server : Copy Number of Each Job				
	1	Duplex Copy	*	Displays the total number of prints for each type of job.	
	2	Duplex Original	*		
	6	Punch	*		
	8	Sort	*		
	9	Staple	*		
	12	Duplex	*		
	16	Interrupt Document Server	*		
	19	Booklet	*		
	20	Magazine	*		
	24	Stamp	*		
	25	Index	*		
	26	Slip Sheet	*		
7-330	Connect Copy Job				
		Connect Copy	*	Displays the total number of jobs as the master machine.	
7-331	Connect Copy: Copy				
	1	Copy Number of Master	*	Display the total number of copies as the master machine.	
	2	Copy Number of Slave	*	Display the total number of copies as the slave machine.	
7-332	Connect Copy : Copy Number by Copy Mode				
	1	Original Mode : Text	*	Display the total number of copies by copy mode as the master machine.	
	2	Original Mode : Text/Photo	*		
	3	Original Mode : Photo	*		
	4	Original Mode : Generation	*		
	5	Original Mode : Pale	*		
	6	Punch	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-332	Connect Copy : Copy Number by Copy Mode				
	7	Repeat	*		
	8	Sort	*		
	9	Staple	*		
	10	Series	*		
	11	Erase	*		
	12	Duplex Copy	*		
	13	ADF Mode	*		
	14	Double Copy	*		
	15	Duplex Original	*		
	17	Combine 1 Side	*		
	18	Combine 2 Side	*		
	19	Booklet	*		
	20	Magazine	*		
	21	Batch Mode	*		
	22	Mixed Sizes	*		
	23	Thin	*		
	24	Stamp	*		
	25	Index	*		
	26	Slip Sheet	*		
7-333	Connect Copy: Copy Number by Copy Mode				
	6	Punch	*	Displays the total number of copies by copy mode as the slave machine.	
	7	Repeat	*		
	8	Sort	*		
	9	Staple	*		
	10	Series	*		
	12	Duplex Copy	*		
	14	Double Copy	*		
	17	Combine 1 Side	*		
	18	Combine 2 Side	*		
	19	Booklet	*		
	20	Magazine	*		
	24	Stamp	*		
	25	Index	*		
	26	Slip Sheet	*		
7-401	Total SC Counter				
			*	Displays the total number of service calls that have occurred.	
7-403	SC History				
	1	Latest	*	Displays the latest 10 service call codes.	
	2	Latest 1st	*		
	3	Latest 2nd	*		
	4	Latest 3rd	*		
	5	Latest 4th	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-403	SC History				
	6	Latest 5th	*		
	7	Latest 6th	*		
	8	Latest 7th	*		
	9	Latest 8th	*		
	10	Latest 9th	*		
7-501	Total Jam Counter				
			*	Displays the total number of copy jams and original jams.	
7-502	Total Copy Jam Counter				
			*	Displays the total number of copy jams.	
7-503	Total Original Jam Counter				
			*	Displays the total number of original jams.	
7-504	Copy Jam Counter by Jam Location				
	1	At Power On	*	Displays the total number of copy jams by location. These are jams when the paper does not activate the sensor.	
	3	1st Paper Tray	*	(1st Paper Feed Sensor)	
	4	2nd Paper Tray	*	(2nd Paper Feed Sensor)	
	5	3rd Paper Tray	*	(3rd Paper Feed Sensor)	
	6	4th Paper Tray	*	(Not Used)	
	7	LCT Relay Sensor	*		
	12	Relay Sensor	*		
	13	Registration Sensor	*		
	14	Fusing Exit Sensor	*		
	15	1st Exit Sensor	*		
	16	2nd Exit Sensor	*		
	19	Duplex Entrance Sensor	*		
	20	Duplex Relay Sensor 1	*	(Duplex Transport Sensor 1)	
	21	Duplex Relay Sensor 2	*	(Duplex Transport Sensor 2)	
	22	Duplex Relay Sensor 3	*	(Duplex Transport Sensor 3)	
	23	Duplex Exit Sensor	*	(Not Used)	
	25	Entrance Sensor – Fin.	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-504	Copy Jam Counter by Jam Location				
	26	Upper Tray Exit Sensor – Fin.	*		
	27	Shift Tray Exit Sensor – Fin.	*		
	28	Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor – Fin.	*		
	29	Stapler Tray Paper Sensor – Fin.	*		
	30	Entrance Sensor - PP	*		
	31	Proof Tray Exit Sensor - PP	*		
	32	Relay Sensor – PP	*		
	33	Exit Sensor - PP	*		
	34	By-pass Tray	*		
	35	Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor	*		
	37	Entrance Sensor (Booklet FIN)- Late	*		
	38	Transport Sensor (Booklet FIN)	*		
	39	Entrance Sensor (Booklet FIN)- Early	*		
	40	Staple	*		
	41	SR750	*	Booklet Exit Sensor (ON check)	
	42	SR750	*	Booklet Exit Sensor (OFF check)	
	43	SR750	*	Booklet Staple Jam	
	53	1st Paper Tray	*	These are jams when the paper stays at the sensor. (1st Paper Feed Sensor)	
	54	2nd Paper Tray	*	(2nd Paper Feed Sensor)	
	55	3rd Paper Tray	*	(3rd Paper Feed Sensor)	
	56	4th Paper Tray	*	(Not Used)	
	57	LCT Relay Sensor	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-504	Copy Jam Counter by Jam Location				
	62	Relay Sensor	*	These are jams when the paper stays at the sensor.	
	63	Registration Sensor	*		
	65	1st Exit Sensor	*		
	66	2nd Exit Sensor	*		
	69	Duplex Entrance Sensor	*		
	71	Duplex Relay Sensor 2	*	(Duplex Transport Sensor 2)	
	72	Duplex Relay Sensor 3	*	(Duplex Transport Sensor 3)	
7-505	Original Jam Counter by Jam Location				
	1	At Power On	*	Displays the total number of original jams by location.	
	3	ADF Feed-in Sensor	*	(Entrance and Registration Sensor)	
	4	ADF Feed-out Sensor	*	(Exit and Inverter Sensor)	
7-506	Jam Counter by Copy Size				
	5	A4 Sideways	*	Displays the total number of copy jams by paper size.	
	6	A5 Sideways	*		
	14	B5 Sideways	*		
	38	LT Sideways	*		
	44	HLT Sideways	*		
	128	Other Size	*		
	132	A3	*		
	133	A4 Lengthwise	*		
	134	A5 Lengthwise	*		
	141	B4 Lengthwise	*		
	142	B5 Lengthwise	*		
	160	DLT	*		
	164	LG	*		
	166	LT Lengthwise	*		
	172	HLT Lengthwise	*		
7-507	Jam History				
	1	Copy : Latest	*	Displays the following items for the most recent 10 jams. 1. Last 5 digits of the total counter value 2. Paper size 3. Detected position 4. Stuck or not fed	
	2	Latest 1 st	*		
	3	Latest 2 nd	*		
	4	Latest 3 rd	*		
	5	Latest 4 th	*		
	6	Latest 5 th	*		
	7	Latest 6 th	*		
	8	Latest 7 th	*		
	9	Latest 8 th	*		
	10	Latest 9 th	*		

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-507	Jam History				
	11	Original : Latest	*	Displays the following items for the most recent 10 jams. 1. Last 5 digits of the total counter value 2. Paper size 3. Detected position 4. Stuck or not fed	
	12	Latest 1 st	*		
	13	Latest 2 nd	*		
	14	Latest 3 rd	*		
	15	Latest 4 th	*		
	16	Latest 5 th	*		
	17	Latest 6 th	*		
	18	Latest 7 th	*		
	19	Latest 8 th	*		
	20	Latest 9 th	*		
7-617	PM Alarm Counter				
	1	Copy Paper Based	*	Displays the PM alarm counter	
	2	Original Based	*		
7-618	PM Alarm Counter Clear				
	1	Copy Paper Based		Reset the PM alarm counter.	Start
	2	Original Based			Start
7-801	ROM Version Display				
	1	MAIN		Displays the ROM versions. Main CSS(P1) LCDC Bank MCU Stamp HDC	
	2	Options		Displays the ROM versions. ADF Finisher Print Post Printer Finisher (Booklet)	
7-803	PM Counter Display				
			*	Displays the PM counter since the last PM.	
7-804	PM Counter Reset				
				Resets the PM counter.	Start
7-807	SC/Jam Counter Reset				
				Resets the SC and jam counters. Press “Start” to reset.	Start
7-808	Counters Reset				
				Resets the counter except following counters: Press “Start” to reset. • All counters of SP7-003 • All counters of SP7-006 • All counters of SP7-206 • All counters of SP7-101-132	Start

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-810	Access Code Clear				
				Resets both the key operator code and the weekly timer code (Key operator code for off setting). Press “Start” to reset.	Start
7-816	Copy Counter Reset – Paper Tray				
	1	Paper Tray 1		Resets the total copy counter by paper tray. Use these SP modes when replacing the pick-up, feed, and separation rollers in the paper feed stations. (Tray 4 is not used)	Start
	2	Paper Tray 2			
	3	Paper Tray 3			
	4	Paper Tray 4			
	5	LCT			
	6	By-pass Tray			
7-817	ADF Counter Reset				
				Resets the counter of SP7-205.	
7-822	Copy Counter Reset - Magnification				
				Resets all counters of SP7-301.	Start
7-825	Total Counter Reset				
				Resets the electrical total counter.	Start
				Usually, this SP mode is done at installation. *This SP mode works only once when the counter value is negative*	
7-828	Punch Counter Reset				
				Resets the counter of SP7-207.	
7-902	SC Details				
				Displays details about latest SCs. Not all SCs have these details.	
7-904	Copy Counter Reset – Copy Mode				
				Resets all counters of SP7-304.	Start
7-905	Copy Counter Reset – Multiple Copy Mode				
				Resets all counters of SP7-305.	Start
7-906	Clear Original Number of Each size				
				Resets all counters of SP7-202.	Start
7-907	Clear Job Number of Each size				
				Resets all counters of SP7-306.	Start
7-908	Document : Clear Original Number				
				Resets all counters of SP7-002-2.	Start
7-920	Document Server : Clear Scanned Storage				
				Resets the counter of SP7-320.	Start
7-921	Document Server : Clear Original Number of Each Size				
				Resets all counters of SP7-321.	Start
7-923	Document Server : Clear Print Number of Each Copy				
				Resets all counters of SP7-323	Start
7-924	Document Server : Clear Print Job Logging				
				Resets all counters of SP7-324	Start

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-925	Document Server : Clear Print Job Page Distribution				
				Resets all counters of SP7-325	Start
7-926	Document Server : Clear Print Job File Distribution				
				Resets all counters of SP7-326	Start
7-927	Document Server : Clear Print Job Set Distribution				
				Resets all counters of SP7-327.	Start
⇒ 7-990	Display the detail information for SC990				
	001	Filename	*	Displays the detail information for SC990.	
	002	Line Number	*		
	003	Value	*		

4.2.3 TEST PATTERN PRINTING (SP2-902)

NOTE: Do not operate the machine until the test pattern is printed out completely. Otherwise, an SC may occur.

1. Access the SP mode which contains the test pattern you need.
2. Touch the “Copy Mode” key on the operation panel to access the copy mode display.
3. Select the paper size.
4. Press the “Start” key to print the test pattern.
5. After checking the test pattern, exit copy mode by touching the “SP Mode” key.
6. Exit the SP mode.

Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-2: Test Pattern Printing – IPU)

No.	Test Pattern	No.	Test Pattern
0	None	7	Vertical Strips
1	Vertical Lines (1-dot)	8	Grayscale (Vertical)
2	Vertical Lines (2-dots)	9	Grayscale (Horizontal)
3	Horizontal Line (1-Dot)	10	Cross Pattern
4	Horizontal Line (2-Dots)	11	Argyle Pattern
5	Alternating Dot Pattern	12	Frequency (Horizontal)
6	Grid Pattern (1-Dot)	13	Frequency (Vertical)

Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-3: Test Pattern Printing – Printing)

No.	Test Pattern	No.	Teat Pattern
0	None	13	16 Grayscales (Vertical)
1	Vertical Line (1-dot)	14	16 Grayscales (Vert./Hor.)
2	Horizontal Line (1-dot)	15	16 Grayscales (Vert./Hor Overlay)
3	Vertical Line (2 dot)	16	Hound’sTooth Check (1-Dot, 600dpi)
4	Horizontal Line (2-dot)	17	Hound’sTooth Check (1-Dot, 400dpi)
5	Grid Pattern (Single-dot)	18	Horizontal Line (1-Dot)(Reverse Order of LD1 & LD2)
6	Grid Pattern (Double-dot)	19	Grid Pattern (1-Dot)(Reverse Order of LD1 & LD2)
7	Independent Pattern (1-Dot)	20	Grid Pattern (2-Dot)(Reverse Order of LD1 & LD2)
8	Full Dot Pattern	21	Independent Pattern (1-Dot)(Reverse Order of LD1 & LD2)
9	Black Band	22	Blank Page
10	Trimming Area	23	Grid Pattern (1-dot) (Overlaying Outside Data)
11	Argyle Pattern	24	Trimming Area (Overlaying Outside Data)
12	16 Grayscales (Horizontal)		

4.2.4 INPUT CHECK

Main Machine Input Check (SP5-803)

1. Access SP mode.
2. Select the class 3 SP number which will access the switch or sensor you wish to check.
3. Check the status of the sensor or switch.
   NOTE: If you wish to change to another class 3 level, press the "Next" or "Prev." key.
4. The reading ("0" or "1") will be displayed. The meaning of the display is as follows.

Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Class 3 no.	Bit no.	Description	Reading	
			0	1
1 (Paper Feed 1)	7	Paper Size 1 Switch	On	Off
	6	Paper Size 2 Switch	On	Off
	5	Paper Size 3 Switch	On	Off
	4	Paper Size 4 Switch	On	Off
	3	Paper Size 5 Switch	On	Off
	2	2nd Near End Sensor	Not detected	Near end
	1	1st Tray Set Detection	Set	Not Set
	0	1st Near End Sensor	Not detected	Near end
2 (Paper Feed 2)	7	Not used		
	6	Not used		
	5	Tray Construction 1	4 : 0 , 5 : 1 Export 4 : 1 , 5 : 1 Japan	
	4	Tray Construction 2		
	3	Not Used		
	2	Not Used		
	1	3rd Tray Set Detection	Set	Not Set
	0	3rd Near End Sensor	Not Detected	Near end
3 (Paper Feed 3)	7	Left Tandem Tray Set Detection 2 (Connector)	Set	Not set
	6	Side Fence Positioning Sensor	Not Detected	Fence Detected
	5	Right Tray Down Sensor	Not Detected	Detected
	4	Rear Fence HP Sensor	Not Detected	At home Position
	3	Side Fence Close Sensor	Open	Closed
	2	Rear Fence Return Sensor	Not detected	Return position

Class 3 no.	Bit no.	Description	Reading	
			0	1
3 (Paper Feed 3)	1	2nd Paper End Sensor	Not paper end	Paper end
	0	Right Tandem Tray Set Detection 2 (Connector)	Set	Not set
4 (Paper Feed 4)	7	1st Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	6	2nd Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	5	3rd Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	4	Not used		
	3	Not used		
	2	Not used		
	1	Not used		
	0	Not used		
5 (Paper Feed 5)	7	1st Lift Sensor	Lifted	No paper
	6	2nd Lift Sensor	Lifted	No paper
	5	3rd Lift Sensor	Lifted	No paper
	4	Not used		
	3	1st Paper End Sensor	Not paper end	Paper end
	2	2nd Paper End Sensor	Not paper end	Paper end
	1	3rd Paper End Sensor	Not paper end	Paper end
	0	Not used		
6 (3rd Paper Feed Tray)	7	Not used		
	6	Not used		
	5	Not used		
	4	Not used		
	3	3rd Tray Down Switch	On	Off
	2	3rd Tray Down Sensor	Not detected	Overload
	1	3rd Tray Motor Lock	Normal	Overload
	0	3rd Tray Paper Set	No Paper	Detected
7 (Toner Collection)	7	Not used		
	6	Not used		
	5	Not used		
	4	Not used		
	3	Paper Feed Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	2	Toner Overflow Switch	Full	Not full
	1	Toner Collection Bottle Set Switch	Set	Not set
	0	Toner Collection Motor Sensor	Pulse	Pulse

Class 3 no.	Bit no.	Description	Reading	
			0	1
8 (I/O Board Dip Switch 101)	7	Dip Switch – 8	On	Off
	6	Dip Switch – 7	On	Off
	5	Dip Switch – 6	On	Off
	4	Dip Switch – 5	On	Off
	3	Dip Switch – 4	On	Off
	2	Dip Switch – 3	On	Off
	1	Dip Switch – 2	On	Off
	0	Dip Switch – 1	On	Off
9 (Motor Lock /Transport)	7	Drum Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	6	By-pass Feed Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	5	Development Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	4	Fusing/Duplex Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	3	LD Unit HP Sensor	Not detected	Detected
	2	1st Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	1	2nd Exit Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	0	Tray Paper Limit Sensor	Not full	Full
10 (Duplex)	7	Duplex Entrance Sensor	Detected	Not detected
	6	Duplex Transport 3 Sensor	Detected	Not detected
	5	Duplex Transport 2 Sensor	Detected	Not detected
	4	Duplex Transport 1 Sensor	Detected	Not detected
	3	Duplex Jogger HP Sensor	Not detected	Detected
	2	Duplex Connection	Connected	Not Connected
	1	Toner Pump Connection	Connected	Not Connected
	0	Guide Plate Position Sensor	In position	Out of position
11 (LCT1)	7	LCT Motor Lock	Overload	Normal
	6	LCT Tray Down Switch	On	Off
	5	LCT Connection	Connected	Not connected
	4	LCT Cover Open Switch	Closed	Open
	3	LCT Paper End Sensor	Paper end	Not paper end
	2	LCT Down Sensor	Not detected	Detect
	1	LCT Lift Sensor	Layout	Not lifted
	0	LCT Paper Height 1 Sensor	Not detected	Detected
12 (LCT2)	7	Fusing Fan Motor Lock	Detected	Not detected
	6	Not Used		
	5	Front Door Safety Switch	Closed	Open
	4	Not Used		

Class 3 no.	Bit no.	Description	Reading	
			0	1
12 (LCT2)	3	LCT Paper Height 2 Sensor	Not detected	Detected
	2	LCT Paper Height 3 Sensor	Not detected	Detected
	1	LCT Near End Sensor	Not detected	Near end
	0	LCT Paper Feed Sensor	Paper detected	Paper end
13 (Registration)	7	LCT Paper Position Sensor	Detected	Not detected
	6	Toner End Sensor	Toner End	Not toner end
	5	Not Used		
	4	Relay Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	3	By-pass Paper End Sensor	Not paper end	Paper end
	2	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	No paper
	1	Not Used		
	0	Not Used		
14 (Unit Set)	7	Duplex Inverter Sensor	Not detected	Detected
	6	Fusing Exit Sensor	Not detected	Detected
	5	Key Counter Set	Set	Not set
	4	Total Counter Set	Set	Not set
	3	Exhaust Fan Lock	No lock	Lock
	2	Toner Recycling Sensor	Pulse	Pulse
	1	Drum Unit Set	Set	Not set
	0	Fusing Unit Set	Set	Not set

Table 1: 2nd Tray Paper Size Switch Combination

Class 3 no.	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Paper Width	
						A/B size version	Inch version
1	0	1	1	1	1	A3	DLT
	0	0	1	1	1	8 1/4" x 13"	8 1/2" x 14"
	1	0	0	1	1	A4 lengthwise	LT lengthwise
	0	1	0	0	1	A4 sideways	LT sideways
	0	0	1	0	0	8 1/2" x 13"	HLT sideways
	0	0	0	1	0	-	8" x 10 1/2"
	0	0	0	0	1	A5 sideways	8" x 10"
	1	0	0	0	0	8K lengthwise (Taiwan Version only)	8" x 13"
	1	1	0	0	0	16K lengthwise (Taiwan Version only)	10" x 14"
	1	1	1	0	0	16K sideways (Taiwan Version only)	11" x 15"
	1	1	1	1	0	*	*

ADF Input Check (SP6-007)

Class 3 No.	Bit No.	Description	Reading	
			0	1
1	0	Original Set Sensor	No Original	Original detected
	1	Original Width Sensor 1	No Original	Original detected
	2	Original Width Sensor 2	No Original	Original detected
	3	Original Width Sensor 3	No Original	Original detected
	4	Entrance Sensor	No Original	Original detected
	5	Registration Sensor	No original	Original detected
	6	Exit Sensor	No original	Original detected
	7	Inverter Sensor	No original	Original detected
2	0	DF Position Sensor	Down	Up
	1	APS Start Sensor	Start	Off
	2	Feed Cover Sensor	Close	Open
	3	Exit Cover Sensor	Close	Open
	4	Bottom Plate HP Sensor	At home position	Not home position
	5	Bottom Plate Position Sensor	Detected	Not detected
	6	Pick-up Roller HP Sensor	At home position	Not home position
	7	Not used		

4.2.5 OUTPUT CHECK

NOTE: Motors keep turning in this mode regardless of upper or lower limit sensor signals. To prevent mechanical or electrical damage, do not keep an electrical component on for a long time.

Main Machine Output Check (SP5-804)

1. Access SP mode 5-804.
2. Select the SP number that corresponds to the component you wish to check.
3. Press "1", then press # to check that component.
4. Press "0" to interrupt the test.
5. If you wish to check another component, press the "Next" or "Prev." Key.

No.	Description	No.	Description
1	1st Paper Feed Clutch	37	Not used
2	2nd Paper Feed Clutch	38	Relay Solenoid (LCT)
3	3rd Paper Feed Clutch	39	Registration Motor
4	Not Used	40	Guide Plate Release Solenoid
5	By-pass Feed Clutch	41	Inverter Gate Solenoid
6	Paper Feed Clutch (LCT)	42	Not used
7, 8	Not used	43	Duplex Transport Clutch
9	1st Pick-up Solenoid	44	Duplex Feed Clutch
10	2nd Pick-up Solenoid	45	Duplex Inverter Gate Solenoid
11	3rd Pick-up Solenoid	46	Reverse Roller Solenoid
12	Not Used	47	Inverter Exit Clutch
13	By-pass Pick-up Solenoid	48~ 51	Not used
14	Pick-up Solenoid (LCT)	52	Toner Supply Clutch
15, 16	Not used	53	Development Motor
17	1st Separation Roller Solenoid	54	Toner Recycling Motor
18	2nd Separation Roller Solenoid	55	Not used
19	3rd Separation Roller Solenoid	56	Toner Supply Motor
20 ~ 21	Not used	57	Transfer Belt Solenoid
22	Tandem Tray Connect Solenoid	58 ~ 60	Not used
23	Left Tandem Tray Lock Solenoid	61	Not used
24	Rear Fence Motor	62	Quenching Lamp
25	LCT Motor (LCT)	63	Charge Corona
26	Paper Feed Motor	64	Charge Corona Grid
27	By-pass Feed Motor	65, 66	Not used
28	Main Motor	67	Development Bias
29 ~ 30	Not used	68	Not used
31	Fusing/Duplex Motor	69	Transfer Belt Voltage
32	1st Vertical Relay Clutch	70	ID Sensor
33	2nd Vertical Relay Clutch	71	SBU Cooling Fan Motor
34	3rd Vertical Relay Clutch	72	Exposure Lamp
35	Not used	73	Optics Cooling Fan Motor
36	Relay Clutch	74	Not used

No.	Description	No.	Description
75	Duplex Fan	75	Duplex Fan Motor
76	Exhaust Fan	88	Staple Hammer Motor (Finisher)
77	Drum Cooling Fan	89	Punch Motor (Punch Unit)
78	Fusing Fan	90	Laser Diode
79	Exit Cooling Fan	91	Not used
80	Tray Junction Gate Solenoid (Finisher)	92	Tray Lift Motor (Finisher)
81	Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid (Finisher)	93	Jogger Motor (Finisher)
82	Positioning Roller Solenoid (Finisher)	94	Stapler Motor (Finisher)
83	Not used	95	Stack Feed-out Belt Motor (Finisher)
84	Mechanical Counter	96	Shift Motor (Finisher)
85	Upper Transport Motor (Finisher)	97	Stapler Rotation Motor (Finisher)
86	Lower Transport Motor (Finisher)	98 ~ 99	Not used
87	Shift Tray Exit Motor (Finisher)		

ADF Output Check (SP6-008)

No.	Description
1	Feed-in Motor (Forward)
2	Feed-in Motor (Reverse)
3	Transport Motor (Forward)
4	Transport Motor (Reverse)
5	Feed-out Motor
6	Exit Gate Solenoid
7	Inverter Gate Solenoid
8	DF Indicators
9	Pick-up Motor (Forward)
10	Bottom Plate Motor
11	Feed-in Clutch

4.1.6 SYSTEM PARAMETER AND DATA LISTS (SMC LISTS)

1. Access the SP mode corresponding to the list that you wish to print.
   1) SP5-990-1 : All system parameter list
   2) SP5-990-2 : SP mode data list
   3) SP5-990-3 : UP mode data list
   4) SP5-990-4 : Machine status history data list
2. Touch the “Copy Mode” key to access the copy mode display.
3. Select the paper size and press the “Start” key to print the list.
4. After printing the list, exit the copy mode display by touching the “SP Mode” key.
5. Exit SP mode.

4.1.7 MEMORY ALL CLEAR (SP5-801)

NOTE: Memory All Clear mode resets all the settings stored in the NVRAM to their default settings except the following:

- Electrical total counter value (SP7-003-1)
- Machine serial number (SP5-811)
- Plug & Play Brand Name and Production Name Setting (SP5-907)

Among the settings that are reset are the correction data for process control and all the software counters.

Normally, this SP mode should not be used. This procedure is required only after replacing the NVRAM or when the copier malfunctions due to a damaged NVRAM.

NV-RAM is not defective	NV-RAM is defective
1. Print out all SMC data lists (SP 5-990-1).	1. If possible, print out all SMC data lists (SP 5-990-1).
2. Upload the NVRAM data from the BICU to the flash memory card (SP 5-824).	2. Turn the main power switch off.
	3. Replace the NV–RAM Minus Counter.
3. Turn the main power switch off.	4. Replace the developer because the TD initial data is missing if the NV-RAM is defective.
4. Replace the NV–RAM Minus Counter.	5. Perform memory all clear (SP 5-801).
5. Perform memory all clear (SP 5-801). NOTE 1	6. Turn the main power switch off and on.
6. Turn the main power switch off and on.	7. Calibrate the LCD touch panel.
7. Calibrate the LCD touch panel.	8. Perform the TD initial setting (SP 2-963). Note: Do this step before the machine automatically starts the Auto Process Control (within approximately 2 minutes after the main switch is turned on).
8. Input the machine serial number (SP 5-811).	9. Input the machine serial number (SP 5-811).
9. Download the NVRAM data from the flash memory card to the BICU (SP 5-825). Or, referring to the SMC data lists, re-enter any value which has been changed from its factory setting.	10. Adjust the laser beam pitch (SP 2-109).
	11. Perform the printer and scanner registration adjustments. (See Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image - Adjustments)
10. Download the stamp data from the flash memory card (SP5-829).	12. Referring to the SMC data lists, re-enter any value which has been changed from its factory setting.
11. Check the copy quality and the paper path and do any necessary adjustments.	13. Download the stamp data from the flash memory card (SP5-829).
NOTE 1: Hold down the “Start” key for over 3 seconds. At this time the beeper will sound.	14. Perform SP 3-001-2 (ID Sensor Initial Setting) and SP 4-911-1 (HDD media test). Note: Be sure that the customer is aware that the HDD media test will delete copy server and stamp data on the hard drives.
	15. Check the copy quality and the paper path and do any necessary adjustments.

4.1.8 SOFTWARE RESET

The software can be reset when the machine hangs up. Use the following procedure.

Either

Turn the main power switch off and on.

Or

Hold down the "#" key and "." key at the same time for over 10 seconds.

4.1.9 SYSTEM SETTING AND COPY SETTING (UP MODE) RESET

System Setting Reset

The system settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults using the following procedure.

1. Make sure that the machine is in the copier standby mode.
2. Press the User Tools key.
3. Hold down the "#" key and touch the "System Setting" key.
4. A confirmation message will be displayed, then press "Yes".

Copy Features Reset

The copy settings in the UP mode can be reset to their defaults using the following procedure.

1. Make sure that the machine is in the copier standby mode.
2. Press the User Tools key.
3. Hold down the "#" key and touch "Copy Features" key.
4. A confirmation message will be displayed, then press "Yes".

4.3 PROGRAM AND DATA DOWNLOAD

4.3.1 OVERVIEW

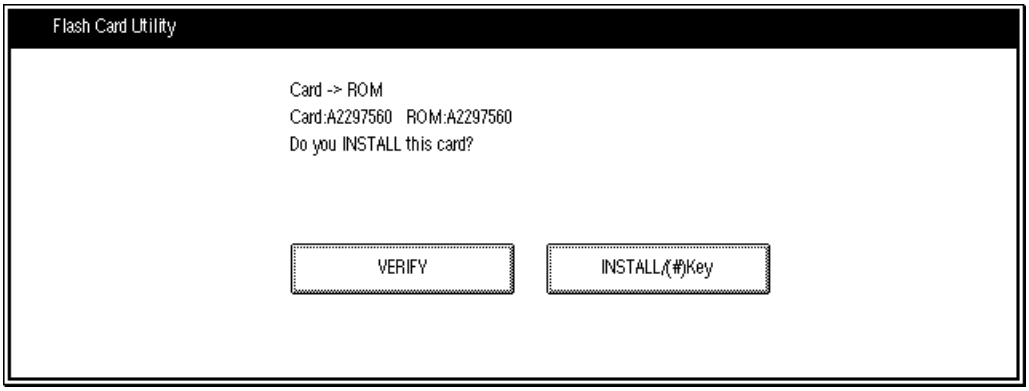
In this machine, the program, NVRAM data and stamp data are downloaded using flash memory card as shown in the table.

BICU Software	Flash Card → BICU
	BICU → Flash Card
NVRAM Data	BICU → Flash Card
	Flash Card → BICU
Stamp Data	Flash Card → BICU

NOTE: The procedure for how to write the source software from a flash memory card writer to a flash memory card is described in the SwapBox FTL manual.

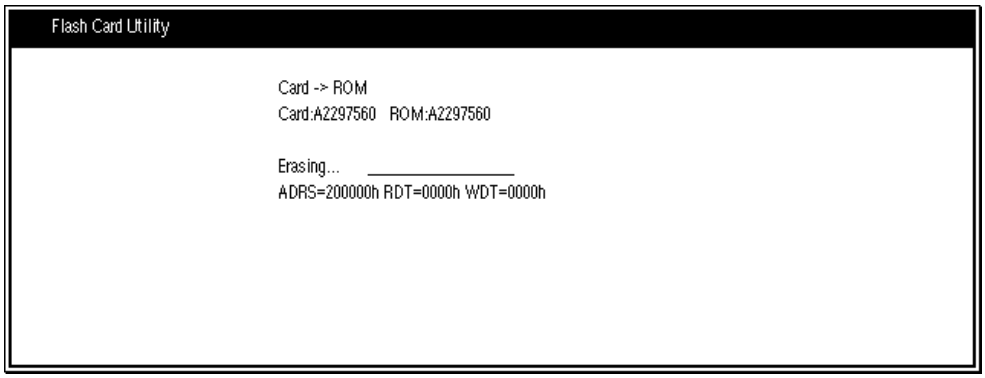
4.3.2 DOWNLOADING SOFTWARE FROM FLASH ROM TO THE BICU

1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the flash memory card cover [A].
3. Plug the flash memory card [B] into the card slot.
   NOTE: Make sure that the surface printed “A” faces upwards.
4. Turn on the main power switch.

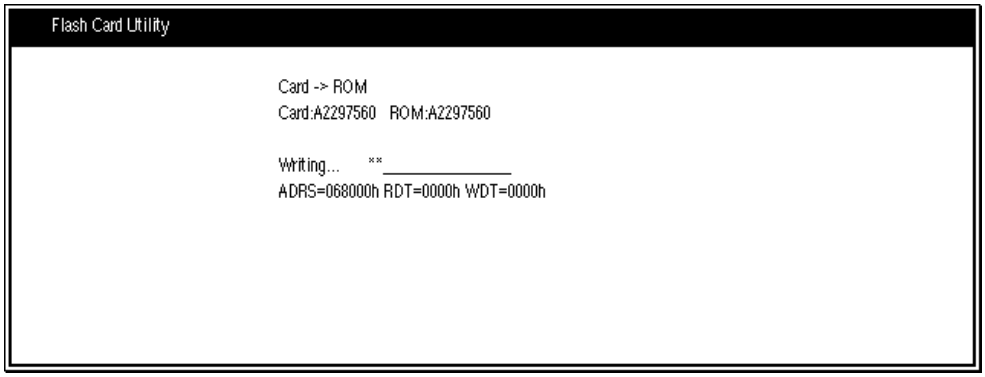


5. Touch “Install”. The machine erases the current software, then writes the new software to the BICU. This takes about 3 minutes.

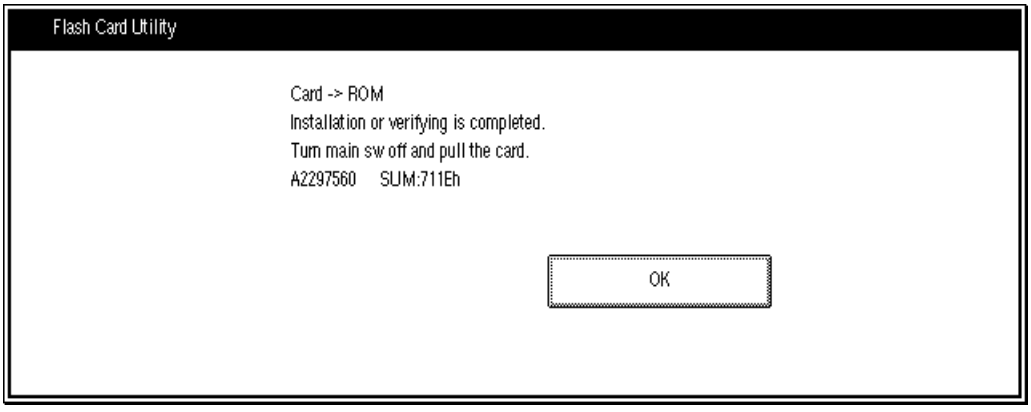
Display during erasing



Display during writing

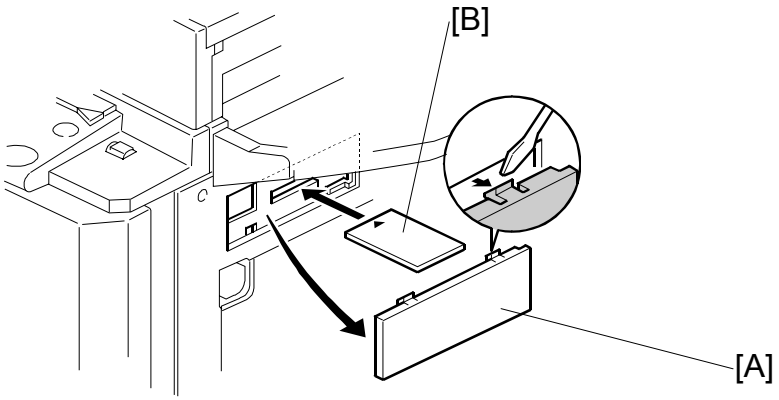


Display when the download is complete

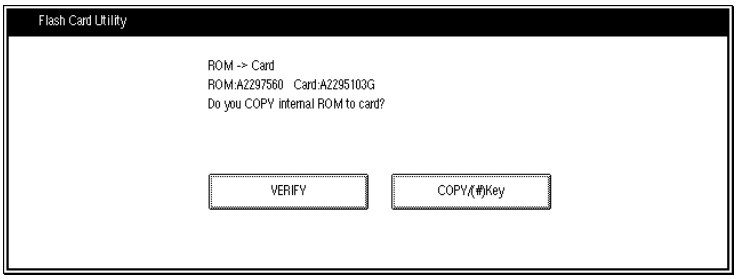


If downloading failed, an error message appears on the display. At this time, touch the “OK” key to re-try the download.

4.3.3 DOWNLOAD THE BICU SOFTWARE FROM BICU TO FLASH MEMORY CARD



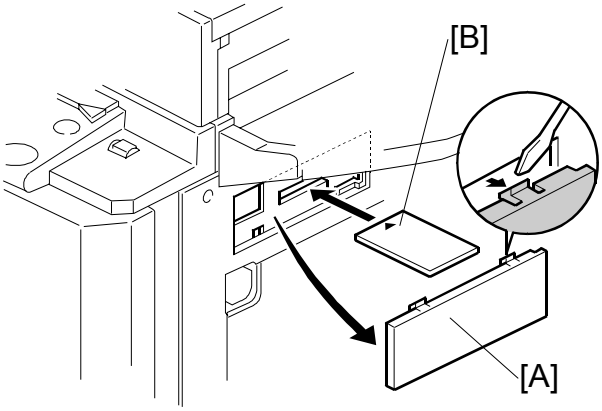
1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the flash memory card cover [A].
3. Plug the flash memory card [B] into the card slot.
   NOTE: Make sure that the surface printed “A” faces upwards.
4. Turn on the main power switch.



5. Enter SP mode.
6. Select SP5-826.
7. Touch “START”. The machine erases the current software, then writes the new software to the flash memory card.
8. Exit SP Mode.
9. Turn off the main switch.
10. Pull out the flash memory card.

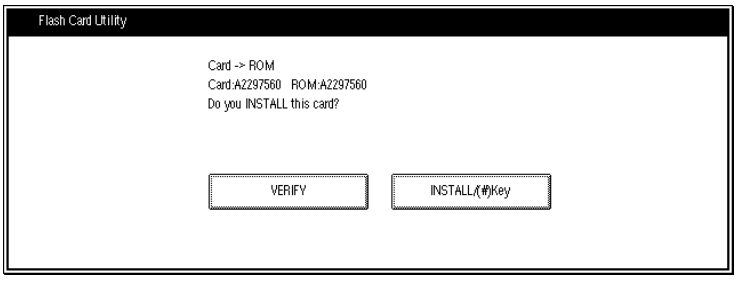
4.3.4 DOWNLOAD NVRAM DATA TO THE BICU

1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the flash memory card cover [A].
3. Plug the flash memory card [B] into the card slot.
   NOTE: Make sure that the surface printed "A" faces upwards.
4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Enter SP Mode.



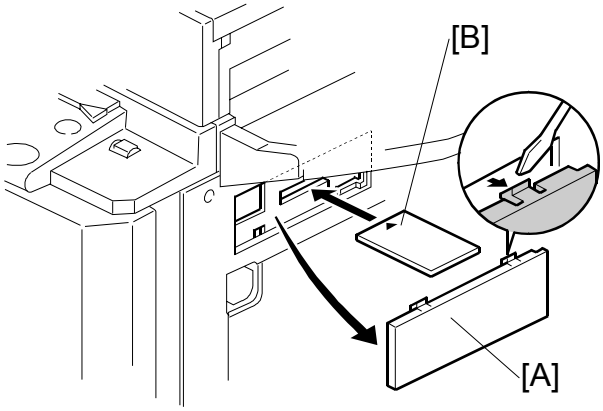
6. Open the front door.
   NOTE: Do not close the front door until the download finishes.
7. Select SP5-825-***.
   001: All data
   002: User tools (UP mode) data

⇒ **NOTE:** 1) Data of SP7-003 and SP7-006 are not downloaded.
2) When you select "001", no data is downloaded if the serial number on the BICU is not the same as the one on the flash card.

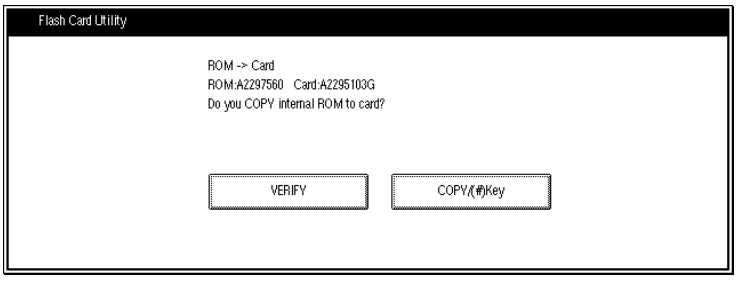


8. Press "Start".
9. Exit SP Mode.
10. Turn off the main switch.
11. Pull out the flash memory card.

4.3.5 DOWNLOAD NVRAM DATA FROM BICU TO FLASH MEMORY CARD

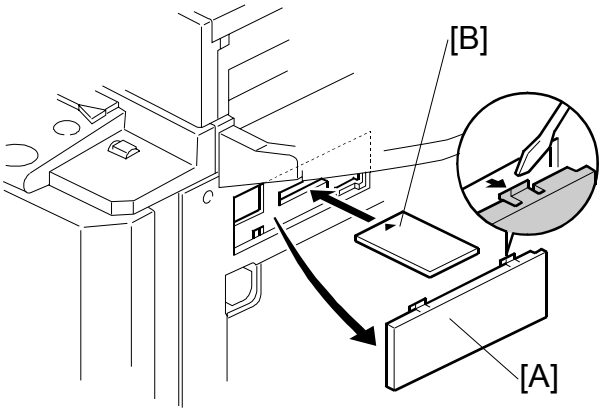


1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the flash memory card cover [A].
3. Plug the flash memory card [B] into the card slot.
   NOTE: Make sure that the surface printed “A” faces upwards.
4. Turn on the main power switch while holding down the operation switch.



5. Enter SP Mode.
6. Select SP5-824.
7. Touch the “Start” key.

4.3.6 DOWNLOAD STAMP DATA TO THE BICU



1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the flash memory card cover [A].
3. Plug the flash memory card [B] into the card slot.
   NOTE: Make sure that the surface printed “A” faces upwards.
4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Enter SP Mode.
6. Select SP5-829.
7. Open the front door.
   NOTE: Do not close the front door until the download finishes.
8. Touch the “Start” key.
9. Exit SP Mode.
10. Turn off the main switch.
11. Pull out the flash memory card.

4.4 USER PROGRAM MODE

The user program (UP) mode is accessed by users, and by sales and service staff. UP mode is used to input the copier's default settings.

4.4.1 HOW TO ENTER AND EXIT UP MODE

Press the User Tools button, then select the UP mode program. After finishing the UP mode program, touch "Exit" key to exit UP mode.

4.4.2 UP MODE TABLE

NOTE: The function of each UP mode is explained in the System Setting and Copy Reference sections of the operating instructions.

System Setting Table

Basic Page 1	Operation Panel Beeper	
	Ready Operation Panel Beeper	
	Copy Count Display	
	Auto Response (Human) Sensor	
	Auto Tray Switching	
	Auto Off Timer	
	Low Power Shift Time	
	Low Power Timer	
	ADF Original Ejection	
	<F/F4> Size Setting	
Basic Page 2	System Reset	
	Function Priority	
	Copy Document Server Output Tray	
	Staple Initialization	
Set Time	Set Date	
	Set Time	
	Weekly Timer : Monday	
	Weekly Timer : Tuesday	
	Weekly Timer : Wednesday	
	Weekly Timer : Thursday	
	Weekly Timer : Friday	
	Weekly Timer : Saturday	
	Weekly Timer : Sunday	
	Key Operator Code for Off Setting	
Paper Size Setting	Paper Tray Priority	
	Tray 1 Paper Size Setting	
	Tray 2 Paper Size Setting	
	Tray 3 Paper Size Setting	
Count Manager	Set User Code	
	Key Counter	
	Set Key Card	
	Key Operator Code	
	AOF (Keep it on)	
	Counter Print	Total Count
		Printer
		P/O
		A3/11 x 17 paper
		Staple
		Copy

Service Tables

Copy Features Table

Tab	Item	Detail
General Features 1/3	Auto Paper Select Priority	
	Auto Paper Select Tray Display	
	Auto Image Density Priority	
	Original Mode Priority	
	Original Mode Display	
	Original Mode Quality Level	Text
		Text/Photo
		Photo
		Pale
		Generation
	Original Image Density Level	Text
		Text/Photo
		Photo
		Pale
		Generation
	Auto Reset Timer	
General Features 2/3	Duplex Mode Priority	
	Copy Orientation in Duplex Mode	
	Original Orientation in Duplex Mode	
	Initial Mode	
	Maximum Copy Quantity	
	Original Beeper	
	Job End Call	
	Time for indicating starts.	
General Features 3/3	Shortcut keys: F1	
	Shortcut keys: F2	
	Shortcut keys: F3	
	Shortcut keys: F4	
	Shortcut keys: F5	
Reproduc-tion Ratio 1/2	Shortcut R/E	
	R/E Priority	
	Enlarge 1	
	Enlarge 2	
	Enlarge 3	
	Enlarge 4	
	Enlarge 5	
	Priority Setting : Enlarge	
Short Cut R/E	RE Priority	

Tab	Item	Detail	
Reproduc-tion Ratio 2/2	Reduce 1		
	Reduce 2		
	Reduce 3		
	Reduce 4		
	Reduce 5		
	Reduce 6		
	Priority Setting : Reduce		
	Shrink & Center Ratio		
Page Format 1/2	Front Margin : Left/Right		
	Back Margin : Left Right		
	Front Margin : Top/Bottom		
	Back Margin : Top/Bottom		
	1→2 Duplex Auto Margin Adjust		
	Erase Border		
	Combine Original Shadow Erase		
	Erase Center		
	Repeat Separation Line		
Page Format 2/2	Double Copies Separation Line		
	Combine Separation Line		
	Copy Back Cover		
	Cover Page in Combine Mode		
	Designated Slip Sheet Copy in Combine		
	Booklet/Magazine Original Orientation		
	Copy Order in Combine Mode		
Stamp Setting	Background Numbering	Size	
		Density	
		Superimpose	
	Preset Stamp (1/4)	Stamp Priority	
		Stamp Language	
		Stamp Position: Copy	
		Stamp Position: URGENT	
		Stamp Position: PRIORITY	
		Stamp Position: For Your Info.	
		Stamp Position: PRELIMINARY	
	Preset Stamp (2/4)	Stamp Position :For Interval Use only	
		Stamp Position: CONFIDENTIAL	
		Stamp Position: DRAFT	
		Stamp Condition: Copy	Size
			Density
			Print Page

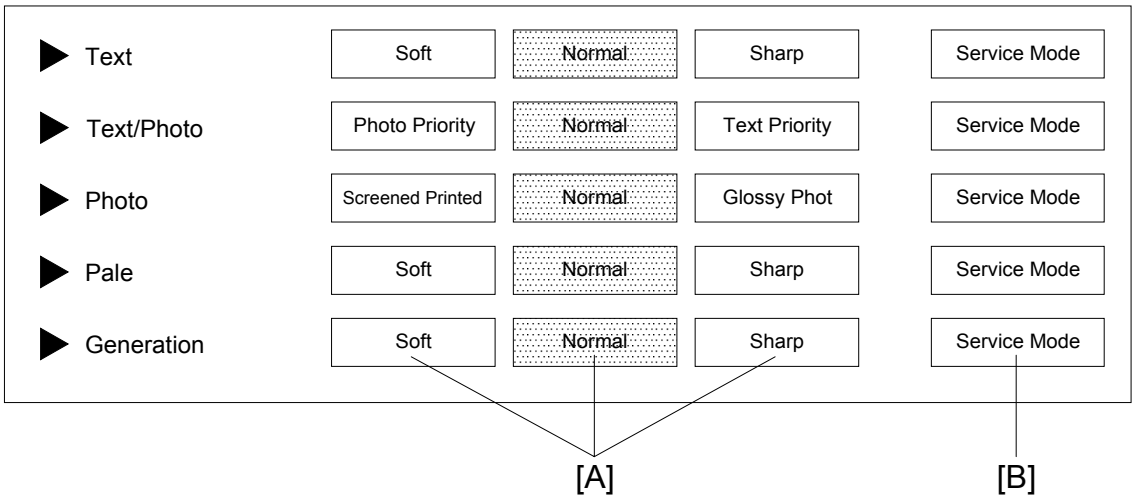
Service Tables

Tab	Item	Detail	
	Preset Stamp (3/4)	Stamp Condition: URGENT	Size
			Density
			Print Page
		Stamp Condition: PRIORITY	Size
			Density
			Print Page
		Stamp Condition: For Your Info.	Size
			Density
			Print Page
		Stamp Condition: PRELIMINARY	Size
			Density
			Print Page
	Preset Stamp (4/4)	Stamp Condition: For Internal Use	Size
			Density
			Print Page
		Stamp Condition: CONFIDENTIAL	Size
			Density
			Print Page
		Stamp Condition: DRAFT	Size
			Density
			Print Page
		Superimpose	
	User Stamp (1/2)	Program/Delete Stamp	Program
			Delete
		Stamp Position: 1	
		Stamp Position: 2	
		Stamp Position: 3	
		Stamp Position: 4	
		Stamp Condition: 1	
		Stamp Condition: 2	
	User Stamp (2/2)	Stamp Condition: 3	
		Stamp Condition: 4	
	Date Stamp	Format	
		Font	
		Position Priority	
		Size	
		Superimpose	
	Page Numbering (1/2)	Format Priority	
		Font	
		size	
		Duplex Back Page Number Position	
		Page Numbering in Combine Mode	
		Copy on Slip Sheet in Designate Mode	
		Position Priority: P1, P2, ...	

Tab	Item	Detail
	Page Numbering (2/2)	Position Priority: 1/5, 2/5, ...
		Position Priority: -1-, -2-, ...
		Position Priority: P.1, P.2, ...
		Position Priority: 1, 2, ...
		Position Priority: 1-1, 1-2, ...
		Position Priority: 1 page, 2 page, . . .
		Position Priority: Superimpose
Input Output	Batch (SADF) Auto Reset Time	
	ADRF Original Table Rise Time	
	Face Up/down Selection in Platen Mode	
	Rotate Sort Auto Paper Continue	
	Auto Sort Mode	
	Memory Full Auto Scan Restart	
	Select Stack or Rotate Sort	
	Staple Position	
	Page Eject: Always Rotate 180^0	
Count Manager	Check/Reset/Print Copy Counter	Print
		Reset Counter
		Reset All
	User Code Register/Change/Delete	Register
		Change
		Delete User Code
		Delete All User Codes
	Face Up/Down Selection in By-Pass Mode	
	Connect Copy Master	
	Auto File Delete	
	Delete All the Saved Files	Yes
		No

4.4.3 IMAGE QUALITY SETTING BY UP MODE

'Original Mode Level' in the 'General Features' UP menu is related to the 'MTF Filter Settings' SP mode.



If a setting from the above three columns [A] is selected, the MTF level (coefficient) and MTF strength (SP4-903-20 to 58) are fixed. Any changes to the SP mode settings are not reflected on the copy. To use the settings specified by SP mode, the user must select "Service Mode" [B].

The detailed relationship between the different original modes, the UP modes, and the SP modes are as follows.

Text Mode

Different gamma correction settings are used for "Sharp", "Normal" or "Soft" mode. So, when adjusting the "Service Mode" setting, first select a gamma correction setting for the basic image setting using SP4-903-84.

1. The following tables should be used when 1 (Normal) or 2 (Sharp) is selected in SP4-903-84.

Magnification Ratio: 25 ~ 49%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode		Sharp	Normal		
Pre-filter Type – Text SP4-903-010	1	1	1	1	1
Filter Level – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-020	13	13	13	13	7
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-022	3	2	1	0	0

Magnification Ratio: 50 ~ 154%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode		Sharp	Normal		
Pre-filter Type – Text SP4-903-011	0	0	0	0	2
Filter Level – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-024	13	13	13	13	13
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-026	3	2	1	0	0

Magnification Ratio: 155 ~ 256%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode		Sharp	Normal		
Pre-filter Type – Text SP4-903-011	0	0	0	0	2
Filter Level – Text SP4-903-028	13	13	13	9	7
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-030	2	1	0	0	0

Magnification Ratio: 257 ~ 400%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode		Sharp	Normal		
Pre-filter Type – Text SP4-903-011	0	0	0	0	2
Filter Level – Text SP4-903-032	13	13	13	9	7
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-034	2	1	0	0	0

2. The following tables should be used when 0 (Soft) is selected in SP4-903-84.

Magnification Ratio: 25 ~ 49%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Soft		
Pre-filter Type – Text SP4-903-010	1	1	1	1	1
Filter Level – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-020	3	3	3	3	3
Filter Level – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-021	6	6	6	6	6
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-022	4	3	2	1	1
Filter Strength – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-023	2	2	1	1	0

Magnification Ratio: 50 ~ 154%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Soft		
Pre-filter Type – Text SP4-903-011	0	0	0	0	0
Filter Level – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-024	3	3	3	3	3
Filter Level – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-025	6	6	6	6	6
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-026	4	3	2	1	1
Filter Strength – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-027	2	2	1	1	0

Magnification Ratio: 155 ~ 256%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Soft		
Filter Level – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-028	0	0	0	0	0
Filter Level – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-029	2	2	2	2	2
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-030	5	4	2	2	1
Filter Strength – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-031	5	4	4	2	1

Magnification Ratio: 257 ~ 400%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Soft		
Filter Level – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-032	0	0	0	0	0
Filter Level – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-033	2	2	2	2	2
Filter Strength – Text Main Scan Direction SP4-903-034	5	4	2	2	1
Filter Strength – Text Sub Scan Direction SP4-903-035	5	4	4	2	1

Text/Photo Mode

Initially, the same filter settings are used for Sharp, Normal, and Soft in Text/Photo mode. The difference of each image mode is due to the gamma correction setting. The following filter settings should be changed after selecting the gamma correction setting in SP4-903-85.

Magnification Ratio: 25 ~ 49%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Photo Priority/ Normal/Text Priority		
Pre-filter Type – Text/Photo SP4-903-013	1	1	1	1	1
Filter Level – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-039	13	13	13	9	7
Filter Strength – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-041	2	1	0	0	0

Magnification Ratio: 50 ~ 154%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Photo Priority/ Normal/Text Priority		
Pre-filter Type – Text/Photo SP4-903-014	0	0	0	2	1
Filter Level – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-43	13	13	13	13	13
Filter Strength – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-045	2	1	0	0	0

Magnification Ratio: 155 ~ 256%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Normal/Text Priority		Photo Priority
Filter Level – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-047	13	13	13	9	7
Filter Strength – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-049	2	1	0	0	0

Magnification Ratio: 257 ~ 400%

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode			Normal Text Priority		Photo Priority
Filter Level – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-051	13	13	13	9	7
Filter Strength – Text/Photo Main Scan Direction SP4-903-053	2	1	0	0	0

Photo Mode

Normally the smoothing filter is used in this mode, whether the user selects “Glossy Photo”, “Normal”, or “Screen Printed”.

When a stronger setting is selected, the reproduction of graduations is improved. However, the image tends to go out of focus.

MTF Filter Strength	Strong								Weak
UP mode		Screened Printed			Normal			Glossy Photo	
Pre-filter Type – Photo Mode SP4-903-012		1	2	1	1	1	7	7	10
Smoothing Filter – Photo Mode SP4-903-037		4	4	2	1	0	1	0	0

If the user selects “Service Mode” to use another smoothing filter setting, SP4-903-009 (Filter Type Selection in Photo Mode) should be “1: Smoothing”.

If the user selects “Service Mode” to use an MTF filter setting for photo mode, SP4-903-009 (Filter Type Selection in Photo Mode) should be “0: MTF”.

The following table should be used to change the MTF filter strength for Photo mode.

MTF Filter Strength	Strong				Weak
UP mode					
Pre-filter Type – Photo Mode SP4-903-012	10	10	7	2	1
MTF Filter – Photo Mode SP4-903-36	13	13	13	13	13
MTF Filter Strength – Photo Mode SP4-903-38	2	1	1	1	0

Pale Mode

MTF Filter Strength	Strong						Weak
UP mode		Sharp		Normal		Soft	
Pre-filter Type – Pale Mode SP4-903-015	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Filter Level – Pale Mode SP4-903-055	3	3	3	3	3	3	1
Filter Strength – Pale Mode SP4-903-056	6	5	4	3	2	1	0

Generation Mode

MTF Filter Strength	Strong						Weak
UP mode		Sharp		Normal		Soft	
Pre-filter Type – Generation Mode SP4-903-016	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Filter Level – Generation Mode SP4-903-057	13	13	10	13	10	13	7
Filter Strength – Generation Mode SP4-903-058	3	2	2	1	1	0	0

4.5 TEST POINTS/DIP SWITCHES/LEDS

4.5.1 DIP SWITCHES

ADF Main Board

DPS100				Description
1	2	3	4	
0	0	0	0	Normal operating mode
0	0	0	1	Motor Test: Transport motor – Forward
0	0	1	0	Motor Test: Transport motor – Reverse
0	0	1	1	Motor Speed Adjustment (Automatic)
0	1	0	0	Original stop position adjustment – Single-sided original mode (No original skew correction)
0	1	0	1	Original stop position adjustment – Double sided original mode
1	0	0	0	Free Run: Single-sided original mode with skew correction
1	0	1	0	Free Run: Single-sided original mode without skew correction
0	1	1	0	Free Run: Double-sided original mode
Others				Do not select

"SADF" LED turns on when one of the DIP switches is on.

MCU: All the dip switches should be OFF. Do not change the settings.

4.5.2 TEST POINTS

BICU

Number	Monitored Signal
TP113	GDN
TP123	5 V_E
TP136	Not used
TP143	Not used

Paper Feed Board

Number	Monitored Signal
TP101	Ground
TP102	+24 V
TP103	Ground
TP104	+5 V

I/O Board

Number	Monitored Signal
TP104	+12 V
TP154	+5 V
TP155	Ground
TP162	+24 V
TP163	Ground
TP172	–12 V
TP173	+24 V_{INT}

Service Tables

ADF Main Board

No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP100	TXD	TXD to the copier
TP101	RXD	RXD from the copier
TP102	GND	Ground
TP103	12 V	+12 V
TP104	5 V	+5 V

I/O BOARD (DIP SW101)

No.	Description	Function
1	Should be off.	–
2	Should be off.	–
3	SC codes display.	On: SC codes are not displayed.
4	Should be off.	–
5	Should be off.	–
6	Version 1	6: Off, 7: Off , 8: - Japanese version 6: On, 7: Off , 8: - 115 V version 6: Off, 7: On , 8: - 220/240 V version 6: Off, 7: On , 8: - Chinese version 6: Off, 7: On , 8: - Taiwan version
7	Version 2	
8	Version 3	

NOTE: When replacing the I/O board in the field, change the setting of DIP SW6 and 7 for your field.

4.5.3 FUSES

PSU

Number	Description
FU101	Protects the ac input line.
FU102	Protects +24V
FU103	Protects +24V
FU104	Protects +24V
FU105	Protects +24V
FU106	Protects +24V
FU107	Protects +24V

ADF Main Board

Number	Description
FU100	Protects the 38 V line
FU101	Protects the 24 V line

4.5.4 VARIABLE RESISTORS

ADF Main Board

Number	Function
VR100	Adjusts the original stop position for the single-sided original at no skew correction mode.
VR101	Adjusts the original stop position for the double-sided original.

4.5.5 LEDS

BICU

Number	Monitored Signal
LED101	Blinking : Normal Stays on or off : CPU defective
LED103	Turns on when the main power switch on.
LED104	Blinking : Normal Stays on or off : HDD abnormal

Paper Feed Board

Number	Monitored Signal
LED101	Turns on 500ms interval : Normal (software) Turns on 200ms interval : Software error Stays on of off : Paper feed board defective

ADF Main Board ❍: ON ☆: Blinking

⇒

LED100	LED101	LED102	
❍	—	—	Entrance Sensor Jam
—	❍	—	Registration Sensor Jam
❍	❍	—	Exit Sensor Jam
—	—	❍	Inverter Sensor Jam
❍	—	❍	Jammed paper not removed: Between entrance sensor + registration sensor
❍	❍	❍	Jammed paper not removed: On the exposure glass
☆	—	—	Feed-in Motor Abnormal
—	☆	—	Transport Motor Abnormal
—	—	☆	Feed-out Motor Abnormal
☆	☆	—	Pick-up Motor Abnormal
—	☆	☆	Bottom Plate Motor Abnormal
☆	☆	☆	DF Position (Open)
☆	—	☆	APS Sensor ON
☆	—	—	Normal

⇒4.6 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

4.6.1 SPECIAL TOOLS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A2309352	Flash Memory Card – 4MB	1
A2309351	Case – Flash Memory Card	1
A0069104	Scanner Positioning Pin (4 pcs/set)	1
54209516	Test Chart – OS-A3 (10 pcs/Set)	1
A0299387	Digital Multimeter – FLUKE 87	1

4.6.2 LUBRICANTS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A0289300	Grease Barrierta JFE 5 5/2	1
52039502	Silicone Grease G-501	1
G0049668	Grease: KS660: SHIN ETSU	1

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

5.1 PM TABLE

NOTE: The amounts mentioned as the PM interval indicate the number of prints, unless stated otherwise.

⇒ Symbol key: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricate, I: Inspect, * =1000K Life

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
SCANNER/OPTICS						
1st, 2nd, 3rd Mirror		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Reflectors		C	C	C		Optics cloth
White Reference Plate		I	I	I		Water
Scanner Guide Rails		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Exposure Glass	C	C	C	C		Dry cloth or alcohol
Toner Shield Glass		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Optics Dust Filter		I	R	I		Blower brush
AROUND THE DRUM						
Charge Corona Wire		C	C	C	300	Dry Cloth
Charge Corona Casing		C	C	C		Damp cloth
Corona Wire Cleaner		C	C	C	300	
Drum Potential Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Charge Corona Grid		C	C	C	300	Blower brush
ID Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush; initialize with SP3-001-2 after cleaning.
Quenching Lamp		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Pick-off Pawls		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary.
Cleaning Blade					300	
Cleaning Brush					300	
Cleaning Brush Seal			C			Dry cloth
Cleaning Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth
Cleaning Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary
DEVELOPMENT UNIT						
Developer			R			
Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth or blower brush
Development Filter		R	R	R		
Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush
Air Filter – Large/ Small		R	R	R		
Drive Gears		C	C	C		Blower brush
Toner Bottle Holder		C	C	C		Dry cloth or vacuum cleaner
Toner Hopper Entrance		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Development Roller Shaft		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
PAPER FEED						
Registration Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Relay Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Dust Remover		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Registration Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Relay Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
⇒ Paper Feed Rollers Pick-Up Rollers Separation Rollers * = New type parts with 1000K yield are Light Blue		C	C	C	300 or (* 1000K)	Replace pick-up, feed and separation roller as a set. Check the counter value for each paper tray station (SP7-204). If the value has reached 300K,or * replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816).
Paper Feed Guide Plate		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Vertical Transport Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Feed Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
TRANSFER BELT UNIT						
Transfer Belt		C	C	C	450	Dry cloth
Cleaning Roller Cleaning Blade				C	450	
Transfer Entrance Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Belt Drive/Guide/ Bias Roller/Cleaning Roller		C	C	C		Alcohol
Transfer Exit Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
FUSING/PAPER EXIT						
Hot Roller:A292/A293		I	I	I	200	
B098		I	I	I	150	
Hot Roller Bearings		I	I	I	600	
Pressure Roller		I	I	I	450	Replace as a set.
Pressure Roller Bearings		I	I	I	450	
Fusing Thermistor	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Hot Roller Strippers	C	C	C	C	300	Water or alcohol
Oil Supply Roller Bushings	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller and Bushings		R	R	R		Replace as a set.
Oil Supply Roller		R	R	R		
Oil Supply Cleaning Roller		R	R	R		
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates		C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol
Transport/Exit Rollers			C			Water
Exit Anti-static Brush			I			

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
DUPLEX						
Entrance Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Reverse Roller		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Separation Rollers		C	C	C		
Duplex Roller		C	C	C		
Feed Rollers		C	C	C		
Entrance Anti-static Brush		I	I	I		
Reverse Junction Gate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
OTHERS						
Ozone Filter: PCU			R			
Ozone Filter: Duct			R			
Filter: Vacuum		R	R	R		Blower brush
Used Toner Tank	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary (about 1,000k copies).

	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
ADF (the PM interval is for the number of originals that have been fed)					
Transport Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Feed Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Separation Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Sensors	C	C	C	C	Belt brush
Drive Gears		L	L	L	Grease G501

⇒

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
LCT (A698/B587)					* =1000	
Paper Feed Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	Check the counter value for the LCT (SP7-204-5). If the value has reached 300K, replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816-5).
Pick-up Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	
Separation Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	
Bottom Plate Pad		C	C	C		Dry or damp cloth
Paper Feed Clutch					1,200	
Relay Clutch					1,200	
Pick-up Solenoid					2,400	

NOTE: New type parts are light Blue = 1000K yield

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
3,000-SHEET FINISHER (50-SHEET STAPLER): (B312/B586)						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	I	I	I	I	2,400	
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I		Empty the hopper.

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
3,000-SHEET FINISHER (100-SHEET STAPLER): (B302)						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	I	I	I	I	600	Check the counter value for the total copies by copy mode for staple (SP7-304-9). If the value has reached 600K, replace the brush roller.
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I		Empty the hopper.

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
FINISHER: (A763)						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	I	I	I	I		
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.

⇒5.2 PM COUNTER

Each PM part has a counter which counts up at the appropriate time. (For example, the counter for the hot roller counts up every copy, and the counter for a feed roller counts up when paper is fed from the corresponding tray.) These counters should be used as references for part replacement timing.

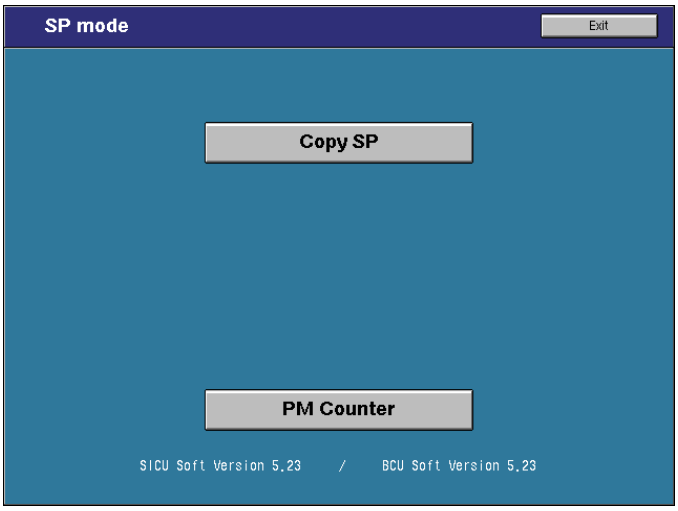
5.2.1 PM COUNTER ACCESS PROCEDURE

1) Press the following keys in sequence.

[C/⊘] → [1] → [0] → [7] → [C]

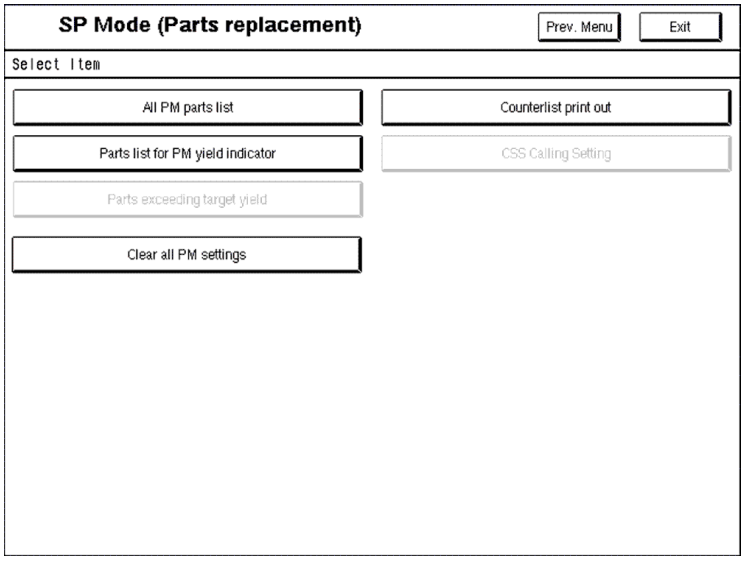
Hold the [C] key for more than 3 seconds

The SP mode menu is displayed.



2) Press [PM Counter] on the display.

3) The following menu appears on the display.



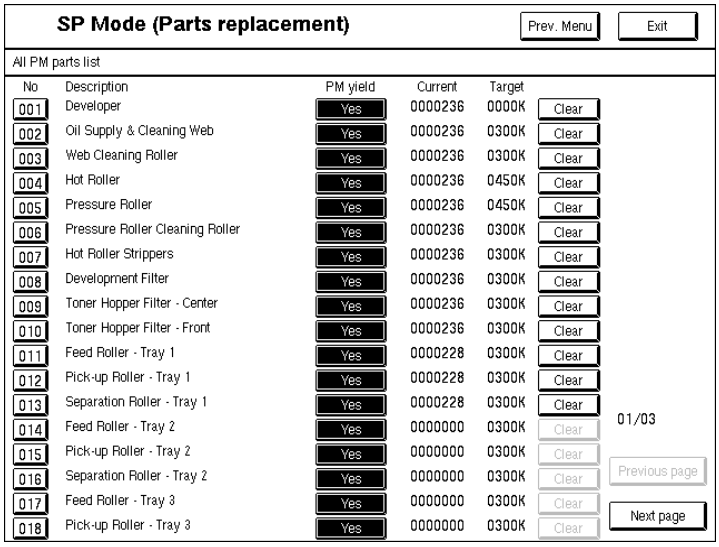
1. All PM Parts List

Displays all the counters for PM parts.

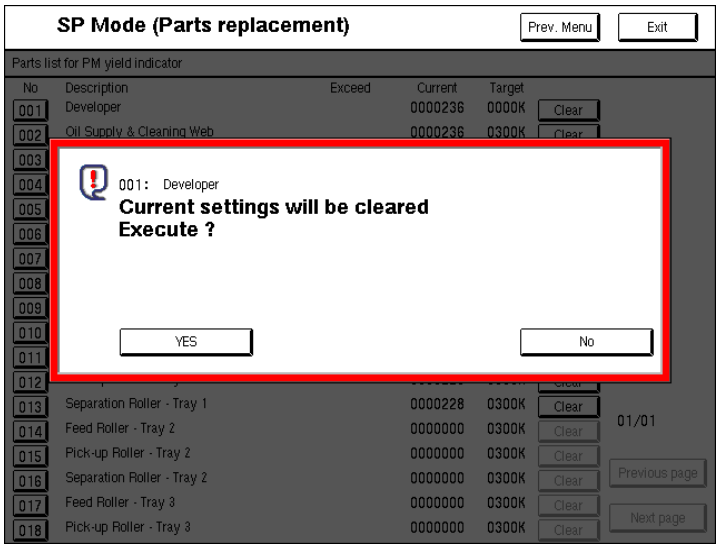
On this screen, the current counter and the target yield of each PM part can be checked.

Additionally, the PM yield indicator setting can be changed. To change the setting press the [Yes/No] key in the “PM yield” column. When “Parts list for PM yield” is selected in the parts replacement menu, only the parts with [Yes] in the “PM yield” are listed.

⟹ **NOTE:** New parts yield 1000K are light Blue color.

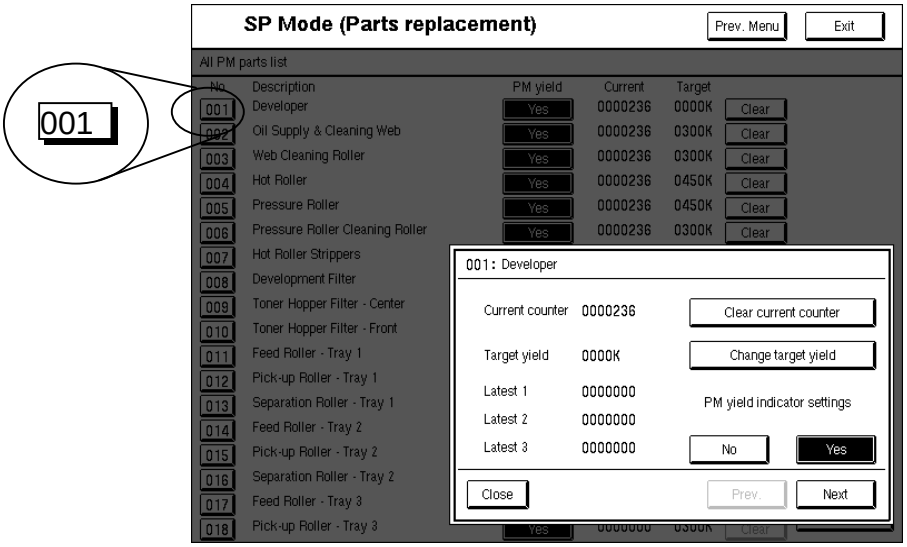


To clear a counter, press [Clear] on the display. The following appears.



Then press [Yes] to clear the counter.

If one of the keys in the “No” column is pressed, the following appears on the display.



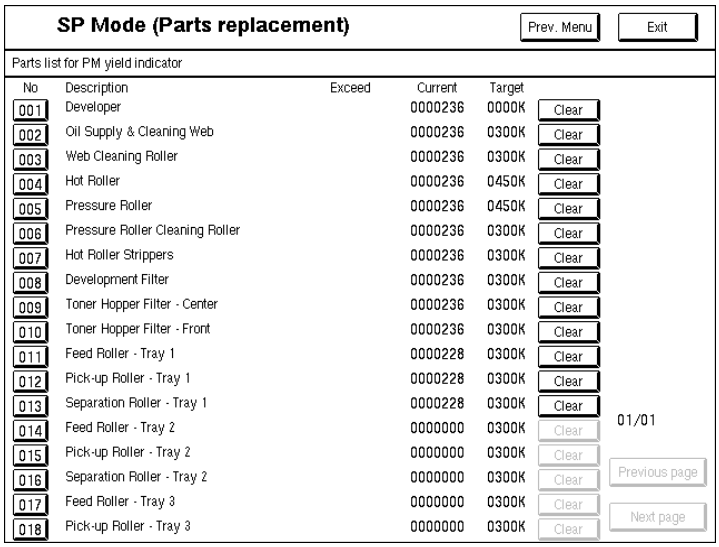
On this screen, the records of the last three part replacements are displayed. When ‘Clear current counter’ is pressed, the current counter is cleared, the current counter is overwritten to “Latest 1”, the Latest 1 counter is overwritten to “Latest 2”, and the Latest 2 counter is overwritten to “Latest 3”.

⇒ **NOTE:** New parts yield 1000K are light Blue color.

Additionally, the target yield can be changed on this screen. To change the target yield setting, do the following:

1) Press [Change target yield] on the screen.
2) Input the target yield using the ten-key pad.
3) Press the # key.

2. Parts List for PM Yield Indicator



On this screen, only the parts selected in the “All PM parts list” screen are displayed. Normally, the PM parts counters should be checked on this screen.

If the current counter exceeds the target yield, there is a * mark in the “Exceed” column.

Each counter can also be cleared on this screen. To clear all counters on this screen at once, see ‘Counter Clear for Parts Exceeding Target Yield’ on the next page.

3. Parts Exceeding Target Yield

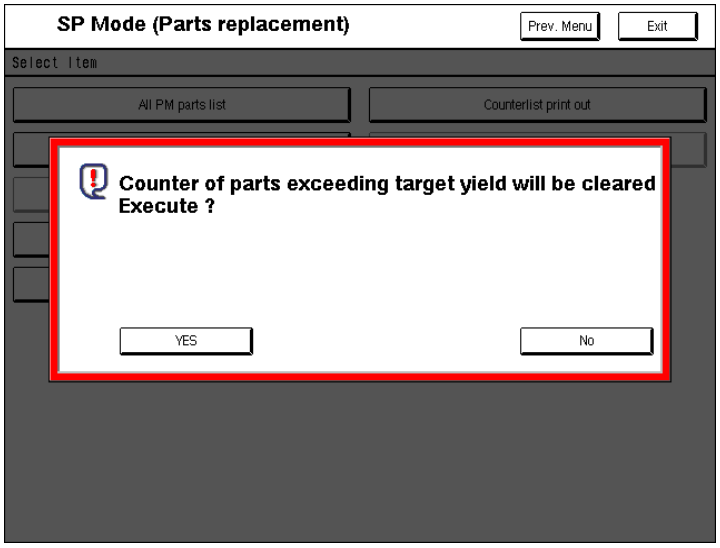
Only the parts whose counters are exceeding the target yield are displayed. If none of the PM counters is exceeding the target yield, this item cannot be selected from the parts replacement menu.

⟹ To distinguish new from old parts:

New type parts = Light Blue = 1000K yield
Old type parts = Gray

4. Counter Clear for Parts Exceeding Target Yield

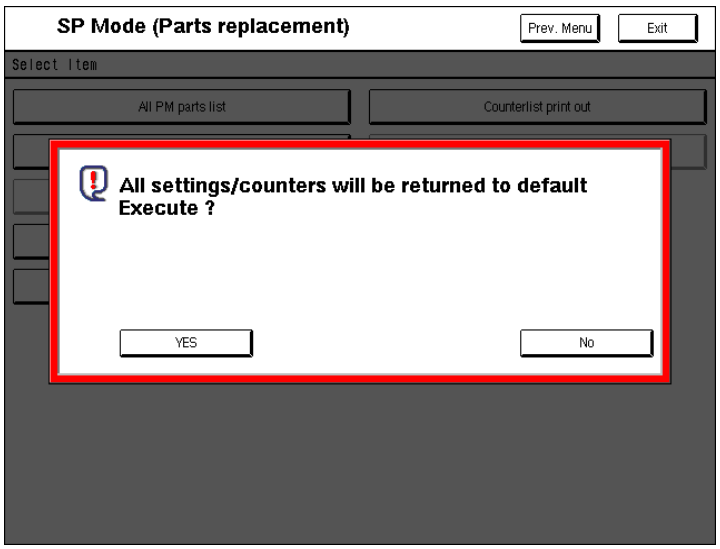
Clears all the counters which are exceeding the target yield. When this item is selected, the following appears on the display.



Press [Yes] to clear the counters.

5. Clear All PM Settings

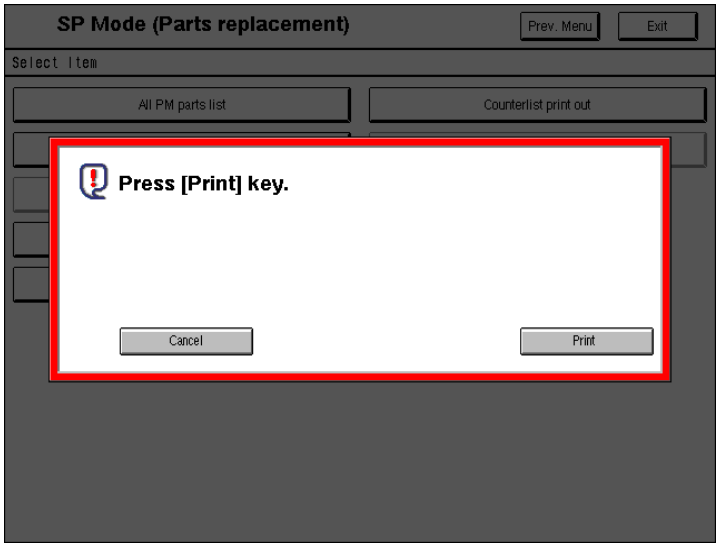
Clears all the PM counters and returns all the settings (PM parts list and target yield) to the defaults. When this item is selected, the following appears.



Press [Yes] to clear the settings.

6. Counter List Print Out

Prints a list of all the PM part counters. When this item is selected, the following appears on the display.



Press [Print] to print out the counter list.

7. CSS Calling Setting (RSS Function)

This function is for Japanese machines only.

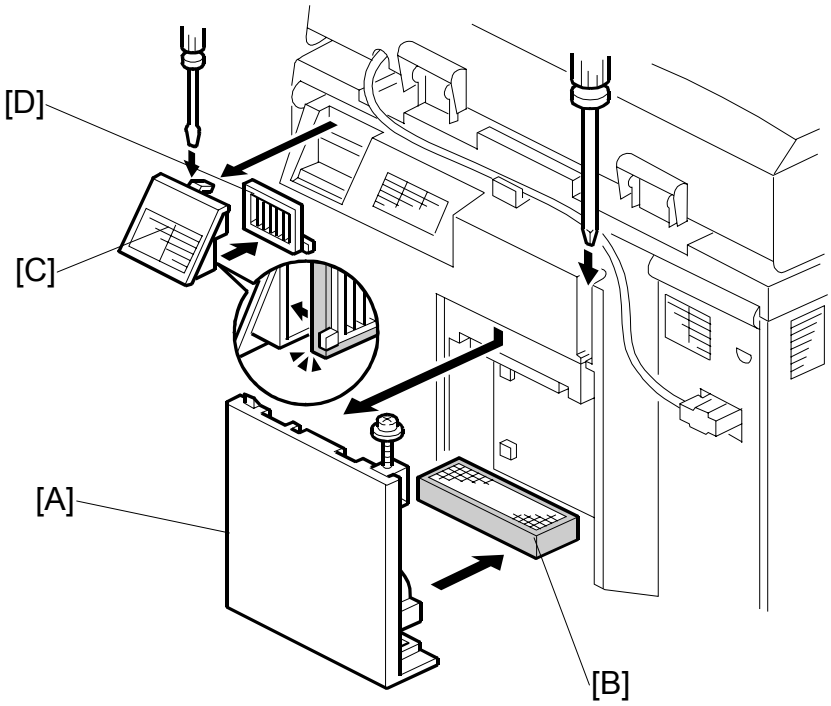
REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

6 REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

⚠CAUTION
Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section.

6.1 EXTERIOR

6.1.1 FILTERS



Ozone Filter: Duct

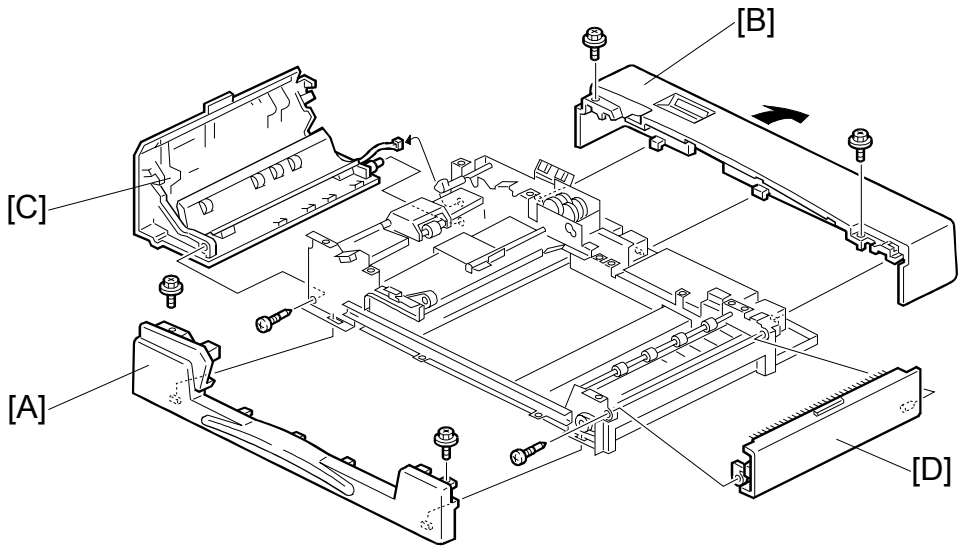
1. Remove the duct [A] (1screw).
2. Replace the ozone fuller [B].

Filter Vacuum

1. Remove the louver [C] (1 hook).
2. Replace the vacuum filter [D].

6.2 DOCUMENT FEEDER

6.2.1 COVER REMOVAL



Front Cover Removal

1. Remove the front cover [A] (2 screws).

Rear Cover Removal

2. Remove the rear cover [B] (2 screws).

Left Cover Removal

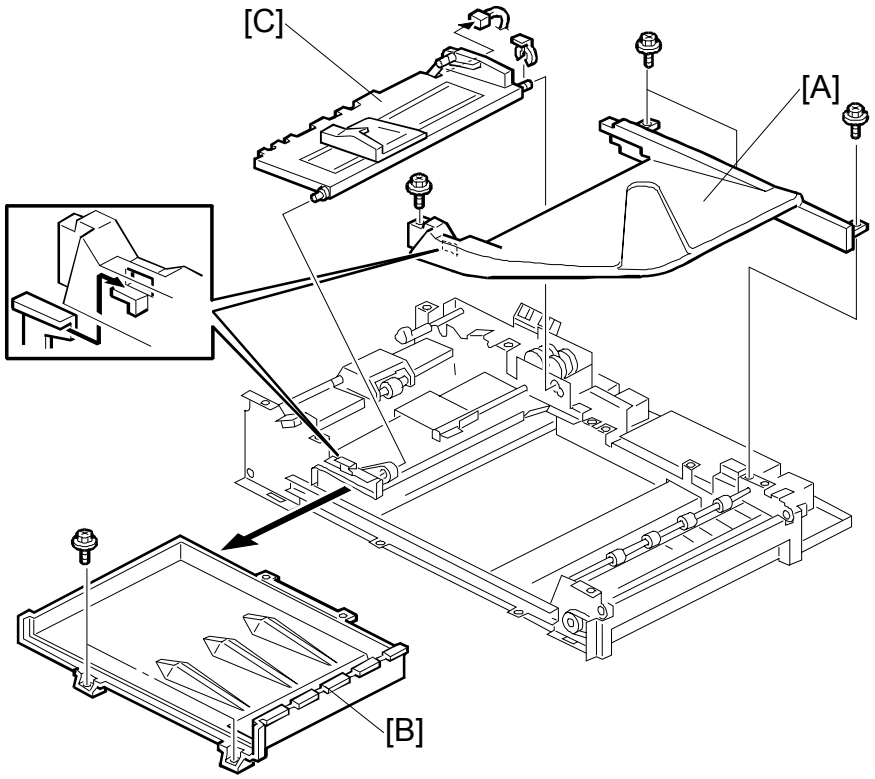
1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove the grounding wire (1 screw).
3. Remove the left cover [C] (1 screw, 1 connector).

Right Lower Cover Removal

1. Remove the right lower cove [D] (

Upper Exit Cover Removal

1. Remove the front and right lower covers.
2. Remove the front cover
3. Remove the upper exit cover [D] (1 screw).



Original Tray Removal

1. Remove the front and rear covers.
2. Remove the original tray [A] (4 screws).

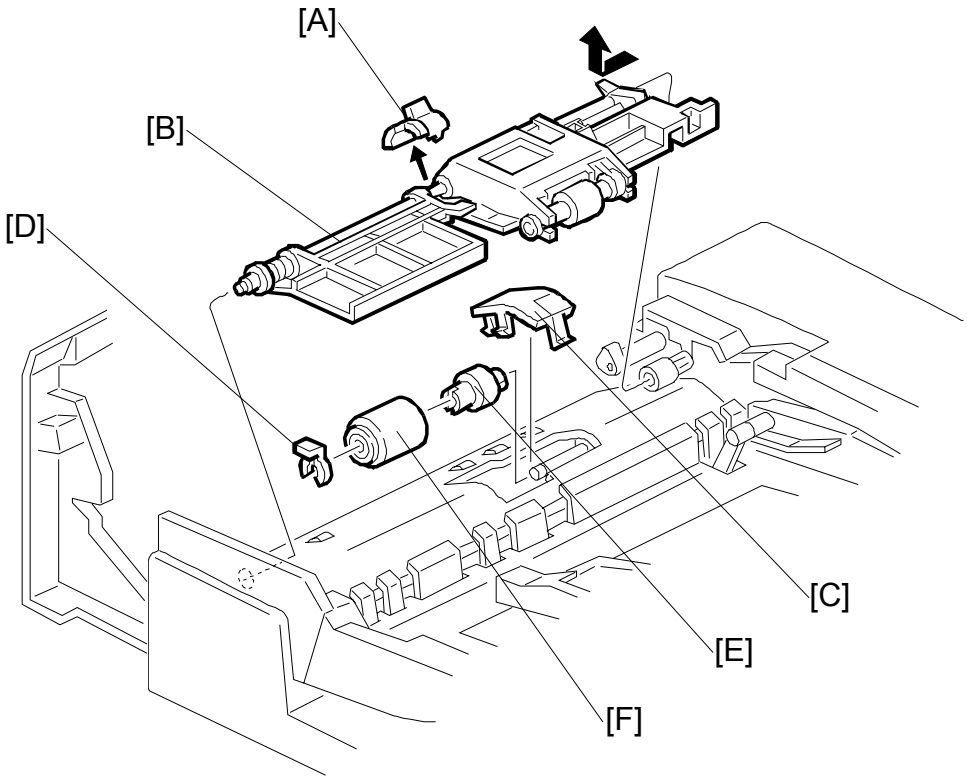
Upper Cover Removal

1. Remove the front and rear covers
2. Remove the original tray.
3. Remove the upper cover [B] (2 screws).

Bottom Plate Removal

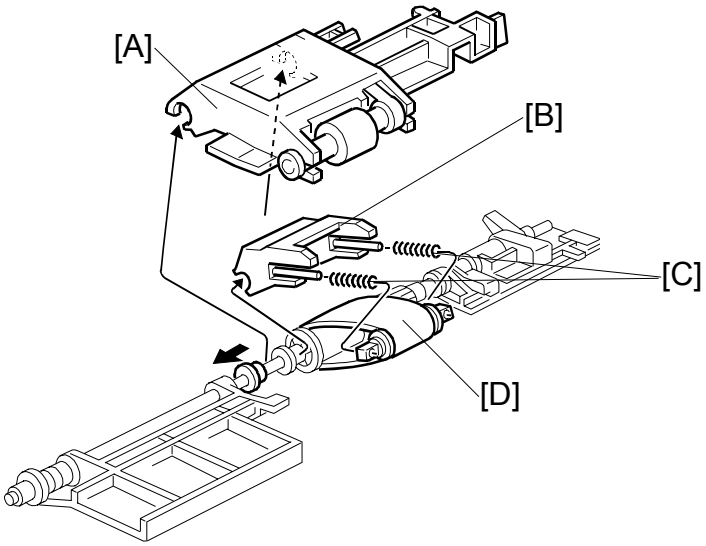
1. Remove the front and rear covers.
2. Remove the original tray.
3. Remove the bottom plate [C] (1 snap ring, 1 connector).

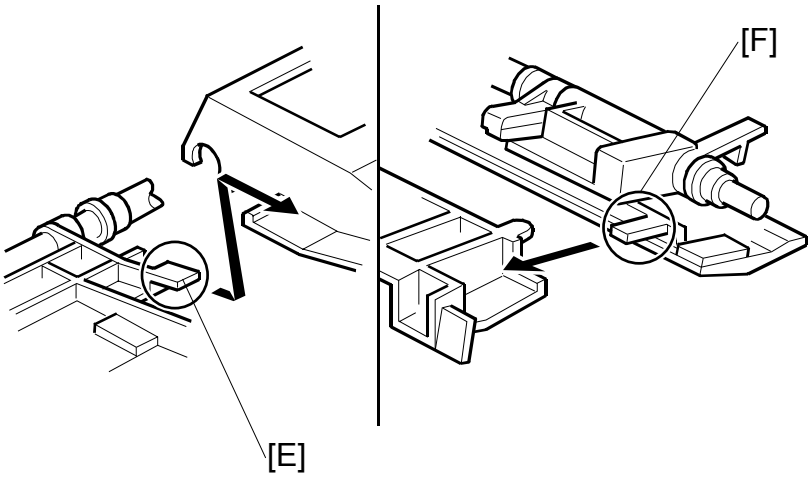
6.2.2 FEED UNIT REMOVAL AND SEPARATION ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Open the left cover.
2. Remove the clip [A].
3. Remove the feed unit [B].
   (Pull the feed unit to the front, release the shaft at the rear, and release the front bushing.)
4. Remove the separation roller cover [C].
5. Remove the snap ring [D].
6. Remove the torque limiter [E] and separation roller [F].

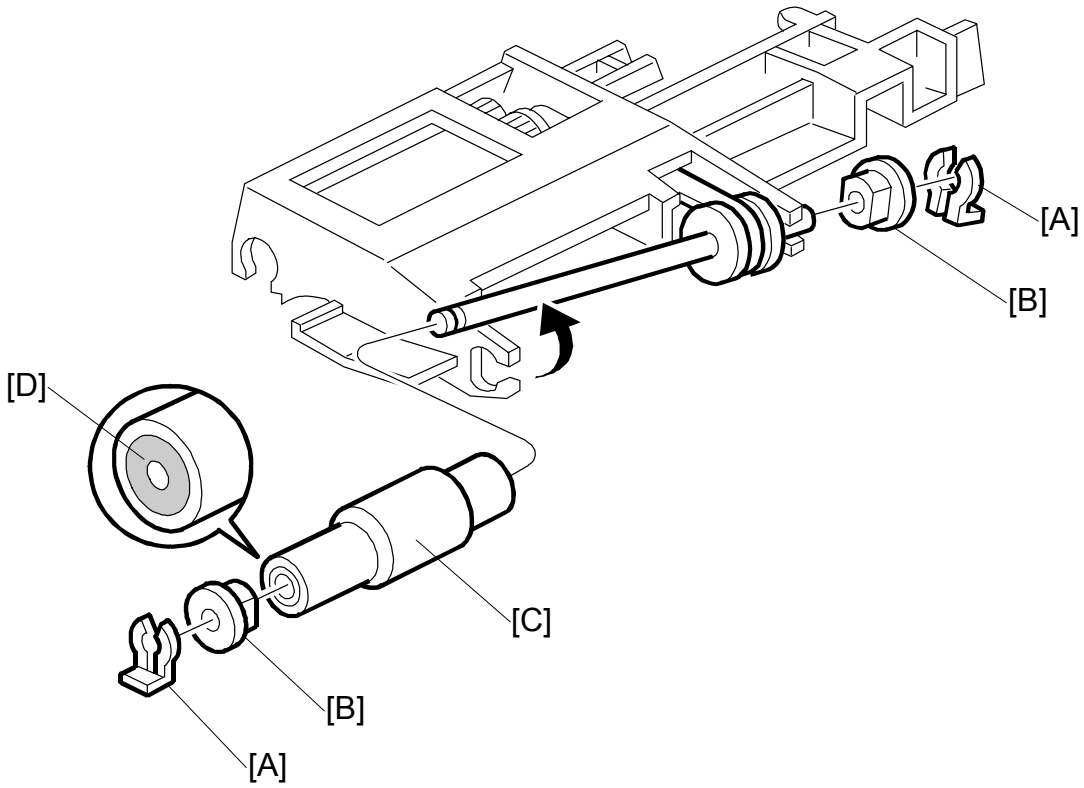
6.2.3 FEED BELT REPLACEMENT





1. Remove the feed unit.
2. Remove the pick-up roller unit [A].
3. Remove the feed belt holder [B].
   NOTE: The springs [C] come off the feed belt cover easily.
4. Replace the feed belt [D].
   NOTE: When reinstalling the pick-up roller unit, make sure that levers [E] and [F] on the front and rear original guides are resting on the pick-up roller unit cover.

6.2.4 PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT

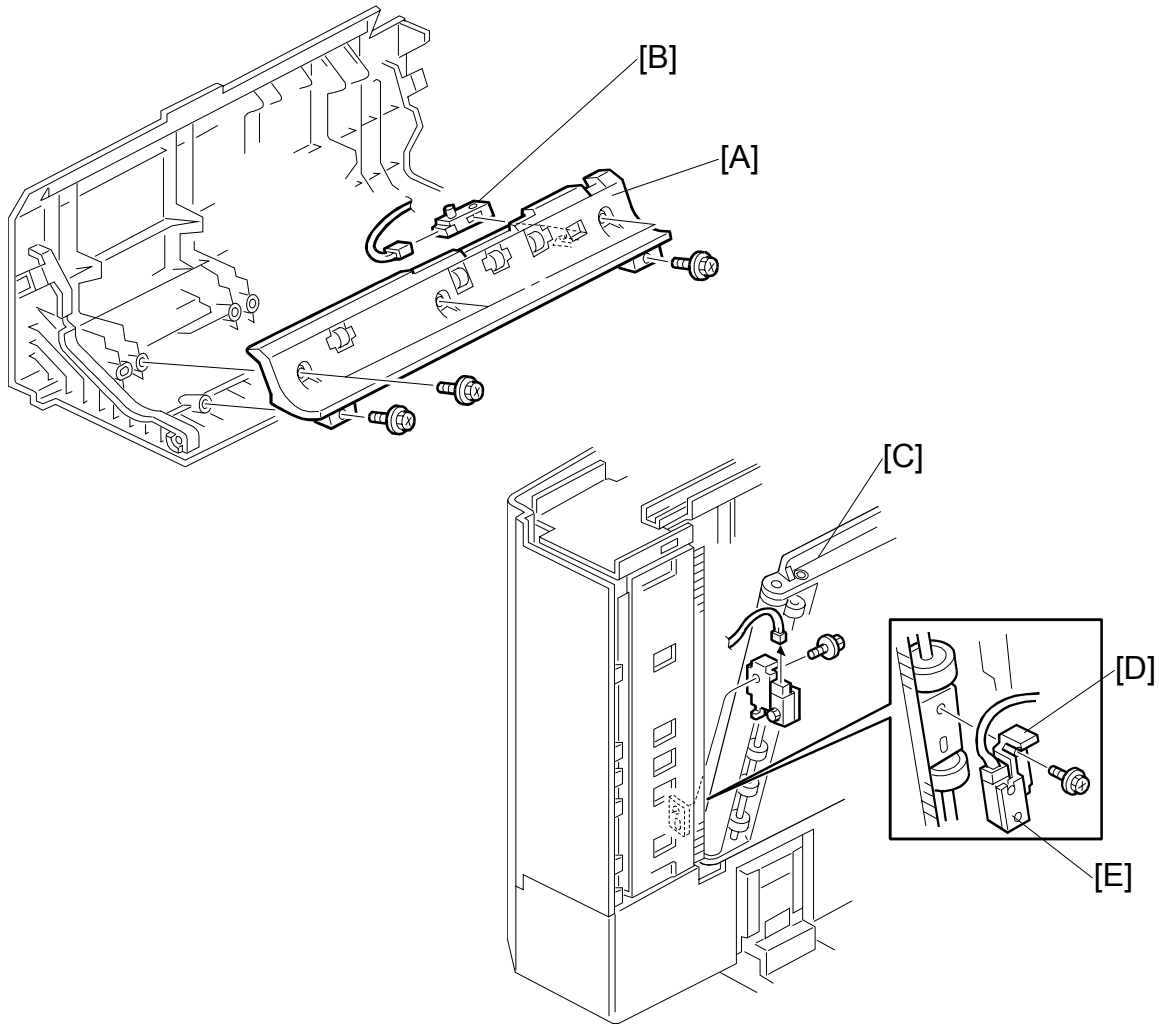


1. Open the left cover.
2. Remove the two snap rings [A].
3. Remove the two bushings [B].
4. Replace the pick-up roller [C].

NOTE: When reinstalling the pick-up roller, make sure that the one-way clutch [D] is not at the gear side.

6.2.5 SENSOR REPLACEMENT

Entrance and Registration Sensors



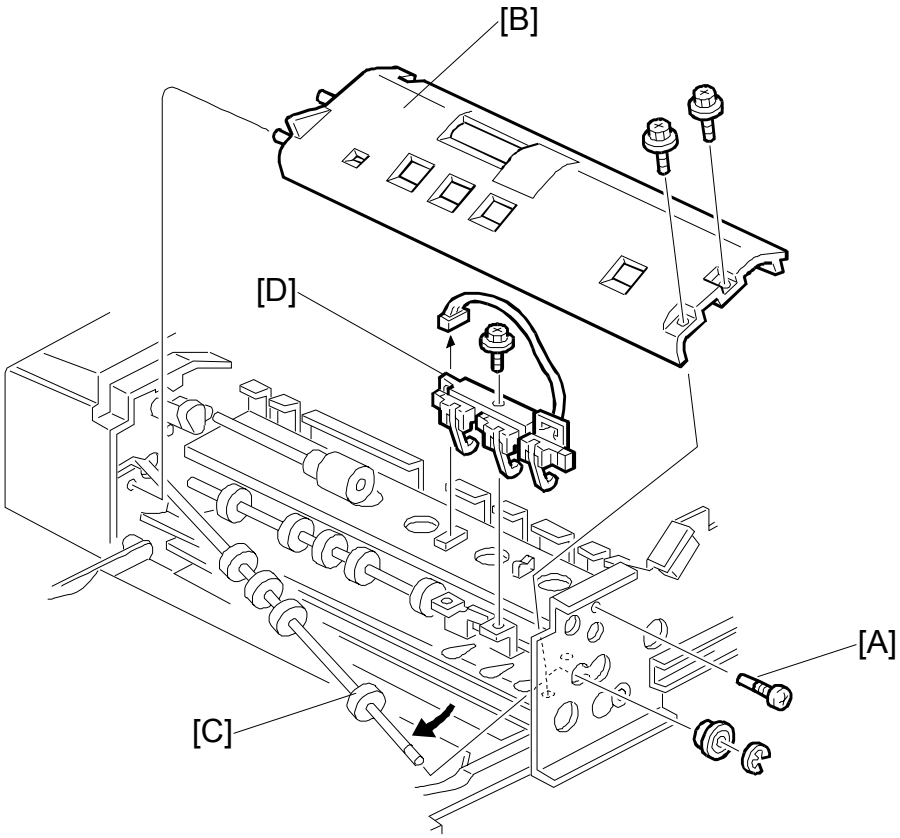
Entrance Sensor

1. Remove the left cover.
2. Remove the guide plate [A] (5 screws).
3. Replace the entrance sensor [B] (1 connector).

Registration Sensor

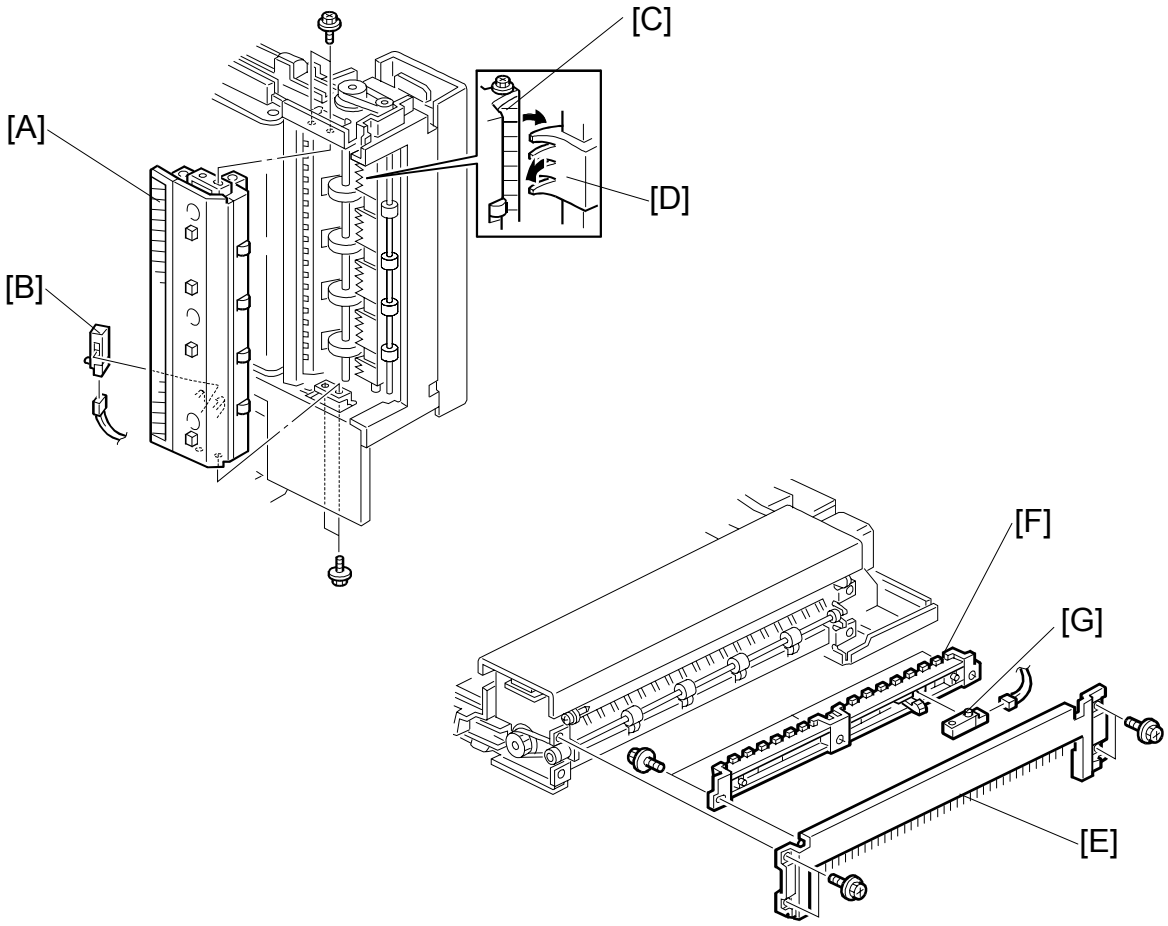
1. Release the transport belt unit [C].
2. **For B098 only**: Remove the two screws [C] securing the original feed base [D].
3. Release the transport belt unit [E] **(A229/A293:** 6 screws, **B098:** 3 screws).
4. Remove the sensor bracket [F] (1 screw).
5. Replace the registration sensor [E] (1 connector, 1 screw).

Width Sensor



1. Remove the feed unit.
2. Remove the front cover.
3. Remove the stopper screw [A].
4. Remove the guide plate [B] (2 screws).
5. Release the front end of the upper transport roller [C] (1 bushing, 1 E-ring).
6. Remove the sensor unit [D] (1 screw).
7. Replace the width sensor.

Exit Sensor and Inverter Sensor



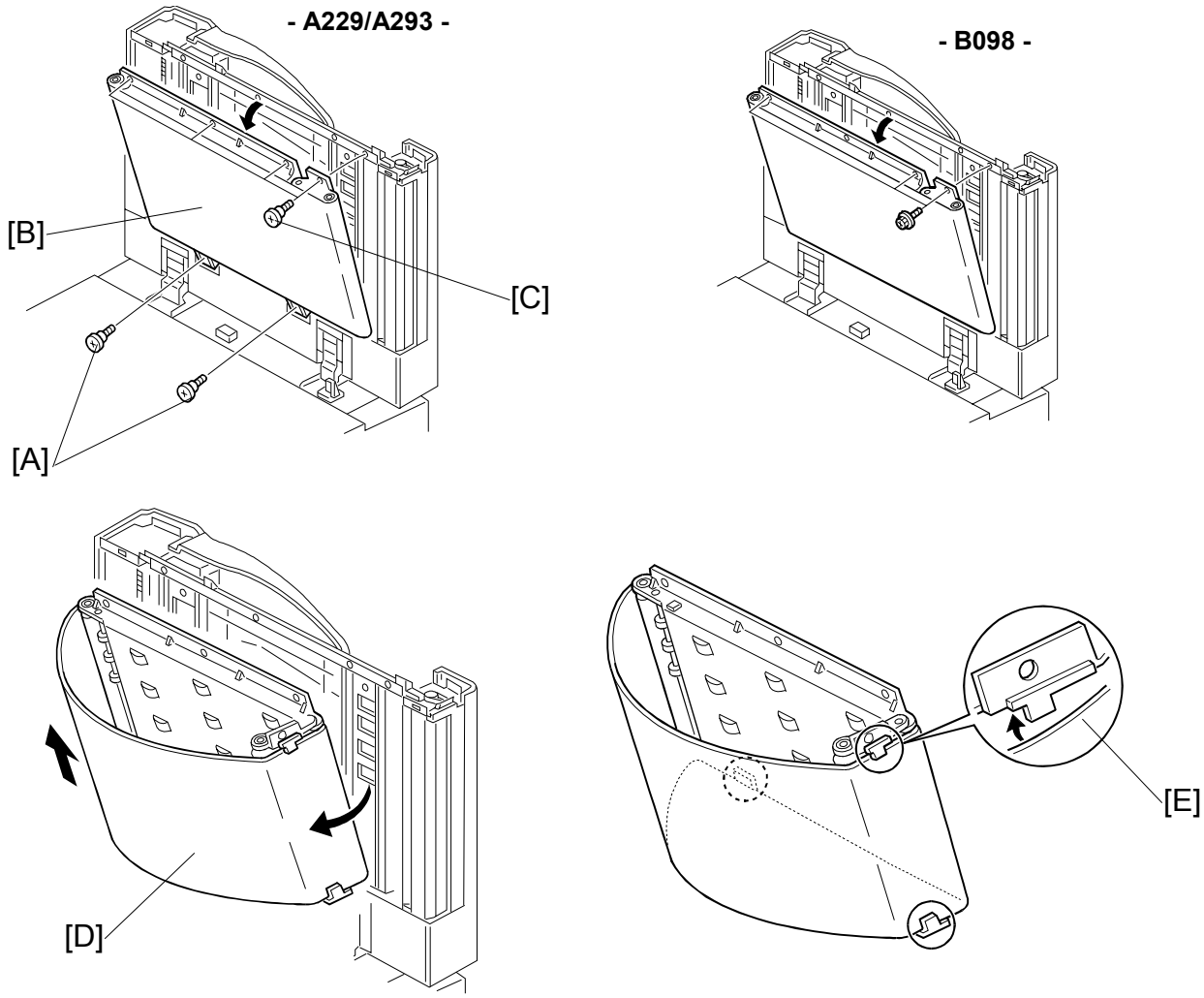
Exit Sensor

1. Remove the front and rear covers.
2. Remove the exit guide unit [A] (4 screws).
3. Replace the exit sensor [B] (1 connector).
   NOTE: When reinstalling the exit guide unit, make sure that the guide plate [C] on the exit unit is over the exit gate [D].

Inverter Sensor

1. Remove the front and rear covers.
2. **For B098 only:** Remove the screw [E].
3. Remove the right lower cover [F] (4 screws).
4. Remove the guide plate [G] (3 screws).
5. Replace the inverter sensor [H] (1 connector).

6.2.6 TRANSPORT BELT REPLACEMENT

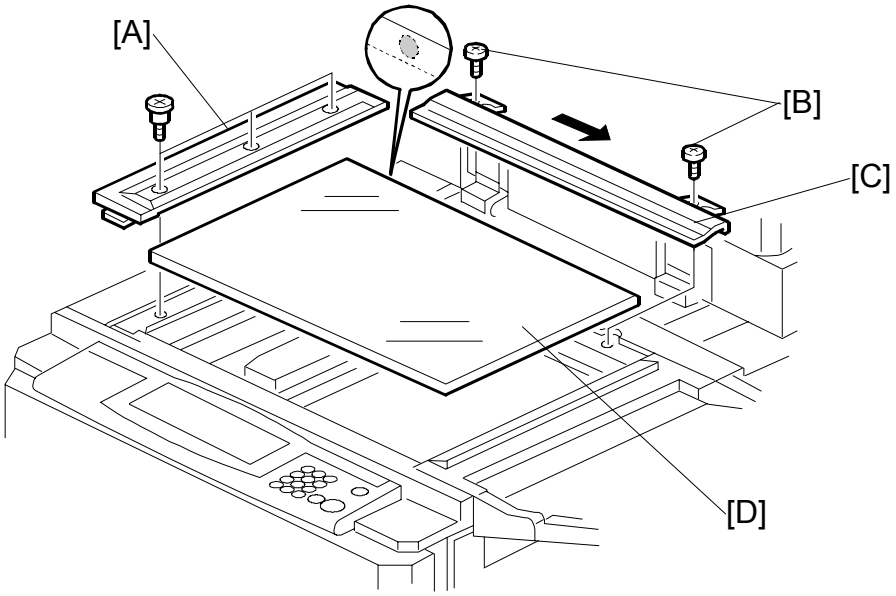


1. Remove the front cover.
2. **For A229/A293 only:** Remove the lower two screws [A] securing the transport belt assembly [B].
3. **For A229/A293 only:** Remove the upper four screws [C] securing the transport belt assembly.
   For B098: Remove the three screws [C] securing the transport belt assembly [B].
4. Bend up the transport belt assembly extension.
5. Pull off the transport belt [D] and replace it.

NOTE: 1) When releasing the transport belt assembly, make sure to remove the two lower screws first. **(A229/A293)**
2) When installing the transport belt, make sure that the belt runs under the belt guide spacers [E].
3) When securing the transport belt assembly with the six screws, make sure to secure the four upper screws first. **(A229/A293)**

6.3 SCANNER UNIT

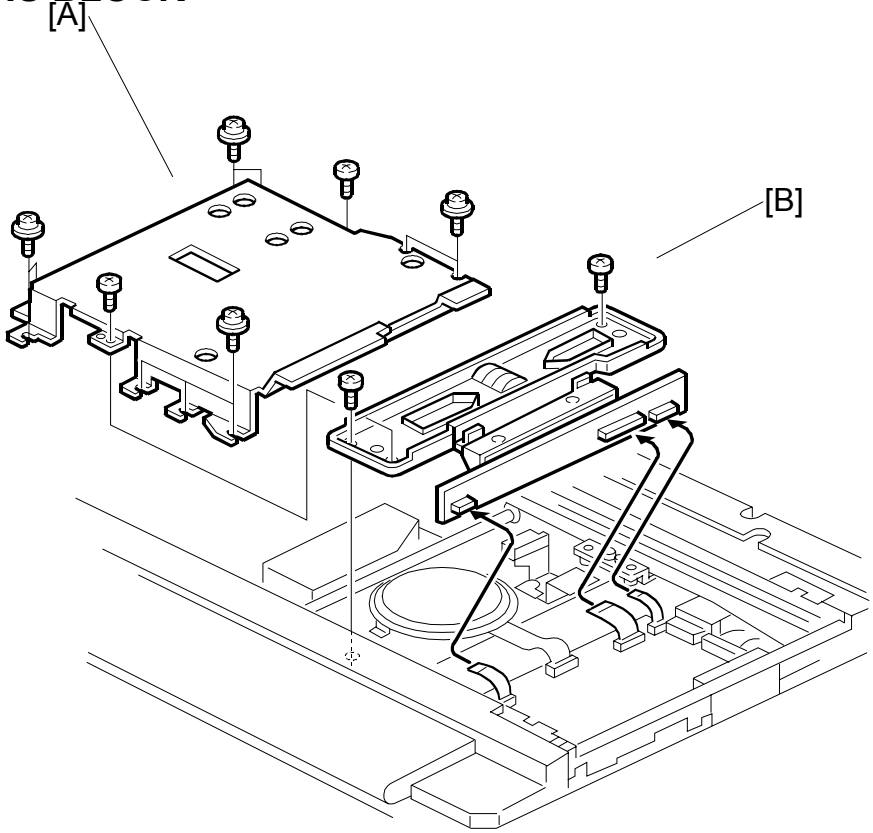
6.3.1 EXPOSURE GLASS



1. Open the ADF.
2. Remove the left scale [A] (3 screws).
3. Remove the 2 screws [B] holding the rear scale.
4. Slide the rear scale [C] in the direction of the arrow, then remove it.
5. Remove the exposure glass [D].

NOTE: When reinstalling the exposure glass, make sure that the mark [D] is positioned at the rear left corner, as shown.

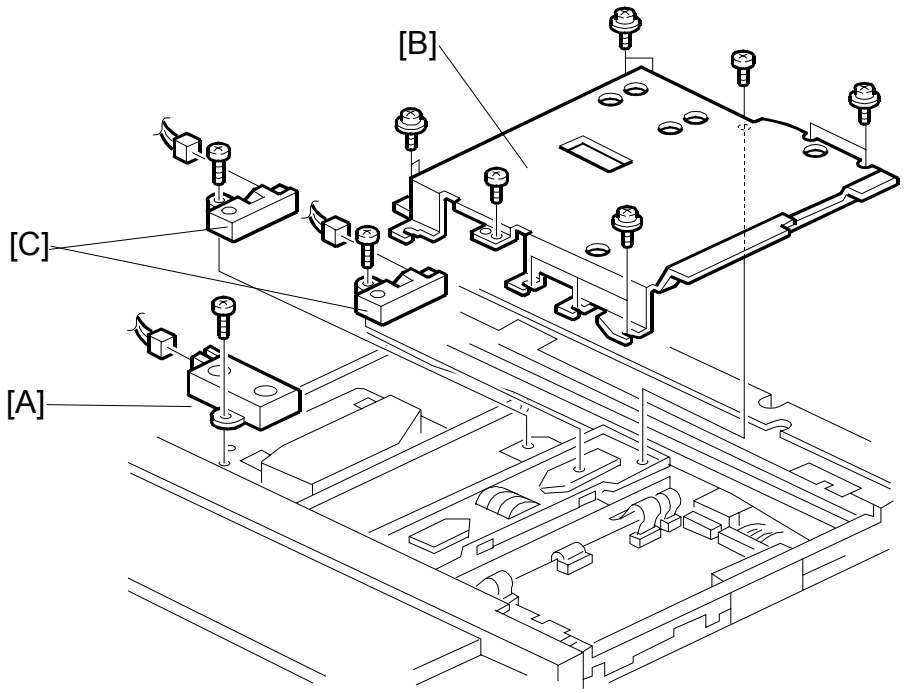
6.3.2 LENS BLOCK



1. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass.)
2. Remove the lens cover [A] (11 screws).
3. Replace the lens block assembly [B] (2 screws, 3 connectors).
4. Do the scanner and printer copy adjustments. (See Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image Adjustments.)

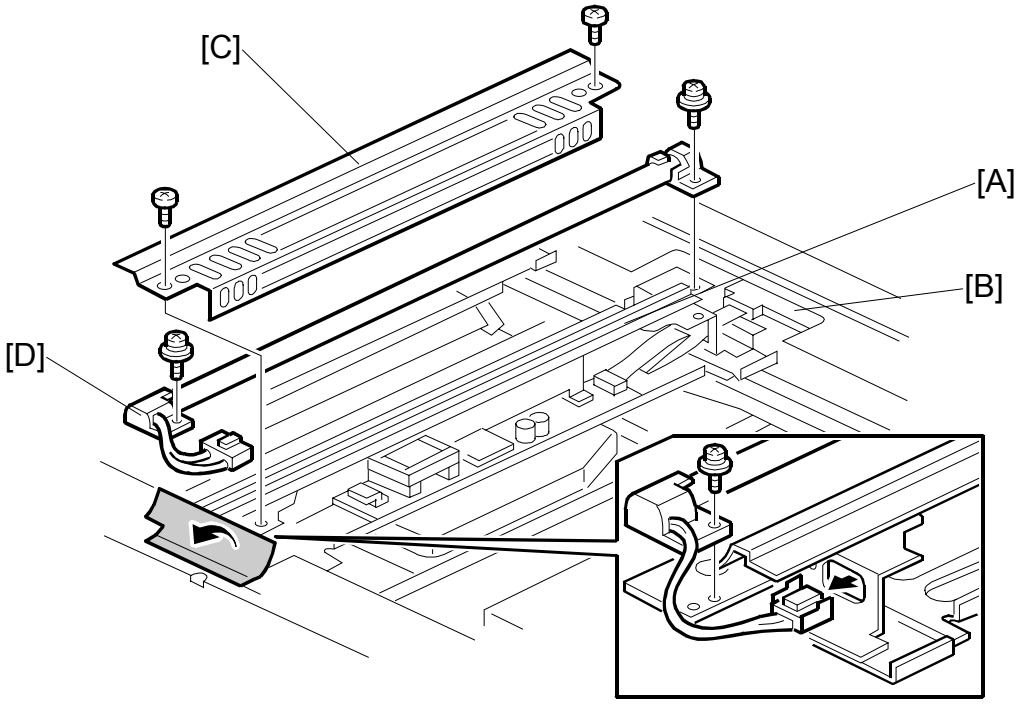
NOTE: When putting back the lens cover, take care not to pinch the operation panel cable.

6.3.3 ORIGINAL SIZE SENSORS



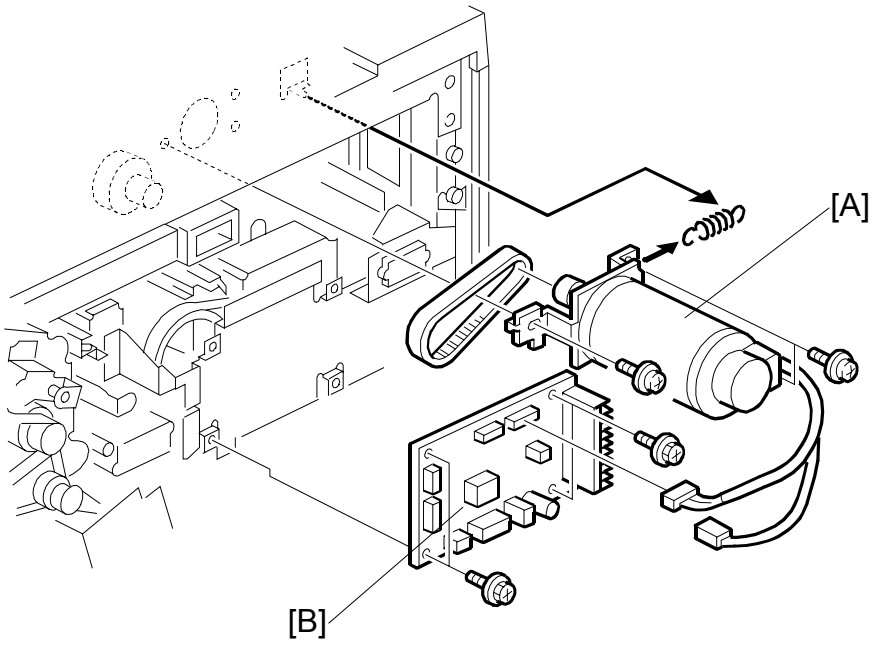
1. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass.)
2. Remove the original width sensor [A] (1 screw, 1 connector).
3. Remove the lens cover [B] (11 screws).
4. Remove the original length sensors [C] (1 screw and 1 connector each).

6.3.4 EXPOSURE LAMP



1. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass.)
2. Slide the 1st scanner [A] to the cutout [B] in the rear scanner frame.
3. Remove the lamp cover [C] (2 screws).
4. Remove the exposure lamp [D] (1 screw, 2 connectors).
   NOTE: Do not touch the glass surface of the exposure lamp with fingers.

6.3.5 SCANNER MOTOR / MCU



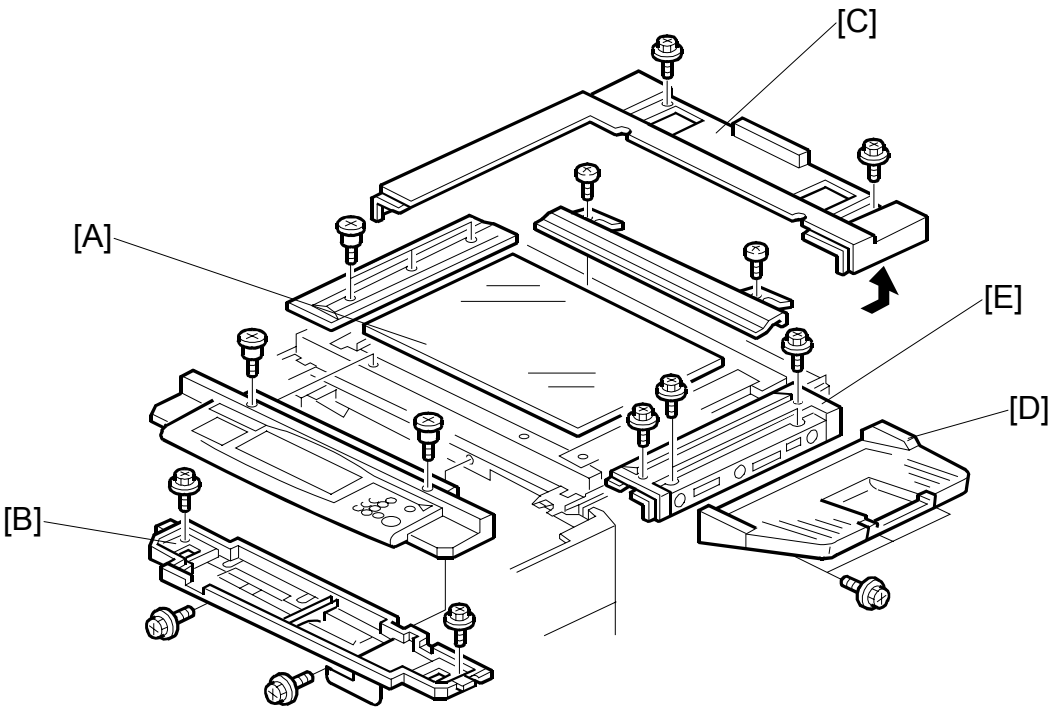
6.3.5.1 Scanner Motor

1. Remove the scanner rear cover. (See Covers - Rear.)
2. Remove the exhaust fan (2 screw, 1 connector and 1 snap fit).
3. Remove the scanner motor [A] with the bracket (3 screws, 2 connectors, 1 spring).
4. Do the scanner and printer copy adjustments. (See Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image Adjustments.)

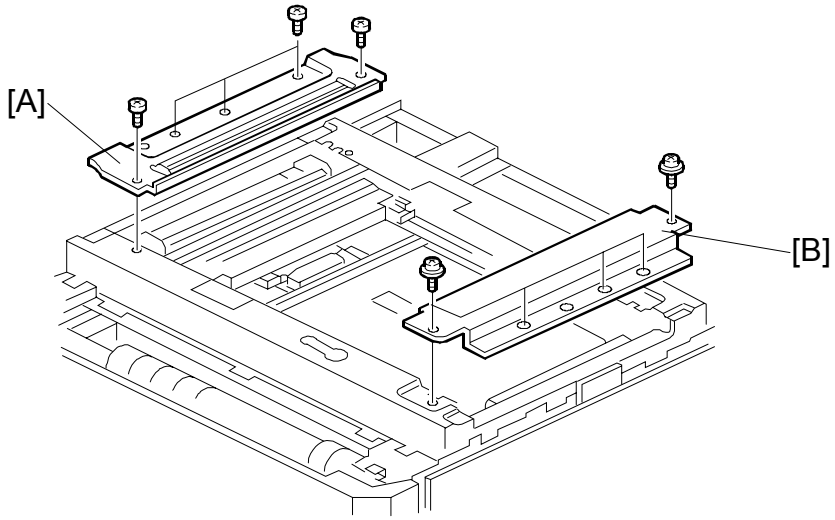
6.3.5.2 MCU

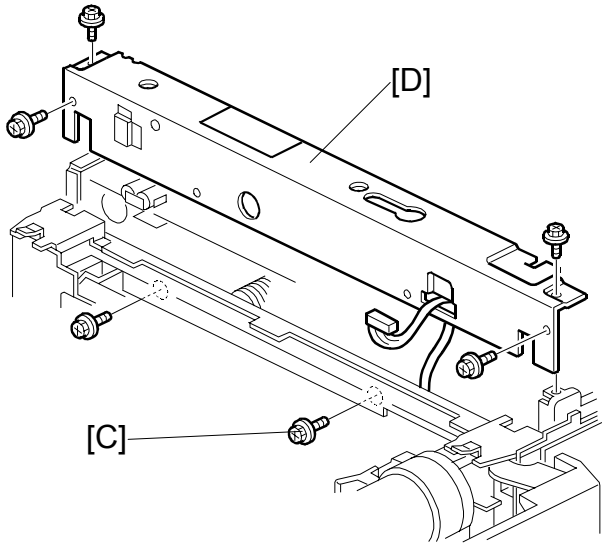
1. Do steps 1 and 2 of the scanner motor removal.
2. Replace the MCU [B] (4 screws and 3 connectors).

6.3.6 SCANNER WIRES

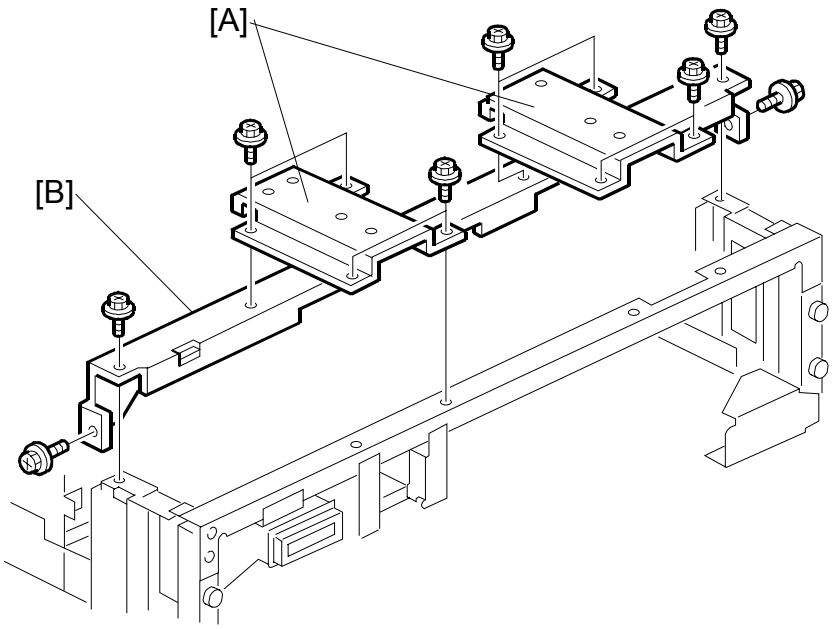


1. Remove the ADF.
2. Remove the following parts:
   - Exposure glass [A] (See Exposure Glass.)
   - Operation panel under cover [B] (See Scanner H.P Sensor.)
   - Scanner rear cover [C] (2 screws)
   - Original exit tray [D] (3 screws)
   - Upper right cover [E] (4 screws).

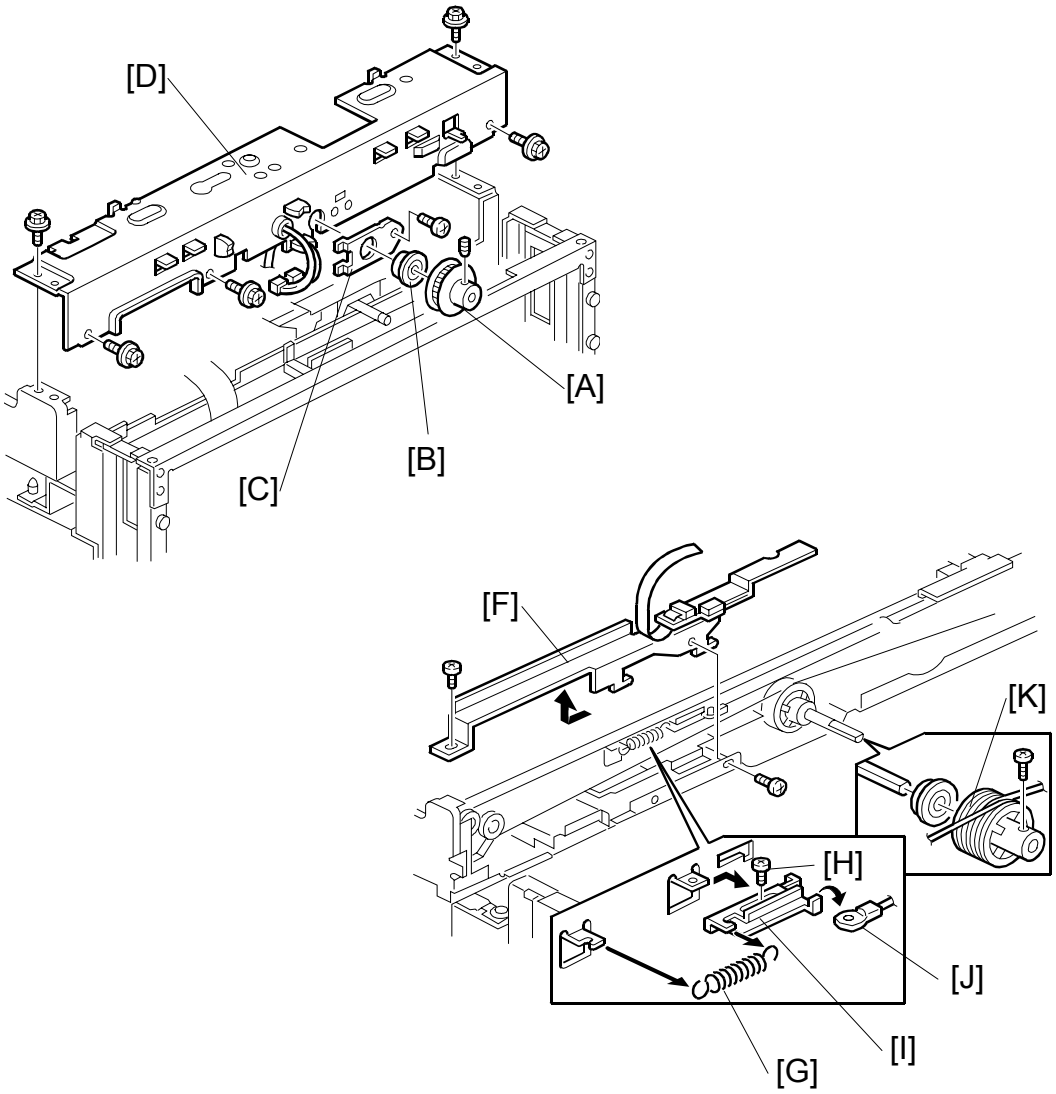




3. Remove the left upper stay [A] (5 screws).
4. Remove the right upper stay [B] (5 screws).
5. Remove the shutter inner cover (see Development Unit) and swing out the toner bottle holder [C].
6. Remove the front frame [D] (6 screws).

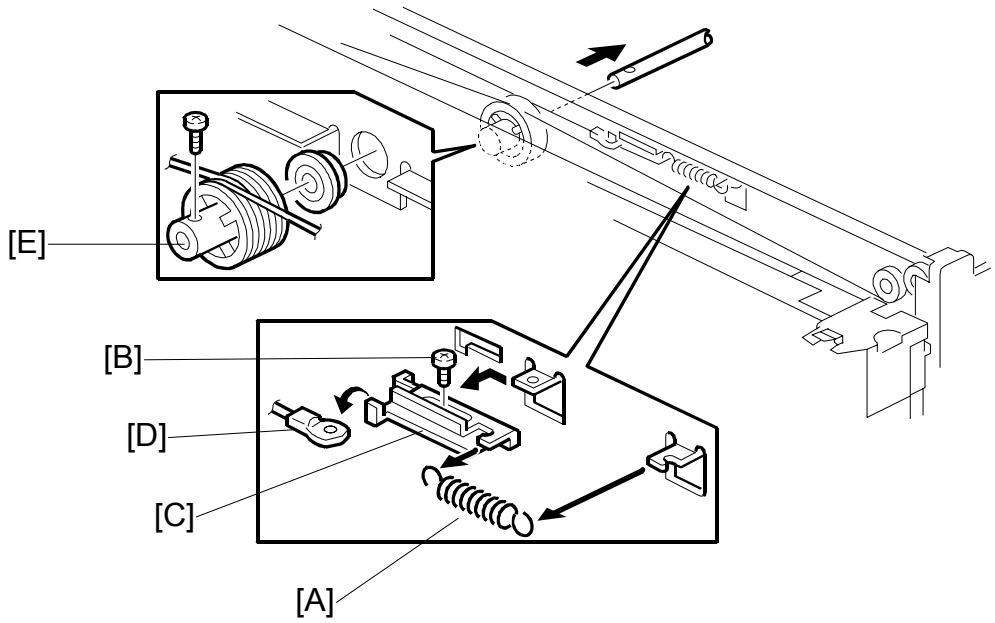


7. Remove the ARDF support brackets [A] (4 screws each).
8. Remove the scanner upper frame [B] (4 screws).



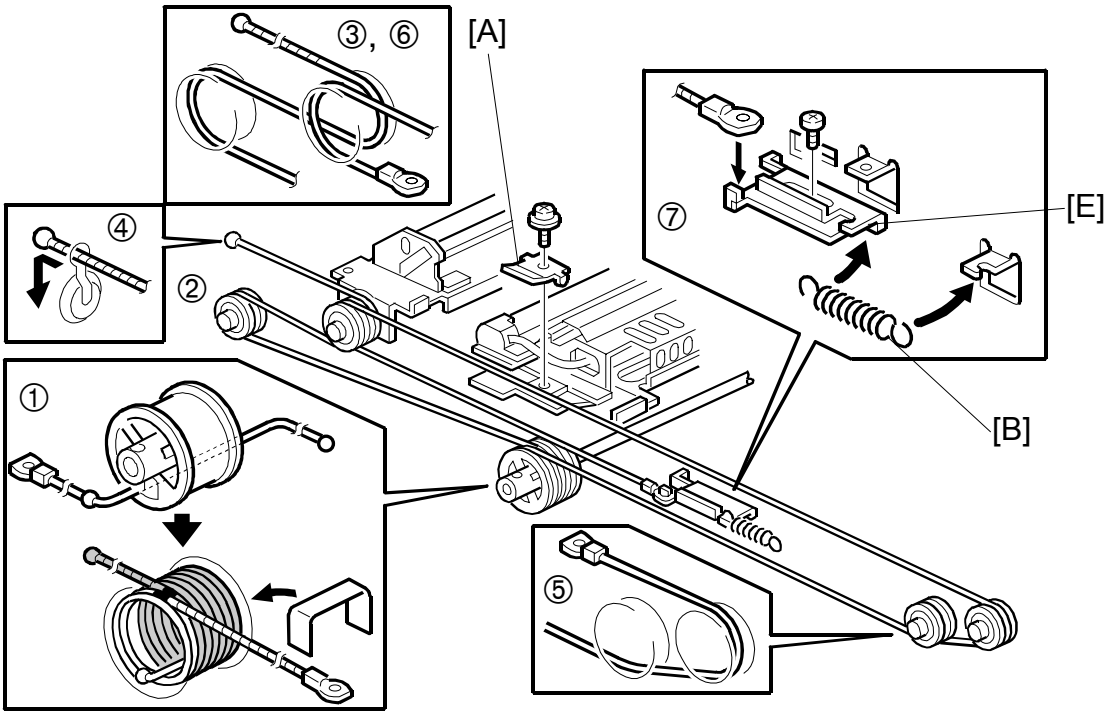
6.3.6.1 Rear Scanner Drive Wire

9. Remove the scanner motor and the scanner motor drive board. (See Scanner Motor and Scanner Motor Drive Board.)
10. Remove the drive pulley [A] (1 Allen screw), bearing [B], and the bearing holder bracket [C] (1 screw).
11. Remove the scanner rear frame [D] (5 screws).
12. Remove the rear scanner wire bracket [no illustration] (1 screw).
13. Remove the cable guide [F] (1 screw).
14. Remove the tension spring [G].
15. Loosen the screw [H] securing the wire tension bracket [I], and remove the rear scanner wire [J].
16. Remove the pulley [K].



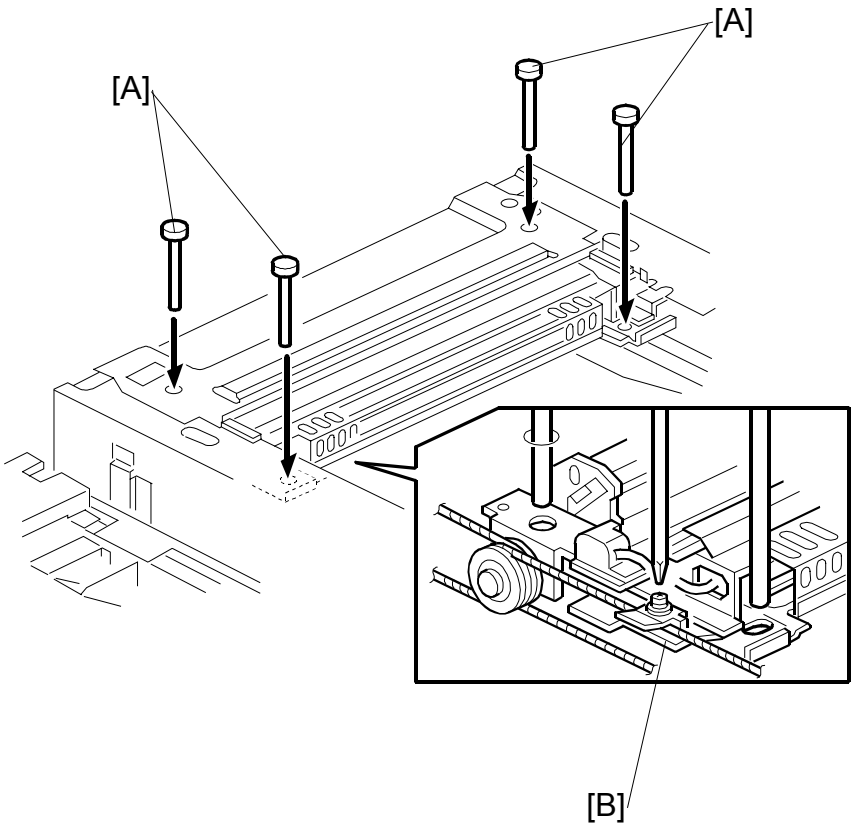
6.3.6.2 Front Scanner Drive Wire

17. Remove the tension spring [A].
18. Loosen the screw [B] securing the wire tension bracket [C], and remove the front scanner wire [D].
19. Remove the pulley [E] (1 screw).



6.3.6.3 Reinstallation

20. While making sure of the direction, place the bead on the middle of the wire in the pulley hole. Then wind the wire (ball side) [D] clockwise 6 times, and the other side (ring side) 2 times as shown (①). Secure the pulley with tape to keep this condition.
21. Place the pulley on the scanner drive shaft.
22. Secure the pulley with the Allen screw in the position where the Allen screw hole faces up.
23. Wind the end of the new wire with the ball as shown (②, ③, and ④).
24. Wind the end of the new wire with the ring as shown (⑤, ⑥, and ⑦).
25. Install the tension spring on the tension bracket [E], and slightly tighten the tension bracket.



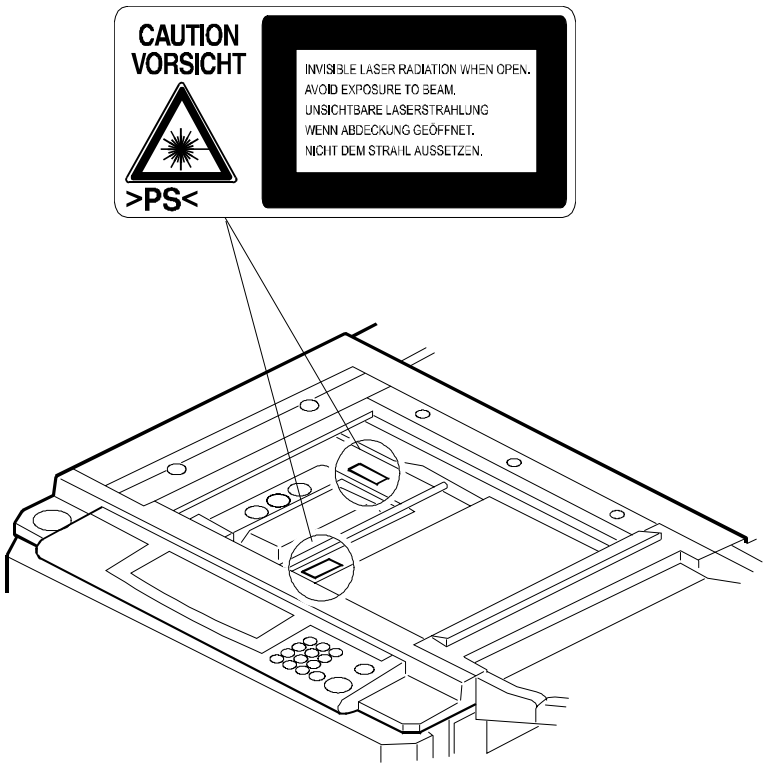
26. Install the 1st scanner and adjust the position with the positioning tools (P/N A0069104) [A].
27. Secure the 1st scanner with the scanner wire bracket [B] (1 screw).
28. Fully tighten the tension bracket.
29. Remove the positioning tools. After sliding the scanner to the right and left several times, set the positioning tools to check the scanner wire bracket and tension bracket again.
30. Reassemble the scanner and do the scanner and printer copy adjustments (see Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image Adjustments).

6.4 LASER UNIT

⚠WARNING
Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

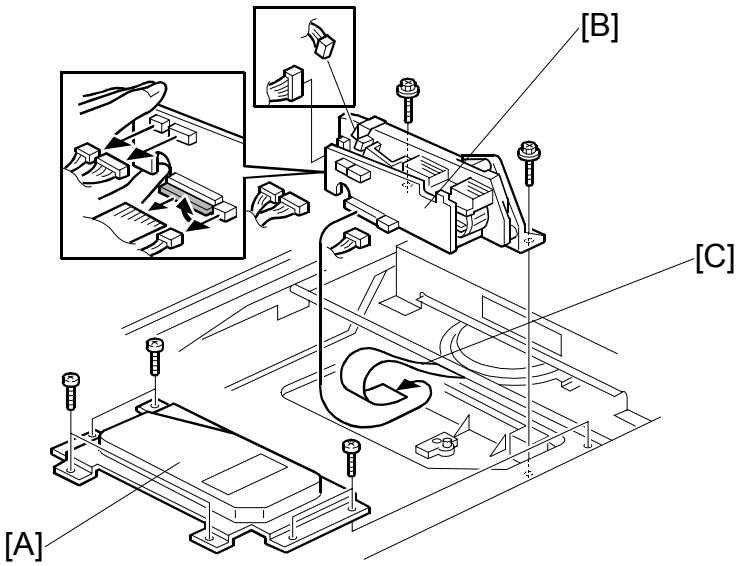
6.4.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS

There are three caution decals in the laser section as shown below.



6.4.2 LD UNIT REPLACEMENT

- A229/A293 - Only



⚠WARNING

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting this procedure. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

1. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
2. ⇒ Remove the LD cover [A] (6 screws).
3. Replace the LD unit [B] (**A229/A293:** 2 screws and 6 connectors, **B098:** 2 screws and 4 connectors).
   NOTE: When disconnecting the cables, hold the LD unit.
4. When reinstalling, make sure that the flat cable [C] is mounted above the LD unit, and that the rotation of the unit is not interrupted.
5. After replacing the LD unit, check the laser beam pitch adjustment and teadjust it if necessary.

   A229/A293: See Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment

   B098: See Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment for B098

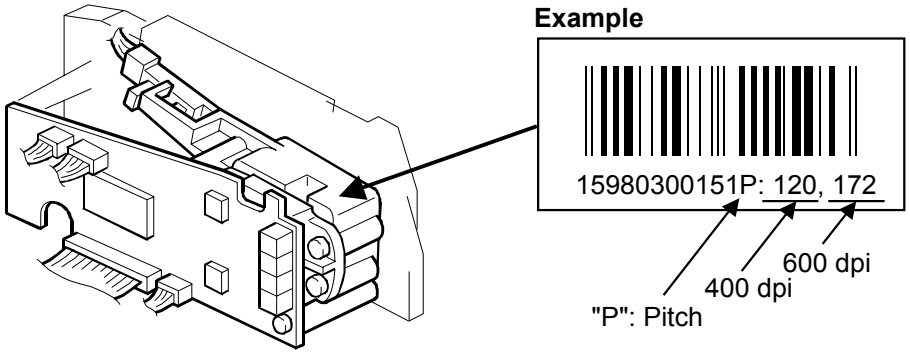
6. ⇒ **For A229/A293 only:** Do SP 2-962 (process control initialization).
   NOTE: Be sure that the cable does not block LD unit rotation after replacing the LD unit. If the LD unit cannot rotate smoothly to change the resolution, SC329 (LD unit home position error) may occur.

⇒ 6.4.3 LASER BEAM PITCH ADJUSTMENT

There are two laser beam pitch adjustment procedures: one for 400 dpi, and one for 600 dpi. These adjustments use the following SP modes.

- SP2-109-1: Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment – 400 dpi
- SP2-109-2: Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment – 600 dpi
- SP2-109-3: Laser Beam Pitch Initial Setting – 400 dpi
- SP2-109-4: Laser Beam Pitch Initial Setting – 600 dpi
- SP2-902-3, no.17: Hound's Tooth Check (1-dot) – Cross Stitch – 400 dpi
- SP2-902-3, no.16: Hound's Tooth Check (1-dot) – Cross Stitch – 600 dpi

1. Perform SP2-109-8 (Beam Pitch Data Reset).
2. Input the value for 400 dpi that is printed on the LD unit into SP2-109-1. Use the value printed after "P" on the new LD unit as shown below.

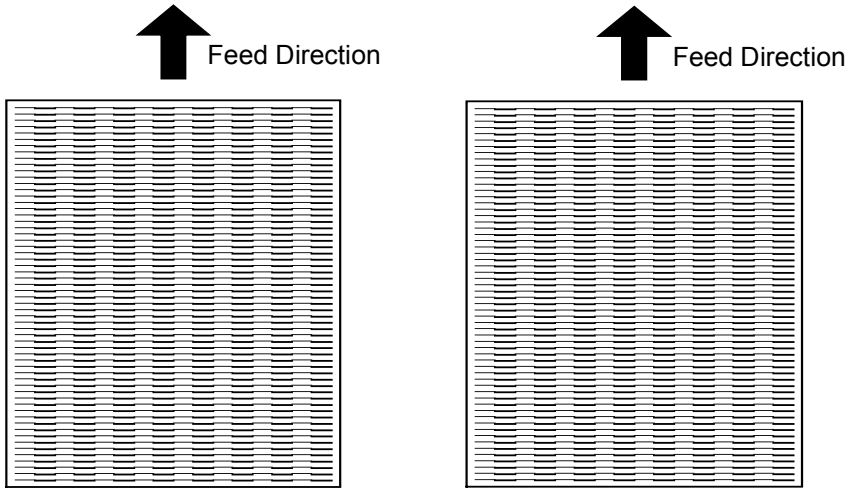


NOTE: Do not use values printed after a "V".

3. Press the "Enter" key.
4. Perform SP2-109-3.
5. Print the 400-dpi test pattern onto A3 (11"x17") paper using SP2-903-3 no.17 (cross stitch). (See Service Tables - Test Pattern Printing).
6. Write the value of SP2-109-1 on the test pattern which was input at step 2.
7. Change the value of SP2-109-1 and print another test pattern, repeating steps 2 to 5. Print about 5 patterns with different values for SP2-109-1 (e.g. "48", "96", "192", "240").

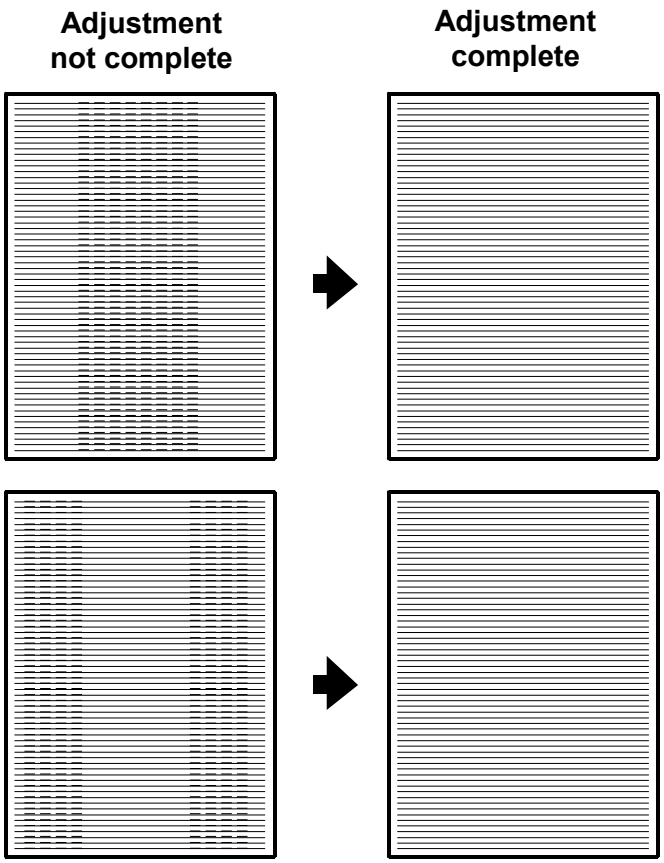
8. Check this test pattern. If the laser beam pitch is not correct, the image looks like a black vertical stripe pattern.
   NOTE: If the laser beam pitch is correct, the vertical stripe is not so noticeable. If the value is not correct, the vertical stripe pattern is darker.

⇒ 9. Adjust the laser beam pitch position until the thin lines are of uniform thickness (no striping effect should appear on the printout), doing steps 2, 3, and 4. (In step 2, input a value which is estimated to be correct, then do steps 3 and 4, then if necessary go back to step 2 and try another value.)



10. After adjusting the laser beam pitch for 400 dpi, adjust the laser beam pitch for 600 dpi, using the same procedure as for 400 dpi (use the SP modes for 600 dpi).

- For B098 -

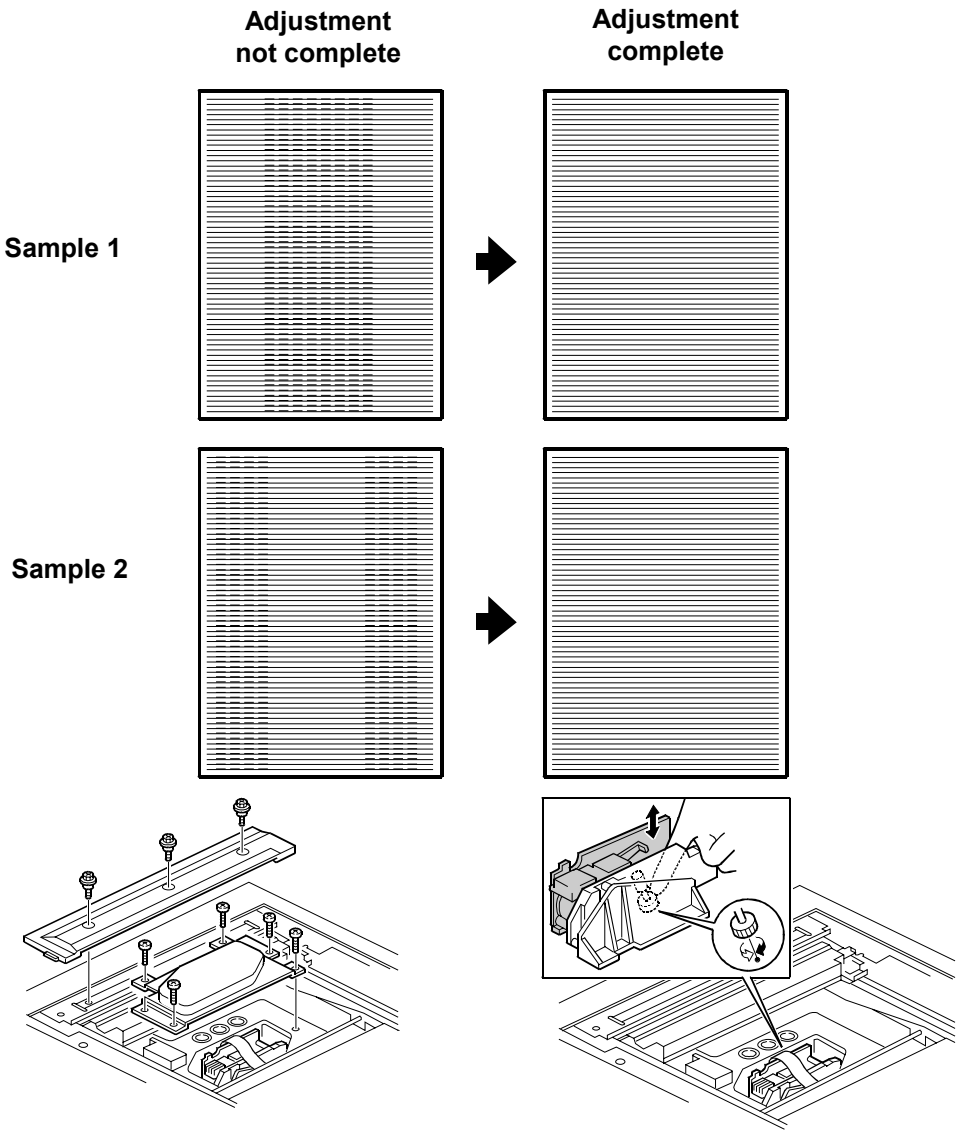


⚠Warning

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine after performing Steps 1 and 2 below. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

Use the following procedure to perform the pitch adjustment after replacing the LD unit:

1. Print out the test pattern on to a sheet of A3/ 11" x 17" paper (SP2902-003: 16 – Cross-stitch).
2. Check the test pattern. If the vertical lines are visible, as shown in sample 1 and 2 above, correct the beam pitch as described below.
   NOTE: The lines are thin, with uniform thickness.
3. Turn off the main switch and unplug the machine.
   NOTE: For safety reasons, make absolutely sure to perform this step before continuing.
4. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)

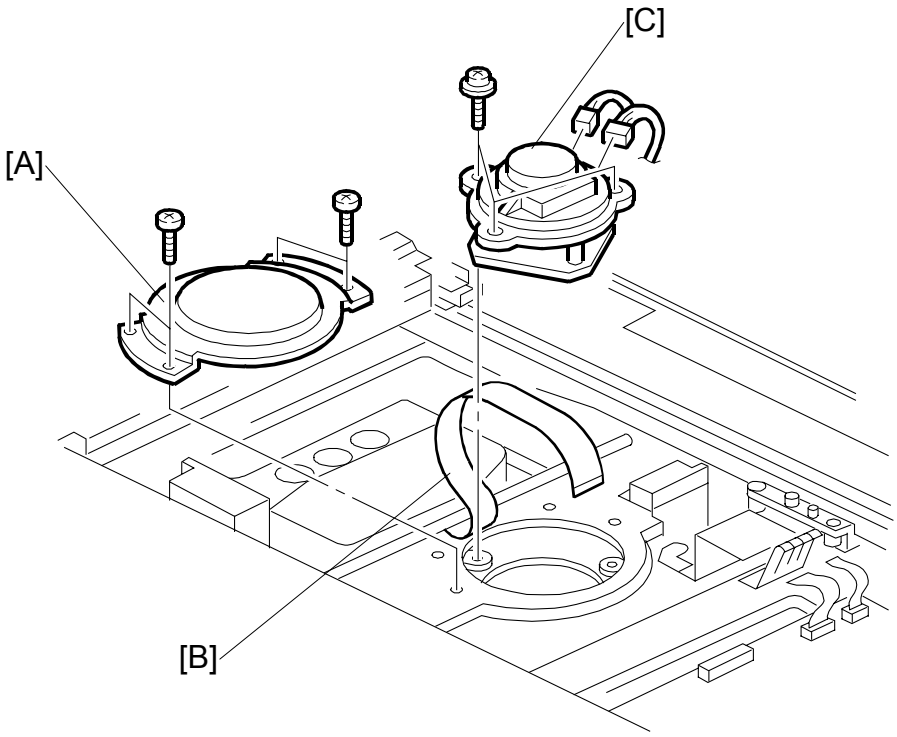


5. Remove the LD cover [A] (6 screws).
6. Adjust the laser beam pitch by turning thr adjustment screw [B]. turn the clockwise or counter-clockwise, depending on what the test pattern looks like:

Test pattern:	Adjustment direction
Sample 1	Clockwise
Sample 2	Counter clockwise

7. Reattach the LD cover, exposure glass and left scale [C].
8. Print out the test pattern again. If necessary, repeat the adjustment from Step 3 until the lines do not appear.
   NOTE: If performing the adjustment again, make absolutely sure to turn off the main power and unplug the machine before beginning.

⇒ 6.4.4 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR REPLACEMENT



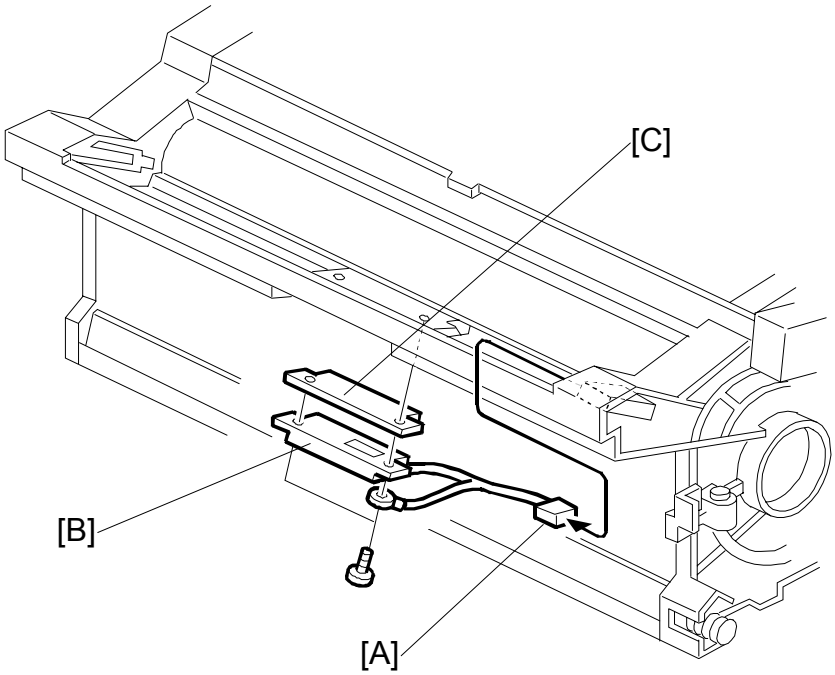
1. Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Remove the lens cover. (See Lens Block Assembly Replacement.)
4. Remove the lens block assembly. (See Lens Block Assembly Replacement.)
5. Remove the polygon mirror motor cover [A] (2 screws).
6. Disconnect the LD unit flat cable [B].
7. Replace the polygon mirror motor [C] (3 screws and 2 connectors.)

NOTE: When reinstalling, make sure that the polygon mirror opening faces the right. Also, do not pull on the LD flat cable.

8. Do the scanner and printer copy adjustments. (See Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image Adjustments.)

6.5 DRUM UNIT

6.5.1 DRUM POTENTIAL SENSOR REPLACEMENT

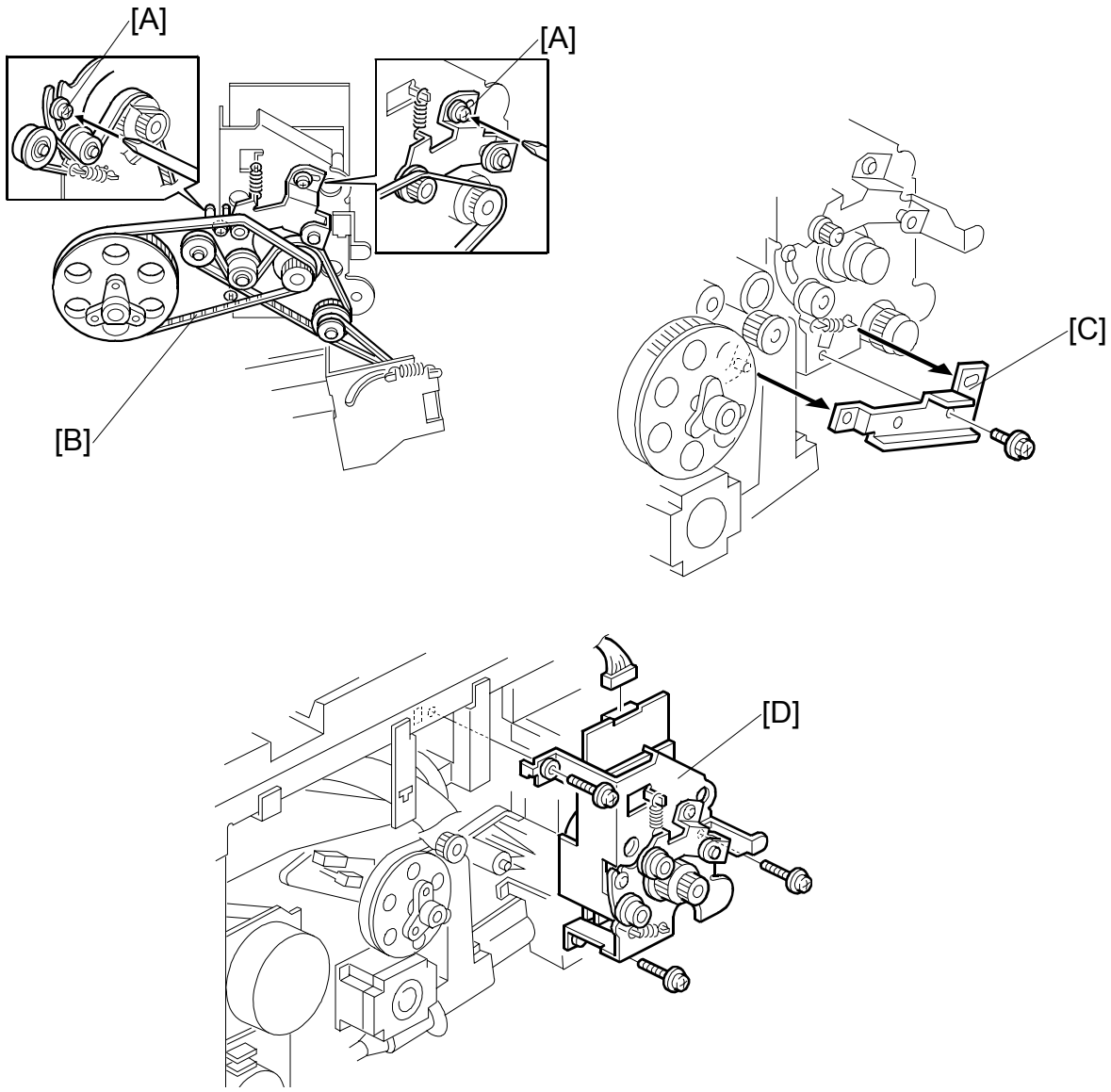


1. Take out the drum unit. (Refer to Drum Unit Removal.)
2. Disconnect the connector [A].
   NOTE: Before removing the drum potential sensor, put a few sheets of paper between the sensor and the drum to protect the drum surface.
3. Remove the drum potential sensor [B] and the grounding plate [C] (2 screws).
4. Replace the drum potential sensor [B].

⚠CAUTION

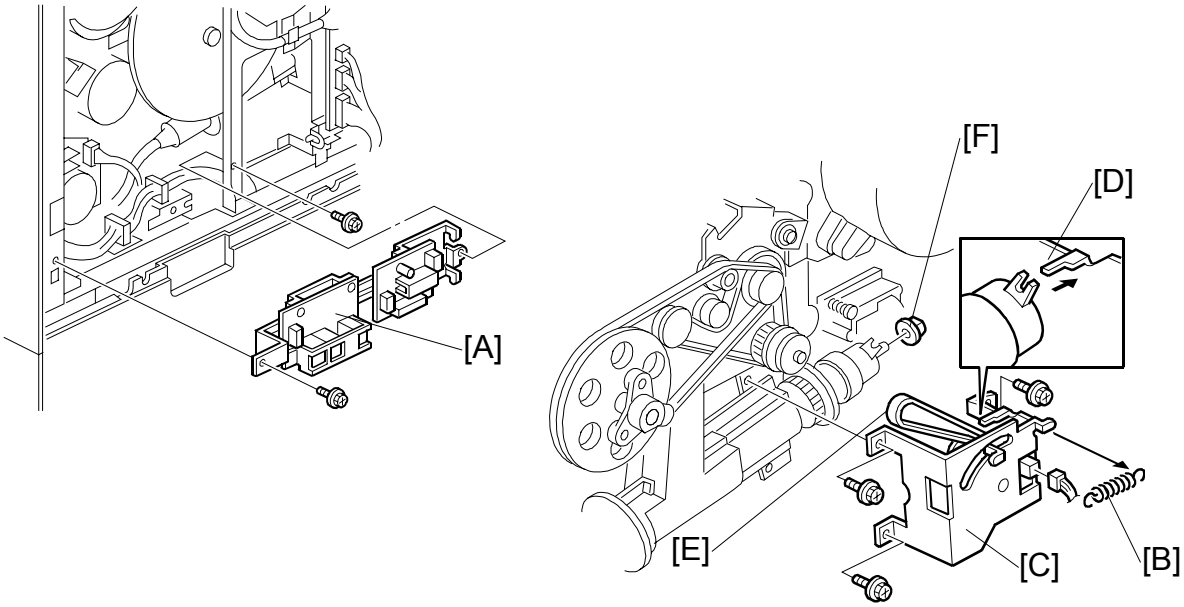
After replacing the drum potential sensor, perform the process control data initial setting (SP mode No. 2-962).

6.5.2 DRUM MOTOR REPLACEMENT



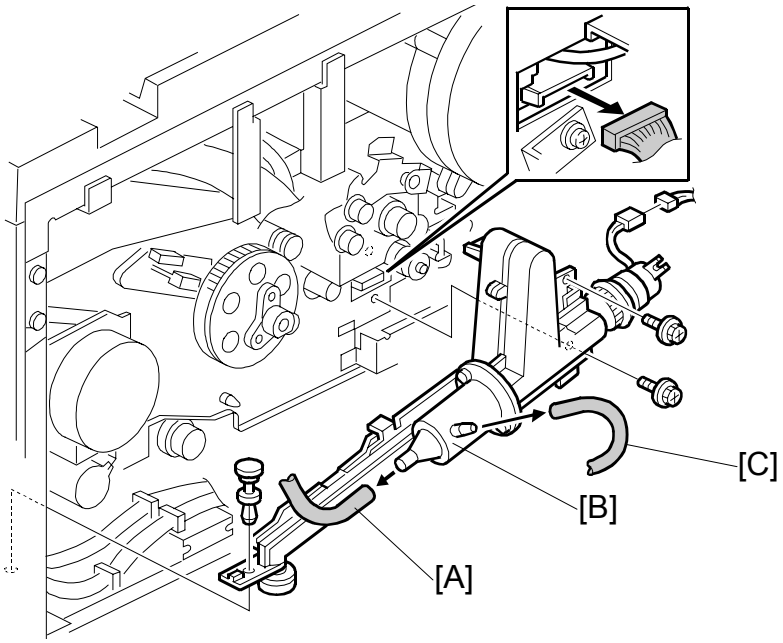
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the rear cover and the fly wheel. (Refer to Development Motor Replacement.)
3. Loosen the tension brackets [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the timing belts [B] from the drum motor's pulleys.
5. Remove the support plate [C].
6. Replace the drum motor unit [D] (3 screws, 1 connector).
   NOTE: When re-installing the drum motor unit, re-install the support plate before attaching the timing belt and the tension bracket.

6.5.3 TONER OUTPUT AND RECYCLING PUMP UNIT REPLACEMENT



NOTE: Before starting the procedure, remove the drum unit and the transfer belt unit to prevent toner from dropping into the machine.

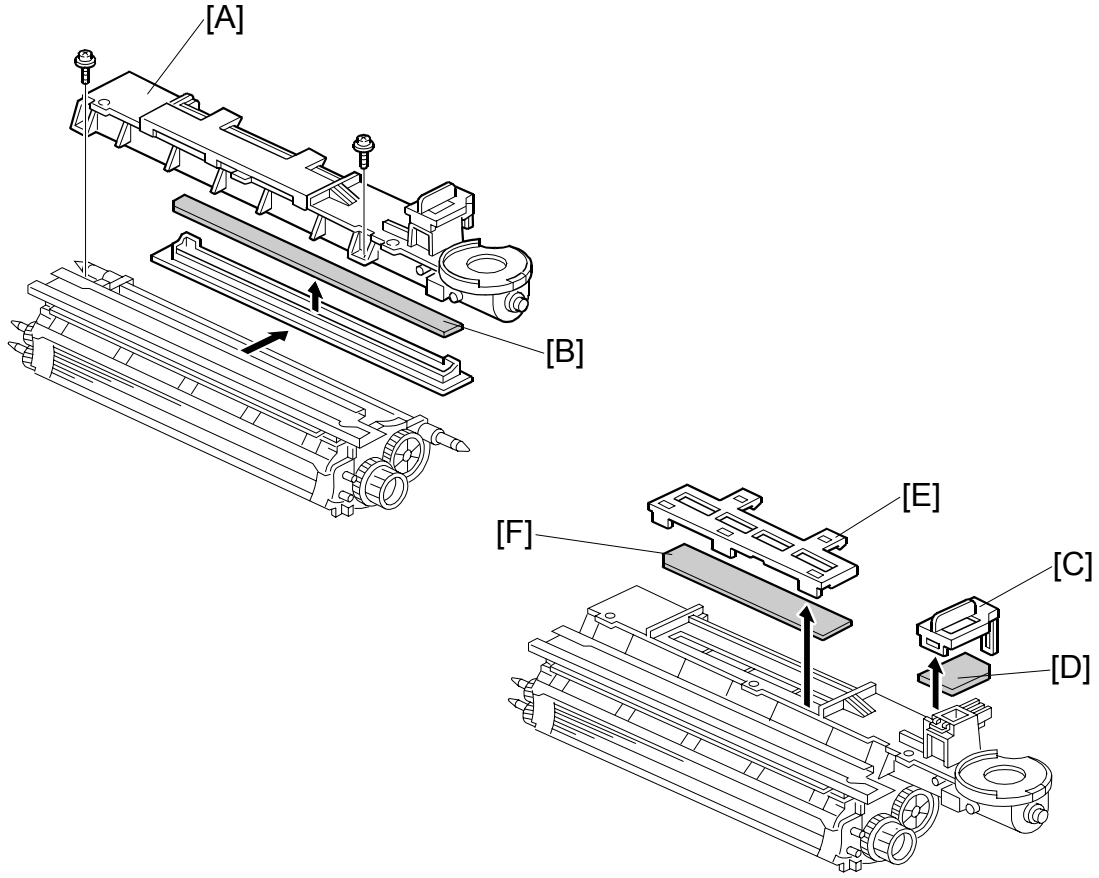
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the rear cover and fly wheel. (Refer to Development Motor Replacement.)
3. Remove the DRB board assembly [A] (2 screws).
4. Lower the I/O Board (4 screws).
5. Remove the spring [B].
6. Remove the toner recycling clutch bracket [C] (3 screws, 1 connector)
   NOTE: When reinstalling the bracket [C], put the pin on the stopper [D] into the cutout in the clutch.
7. Remove the timing belt [E] from the drum motor's pulley.
8. Remove the bushing [F].
   NOTE: Be careful not to drop the bushing.
9. Remove the by-pass feed motor. (Refer to By-pass Feed Motor/Clutch Replacement.)



10. Release the toner recycling tube [A] from the pump unit.
    NOTE: When turning the end of the tube downwards, prevent the toner in it from dropping into the machine.
11. Release the air tube [B].
12. Remove the toner output and recycling pump unit [C] (2 screws, 1 pin connectors).
    NOTE: The lower part of the pin (push lock) drops easily.

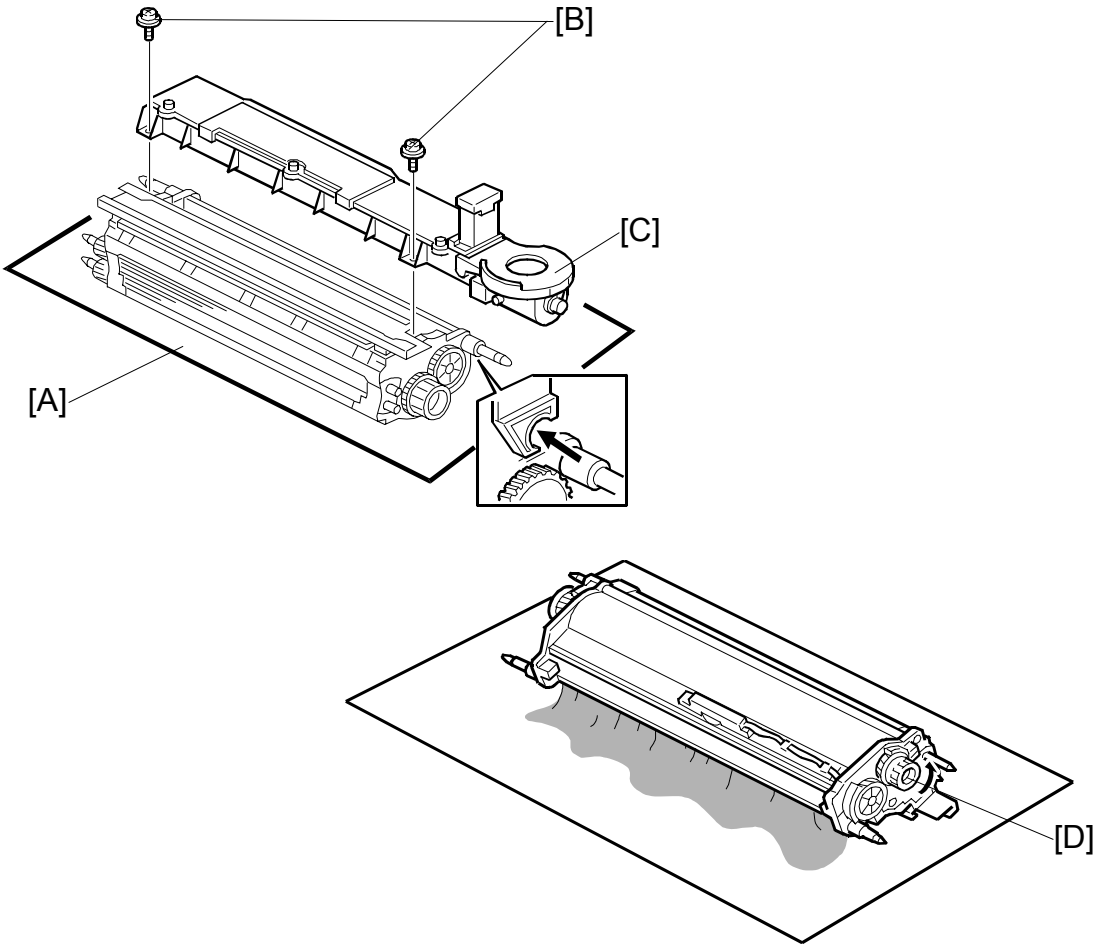
6.6 DEVELOPMENT AND TONER SUPPLY

6.6.1 DEVELOPMENT AND AIR DUST FILTER REPLACEMENT

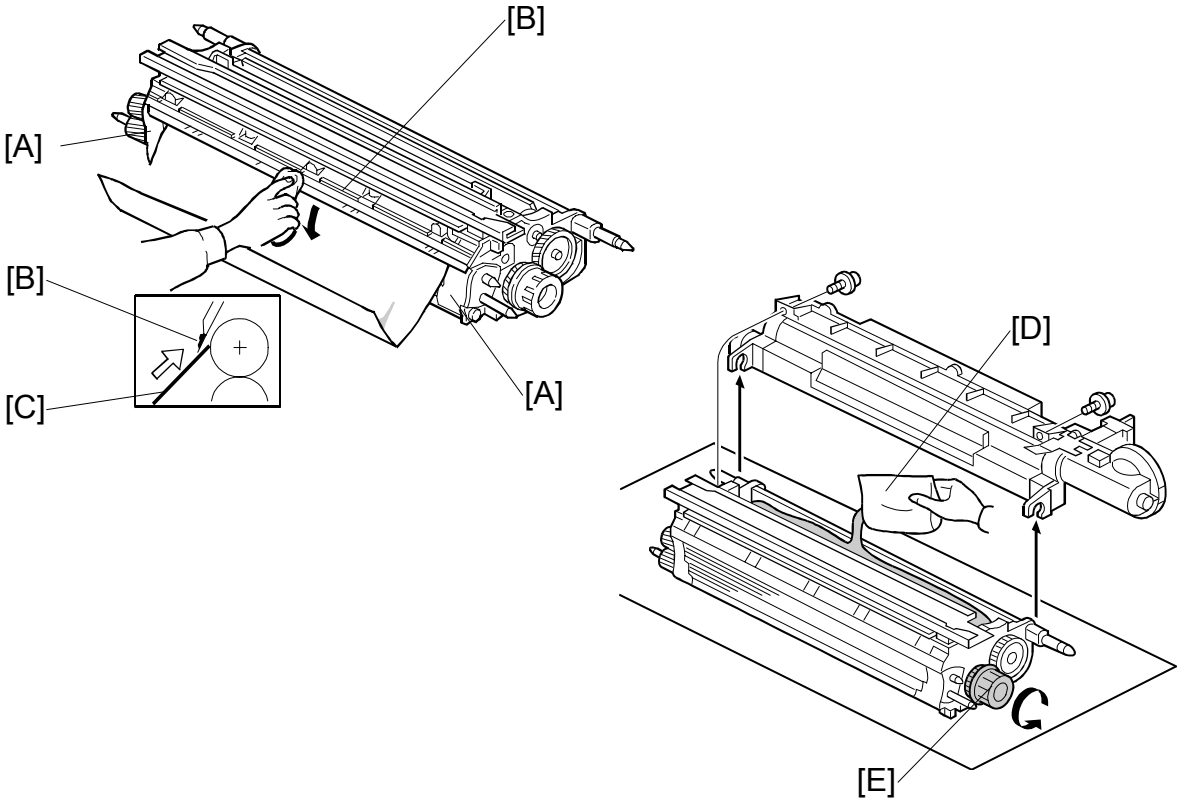


1. Take out the development unit. (Refer to Development Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the toner hopper [A] (two screws).
3. Replace the development filter [B].
4. Remove the front air dust filter cover [C] (1 hook).
5. Replace the front air dust filter [D].
6. Remove the central air dust filter cover [E].
7. Replace the central air dust filter [F].

6.6.2 DEVELOPER REPLACEMENT



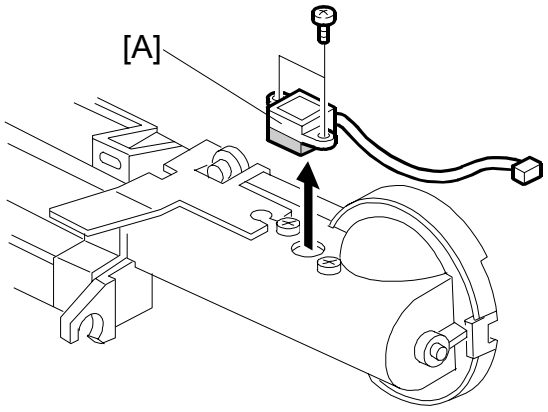
1. Take out the development unit. (Refer to Development Unit Removal.)
2. Place the development unit on a sheet of paper [A].
3. Remove the two screws [B] that hold the toner hopper [C].
4. Remove the toner hopper from the development unit.
5. Turn over the development unit then turn the paddle roller knob [D] to empty the remaining developer onto the sheet. (The one-way clutch in the knob [D] allows the paddle roller to be turned counterclockwise only.)
   NOTE: Dispose of used developer in accordance with local regulations. Make sure that no developer remains on the development rollers or in the development unit.



6. Clean the side seals [A] and entrance seal [B].
   NOTE: Cover the sleeve rollers with a sheet of paper [C] to prevent the used developer from being attracted to the sleeve rollers.
7. Pour in one pack of developer [D] evenly across the width of the development unit, while turning the knob [E].
8. Re-install the toner hopper, then re-assemble the machine.
   NOTE: 1) Be sure to connect the connectors after installing the development unit in the machine.
   2) Tilt the toner hopper so that there is toner near the toner end sensor.
9. Turn on the main switch, then perform developer initial setting (SP mode No. 2-801).

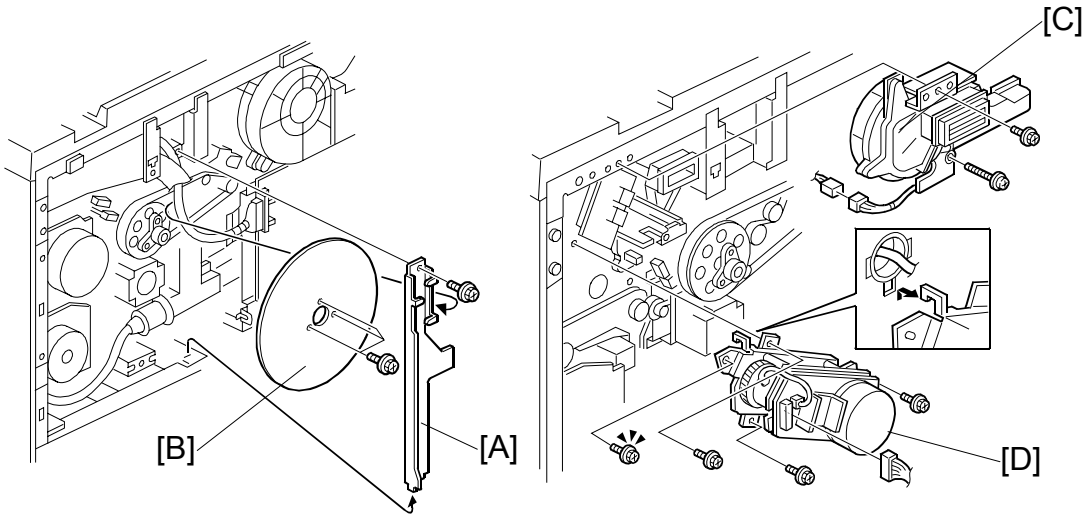
NOTE: 1) Enter the SP mode before the machine automatically starts the auto process control. If you could not enter the SP mode before this starts, do the developer initial setting after the print key turns green. Do not turn off the main switch until the developer initial setting has finished.
2) Do not make any copies with the new developer before completing the developer initial setting, otherwise toner density control will be abnormal.
3) When the developer initial setting did not complete correctly, you cannot exit the SP mode by pressing the "Quit" key. If this problem occurs, turn the main switch off and on, then perform the initial setting again. If the result is the same, see "SC341 or 342" in the troubleshooting section.

6.6.3 TONER END SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Take out the toner hopper. (Refer to Developer Replacement.)
2. Replace the toner end sensor [A].

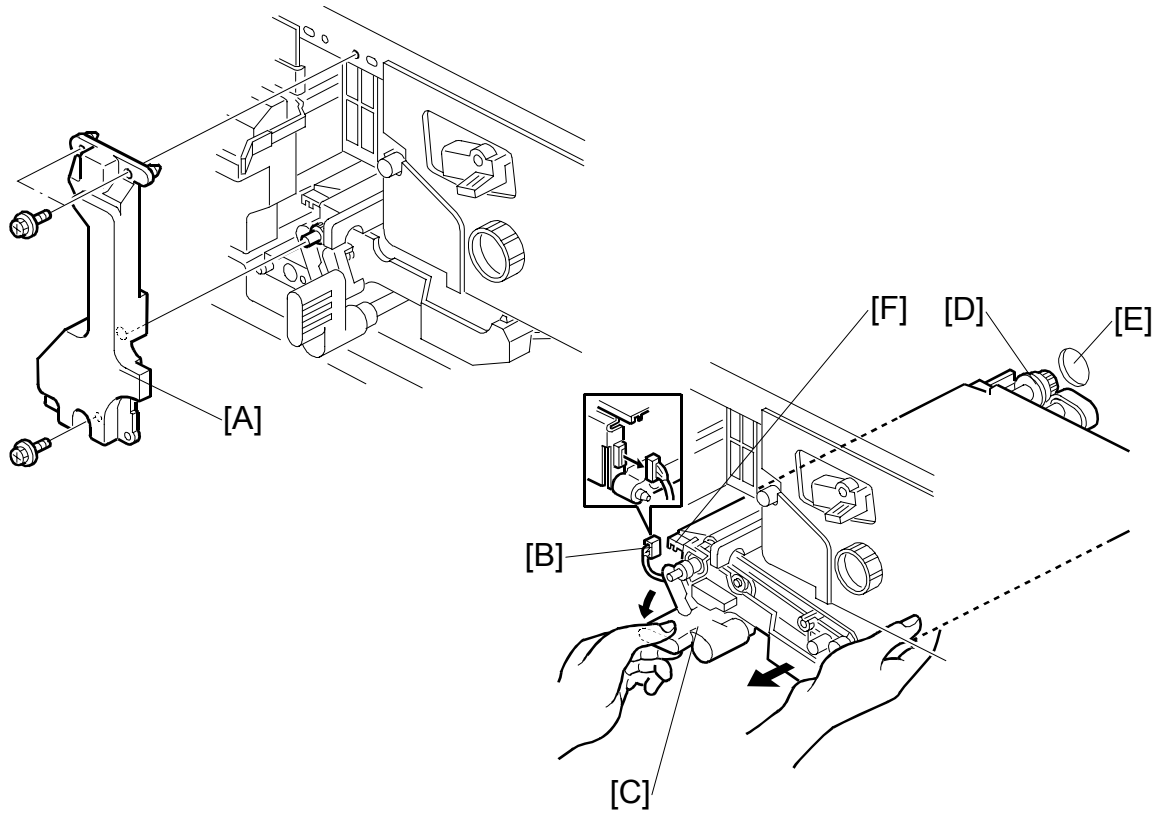
6.6.4 DEVELOPMENT MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the rear covers. (Refer to Exterior Cover Removal.)
3. Remove the harness-guide bracket [A] (1 screw).
4. Remove the fly wheel [B] (3 screws).
5. Remove the drum cooling fan [C].
6. Replace the development motor unit [D] (3 screws, 1 connector, and 1 hook).

6.7 TRANSFER BELT UNIT

6.7.1 TRANSFER BELT UNIT REMOVAL/INSTALLATION



Removal -

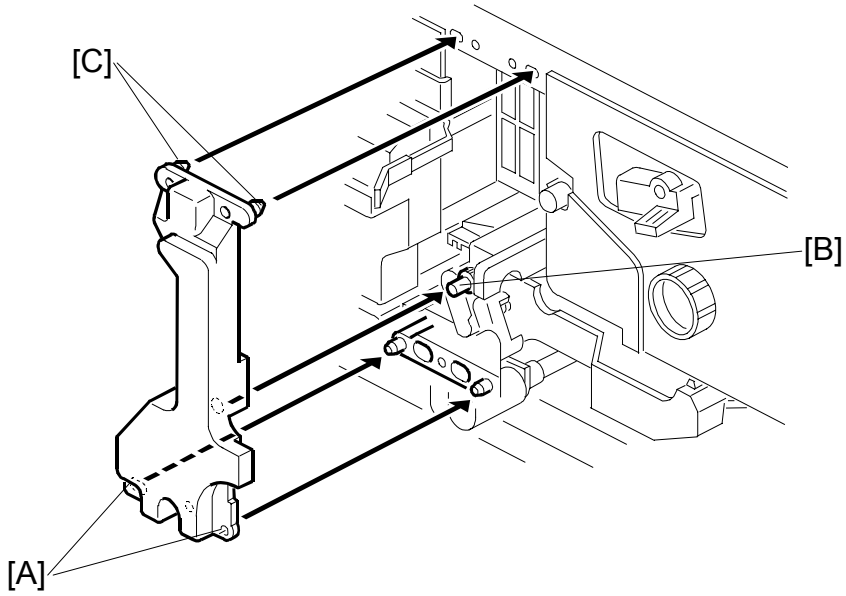
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the transfer belt unit prop [A] (3 screws).
3. Disconnect the connector [B].
4. While turning the lever [C] counterclockwise, take out the transfer belt unit.

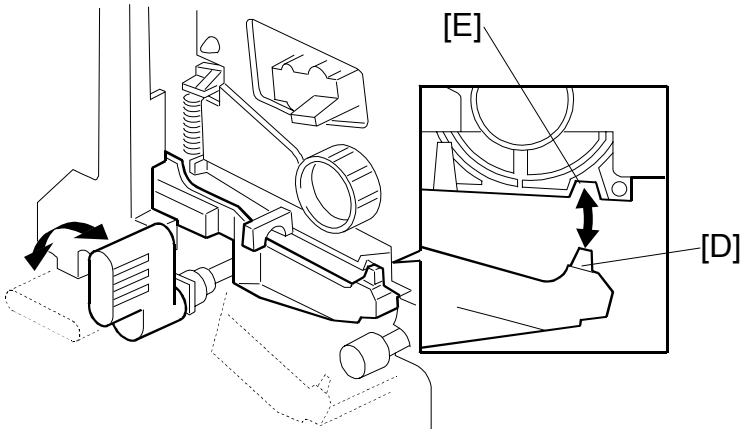
   NOTE: 1) Do not touch the transfer belt with bare hands.
   2) Take care not to scratch the drum with the transfer belt unit. Be careful when installing the transfer belt unit.

Installation -

1. While turning the lever [C] counterclockwise, install the transfer belt unit.

   NOTE: 1) Insert the gear [D] into the opening [E] in the rear frame.
   2) Place the slot [F] in the transfer belt unit on the rail.

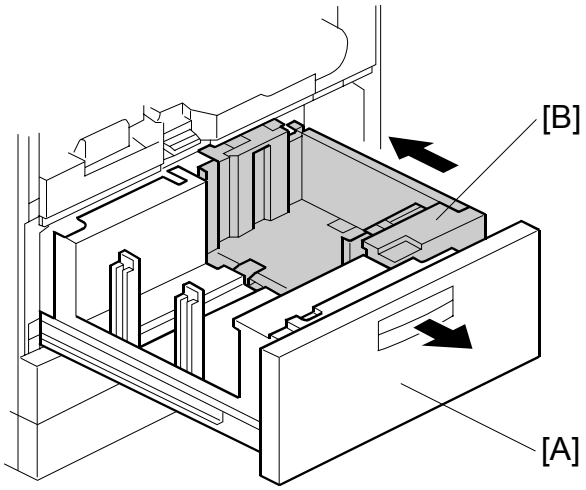


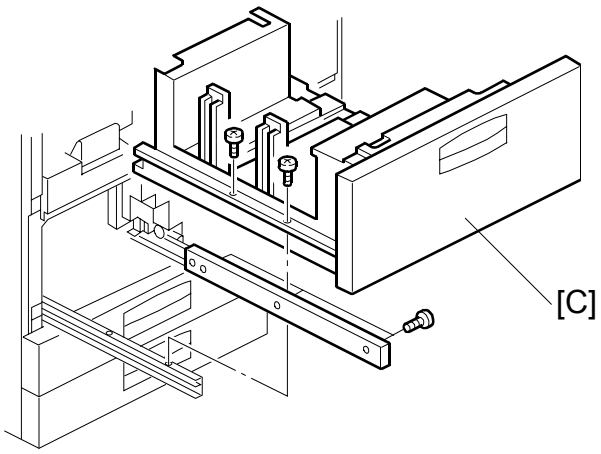


2. Attach the transfer belt unit prop (3 screws).
   NOTE: To attach the transfer belt unit prop easily, set the following in order: lower pins [A], drive roller shaft [B], upper pins [C].
3. After installation, check the following points:
   1) The transfer belt unit must move up and down smoothly.
   2) Part [D] of the transfer belt unit must be behind the drum stay.
   3) Part [D] of the transfer belt unit must be set in the indent [E] in the drum unit casing.

6.8 PAPER FEED

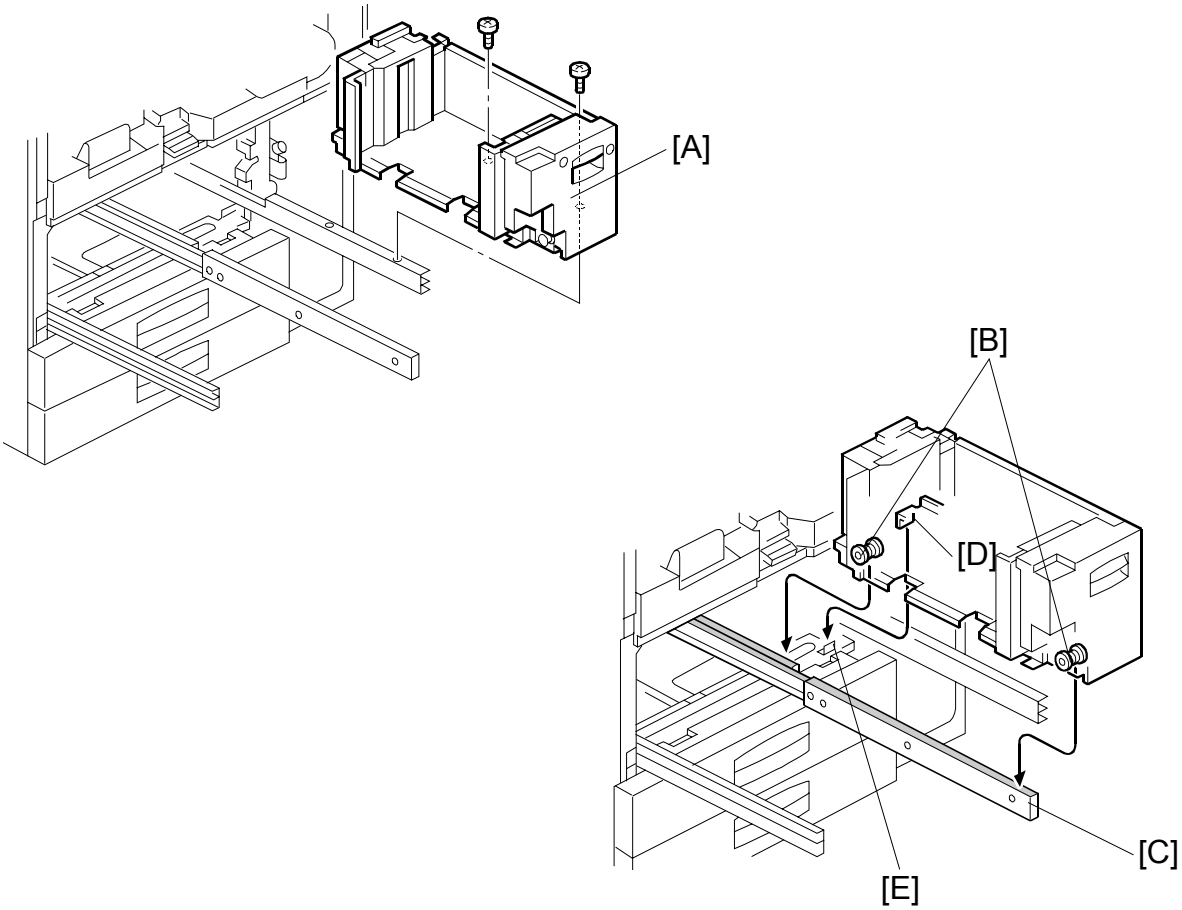
6.8.1 PAPER TRAY REMOVAL





Tandem Tray Removal

1. Open the front cover.
2. Draw out the tandem feed tray [A] fully to separate the right tandem tray [B] from the left one.
3. Remove the left tandem tray [C] (5 screws).

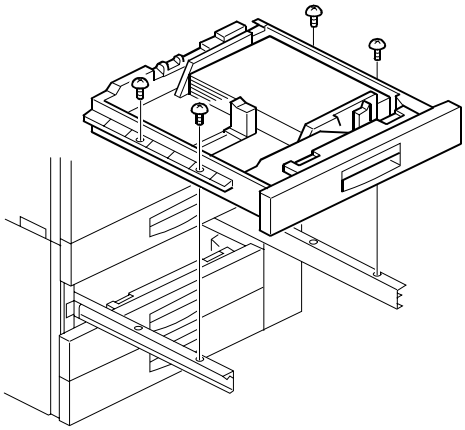


4. Remove the right tandem tray [A] (2 screws).

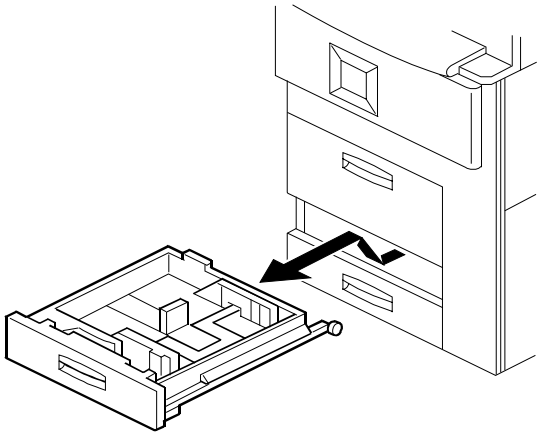
NOTE: 1) When re-installing the right tandem tray, make sure that the wheels [B] ride on the slide rail [C].
2) When re-installing the right tandem tray, make sure that the tandem tray stopper [D] is set behind the stopper [E] on the copier frame.

Universal trays (Customer adjust/Technician adjust) Removal

For A292/A293



For B098



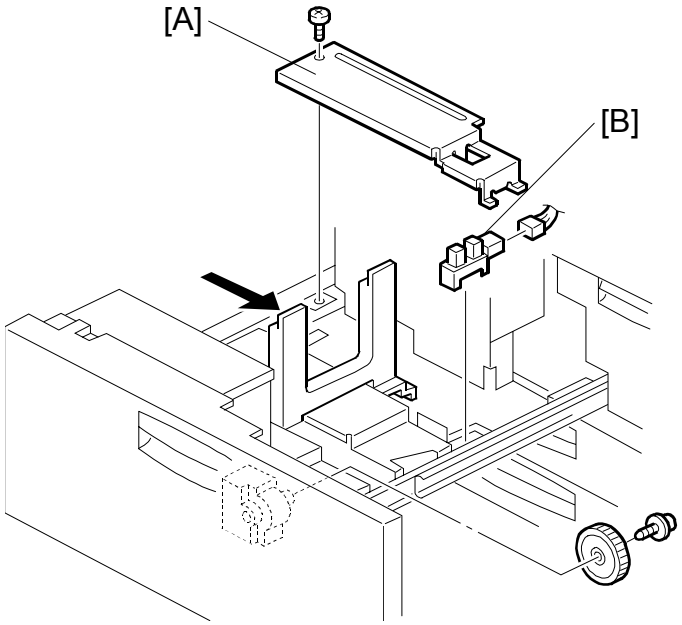
For A292/A293

1. Draw out the tray.
2. Remove the tray [A] from both guide rails [B] as shown (4 screws).

For B098

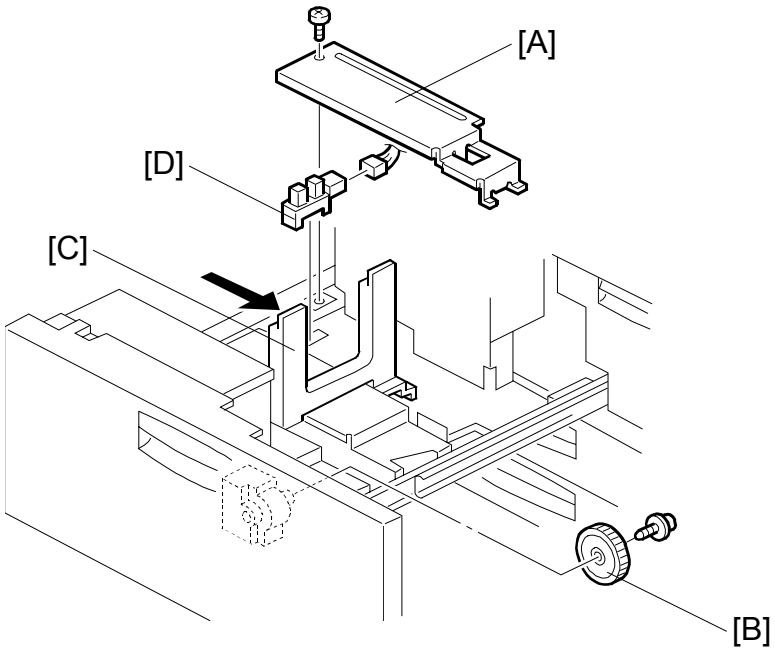
1. Draw out the tray[C] and remove it as shown.

6.8.2 REAR FENCE RETURN SENSOR REPLACEMENT



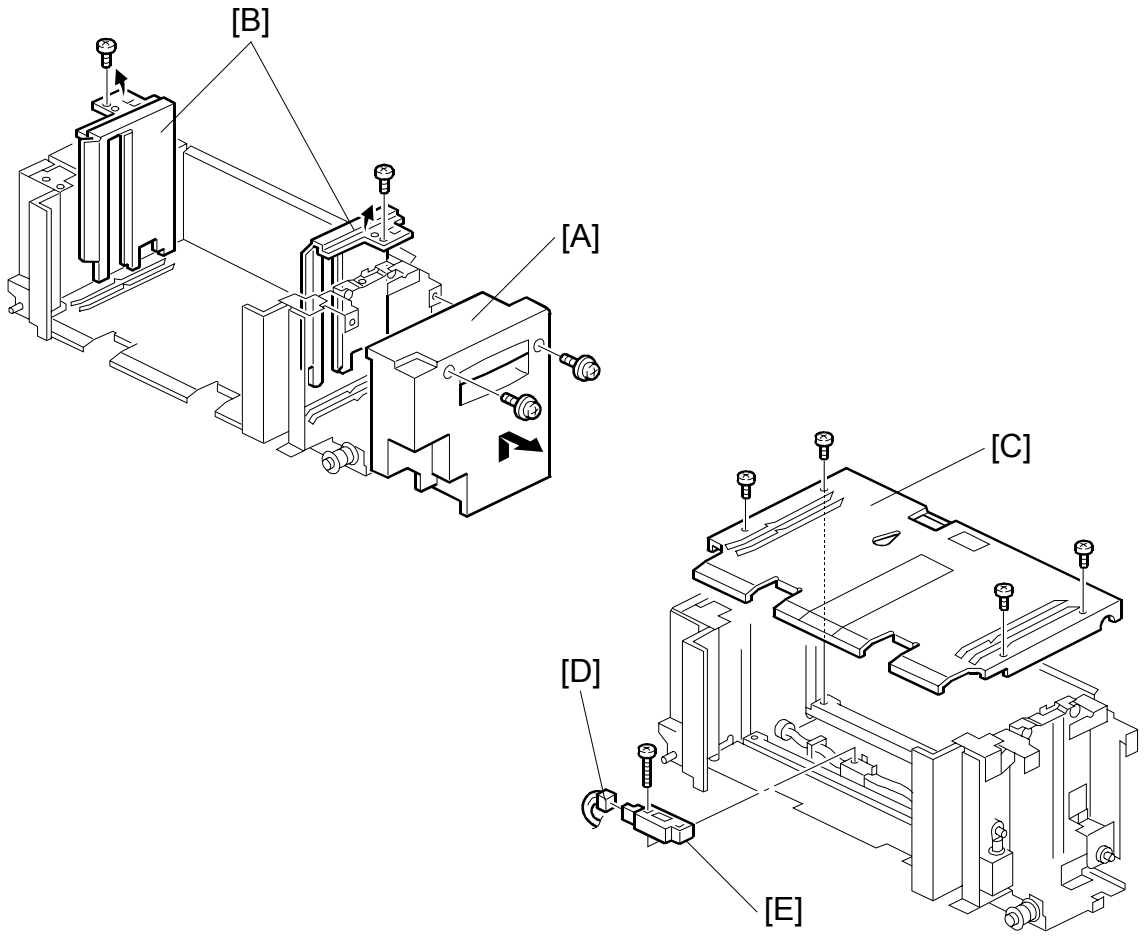
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Draw out the tandem feed tray.
3. Remove the rear bottom plate [A] (1 screw).
4. Replace the return sensor [B] (1 connector).

6.8.3 REAR FENCE HP SENSOR REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Draw out the tandem feed tray.
3. Remove the rear bottom plate [A] (1 screw).
4. Remove the back fence transport gear [B] (1 screw).
5. Move the back fence [C] to the right.
6. Remove the rear HP sensor [D] (1 connector).

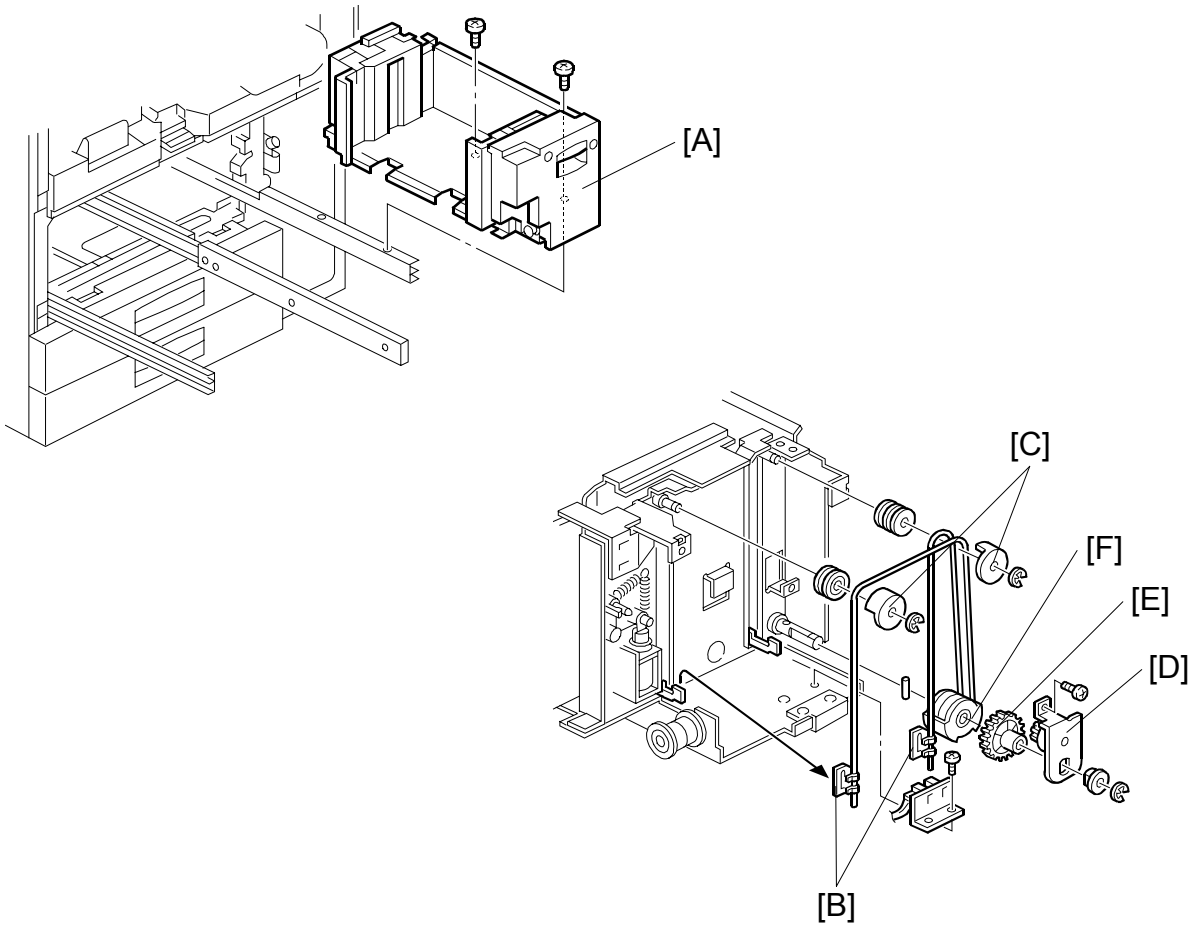
6.8.4 BOTTOM PAPER SENSOR REPLACEMENT



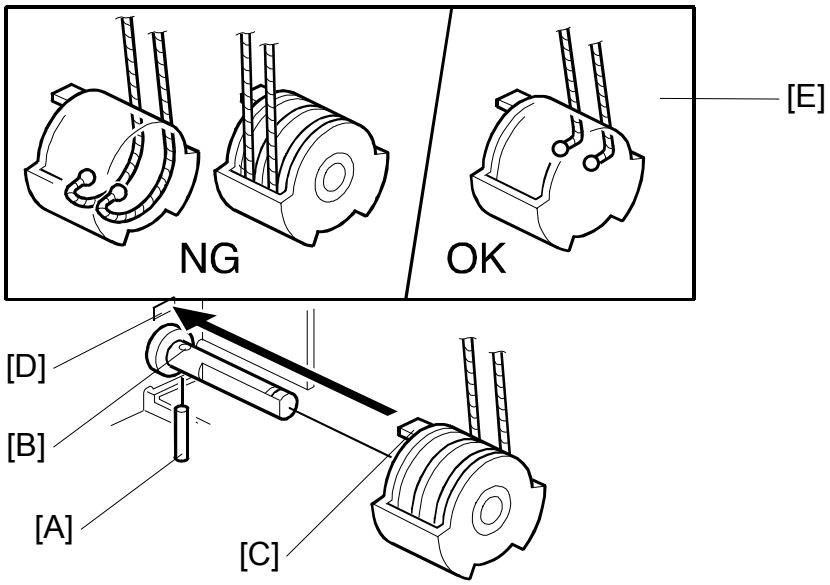
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the right tandem tray. (Refer to Paper Tray Removal.)
3. Remove the inner cover [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the side fences [B] (1 screw each).
5. Remove the bottom plate [C] (4 screws).
6. Disconnect the connector [D].
7. Replace the bottom paper sensor [E] (1 screw).

6.8.5 BOTTOM PLATE LIFT WIRE REPLACEMENT

NOTE: Before replacing the rear bottom plate lift wire, remove the front bottom plate lift wire. It is necessary to remove the shaft for replacing the rear bottom plate lift wire.



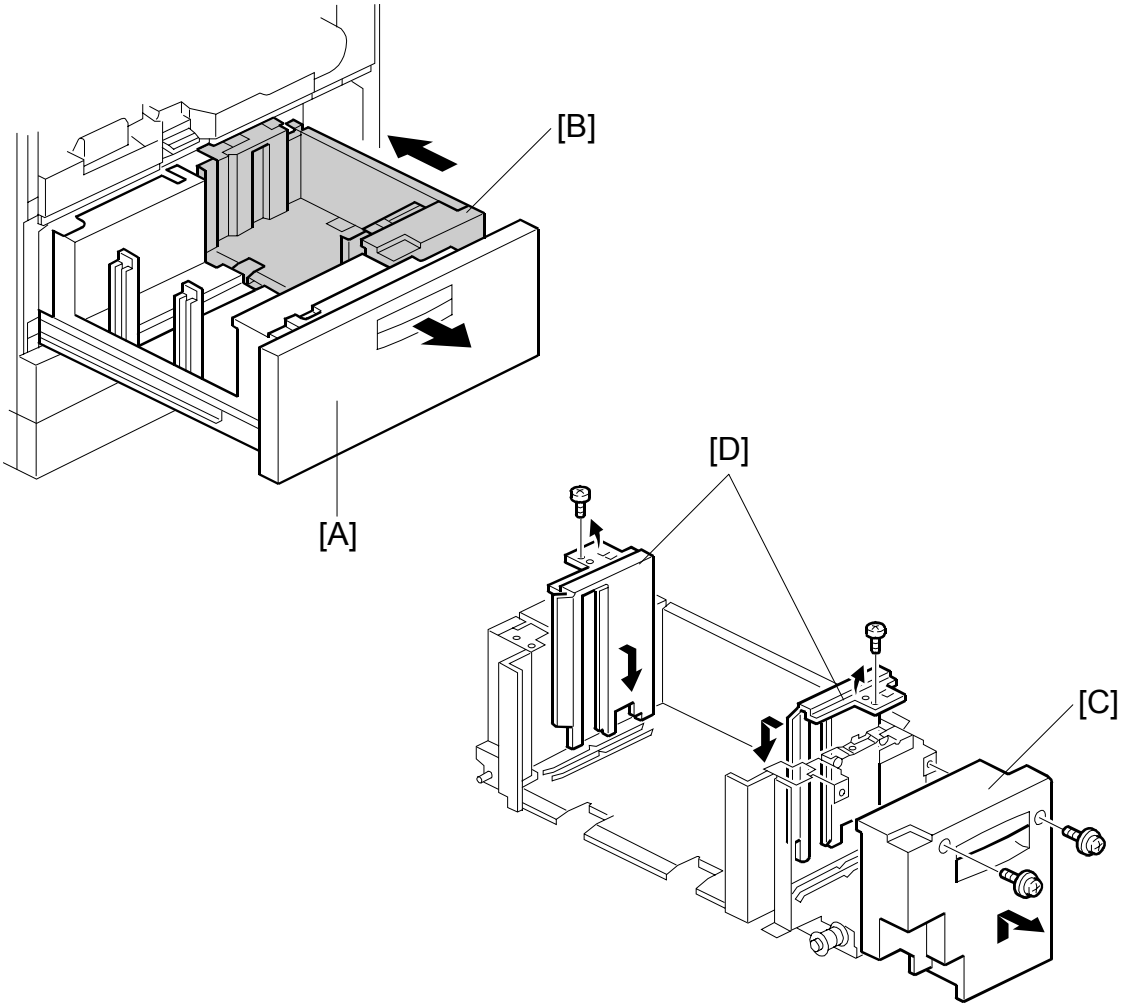
1. Remove the right tandem tray. (Refer to Paper Tray Removal.)
2. Remove the inner cover [A] (2 screws).
3. Slightly lift the front bottom plate and unhook the wire stoppers [B].
4. Remove the wire covers [C] (1 E-ring each).
5. Remove the bracket [D] (1 screw, 1 E-ring, 1 bushing).
6. Remove the gear [E].
7. Replace the bottom plate lift wire [F].



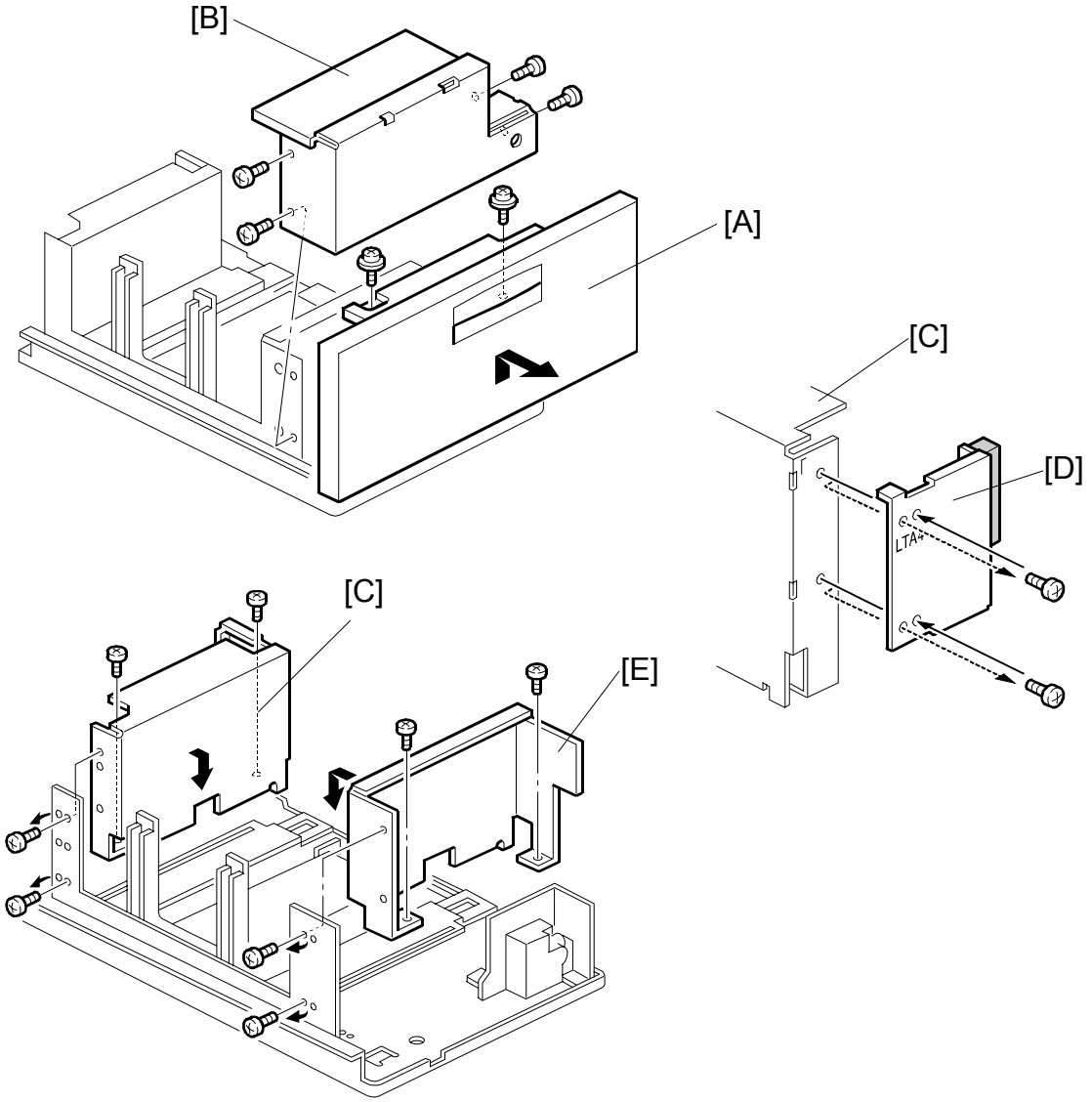
NOTE: When re-installing the bottom plate lift wire:
1) Set the positioning pin [A] in the hole [B] and set the projection [C] in the hole [D].
2) Position the wire as shown [E].
3) Do not cross the wires.

6.8.6 TANDEM LCT PAPER SIZE CHANGE

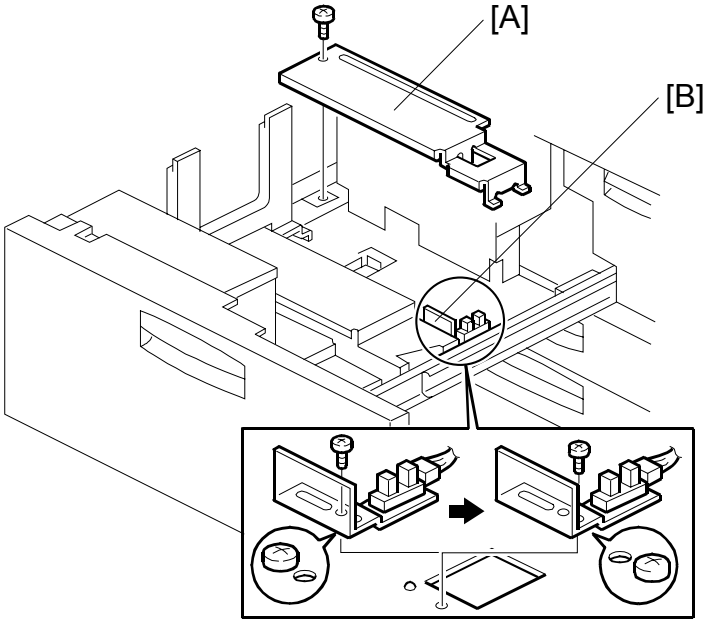
NOTE: At the factory, this tray is set up for A4 or LT sideways. Only A4 or LT sideways paper can be used for tandem feed.



1. Open the front cover.
2. Completely pull out the tandem feed tray [A] to separate right tandem tray [B] from the left tandem tray.
3. Remove the right tandem inner cover [C] (2 screws).
4. Re-position the side fences [D] (1 screw each).
   A4: Outer slot position
   LT: Inner slot position
5. Re-install the right tandem inner cover [C].

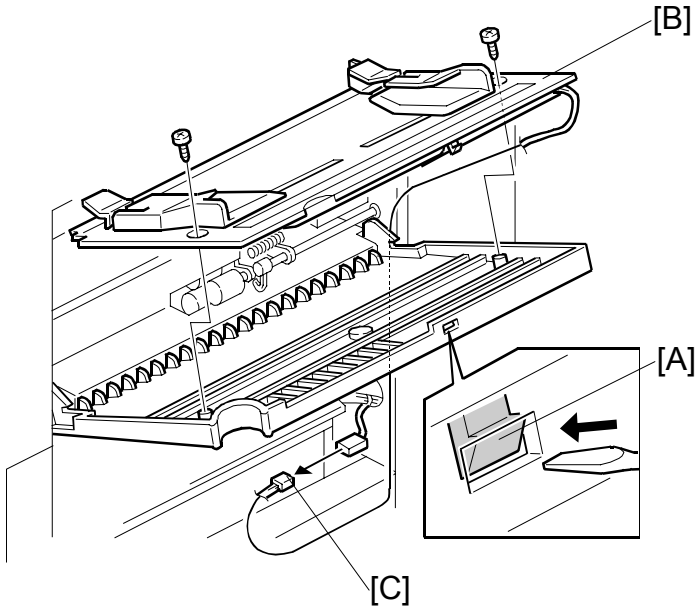


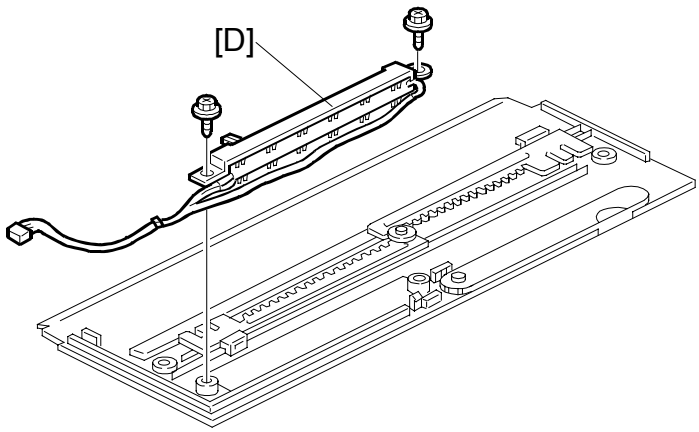
6. Remove the tray cover [A] (2 screws).
7. Remove the DC motor cover [B] (4 screws).
8. Remove the rear side fence [C] (4 screws) and re-position the rear cover [D] (2 screws).
9. Re-position the side fences [C] [E] (4 screws).
   A4: Outer slot position
   LT: Inner slot position
10. Re-install the DC motor cover and the tray cover.



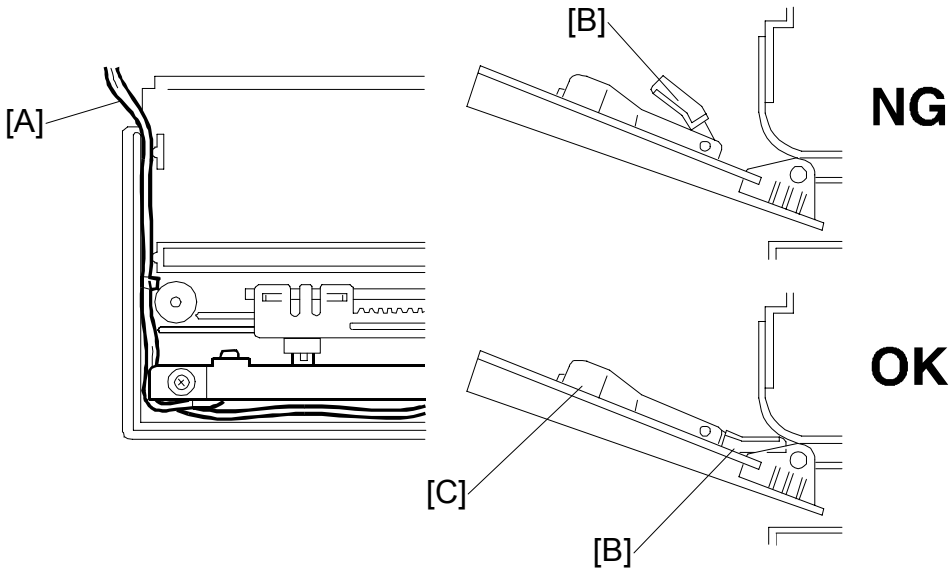
11. Remove the rear bottom plate [A] (1 screw).
12. Re-position the return position sensor bracket [B] (1 screw). To use the paper tray for A4 size, set the screw on the left hole as shown. (For LT size, the screw should be placed on the right.)
13. Reinstall the rear bottom plate.
14. Enter System Setting in User Tools, and select the paper size that you just set the fences up for.

6.8.7 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE BOARD REPLACEMENT



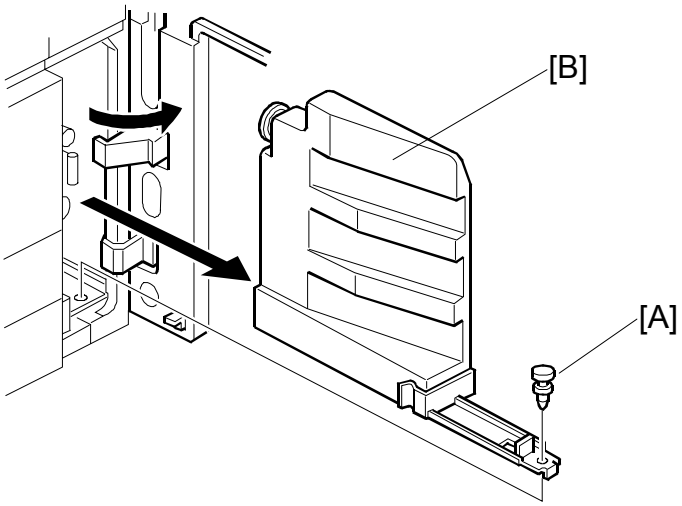


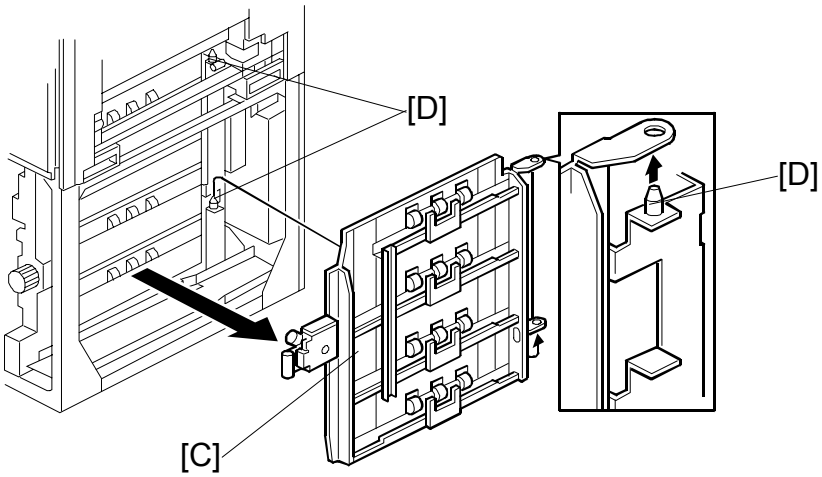
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the by-pass table and remove the feed unit cover. (Refer to Right Cover Removal.)
3. While pushing the hook [A] with a flat-head screwdriver as shown, remove the table assembly [B] (2 screws, 1 connector [C]).
4. Remove the by-pass paper size board [D] (2 screws).



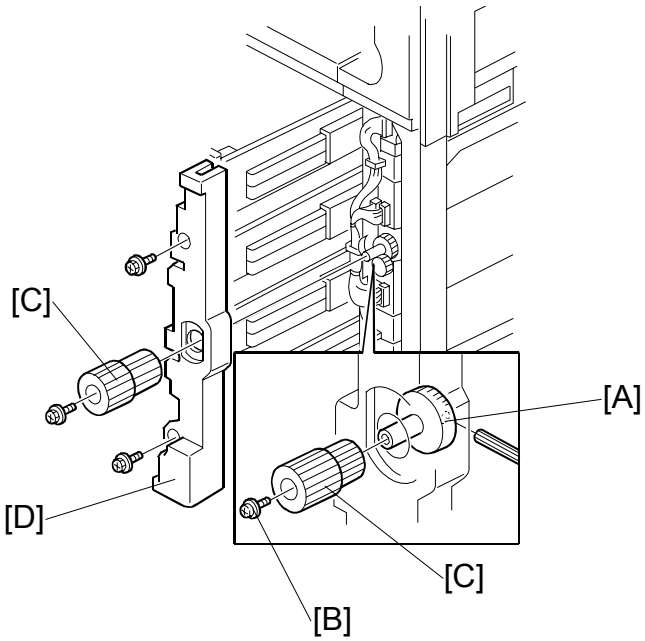
5. Re-install the by-pass paper size sensor, then reassemble the by-pass feed table.
   NOTE: When installing the table assembly, route the wires [A] correctly as shown.
   The paper guides [B] must be in the lower position as shown.
6. Perform the by-pass tray paper size correction (SP1-904) as follows.
   1) Press the 1904-1 key and place the side fence [C] at the minimum paper size position (width = 100 mm). Then press the Start key on the touch panel.
   2) Press the 1904-2 key and place the side fence [C] at the maximum paper size position (width = A3). Then press the Start key on the touch panel.

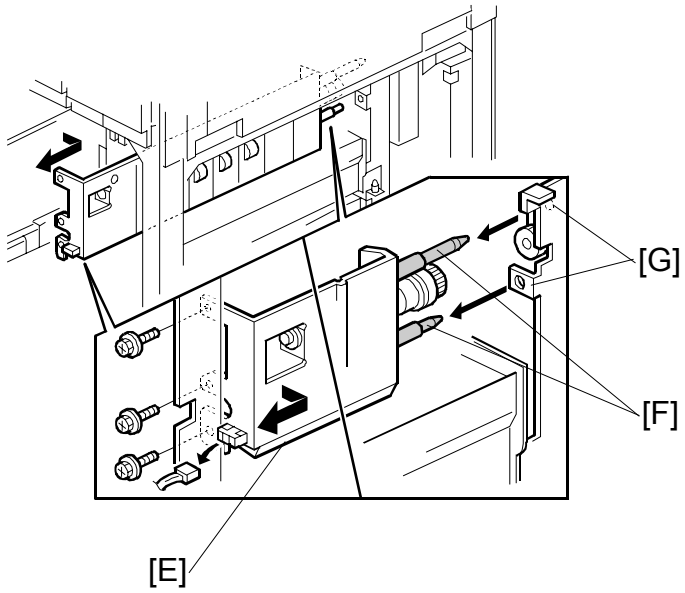
6.8.8 PAPER FEED CLUTCH/RELAY CLUTCH REMOVAL



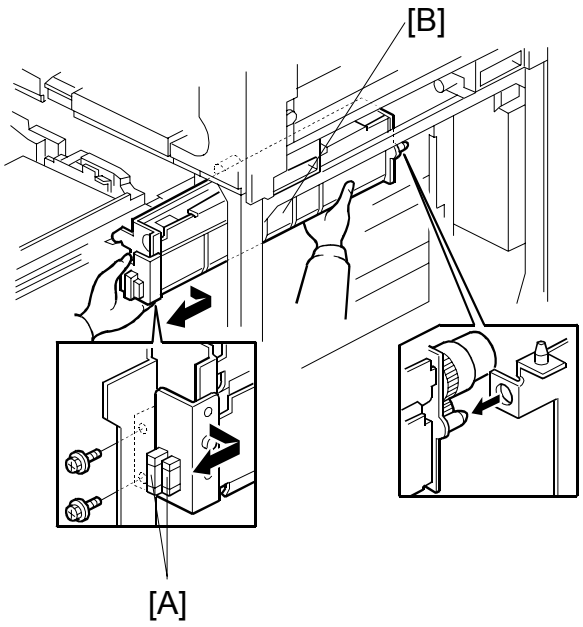


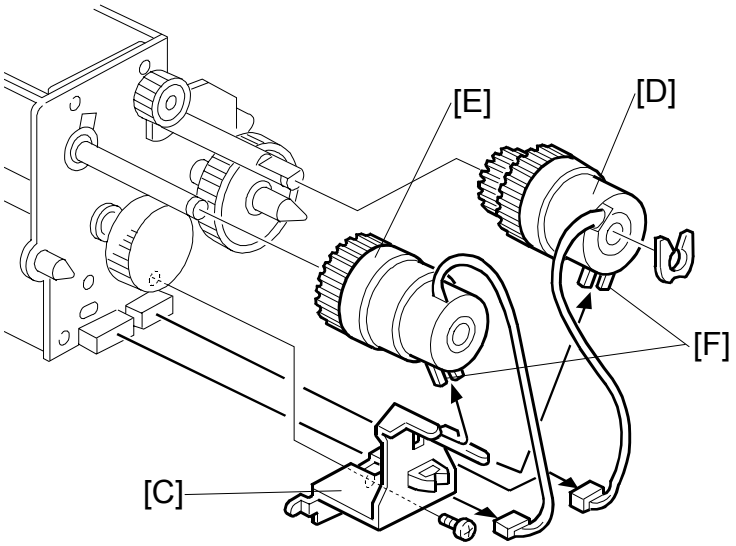
1. Turn off the main switch, then open the right front door and remove the push-lock [A].
2. Remove the toner collection bottle [B].
   NOTE: If the LCT is installed, remove it from the copier.
3. Remove the lower right cover. (Refer to Lower Right Cover Removal.)
4. Remove the vertical transport guide [C].
   NOTE: When reinstalling the guide, rest it on the upper and lower pins [D].





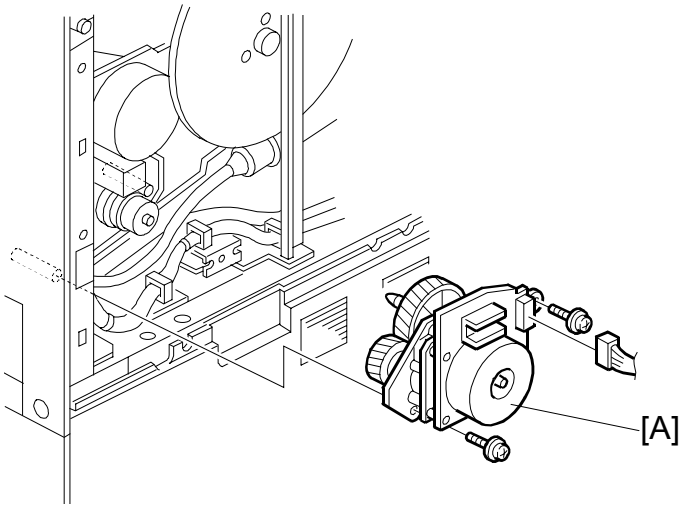
5. While holding the shaft [A] with an Allen key, remove the screw [B], then remove the knob [C].
6. Pull out all paper trays, then remove the paper tray unit inner cover [D] (2 screws).
7. Hold the inner vertical transport guide [E] and pull out it (3 screws, 1 connector).
   NOTE: When re-installing the inner vertical transport guide, make sure to set the pins [F] of the inner vertical guide into the holes [G] in the main frame.

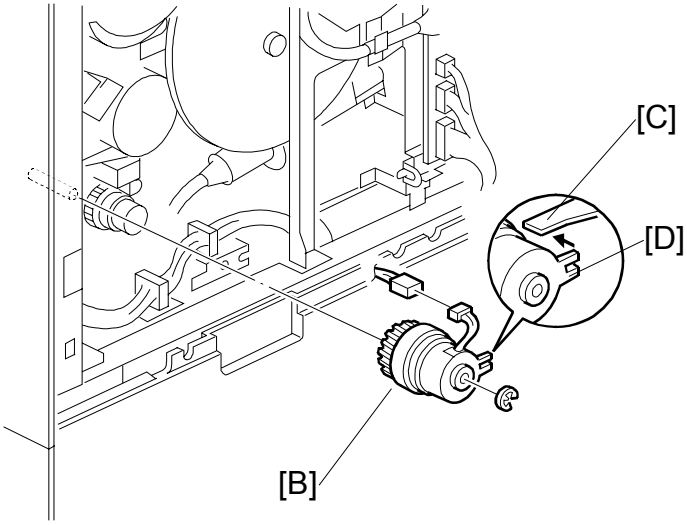




8. Fully draw out the paper tray.
9. Disconnect the connectors [A].
10. Grasp the tray feed unit [B] and pull it out (2 screws).
    NOTE: Before removing the 1st paper feed unit, remove the inner vertical transport guide. Otherwise the 1st paper feed unit may be damaged.
11. Remove the bracket [C] (1 screw).
12. Remove the paper feed clutch [D] (1 hook, 1 connector).
13. Remove the relay clutch [E] (1 connector).
    NOTE: When re-installing the clutches, put the stopper [F] of the clutch on the correct hook on the bracket.

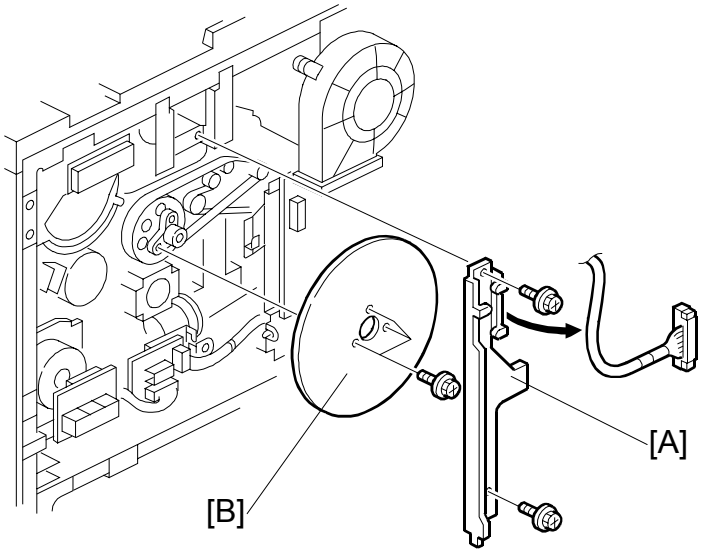
6.8.9 BY-PASS FEED MOTOR/CLUTCH REMOVAL

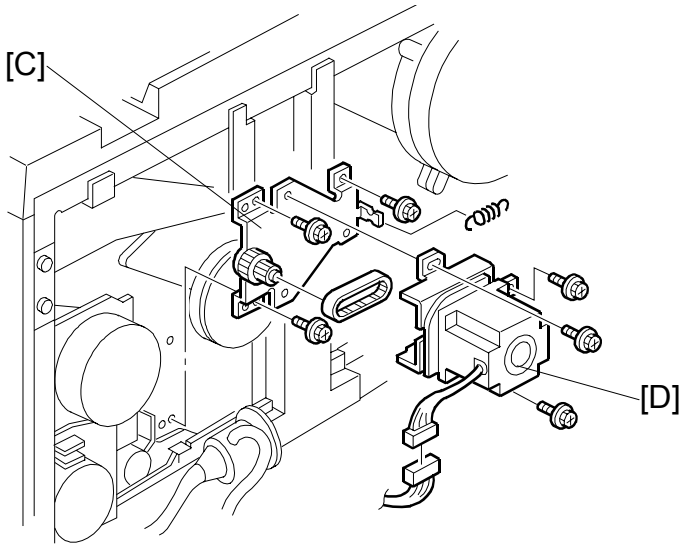




1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the upper rear cover. (Refer to Upper Rear Cover Removal.)
3. Remove the bracket of the CSS board and DRB board (2 screws).
4. Remove the by-pass feed motor [A] (2 screws, 1 connector).
5. Remove the by-pass feed clutch [B] (1 connector, 1 E-ring).
   NOTE: When re-installing the by-pass feed clutch, set the clutch pin [C] in the cutout [D] of the stopper.

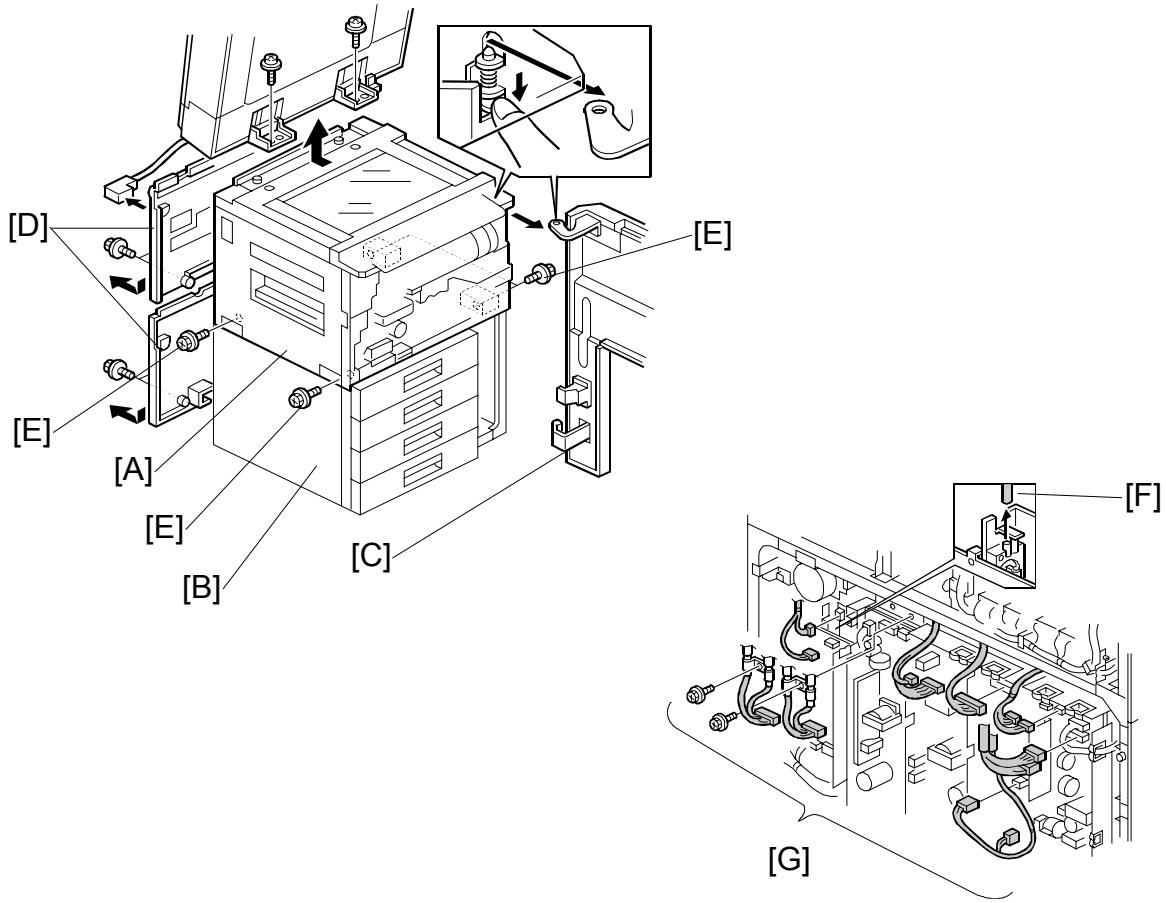
6.8.10 REGISTRATION MOTOR REMOVAL





1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the upper rear cover. (Refer to Cover Removal.)
3. Remove the bracket [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the fly wheel [B] (3 screws).
5. Remove the bracket [C] with the motor (3 screws, 1 connector).
6. Remove the registration motor [D] (3 screws, 1 timing belt, and 1 spring).

6.8.11 PAPER TRAY UNIT REMOVAL

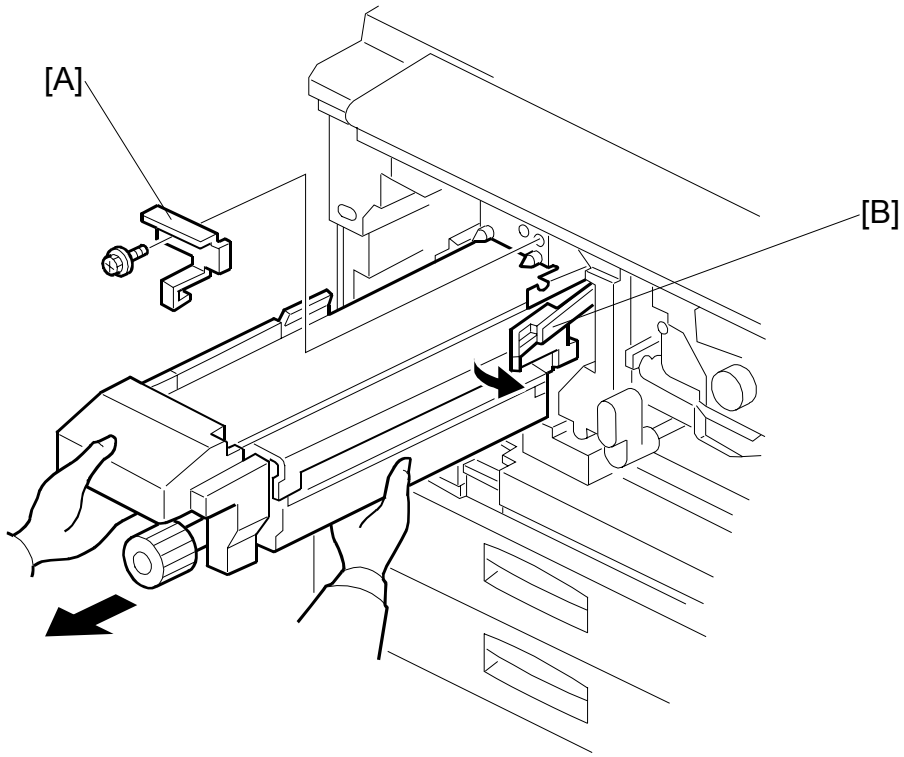


To facilitate transportation, the upper part of the copier (copier main frame) [A] and the lower part of the copier (paper tray unit) [B] can be separated as follows:

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the document feeder (2 screws, 1 connector)
3. Remove the front cover [C]. (Refer to Front Cover Removal.)
4. Remove the rear covers [D].
5. Remove the four screws [E].
6. Remove the air tube [F].
7. Disconnect the thirteen connectors [G] (2 screws).
8. Remove the copier main frame [A] from the paper tray unit [B].
   NOTE: When re-installing the copier main frame on the paper tray unit, do not pinch the cable between the copier main frame and the paper feed unit.

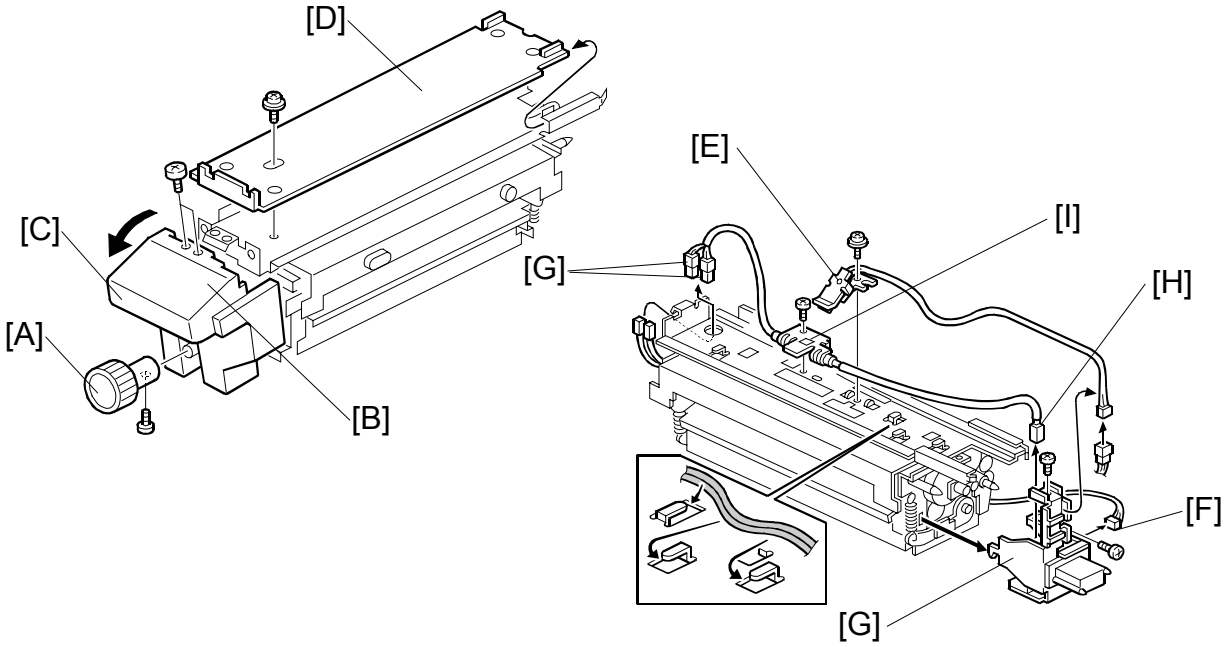
6.9 FUSING UNIT

6.9.1 FUSING UNIT REMOVAL



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Open the front door.
3. Remove the stopper [A] (1 screw).
4. While releasing the lever [B], pull out the fusing unit as shown.
   NOTE: Hold the bottom of the fusing unit as shown.

6.9.2 FUSING THERMISTOR AND FUSING THERMOFUSE REPLACEMENT



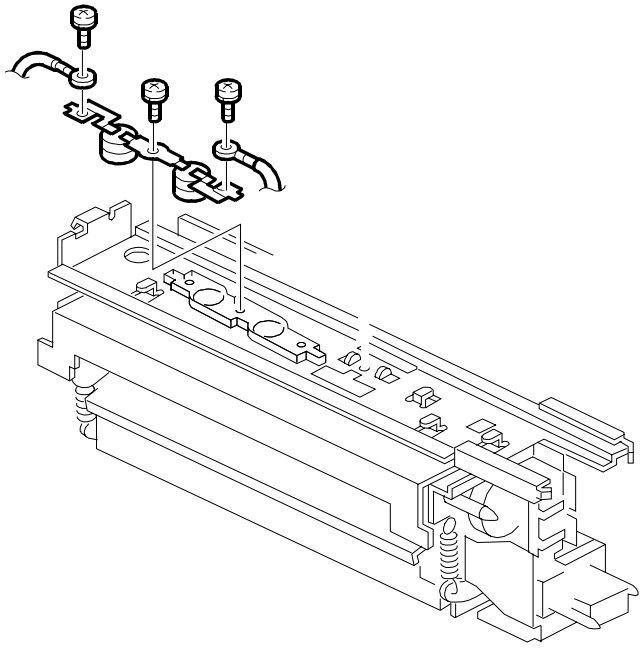
Fusing Thermistor Replacement

1. Remove the fusing unit. (Refer to Fusing Unit Removal.)
2. Remove the knob [A] (1 screw).
3. Remove the two screws that hold the fusing front cover [B].
4. Pull the lever [C], then lower the cover [B] to unhook the fusing unit.
5. Remove the fusing unit upper cover [D] (1 screw).
6. Replace the thermistor [E] (1 screw, 1 connector).
   NOTE: When re-assembling the fusing unit, secure the harness in the clamps correctly. Apply a little silicone oil to the point where the thermistor contacts the hot roller.

Fusing Thermofuse Replacement (for A292/A293 only)

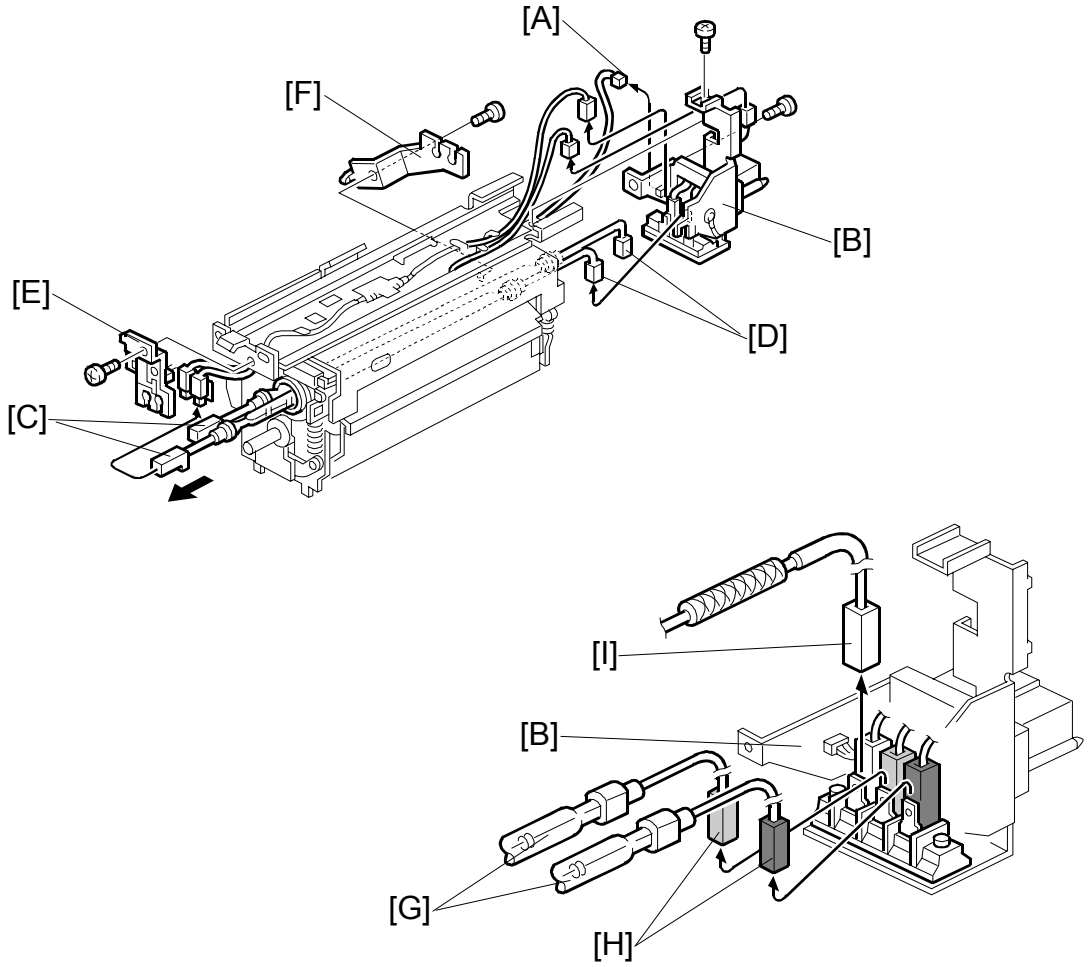
1. Remove the fusing unit upper cover [D]. (Refer to Fusing Thermistor Replacement.)
2. Disconnect the connector [F].
3. Remove the terminal bracket [G] (2 screws).
4. Disconnect the three connectors [H].
5. Replace the fusing thermofuse [I] (1 screw).
   NOTE: When re-assembling the fusing unit, secure the harness in the clamps correctly.

Fusing Thermostat Replacement (for B098 only)



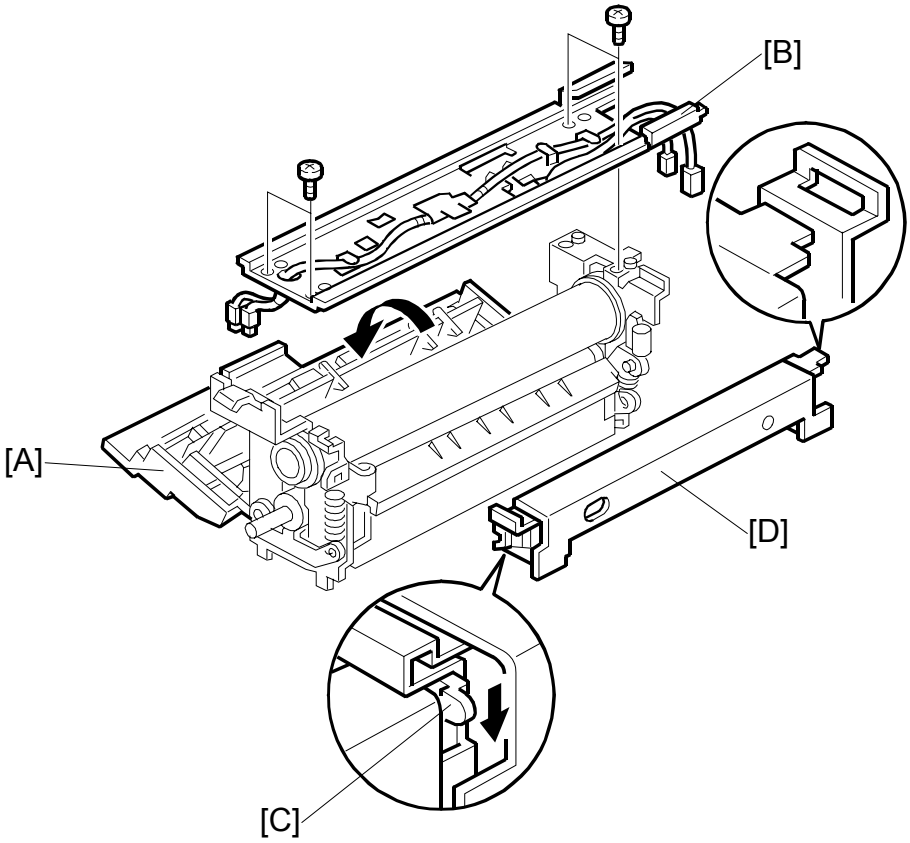
1. Remove the fusing unit upper cover. (Refer to Fusing Thermistor Replacement.)
2. Replace the fusing thermostat [A] (3screws).
   NOTE: When re-assembling the fusing unit, secure the harness in the clamps correctly

6.9.3 FUSING LAMP REPLACEMENT

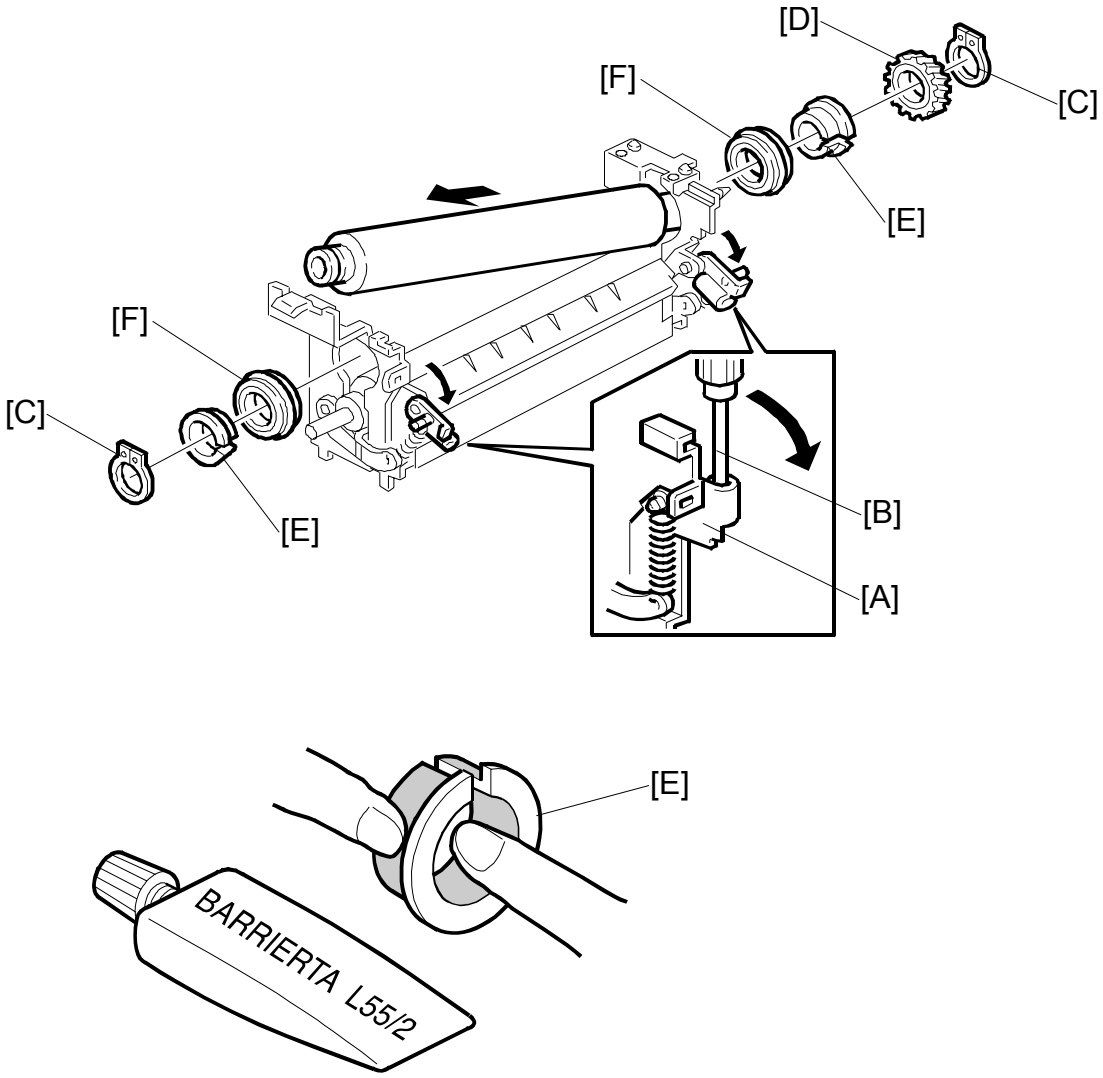


1. Remove the fusing unit. (Refer to Fusing Unit Removal.)
2. Disconnect the connector [A].
3. Remove the terminal bracket [B] (2 screws).
4. Disconnect the front connectors [C] and the rear connectors [D].
5. Remove the front fusing lamp holder [E] (1 screw) and the rear fusing lamp holder [F] (1 screw).
6. Replace the fusing lamps [G].
   NOTE: At the rear terminal, make sure to connect the connectors [H] (Blue: 120V Machine, Green: 230V Machine) and white connector (from the thermofuse) [I] in the correct positions on the terminal.

6.9.4 HOT ROLLER REPLACEMENT

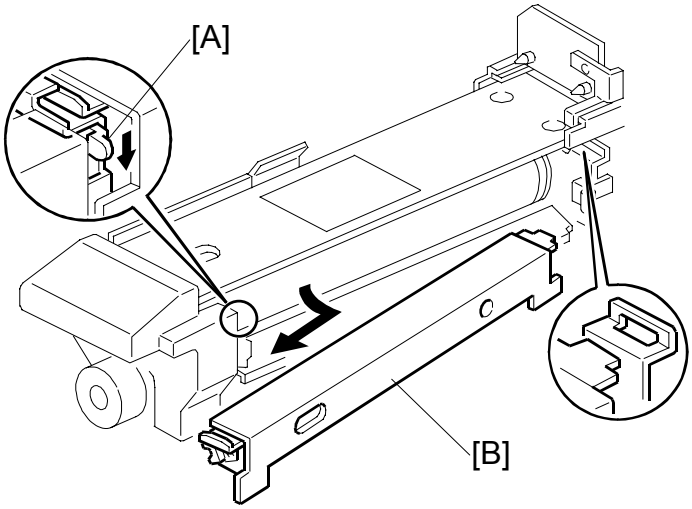


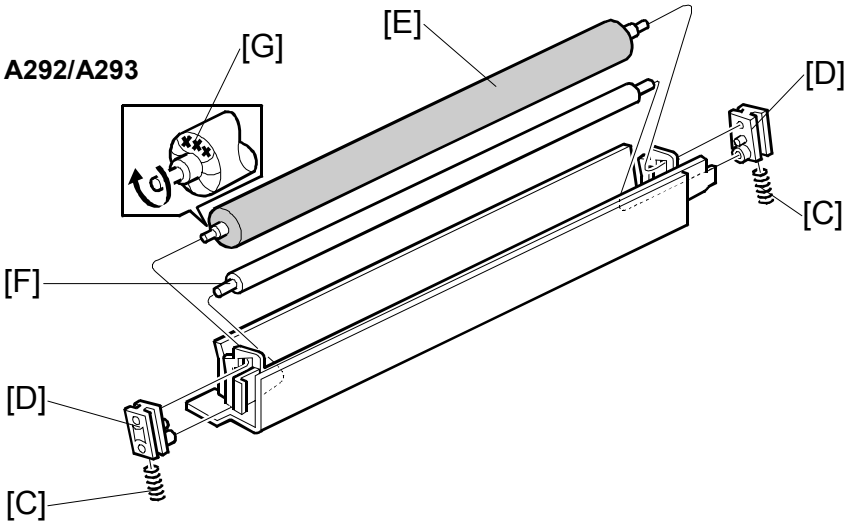
1. Remove the fusing lamps. (Refer to Fusing Lamp Replacement.)
2. Lower the fusing exit assembly [A].
3. Remove the upper stay [B] (4 screws).
4. Lower the lever [C] and remove the oil supply unit [D].



5. Lower the pressure spring holders [A] at both sides using a screwdriver [B] as a lever.
6. Remove the front and rear C-rings [C], gear [D], isolating bushings [E], and bearings [F].
   NOTE: When installing a new hot roller:
   1) Lubricate the inner and outer surfaces of the isolating bushings [E] with BARRIERTA L55/2 grease.
   2) Lubricate the fusing drive gears and their shafts with G501grease.
   3) Peel off 3 cm (1 inch) from both ends of the protective sheet, and install the new hot roller.
      Before applying fusing pressure, remove the rest of the protective sheet.

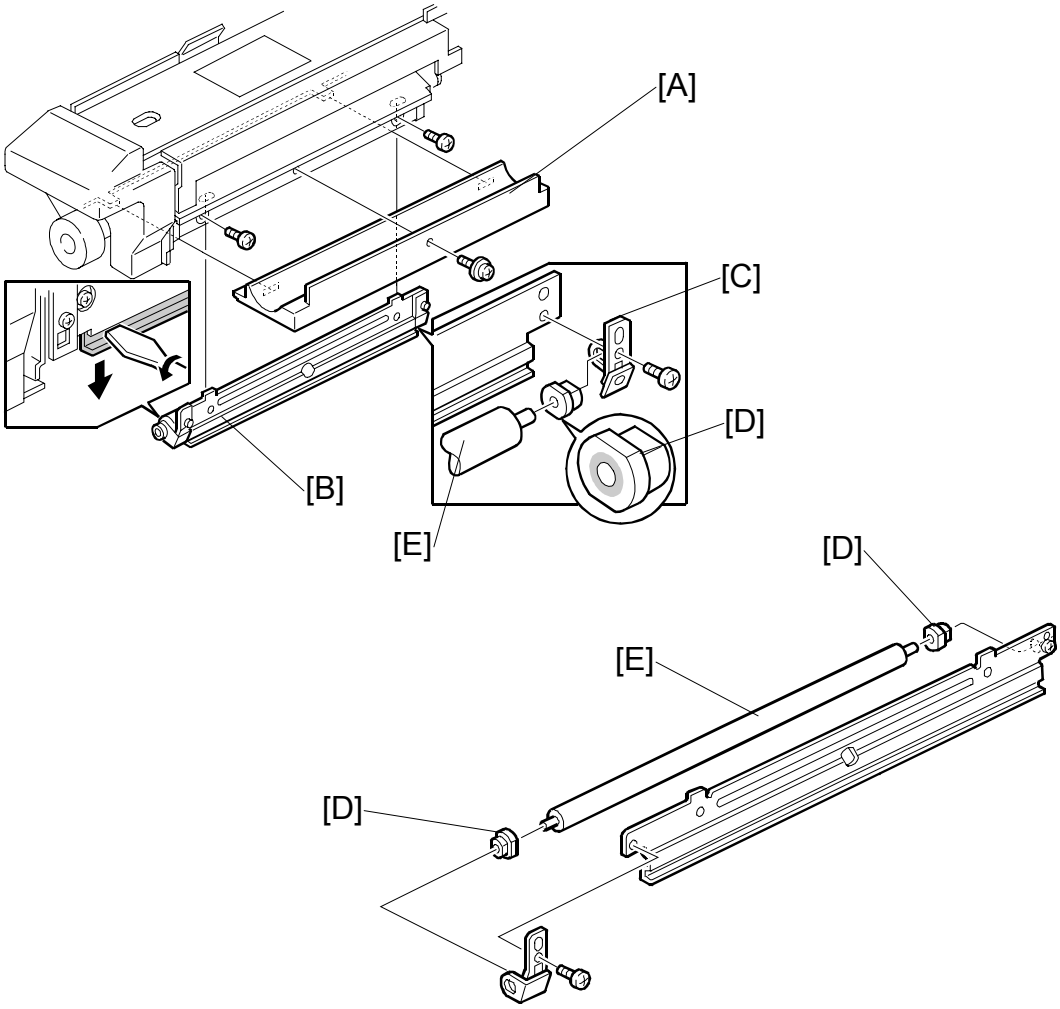
6.9.5 OIL SUPPLY/CLEANING ROLLER REPLACEMENT





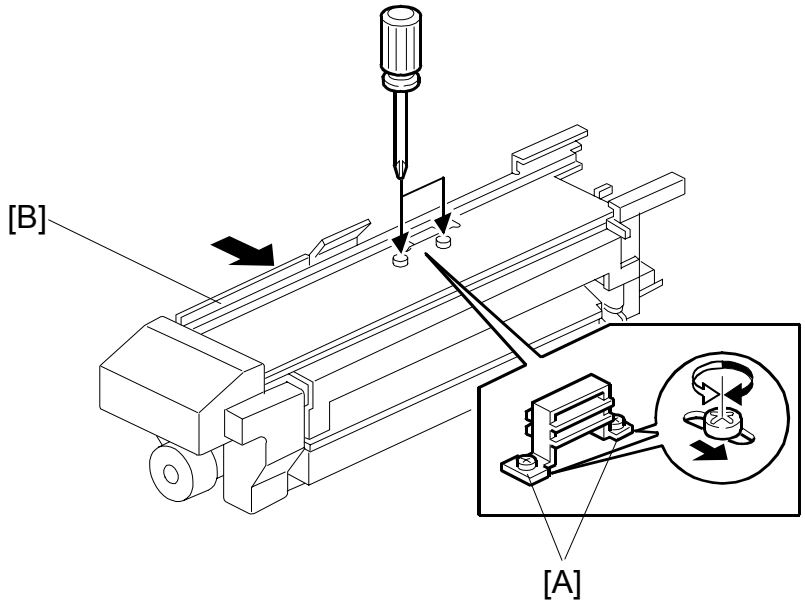
1. Pull out the fusing unit.
2. While lowering the lever [A], remove the oil supply unit [B].
3. Remove the springs [C].
4. Remove the bushings [D].
5. Remove the oil supply roller [E], and the cleaning roller [F].
6. Install the new cleaning roller and oil supply roller. Then reassemble the unit.
   NOTE: The lot number [G] of the oil supply roller should be at the front side of the machine.

6.9.6 PRESSURE ROLLER CLEANING ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Pull out the fusing unit.
2. Remove the bottom plate [A] (1 screw).
3. Remove the cleaning roller unit [B] (2 screws).
4. Remove the brackets [C] (1 screw each).
5. Remove the bushings [D].
6. Replace the cleaning roller [E].
7. Reassemble the unit.

6.9.7 MAGNET POSITION ADJUSTMENT

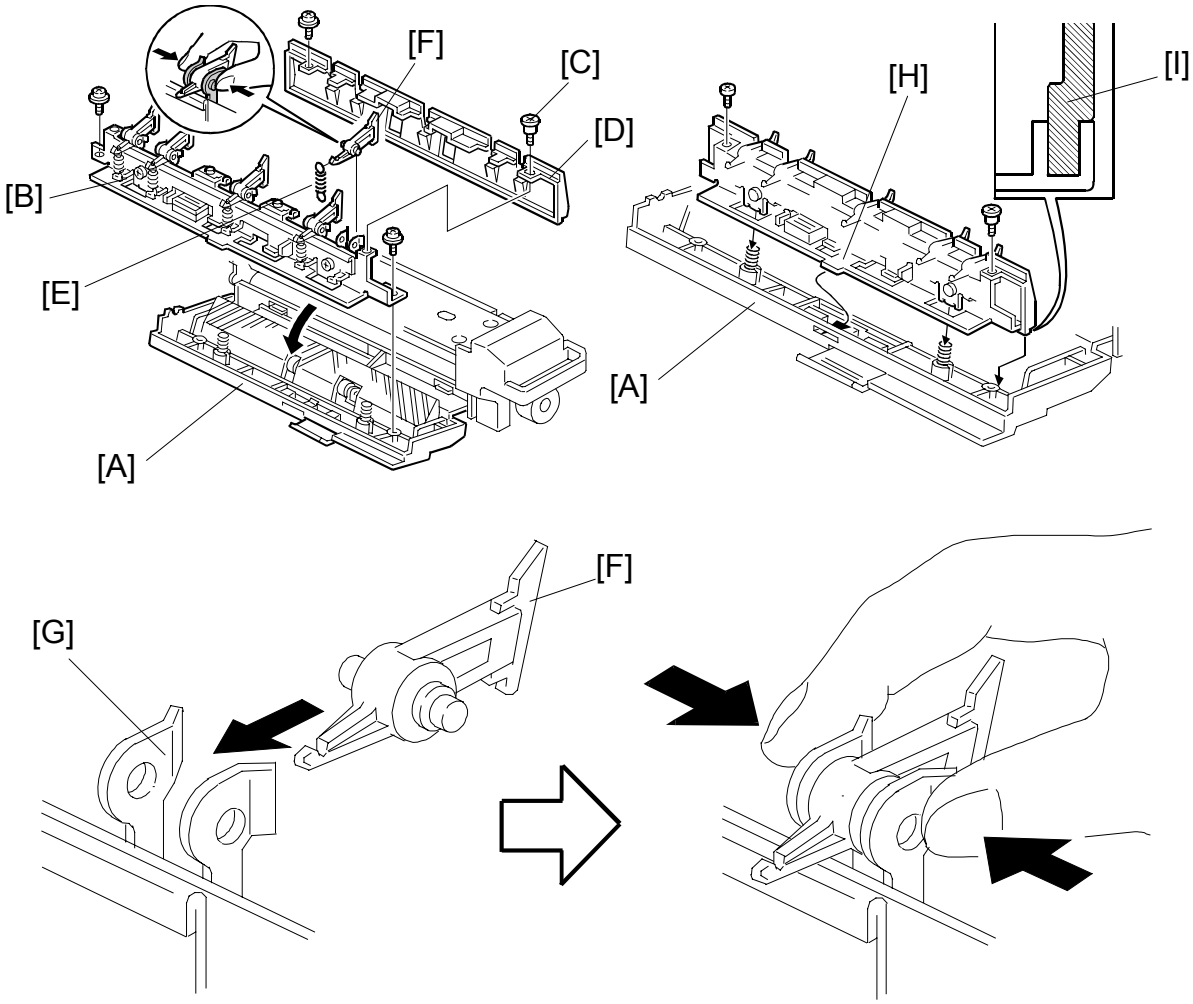


NOTE: This is to ensure that the strippers contact the hot roller.

3. Remove the fusing unit. (Refer to Fusing Unit Removal.)
4. Remove the fusing upper cover (1 screw). (Refer to Fusing Thermistor Replacement.)
5. Loosen the 2 screws [A].
6. Tighten the 2 screws [A] while pushing the exit cover [B] in the arrow direction.
   NOTE: Do not push the exit cover too firmly because the magnetic power may weaken.
7. Check that the exit cover closes easily by opening and closing it several times.

6.9.8 HOT ROLLER STRIPPER PAWL REPLACEMENT

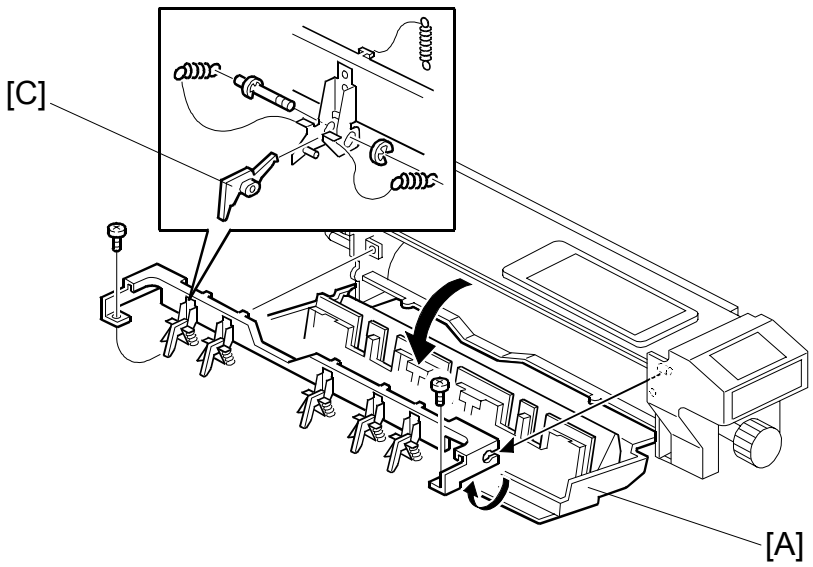
For A292/A293



1. Turn off the main switch and pull out the fusing unit.
2. Lower the fusing exit assembly [A].
3. Remove the fusing exit guide [B] (2 screws).
4. Remove the two screws (the front screw [C] is a stepped screw) that hold the upper exit guide [D].
5. Unhook the spring [E] then replace the pawls [F].

   NOTE: 1) After installing the new pawls, check that they are correctly held by the holders [G] as shown. If not, remove the pawl and bend the sides of the holder inward. Apply Barrierta L55/2 grease to the inner surfaces of the holder.
   2) when re-attaching the upper exit guide, put the hook [H] in the opening in the fusing exit assembly and fit the rib [I] in the rail.

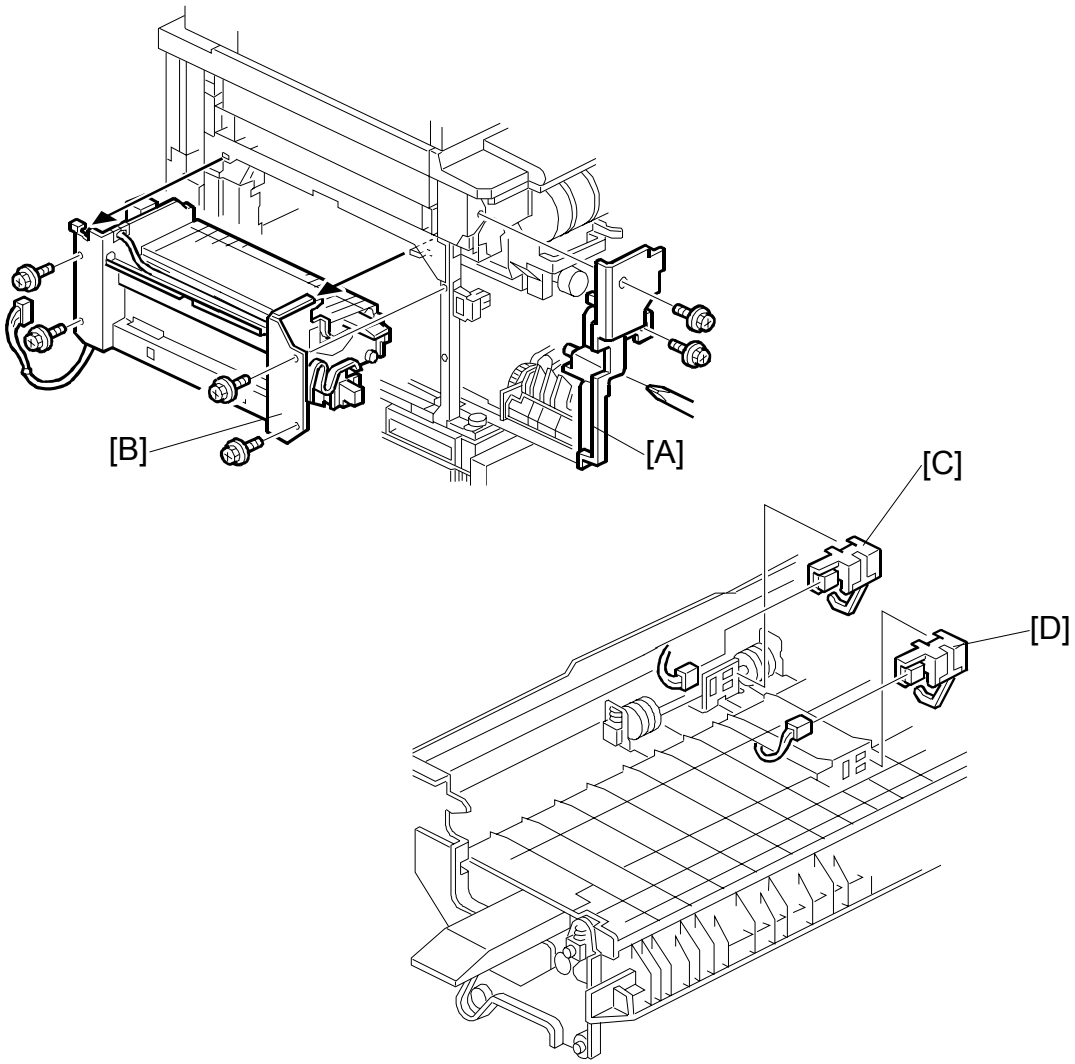
For B098



1. Remove the fusing unit. (Refer to Fusing Unit Removal.)
2. Lower the fusing exit assembly [A].
3. Gently lift the hot roller stripper unit [B] (as shown by the arrow) and remove (2 screws).
4. Replace the hot roller strippers [C] (1 E-ring, 3 springs).

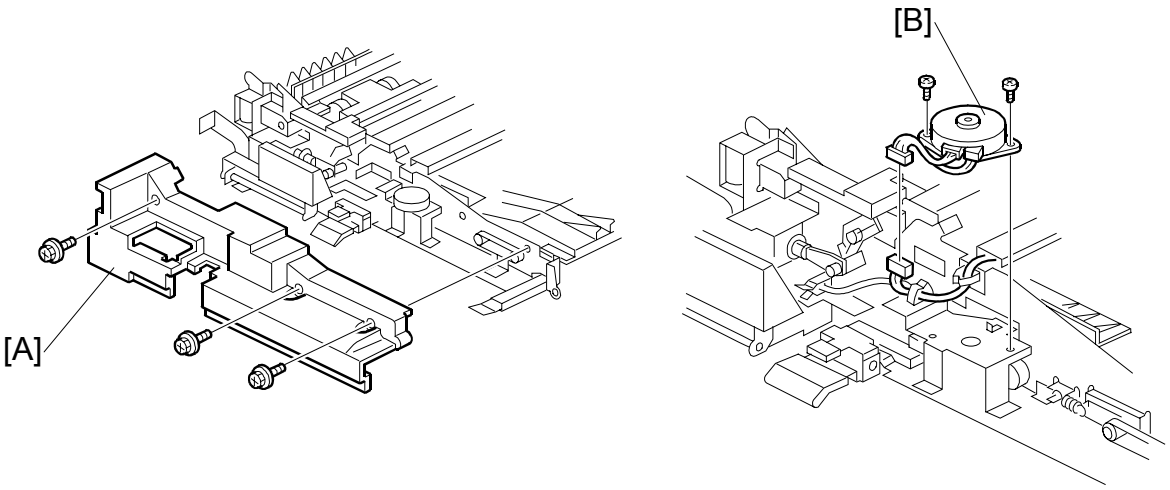
6.10 PAPER EXIT/DUPLEX UNIT

6.10.1 1ST AND 2ND EXIT SENSOR



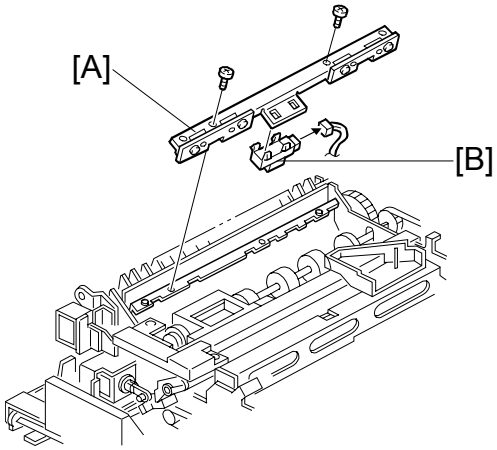
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the duplex unit.
3. Remove the left cover (see Exterior).
4. Remove the left inner cover [A] (2 screws).
5. Remove the paper exit unit [B] (4 screws, 1 connector).
6. Remove the 1st exit sensor [C] (1 connector).
7. Remove the 2nd exit sensor [D] (1 connector).

6.10.2 JOGGER MOTOR



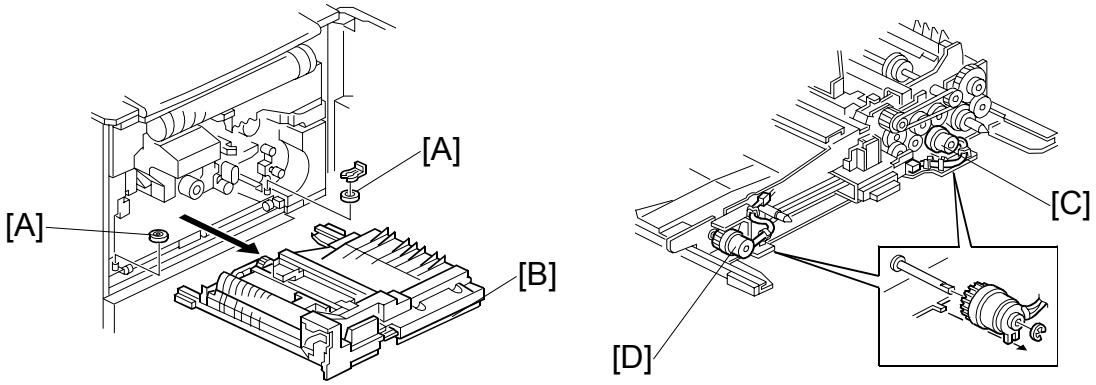
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the duplex unit.
3. Remove the duplex front cover [A] (3 screws).
4. Remove the jogger motor [B] (2 screws, 1 connector).

6.10.3 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR



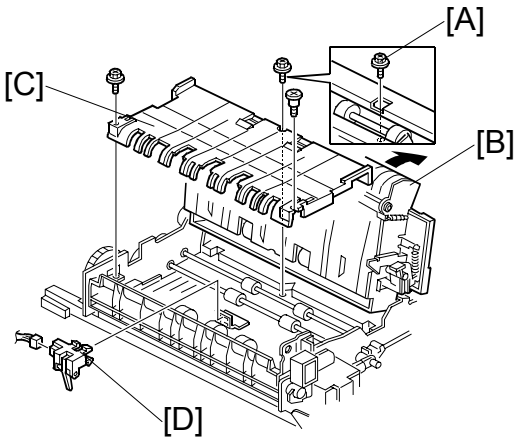
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the duplex unit.
3. Remove the sensor bracket [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the duplex entrance sensor [B] (1 connector).

6.10.4 DUPLEX TRANSPORT/DUPLEX FEED CLUTCHES



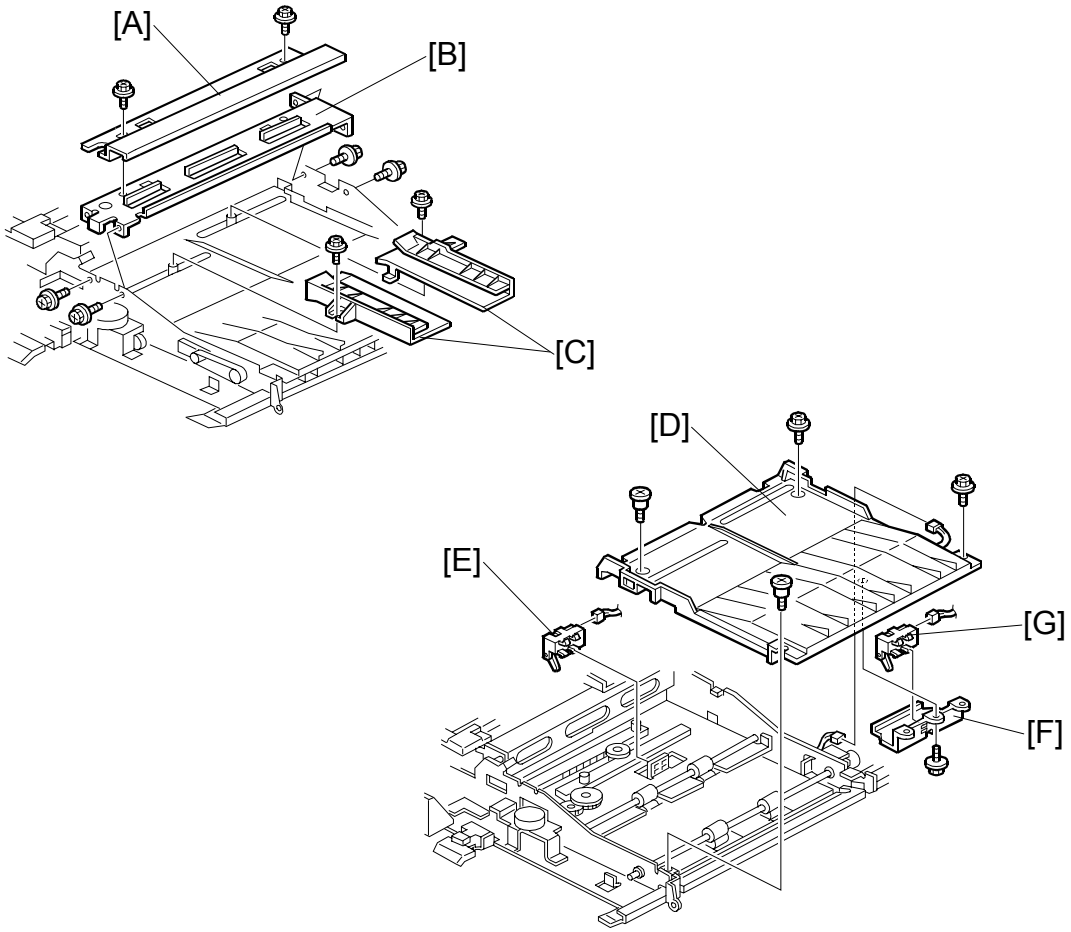
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the duplex unit.
3. Remove the two pulleys [A] (1 snap ring each).
4. Remove the duplex unit [B].
5. Remove the duplex transport clutch [C] (1 E-ring).
6. Remove the duplex feed clutch [D] (1 E-ring).

6.10.5 DUPLEX TRANSPORT SENSOR 1



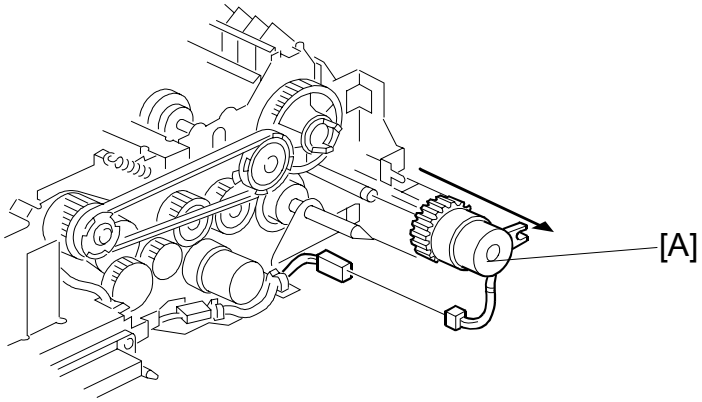
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out the duplex unit.
3. Remove the screw [A].
4. Open the inverter roller unit [B] (pull the jam removal lever E4).
5. Remove the guide [C] (2 screws).
6. Remove duplex transport sensor 1 [D] (1 connector).

6.10.6 DUPLEX TRANSPORT SENSORS 2 & 3



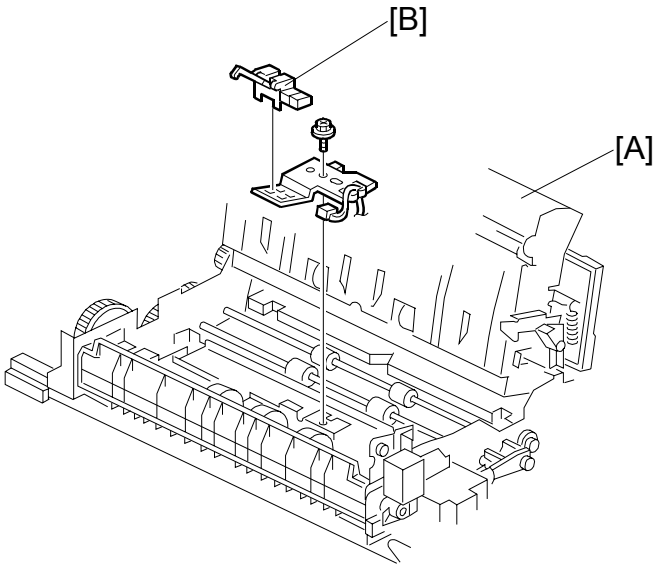
1. Open the front door.
2. Pull out and remove the duplex unit (see Duplex Transport/Duplex Feed Clutch Removal).
3. Remove the duplex front cover (see Jogger Motor Removal).
4. Remove the cover bracket [A] (2 screws).
5. Remove the center bracket [B] (4 screws, 2 connectors).
6. Remove the jogger fences [C] (1 screw each).
7. Remove the upper duplex cover [D] (4 screws, 1 connector).
8. Remove duplex transport sensor 2 [E] (1 connector).
9. Remove the duplex transport sensor bracket [F] (1 screw).
10. Remove duplex transport sensor 3 [G] (1 connector).

6.10.7 INVERTER EXIT CLUTCH



1. Remove the duplex unit.
2. Remove the inverter exit clutch [A] (1 connector).

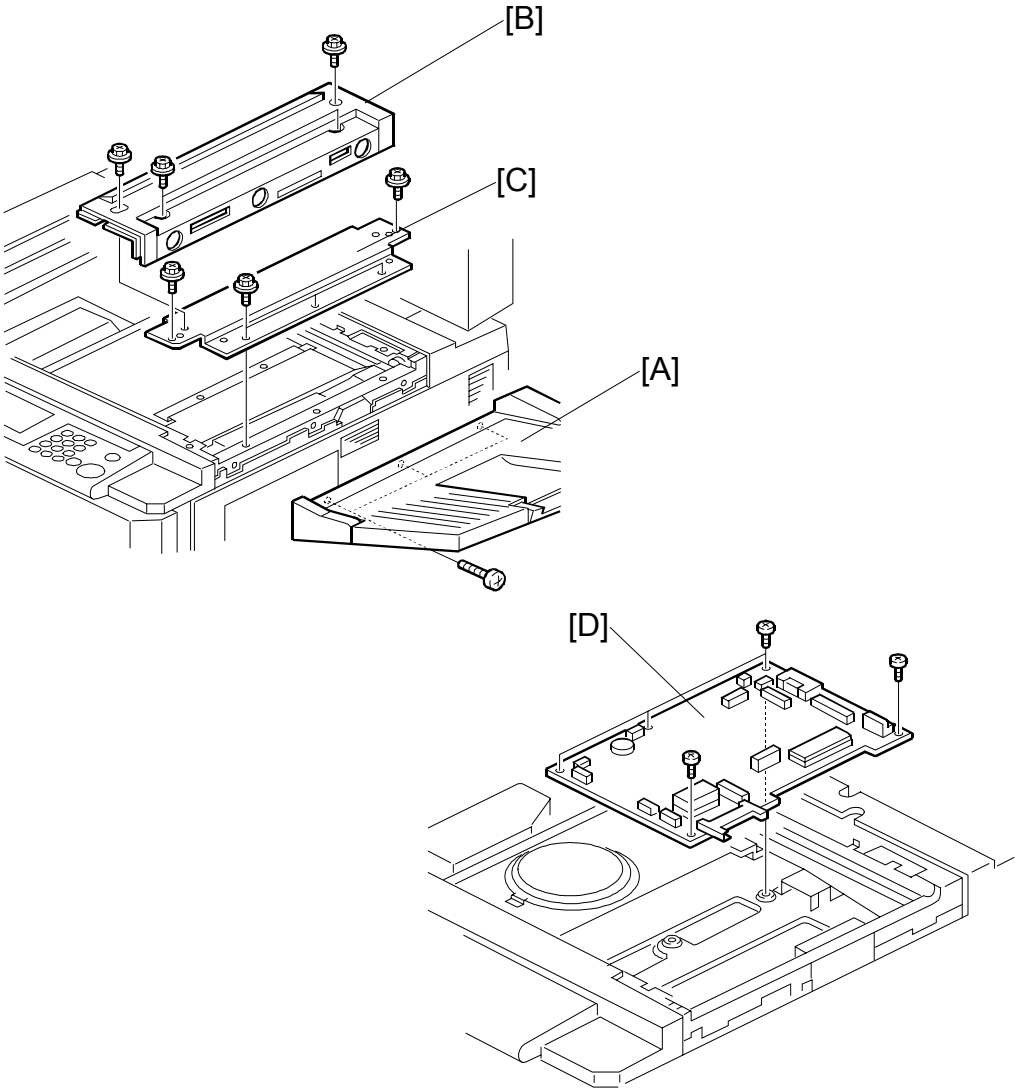
6.10.8 DUPLEX INVERTER SENSOR



1. Open the front door and pull out the duplex unit.
2. Open the “E4” part [A].
3. Remove the paper guide plate (2 screws, 1 shoulder screw).
4. Remove the duplex inverter sensor [B] (1 bracket, 1 screw, 1 connector).

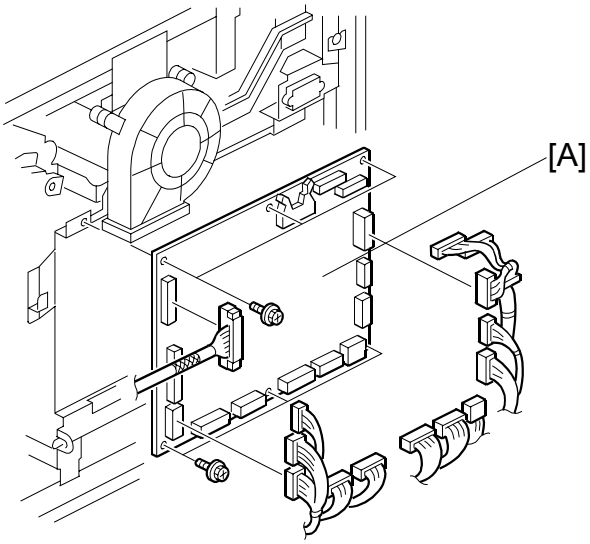
6.11 BOARDS AND OTHER ITEMS

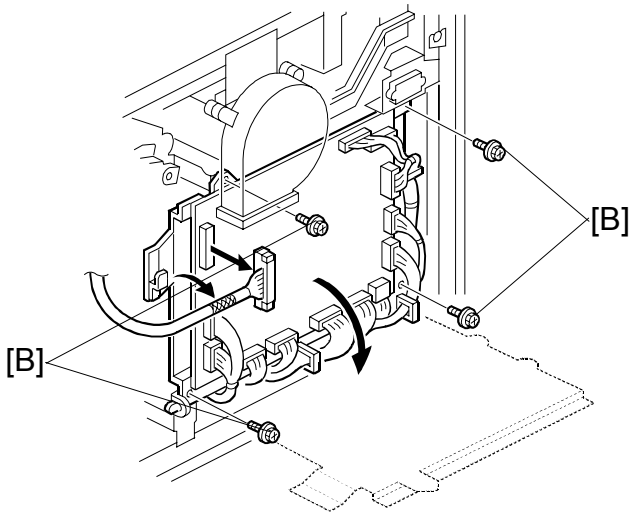
6.11.1 BICU BOARD



1. Remove the lens block assembly. (Refer to Lens Block Removal.)
2. Remove the original exit tray [A] (3 screws).
3. Remove the upper right cover [B] (4 screws).
4. Remove the right stay [C] (6 screws).
5. Remove the BICU board [D] (7 screws, all connectors).
6. Remove the NV-RAM from the old BICU board and install it on the new board.

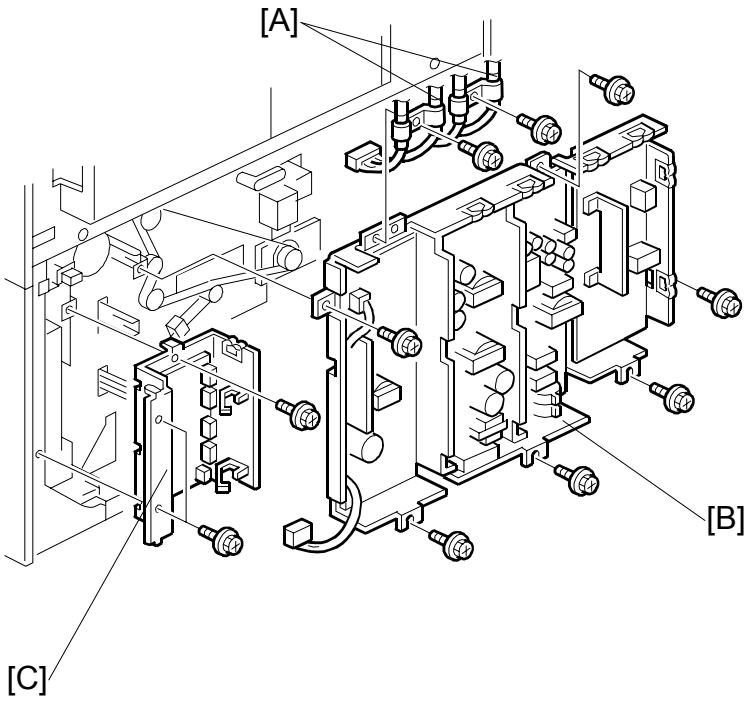
6.11.2 I/O BOARD





1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the upper rear cover (Refer to Upper Rear Cover Removal.)
3. Disconnect all connectors from the I/O Board [A].
4. Remove the I/O board [A] (6 screws).
   NOTE: If the screws [B] of the I/O board bracket are removed, the I/O board can be swung out.

6.11.3 PSU



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the upper and lower rear cover. (Refer to Upper and Lower Rear Cover Removal.)
3. Remove the harness clamps [A] (2 screws).
4. Remove the PSU [B] (6 screws, all connectors).

6.11.4 PAPER FEED CONTROL BOARD (PFC)

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the lower rear cover. (Refer to Lower Rear Cover Removal.)
3. Remove the Paper Feed Control Board [C] (3 screws, all connectors).

6.12 COPY IMAGE ADJUSTMENTS: PRINTING/SCANNING

NOTE: 1) You need to perform these adjustment(s) after replacing any of the following parts:
- Scanner Wires
- Lens Block
- Scanner Motor
- Polygon Mirror Motor
- Paper Side Fences
- Memory All Clear

2) For more details about accessing SP modes, refer to section 4.

6.12.1 PRINTING

NOTE: 1) Make sure the paper is installed correctly in each paper tray before you start these adjustments.
2) Use the Trimming Area Pattern (SP2-902-3, No. 10) to print the test pattern for the following procedures.
3) Set SP 2-902-3 to 0 again after completing these printing adjustments.

Registration - Leading Edge

1. Check the leading edge registration using the Trimming Area Pattern, and adjust it using SP1-001 if necessary. The specification is: 3 ± 2 mm.

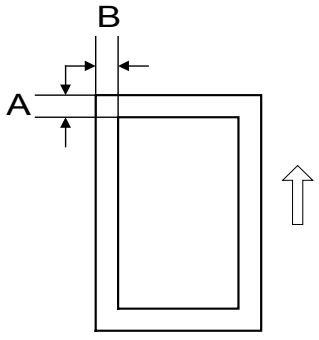
Registration – Side-to-Side

Do the parallel image adjustment after the side-to-side registration adjustment.

Using SP Mode

1. Check the side-to-side registration for each paper feed station using the Trimming Area Pattern, and adjust them using the following SP modes if necessary.

	SP mode	Specification
Tray 1	SP1-002-1	2 ± 1.5 mm
Tray 2	SP1-002-2	
Tray 3	SP1-002-3	
Duplex Tray	SP1-002-5	
By-pass Tray	SP1-002-6	
LCT	SP1-002-7	

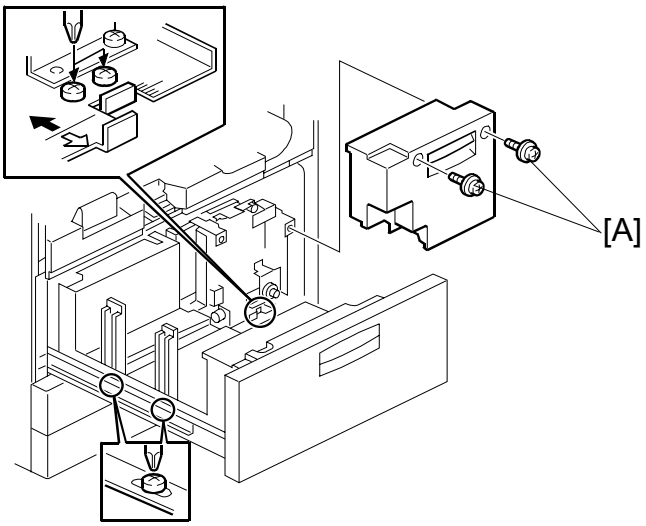


A: Leading Edge Registration
B: Side-to-side Registration

Mechanical Adjustment

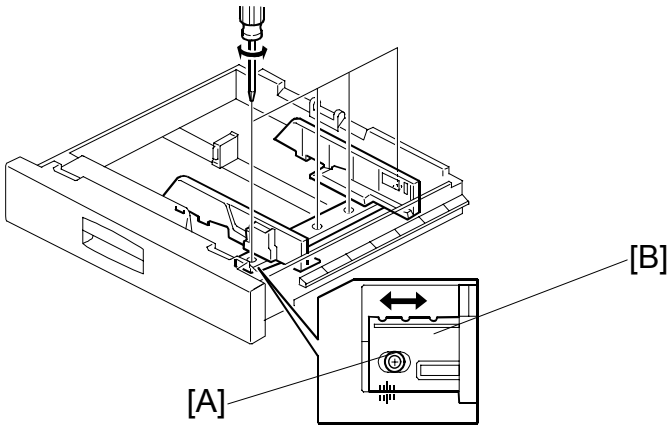
NOTE: This adjustment is especially necessary if the punched hole position varies between trays.

Tray 1



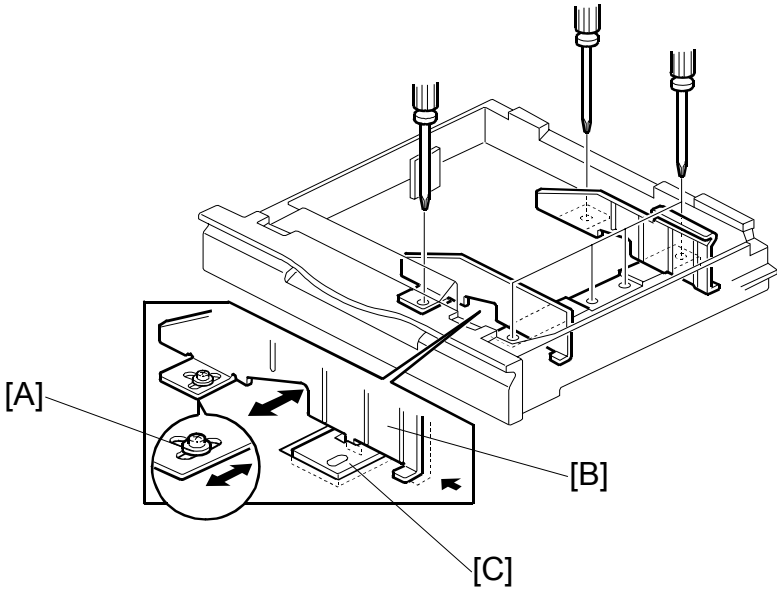
1. Loosen the screws [A].
2. Reposition the tray and tighten the screws [A].

Tray 2



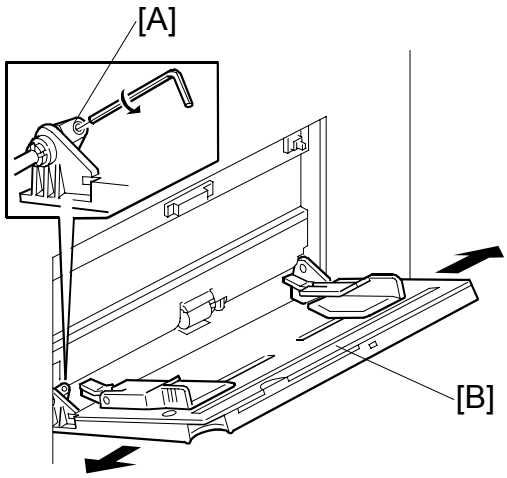
1. Loosen the screw [A].
2. Reposition the positioning plate [B] and tighten the screw [A].

Tray 3



1. Loosen the 6 screws [A].
2. Reposition the side fences [B] and support plate [C].
3. Tighten the 6 screws.

By-pass Tray



1. Loosen the screw [A].
2. Reposition the tray [B] and tighten the screw [A].

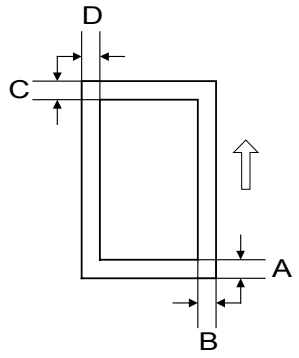
⇒ *Blank Margin*

NOTE: If the leading edge/side-to-side registration can not be adjusted within the specifications, adjust the leading/left side edge blank margin.

1. Check the trailing edge and right side edge blank margins using the Trimming Area Pattern, and adjust them using the following SP modes if necessary.

	SP mode	Specification
Trailing edge	SP2-101-2	More than 1.0 mm
Right edge	SP2-101-4	More than 0.5 mm
Leading edge	SP2-101-1	3 ± 2 mm
Left edge	SP2-101-3	2 ± 1.5 mm

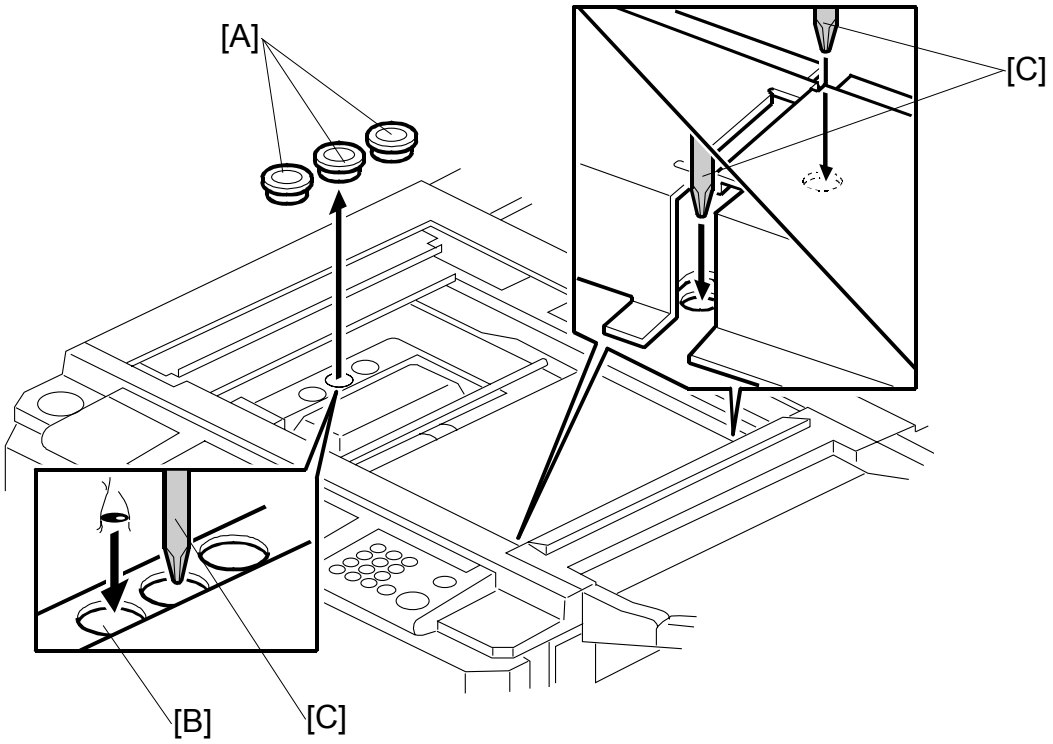
A: Trailing Edge Blank Margin
B: Right Edge Blank Margin
C: Leading Edge Blank Margin
D: Left Edge Blank Margin



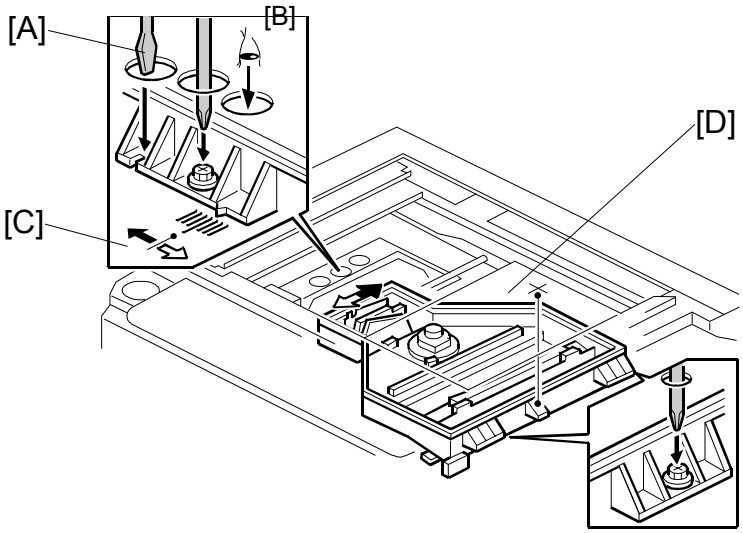
⟹ 6.12.2 PARALLELOGRAM IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

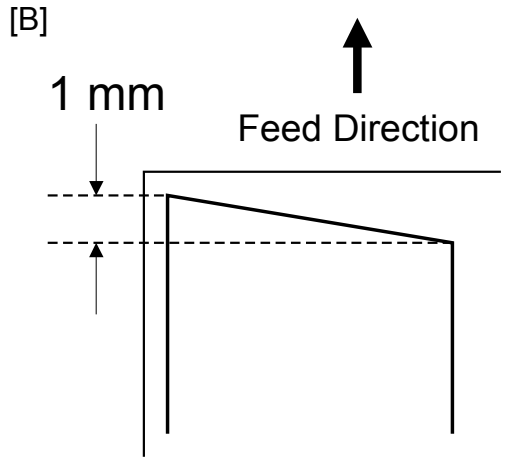
Do the following procedure if a parallelogram type image is printed while using a trimming area pattern to adjust the printing registration or the printing margin.

NOTE: 1) The following procedure should be done after adjusting the side-to-side registration for each paper tray.
2) This adjustment is only effective for a parallelogram image caused by the printer. It should not be applied if the skew is caused by the scanner.



1. Check whether a parallelogram image appears as shown on the next page when printing a trimming area pattern (SP2-902-3, No. 10). If it appears, do the following.
2. Remove the exposure glass (see Replacement and Adjustment – Exposure Glass Removal).
3. Remove the three caps [A].
4. Make a note of the position of the laser unit using the scale through the hole [B].
5. Loosen the three screws [C] that hold the laser unit.





6. Adjust the laser unit position using a flat screwdriver [A] as shown.
   If the right side of the trimming area pattern is down by about 1 mm as shown [B], the laser unit should be rotated about one tick mark in the direction of the black arrow as shown [C]. If the opposite side is down, adjust in the opposite direction.
   NOTE: The laser unit rotates around the point [D].
7. Tighten the three screws to secure the laser unit.
8. Replace the caps and exposure glass.
9. Print the trimming area pattern to check the image. If it is still skewed, repeat steps 2 to 8.

⇒ 6.12.3 SCANNING

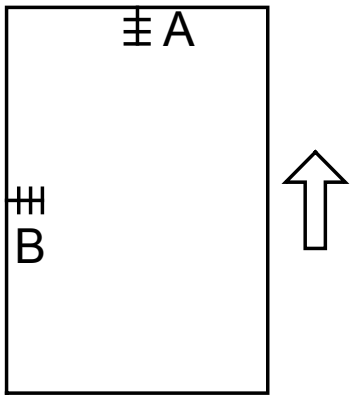
NOTE: 1) Before doing the following scanner adjustments, check the printing registration/side-to-side adjustment and the blank margin adjustment.
2) Use an OS-A3 test chart to perform the following adjustments.

Registration: Platen Mode

1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration, and adjust them using the following SP modes if necessary.

	SP mode
Leading Edge	SP4-010
Side-to-side	SP4-011

A: Leading Edge Registration
B: Side-to-side Registration

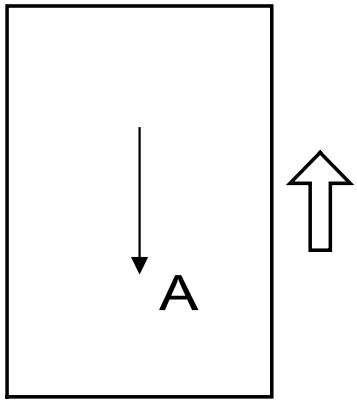


Magnification

NOTE: Use an OS-A3 test chart to perform the following adjustment.

Scanner Sub Scan Magnification

A: Sub Scan Magnification

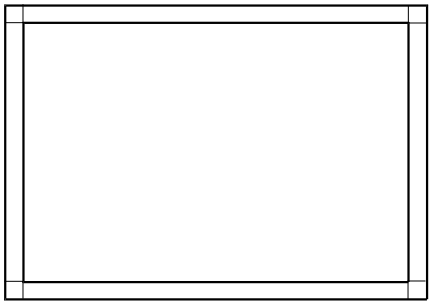


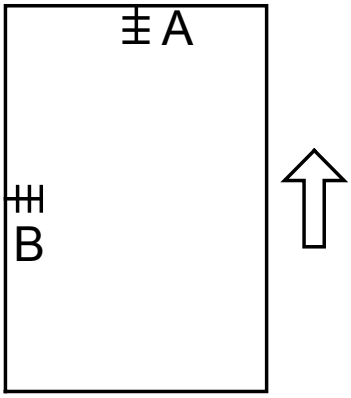
1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio, and adjust it using the following SP mode if necessary. The specification is ±1%.

	SP mode
Scanner Sub Scan Magnification	SP4-008

⇒6.12.4 ADF IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

Registration





A: Leading Edge Registration
B: Side-to-side Registration

NOTE: Make a temporary test chart as shown above left using A3/DLT paper.

1. Place the temporary test chart on the ADF and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the registration, and adjust using the following SP modes if necessary.

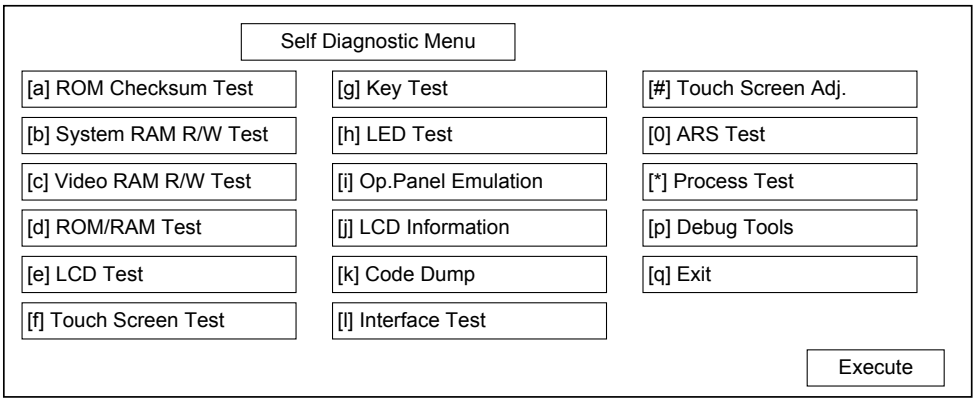
	SP mode
Side-to-side Registration	SP6-006-1
Leading Edge Registration (Thin original mode)	SP6-006-2
Leading Edge Registration (Single-sided/Duplex: front)	SP6-006-3
Leading Edge Registration (Duplex: rear)	SP6-006-4

⇒ 6.13 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION

After doing a memory all clear or when the touch panel detection mechanism is not working properly, calibrate the touch screen as follows.

1. Press the following keys in sequence to enter touch screen calibration mode.

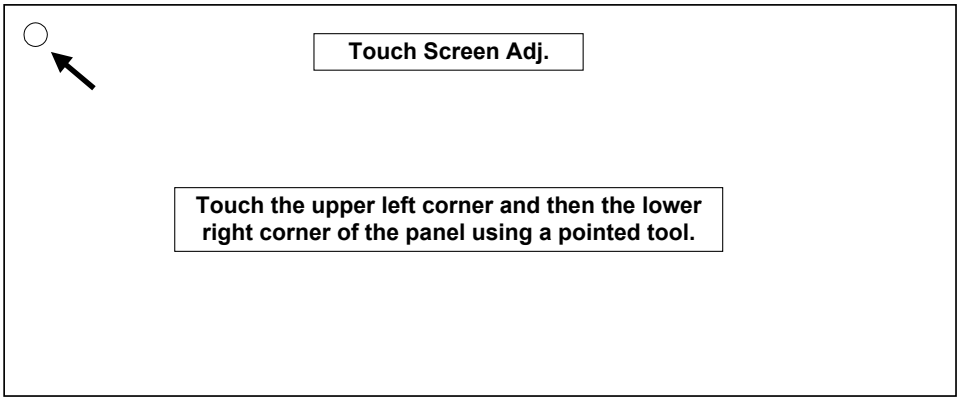
   [#] [1] [9] [9] [3] [C] x5 (#)



⚠CAUTION

Do not execute any of the other items in the self diagnostic menu.

2. The “Self Diagnostics Menu” screen will appear.
   Press the # key to select the “Touch Screen Adj.” Mode.



3. The “Touch Screen Adj.” calibration screen will appear. Touch the upper left corner then the lower right corner of the panel using a pointed (but not sharp!) tool.
4. Touch a few spots on the LCD touch panel, and confirm that the marker (a small circle) appears on the screen at exactly the same location as where it is touched. If it does not, touch “Cancel” on the adjustment screen. Then repeat the calibration procedure.
5. Touch “Ok” on the adjustment screen.
6. Touch “[q] Exit” and “Execute” to exit the self diagnostics menu.

TROUBLESHOOTING

7. TROUBLESHOOTING

7.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

7.1.1 SUMMARY

The SC code types and the procedures to reset them are explained in the following table. There are 4 levels of service call conditions.

Level	Definition	Reset Procedure
A	To prevent the machine from being damaged, the SC can only be reset by a service representative (see the note below). The copier cannot be operated at all.	Enter SP mode, then turn the main power switch off and on.
B	The SC can be reset by turning the main power switch off and on if the SC was caused by incorrect sensor detection. These SCs disable only the features that use the defective item. Although these SCs are not shown to the user under normal conditions, they are displayed on the operation panel when the defective feature is selected.	Turn the operation switch or main power switch off and on. A level B' SC can only be reset by turning the main power switch off and on.
C	The copier can be operated as usual except for the unit related to the service call. SCs that are not shown on the operation panel, are internally logged.	Turn the operation switch off and on.
D	Turning the operation switch or main power switch off then on resets SCs displayed on the operation panel. These are re-displayed if the error occurs again. The SC history is updated. The machine can be operated as usual.	If the SC is not displayed, the SC history is updated. If SC is displayed turn operation switch or main power switch off and on.

NOTE: 1) If the problem concerns electrical circuit boards, first disconnect then reconnect the connectors before replacing the PCBs.
2) If the problem concerns a motor lock, first check the mechanical load before replacing motors or sensors.
3) When a Level A or B SC occurs while in an SP mode, the display does not indicate the SC number. If this occurs, check the SC number after leaving the SP mode. This does not apply to Level B' codes.

7.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

SC101: Exposure lamp error

- Definition - [D]

The standard white level was not detected properly when scanning the white plate.

- Possible cause -

- Exposure lamp defective
- Lamp regulator defective
- Exposure lamp connector defective
- Dirty standard white plate
- Dirty scanner mirror or scanner mirror out of position
- SBU board defective
- SBU connector defective
- Lens block out of position

SC120: Scanner home position error 1

-Definition- [D]

The scanner home position sensor does not detect the on condition during initialization or copying.

- Possible causes -

- Scanner home position sensor defective
- Scanner motor defective
- Scanner motor drive board defective
- Scanner home position sensor connector defective
- Scanner drive motor connector defective

SC121: Scanner home position error 2

-Definition- [D]

The scanner home position sensor does not detect the off condition during initialization or copying.

- Possible causes -

- Scanner home position sensor defective
- Scanner drive motor defective
- Scanner motor drive board defective
- Scanner home position sensor connector defective
- Scanner drive motor connector defective

SC124: Scanner motor encoder signal error

-Definition- [D]

No encoder signal from the scanner motor

-Possible cause-

- Scanner motor connector defective
- Scanner motor defective
- MCU defective
- Scanner wire, timing belt, pulley out of position
- PSU defective

SC125: Scanner motor speed error 1

-Definition- [D]

The scanner stops before the scanner HP sensor is on when returning.

The scanner speed when the scanner HP sensor turns on is slower than the specified speed.

-Possible cause-

- Scanner motor defective
- MCU defective
- Too much load on scanner drive

SC126: Scanner motor speed error 2

-Definition- [D]

The scanner overruns the scanner HP sensor by more than 10 mm when returning.

-Possible cause-

- Scanner motor defective
- MCU defective
- Too small load on scanner drive

SC127: Scanner motor encoder rotating direction error

-Definition- [D]

The scanner moves in the opposite direction from the instructed direction when initializing.

-Possible cause-

- Scanner motor defective
- MCU defective

SC128: Scanner motor start error

-Definition- [D]

The scanner motor speed does not reach the target speed until starting to read the original.

-Possible cause-

- Scanner motor defective
- MCU defective
- PSU defective
- Too much load on scanner drive

SC129: Scanner motor speed control error

-Definition- [D]

The scanner speed is out of standard during scanning.

-Possible cause-

- Scanner motor defective
- PSU defective
- MCU defective
- Scanner drive defective

SC130: SBU error

-Definition- [D]

When the main switch is turned on, the BICU cannot receive the correct signal from the SBU.

-Possible cause-

- SBU defective
- BICU defective
- Cable between SBU and BICU defective

SC300: Charge corona output error 1

-Definition- [D]

The feedback voltage from the charge corona unit is too high.

- Possible causes -

- Charge P.P. defective
- Poor charge corona unit connection

SC301: Charge corona output error 2

-Definition- [D]

The control PWM for the charge corona unit is too high.

- Possible causes -

- Charge P.P. defective
- Poor charge corona unit connection

SC302: Charge corona output error 3

-Definition- [D]

The control PWM for the charge grid is too high.

- Possible causes -

- Charge P.P. defective
- Poor charge corona unit connection

SC303: Charge corona output error 4

-Definition- [D]

The feedback voltage from the charge grid is too high.

- Possible causes -

- Charge P.P. defective
- Poor charge corona unit connection

SC305: Charge corona wire cleaner error 1

-Definition- [C]

The charge corona wire cleaner does not return to its home position.

- Possible causes -

- Charge corona wire cleaner motor defective
- Charge P.P. defective
- IOB defective

SC306: Charge corona wire cleaner error 2

-Definition- [D]

The charge corona wire cleaner motor connector is not connected.

- Possible causes -

- The charge corona wire cleaner motor connector is not connected.

SC310: Potential sensor error 1

Definition- [C]

When calibrating the drum potential sensor at the process control initial setting, the drum potential sensor output voltage is out of specification.

- Possible causes -

- Potential sensor defective
- Poor connection between the potential sensor and the I/O board (IOB)
- IOB defective
- Poor connection between the drum unit and the I/O board (IOB)
- Development power pack defective

SC311: Potential sensor error 2

Definition- [C]

When calibrating the drum potential sensor at the process control initial setting, the rate of change of drum potential sensor output with voltage on the drum is out of specification.

- Possible causes -

- Potential sensor defective
- Poor connection between the potential sensor and the I/O board (IOB)
- IOB defective
- Poor connection between the drum unit and the I/O board (IOB)
- Development power pack defective

SC312: Potential sensor error 4

Definition- [C]

When adjusting the drum potential (V_D) at the process control initial setting, the drum potential sensor detects that V_D is more than V_G (grid voltage).

- Possible causes -

- Potential sensor defective
- Poor connection between the potential sensor and the I/O board (IOB)
- IOB defective
- Poor connection between the drum unit and the I/O board (IOB)
- Development power pack defective
- Dirty or worn charge corona wire

SC314: Potential sensor error 5

Definition- [C]

When adjusting the drum potential (V_H) for LD power adjustment during the process control initial setting, the first time the V_H pattern is made, the drum potential sensor detects that V_H is more than 500V.

- Possible causes -

- Potential sensor defective
- Poor connection between the potential sensor and the I/O board (IOB)
- IOB defective
- Poor connection between the drum unit and the I/O board (IOB)
- LD unit defective

SC321: No laser writing signal (F-GATE) error 1

- Definition- [D]

The laser writing signal (F-GATE) does not go to LOW for more than 15 seconds after the copy paper reaches the registration sensor.

- Possible causes -

- BICU board defective
- Poor connection of the printer controller
- Printer controller defective

SC322: 1st laser synchronization error

-Definition- [D]

The 1st laser synchronization signal cannot be detected by the main scan synchronization detector board even if the laser diodes are activated.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection between the laser synchronization detector board and the LD unit
- Laser synchronization detector board out of position
- Laser synchronization detector board defective
- LD unit defective

SC323: LD drive current over

-Definition- [D]

The LD drive board applies more than 110 mA to the LD.

- Possible causes -

- LD unit defective (not enough power, due to aging)
- Poor connection between the LD unit and the BICU board
- BICU defective

SC326: 2nd laser synchronization error

-Definition- [D]

The 2nd laser synchronization signal cannot be detected by the main scan synchronization detector board even if the laser diodes are activated.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection between the laser synchronization detector board and the LD unit
- Laser synchronization detector board out of position
- Laser synchronization detector board defective
- LD unit defective

SC327: LD unit home position error 1 *(A292/A294 only)*

-Definition- [D]

The LD unit home position sensor does not detect an on condition when the LD unit moves to its home position.

- Possible causes -

- LD unit home position sensor defective
- LD positioning motor defective

LD unit movement blocked because of incorrect connector routing

SC328: LD unit home position error 2 *(A292/A293 only*

-Definition- [D]

The LD unit home position sensor does not detect an off condition when the LD unit moves from its home position.

- Possible causes -

- LD unit home position sensor defective
- LD positioning motor defective
- LD unit movement blocked because of incorrect connector routing

SC329: LD unit home position error 3 *(A292/A293 only*

-Definition- [D]

When the LD unit moves to switch the laser beam pitch (except for initial movement at adjustment), the LD unit HP sensor turns on before the movement reaches the adjusted value.

-Possible cause-

- When the main switch is on: SP2-109-3 or SP2-109-4 is not done after SP5-801 is performed.
- While printing: The LD unit does not move so well because of an unexpected failure, such as the cable being pinched somewhere.
- LD unit defective

SC330: LD unit no initial setting *(A292/A293 only*

-Definition- [D]

The main switch is on or a printing/copying job starts without doing SP2-109-3 or SP2-109-4 after SP5-801 is performed.

-Possible cause-

- SP2-109-3 or SP2-109-4 is not done after SP5-801 is performed.

SC331: LD unit home position error 4 *(A292/A293 only)*

-Definition- [D]

When the LD unit moves to switch the laser beam pitch, the LD unit HP sensor does not turn on, even when the expected time for reaching the home position comes, according to the data for the present position stored in NVRAM.

-Possible cause-

- The LD unit does not move so well because of an unexpected failure, such as the cable being pinched somewhere.
- LD unit defective
- HP sensor defective
- NVRAM defective

SC332: LD unit present position error*(A292/A293 only)*

-Definition- [D]

When the LD unit moves to switch the laser beam pitch, the data for the present position stored in NVRAM is out of the adjustment range.

-Possible cause-

- The LD unit does not move so well because of an unexpected failure, such as the cable being pinched somewhere.
- LD unit defective
- HP sensor defective
- NVRAM defective

SC335: Polygonal mirror motor error 1

-Definition- [D]

The XSCRDY signal does not become low within 20 seconds after the polygonal mirror motor turns on or the polygon motor speed is changed.

-Possible cause-

- Poor cable connection to the polygonal mirror motor driver.
- Polygonal mirror motor (driver) defective
- BICU defective

SC336: Polygonal mirror motor error 2

-Definition- [D]

The XSCRDY signal does not become high within 20 seconds after the polygonal mirror motor turns off.

-Possible cause-

- Poor cable connection to the polygonal mirror motor driver.
- Polygonal mirror motor (driver) defective
- BICU defective

SC337: Polygonal mirror motor error 3

-Definition- [D]

The XSCRDY signal becomes high while the polygonal mirror motor turns on, even though there was no demand for either turning off the motor or changing the motor speed.

-Possible cause-

- Poor cable connection to the polygonal mirror motor driver.
- Polygonal mirror motor (driver) defective
- BICU defective

SC338: Polygonal mirror motor error 1

-Definition- [D]

The XSCRDY signal does not become stable within 20 seconds after the polygonal mirror motor turns on or off or the polygon motor speed is changed.

-Possible cause-

- Poor cable connection to the polygonal mirror motor driver.
- Polygonal mirror motor (driver) defective
- BICU defective

SC340: TD sensor output error

-Definition- [C]

The TD sensor output voltage (Vt), which is measured during each copying process, is one of the following 10 times consecutively.

1) Vt = 0.5 volts or lower
2) Vt = 4.0 volts or higher

-Possible cause-

- TD sensor defective
- Poor connection between the TD sensor and the I/O board.
- I/O board defective

In this error condition, the toner supply is controlled using pixel count and Vsp/Vsg.

SC341: TD sensor adjustment error 1

-Definition- [D]

During the TD sensor auto adjustment, the TD sensor output voltage (Vt) is 2.5 volts or higher even though the control voltage is set to the minimum value (PWM = 0)

Note: When this error occurs, the indication of SP2-906-1 is 0.00V.

-Possible cause-

- TD sensor defective
- Poor connection between the TD sensor and the I/O board.
- I/O board defective

Note: In this error condition, the toner supply is controlled using pixel count and Vsp/Vsg.

SC342: TD sensor adjustment error 2

-Definition- [D]

During the TD sensor auto adjustment, the TD sensor output voltage (Vt) does not come in the target range (2.5 ± 0.1V) within 20 seconds.

Note: When this error occurs, the indication of SP2-906-1 is 0.00V.

-Possible cause-

- TD sensor defective
- Poor connection between the TD sensor and the I/O board.
- I/O board defective

Note: In this error condition, the toner supply is controlled using pixel count and Vsp/Vsg.

SC345: Development bias leak

-Definition- [D -

- Poor connection between the development bias terminal and the development P.P.
- Development P.P. defective

SC350: ID sensor error 1

-Definition- [C]

One of the following ID sensor output voltages was detected twice consecutively when checking the ID sensor pattern.

1) Vsp ≥ 2.5V
2) Vsp = 0V

- Possible causes -

- ID sensor defective
- ID sensor connector defective
- Poor ID sensor connector connection
- I/O board (IOB) defective
- Charge or development power pack defective
- Dirty ID sensor
- Defect at ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum

SC351: ID sensor error 2

-Definition- [C]

One of the following ID sensor output voltages was detected twice consecutively when checking the ID sensor pattern.

1) Vsg< 2.5V
2) Vsg = 0V
3) The ID sensor output voltage is 5.0V and the PWM signal input to the ID sensor is 0 when checking the ID sensor pattern

- Possible causes -

- ID sensor defective
- ID sensor connector defective
- Poor ID sensor connector connection
- I/O board (IOB) defective
- Charge or development power pack defective
- Dirty ID sensor
- Defect at the ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum

SC352: ID sensor error 3

-Definition- [C]

For 2 s during the ID sensor pattern check, the ID sensor pattern edge voltage is not 2.5V.

- Possible causes -

- ID sensor defective
- ID sensor connector defective
- Poor ID sensor connector connection
- I/O board (IOB) defective
- Charge or development power pack defective
- Dirty ID sensor
- Defect at the ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum

SC353: ID sensor error 4

-Definition- [C]

One of the following ID sensor output voltages is detected at ID sensor initialization.

1) Vsg < 4.0V when the maximum PWM input (255) is applied to the ID sensor.
2) Vsg ≥ 4.0V when the minimum PWM input (0) is applied to the ID sensor.

- Possible causes -

- ID sensor defective
- ID sensor connector defective
- Poor ID sensor connector connection
- I/O board (IOB) defective
- Charge or development power pack defective
- Dirty ID sensor
- Defect at the ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum

SC354: ID sensor error 5

-Definition- [C]

Vsg falls out of the adjustment target (4.0 ± 0.2V) during Vsg checking.

- Possible causes -

- ID sensor defective
- ID sensor connector defective
- Poor ID sensor connector connection
- I/O board (IOB) defective
- Charge or development power pack defective
- Dirty ID sensor
- Defect at the ID sensor pattern writing area of the drum

SC360: Hard disk detection error 1

-Definition- [B]

When the main switch turns on, the machine does not detect the connection signal from the HDD.

-Possible cause-

- Poor connection between the HDD and BICU
- Poor connection on the dc power connector to the HDD
- HDD defective
- BICU defective

SC362: Hard disk detection error 2

-Definition- [B]

When the power switch on the operation panel turns on, the machine does not detect the connection signal from the HDD.

-Possible cause-

- Poor connection between the HDD and BICU
- Poor connection on the dc power connector to the HDD
- HDD defective
- BICU defective

SC364: Hard disk drive error

-Definition-

The image data stored in the HDD cannot be output properly.

– Possible causes –

- When this SC occurs only once, this problem will be solved after turning the main power switch off and on.
- When this SC occurs while performing SP4-911-1 (HDD media check), it can be cured by doing SP4-911-2 (HDD formatting).
- HDD defective

SC366: Hard disk bad sector maximum

-Definition – [D]

The number of bad sectors on the HDD is over the maximum number.

-Possible Cause-

- HDD defective
- NVRAM defective

SC367: Hard disk (HDD:R) bad sector maximum

-Definition – [B]

The number of bad sectors on the HDD is over the maximum number.

-Possible Cause-

- HDD defective
- NVRAM defective

SC370: IMAC (image compression IC) input FIFO error

-Definition- [D]

An input FIFO error occurs while inputting image processing in the ASIC (IMACB), which handles image compression and image data transmission.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective

SC372: IMAC (image compression IC) output FIFO error

-Definition- [D]

An output FIFO error occurs while outputting image processing in the ASIC (IMACB), which handles image compression and image data transmission.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective

SC374: IMAC (image compression IC) modes setting error

-Definition-

A mode setting error occurs by changing settings during image processing in the ASIC (IMACB), which handles image compression and image data transmission.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective

SC376: Data transmission error

-Definition- [D]

A data transmission error occurred at the ASIC which controls data transmission and compression during connecting mode.

-Possible cause-

- Defective connection board
- Defective or disconnected interface cable
- Defective SBICU

SC380: Data transmission time out (video input)

-Definition- [D]

Data input to the IC which controls data transfer and compression is not completed within 20 seconds.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective
- SBU defective
- Printer controller defective

SC382: Data transmission time out (video output)

-Definition- [D]

Data output from the IC which controls the data transfer and compression is not completed within 20 seconds.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective
- LD board defective

SC384: Data transmission time out (connect copy)

-Definition-[D]

Data transmission to the memory does not finish properly within 20 seconds after the start of data transmission.

-Possible cause-

- Defective connection board
- Defective or disconnected interface cable
- Defective SBICU

SC386: Data transmission time out (Hard disk write)

-Definition- [D]

Data input to the IC which controls the data transfer and compression is not completed with in 20 seconds.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective
- SBU defective
- Printer controller defective

SC390: CRC error

-Definition-[D]

Electrical noise causes sent data and received data to differ. A CRC check can detect this error.

-Possible cause-

- Defective connection board
- Defective or disconnected interface cable

SC391: Image storage address error

-Definition-[D]

The SBICU receives an image data output request signal for data that is not stored in memory.

-Possible causes-

- SBICU defective

SC400: Transfer roller leak error

-Definition- [D]

A transfer roller current leak signal is detected.

- Possible causes -

- Transfer P.P. defective
- Poor connection between the transfer current terminal and the transfer P.P.

SC401: Transfer roller open error

-Definition- [D]

The transfer roller current feedback signal is not detected.

- Possible causes -

- Transfer P.P. defective
- Poor connection between the transfer current terminal and the transfer P.P.

SC430: Quenching lamp error

-Definition- [C]

When finishing the process control initial setting, the drum potential which is detected by the drum potential sensor is out of the normal range.

- Possible causes -

- Quenching lamp defective
- Poor connection between quenching lamp and charge power pack

SC440: Main motor lock

-Definition- [D]

The main motor lock signal remains low for 2 seconds while the main motor is on.

- Possible causes -

- Too much load on the drive mechanism
- Main motor defective

SC441: Development motor lock

-Definition- [D]

The development motor lock signal remains low for 2 seconds while the development motor is on.

- Possible causes -

- Too much load on the drive mechanism
- Development motor defective

SC493: Exhaust fan motor lock

-Definition- [D]

The exhaust fan motor lock signal remains high for 5 seconds while the exhaust fan motor is on.

-Possible cause-

- Exhaust fan motor defective
- Too much load on the fan

SC494: Fusing exhaust fan motor lock

-Definition- [D]

The fusing exhaust fan motor lock signal remains high for 5 seconds while the fusing exhaust fan motor is on.

-Possible cause-

- Exhaust fan motor defective
- Too much load on the fan

SC495: Toner recycling unit error

-Definition- [D]

The toner recycling sensor output signal does not change within 500 ms after the main motor turns on.

- Possible causes -

- Too much load on the drive mechanism
- Toner end sensor detective
- Poor connection on the sensor connector

SC496: Toner collection bottle error

-Definition- [D]

The toner collection bottle set switch remains off when the front door is closed.

- Possible causes -

- No toner collection bottle
- Poor connection on the switch connector

SC497: Toner recycling motor error

-Definition- [D]

The toner recycling motor connector set signal remains off for 1 second.

- Possible causes -

- Toner recycling motor defective
- Poor connection on the motor connector

SC501: 1st tray lift malfunction

-Definition- [B]

- The lift sensor is activated before the pick-up solenoid is activated when the tray is pushed in.
- The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.
- The lift sensor remains activated for 1.5 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lowering the bottom plate.
- The tray down sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lowering the bottom plate because of a paper end condition.

-Possible cause-

- Tray lift motor defective or poor connection
- Lift sensor defective or poor connection
- Tray down sensor defective or poor connection
- Pick-up solenoid defective or poor connection

SC502: 2nd tray lift malfunction

-Definition – [B]

SC503: 3rd tray lift malfunction

-Definition- [B]

- The lift sensor is activated before the pick-up solenoid is activated when the tray is pushed in.
- The lift sensor is not activated within 10 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.
- The lift sensor remains activated for 1.5 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lowering the bottom plate.

-Possible cause-

- Tray lift motor defective or poor connection
- Lift sensor defective or poor connection
- Pick-up solenoid defective or poor connection

SC505: LCT tray malfunction (optional LCT)

-Definition- [B]

- The lift sensor is not activated within 60 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lifting the bottom plate.
- The tray down sensor is not activated within 60 seconds after the tray lift motor starts lowering the bottom plate.
- The lift sensor and tray down sensor are activated at the same time.
- The lift sensor is not activated even when the pick-up roller is still lifted up by the top of paper.

-Possible cause-

- Tray lift motor defective or poor connection
- Lift sensor defective or poor connection
- Pick-up solenoid defective or poor connection
- Paper end sensor defective

SC510: Paper feed motor locks

-Definition- [B]

- The lock signal from the paper feed motor is detected for 3,000 ms during rotation.
- Poor connection is checked once when the main switch is on.

-Possible cause-

- Paper feed motor defective or poor connection
- Too much load on the drive mechanism
- Lower front door safety switch defective
- Lower front door safety switch bracket deformation

SC511: LCT motor lock (optional LCT)

-Definition- [B]

- The lock signal from the LCT transport motor is detected for 50 ms during rotation. (The detection period does not include 300 ms of the starting up.)
- Poor connection is checked once when the main switch is on.

-Possible cause-

- LCT transport motor defective or poor connection
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC515: Tandem rear fence motor error

-Definition- [B]

- When the tray is pushed in, the rear fence return sensor and the rear fence HP sensor are already on.
- The rear fence return sensor is not on within 10 seconds after the rear fence motor starts.
- The rear fence HP sensor is not on within 10 seconds after the rear fence starts moving to the home position.

-Possible cause-

- Rear fence motor defective or poor connection
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

<Note> The other trays are still available to use.

SC516: Tandem side fence motor error

-Definition – [B]

Japanese version only

SC520: Duplex jogger motor error 1

-Definition- [D]

When the jogger fence moves to the home position, the jogger HP sensor does not turn on even if the jogger fence motor has moved the jogger fence 153.5 mm.

- Possible causes -

- Jogger fence motor defective or poor connection
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC521: Duplex jogger motor error 2

-Definition- [D]

When the jogger fence moves from the home position, the jogger fence HP sensor does not turn off even if the jogger motor has moved the jogger fence 153.5 mm.

- Possible causes -

- Jogger fence motor defective or poor connection
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC530: By-pass feed motor lock

-Definition- [D]

A by-pass feed motor lock signal is detected for more than 2 seconds during rotation.

- Possible causes -

- By-pass feed motor defective or poor connection
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC531: Fusing/duplex motor lock

-Definition- [D]

A fusing/duplex motor lock signal is detected for more than 2 seconds during rotation.

- Possible causes -

- Fusing/duplex motor defective or poor connection
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC541: Fusing thermistor open

-Definition- [A]

The fusing temperature detected by the thermistor is below 7°C for 35 seconds.

- Possible causes -

- Fusing thermistor defective or out of position
- Poor thermistor terminal connection

SC542: Fusing temperature warming-up error

-Definition- [A]

The fusing temperature does not reach the fusing standby temperature within 5 minutes after the main power switch is turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Fusing thermistor defective or out of position
- Fusing lamp open
- Fusing thermofuse open
- BICU defective
- Power supply board defective
- Poor fusing unit connection

SC543: Fusing overheat error 1 (software)

-Definition- [A]

A fusing temperature of over 230°C is detected for 5 seconds by the fusing thermistor.

- Possible causes -

- Fusing thermistor defective
- BICU defective
- I/O board (IOB) defective

SC544: Fusing overheat error 1 (hardware)

-Definition- [A]

The BICU detects an overheat error even if the protection in the software does not work.

-Possible cause-

- Fusing thermistor defective
- BICU defective
- I/O board defective

SC545: Fusing overheat error 2

-Definition- [A]

The fusing lamp stays on at full power for 45 seconds while in the stand-by condition after warming-up is completed.

- Possible causes -

- Fusing thermistor out of position

SC546: Fusing ready temperature malfunction

-Definition- [A]

- A change in the fusing temperature by 20°C or more compared with the temperature of 1 second ago occurs 2 times consecutively.
- A change in the fusing temperature by 20°C or more compared with the temperature of 1 second ago occurs 3 times consecutively for 1 minute.

-Possible cause-

- Poor connection on the thermistor
- Poor connection on the fusing unit connector

SC547: Zero cross signal malfunction

-Definition- [D]

- When the main switch is on, the frequency measured by the number of zero cross signals for 500 ms is larger than 66Hz or smaller than 45Hz.
- It is measured 3 times consecutively for 500 ms that the interval between a zero cross signal and the next one is 7.5 ms or shorter.

-Possible cause-

- Power supply unit defective
- Noise on the ac power line

SC590: Toner collection motor error

-Definition- [D]

The toner collection motor sensor output does not change for 3 seconds while the toner collection motor is on.

- Possible causes -

- Toner collection motor defective
- Too much load on the drive mechanism
- Poor toner collection motor connector connection
- IOB defective
- Toner collection motor sensor defective

SC601: Communication error between BICU and MCU

-Definition- [D]

The BICU cannot communicate with the MCU board properly.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection between the BICU and MCU
- MCU defective
- BICU defective

SC602: Communication error between BICU and HDD controller

-Definition- [D]

The BICU cannot communicate with the HDD controller properly.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection between the BICU board and HDD control board
- BICU board defective

SC620: Communication error between BICU and ADF 1

-Definition- [D]

The TXD and RXD signals between BICU and ADF main board do not stabilize.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection between the BICU board and ADF main board
- Noise on interface cable

SC621: Communication error between BICU and ADF 2

-Definition- [D]

The TXD and RXD signals between BICU and ADF main board do not stabilize.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection between the BICU board and ADF main board
- ADF main board defective
- BICU board defective

SC622: Communication error between BICU and ADF 3

-Definition- [D]

Software error after abnormal user operation.

- Possible causes -

- Software error

SC625: Communication error between BICU and finisher 1

-Definition- [D]

The acknowledge signal does not come back from the finisher or mailbox to the BICU board 3 times consecutively.

-Possible cause-

- Finisher or mailbox main board defective
- BICU board defective
- Poor connection between BICU board and finisher or mailbox main board
- Noise on the interface cable

SC626: Communication error between BICU and finisher 2

-Definition- [D]

The BICU board receives a low signal even when the communication line is connected between the BICU board and the finisher or mailbox.

-Possible cause-

- Finisher or mailbox main board defective
- BICU board defective
- Poor connection between BICU board and finisher or mailbox main board
- Noise on the interface cable
- Finisher or mailbox is installed with B098

SC630: CSS (RSS) communication error between line adapter and CSS center

-Definition- [C]

Japan only

SC635: Communication error between BICU and paper feed board 1

-Definition- [B]

The acknowledge signal does not come back from the paper feed board to the BICU board 3 times consecutively.

-Possible cause-

- Paper feed board defective
- BICU board defective
- Poor connection between BICU board and paper feed board
- Noise on the interface cable

SC636: Communication error between BICU and paper feed board 2

-Definition- [D]

The BICU board receives a low signal even when the communication line is connected between the BICU board and the paper feed board.

-Possible cause-

- Paper feed board defective
- BICU board defective
- Poor connection between BICU board and paper feed board
- Noise on the interface cable

SC700: ADF original pick-up malfunction 1

-Definition- [D]

The pick-up roller H.P sensor signal does not change after the pick-up motor has turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Pick-up roller H.P sensor defective
- Pick-up motor defective
- Timing belt out of position
- ADF main board defective

SC701: ADF original pick-up malfunction 2

-Definition- [D]

The pick-up roller HP sensor is not activated even after the pick-up motor turns on.

-Possible cause-

- Pick-up roller HP sensor defective
- Pick-up motor defective
- ADF main board defective

SC702: ADF feed-in motor lock

-Definition- [D]

1) The encoder signal cannot be detected within a specific time when the feed-in motor is on.
2) The pulse signal from the length sensor is not detected within a specific time when the feed-in motor is on.

-Possible cause-

- Feed-in motor defective
- Length sensor defective
- Cable for length sensor or feed-in motor defective
- Main board defective

SC703: ADF transport motor lock

-Definition- [D]

The encoder signal cannot be detected within a specific time when the transport motor is on.

-Possible cause-

- Transport motor defective
- Cable for transport motor defective
- Main board defective

SC704: ADF feed-out motor lock

-Definition- [D]

The encoder signal cannot be detected within a specific time when the feed-out motor is on.

-Possible cause-

- Feed-out motor defective
- Cable for feed-out motor defective
- Main board defective

SC705: ADF bottom plate motor error

-Definition- [D]

1) The bottom plate position sensor does not turn on when the bottom plate motor lifts the bottom plate.
2) The bottom plate HP sensor does not turn on when the bottom plate motor lowers the bottom plate.

-Possible cause-

- Bottom plate position sensor defective
- Bottom plate HP sensor defective
- Bottom plate motor defective
- Main board defective

SC720: Finisher transport motor error

-Definition- [B]

The encoder pulse of the transport motor does not change state (high/low) within a certain period of time.

-Possible cause-

- Finisher transport motor defective or poor connection
- Finisher main board defective
- Too much load on drive mechanism

SC722: Finisher jogger motor error

-Definition- [B]

1) The finisher jogger H.P sensor remains de-activated for more than a certain time when returning to home position.
2) The finisher jogger H.P sensor remains activated for more than a certain time when moving away from home position.

- Possible causes -

- Jogger H.P sensor defective
- Jogger motor defective

SC724: Finisher staple hammer motor error

-Definition- [B]

Stapling does not finish within a certain time after the staple hammer motor turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Staple hammer motor defective
- Staple jam

SC725: Finisher stack feed-out motor error

- Definition - [B]

The stack feed-out belt H.P sensor does not activate within a certain time after the stack feed-out motor turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Stack feed-out H.P sensor defective
- Stack feed-out motor defective

SC726: Finisher shift/lift motor error

- Definition - [B]

1) Tray shift does not finish within a certain time after the shift motor turned on.
2) The stack height sensor does not activate within a certain time after the shift tray lift motor turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Shift motor defective
- Shift tray lift motor defective

SC727: Finisher stapler rotation motor error

- Definition - [B]

1) Stapler rotation does not finish within a certain time after the stapler rotation motor turned on.
2) The stapler does not return to its home position within a certain time after stapling finished.

- Possible causes -

- Stapler rotation motor defective
- Poor stapler rotation motor connection

SC729: Finisher punch motor error

- Definition - [B]

The punch H.P sensor does not activate within a certain time after the punch motor turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Punch motor defective
- Punch H.P sensor defective
- Poor punch motor connection

SC730: Finisher stapler position motor error

- Definition - [B]

1) The stapler H.P. sensor stays on for longer than normal when the stapler motor turns on to return the stapler to its home position.
2) The stapler H.P sensor does not turn on within a certain time after the stapler motor turned on to move the stapler away from home position.

- Possible causes -

- Stapler motor defective
- Stapler H.P sensor defective
- Poor stapler motor connection

SC731: Finisher paper exit guide plate motor lock

-Definition- [B']

The exit plate HP sensor does not turn on within 800 ms when the exit plate returns to its home position.

-Possible cause-

- Exit plate motor defective
- Too much load to exit plate motor
- Exit plate motor connector defective
- Exit plate HP sensor defective
- Main board defective

SC735: Finisher pre-stack motor error

-Definition- [B]

It occurs 2 times consecutively that the pre-stack HP sensor is not activated within 400 pulses after the pre-stack motor starts.

-Possible cause-

- Pre-stack HP sensor defective or poor connection
- Pre-stack motor defective
- Finisher main board defective
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC736: Finisher paper exit guide plate motor error

-Definition- [B]

It occurs 2 times consecutively that the paper exit guide plate HP sensor is not activated within 750 ms after the paper exit guide plate motor starts.

-Possible cause-

- Paper exit guide plate sensor defective or poor connection
- Paper exit guide plate motor defective
- Finisher main board defective
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC737: Finisher staple waste full

-Definition- [B]

The box for staple waste becomes full.

-Possible cause-

- Box is full of staple waste
- Staple waste sensor defective

SC738: Finisher shift tray lift motor error

-Definition- [D]

It occurs 2 times consecutively that;

1) The stack height sensor is not activated within 50 seconds after the motor starts lifting the tray.
2) The stack height sensor is still activated 5 seconds after the motor starts lowering the tray.

-Possible cause-

- Stack height sensor defective or poor connection
- Shift tray lift motor defective
- Finisher main board defective
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

⟹ SC740: 1,000-sheet finisher error in finisher area

- Definition – [D]

Note: When this SC is displayed, check SP7-902 (SC detail). The first 2 digits indicate the type of error.

Example: 740 **01**00000000000000

⇒

01: Shutter movement error

1) The shutter position switch does not turn on within 1 s after the transport motor starts to turn in reverse.
2) The shutter sensor does not deactivate within 1 s after the transport motor starts to turn in reverse.
3) The shutter position switch is off when the shift tray safety switch is off.

- Possible causes -

- Transport motor defective
- Shutter position switch defective
- Shift tray safety switch defective

02: Exit motor error

1) After the exit motor turns on, the exit motor sensor does not send the proper signal to the finisher board.
2) The exit motor sensor does not send the clock signal to the finisher board for certain period while the exit motor is on.

- Possible causes -

- Exit motor defective
- Exit motor sensor defective

03: Upper exit plate movement error

1) The upper exit guide 2 switch does not turn on within 1s after the guide plate motor turns on.
2) The upper exit guide sensor does not activate within 1s after the guide plate motor turns on.
3) The upper exit guide 2 switch does not turn on when the shift tray safety switch is off.

- Possible causes -

- Guide plate motor defective
- Upper exit guide 2 switch defective
- Upper exit guide sensor defective
- Shift tray safety switch defective

⇒

04: Jogger motor error

1) After the jogger motor turns on to move the jogger fence from its home position, the jogger HP sensor does not deactivate within 2s.
2) After the jogger motor turns on to return the jogger fence to its home position, the jogger HP sensor does not activate within 2s.

- Possible causes -

- Jogger motor defective
- Jogger HP sensor defective

05: Stapler motor error

1) After the stapler motor turns on to move the stapler unit from its home position, the stapler unit HP sensor does not deactivate within 4s.
2) After the stapler motor turns on to return the stapler unit to its home position, the stapler unit HP sensor does not activate within 4s.

- Possible causes -

- Stapler motor defective
- Stapler unit HP sensor defective

06: Staple hammer motor error

1) The staple hammer HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.5s after the staple hammer motor turns on.
2) The staple hammer HP sensor does not activate within 0.5s after the staple hammer motor turns on.

- Possible causes -

- Staple hammer motor defective
- Staple hammer HP sensor defective

⇒

07: Tray lift motor error

1) The tray lift motor does not stop within 15s after being turned on.
2) The shift tray HP sensor does not activate within 15s after the tray lift motor turns on.
3) The shift tray upper limit switch turns on while the shift tray is being raised.
4) Lift motor sensors 1 & 2 do not send the clock signals to the finisher board every 200ms while the tray lift motor is on.

- Possible causes -

- Tray lift motor defective
- Lift motor sensor 1 defective
- Lift motor sensor 2 defective
- Shift tray HP sensor defective
- Shift tray upper limit switch defective

08: Shift tray height sensor error

1) Abnormal communication data between finisher board and shift tray height sensor.
2) No communication between finisher board and shift tray height sensor for a certain period.
3) The finisher board detects a connection error with the connector for the shift tray height sensor.
4) Adjustment error during shift tray height sensor adjustment.

- Possible causes -

- Shift tray height sensor defective
- Finisher board defective

09: Back-up RAM error

The check sum is abnormal when the main switch is turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Finisher board defective

⇒ **0A: Communication error**

Communication error between finisher board and booklet unit board.

- Possible causes -

- Finisher board defective
- Booklet unit board defective
- Poor connection of the interface harness

⇒ **SC741: 1,000-sheet finisher error in saddle stitching area**

- Definition – [D]

Note: When this SC is displayed, check SP7-902 (SC detail). The first 2 digits indicate the type of error.

Example: 741 **01**00000000000000

01: Positioning plate motor error

1) After the positioning plate motor turns on to move the positioning plate from its home position, the positioning plate HP sensor does not deactivate within 1.25s.
2) After the positioning plate motor turns on to return the positioning plate to its home position, the positioning plate HP sensor does activate within 1s.

- Possible causes -

- Positioning plate motor defective
- Positioning plate HP sensor defective

02: Folder roller motor error

1) The folder roller motor sensor doesn't send the clock pulse to the booklet unit board within a certain period after the folder roller motor turns on.

- Possible causes -

- Folder roller motor defective
- Folder roller motor sensor defective

⇒

03: Shutter guide motor error

1) After the shutter guide motor turns on to move the shutter guide from its home position, the shutter guide HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.4s.
2) After the shutter guide motor turns on to return the shutter guide to its home position, the shutter guide HP sensor does not activate within 1s.

- Possible causes -

- Shutter guide motor defective
- Shutter guide HP sensor defective

04: Booklet jogger motor error

1) After the booklet jogger motor turns on to move the booklet jogger plate from its home position, the booklet jogger HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.5s.
2) After the booklet jogger motor turns on to return the booklet jogger plate to its home position, the booklet jogger HP sensor does not activate within 1s.

- Possible causes -

- Booklet jogger motor defective
- Booklet jogger HP sensor defective

05: Stapler motor error

1) The front staple hammer HP switch does not turn off within 0.5s after the front stapler motor turns on.
2) The front staple hammer HP switch does not turn on within 0.5s after the front stapler motor turns on during jam recovery.
3) The rear staple hammer HP switch does not turn off within 0.5s after the rear stapler motor turns on.
4) The rear staple hammer HP switch does not turn on within 0.5s after the rear stapler motor turns on during jam recovery.

- Possible causes -

- Front stapler motor defective
- Front staple hammer HP switch defective
- Rear stapler motor defective
- Rear staple hammer HP switch defective

⇒

06: Folder plate motor error

1) After the folder plate motor turns on to return the folder plate to its home position, the folder plate HP sensor does not activate within 0.3s.
2) After the folder plate motor turns on to move the folder plate from its home position, the folder plate HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.3s.
3) After the folder plate motor turns on to return the folder plate to its home position, the folder plate return sensor does not deactivate within 0.3s.
4) The folder plate return sensor does not activate within 0.3s after the HP sensor deactivates.
5) The pulse count from the folder plate motor sensor is lower than the target minimum.

- Possible causes -

- Folder plate motor defective
- Folder plate HP sensor defective
- Folder plate return sensor defective
- Folder plate motor sensor defective

07: Connector error

1) The connector of the shutter guide HP sensor is not connected.
2) The connector of the folder plate HP sensor is not connected.
3) The connector of the folder plate return sensor is not connected.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection or no connection of the shutter guide HP sensor connector
- Poor connection or no connection of the folder plate HP sensor connector
- Poor connection or no connection of the folder plate return sensor connector

⇒

08: Switch error

1) When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the booklet entrance guide safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.
2) When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the lower door safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.
3) When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the booklet exit cover safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.

- Possible causes -

- Booklet entrance guide safety switch defective
- Lower door safety switch defective
- Booklet exit cover safety switch defective

SC900: Electrical total counter error

-Definition- [D]

The total counter contains something that is not a number.

- Possible causes -

- NVRAM defective

SC901: Mechanical total counter error

-Definition- [D]

The mechanical counter is not connected.

-Possible cause-

- Mechanical total counter defective
- Mechanical total counter connector not connected

SC951: F-gate signal error 2

-Definition- [D]

When the IPU has already received the F-gate signal (laser writing start trigger signal), the IPU receives another F-gate signal.

- Possible causes -

- SBICU defective

⇒ SC953: Scanner image setting error

-Definition- [D]

The settings that are required for image processing using the scanner are not sent from the IPU.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC954: Printer image setting error

-Definition- [D]

The settings that are required for image processing using the printer controller are not sent from the IPU.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC955: Memory setting error

-Definition- [D]

The settings that are required for image processing using the memory are not sent from the IPU.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC956: Scanner setting ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for scanner parameter setting is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC957: Scanner return ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the scanner return signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

⇒

SC958: Scanner ready ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the scanner ready signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC959: Printer setting ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the printer setting signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC960: Printer return ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the printer return signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC961: Printer ready ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the printer controller in the printer controller printing ready condition is incorrect.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC962: Memory setting ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the memory when the IPU sent the memory ready signal is incorrect.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

⇒

SC963: Memory finishing ID error

-Definition- [D]

The ID that is sent from the memory when the IPU sent the memory finish signal is incorrect.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC964: Printer ready error

-Definition- [D]

The print ready signal is not generated for more than 17 seconds after the IPU received the print start signal.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC966: No laser writing signal (F-GATE) error 2

- Definition – [D]

The level of the laser writing signal (F-GATE) fails to reach LOW for more than 15 seconds after the copy paper reaches the registration sensor.

- Possible causes -

- Poor cable connection with the polygon mirror motor driver
- Polygon mirror motor (Drive) defective
- BICU defective

SC970: Scanner ready error

-Definition- [D]

The MCU does not send the ready signal for 10 seconds after the scanning start command is sent to the MCU.

-Possible cause-

- Communication error between BICU and MCU
- MCU software defective
- Buffer is full

SC980: HDD access error

-Definition- [D]

Incorrect parameter is sent from the BICU to the HDD controller.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective
- BICU defective

SC982: HDD construction error

-Definition- [D]

A HDD that does not have the correct specifications has been installed.

- Possible causes -

- Insufficient memory
- Incorrect hard disk type

⇒

SC984: HDD response error

-Definition- [D]

The HDD controller does not generate any response when the BICU sends a read/write signal to the HDD controller.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective
- HDD defective or poor connection

SC990: Software performance error

-Definition- [D]

The software performs an unexpected function.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

NOTE: When this SC occurs, the file name, address, and data will be stored in the NVRAM. This data can be checked by entering SP mode then pressing “0”.

Note the above data and the situation in which this SC occurs. Then report the data and conditions to your technical control center.

⇒ 7.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

7.2.1 SENSORS

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Scanner Home Position (S1)	CN555-2 (MCU)	Stays On	SC121 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC120 is displayed.
Original Width (S2)	CN555-6, 7, 8 (MCU)	Stays On	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Stays Off	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
Original Length-1 (S3)	CN555-11 (MCU)	Stays On	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Stays Off	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
Original Length-2 (S4)	CN555-14 (MCU)	Stays On	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Stays Off	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
LD Unit Home Position (S5)	CN202-8 (IOB)	Stays On	SC328 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed.
		Stays Off	SC327 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed.
Drum Potential Sensor (S6)	CN206-A12 (IOB)	Open	The machine quits auto process control and enters fixed toner supply mode.
		Shorted	
Toner Density (TD) (S7)	CN211-B9 (IOB)	Stays On	SC340 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC340 is displayed.
Image Density (ID) (S8)	CN206-B11 (IOB)	Open	SC352 is displayed after copying.
		Shorted	SC350 is displayed after copying.
Toner End (S9)	CN211-B5 (IOB)	Open	“Toner End” is displayed even if there is enough toner in the toner hopper.
		Shorted	“Toner End” is not displayed even if there is no toner in the toner hopper.
Toner Collection Motor (S10)	CN270-7 (PFB)	Stays On	SC495 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC495 is displayed.
Toner Recycling (S11)	CN207-B2 (IOB)	Stays On	SC495 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC495 is displayed.
1st Paper Feed (S12)	CN271-2 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
2nd Paper Feed (S13)	CN273-A2 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper Jam" is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	"Paper Jam" is displayed whenever a copy is made.
3rd Paper Feed (S14)	CN273-B2 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper Jam" is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	"Paper Jam" is displayed whenever a copy is made.
1st Tray Lift (S15)	C271-8 (PFB)	Stays On	SC501 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC501 is displayed.
2nd Tray Lift (S16)	CN273-A8 (PFB)	Stays On	SC502 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC502 is displayed.
3rd Tray Lift (S17)	CN273-B8 (PFB)	Stays On	SC503 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC503 is displayed.
1st Paper End (S18)	CN271-5 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper End" is displayed even if there is paper in the 1st paper tray.
		Stays Off	"Paper End" is not displayed even if there is no paper in the 1st paper tray.
2nd Paper End (S19)	CN273-A5 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper End" is displayed even if there is paper in the 2nd tray.
		Stays Off	"Paper End" is not displayed even if there is no paper in the 2nd tray.
3rd Paper End (S20)	CN273-B5 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper End" is displayed even if there is paper in the 3rd tray.
		Stays Off	"Paper End" is not displayed even if there is no paper in the 3rd tray.
By-pass Paper End (S21)	CN211-A5 (IOB)	Stays On	"Paper End" is displayed even if there is paper in the by-pass tray.
		Stays Off	"Paper End" is not displayed even if there is no paper in the by-pass tray.
1st Paper Near End (S22)	CN265-B6 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper Near End" is not displayed even if the tray is almost empty.
		Stays Off	"Paper Near End" is displayed even if there is enough paper in the paper tray.
2nd Paper Near End (S23)	CN263-2 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper Near End" is not displayed even if the tray is almost empty.
		Stays Off	"Paper Near End" is displayed even if there is enough paper in the paper tray.
3rd Paper Near End (S24)	CN263-7 (PFB)	Stays On	"Paper Near End" is not displayed even if the tray is almost empty.
		Stays Off	"Paper Near End" is displayed even if there is enough paper in the paper tray.
Rear Fence HP (S25)	CN266-5 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC515 is displayed.

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Rear Fence Return (S26)	CN266-9 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC515 is displayed.
Front Side Fence Open (S27)	CN265-A3 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display.
		Stays Off	SC515 may display.
Front Side Fence Close (S28)	CN265-A6 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display.
		Stays Off	SC515 may display.
Rear Side Fence Open (S29)	CN265-A9 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display.
		Stays Off	SC515 may display
Rear Side Fence Close (S30)	CN265-A12 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display
		Stays Off	SC515 may display
Right Tray Down (S31)	CN265-B3 (PFB)	Stays On	The bottom plate is not lowered when paper on the left tray shift to the right tray, and paper is set in the improper position. When the main switch turn on, no paper is indicated on the display even if there is paper on the right tray.
		Stays Off	The bottom plate lift lower locks at the lowest position.
Right Tray Paper (S32)	CN265-B9 (PFB)	Stays On	The bottom plate rises and falls even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	The bottom plate close not rise even if there is paper on the tray.
Left Tandem Tray Paper (S33)	CN266-11 (PFB)	Stays On	The rear fence moves back and forth continuously.
		Stays Off	The paper on the left tray is not moved to the right tray. No paper is indicated event if there is paper on the left tray.
Duplex Entrance (S34)	CN208-B14 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Duplex Inverter (S35)	CN208-B17 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Duplex Transport 1 (S36)	CN208-B5 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
Duplex Transport 2 (S37)	CN208-B8 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Duplex Transport 3 (S38)	CN208-B11 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
Duplex Jogger HP (S39)	CN208-B2 (IOB)	Stays On	SC521 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC520 is displayed.
Relay (S40)	CN211-A8 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Registration (S41)	CN211-A1 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Guide Plate Position (S42)	CN209-6 (IOB)	Stays On	A paper jam will occur when the guide plate is opened.
		Stays Off	“Guide Plate Close” is displayed after the front door is closed even if the guide plate is closed.
Fusing Exit (S43)	CN207-B8 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
1st Exit (S44)	CN204-B2 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
2nd Exit (S45)	CN204-B5 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
Tray Paper Limit (S46) (Option)	CN204-B8 (IOB)	Stays On	Paper jams may occur.
		Stays Off	“Paper Full on Exit Tray” is displayed.

⇒ 7.2.2 SWITCHES

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Main Power (SW1)	CN101-1, 2 CN111-1, 2	Open	The machine does not turn on.
		Shorted	The machine does not turn off.
Front Door Safety (SW3,5)	CN403-1, 3 (LDU)	Open	SC322 is displayed.
		Shorted	-
Front Door Safety (SW4)	CN152-3, 6, 7 (CNB)	Stays On	"Close the Door" is displayed even if the front cover is closed. SC440, 441, or 531 is displayed.
		Stays Off	"Close the Door" is not displayed even if the front cover is opened.
Lower Front Door Safety (SW6)	CN268-1 (PFB)	Open	SC506 is displayed.
		Shorted	-
Toner Collection Bottle Set (SW7)	CN268-10 (PFB) CN270-10	Open	SC 496 is displayed.
		Shorted	No caution is displayed on the operation panel even if the toner collection bottle is set incorrectly.
Toner Overflow (SW8)	CN270-12 (PFB)	Open	"Full Used Toner Bottle" is displayed even if the toner collection bottle is not full.
		Shorted	"Full Used Toner Bottle" is not displayed even if the toner collection bottle is full.
Paper Size (SW9)	CN262-8,9,10,11,12 (PFB)	Open	The CPU cannot detect the proper paper size, and misfeeds may occur when a copy is made.
		Shorted	

⇒ 7.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main power switch
	115V	210 ~ 230V	
Power Supply Board			
FU101	12A/250V	6.3A/250V	No response
FU102	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	Nothing is displayed on LCD.
FU103	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC101 is displayed.
FU104	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	The ADF does not work.
FU105	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC520 is displayed.
FU106	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC530 is displayed after the start key is pressed.
FU107	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC542 is displayed.

FIRMWARE HISTORY

8. FIRMWARE HISTORY

8.1 A292/A293 FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
Initial Production	A2937553 **B**	Initial Production	3.0
Note: 1) The LCDC ROM A2935203C is required for BICU firmware version 3.1 (A2937564, A2937565 and A2937566). 2) Version 3.1 requires the printer controller. **1. Language** The following items have been changed from English to the language selected: 1) Stamp Setting Note: For Portuguese and Polish, the Stamp setting is still displayed in English. The correction for this will be included in the next software update. **2)** Language Priority button **2. A3/DLT Double Count corrected for Copy counter and Printer counter** When making A3/DLT copies, the Copy and Printer Counters do not count up by 2, even if A3/DLT Double Count has been set. **Note**: The Total Counter correctly counts up by 2. **3. Key counter in connect copy mode**. When the key counter is removed from the machine during a copy job in connect copy mode, both copiers will stop and display “paper jam”. **4. Slip-Sheet Mode** It is possible to select “Copy” or “Blank” from the operation panel in Slip-Sheet Mode.	A2937553 **C**	Not Available	3.1

Continue …

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
5. Mailbox Software modified so that the correct picture indicator is displayed when the mailbox door is open. **Note:** Incorrect indicator was displayed when the Mailbox was the only option installed. **6. Conditions for reverse drum rotation** To reduce the load on the units around the drum, the cycle for reverse drum rotation has been changed as follows: New: The drum is turned in reverse at the end of a copy job if the cumulative running time for the drum has reached or exceeded 4 minutes. Old: The drum turns in reverse at the end of every copy job. **7. New SP Mode for B302 Finisher: SP6119** SP6119 has been added to enable the punch function for Thick Paper Mode. **Note:** 1. Before enabling SP6119, please be sure that the customer is aware of the specific range of paper weights that can be used with this mode. **2.** Do not enable this mode if the customer is using OHP transparencies.			

Mode No.	Function			Setting
6119	Punch Function Enabled (Thick Paper)			
		*	Selects whether the punch function is enabled or not in thick paper mode.	**No: Disable** Yes: Enable

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
8. 8K/16K Paper Size (China/Taiwan) 8K/16K paper size can be fed from Trays 2 and 3 by selecting **3:CH** in SP5131 "Paper Size Type Selection". Note: The factory default for SP5131 is 3:CH in models for China and Taiwan.			

Mode No.	Function			Setting
	Paper Size Type Selection			
		*	Refer to service manual.	0: JP **1: NA** **2: EU** **3: CH**

Continue …

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
9. New SP Mode added to enable Margin Per Original function (SP5924) The settings for this mode are as follows:			

Mode No.	Function				Setting
5924	Margin Per Original				
	1	Margin Per Original	*	Selects whether or not Margin Per Original is enabled. **No** : Images are shifted with a binding margin during image writing. **Yes**: The margin is applied during scanning. **NOTE**: *After **Yes** has been selected, the "per original" key is displayed. This key must be pressed to activate the mode.*	**No** Yes
	2	Per Original Priority	*	Selects whether or not Margin Per Original is enabled as default. This setting is given priority over 5924-1.	**On** Off

NOTE: 1) When this mode is enabled, the ADF feed interval is longer.
2) Although it is possible to "adjust" the margins on the operation panel for Sample Copies, the adjustment itself is not applied to the samples.
3) The following modes cannot be used with Margin Per Original: Booklet, Magazine, Combine, Double copy, Image repeat.

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
⇒ **Corrections / Updates:**	A2937553 **E**	Not Available	3.5.1

1. New Copy Feature and SP Mode (SP5971) Added

1) New Copy Feature: Enhance Density Mode

This feature has been added to ensure that image density does not drop while making multiple copies of originals with a high percent of solid black areas.

To set effective original density and number of copies for multi-copy mode, use SP5971 (see below).

To add the Enhance Density Key to the display panel and to control the level, perform the following procedure:

(1) Press the User Tools/Counter key.
(2) Press the Copy/Document Server Features Key.
(3) Open General Features, screen 3/3.
(4) Select one of the Shortcut Keys from F1 – F5.
(5) Register the Enhance Density Key.
(6) Open General Features, screen 1/3.
(7) Select the setting for Enhance Density Level.
High: Vt+0.6
Medium: Vt+0.4 (default)
Low: Vt+0.2

2) New SP Mode: SP5971 (Enhance Copy Setting):

The following settings apply to Enhance Density Mode:

Mode No.	Function				Setting
5971	Enhance Copy Setting				
	2	Effective Original Density	*	Selects the original image ratio at which the mode is activated (calc. from setting).	1 ~ 60% 1% step **4%**
	3	Effective Multiple Copy	*	Selects the sheet number at which mode is activated with multi-copy jobs (calc. from setting).	1 ~ 50sheets 1 sheet step **3 sheets**

Continue …

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
⇒ **2. Paper jam in finisher (B302) + Printer Mode** Depending on the Printer Mode settings, jams can occur in the Finisher when continuous print jobs are shifted alternately between the proof and shift trays. The machine is not able to switch fast enough between the two paper paths in these cases. The interval between jobs has been slightly increased to allow the machine time enough to make the switch. **3. Fusing Unit Fan Motor Off-Timing Change** To ensure that the hot air around the toner bottle is properly removed, the fusing unit fan motor will be kept on whenever the 24V is being supplied. Therefore, it will turn off only when the main switch or operation switch is turned off or when the machine is shut down by the Auto-Off function. **4. Word Correction** Some display language words and phrases have been corrected or improved.			
Corrections / Updates: **1. New SP Mode (SP5970) for EB-70 (Printer controller)** The following setting applies when the EB-70 printer controller is installed.	A2937553 **F**	Not Available	3.6

Mode No.	Function			Setting
5970	Printer Installed			
			Selects whether the EB-70 printer controller is installed or not.	**0: No** 1: Yes

2. Some Part of Image Missing in Tab Stock when Printing from Document Server **<Symptom>** When files in the Document Server are printed onto Tab Stock, the image is not rotated even though tab stock can be set sideways only. This is because the documents are saved lengthwise only in the Document Server. **<Modification>** The error has been corrected.			Continue …

Firmware History

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
3. Malfunction with Printer Dot Edge Parameter Setting when Printing from Document Server **<Symptom>** When edge smoothing is off, the line thickness is not changed when the printer dot edge parameter setting (SP2114) is changed.			
⇒ **1. SP5009 (Language Selection) Deleted** This SP Mode is no longer necessary since the display language can be selected using Language Priority inside User Tools. **2. SC990 Misdetection（Taiwan machines only）** **<Symptom Corrected>** SC990 occurs when the document server key is pressed. The cause was determined to be a bug with the software. **3. New Items Added to Output Checks (SP5804)** The following items have been added to the output check for the tandem tray: **No** / **Description** 22 / Right Tray Lock 23 / Left Tray Lock **4. Incorrect the Drum Unit Setting** **<Feature Changed>** There is no response when the Start key is pressed, and the machine displays “copying”. This was because the drum unit had not been set properly. The new software version allows the machine to start the job even if the drum has not been set properly, however this will be indicated by an image quality problem on the printout. Therefore if this occurs, check to see if the drum has been set properly. **5. Page Numbering for Duplex Copy** **<Feature added>** Even when Center has been selected for the page numbering position and fine adjustments are made left/right, the actual printing positions on the front and rear sides will match.	A2937553 **G**	Not Available	3.11

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
6. Scanning Speed Increased The Document Server scanning speed has been increased from 60 to 70spm. **7. SC Display Error (SC740 instead of SC720)** **<Symptom Corrected>** For a finisher motor failure, the machine displays SC740 when it should display SC720. In addition, a SC740 occurrence is logged in the machine history. Note: SC740 is an SC error code for the A763 Booklet Finisher. **8. Paper Exit Orientation Error** **<Symptom Corrected>** Normally when switching from platen to DF mode, the copy paper exit orientation will be changed so that the front side faces up. However, when switching over to Batch (SADF) mode, the machine does not make the change (i.e. paper is still exited with the rear side facing up). **9. Error when fusing temperature has been set to 175℃ or lower.** **<Symptom Corrected>** If the fusing temperature has been set to 175 or lower and thick paper feed is set for the bypass tray, the machine displays “copying” but the job does not start. **10. Display Deletion** **<Symptom Corrected>** “Tab Stock” was displayed in the Tray 2 Special Paper Indication menu (User Tools → System Settings) when the Mailbox was connected. **11. Word Correction** Some words and phrases have been corrected or improved. For example: System Setting - Auto Tray Switching			

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
⇒ **Note:** The pre-paid card and key counter have not been fully tested with the Aficio 700/551 by Ricoh, because they are not official options for the Aficio 700/551. However, the following items (1 and2) have been improved as per a field request. **1. Error when connecting the pre-paid card connector to the mainframe 4-pin key counter connector:** **<Symptoms>** 1) The copier only counts up once for every 2 copies made. 2) When the key card has been set in the machine and the main switch turned on, the machine does not detect the card unless the card is taken out and set again. * Other symptoms are possible. The actual symptom can vary depending on the type of card used. **2. Counter error after key counter is removed and jam occurs** **<Symptom>** If a jam occurs after the key counter is removed during a copy job, the counter value is less than actual number by 1 when copying starts again. **3. SC337 Miss-log** **<Symptom>** SC337 is not displayed but is recorded in the logging data. **< Cause:>** There are cases where the 24V is cut before the 5V when the main switch is turned off, causing SC337 to occur. Since this occurs when the machine is being turned off, there is no SC337 display; an error is miss-logged. **< Solution:>** To prevent SC337 from occurring at power off, both the display and logging of the error will be performed at a fixed time after occurrence (200ms). This will allow time for all power lines to drop to 0V, thus preventing miss logging of SC337.	A2937553 **H**	Not Available	3.11.1

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
⇒ **. SC990 when printing out SMC sheet: Polish language only** **<Symptoms>** When SP5590-1/-3 is used to print out the SMC sheet and Polish has been selected as the display language, the wrench symbol lights up and an SC990 error is logged. **2. SC990 at copy start when ID sensor Vsg=0V** **<Symptom>** SC990 occurs if copying is initiated when the ID sensor Vsg is at 0V. The condition is cleared when process control initialization is performed, however when the power is turned off and then on again, it will always occur when copying is initiated. **3. Diagonal white lines/image shifting with SMC sheet** **<Symptom>** When printing out the SMC sheet or counter data printout onto 81/2 x 11 lengthwise paper, diagonal white lines appear on the copy or the image data is shifted. **4. PM alert display not displayed at PM timing** **<Symptom>** The PM alert is not displayed when the PM counter reaches its set value.	A2937553 **J**	NA	3.13
			Continued

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
5. Margin adjustment setting error - Interrupt key **<Symptom>** When the interrupt key is pressed and the margin adjustment settings are changed for the new job, the machine returns to the original copy job modes/settings, but does not return to the original margin settings. **6. Default setting error when performing Memory All Clear on models for China** **<Symptom>** When SP5801 (Memory All Clear) is performed on models for China, the default for the third paper was displayed as B4, instead of what it should have been (A3). The default value (A3) will now be correctly set. **7. New SP Mode (SP5972: Document Server Counter Selection)** When copy/print files on the document server are printed out, this SP mode allows them to be counted separately as copies and prints, or all together as copies.	A2937553 **J**	NA	3.13

Mode No.	Function			Setting
5972	Document Server Counter Selection			
			Select the counter	**0: Copy** 1: Copy or Printer

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
⇒ **1. Fusing jam reset conditions changed** **<Symptoms>** To ensure that fusing "D" jams are properly cleared, the software has been changed so that the jam condition does not clear unless the fusing unit is removed and re-inserted. Previously, the condition could be reset with power Off/On if the sensor inside the unit did not detect the jammed paper. **Note:** Please instruct customers that after removing the jammed paper around the fusing unit, it is also necessary to remove and reinsert the fusing unit and check for any jammed paper inside the unit as well. **2. PM Call Display Error** **<Symptoms>** If the main power is turned Off/On while a PM call message is displayed, the message and PM alert condition are cleared. **3. LCT paper size selections added to SP5019 (Tray Paper Size Selection): A4R and LTR** **<Field Request>** To enable selection of these sizes, it is necessary to install the LG Kit and change the size settings of the side and end fences. **4. OHP/Finisher Hole-Punch Change (B312)** **<Field Request>** Software changed so that OHP transparencies cannot be used with the hole-punch feature of the Finisher (B312). When selecting OHP transparencies with the # key (bypass tray feed) and then the hole-punch function, the machine inhibits operation and a warning display appears on the panel. **5. SC 337 detection conditions changed** SC 337 detection conditions changed so that it will not be triggered by such factors as electrical noise while in standby mode.	A2937553 **K**	NA	3.16
			Continued

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
6. SC300 detection conditions changed: To minimize unnecessary SC300 occurrences, the SC300 detection method for charge leaks has been changed as follows: **Old:** Counter for number of leaks is cumulative for the entire ON → OFF charge output interval. **New:** Counter is reset every 500ms. **7. Printing Doesn't Start in Interrupt and Low Power Modes** **<Symptoms>** Copying not possible when the machine enters Low Power Mode from the Copy Interrupt screen, and then recovers back to Ready status (same screen). **Order of operation:** Copying in interrupt mode → Machine enters low power mode → Auto-response brings machine out of low power mode (still in interrupt) → Original set in DF, Start key pressed and original fed → Start key alternates between green and red, copies cannot be made			
⇒ **1. Display error: Cover/Slip Sheets settings** **<Symptom>** In the Cover/Slip Sheets settings screen for Trays 1/2 (User Tools → System Settings), the display for the Duplex and Simplex buttons was reversed, causing Duplex to be activated when Simplex is selected (and vice-versa). **Note:** This only occurs with the Danish, Finnish and Hungarian display languages. **2. Page numbering error in Cover/Slip Sheet mode** **<Symptom>** The page numbering printed on copies in Cover/Slip Sheet mode is incorrect when Type 4 numbering is selected (e.g. 1-1, 1-2) and the copy job has been set to begin from the 2nd page onward.	A2937553 **L**	NA	3.17

3,000-SHEET FINISHER
B312/B586

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Size:

Tray	Modes	Sizes
Upper tray		A3 to A6 lengthwise, DLT to HLT
Shift tray	Sort/stack mode	A3 to A5, DLT to LT
	No sort/stack mode	A3 to A6 lengthwise, DLT to LT
Staple tray		A3 to B5, DLT to LT

Paper Weight:

Tray	Weight
Shift tray	52 g/m^2 to 157 g/m^2, 14 to 42 lb
Upper tray	52 g/m^2 to 157 g/m^2, 14 to 42 lb
Staple tray	64 g/m^2 to 80 g/m^2, 17 to 21 lb

Paper Capacity (in case of 80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

Tray	Modes	Paper size	Punch mode	No punch mode
Shift tray	No staple	A4-S, LT-S	2,500 sheets	3,000 sheets
		A5	100 sheets	100 sheets
		Others	1,500 sheets	1,500 sheets
Upper tray		A4/LT or smaller	200 sheets	250 sheets
		Larger than A4/LT	50 sheets	50 sheets
Staple tray	One size	A4/LT or smaller	40 sheets	50 sheets
		Larger than A4/LT	25 sheets	30 sheets
	Mixed sizes	A3 and A4-S DLT and LT-S	25 sheets	30 sheets

(-S: Sideways)

Tray	Modes	Paper size	Sheets/ set	Sets	Total capacity
Shift tray	Staple No punch One size	A4-S LT-S	2 to 9	150	300 to 1,350
			10 to 50	300 to 60	3,000
		A4, B5-S LT	2 to 9	150	300 to 1,350
			10 to 50	150 to 30	1,500
		A3, B4 DLT, LG	2 to 9	100	200 to 900
			10 to 30	150 to 50	1,500
	Staple Punch One size	A4-S LT-S	2 to 9	150	300 to 1,350
			10 to 40	250 to 63	2,500
		A4, B5-S LT	2 to 9	150	300 to 1,350
			10 to 40	150 to 37	1,500
		A3, B4 DLT, LG	2 to 9	100	200 to 900
			10 to 25	150 to 60	1,500
	Staple No punch Mixed sizes	A3 and A4-S B4 and B5-S	2 to 30	50	100 to 1,500
	Staple Punch Mixed sizes	A3 and A4-S B4 and B5-S	2 to 25	50	100 to 1,250

(-S: Sideways)

Punch Unit (option):

Type

Version	Holes	Distance between holes	Diameter
American	2	2.76 inches	0.31 inches
	3	4.25 inches	0.31 inches
European	2	80 mm	6.5 mm
	4	80-80-80 mm	6.5 mm
Nordic	4	21-70-21 mm	6.5 mm

Paper Size

Type	Sizes
American 2	A3 to A5, DLT to LT
American 3	A3, B4, A4-S, B5-S, DLT, LT-S
European 2	A3 to A5, DLT to LT
European 4	A3, A4-S, DLT, LT-S
Nordic 4	A3 to A5, DLT to LT

(-S: Sideways)

Paper Weight

Type	Weight
American 2	52 g/m^2 to 163 g/m^2, 14 to 42 lb
American 3	
European 2	
European 4	52 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2, 14 to 34 lb
Nordic 4	

Staple Position: 4 positions
1 staple: 3 positions (Front, Rear and Rear-Oblique)
2 staples: 1 position

Staple Replenishment: Cartridge (5,000 staples)

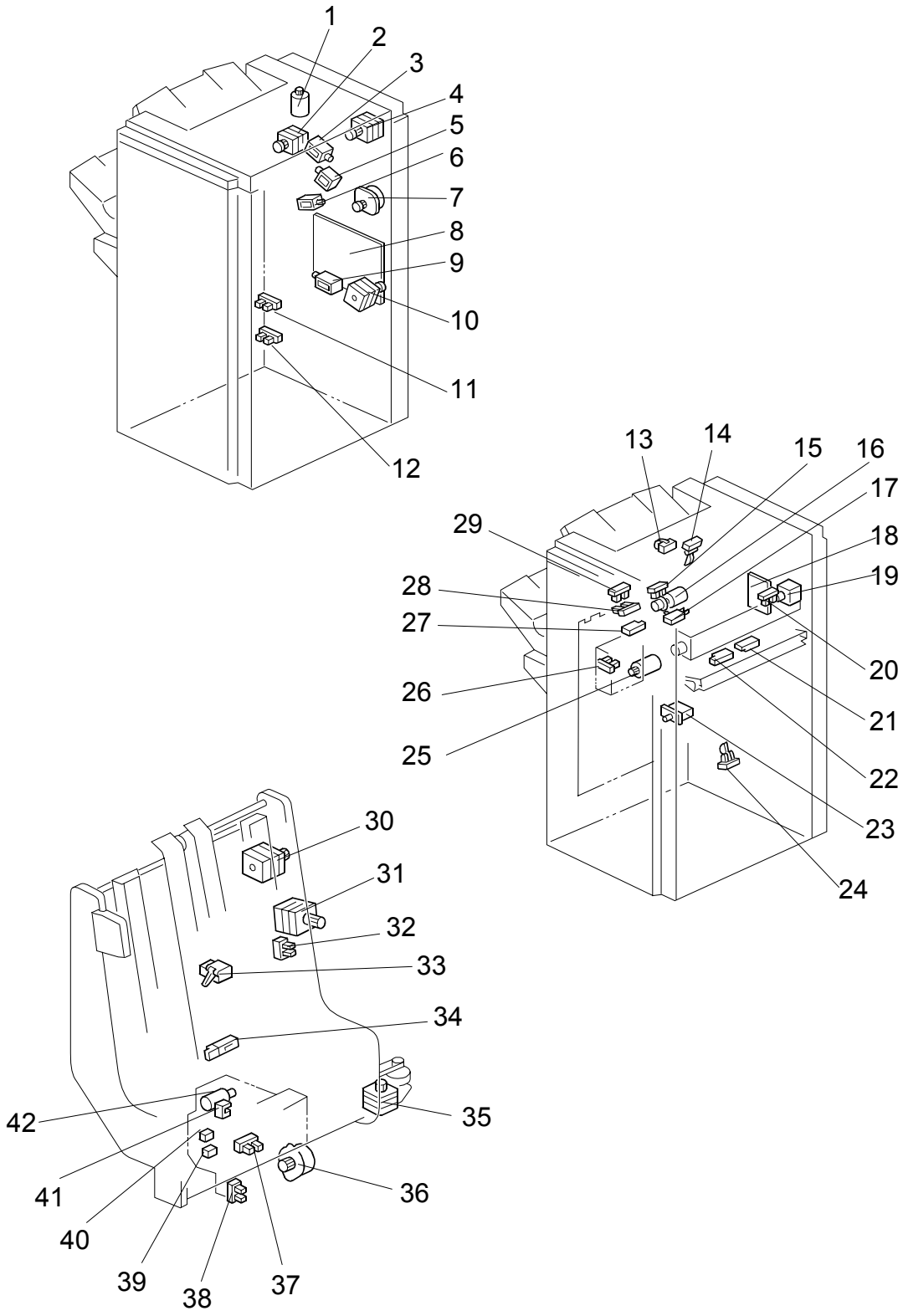
Power Source: 24Vdc (from copier)

Power Consumption: 48 W (without Punch unit)
60 W (with Punch unit)

Dimensions (W x D x H): 625 x 545 x 960 mm, 24.61 x 21.46 x 37.80 inches

Weight: 45 kg (without Punch unit)
47.4 kg (with Punch unit)

1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



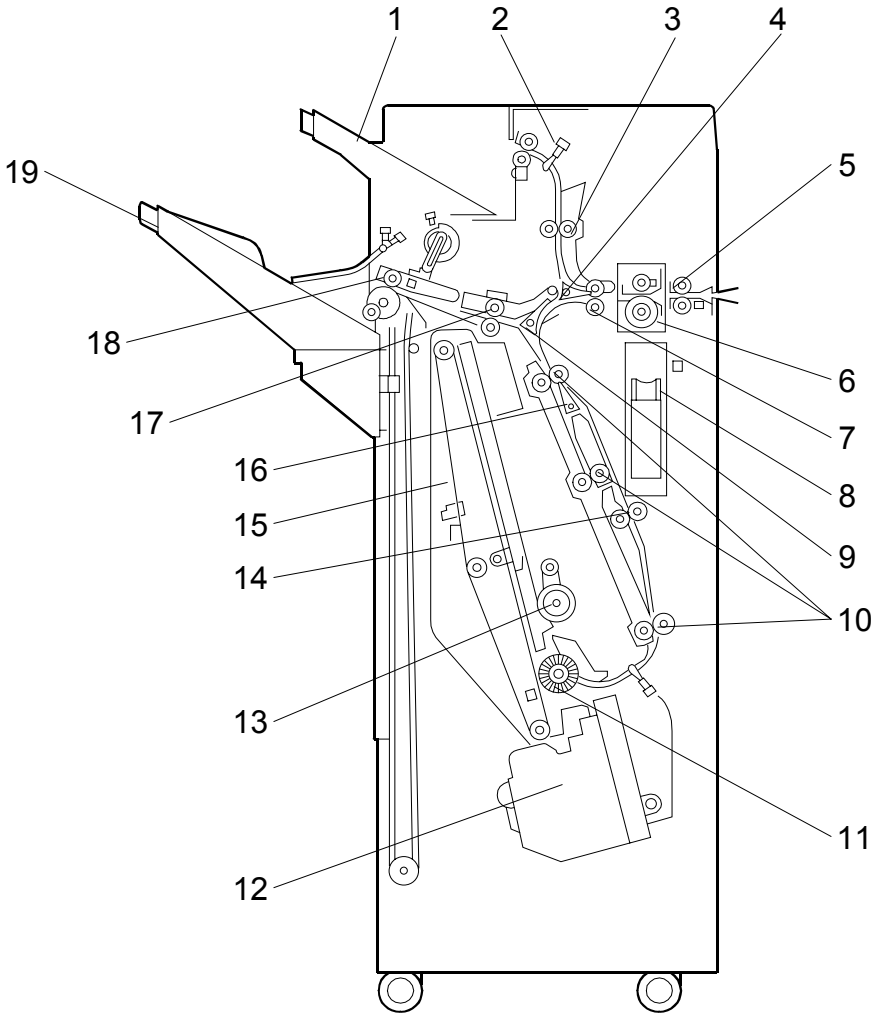
1. Shift Tray Lift Motor
2. Shift Tray Exit Motor
3. Tray Junction Gate Solenoid
4. Upper Transport Motor
5. Stapler Junction Gate Solenoid
6. Pre-stack Junction Gate Solenoid
7. Pre-stack Motor
8. Main Board
9. Positioning Roller Solenoid
10. Lower Transport Motor
11. Shift Tray Lower Limit 1 Sensor
12. Shift Tray Lower Limit 2 Sensor
13. Upper Tray Paper Limit Sensor
14. Upper Tray Exit Sensor
15. Shift Tray Exit Plate HP Sensor
16. Shift Tray Exit Plate Motor
17. Shift Tray Upper Limit Switch
18. Punch Board
19. Punch Motor
20. Punch HP Sensor
21. Hopper Sensor
22. Entrance Sensor
23. Front Door Safety Switch
24. Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor
25. Shift Motor
26. Shift Tray Half-turn Sensor
27. Shift Tray Exit Sensor
28. Stack Height 2 Sensor
29. Stack Height 1 Sensor
30. Stack Feed-out Motor
31. Jogger Motor
32. Jogger Fence HP Sensor
33. Stack Feed-out Belt HP Sensor
34. Stapler Tray Paper Sensor
35. Stapler Motor
36. Stapler Rotation Motor
37. Stapler Rotation HP Sensor
38. Stapler HP Sensor
39. Staple End Switch
40. Cartridge Set Switch
41. Staple Hammer HP Sensor
42. Staple Hammer Motor

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Upper Transport	Drives the entrance rollers, the middle and upper transport rollers, and upper tray exit roller.	4
M2	Lower Transport	Drives the lower transport rollers, the alignment brush roller, and the positioning roller.	9
M3	Jogger	Moves the jogger fence.	31
M4	Stapler	Moves the staple unit from side to side.	35
M5	Stapler Rotation	Rotates the stapler 45 degrees.	36
M6	Staple Hammer	Drives the staple hammer.	42
M7	Stack Feed-out	Drives the stack feed-out belt.	30
M8	Shift Tray Exit	Drives the exit roller for the shift tray.	2
M9	Shift	Moves the shift tray from side to side.	25
M10	Shift Tray Lift	Moves the shift tray up or down.	1
M11	Punch	Drives the punch shaft and roller.	19
M12	Pre-stack	Drives the pre-stack roller.	7
M13	Shift Tray Exit Plate	Moves the exit plate up or down.	16
Sensors			
S1	Entrance	Detects the copy paper entering the finisher and checks for misfeeds.	22
S2	Stapler Tray Entrance	Detects the copy paper entering the staple tray and checks for misfeeds.	24
S3	Jogger Fence HP	Detects the home position of the jogger fence.	32
S4	Stapler Tray Paper	Detects the copy paper in the staple tray.	34
S5	Stapler HP	Detects the home position of the staple unit for side-to-side movement.	38
S6	Stapler Rotation HP	Detects the home position of the stapler unit for 45-degree rotation.	37
S7	Staple Hammer HP	Detects the home position of the staple hammer.	41
S8	Stack Feed-out Belt HP	Detects the home position of the stack feed-out belt.	33
S9	Shift Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds at the shift tray.	27
S10	Stack Height 1	Detects when the top of the copy paper stack in the shift tray is at the correct position.	29
S11	Stack Height 2	Detects when the top of the copy paper stack in the shift tray has become too high.	28
S12	Upper Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds at the upper tray.	14
S13	Upper Tray Paper Limit	Detects when the paper stack height in the upper tray is at its upper limit.	13

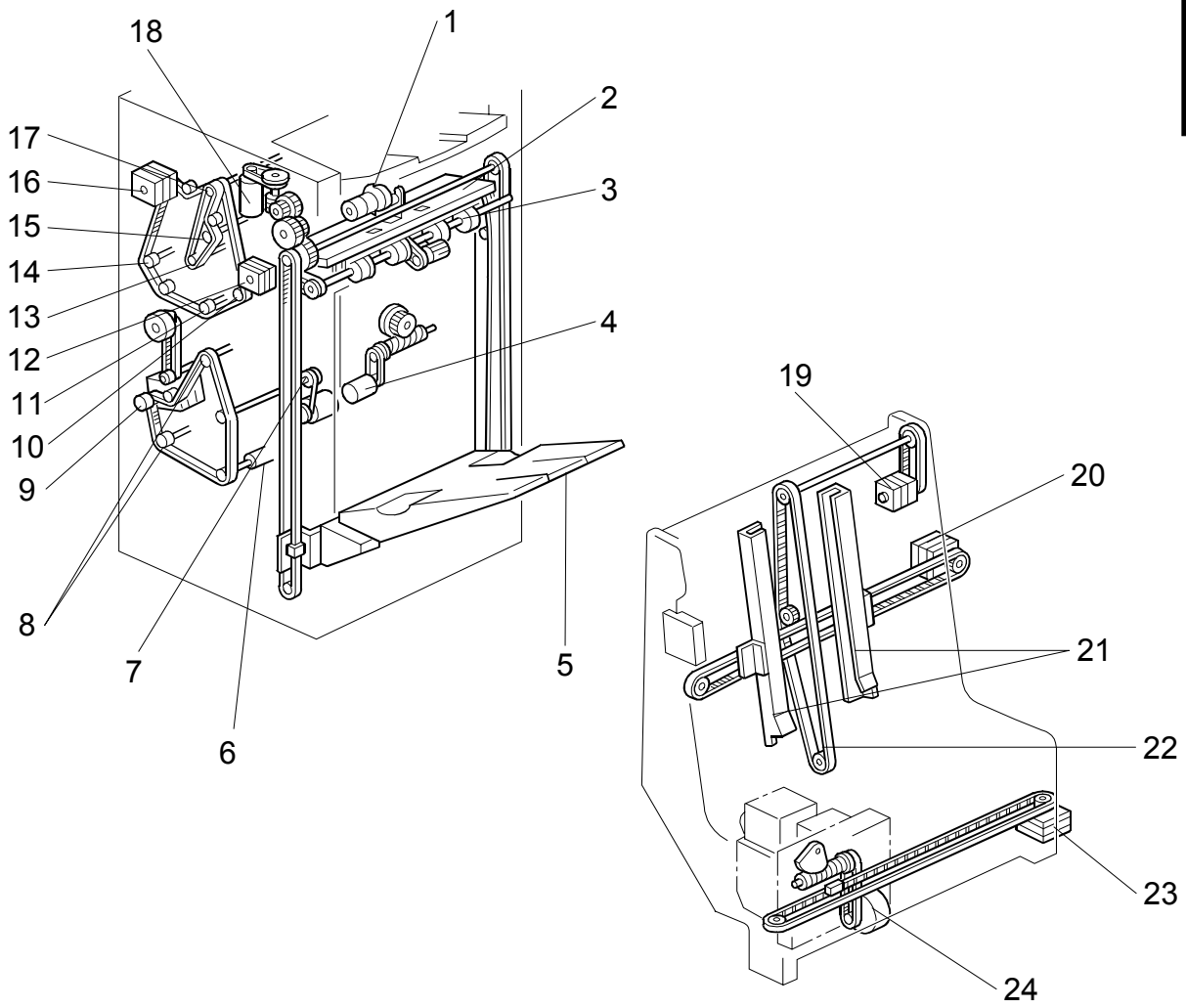
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
S14	Shift Tray Half-turn	Detects the return position for side-to-side movement of the shift tray.	26
S15	Shift Tray Lower Limit 1	Detects when the shift tray is nearly at its lower limit.	11
S16	Shift Tray Lower Limit 2	Detects when the shift tray is at its lower limit.	12
S17	Hopper	Detects when the punch waste hopper is full and detects when the punch tray is set.	21
S18	Punch HP	Detects the home position of the punch shaft and roller.	20
S19	Shift Tray Exit Plate HP	Detects the home position of the exit plate.	15
Switches			
SW1	Front Door Safety	Cuts the dc power when the front door is opened.	23
SW2	Shift Tray Upper Limit	Cuts the power to the shift tray lift motor when the shift tray position is at its upper limit.	17
SW3	Staple End	Detects the staples in the cartridge.	39
SW4	Cartridge Set	Detects the staple cartridge in the stapler.	40
Solenoids			
SOL1	Tray Junction Gate	Drives the tray junction gate.	3
SOL2	Stapler Junction Gate	Drives the stapler junction gate.	5
SOL3	Positioning Roller	Moves the positioning roller against the stapling tray.	10
SOL4	Pre-stack Junction Gate	Drives the pre-stack junction gate.	6
PCBs			
PCB1	Main	Controls the finisher and communicates with the copier.	8
PCB2	Punch	Passes signals between the punch unit and the finisher main board.	18

1.4 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Upper Tray
2. Upper Tray Exit Roller
3. Upper Transport Roller
4. Tray Junction Gate
5. 1st Entrance Roller
6. Punch Unit
7. 2nd Entrance Roller
8. Punch Waste Hopper
9. Stapler Junction Gate
10. Lower Transport Rollers
11. Alignment Brush Roller
12. Stapler
13. Positioning Roller
14. Pre-stack Roller
15. Stack Feed-out Belt
16. Pre-stack Junction Gate
17. Middle Transport Roller
18. Shift Tray Exit Roller
19. Shift Tray

1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT

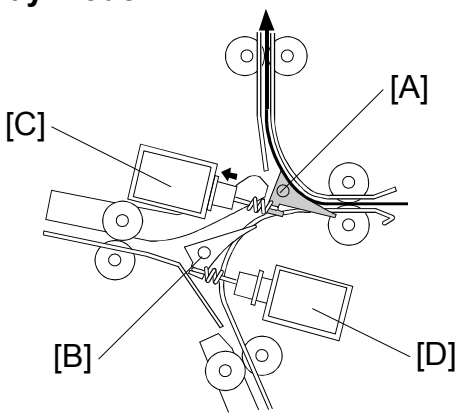


1. Shift Tray Exit Plate Motor
2. Shift Tray Exit Plate
3. Shift Tray Exit Roller
4. Shift Motor
5. Shift Tray
6. Alignment Brush Roller
7. Positioning Roller
8. Lower Transport Rollers 2 and 3
9. Lower Transport Motor
10. Middle Transport Roller
11. Lower Transport Roller 1
12. Shift Tray Exit Motor
13. 2nd Entrance Roller
14. 1st Entrance Roller
15. Upper Transport Roller
16. Upper Transport Motor
17. Upper Tray Exit Roller
18. Shift Tray Lift Motor
19. Stack Feed-out Motor
20. Jogger Motor
21. Jogger Fence
22. Stack Feed-out Belt
23. Stapler Motor
24. Stapler Rotation Motor

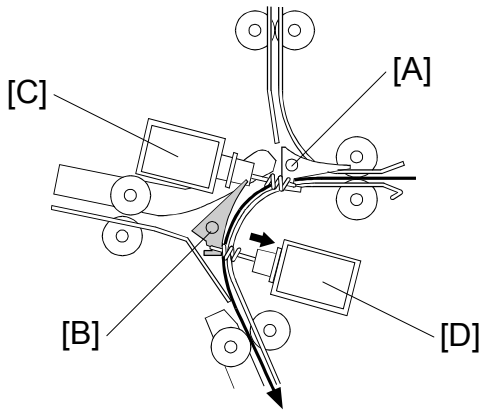
2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM

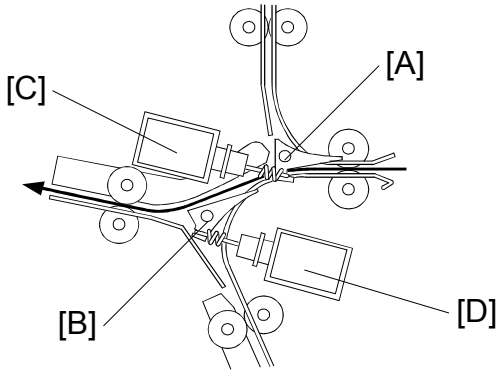
- Upper tray mode -



- Staple mode -



- Sort/stack mode -



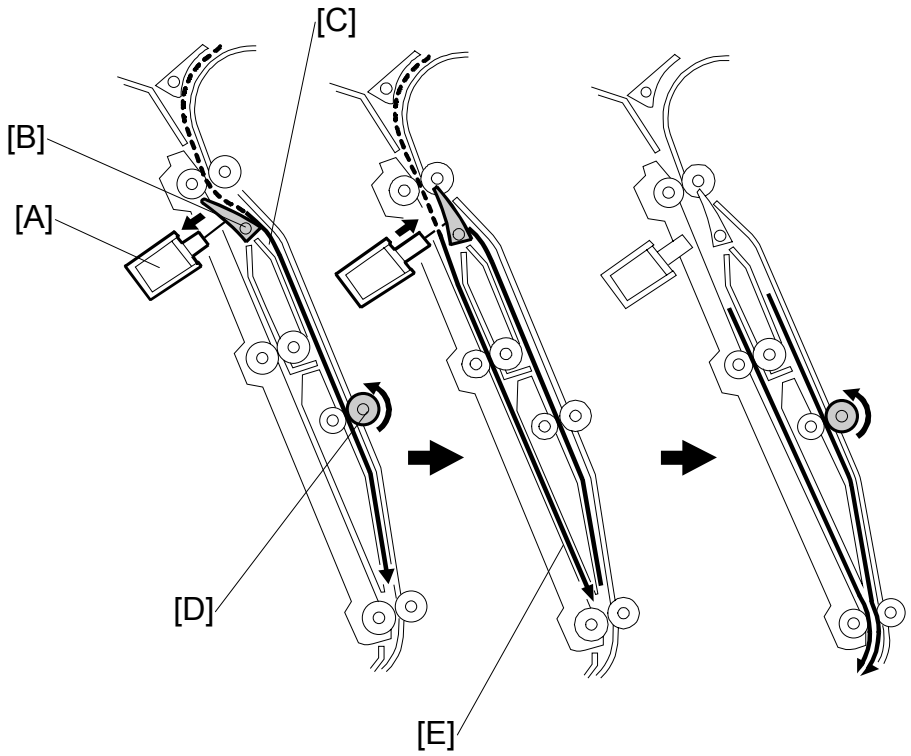
Depending on the finishing mode, the copies are directed up, straight through, or down by the combination of the tray junction gate [A] and stapler junction gate [B]. These gates are controlled by the tray junction gate solenoid [C] and stapler junction gate solenoid [D].

Upper tray mode
The tray junction gate solenoid turns on. The copies go up to the upper tray.

Sort/stack mode
The tray junction gate solenoid and the stapler junction gate solenoid remain off. The copies are sent to the shift tray directly.

Staple mode
The tray junction gate solenoid remains off and the stapler junction gate solenoid turns on. The copies go downwards to the jogger unit.

2.2 PRE-STACK MECHANISM



This mechanism improves productivity in staple mode.

During stapling, the copier has to wait. This mechanism reduces the wait by holding the first two sheets of a job while the previous job is still being stapled. It only works during the second and subsequent sets of a multi-set copy job.

The pre-stack junction gate solenoid [A] turns on shortly after the 1st sheet of paper enters the finisher. This opens the junction gate [B], and directs the sheet to the pre-stack path [C]. (This sheet cannot be fed to the stapler yet, because the first set is still being stapled.)

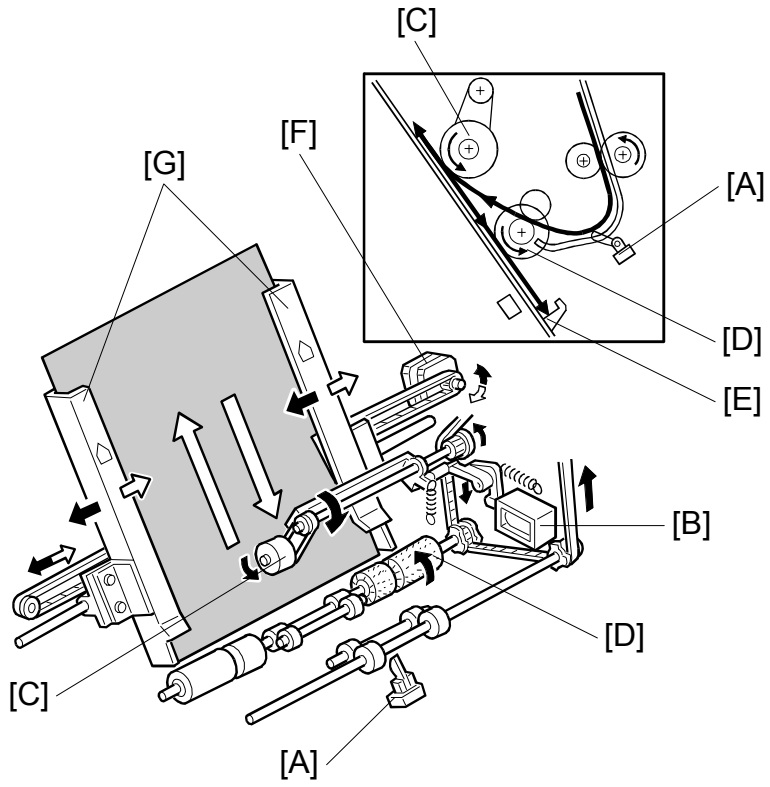
When the sheet has passed the pre-stack roller [D], the pre-stack motor turns off to stop the sheet until the second copy comes in.

The pre-stack junction gate solenoid turns off again shortly after the trailing edge of the 1st sheet enters the finisher, and the 2nd sheet is sent to the main paper path [E].

Then the pre-stack motor turns on again to feed the first copy that is stopped in the pre-stack path [C], and the first and second copies are delivered together to the staple tray.

All sheets after the 2nd sheet go to the stapler tray via the main paper path [E].

2.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM



In staple mode, each sheet of copy paper is vertically and horizontally aligned when it arrives in the jogger unit.

Vertical Paper Alignment

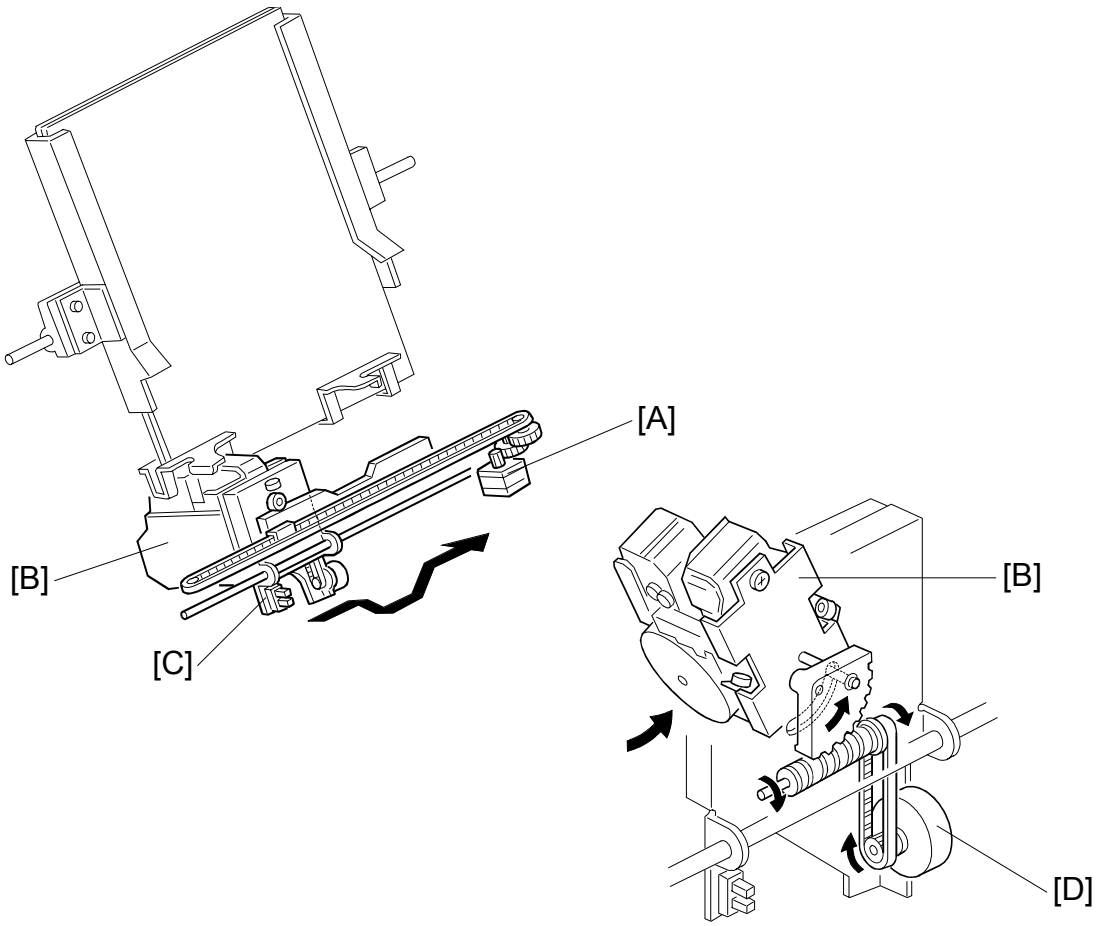
After the trailing edge of the copy passes the stapler tray entrance sensor [A], the positioning roller solenoid [B] is energized for 280 ms to push the positioning roller [C] into contact with the paper. The positioning roller and alignment brush roller [D] rotate to push the paper back and align the trailing edge of the paper against the stack stopper [E].

Horizontal Paper Alignment

When the print key is pressed, the jogger motor [F] turns on and the jogger fences [G] move to the waiting position, which is 7 mm wider on both sides than the selected paper.

When the trailing edge of the paper passes the staple unit entrance sensor, the jogger motor turns on for approximately 70 ms to move the jogger fences 5 mm towards the paper. After a short time, the jogger motor turns on again approximately for 60 ms for the horizontal paper alignment then goes back to the waiting position.

2.4 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM



Side-to-side:

The stapler motor [A] moves the stapler [B] from side to side. After the start key is pressed, the stapler moves from its home position to the stapling position.

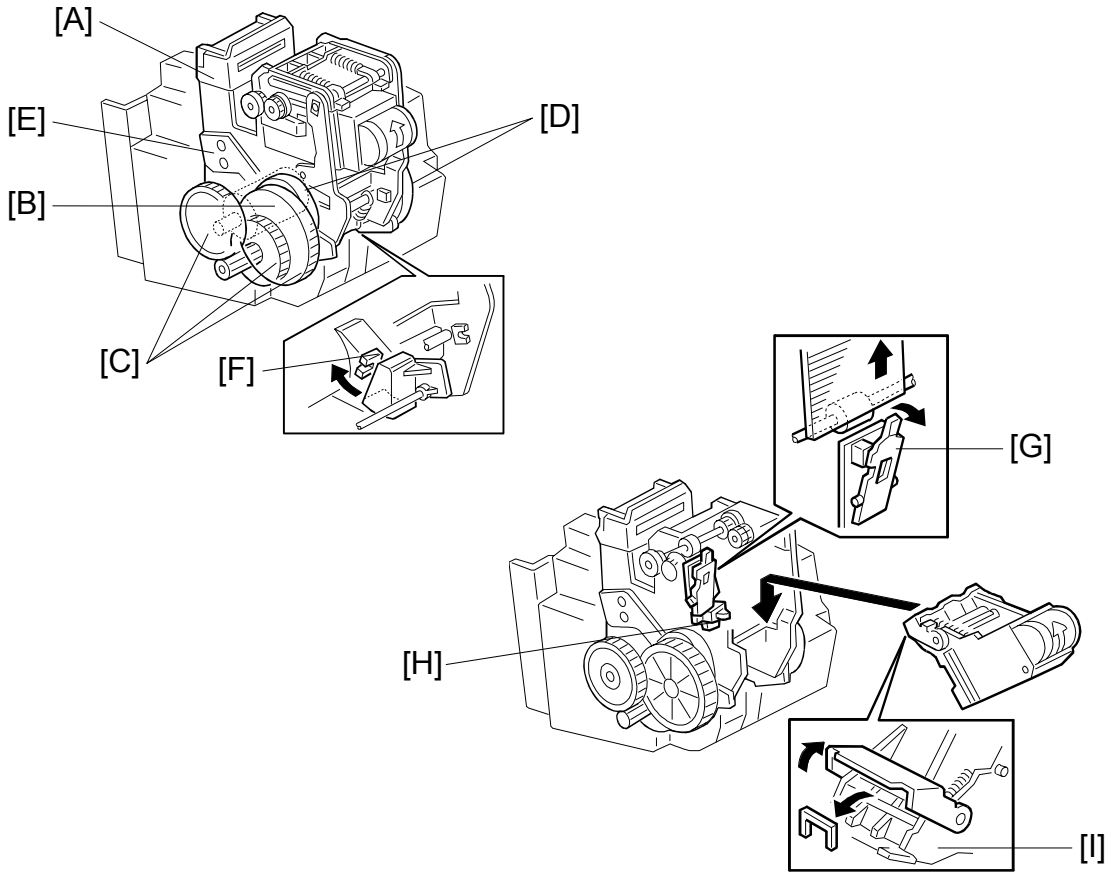
If two-staple-position mode is selected, the stapler moves to the front stapling position first, then moves to the rear stapling position. However, for the next copy set, it staples in the reverse order (at the rear side first then at the front side).

After the job is completed, the stapler moves back to its home position. This is detected by the stapler HP sensor [C].

Rotation:

In the oblique staple position mode, the stapler rotation motor [D] rotates the stapler 45° after it moves to the stapling position.

2.5 STAPLER



The staple hammer [A] is driven by the staple hammer motor [B] via gears [C], two cams [D], and two links [E].

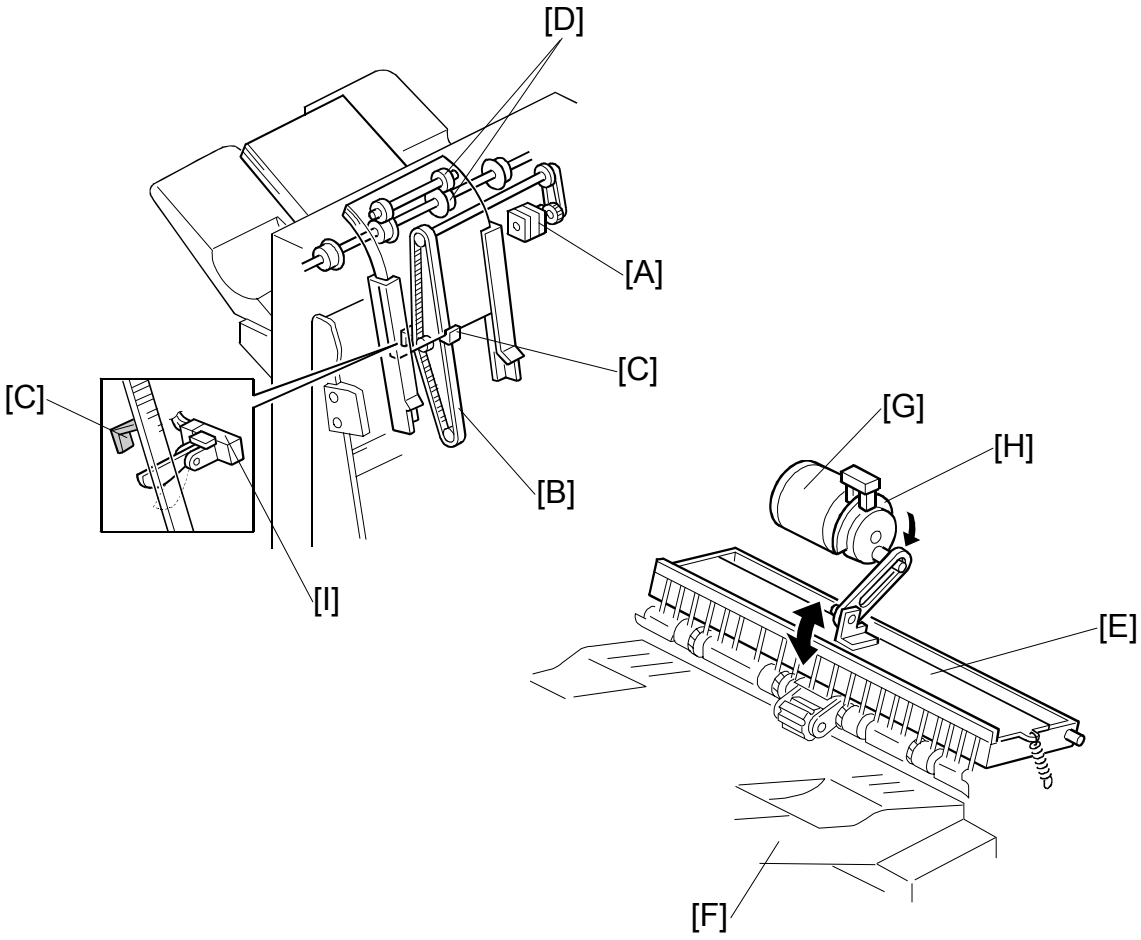
When the aligned copies are brought to the stapling position by the positioning roller, alignment brush roller and jogger fences, the staple hammer motor starts. When the cams complete one rotation, the staple hammer home position sensor [F] turns on, detecting the end of the stapling operation. The staple hammer motor then stops.

There are two sensors in the stapler. One is the staple end switch [G] for detecting staple end conditions (it detects when there is only one sheet of staples left in the cartridge). The other is the cartridge set switch [H] for detecting whether a staple cartridge is installed.

When a staple end or no cartridge condition is detected, a message is displayed advising the operator to install a staple cartridge. If this condition is detected during a copy job, the indication will appear, but the copy job will not stop.

The staple cartridge has a clinch area [I], in which jammed staples are left. Operators can remove the jammed staples from this area.

2.6 FEED-OUT MECHANISM



After a set of copies has been stapled, the stack feed-out motor [A] starts rotating to drive the stack feed-out belt [B]. The pawl [C] on the belt lifts the stapled copies up and transports it to the shift tray exit rollers [D].

The shift tray exit plate [E] is opened until the leading edge of the stapled copies has passed the shift tray exit rollers by a certain distance. Then the shift tray exit plate is closed and the stapled copies are fed out to the shift tray [F].

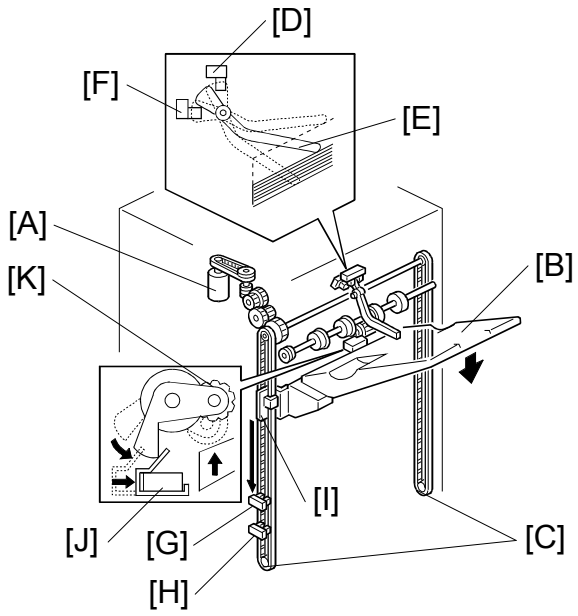
The shift tray exit plate is opened and closed by the shift tray exit plate motor [G] through a cam [H].

The stack feed-out motor stops for 300 ms until the exit rollers have completely fed out the stapled copies to the shift tray. This is to prevent the copies from being pushed out too far on the tray.

Then, the motor turns on again and stops when the pawl actuates the stack feed-out belt home position sensor [I].

There are two pawls on the belt so that the productivity for a smaller number of copies for a stapled set can be kept high.

2.7 SHIFT TRAY UP/DOWN MECHANISM



The shift tray lift motor [A] controls the vertical position of the shift tray [B] through gears and timing belts [C]. When the main switch is turned on, the tray is initialized at the upper position. The tray is moved up until stack height sensor 1 [D] is de-actuated.

During copying, the actuator feeler [E] gradually rises as the copy stack grows, and the actuator gradually moves towards stack height sensor 2 [F].

In sort/stack mode, if stack height sensor 2 is actuated for 3 seconds, the shift tray lift motor lowers the shift tray for 15 ms.

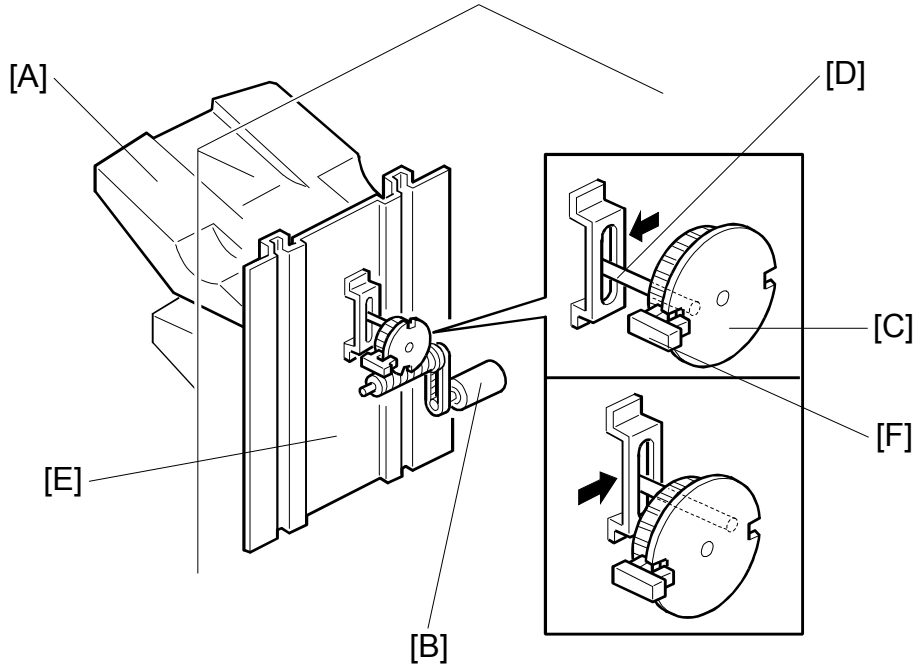
In staple mode, when the stack feed-out motor starts, the tray is moved down until stack height sensor 1 is actuated and then moved up until stack height sensor 1 is de-actuated. This corrects the current tray position. Then, the tray is moved down again until stack height sensor 1 is actuated to make space for the coming set of copies and then moved up until stack height sensor 1 is de-actuated. This means the tray lowers earlier in staple mode, to prevent the next copy suddenly exceeding the space currently available on the tray.

For both modes, the shift tray will rise until stack height sensor 1 is de-actuated when the user takes the stack of paper from the shift tray.

This machine has two shift tray lower limit sensors 1 [G], 2 [H]. Shift tray lower limit sensor 1 detects the near lower limit and sensor 2 detects the lower limit. When the actuator [I] enters sensor 1, a message will be displayed and copying will continue. When the actuator enters sensor 2, a message will be displayed and copying will stop.

The shift tray upper limit switch [J] prevents the drive gear from being damaged if stack height sensor 1 fails. When the shift tray pushes up the shift tray positioning roller [K], the switch will cut the power to the shift tray lift motor.

2.8 SHIFT TRAY SIDE-TO-SIDE MECHANISM

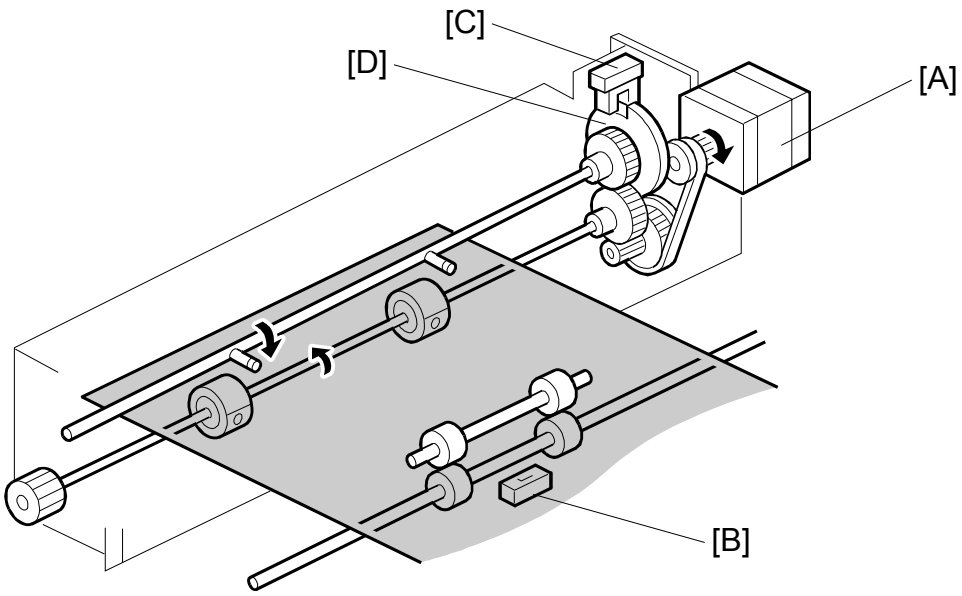


In sort/stack mode, the shift tray [A] moves from side to side to separate the sets of copies.

The horizontal position of the shift tray is controlled by the shift motor [B] and shift gear disk [C]. After one set of copies is made and delivered to the shift tray, the shift motor turns on, driving the shift gear disk and the shaft [D]. The end fence [E] is positioned by the shaft, creating the side-to-side movement.

When the shift gear disk has rotated 180 degrees (when the shift tray is fully shifted across), the cut-out in the shift gear disk turns on the shift tray half-turn sensor [F] and the shift motor stops. The next set of copies is then delivered. The motor turns on, repeating the same process and moving the tray back to the previous position.

2.9 PUNCH UNIT DRIVE MECHANISM



The punch unit makes 2 or 3 holes (depending on the type of punch unit) at the trailing edge of the paper.

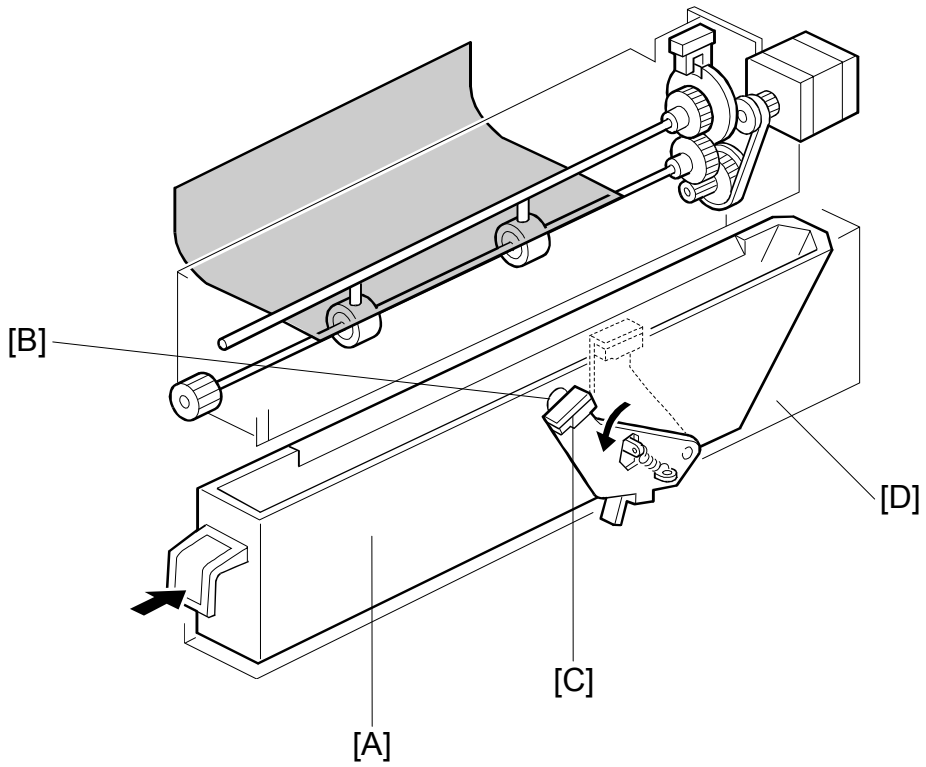
The punch unit is driven by the punch motor [A]. The punch motor turns on 78 ms after the trailing edge of the paper passes through the entrance sensor [B], and makes the punch holes.

The home position is detected by the punch HP sensor [C]. When the cut-out on the punch shaft gear disk [D] enters the punch HP sensor, the punch motor stops.

The punch position is adjusted as follows:

Right to left: SP mode
Front to rear: Spacers

2.10 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION MECHNISM



The punch waste is collected in the punch waste hopper [A], which is under the punch unit.

When the punch waste covers the hole [B] in the hopper, the hopper sensor [C] turns on and a message will be displayed after the copy job finishes.

The hopper sensor also works as the hopper set sensor. If the punch waste hopper is not set, the hopper sensor moves away from the hole in the hopper holder [D] and a message is displayed. This message is the same as for the hopper full condition.

2.11 JAM CONDITIONS

1. The entrance sensor does not turn on within 2.0 s after the copier exit sensor turns off.
2. The entrance sensor does not turn off within 850 ms after it turns on.
3. The upper tray exit sensor does not turn on within 1,050 ms after the entrance sensor turns on.
4. The upper tray exit sensor does not turn off within 850 ms after it turns on.
5. In sort/stack mode, the shift tray exit sensor does not turn on within 1,345 ms after the entrance sensor turns on.
6. In sort/stack mode, the shift tray exit sensor does not turn off within 850 ms after it turns on.
7. In staple mode, the stapler tray entrance sensor does not turn on within 2,405 ms after the entrance sensor turns on.
8. In staple mode, the stapler tray entrance sensor does not turn off within 850 ms after it turns on.
9. In staple mode, the stapler tray paper sensor does not turn off within 466 pulses of the stack feed-out motor after it starts.
10. In staple mode, the shift tray exit sensor does not turn off within 1,260 ms after the stack feed-out motor starts.

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCHES

DPS101				Description
1	2	3	4	
0	0	0	0	Default
1	1	1	0	Free run: one staple (rear-oblique)

NOTE: Do not use any other settings.

3.2 TEST POINTS

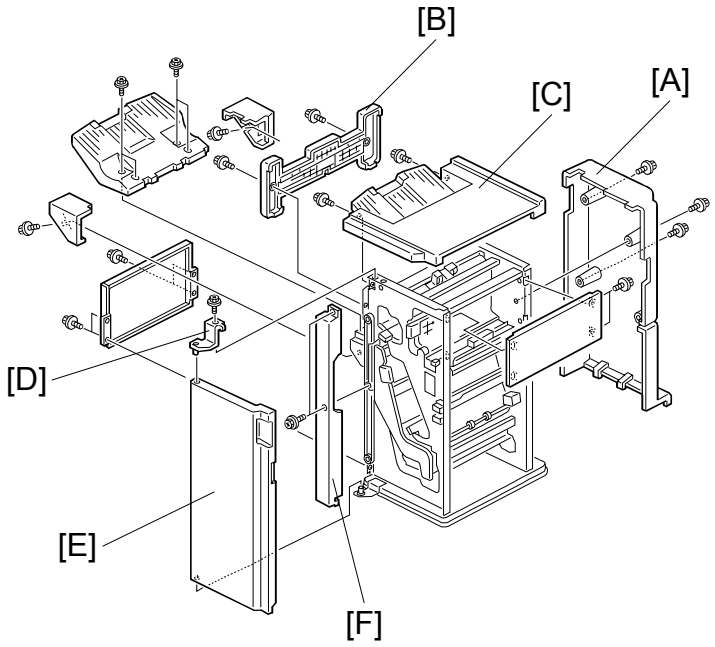
No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP101	(GND)	Ground
TP102	5V	5V
TP103	TXAO	TXD
TP104	RXD	RXD

3.3 FUSES

No.	Function
FU101	Protects 24 V.

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 COVER REPLACEMENT



Rear Cover

1. Remove the rear cover [A] (3 screws).

Upper Left Cover

1. Remove the upper left cover [B] (2 screws).

Upper Cover

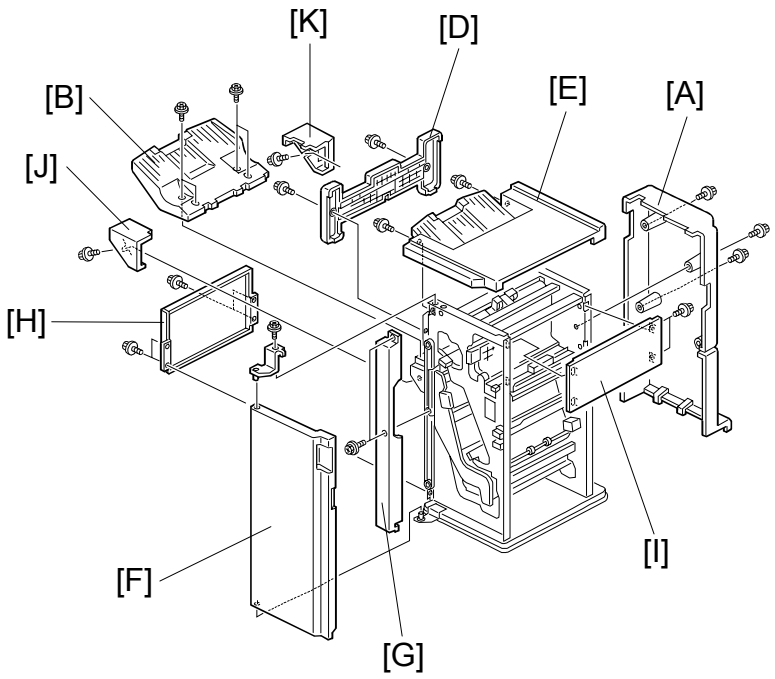
1. Remove the upper left cover.
2. Remove the upper cover [C] (2 screws).

Front Door

1. Remove the upper left cover.
2. Remove the upper cover.
3. Remove the upper bracket [D] (1 screw).
4. Remove the front door [E].

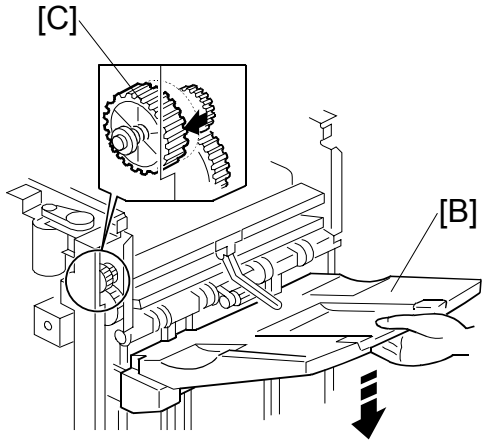
Left Front Cover

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the upper cover.
3. Remove the front door.
4. Remove the left front cover [F] (2 screws).



Shift Tray

1. Remove the rear cover [A].
2. While holding the shift tray [B], move the gear [C] to release the engagement.
3. Lower the shift tray.
4. Remove the shift tray (4 screws).



Lower Left Cover

1. Remove the shift tray.
2. Remove the upper left cover [D].
3. Remove the upper cover [E].
4. Remove the front door [F].
5. Remove the left front cover [G].
6. Remove the lower left cover [H] (4 screws).

Right Cover

1. Remove the right cover [I] (2 screws).

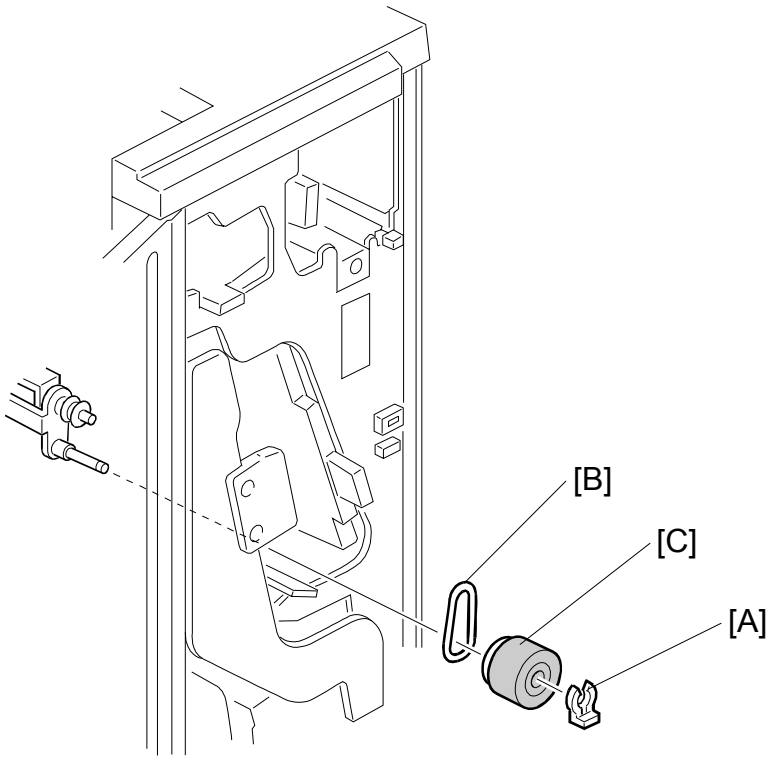
Front Shift Tray Cover

1. Remove the front shift tray cover [J] (1 screw).

Rear Shift Tray Cover

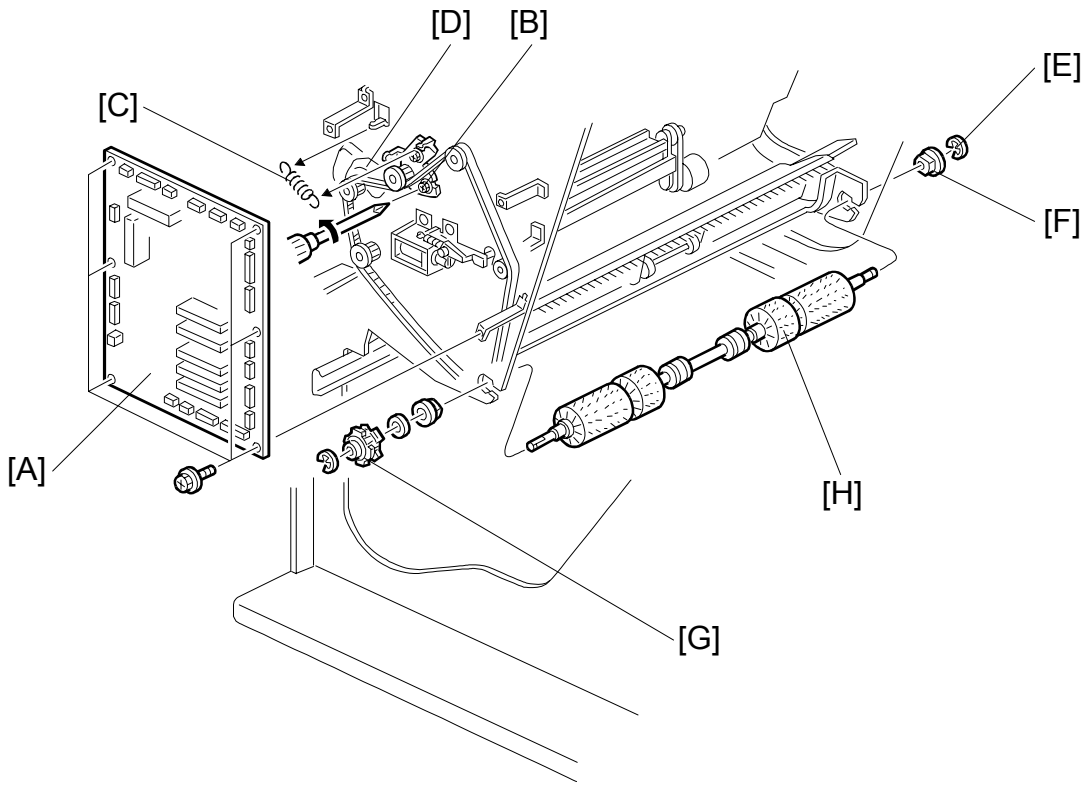
1. Remove the rear shift tray cover [K] (1 screw).

4.2 POSITIONING ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the snap ring [A].
3. Release the rubber belt [B].
4. Replace the positioning roller [C].

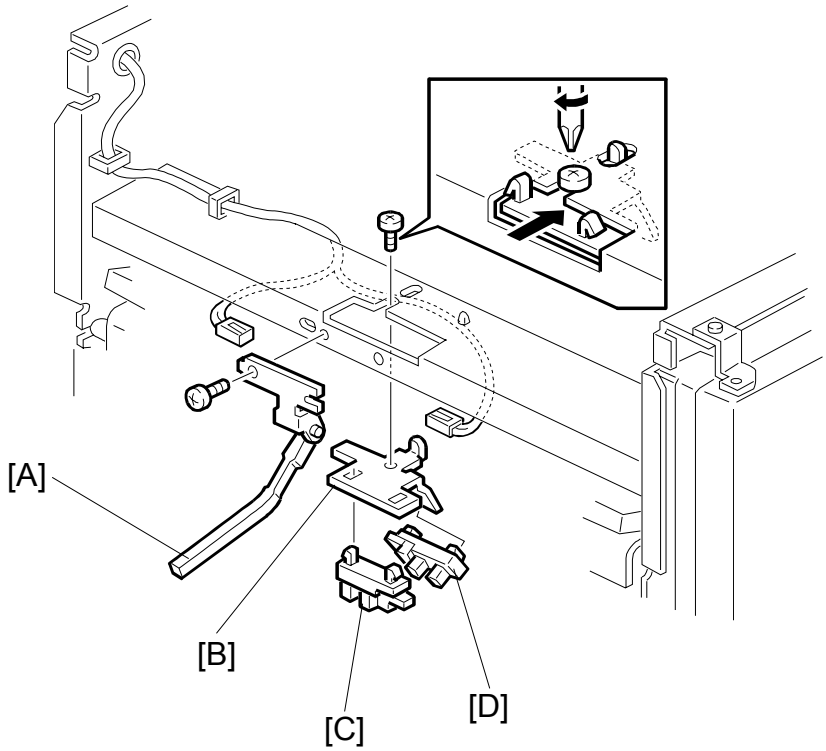
4.3 ALIGNMENT BRUSH ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Open the front door and pull out the jogger unit.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Remove the main board [A] (6 screws, all connectors).
4. Remove a screw [B] and a tension spring [C] for the tension bracket [D], and release the tension of the timing belt.
5. Remove the front side E-ring [E] and bushing [F].
6. Remove the alignment brush roller assembly.
7. Remove the timing pulley [G] (1 E-ring).
8. Replace the alignment brush roller [H] (1 spacer, 1 bushing).

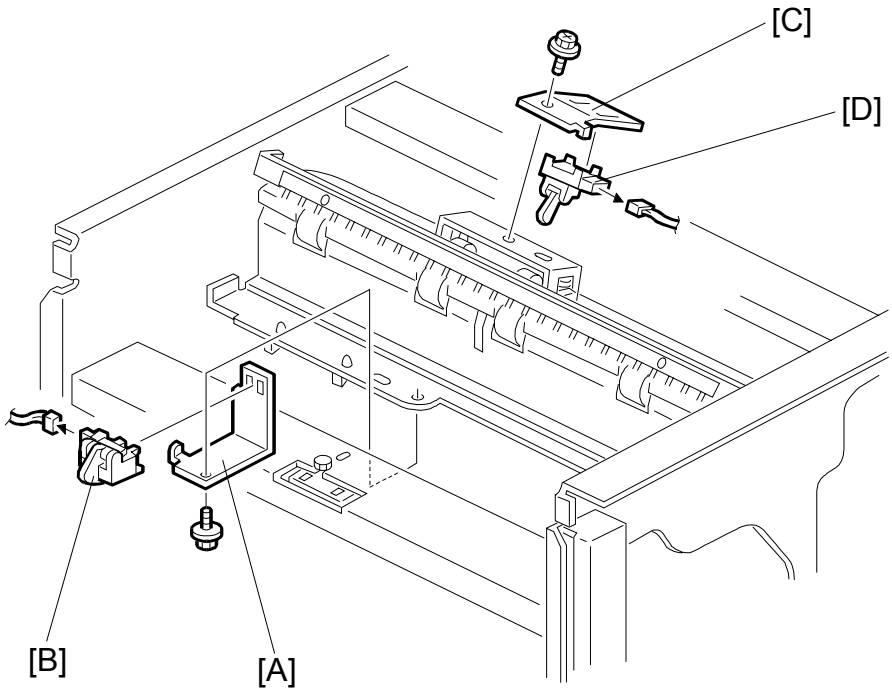
4.4 SENSOR REPLACEMNT

4.4.1 STACK HEIGHT SENSOR 1 AND 2



1. Remove the upper left cover.
2. Remove the upper cover.
3. Remove the sensor feeler [A] (1 screw, 1 connector).
4. Remove the sensor bracket [B] (1 screw).
5. Replace the stack height sensor 1 [C] or 2 [D].

4.4.2 UPPER TRAY PAPER LIMIT AND EXIT SENSOR



1. Remove the upper left cover.
2. Remove the upper cover.

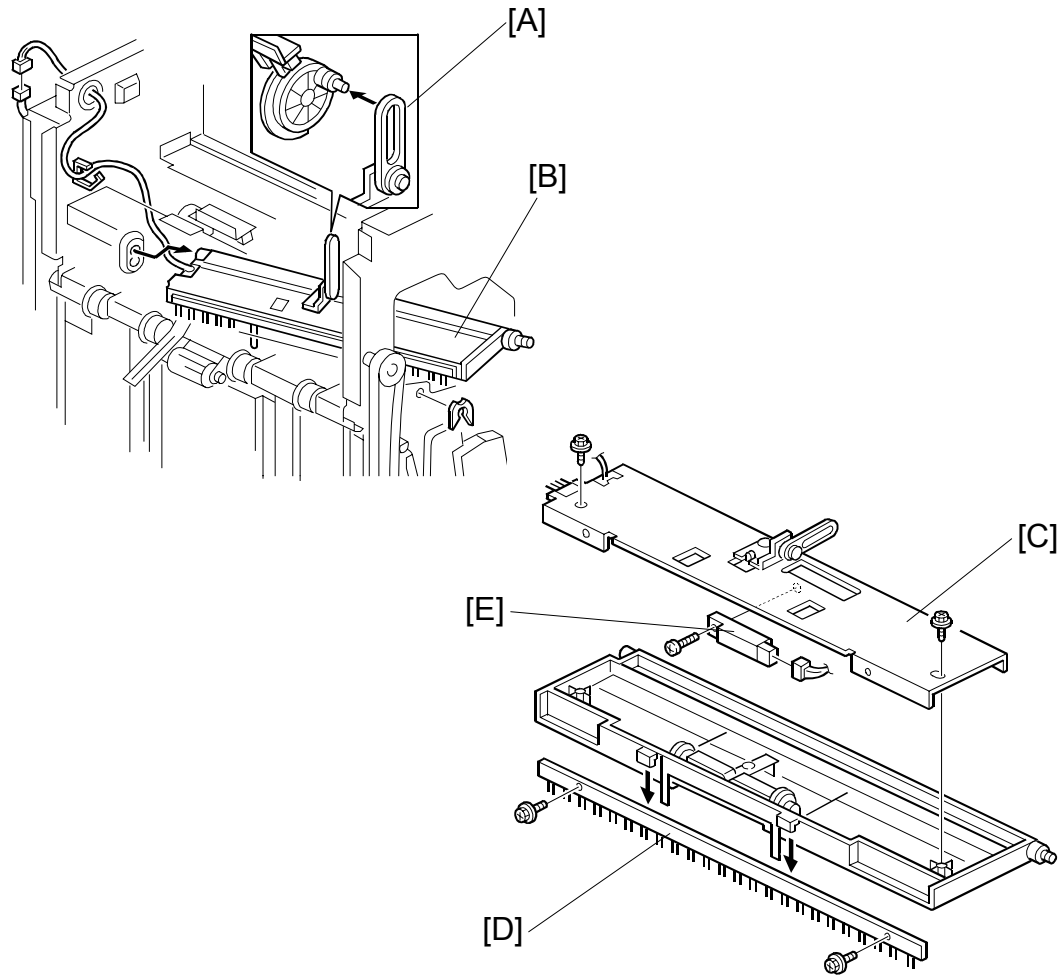
Upper Tray Paper Limit Sensor

3. Remove the sensor bracket [A] (1 screw).
4. Replace the upper tray paper limit sensor [B] (1 connector).

Upper Tray Exit Sensor

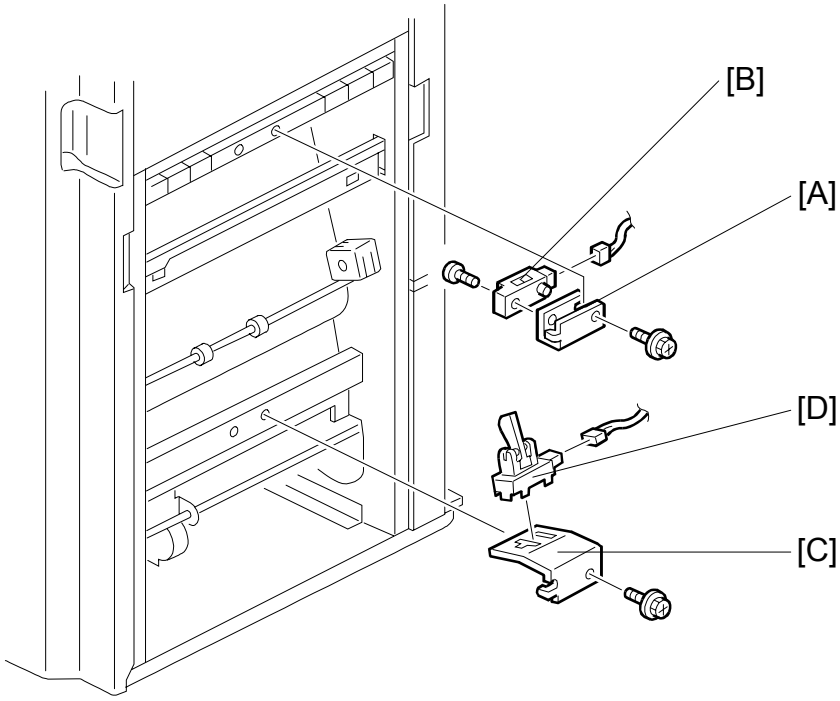
3. Remove the sensor bracket [C] (1 screw).
4. Replace the upper tray exit sensor [D] (1 connector).

4.4.3 SHIFT TRAY EXIT SENSOR



1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove the upper left cover.
3. Remove the upper cover.
4. Open the front door, unhook the joint [A] and remove the upper exit guide [B] (1 plastic clip, 1 connector).
5. Remove the guide stay [C] (2 screws).
6. Remove the discharge brush [D] (2 screws).
7. Replace the shift tray exit sensor [E] (1 screw, 1 connector).

4.4.4 ENTRANCE AND STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSOR



1. Remove the finisher from the copier.

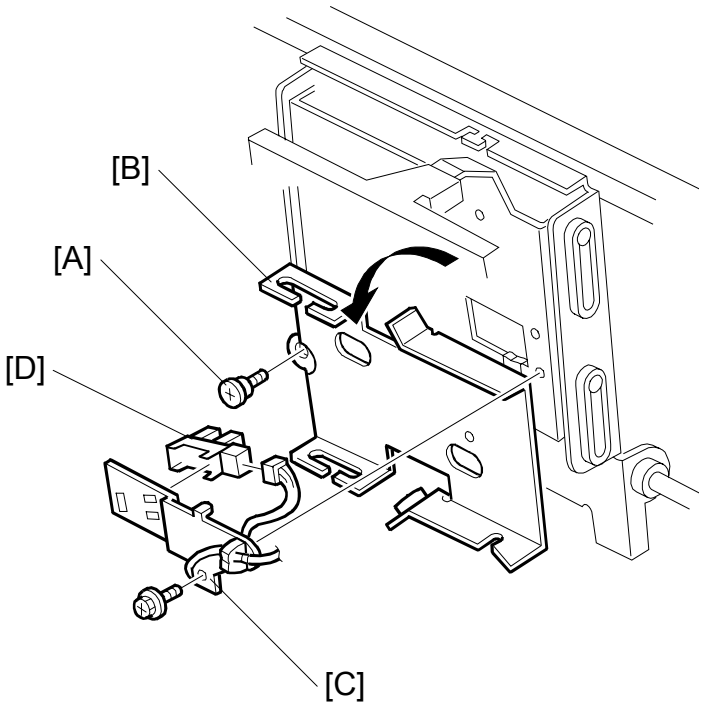
Entrance Sensor

2. Remove the sensor bracket [A] (1 screw).
3. Replace the entrance sensor [B] (1 screw, 1 connector).

Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor

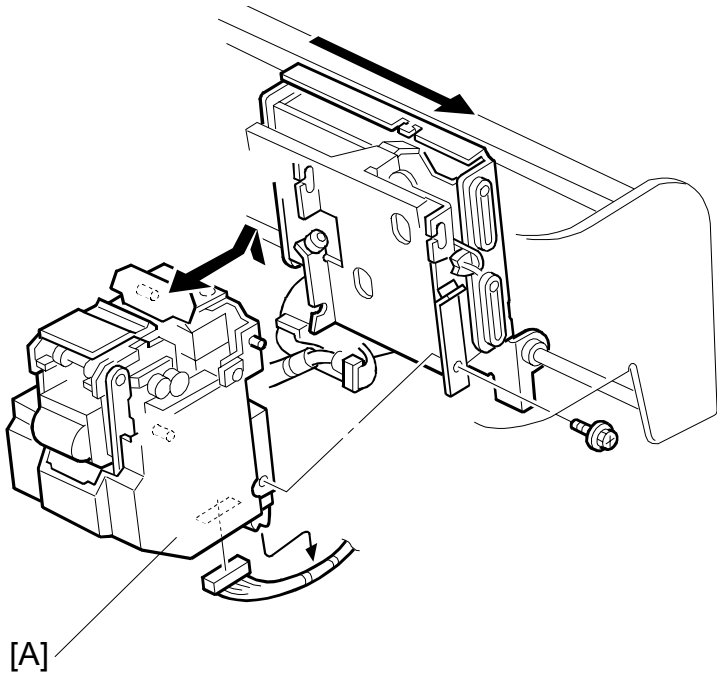
2. Remove the sensor bracket [C] (1 screw).
3. Replace the stapler tray entrance sensor [D] (1 screw, 1 connector).

4.4.5 STAPLER ROTATION HP SENSOR



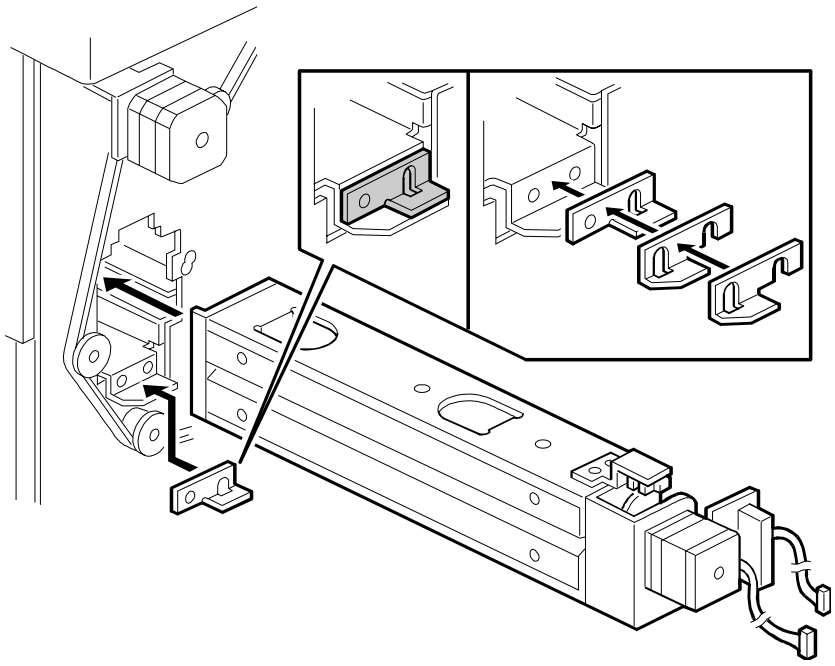
1. Remove the stapler unit.
2. Remove the screw [A] and rotate the stapler bracket [B].
3. Remove the sensor bracket [C] (1 screw).
4. Replace the stapler rotation HP sensor [D] (1 connector).

4.5 STAPLER REMOVAL



1. Open the front door and pull out the jogger unit.
2. Move the stapler to the front.
3. Remove the stapler [A] (1 screw, 1 connector).

4.6 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT



Right to left

This position is adjusted by SP modes.

Front to rear

The optional punch units have the following 3 spacers as accessories.

1 mm thickness: 2 pcs
2 mm thickness: 1 pc

The punch position can be adjusted by up to 4 mm by combinations of the 3 spacers.

BOOKLET FINISHER
A763

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Size:

Tray	Modes		Sizes
Proof tray			A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
Shift tray	No staple mode		A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
	Staple Mode	Top or bottom	A3 to B5 lengthwise, DLT to HLT
		2 staple	A3, A4 sideways, B5 sideways, DLT to HLT sideways
Booklet tray			A3 to B5, DLT to LT

Paper Weight:

Tray	Weight
Stack mode	52 g/m^2 to 163 g/m^2, 14 to 42 lb
Staple mode	64 g/m^2 to 80 g/m^2, 17 to 21 lb
Saddle stitch mode	64 g/m^2 to 80 g/m^2, 17 to 21 lb 64 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2, 17 to 34 lb (Cover sheet only)

Paper Capacity (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

Tray	Modes	Paper size	Capacity
Proof tray		A4-S, LT-S or shorter	150 sheets
		A4-L, LT-L or longer	75 sheets
Shift tray	No staple	A4-S, LT-S or shorter	147mm stack height or 1000 sheets (*)
		A4-L, LT-L or longer	74mm stack height or 500 sheet (*)
	Staple	A4-S, LT-S or shorter	110mm stack height or 30 sets or 750 sheets (*)
		A4-L, LT-L or longer	74mm stack height 0r 30 sets or 500 sheets(*)
Staple tray	One size Mixed sizes	1-5 sheets	25 sets
		6-10 sheets	15 sets
		11-15 sheets	10 sets

(-L": Lengthwise ,-S: Sideways)

Staple Capacity (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

Modes	Paper size	Total capacity
Staple	A4-S, LT-S or shorter	2-50 sheets
	A4-L, LT-L or longer	2-30 sheets
Saddle stitch		2-15 sheets

(-L": Lengthwise, -S: Sideways)

* The machine will inform the operator that the tray is full when any of the conditions are met (whichever occurs first).

Staple Position:	Staple mode: 3 positions 1 staple: 2 positions (Front, Rear) 2 staples: 1 position Saddle stitch mode: 1 position
Staple Replenishment:	Cartridge Staple: 5000 staples Saddle stitch: 2000 staples
Power Source:	24Vdc (from copier)
Power Consumption:	60 W
Dimensions (W x D x H):	800 x 728 x 980 mm, 31.5 x 28.7 x 38.6 inches
Weight:	45 kg

1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

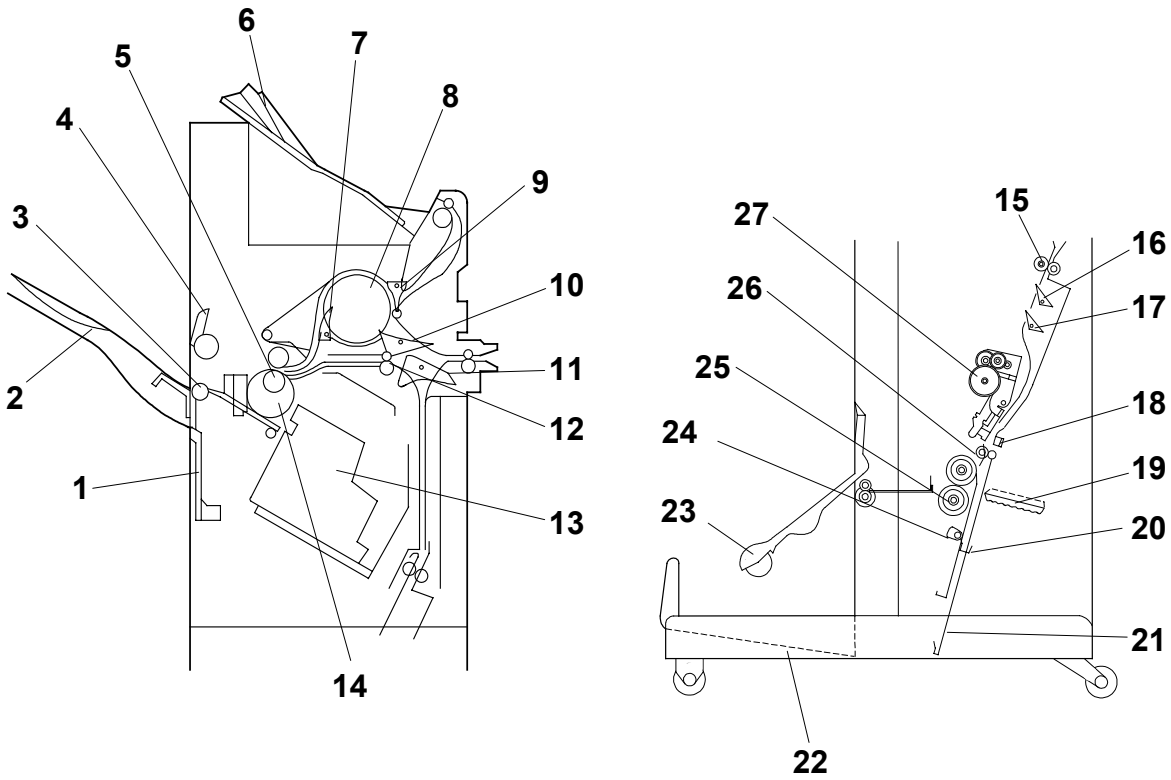
Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	Entrance	Drives the entrance roller.	49
M2	Transport Roller	Drives the 1st and 2nd transport rollers.	47
M3	Buffer Roller	Drives the buffer roller and the proof tray exit roller.	48
M4	Jogger	Moves the jogger fence.	44
M5	Stapler	Moves the stapler unit.	52
M6	Staple Hammer	Drives the staple hammer in the stapler unit.	51
M7	Guide Plate	Moves the upper exit guide plate up and down.	46
M8	Exit Motor	Drives the exit roller.	45
M9	Tray Lift	Moves the shift tray up and down.	50
M10	Booklet Transport	Drives the relay roller and the positioning roller.	56
M11	Positioning Plate	Moves the positioning plate up and down.	54
M12	Shutter Guide	Moves the shutter guide up and down.	55
M13	Booklet Jogger	Drives the jogger fences.	57
M14	Front Stapler	Drives the staple hammer in the front stapler.	60
M15	Rear Stapler	Drives the staple hammer in the rear stapler.	53
M16	Folder Roller	Drives the folder rollers.	59
M17	Folder Plate	Moves the folder plate.	58
Sensors			
S1	Entrance	Detects copy paper entering the finisher and detects misfeeds.	3
S2	Buffer Roller Entrance	Detects copy paper entering the buffer roller or proof tray exit guide and detects misfeeds.	2
S3	Straight Path	Detects copy paper passing under the buffer roller and detects misfeeds.	21
S4	Staple Tray Paper	Detects copy paper in the stapler tray.	8
S5	Jogger HP	Detects the home position of the jogger rear fence.	19
S6	Stapler Unit HP	Detects the home position of the stapler unit.	16
S7	Staple Hammer HP	Detects the home position of the staple hammer.	14
S8	Staple Position	Detects when the stapler is in the stapling position.	14
S9	Upper Exit Guide	Detects the upper position of the upper exit guide.	4

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
S10	Exit Guide Motor	Generates pulses to check the exit guide motor.	7
S11	Exit	Checks for misfeeds at the shift tray.	18
S12	Exit Motor	Generates pulses to check the exit motor.	13
S13	Shift Tray Paper	Detects copy paper on the shift tray.	20
S14	Shift Tray height	Detects when the top of the copy paper stack in the shift tray is at the correct height.	1
S15	Shift Tray HP	Detects the home position of the shift tray.	12
S16	Lift Motor 1	Generates pulses to check the lift motor, to control lift motor position, and to detect the motion direction of shift tray.	11
S17	Lift Motor 2	Generates pulses to check the lift motor, to control lift motor position, and to detect the motion direction of shift tray.	10
S18	Proof Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds at the proof tray.	6
S19	Proof Tray Limit	Detects when the paper stack height in the proof tray is at its upper limit.	5
S20	Finisher Set	Detects whether the finisher is installed into the copier or not.	20
S21	Shutter	Detects whether the shutter is closed or not.	15
S22	Trailing Edge 1	Detects the relay roller release timing.	24
S23	Trailing Edge 2	Detects the relay roller release timing.	23
S24	Trailing Edge 3	Detects the relay roller release timing.	22
S25	Booklet Entrance	Check for paper misfeeds.	32
S26	Positioning Plate Paper	Detects copy paper in the positioning plate.	34
S27	Positioning Plate HP	Detects the home position of the positioning plate.	35
S28	Positioning Roller	Detects whether the positioning roller is released or not.	31
S29	Booklet Jogger HP	Detects the home position of the jogger fences in the booklet unit.	39
S30	Front Staple End	Detects staples in the cartridge of the front stapler.	43
S31	Rear Staple End	Detects staples in the cartridge of the rear stapler.	25
S32	Stapler Unit Set	Detects whether the stapler unit is installed or not.	26
S33	Shutter Guide HP	Detects the home position of the shutter guide.	33
S34	Folder Plate HP	Detects the home position of the folder plate.	29

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
S35	Folder Plate Return	Detects the return position of the folder plate.	
S36	Folder Plate Motor	Generates pulses to check the folder motor and its position.	
S37	Folder Roller Position	Detects the position of the folder roller.	
S38	Folder Roller HP	Detects the home position of the folder roller.	
S39	Folder Roller Motor	Generates pulses to check the folder roller motor and its position.	
S40	Booklet Exit	Checks for misfeeds at the booklet tray.	
S41	Booklet Tray Paper	Detects copy paper in the booklet tray.	
S42	Booklet Entrance Guide	Detects whether the booklet entrance guide is opened or not.	
S43	Lower Door	Detects whether the lower door is opened or not.	
S44	Booklet Exit Cover	Detects whether the booklet exit cover is opened or not.	
S45	Upper Door	Detects whether the upper door is opened or not	
Switches			
SW1	Upper Cover Safety	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	77
SW2	Shift Tray Safety	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	82
SW3	Shutter Position	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	76
SW4	Upper Exit Guide 1	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	80
SW5	Upper Exit Guide 2	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	79
SW6	Shift Tray Upper Limit	Cuts the +24V for the lift motor.	81
SW7	Cartridge Set	Detects the staple cartridge in the stapler.	83
SW8	Staple End	Detects the staples in the cartridge.	83
SW9	Thermo	Detects the lift motor temperature.	78
SW10	Lower Door Safety	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	87
SW11	Booklet Entrance Guide Safety	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	84
SW12	Booklet Exit Safety	Cuts the +24V for the motor.	88
SW13	Front Staple Hammer HP	Detects the home position of the staple hammer in the front stapler unit	86
SW14	Rear Staple Hammer HP	Detects the home position of the staple hammer in the rear stapler unit	85
Solenoids			
SOL1	Booklet Gate	Drives the booklet gate.	72
SOL2	Buffer Roller Entrance Gate	Drives the buffer roller entrance gate.	71

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
SOL3	Proof Tray Gate	Drives the proof tray gate.	70
SOL4	Buffer Roller Exit Gate	Drives the buffer roller exit gate.	68
SOL5	Transport Belt	Moves the transport belt to the stopper.	69
SOL6	Paddle	Releases the paddle stopper.	97
SOL7	Front Guide Release	Releases the front guide plate.	66
SOL8	1st Booklet Unit Gate	Drives the 1st booklet unit gate.	73
SOL3	2nd Booklet Unit Gate	Drives the 2nd booklet unit gate.	74
SOL4	Relay Roller	Releases the relay roller.	75
PCBs			
PCB1	Finisher	Controls the upper unit.	61
PCB2	Lift Motor Sensor	Generates pulses to check the lift motor, to control lift motor position, and to detect the motion direction of the shift tray.	63
PCB3	Booklet Unit	Controls the booklet unit.	65
PCB4	Trailing Edge Sensor	Detects the relay roller release timing.	64
Others			
HR1	Stapler Interface	Interfaces the stapler and the finisher board.	62

1.3 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



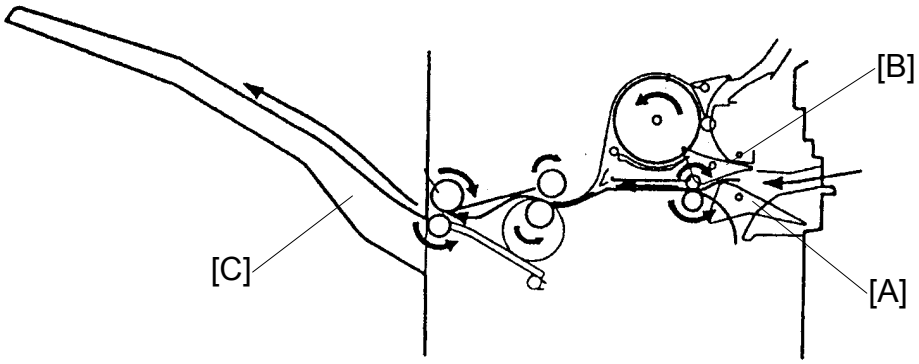
1. Shift Tray
2. Shutter
3. Lower Exit Roller
4. Upper Exit Guide
5. 2nd Transport Roller
6. Proof Tray
7. Buffer Roller Exit Gate
8. Buffer Roller
9. Proof Tray Gate
10. Buffer Roller Entrance Gate
11. Booklet Gate
12. 1st Transport Roller
13. Stapler Unit
14. Transport Belt
15. Booklet Unit Entrance Roller
16. 1st Booklet Unit Gate
17. 2nd Booklet Unit Gate
18. Anvil
19. Folder Plate
20. Positioning Plate
21. Shutter Guide
22. Booklet Tray
23. Exit Guide
24. Positioning Roller
25. Folder Roller
26. Relay Roller
27. Booklet Stapler Unit

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 JUNCTION GATE MECHANISM

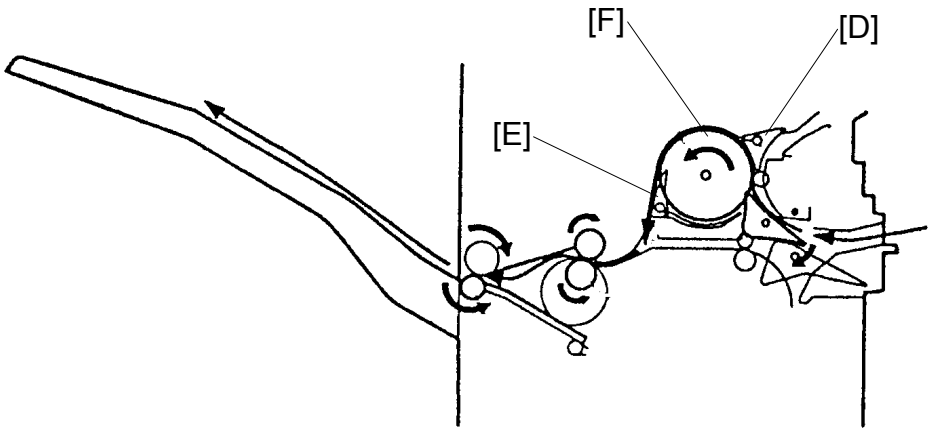
2.1.1 SHIFT TRAY MODE

A4/LT sideways or shorter



The booklet gate [A] and buffer roller entrance gate [B] are closed and the copy paper goes directly to the shift tray [C].

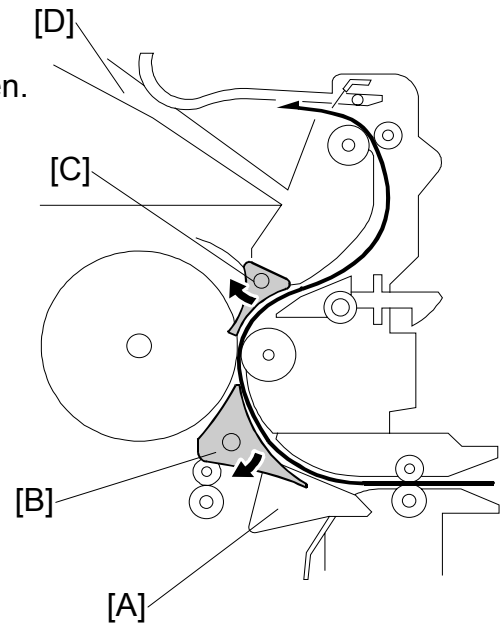
Longer than A4 sideways



The booklet gate, proof tray gate [D], and buffer roller exit gate [E] are closed, and the buffer roller entrance gate is opened. The copy paper passes over the buffer roller [F]. This paper path creates a distance between copies.

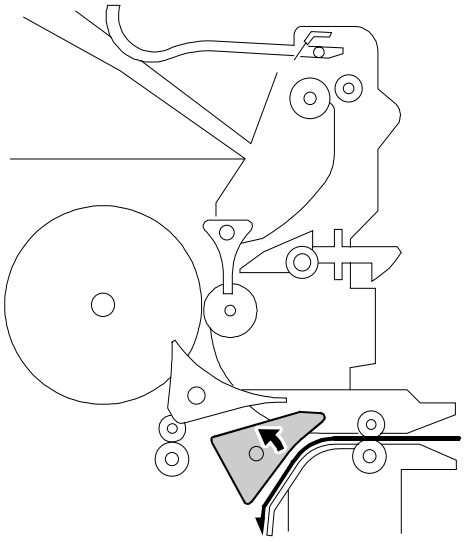
2.1.2 PROOF TRAY MODE

The booklet gate [A] is closed. The buffer roller entrance gate [B] and proof tray gate [C] are open. The copy paper goes to the proof tray [D].



2.1.3 BOOKLET STITCH MODE

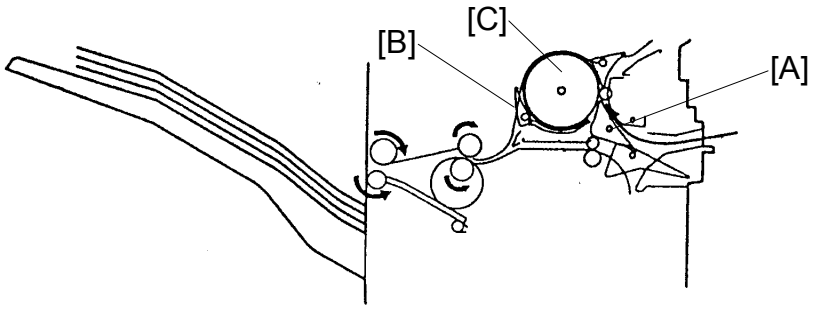
The booklet gate is opened and the copy paper goes to the booklet unit.



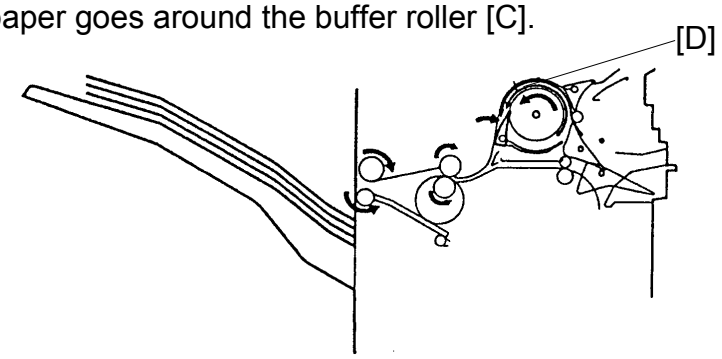
2.2 PRE-STACK MECHANISM

This mechanism improves productivity in staple mode and shift mode.

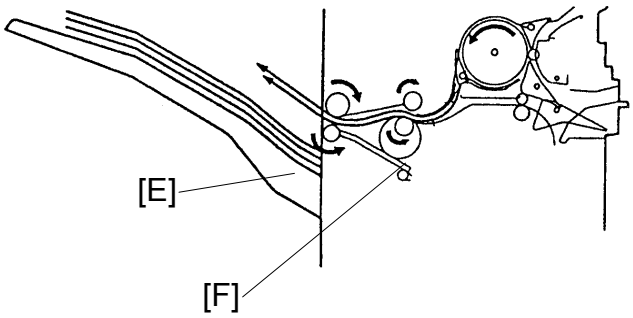
During stapling, the copier has to wait. This mechanism reduces the wait by holding the first two sheets of a job while the previous job is still being stapled. It only works during the second and subsequent sets of a multi-set copy job.



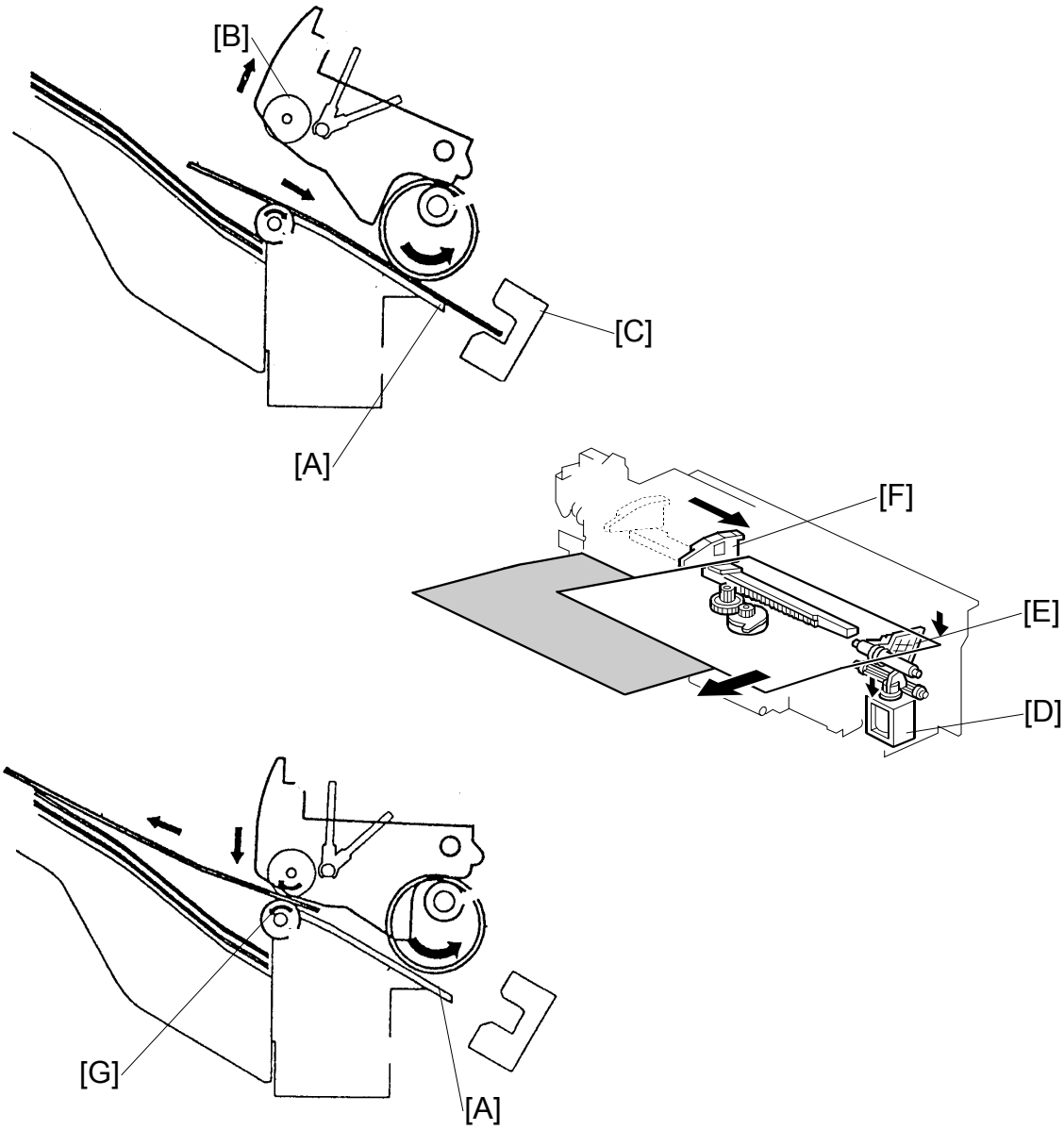
The buffer roller entrance gate [A] and buffer roller exit gate [B] are opened. Then, the 1st sheet of paper goes around the buffer roller [C].



When the 2nd copy [D] comes to the buffer roller, the buffer roller exit gate is closed. The two sheets of paper go to the shift tray [E] or staple tray [F].



2.3 PAPER SHIFT MECHANISM

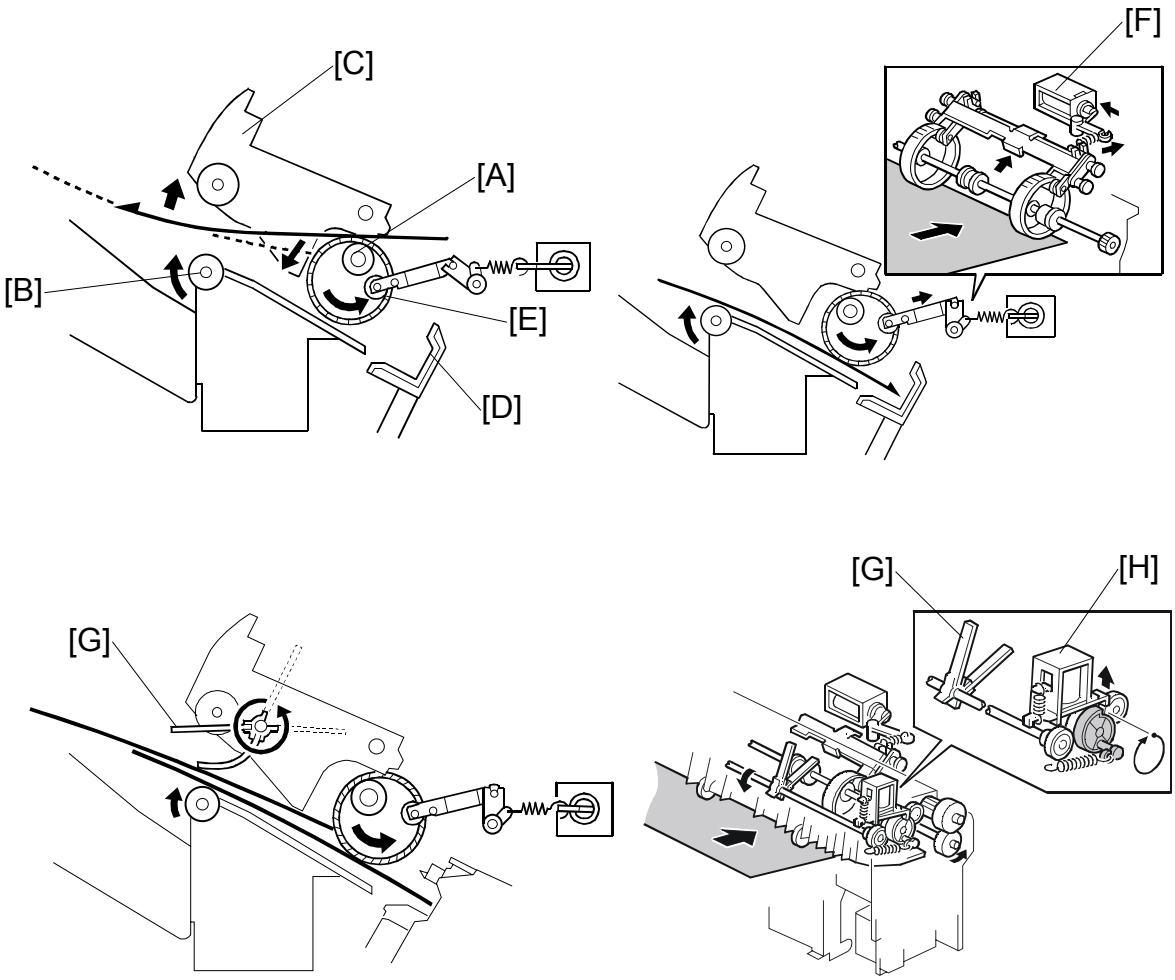


In sort and stack mode, only the 1st sheet of copy paper from the 2nd set is shifted to the front to separate each set of copies.

When the copy paper comes into the staple tray [A], the upper exit guide [B] (which contains the upper exit roller) opens. The paper switches back to the stopper [C]. Then the front guide release solenoid [D] turns on and the front guide [E] is released, the shift motor moves jogger fence [F] to the front, and the copy paper shifts to the front by 30 mm.

After copy paper has been shifted, the upper exit guide closes and the lower exit roller [G] turns in the opposite direction to feed out the copy paper.

2.4 PAPER POSITIONING MECHANISM



When the trailing edge of the 1st copy paper passes the 2nd transport roller [A], the lower exit roller [B] stops and turns in reverse. At the same time, the upper guide plate motor turns on and opens the upper exit guide [C]. The copy paper is sent to the stopper [D] by the lower exit roller and feed belt [E], and it is aligned by the jogger motor.

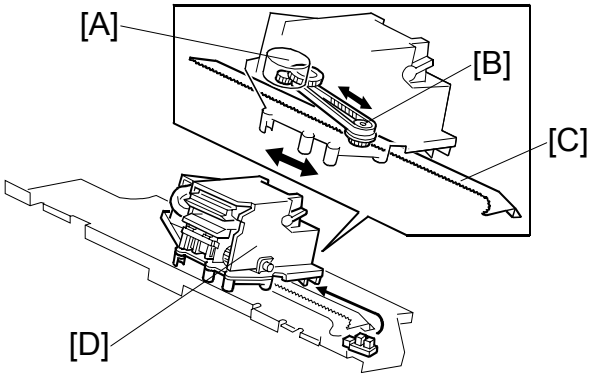
The feed belt solenoid [F] turns on to move the feed belt to the stopper. This function prevents excessive buckling of the paper between belt and stopper.

The paddles [G] send the paper to the stopper starting from the 2nd copy paper. When the trailing edge of the 2nd copy paper passes the 2nd transport roller, the paddle solenoid [H] turns on and the drive from the transport roller transmits to the paddle shaft.

2.5 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT MECHANISM

2.5.1 DRIVE

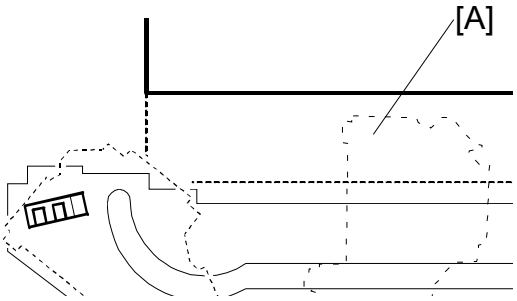
The stapler motor [A] drives the stapler unit drive gear [B] via a timing belt. The stapler unit guide has a rack gear [C]. The stapler unit moves along the rack gear via the stapler unit [D] drive gear.

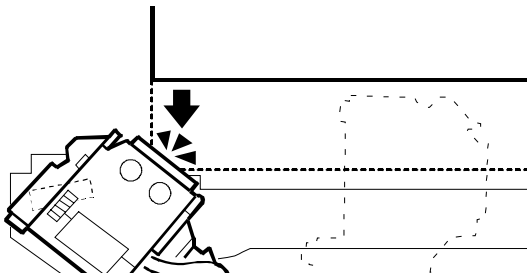


2.5.2 MOVEMENT

Front and Rear Stapling

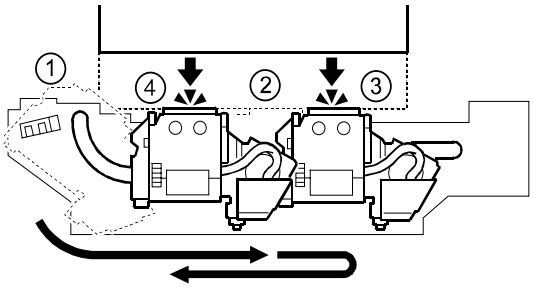
When the print key is pressed, the stapler unit moves to the center. The stapler unit moves to the front (or rear) stapling position when the copy paper comes into the finisher and stays until the copy job finishes. It returns to home position when the job is finished.



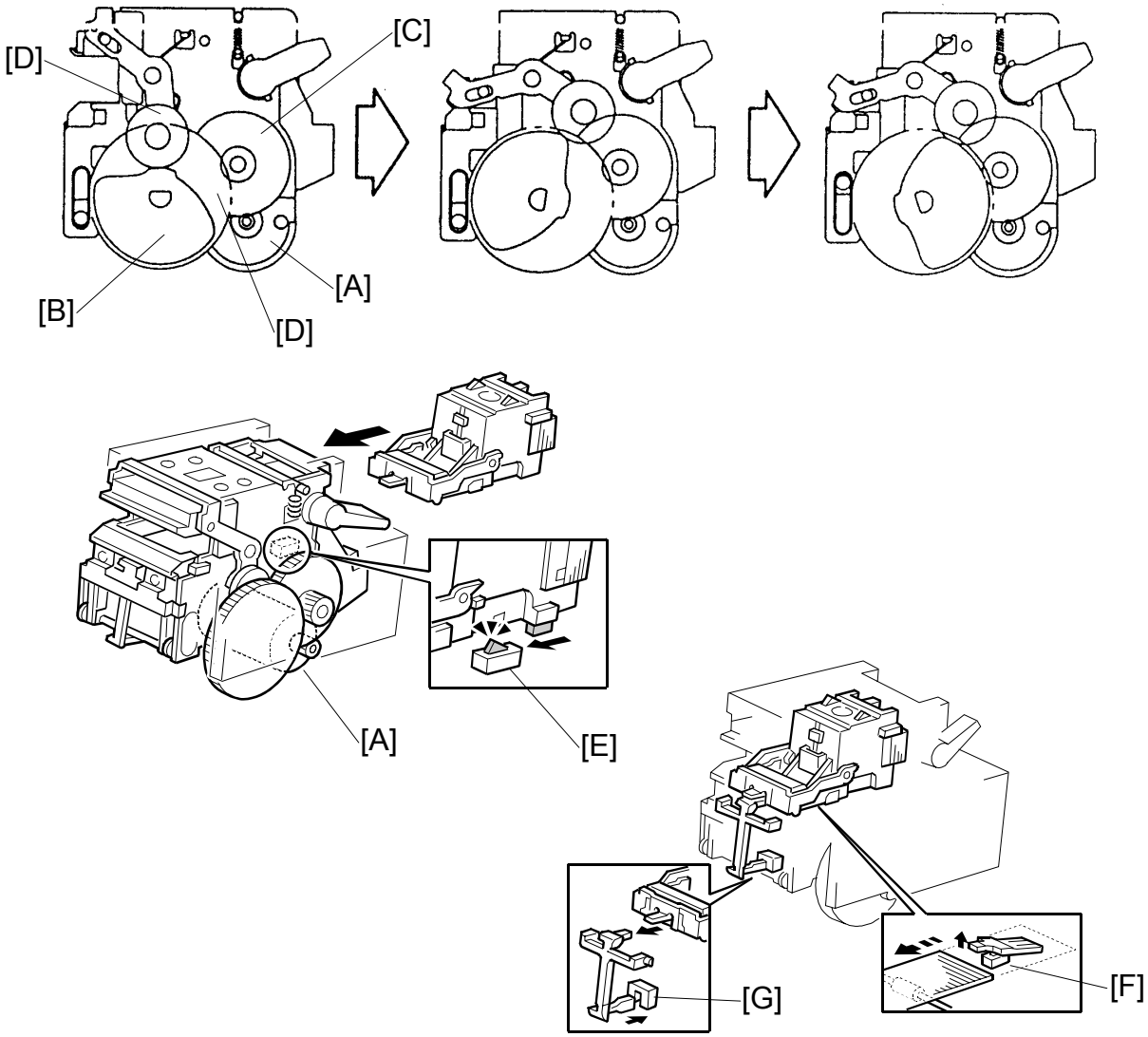


Two-position Stapling

When the print key is pressed, the stapler unit moves to the center. The stapler unit moves to the rear stapling position first and moves to the front stapling position when stapling. Then it goes back to the center until the copy job finishes. It returns to home position when the job is finished.



2.6 STAPLER

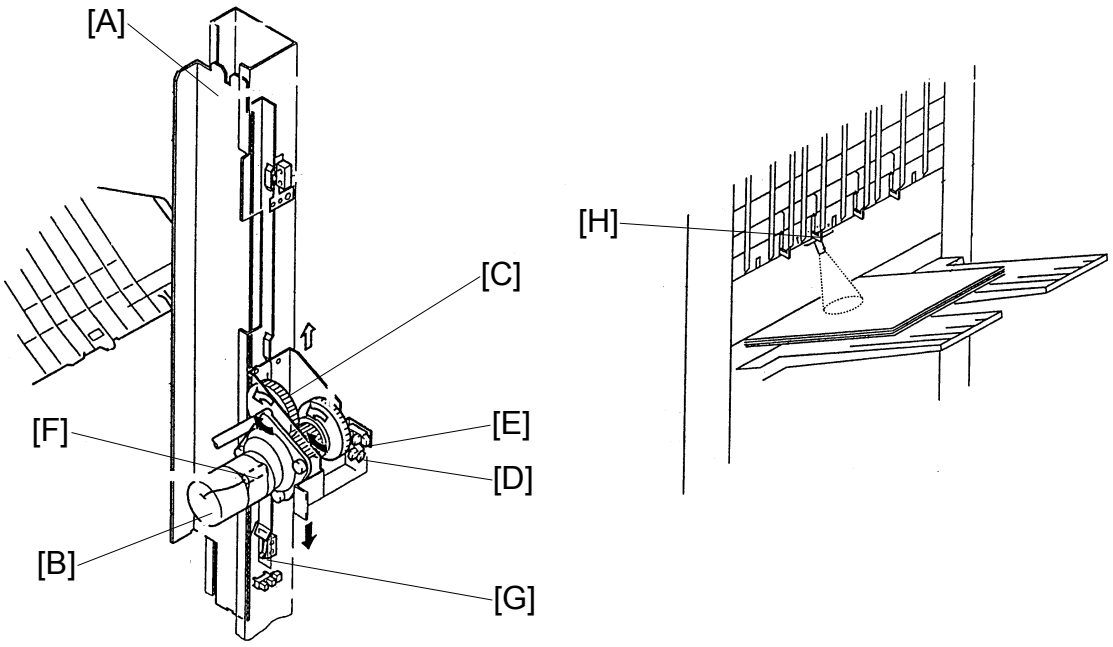


The staple hammer motor [A] drives the cam [B] via 2 gears [C, D] and the guide roller on the staple hammer moves on the cam [D]. When the guide roller moves to the highest position on the cam, the copy paper is stapled.

The stapler unit contains the cartridge set switch [E], staple end switch [F] and staple position sensor [G].

The staple position sensor detects whether the staple sheet has come to the staple unit or not.

2.7 SHIFT TRAY MECHANISM



The guide gear [A] on which the shift tray is mounted is driven by the lift motor [B] via gear [C].

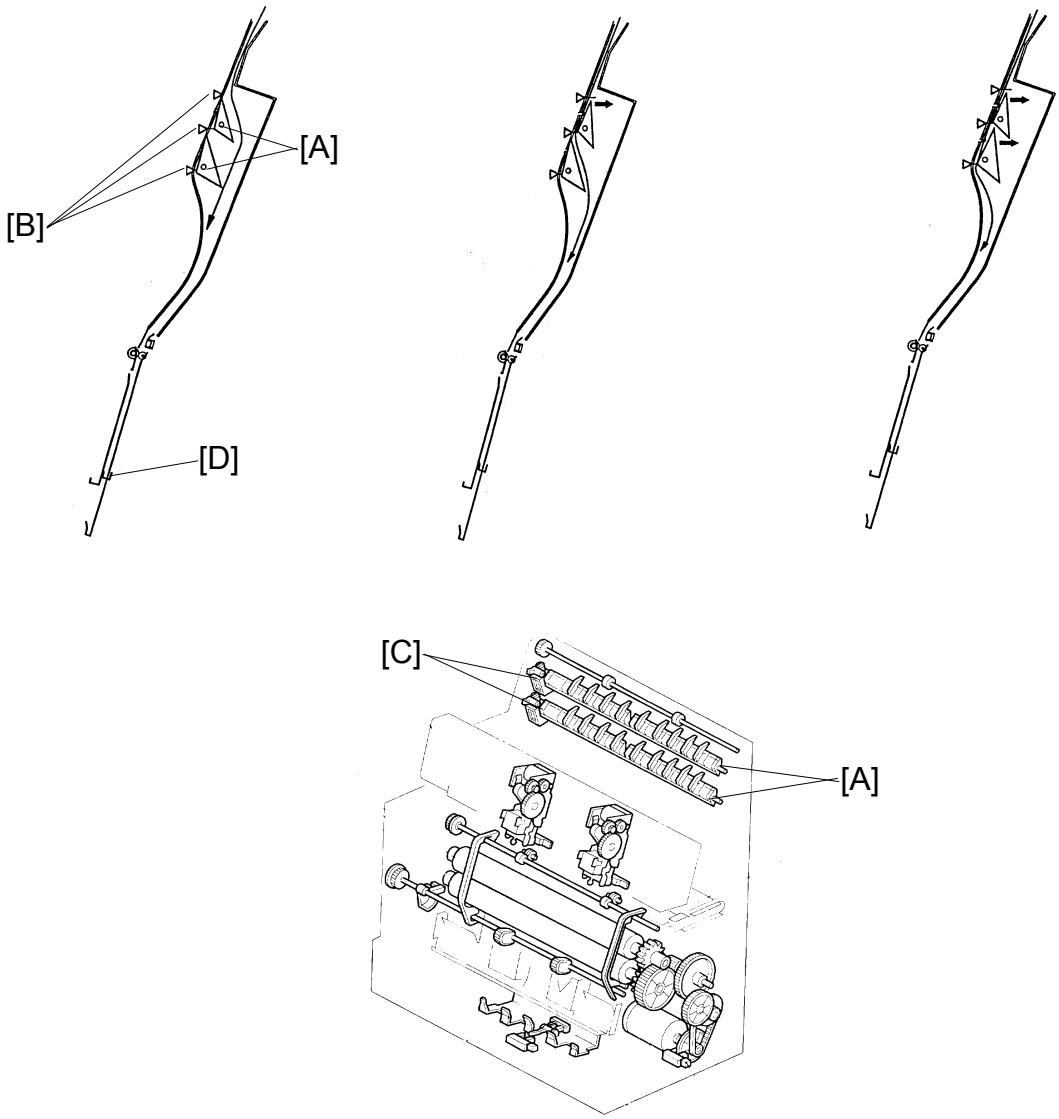
The finisher board detects the direction of the motor rotation and motor position using the lift motor sensors 1 [D] and 2 [E].

The lift motor contains a thermoswitch [F]. When it detects 73.5º C, the finisher board stops the lift motor until its temperature reaches approximately 40º C.

The shutter position switch [G] cuts the lift motor power for safety when the upper exit guide plate opens.

The shift tray height sensor [H] detects the distance between the sensor and the top of the copy paper on the shift tray.

2.8 BOOKLET UNIT GATE MECHANISM



There are two junction gates [A] and three paper sensors [B] at the entrance area of the booklet unit.

Depending on paper size, the appropriate gate solenoid(s) [C] are energized to close the gate(s) in order to transport paper to the positioning plate [D] through a suitable paper path.

This is done for the following reasons:

- To detect the trailing edge of paper with the correct sensor.
- To prevent the leading edge of the next sheet from hitting the trailing edge of the previous sheets on the positioning plate.

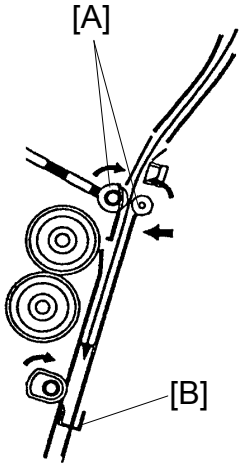
The following tables show the relation between paper sizes and solenoids/sensors:

	A3, 11" x 17"	**B4, 11" x 14"**	**A4, 8 1/2" x 11"**
1st Solenoid (Gate)	OFF (Opened)	ON (Closed)	ON (Closed)
2nd Solenoid (Gate)	OFF (Opened)	OFF (Opened)	ON (Closed)

	A3, 11" x 17"	**B4, 11" x 14"**	**A4, 8 1/2" x 11"**
Trailing Edge Sensor 1	ON	ON	ON
Trailing Edge Sensor 2	OFF	ON	ON
Trailing Edge Sensor 3	OFF	OFF	ON

2.9 RELAY ROLLER AND POSITIONING PLATE MECHANISM

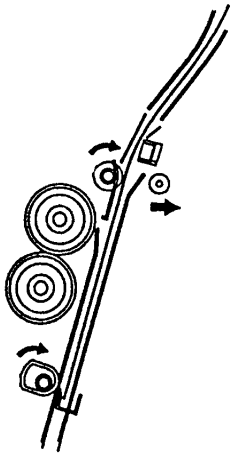
When the first sheet of paper comes to the booklet unit, the booklet transport motor turns on to drive the relay roller [A]. The two relay rollers are out of contact with each other before the paper comes. When the leading edge of the paper passes trailing edge sensor 1, the relay roller solenoid is energized to make the two relay rollers contact each other to transport the paper to the positioning plate [B]. When the trailing edge of the paper comes to the trailing edge sensor that the paper passes last, the relay roller solenoid is de-energized. This solenoid on/off cycle is done for each sheet of paper.

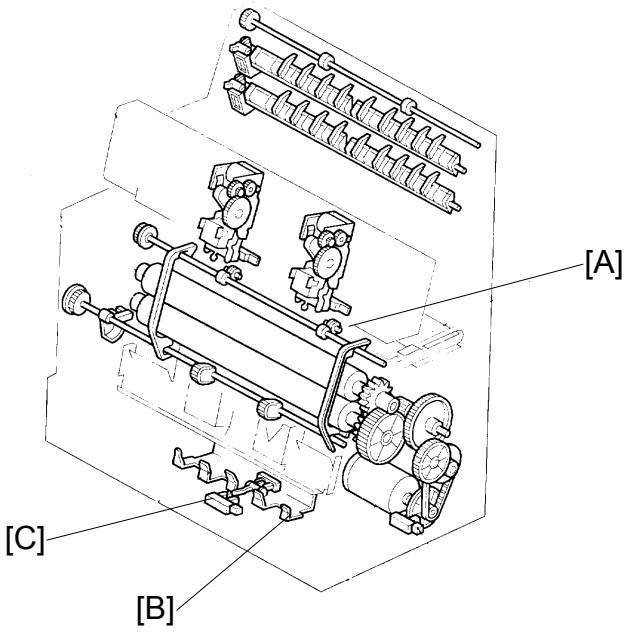


Before paper comes, the positioning plate moves up from the home position to a position that is suitable for the selected paper size in order that the middle of the paper just comes to the stapling position.

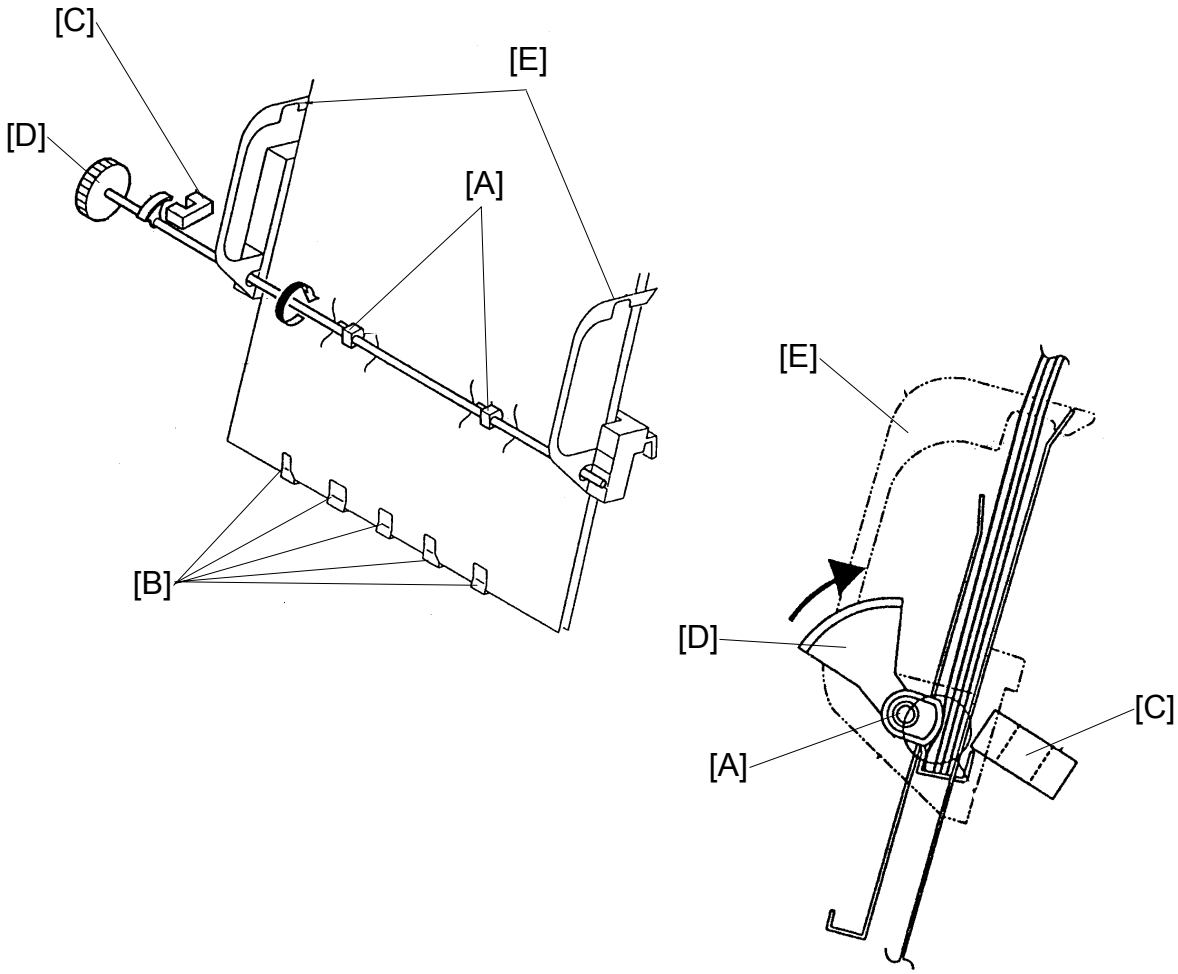
The positioning plate motor drives the positioning plate using pulse counts.

Only when the first sheet of paper reaches the positioning plate, the positioning plate sensor [C] detects the paper.





2.10 POSITIONING ROLLER MECHANISM

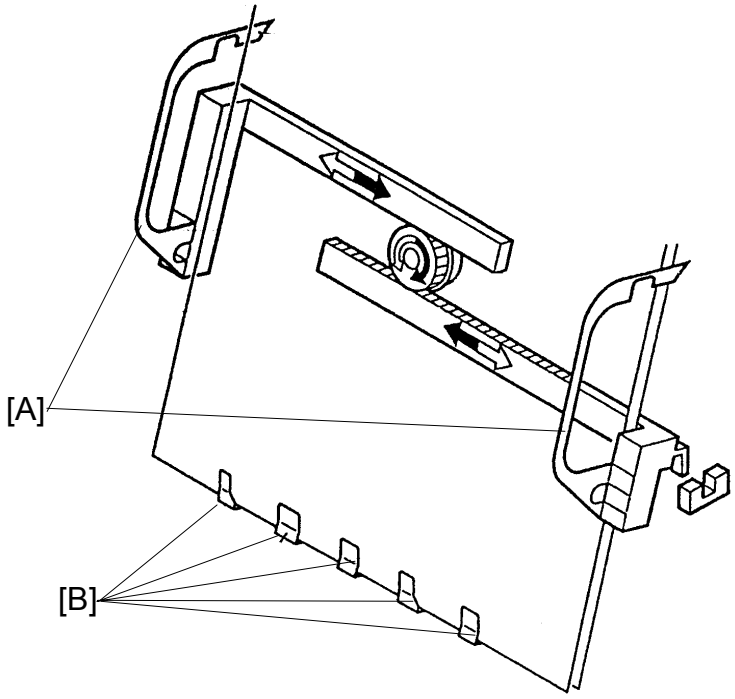


The booklet transport motor also drives the positioning roller [A] to vertically align paper against the positioning plate [B].

The positioning roller is not round but elliptical in shape so that it moves away from the paper while the paper is being horizontally aligned.

The positioning roller sensor [C] detects the actuator [D] on the roller shaft to determine the rotation of the positioning roller. When the sensor is de-actuated, the roller is away from the paper and the jogger fences [E] start moving.

2.11 BOOKLET UNIT JOGGER MOVEMENT MECHANISM

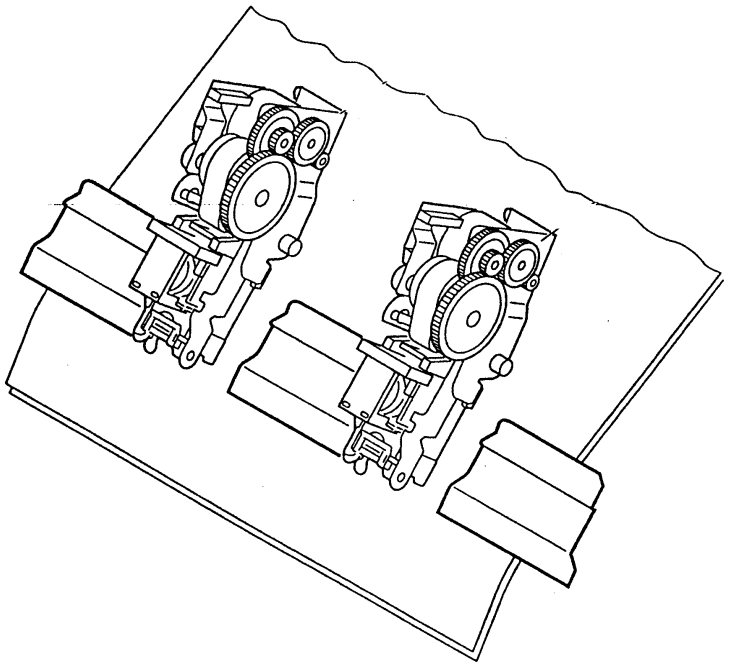


When the start key is pressed, the booklet jogger motor turns on to move the jogger fences [A] to the waiting positions that are 10 mm from each of the paper side edges.

Each time a sheet of paper reaches the positioning plate [B], the jogger fences move toward the paper to align the paper once. The fences move back a short distance and move forward again the paper to align for the second time. Then, the fences go back to the waiting position.

When the last sheet is aligned, the fences stay at the aligning positions during stapling.

2.12 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT



There are two staplers whose positions are fixed.

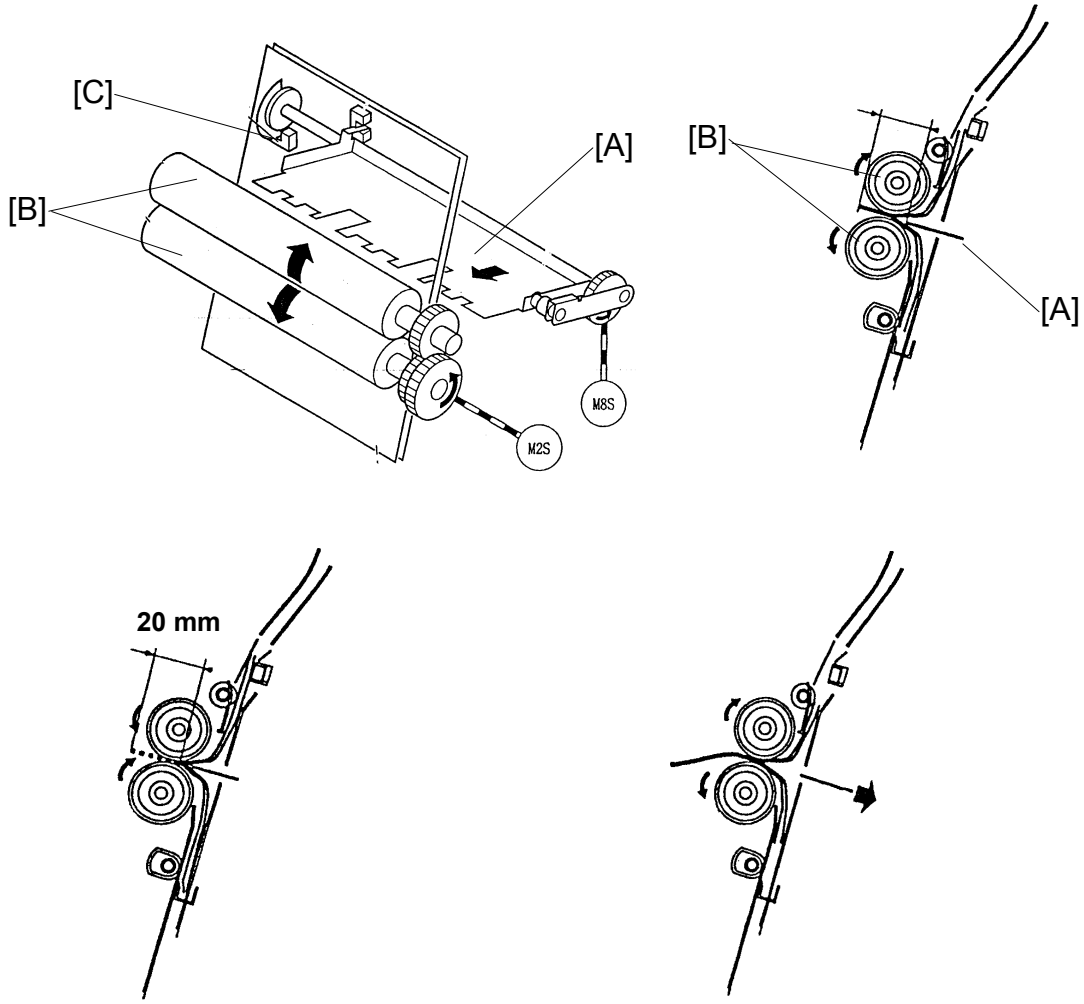
When the jogger fences finish aligning the last sheet, the jogger fences stay at the aligning positions and stapling starts. The two staplers do not operate at the same time, the rear stapler operates first, then the front one. This is for the following reasons:

- To prevent paper from becoming waved in the area between the two stapled positions.
- To minimize necessary electric power.

The staple hammer HP switch in each stapler detects a stapling cycle and the staple end sensor detects the presence of staples in the cartridge.

The stapler unit, including the two staplers, can be pulled out to enable staple cartridge replacement or jam removal. The stapler unit set sensor detects when the stapler unit is back in the right position.

2.13 PAPER FOLDER MECHANISM



The positioning plate moves down from the stapling position to a position such that the middle of the paper just comes to the folding position. It depends on the paper size.

At the same time, the shutter guide motor moves the shutter guide, which is covering the folder rollers to prevent paper arriving at the positioning plate from being caught by the rollers, down to the home position.

Shortly after that, the folder plate motor and the folder roller motor start rotating. The folder plate [A] moves to push the middle of the stapled sheets of paper toward the folder rollers [B] until the folder plate return sensor [C] is de-actuated. Then, the folder plate comes back to the home position.

After that, the folder rollers and booklet exit roller feed the paper to the booklet tray.

In the case of 10 sheets or more of A4 or 8 1/2" x 11" paper, folding is done twice for 20 mm of the leading edge to fold the paper more firmly.

When the leading edge of the folded paper passes 20 mm from the folder rollers, the folder roller motor reverses to feed the paper back 20 mm. During this action, the folder plate stays at the return position. (Figure A763D561)

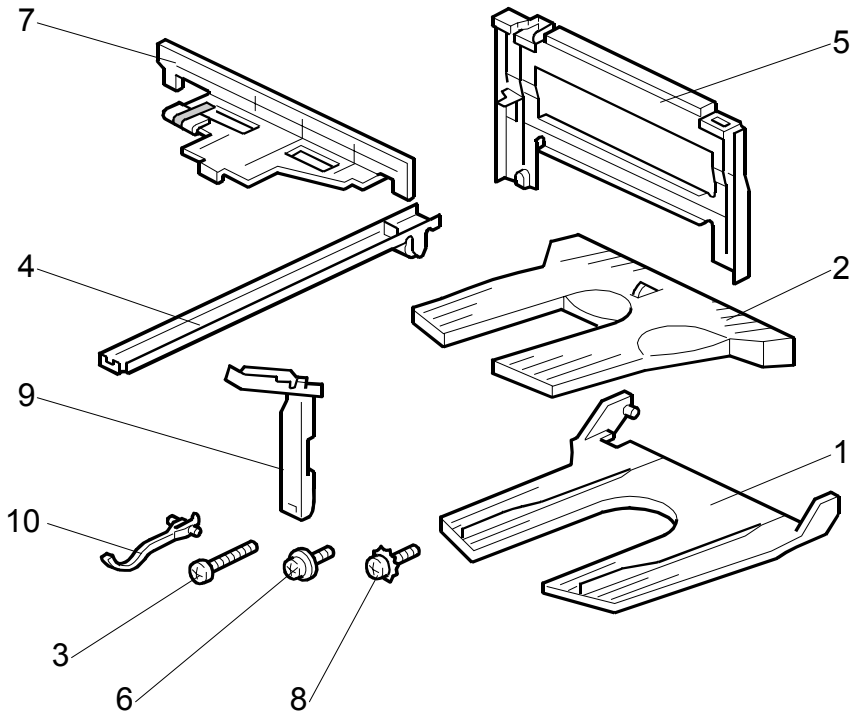
Then, the folder roller motor rotates forward again to feed the set of papers out and the folder plate goes back to the home position. (Figure A763D562)

3. INSTALLATION

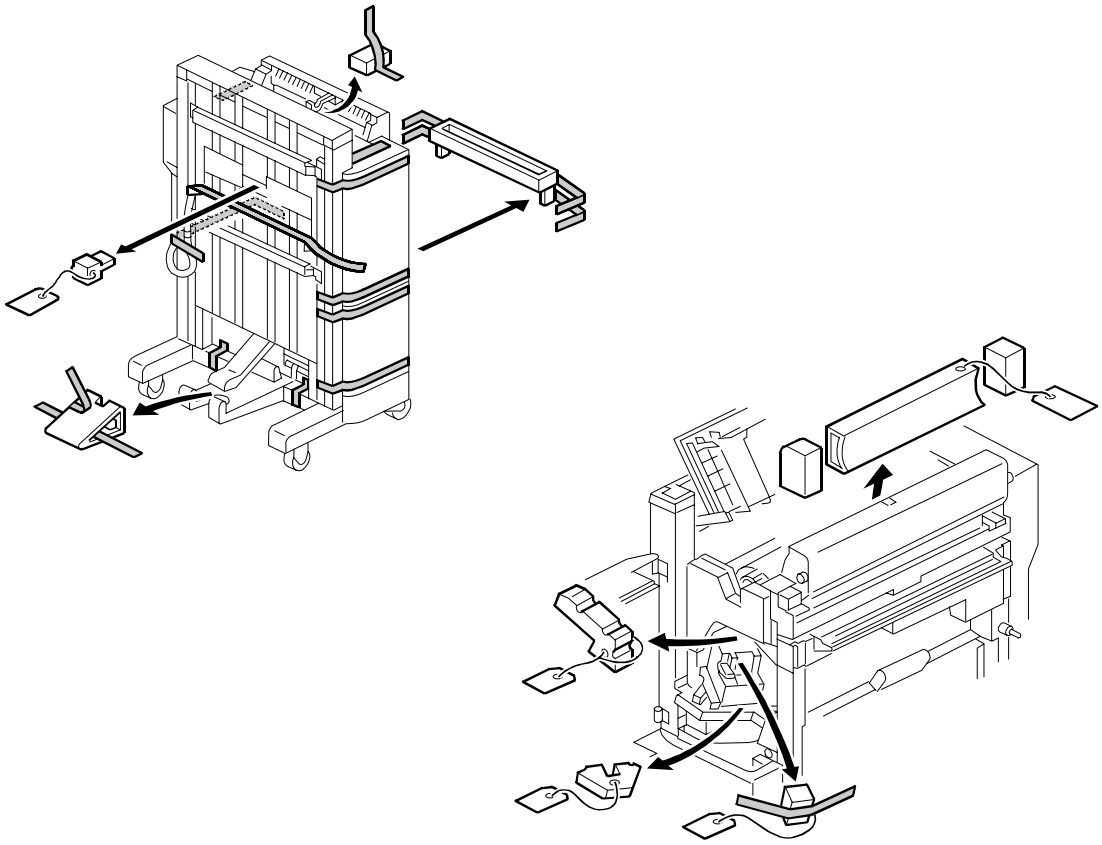
3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list.

Description	Q'ty
1. Upper Tray	1
2. Shift Tray	1
3. Tapping Screw -M4 x 6	1
4. Rail Ass'y	1
5. Joint Bracket	1
6. Tapping Screw - M4 x 16	2
7. Rail Bracket	1
8. Tapping Screw - M4 x 6	1
9. Harness Cover	1
10. Sensor Feeder	1



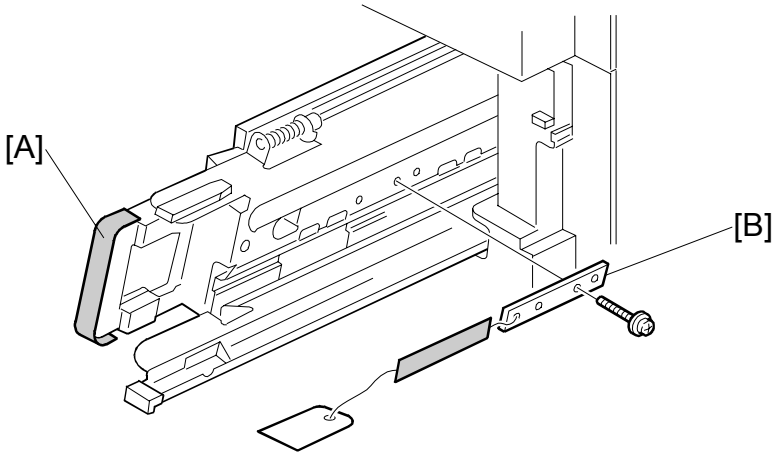
1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

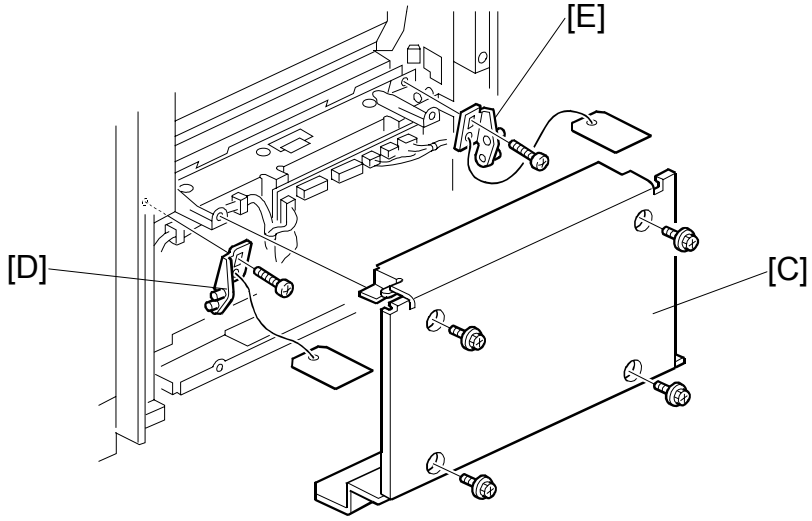


⚠CAUTION

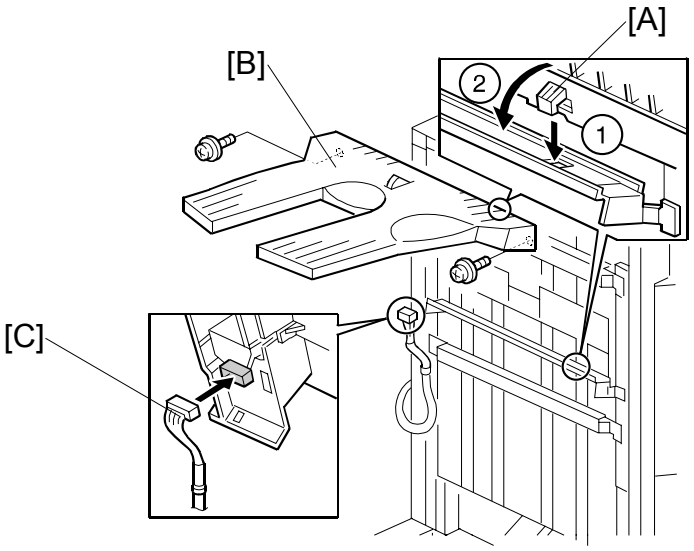
Keep the power cord unplugged when starting the following procedure.

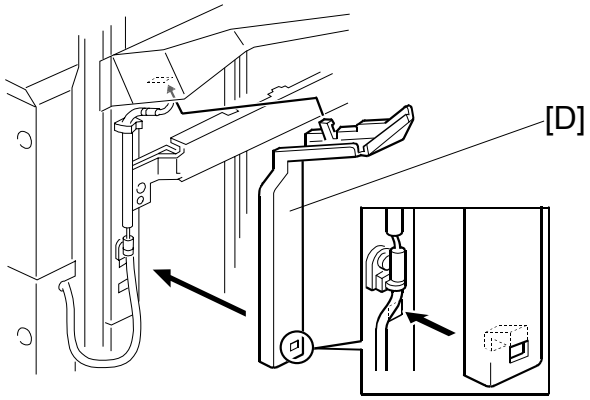
1. Unpack the finisher and remove the tapes and shipping retainers.



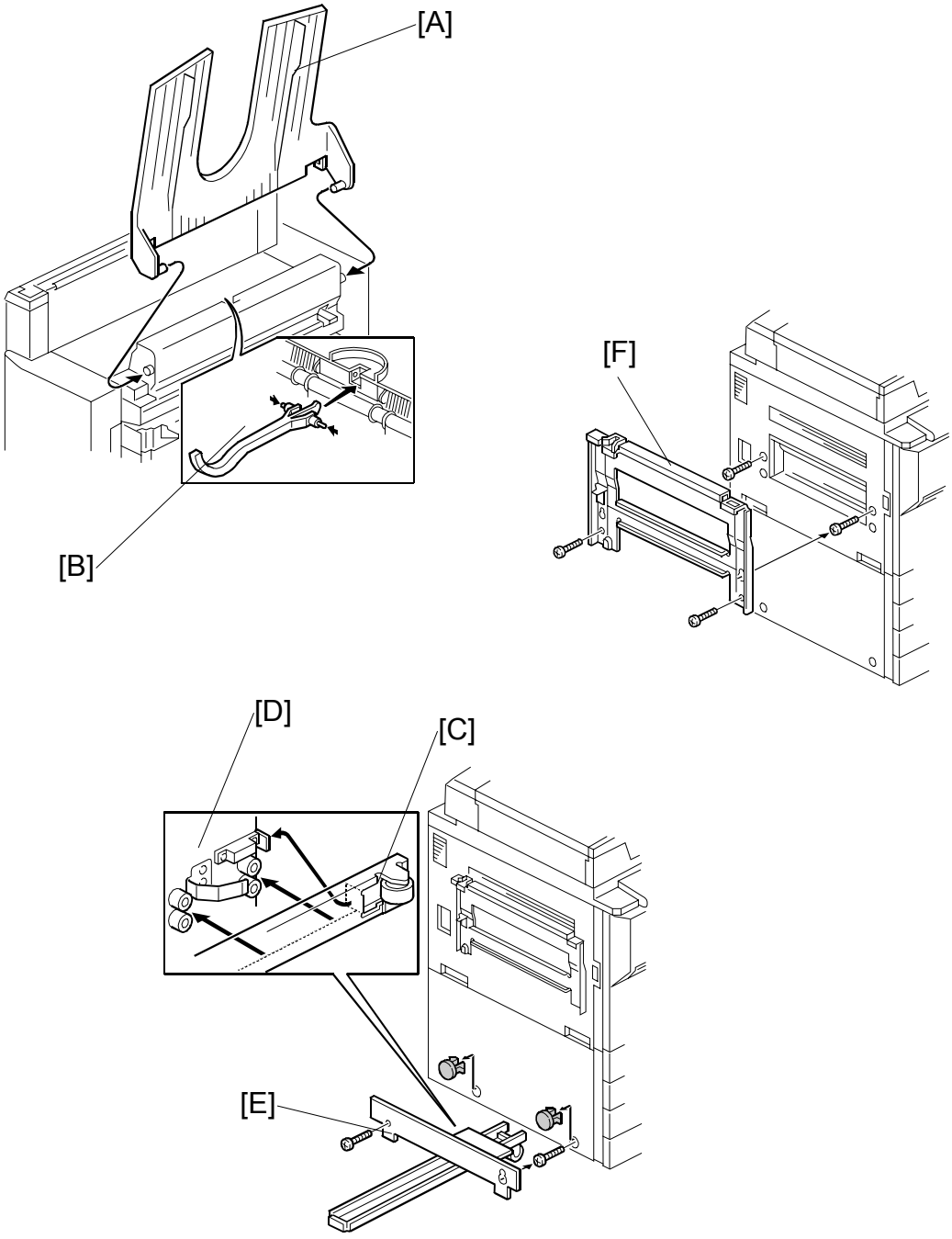


2. Open the front under door and pull out the staple unit [A].
3. Remove the stapler unit lock plate [B] (1 screw).
4. Push in the stapler unit and shut the front lower door.
5. Remove the right lower cover [C] (4 screws).
6. Remove the front pressure release bracket [D] (1 screw).
7. Remove the rear pressure release bracket [E] (1 screw).

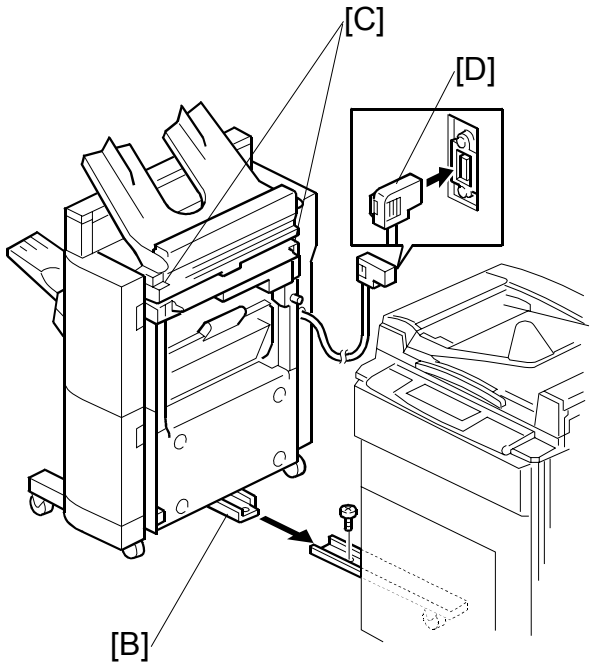




8. Set the hooks [A] of the shift tray [B] in the notches in the shift tray bracket, and secure the tray with two M4 x 6 screws.
9. Connect the shift tray sensor harness [C].
10. Install the harness cover [D] (2 hooks).



11. Install the upper tray [A] (2 pins).
12. Attach the sensor feeler [B] (2 pins).
13. Install the joint bracket [F] on the left side of the copier (4 screws).
14. Attach the rail [C] to the rail bracket [D] as shown.
15. Install the rail bracket [E] on the left lower cover of the copier (2 screws).

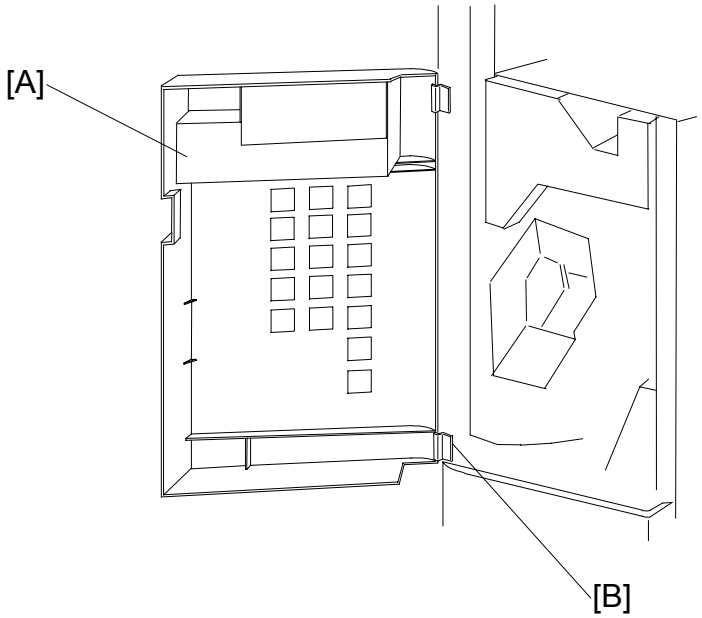


16. Secure the rail [B] to the booklet finisher with 1 M4 screw.
17. Align the finisher on the joint bracket and lock the 2 hooks [C] of the finisher on the joint bracket.
18. Connect the finisher cable [D] to the copier.
19. Plug in the power cord and turn the main switch on, and perform stapler initial setting as follows.
    1) Enter User Program mode.
    2) Press System Settings.
    3) Press Basic Page 2.
    4) Press Staple Initialization.
    5) Press the OK key.

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

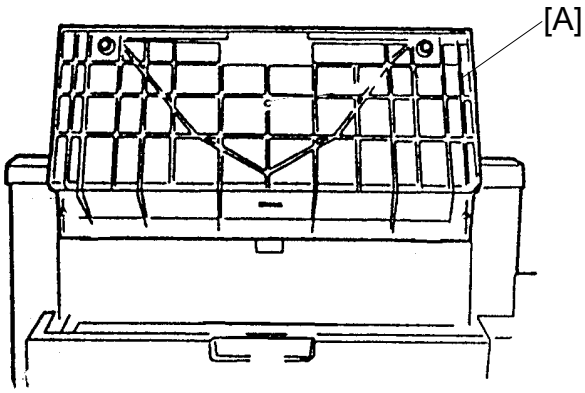
4.1 REMOVAL

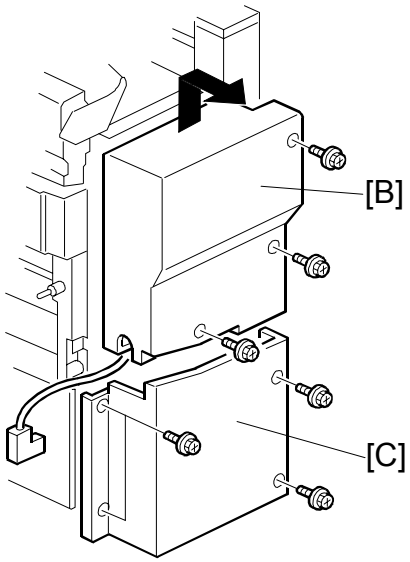
4.1.1 UPPER DOOR



1. Open the upper door [A].
2. Remove the lower hinge [B] (1 screw).
3. Push up the upper door and remove it.

4.1.2 UPPER REAR COVER



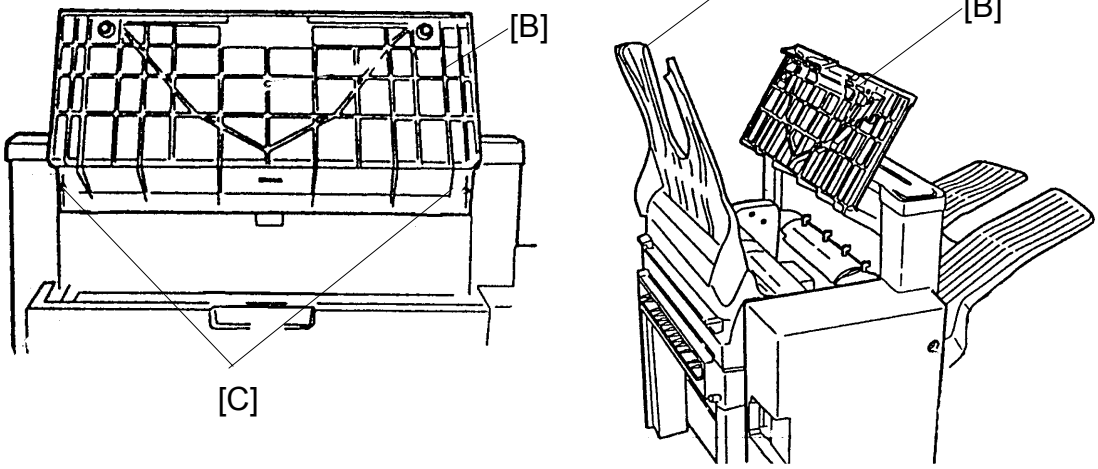


1. Hold up the proof tray and open the top cover [A].
2. Unhook the upper rear cover [B] and remove it (3 screws).

4.1.3 LOWER REAR COVER

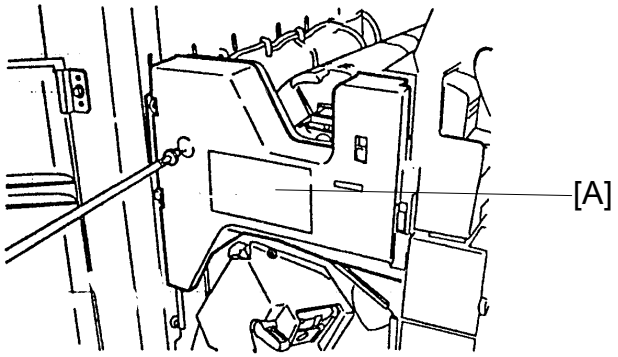
1. Remove the lower rear cover [C] (4 screws).

4.1.4 TOP COVER



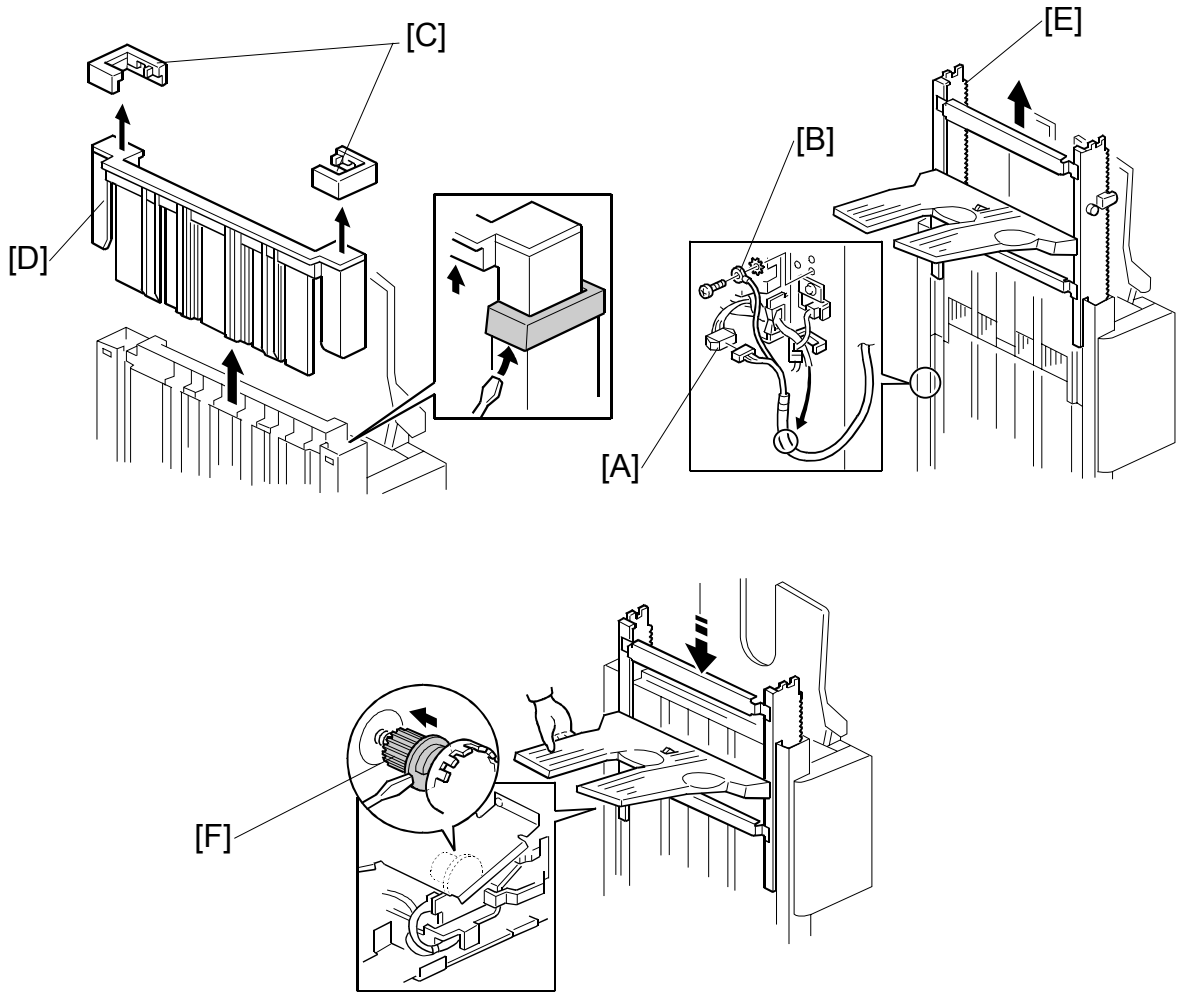
1. Hold up the upper tray [A] and open the top cover [B].
2. Push the hooks [C] of the top cover and remove it.

4.1.5 UPPER INNER COVER



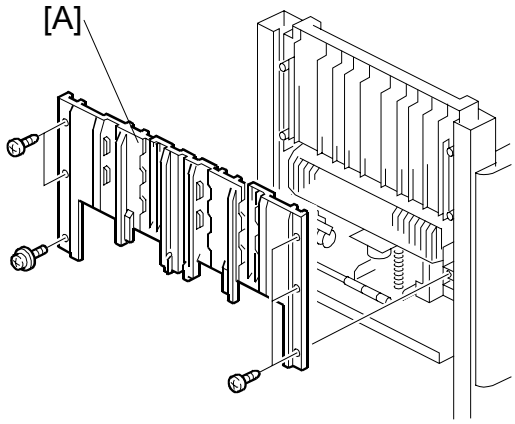
1. Open the upper door.
2. Remove the upper inner cover [A] (1 screw).

4.1.6 SHIFT TRAY UNIT



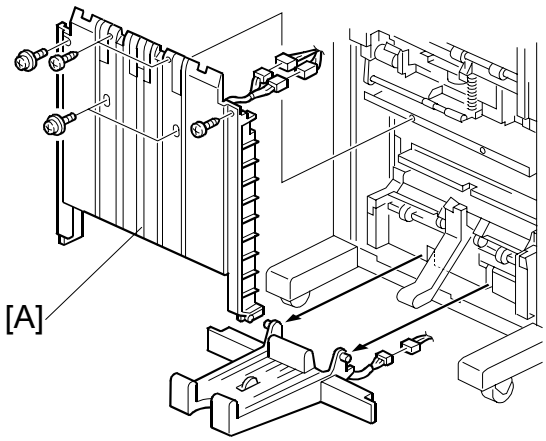
1. Remove the upper and lower rear covers.
2. Disconnect the connector [A] and remove the grounding wire [B] (1 screw).
3. Unhook the two stoppers [C] and remove them.
4. Remove the slide guide [D] by pulling it up.
5. Remove the shift tray unit [E] by pulling it up.
   NOTE: When reinstalling the shift tray unit, release the clutch gear [F] of the tray lift motor by carefully inserting a screwdriver.

4.1.7 UPPER SHIFT GUIDE



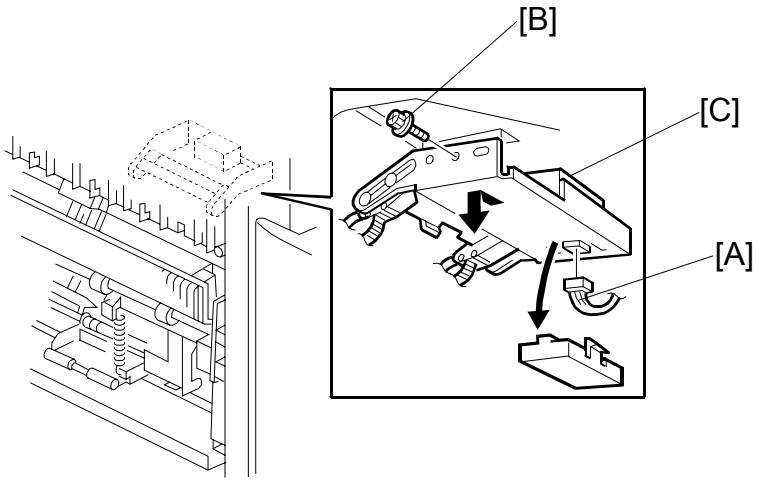
1. Remove the slide guide and shift the shift tray unit down by releasing the clutch gear of the tray lift motor (see Shift Tray Unit Removal).
2. Remove the upper shift guide [A] (6 screws (5 x M4, 1 x M3)).

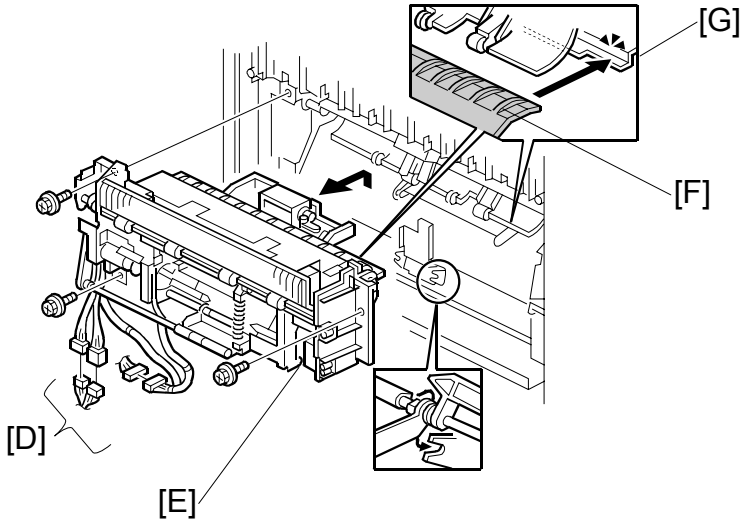
4.1.8 LOWER SHIFT GUIDE



1. Remove the shift tray unit.
2. Remove the lower shift guide [A] (2 connectors, 6 screws (3 x M4, 3 x M3)).

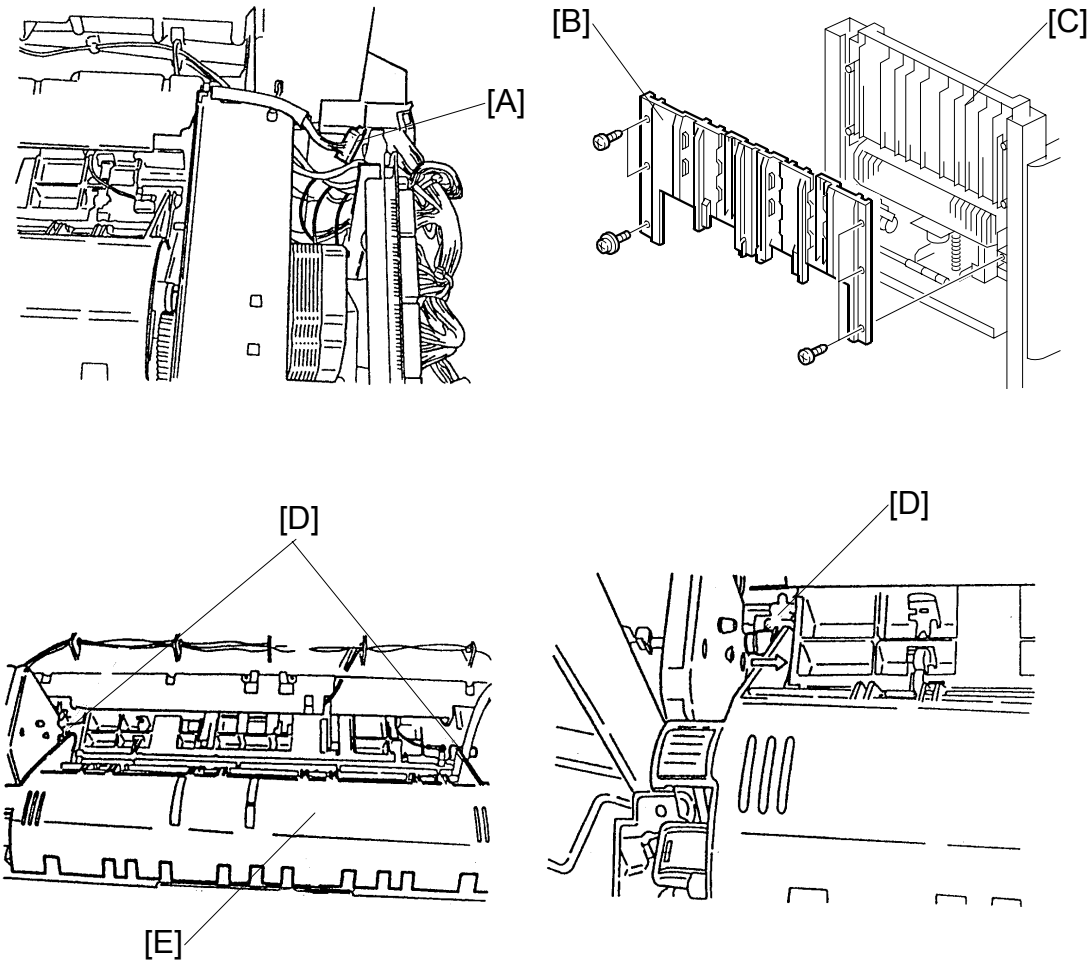
4.1.9 EXIT UNIT





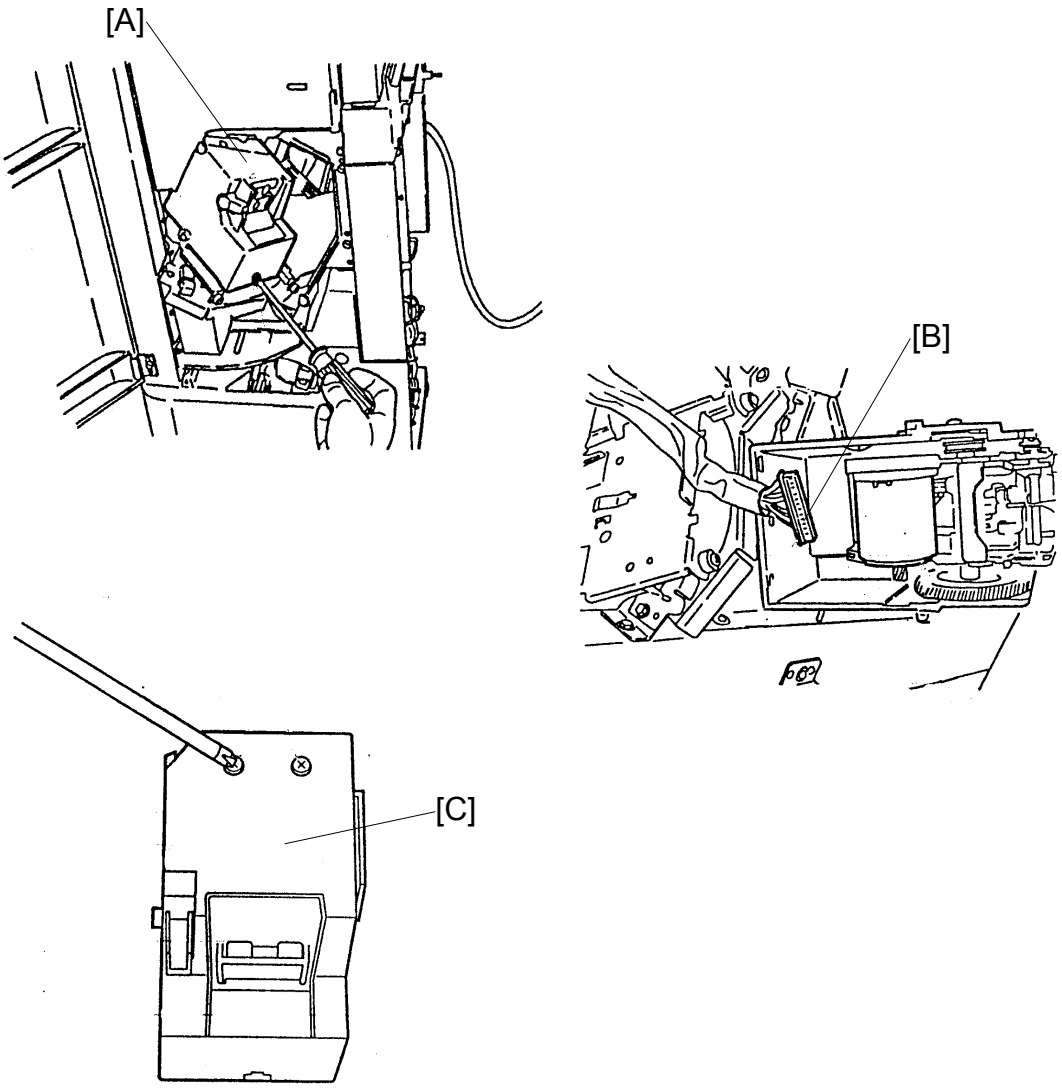
1. Remove the shift tray unit, and the upper and lower shift guides.
2. Disconnect the connector [A] and remove the screw [B] that secures the transport belt unit [C].
3. Disconnect the 4 connectors [D].
4. Hold up the exit unit [E] and remove it with the transport belt unit (3 screws, 1 clamp).
   NOTE: When installing the exit unit, make sure to position the exit unit guide plate (black) [F] over the transport guide plate [G].

4.1.10 BUFFER ROLLER UNIT



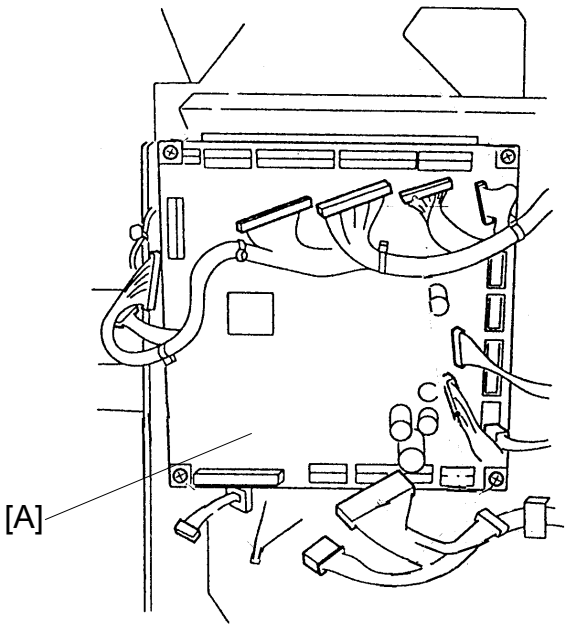
1. Remove the upper rear cover and the top cover.
2. Disconnect the connector [A].
3. Remove the upper shift guide [B] (6 screws) and the guide holder [C] (2 screws).
4. Unhook the shafts [D], and remove the buffer roller unit [E] (2 clamps).

4.1.11 STAPLER



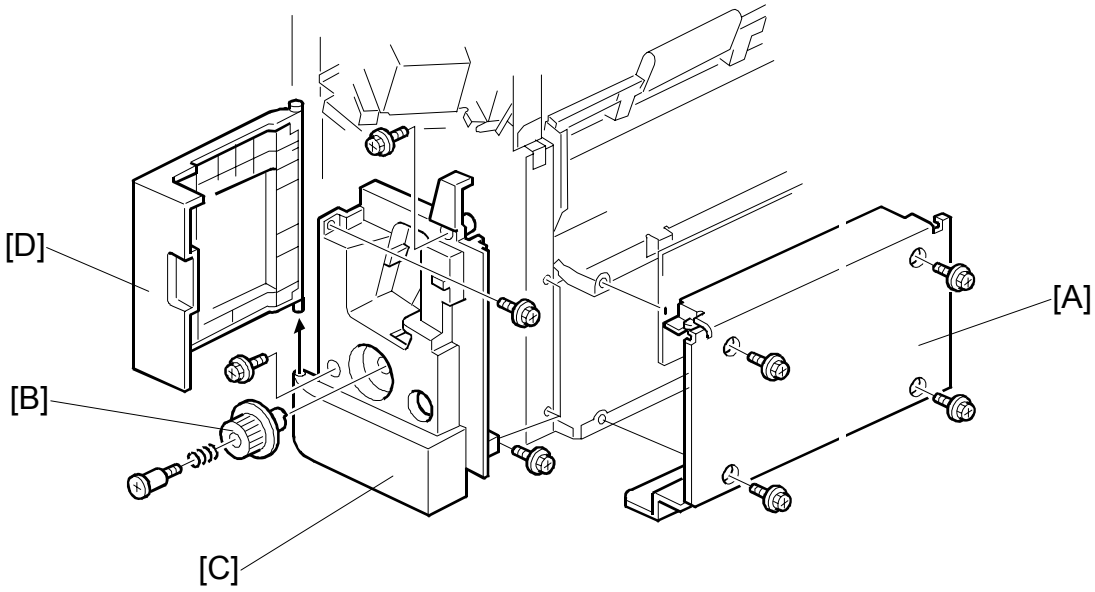
1. Open the upper front door.
2. Slide the stapler [A] towards the front.
3. Remove the stapler (1 screw, 1 connector [B]).
4. Remove the cover [C] from the stapler (2 screws).

4.1.12 FINISHER BOARD

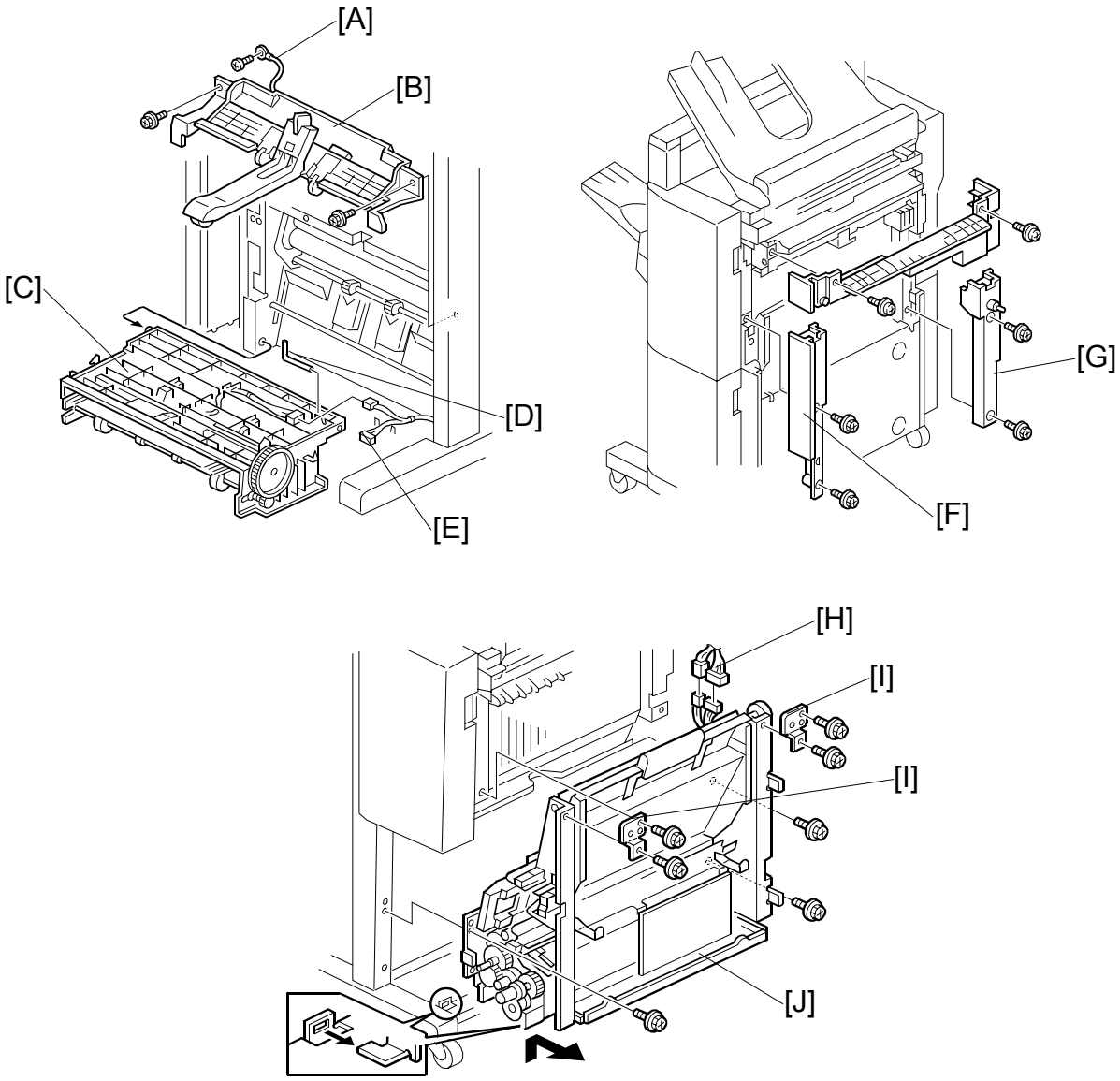


1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Remove the finisher board [A] (4 screws, 19 connectors).
   NOTE: Do the following adjustments after replacing the board:
   - Shift tray height
   - Jogger fence position
   - Stapling position

4.1.13 BOOKLET UNIT

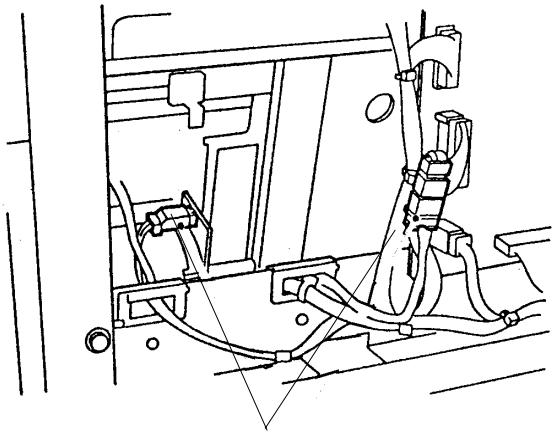


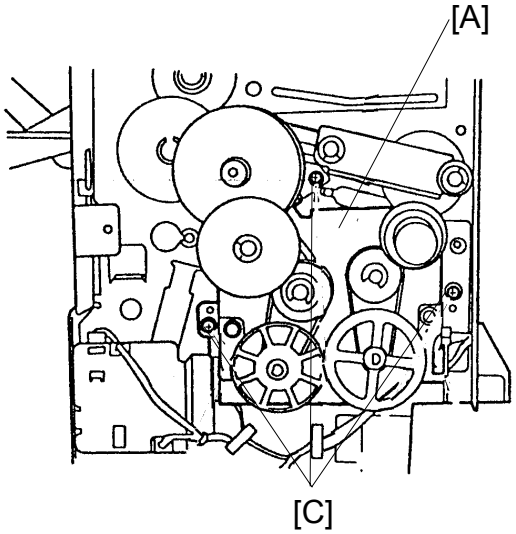
1. Remove the following items.
   - Upper and lower rear covers.
   - Shift tray unit.
   - Lower shift guide.
2. Remove the lower right cover [A] (4 screws).
3. Remove the folder roller knob [B] (1 stepped screw).
4. Remove the lower inner cover [C] and lower door [D] (5 screws).

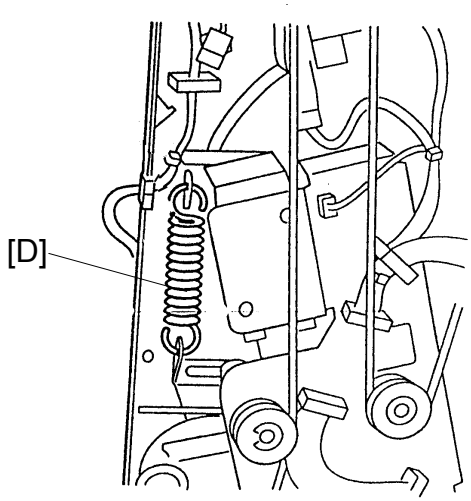


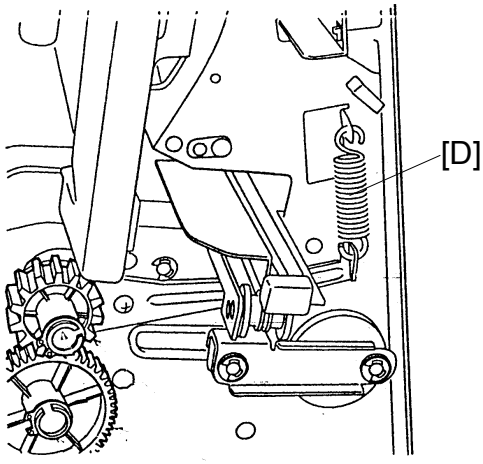
5. Remove the grounding wire [A] (1 screw) and upper booklet exit guide [B] (2 screws).
6. Open the lower booklet exit guide [C] and remove it (1 L-pin [D], 2 connectors [E]).
7. Remove the right front and right rear covers [F , G] (2 screws each).
8. Disconnect the two connectors [H].
9. Remove the two joints [I] and then pull out the booklet unit [J] from the right side (3 screws).

4.1.14 FOLDER ROLLERS

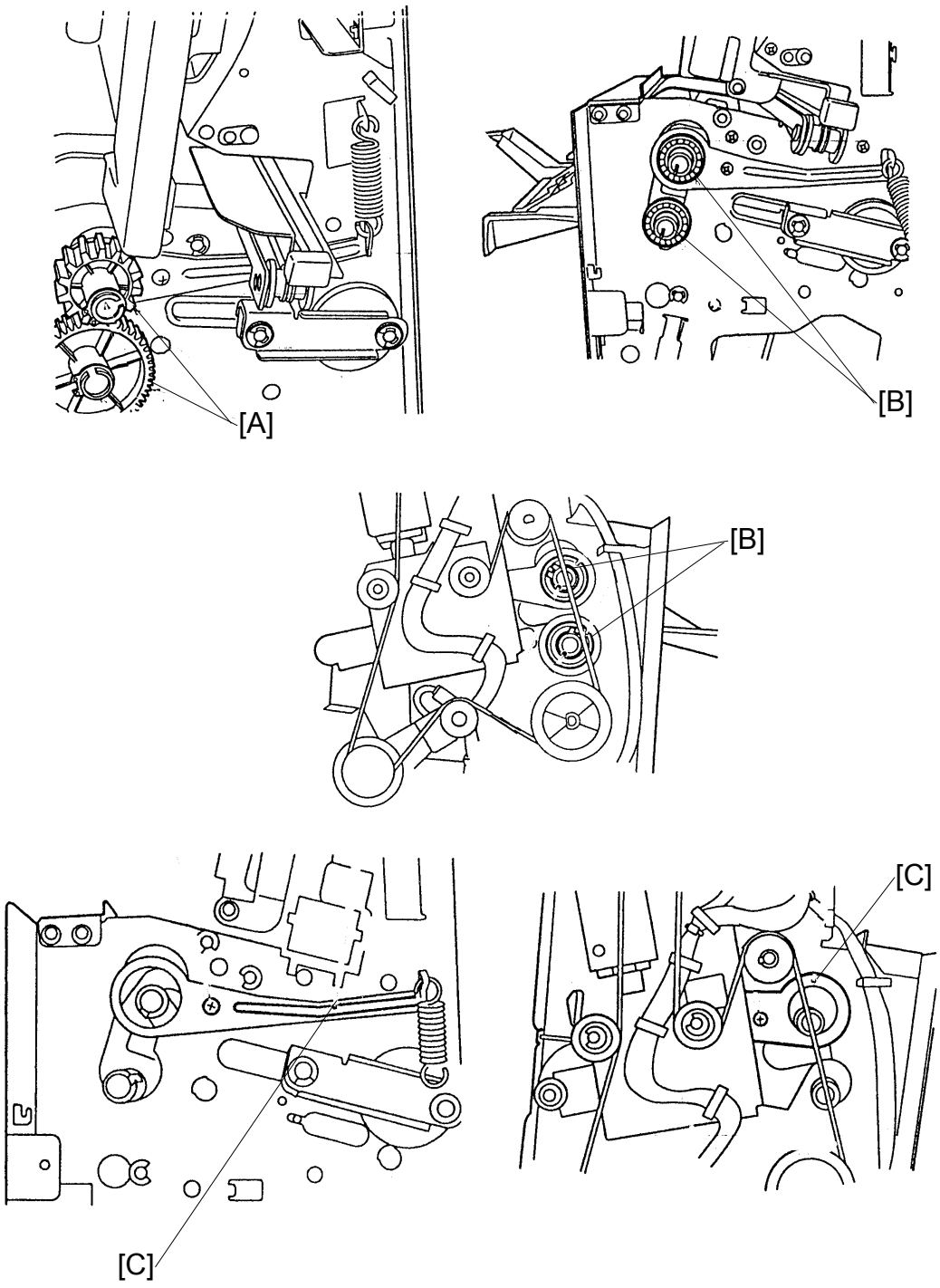




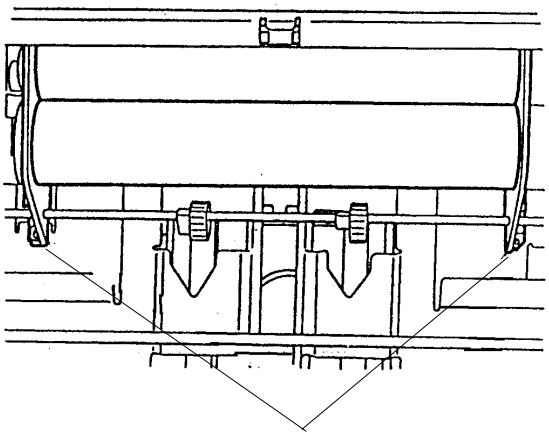


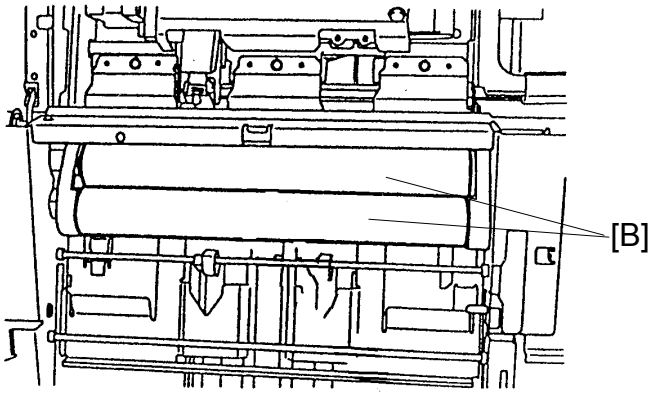


1. Remove the booklet unit
2. Remove the drive unit [A] (4 connectors [B], 3 screws [C]).
3. Remove the front and rear tension springs [D].



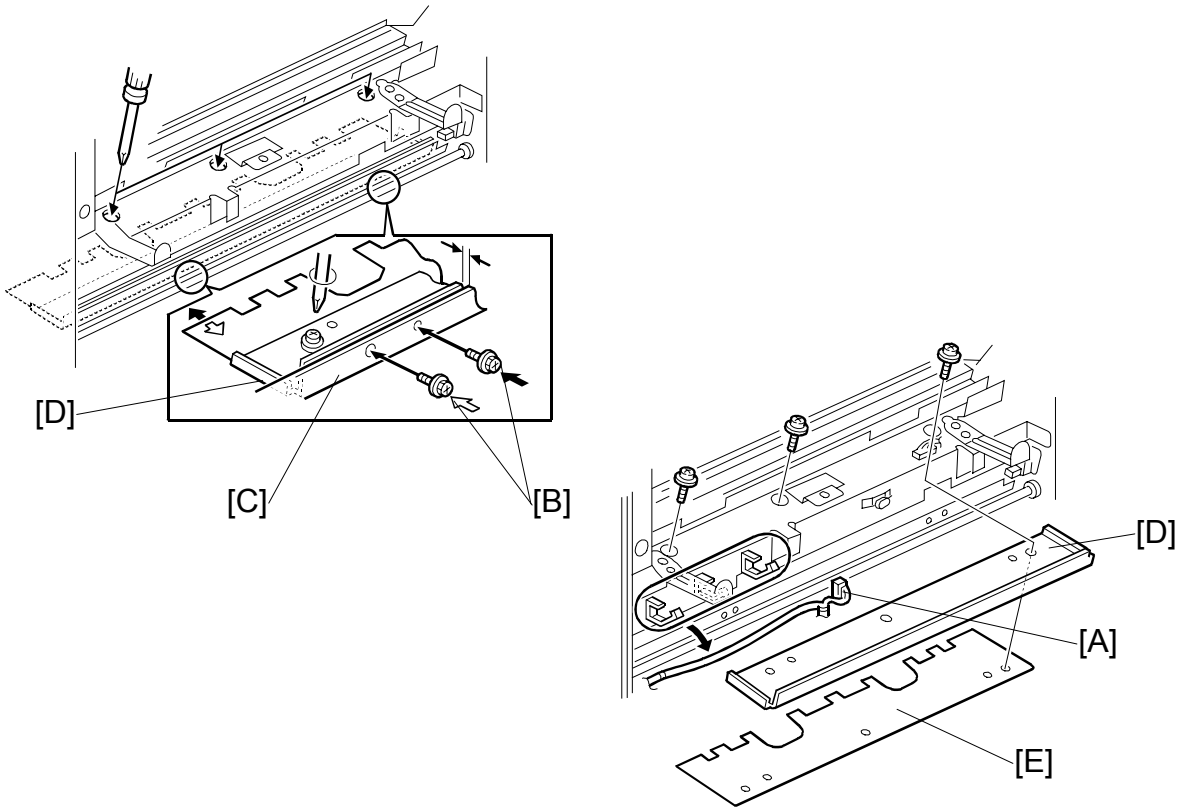
4. Remove the gears [A] and ball bearings [B] (4 C-rings).
5. Remove the front and rear tighteners [C] (1 stepped screw each).





6. Remove the jogger plates [A] (1 screw each).
7. Slide the folder rollers [B] to the front and remove them.

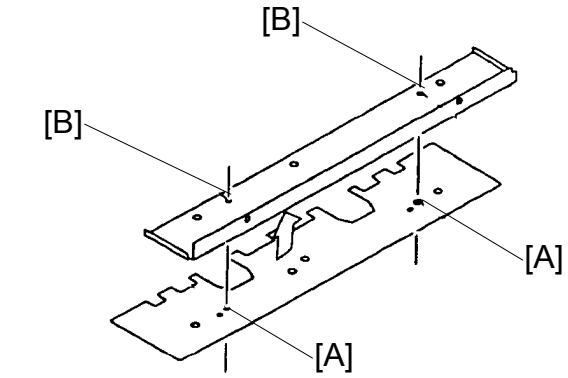
4.1.15 FOLDER PLATE

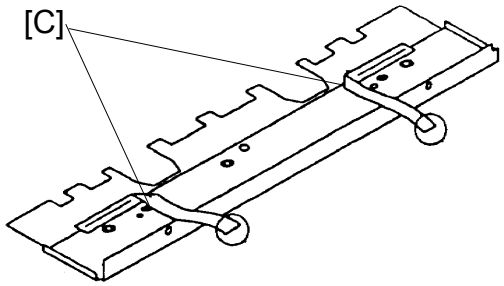


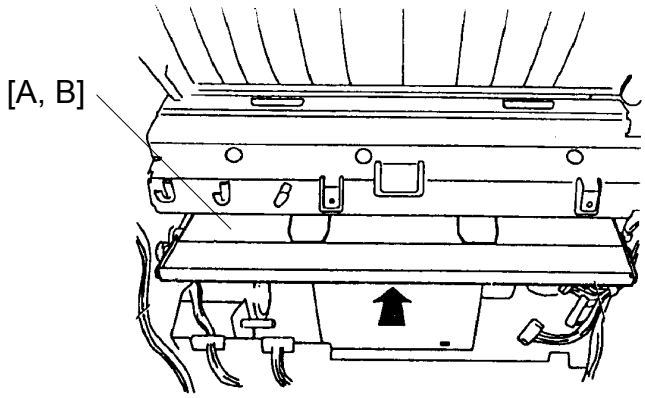
Removal

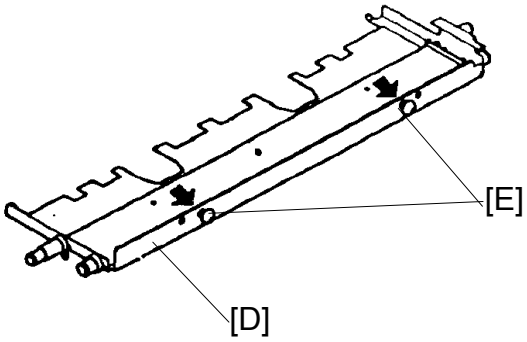
1. Remove the following items
   - Lower right cover (see “Booklet Unit Removal”)
   - Folder roller knob (see “Booklet Unit Removal”)
   - Lower door and lower inner cover (see “Booklet Unit Removal”)
   - Booklet board
2. Release the harness [A] from the clamps.
3. Insert two positioning screws [B] in the holes provided in the folder table [C].
4. Tighten the screws until the ends touch the securing plate [D] for the folder plate.
5. Remove the folder plate [E] and the securing plate (3 screws).

Reinstalling





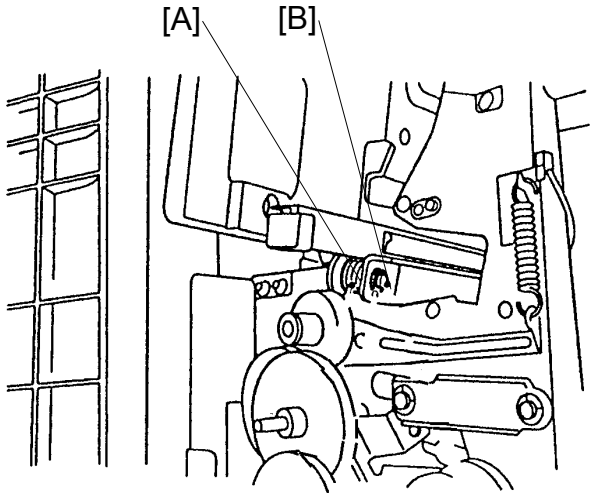


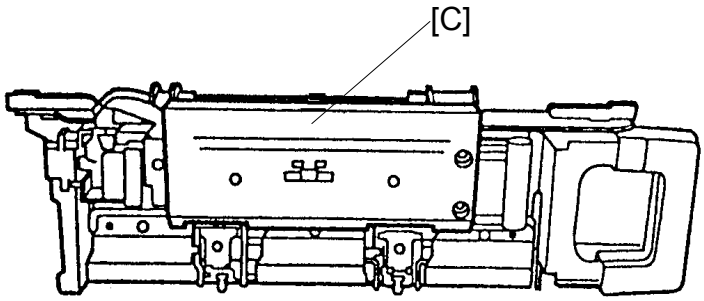


1. Line up the two small holes [A] in the folder plate with the two small protrusions on the bottom of the securing plate [B]. Then, push the two protrusions through the holes.
   Note: Be sure that the three screw holes are also lined up.
2. Temporarily fix the two plates together by attaching two strips of electrical tape [C] along the line where they meet (see the illustration).
   NOTE: 1) Be sure to fold the two strips back toward you so that they can easily be removed.
   2) Be careful not to attach the tape too close to the three screw holes.
3. Reattach the two plates [A, B] to the folder table [D] (3 screws).
   NOTE: Tighten these three screws while holding the securing plate against the two positioning screws [E] that were installed in step 3 of the "Removal" procedure.
4. Remove the two strips of tape.

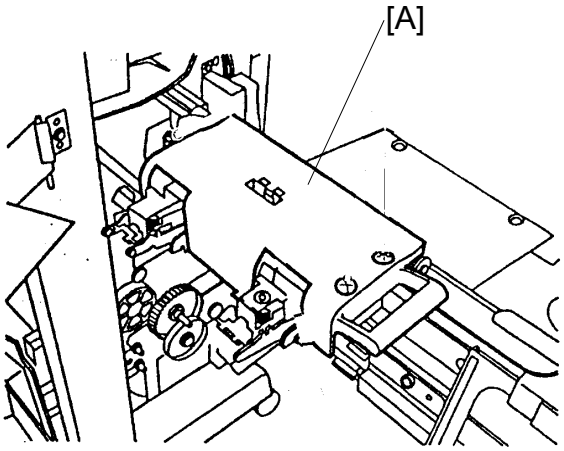
4.1.16 BOOKLET STAPLER UNIT

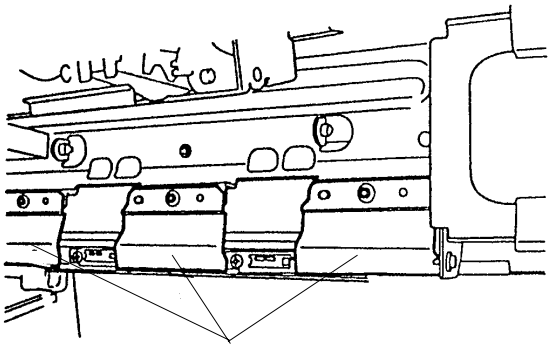
Removal

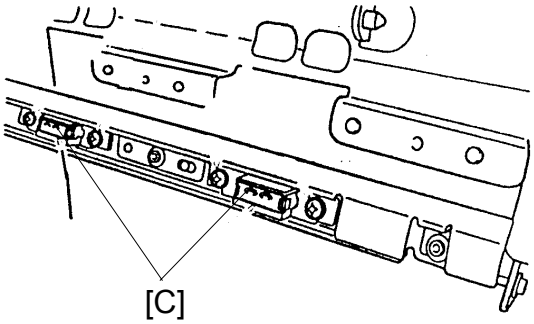




1. Remove the lower door and inner cover (see “Booklet Unit Removal”).
2. Remove the guide roller [A] and shaft [B] (1 E-ring).
3. Pull out the booklet stapler unit [C].

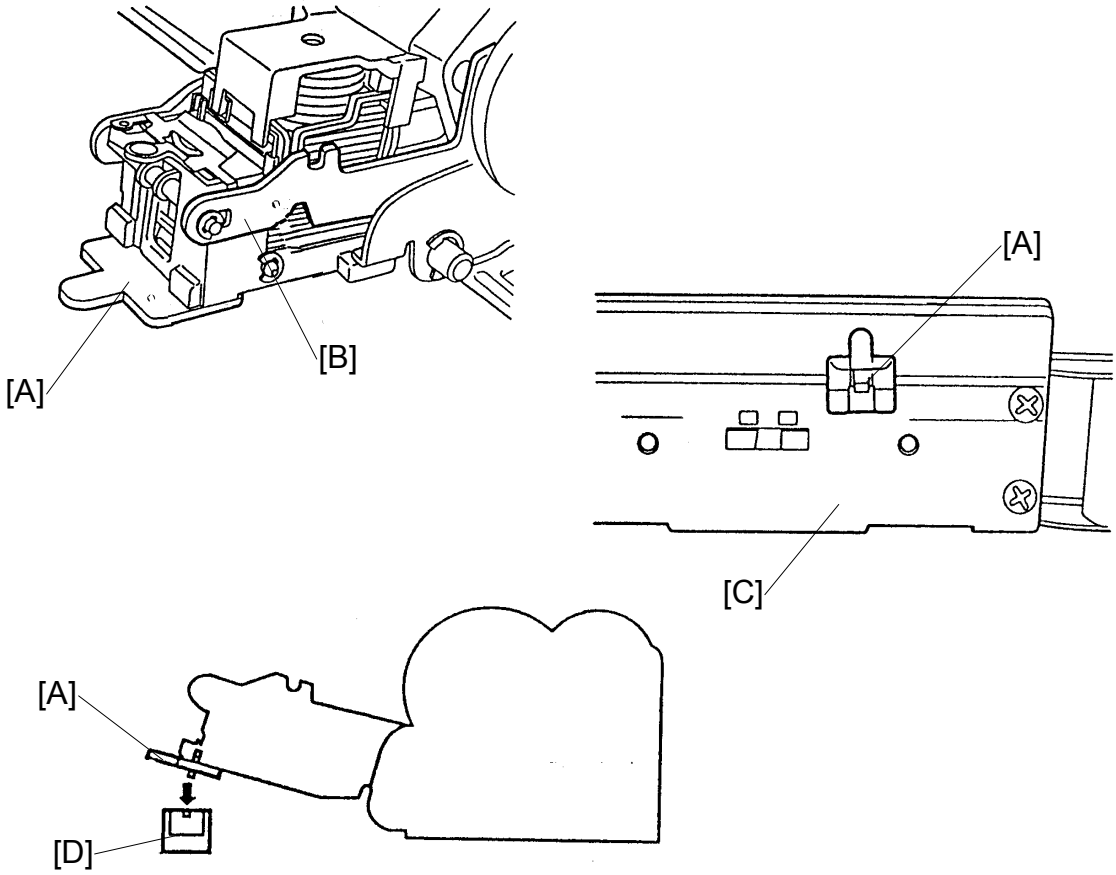






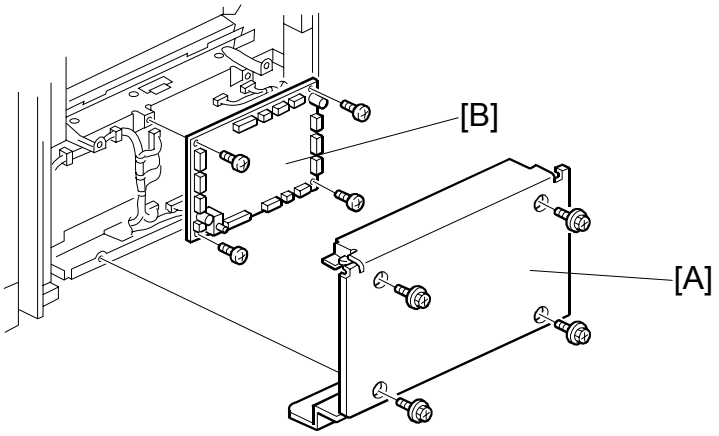
Adjustment

1. Remove the booklet stapler cover [A] (3 screws).
2. Remove the three paper guides [B] (1 screw each).
3. Loosen the two screws on each of the anvils [C].



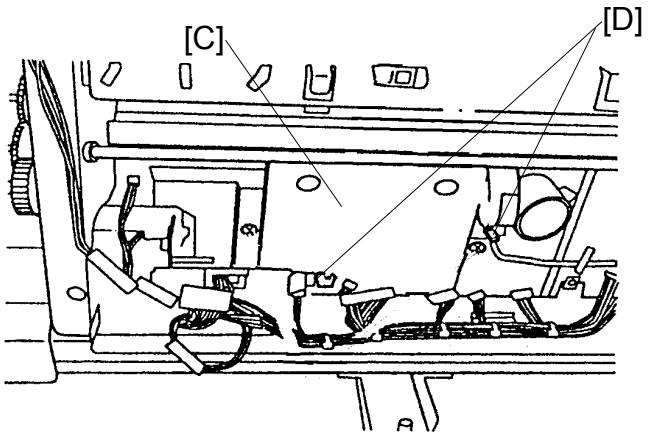
4. Insert the anvil positioning plate [A] into the staple slot of the stapler [B].
   NOTE: The anvil positioning plate is stored in the booklet stapler cover [C].
5. Rotate the gear to move down the stapler. Then align the anvil positioning plate and the anvil [D]. Then secure the anvils (2 screws each).

4.1.17 BOOKLET BOARD



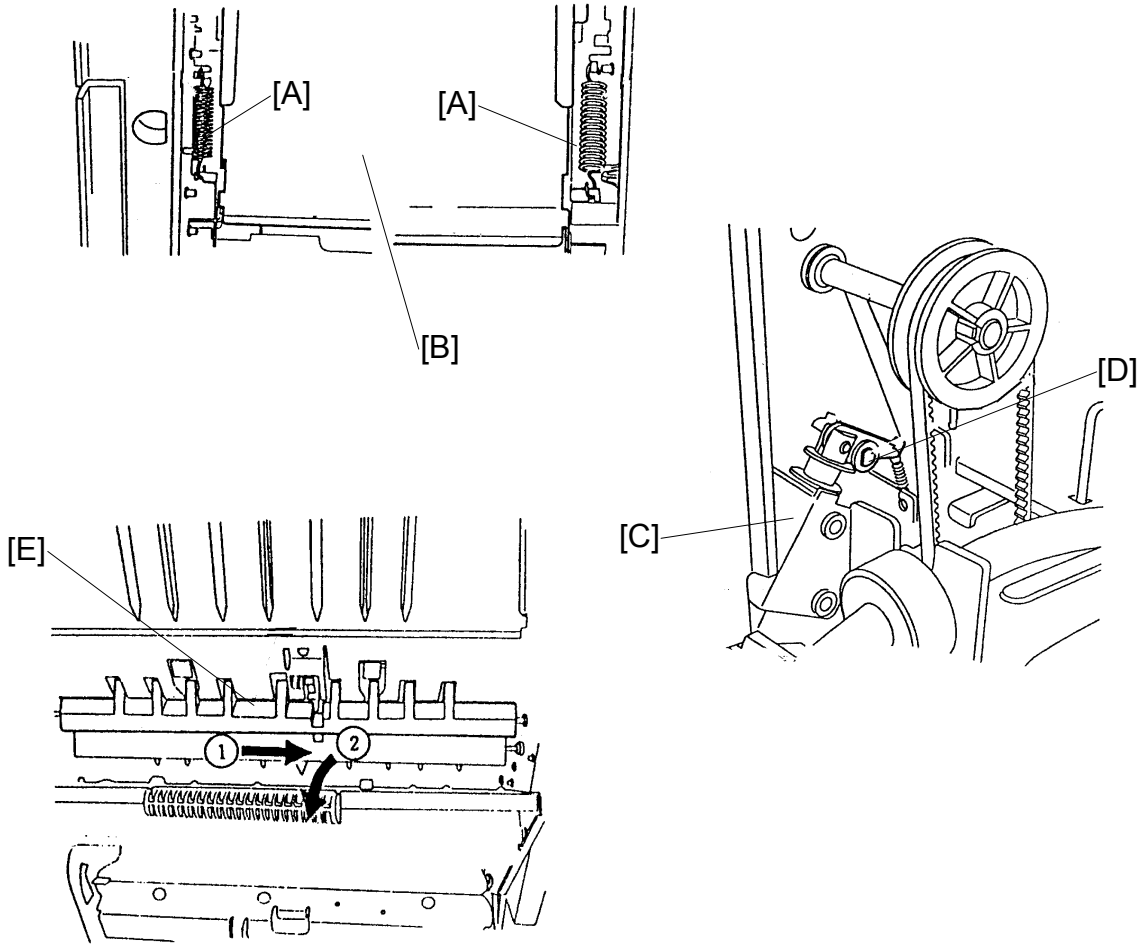
1. Remove the lower right cover [A] (4 screws).
2. Remove the booklet board [B] (4 screws, 14 connectors).
   NOTE: After replacing the board, adjust the booklet stapling position.

4.1.18 POSITIONING PLATE UNIT



1. Remove the booklet board (4 screws, 14 connectors).
2. Slide the paper positioning unit [C] to the right and remove it (2 screws, 2 connectors [D]).

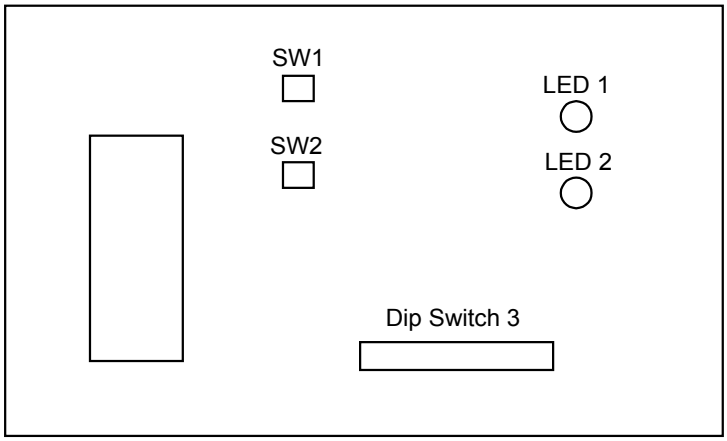
4.1.19 1ST AND 2ND BOOKLET UNIT GATES

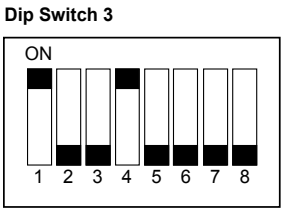


1. Remove the upper and lower rear covers.
2. Release the two tension springs [A] of the booklet entrance guide [B].
3. Remove the booklet unit gate solenoids [C] (1 screw and 1 spring each).
4. Pull out the link of the solenoid [D].
5. Remove the booklet unit gates [E].

4.2 ADJUSTMENT

4.2.1 SHIFT TRAY HEIGHT

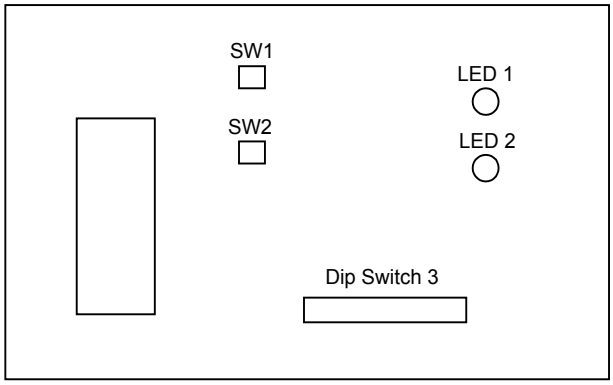


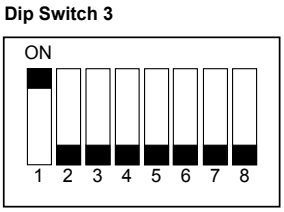


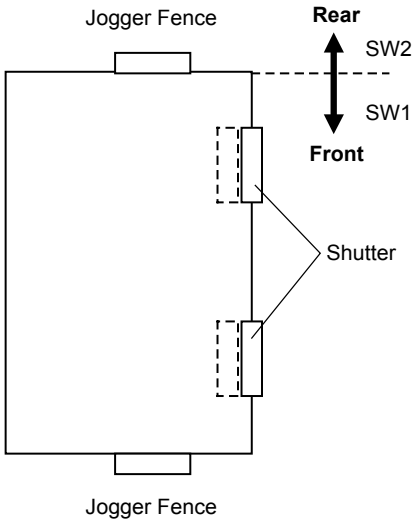
After replacing the finisher board or shift tray height sensor, always do this adjustment.

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switches 3 -1 and -4 on the finisher board.
3. Put blank paper (A4/8 1/2" x 11") on the shift tray.
4. Press switch 1 (SW1) on the finisher board.
   The finisher automatically adjusts the shift tray height when switch 1 is pressed.
   - After performing the adjustment, the shift tray will return to home position.
   - During the adjustment, LED 1 flashes. After performing the adjustment, LED 1 turns on and remains on.
   - If the automatic adjustment fails, the finisher stops and LED 1 turns off.
5. Turn off dip switches 3 -1 and -4, then turn off the copier main switch.

4.2.2 JOGGER FENCE POSITION





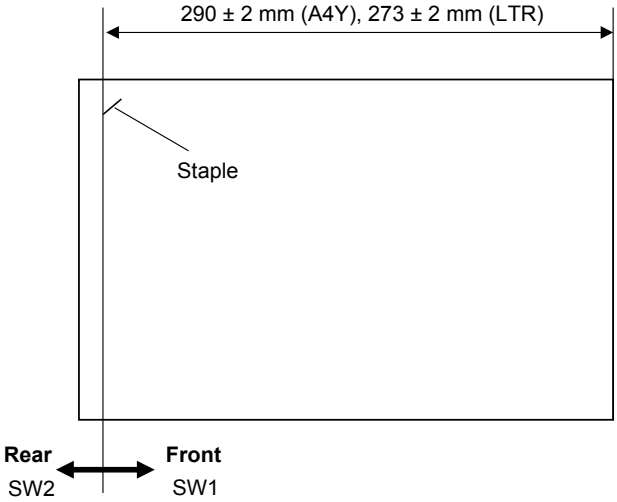


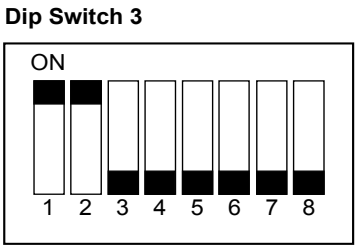
After replacing the finisher board or if a paper alignment fault occurs, do this adjustment.

Doing this adjustment once will affect all paper sizes.

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switch 3-1 on the finisher board.
3. Press the following switch on the finisher board.
   Using A4: Switch 1 (SW1)
   Using 8 1/2" x 11": Switch 2 (SW2)
   - After pressing the switch, the upper exit unit will open and the jogger fences will move to the A4 or 8 1/2" x 11" position.
4. Place 10 sheets of A4/8 1/2" x 11" paper between the jogger fences and push them until they touch the shutters.
5. Adjust the jogger fence position by pressing switch 1 or 2.
   - Switch 1: Move to the front (0.35 mm/press)
   - Switch 2: Move to the rear (0.35 mm/press)
6. Press switches 1 and 2 simultaneously to store the adjustment data.
   - After pressing the switches, the upper exit unit will close.
7. Turn off dip switch 3-1, then turn off the copier main switch.

4.2.3 STAPLING POSITOIN





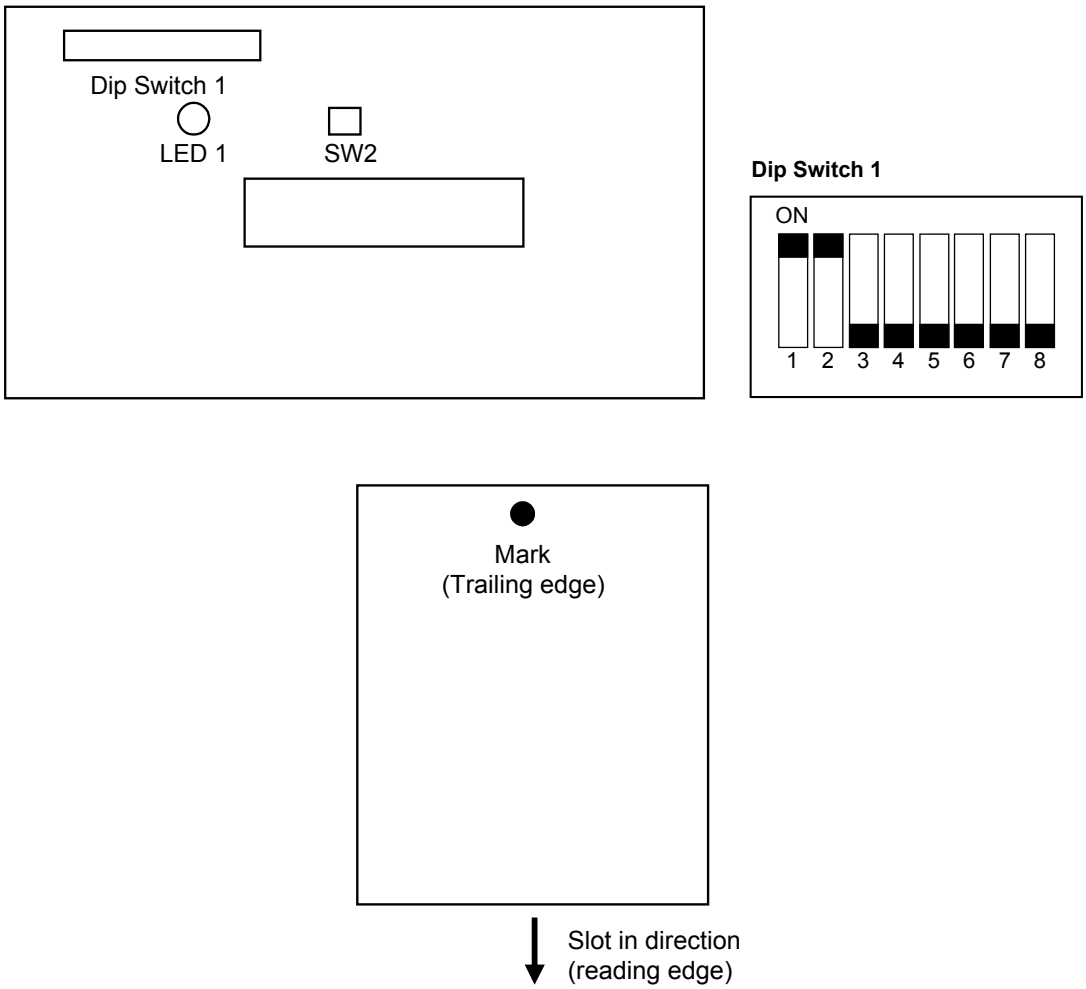
After replacing the finisher board, do this adjustment. Doing this adjustment once will affect all paper sizes and all stapling positions.

1. Remove the upper rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switches 3 -1 and -2 on the finisher board.
3. Press the following switch on the finisher board.
   Using A4: Switch 1 (SW1)
   Using 8 1/2" x 11": Switch 2 (SW2)
   - After pressing the switch, the upper exit unit will open and the transport belt will rotate.
4. Within five seconds after pressing the switch, place one sheet of A4/8 1/2" x 11" paper between the jogger fences and push it until it touches the shutter. When the staple tray paper sensor detects the paper, the stapler will staple (rear, 1 point).

1. Take out the stapled paper manually and check the staple position.
   Staple position: Good → Turn off dip switches 3 -1 and -2 to end the procedure.
   Staple position: No good → Change the staple position by doing the following steps.

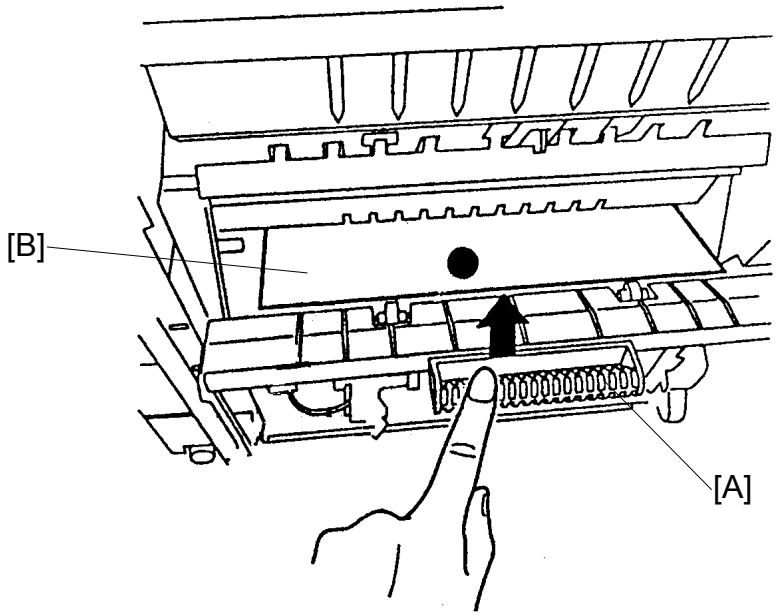
6. Adjust the staple position by pressing switch 1 or 2.
   Switch 1: Move the front (0.3 mm/press)
   Switch 2: Move to the rear (0.3 mm/press)
7. Press switches 1 and 2 simultaneously to store the adjustment data. After pressing the switches, check the staple position again.
8. Turn off dip switches 3 -1 and -2, then turn off the copier main switch.

1.1.4 BOOKLET STAPLING POSITION

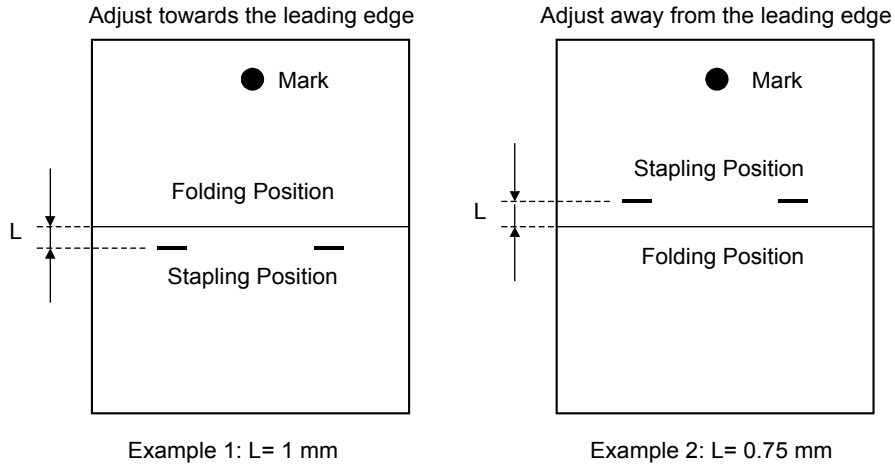


After replacing the booklet board, dip switches 1 -6, -7, -8 on the new board must be set up the same way as on the old board.

1. Remove the lower right cover (see “Booklet Unit Removal”) and lower rear cover.
2. Turn on dip switches 1 -1 and -2 on the booklet board.
3. Tape the actuators of the booklet entrance guide sensor (S42) and the booklet entrance guide safety switch (SW11), so that S42 and SW11 remain actuated.
4. Press switch 2 (SW2) on the booklet board.
   - After pressing the switch, the booklet transport motor (M10) will start to rotate.
5. Put a mark on the trailing edge of some A3/11" x 17" paper (two sheets).



6. Open the booklet entrance guide [A], then slide in the two sheets of paper [B] until their leading edges touch the positioning plate.
7. Press switch 2 on the booklet board.
   - The booklet finisher makes a booklet automatically.



Example 1: L= 1 mm

Example 2: L= 0.75 mm

Dip switch 1 -6, -7, -8 setting			Adjustment (0.25 mm/ step)
-6	-7	-8	
OFF	ON	ON	+3
OFF	ON	OFF	+2
OFF	OFF	ON	+1
OFF	OFF	OFF	0
ON	OFF	ON	-1
ON	ON	OFF	-2
ON	ON	ON	-3
ON	OFF	OFF	Do not use

8. Measure the distance (L) between the stapling position and the folder position.
9. Adjust the stapling position with dip switches 1 -6, -7, -8.
   Inputting a lower value than the current setting moves the stapling position towards the leading edge. Adjusting by 1 step moves the stapling position 0.25 mm.

   Example 1:
   To move the stapling position 1 mm towards the leading edge.
   If dip switch 1 is currently set to +2, set the dip switch to reflect -2 (this moves the stapling position 4 steps towards the leading edge).
   Example 2:
   To move the stapling position 0.75 mm away from the leading edge.
   If dip switch 1 is currently set to -1, set the dip switch to reflect +2 (this moves the stapling position 3 steps away from the leading edge).
10. Turn off dip switched 1-1 and -2, then turn off the copier main switch.

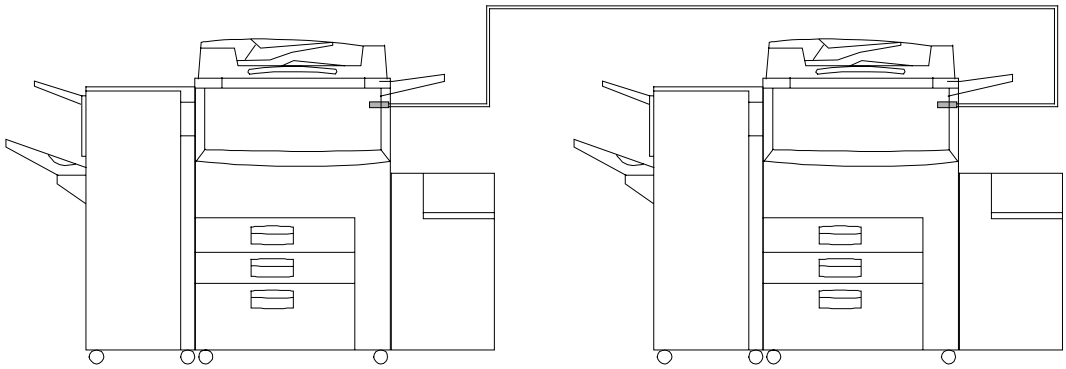
COPIER CONNECTION KIT
B322

1. SPECIFICATIONS

Copy Speed:	Max:140 cpm (A4 / 8 ½ " x 11" sideways) (Two 70 cpm machines) Max: 125 cpm (A4 / 8 ½ " x 11" sideways) (One 70 cpm machine and one 55 cpm machine) Max: 110 cpm (A4 / 8 ½ " x 11" sideways) (Two 55 cpm machines)
Copy Number Input:	1 to 999

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 OVERVIEW



This kit connects two A292 copiers, two A293 copiers or A292 and A293 copier. If the user wishes to have two copiers work on one copy job, the user starts the job on one copier. The copy job will also be made on the other copier.

The copier on which the user pressed the “Connect” key on the display is known as the “**Master Unit**” and the other copier is the “**Sub Unit**”.

Features for the job can only be selected on the **master unit**.

There is no restriction on the two connected copiers and their configurations (70 cpm copier or 55 cpm copier, with finisher or without finisher etc). However, with some combinations, the available functions are limited.

NOTE: The printer function cannot use the copy connect mode.

2.2 BASIC OPERATION

After pressing the start key, all originals are read and stored on the HDD. At the same time, the data is sent to the slave unit and stored on its HDD.

After reading all originals, the master and slave units will begin printing. The CPU separates the job for both units. So, they finish at about same time.

The way that the copies are fed out depend on the copy mode, as follows.

2.2.1 NO SORT AND NO STAPLE MODE

= Master Unit =

Exit from the copy of the 1st original, face down.

= Slave Unit =

Exit from the copy of the last original, face up.

Example:

Number of originals: 6, 1-sided to 1-sided copy mode, Number of copies: 3

Master Unit		Slave Unit	
▼▼▼▼▼	3rd original – 3rd copy	▲▲▲▲▲	4th original – 1st copy
▼▼▼▼▼	3rd original – 2nd copy	▲▲▲▲▲	4th original – 2nd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	3rd original – 1st copy	▲▲▲▲▲	4th original – 3rd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	2nd original – 3rd copy	▲▲▲▲▲	5th original – 1st copy
▼▼▼▼▼	2nd original – 2nd copy	▲▲▲▲▲	5th original – 2nd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	2nd original – 1st copy	▲▲▲▲▲	5th original – 3rd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	1st original – 3rd copy	▲▲▲▲▲	6th original – 1st copy
▼▼▼▼▼	1st original – 2nd copy	▲▲▲▲▲	6th original – 2nd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	1st original – 1st copy	▲▲▲▲▲	6th original – 3rd copy

▼: Face down, ▲: Face up

NOTE: The output quantity on the master and slave units depends on the paper feed tray position, image rotation, and copy speed. If more than two copies are made from an original, sometimes one of the copies (for example, copies of the 4th original) will print on different units (in the above example, the 1st copy of the 4th original may be made on the master instead of the slave).

2.2.2 SORT, STAPLE MODE

The copies exit face down for both units.

Example:

Number of originals: 3, 1-sided to 1-sided copy mode, Number of sets: 6

Master Unit		Slave Unit	
▼▼▼▼▼	3rd set – 3rd copy	▼▼▼▼▼	6th set – 3rd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	3rd set – 2nd copy	▼▼▼▼▼	6th set – 2nd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	3rd set – 1st copy	▼▼▼▼▼	6th set – 1st copy
▼▼▼▼▼	2nd set – 3rd copy	▼▼▼▼▼	5th set – 3rd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	2nd set – 2nd copy	▼▼▼▼▼	5th set – 2nd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	2nd set – 1st copy	▼▼▼▼▼	5th set – 1st copy
▼▼▼▼▼	1st set – 3rd copy	▼▼▼▼▼	4th set – 3rd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	1st set – 2nd copy	▼▼▼▼▼	4th set – 2nd copy
▼▼▼▼▼	1st set – 1st copy	▼▼▼▼▼	4th set – 1st copy

▼: Face down

NOTE: The output quantity (sets) made by the master and slave units depends on the paper feed tray position, image rotation, and copy speed. A set of copies will not be divided between the two machines. For example, if paper runs out on one machine, the other machine will continue to work on other sets of copies, but will not complete any unfinished sets for the machine that ran out of paper.

2.2.3 OPERATION IN IRREGULAR CONDITIONS

Paper end during copying

When a machine enters the paper end condition, it stops and “add paper” is displayed. The other machine continues to make copies. The rest of the copy job is transferred to the other machine.

If paper is replenished before the end of the job, the machine will automatically start. If the machine was part of the way through a set of copies, it will finish that set first. Then, if there are any sets still remaining, they will be re-allocated to both machines.

Copy tray full

When copy tray is full, the machine stops and “paper is full” is displayed. If this occurs on the sub unit, it is displayed on the master unit also. The other machine continues with the rest of the job.

If the copies are removed from the copy tray before the end of the job, the machine will automatically start. If the machine was part of the way through a set of copies, it will finish that set first. Then, if there are any sets still remaining, they will be re-allocated to both machines.

Paper jam

When a paper jam occurs, the following indicators are displayed.

1) “Paper jam” is displayed on the master unit.

2) The machine having the jam condition is indicated on the master unit.

3) The jam position is displayed on the machine which has the paper jam.

When a machine has a paper jam, it stops and the above indicators are displayed. The other machine continues with the rest of the job.

If the jam is removed before the end of the job, the machine will automatically start. If the machine was part of the way through a set of copies, it will finish that set first. Then, if there are any sets still remaining, they will be re-allocated to both machines.

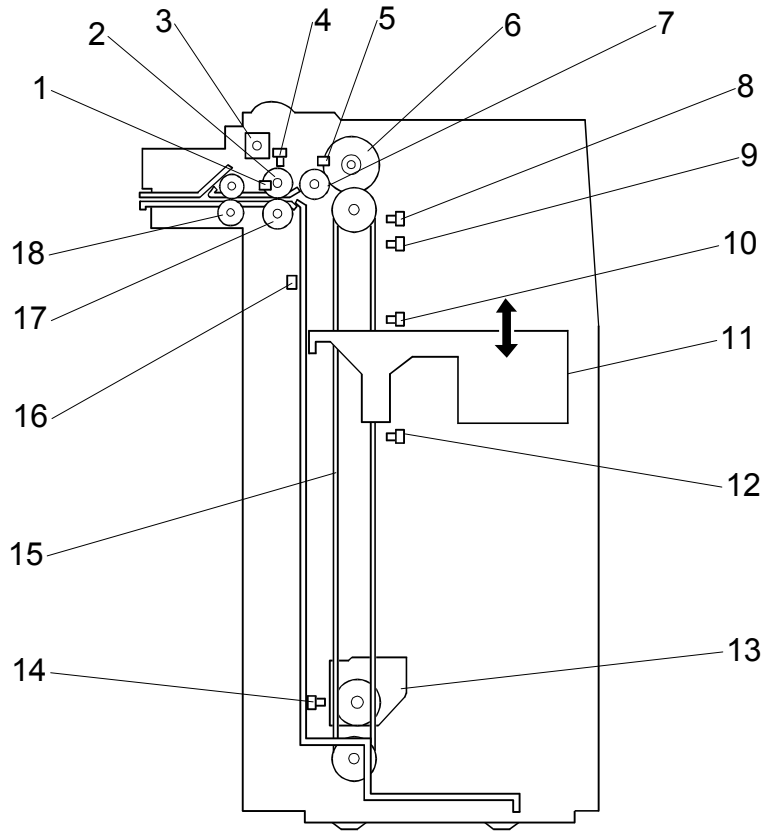
LCT
A698/B587

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

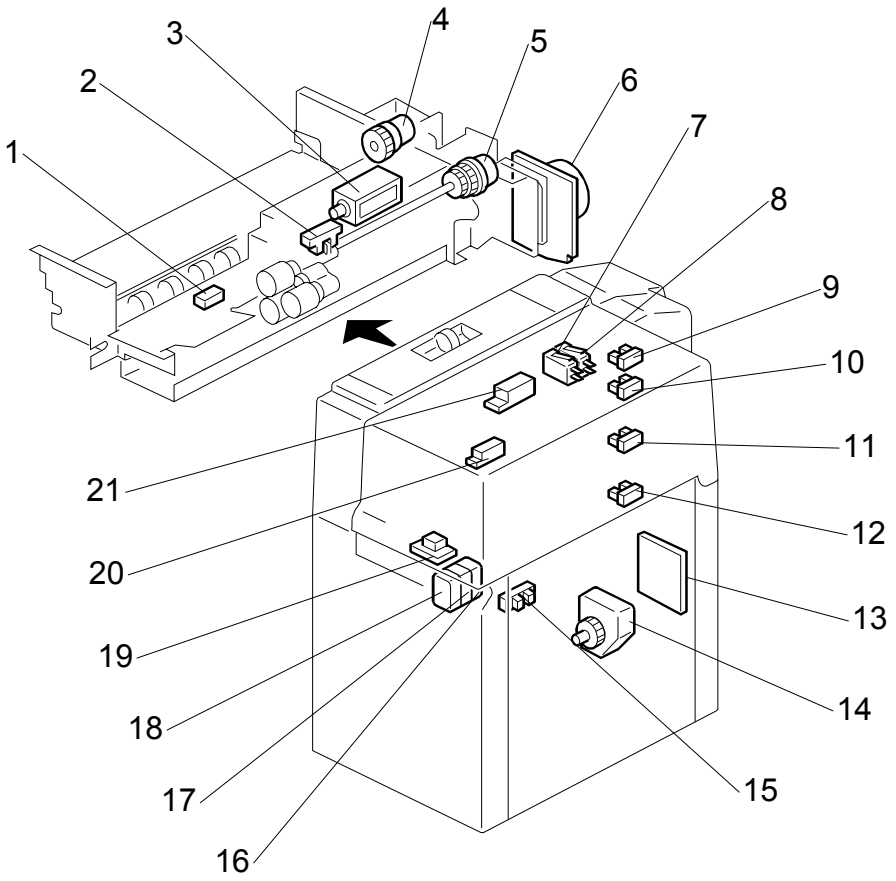
Paper Size:	A4 sideways, B5 sideways, LT sideways
Paper Weight:	64 g/m^2 ~ 105 g/m^2, 16 lb ~ 24 lb
Tray Capacity:	3,500 sheets (80 g/m^2, 20 lb)
Remaining Paper Detection:	4 steps
Power Source:	24 Vdc, 5 Vdc (from copier)
Power Consumption:	48 W
Weight:	22 kg
Size (W x D x H):	403 mm x 529 mm x 608 mm

1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Paper Feed Sensor
2. Paper Feed Roller
3. Pick-up Solenoid
4. Lift Sensor
5. Paper End Sensor
6. LCT Motor
7. Pick-up Roller
8. Paper Near End Sensor
9. Paper Height Sensor 1
10. Paper Height Sensor 2
11. Paper Tray
12. Paper Height Sensor 3
13. Lift Motor
14. Down Sensor
15. Tray Drive Belt
16. Paper Position Sensor
17. Separation Roller
18. Relay Roller

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT

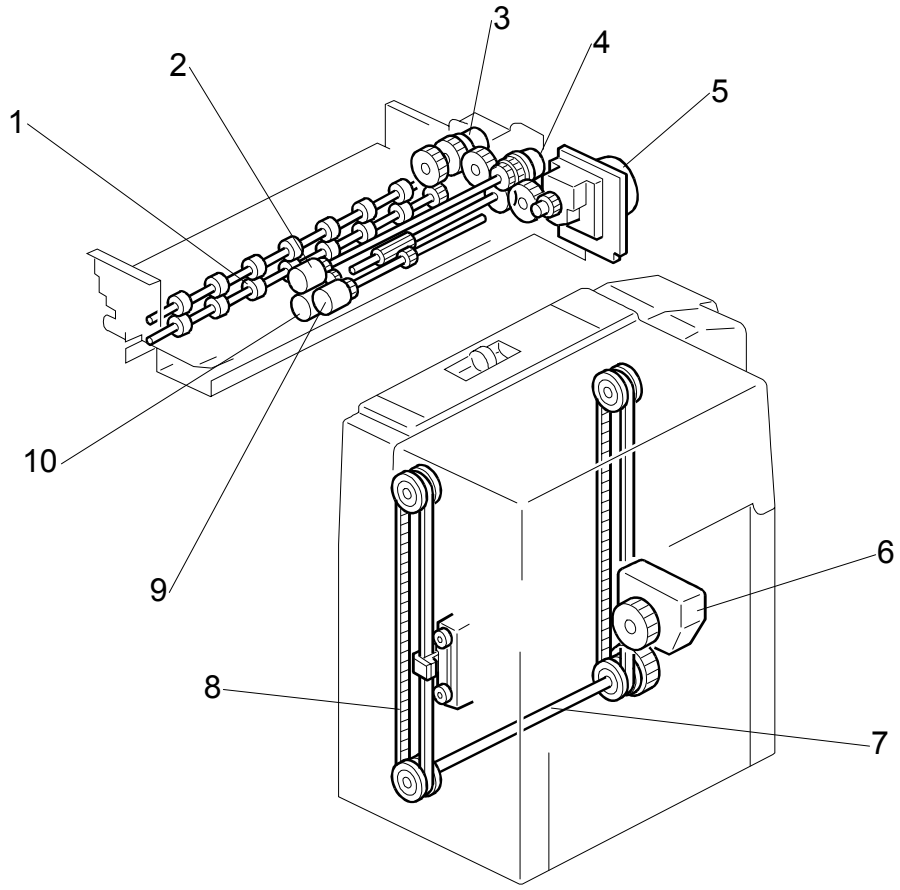


1. Paper Feed Sensor
2. Lift Sensor
3. Pick-up Solenoid
4. Relay Clutch
5. Paper Feed Clutch
6. LCT Motor
7. Feed Unit Cover Switch 1
8. Feed Unit Cover Switch 2
9. Near End Sensor
10. Paper Height Sensor 1
11. Paper Height Sensor 2
12. Paper Height Sensor 3
13. LCT Interface Board
14. Lift Motor
15. Down Sensor
16. Tray Cover Switch 1
17. Tray Cover Switch 2
18. Tray Cover Switch 3
19. Down Switch
20. Paper Position Sensor
21. Paper End Sensor

1.4 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTIONS

Symbol	Name	Function	Index No.
Motors			
M1	LCT	Drives all rollers.	6
M2	Lift	Drives the paper tray up or down.	14
Sensors			
S1	Paper End	Informs the copier when the paper has run out.	21
S2	Paper Feed	Detects the copy paper coming to the relay roller and checks for misfeeds.	1
S3	Lift	Detects when the paper is at the correct paper feed height.	2
S4	Down	Detects when the tray is completely lowered, to stop the LCT motor.	15
S5	Paper Height 1	Detects the paper height.	10
S6	Paper Height 2	Detects the paper height.	11
S7	Paper Height 3	Detects the paper height.	12
S8	Near End	Detects the paper height.	9
S9	Paper Position	Detects when the top of the paper stack is at the correct position for paper feed.	20
Switches			
SW1	Tray Cover 1	Detects whether the tray cover is opened or not.	16
SW2	Tray Cover 2	Ensures that +24V can be passed to the lift motor whether the cover is open or closed.	17
SW3	Tray Cover 3		18
SW4	Feed Unit Cover 1	Detects whether the feed unit cover is opened or not.	7
SW5	Feed Unit Cover 2	Ensures that +24V can be passed to the lift motor whether the cover is open or closed.	8
SW6	Down	Lowers the LCT bottom plate if pressed.	19
Solenoids			
SOL1	Pick-up	Controls up-down movement of the pick-up roller.	3
Magnetic Clutches			
MC1	Paper Feed	Drives the paper feed roller.	5
MC2	Relay	Drives the relay roller.	4
PCBs			
PCB1	LCT Interface	Controls the LCT and communicates with the copier.	13

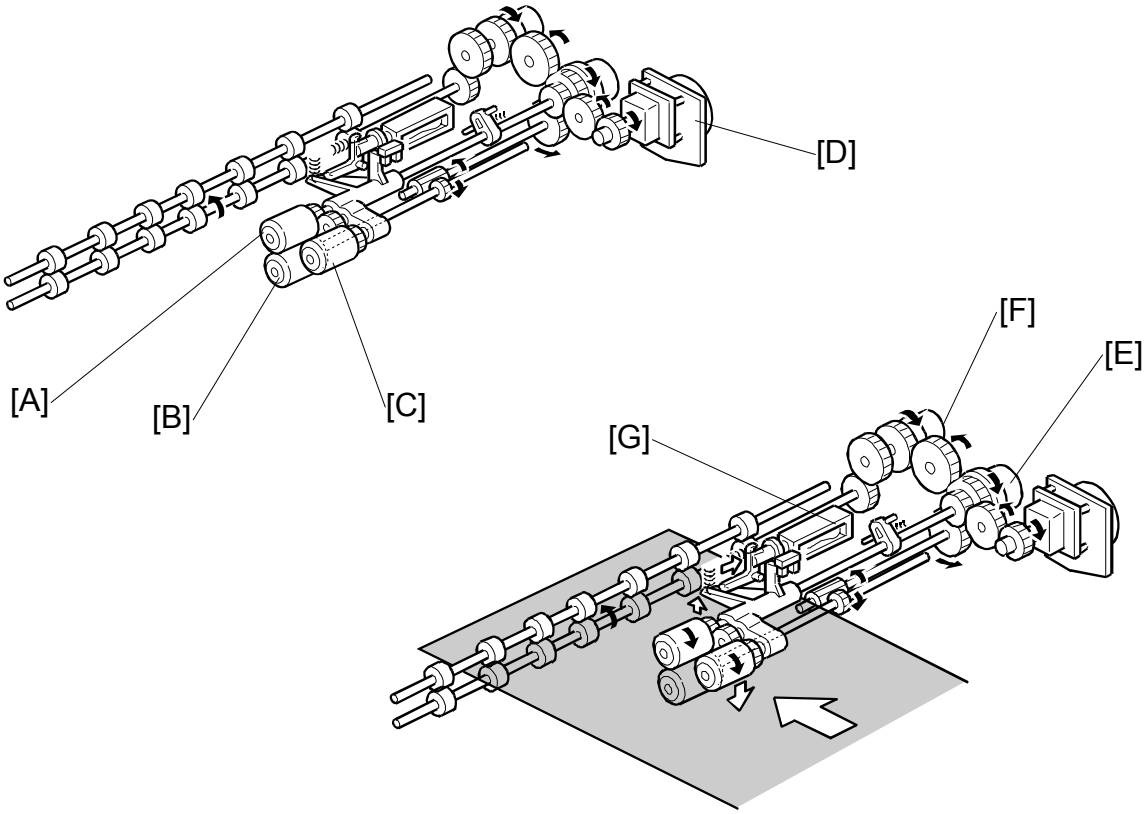
1.5 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Relay Roller
2. Paper Feed Roller
3. Relay Clutch
4. Paper Feed Clutch
5. LCT Motor
6. Lift Motor
7. Tray Drive Shaft
8. Tray Drive Belt
9. Pick-up Roller
10. Separation Roller

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 PAPER FEED MECHANISM

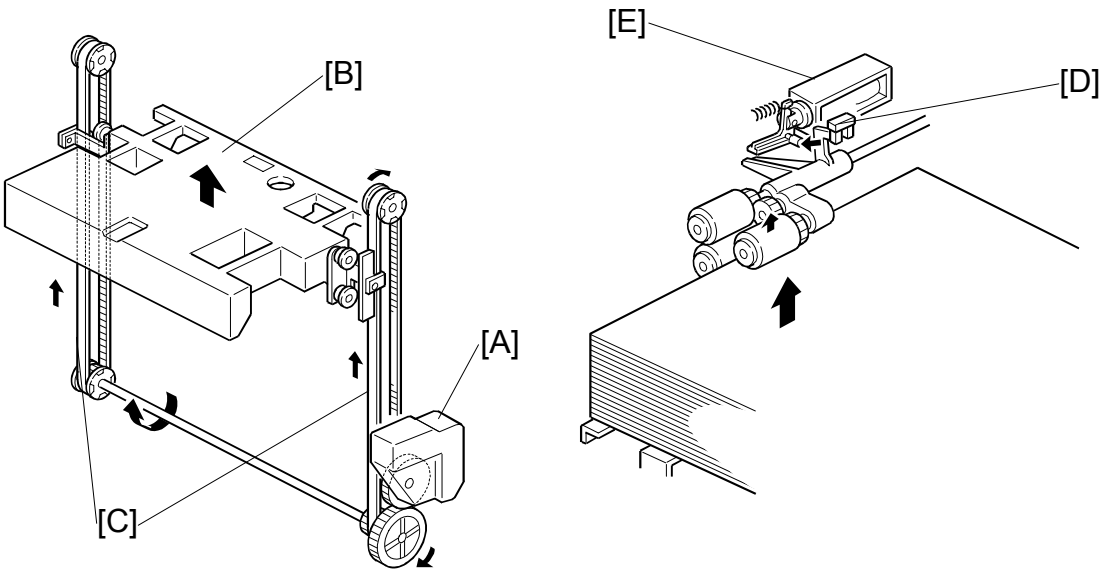


This LCT uses an FRR paper feed system (paper feed roller [A], separation roller [B], pick-up roller [C]), and those rollers are driven by the LCT motor [D].

When the start key is pressed, the paper feed clutch [E], relay clutch [F], and pick-up solenoid [G] energize. The pick-up roller touches the paper and feeds it to the copier.

When the leading edge of the paper reaches the paper feed sensor, the pick-up solenoid turns off and the pick-up roller lifts away from the paper.

2.2 TRAY LIFT MECHANISM



The lift motor [A] controls the vertical position of the tray bottom plate [B] through gears and timing belts [C].

Tray lifting conditions

When the lift sensor [D] turns off during copying, the tray lift motor raises the tray bottom plate until the tray lift sensor turns on again.

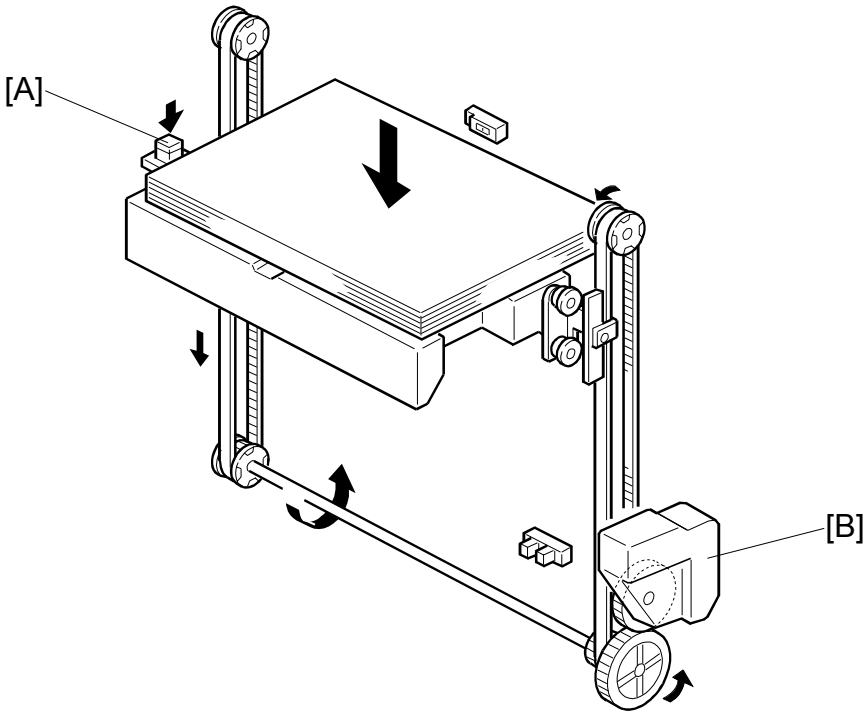
To position the top of the paper stack at the correct height, the pick-up solenoid [E] turns on to lower the pick-up roller onto the paper and the lift motor raises the tray bottom plate until the tray lift sensor turns on. Then the motor turns in reverse to lower the tray until the lift sensor turns off, then it changes direction again to lift the tray until the lift sensor turns on again, then it stops. The above procedure is done in the following conditions.

- Just after the main switch is turned on
- Just after the tray cover is closed
- Just after leaving the energy saving mode

Tray lowering conditions

In the following conditions, the lift motor lowers the tray bottom plate until the down sensor turns on.

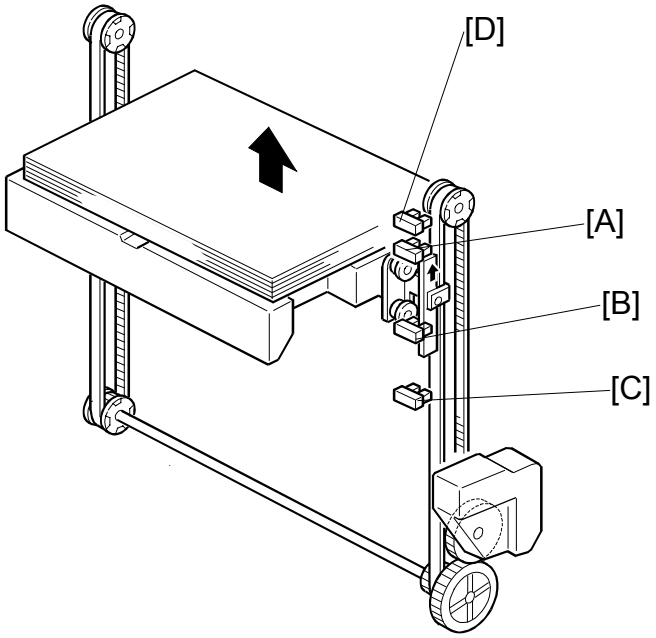
- Just after the paper end sensor turns on
- Just after the down switch is pressed by the user



If the down switch [A] is pressed, or paper runs out, or a paper jam occurs in the LCT, the LCT motor [B] lowers the bottom plate until the paper position sensor [C] activates. At this point, the bottom plate (or the top sheet of paper) is positioned about 5 cm below the paper feed height. This gives enough space for the user to add about 500 sheets of paper.

If the down switch is then pressed again, the bottom plate moves down once again until the top sheet of paper just passes the paper position sensor. In this way, the bottom plate lowers 5 cm at each press of the down switch. This allows the customer to replenish paper in convenient amounts and at the same position.

2.3 PAPER STACK HEIGHT DETECTION



The amount of the paper in the tray is detected by four sensors (paper height sensor 1 [A], 2 [B], 3 [C] and near end sensor [D].)

Sensor	Remaining amount	Display
Near End Sensor	Approx. 80 sheets	
Paper Height 1 Sensor	Approx. 300 sheets	
Paper Height 2 Sensor	Approx. 1000 sheets	
Paper Height 3 Sensor	Approx. 2000 sheets	

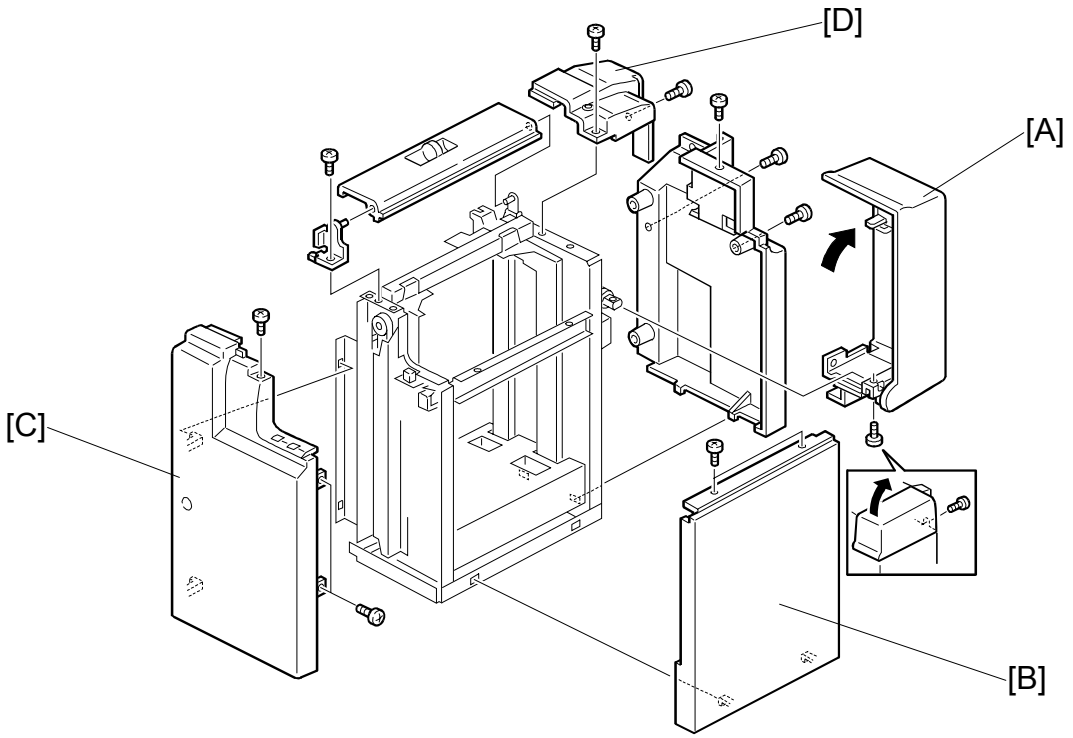
3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 TEST POINTS

No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP100	24 V	+24 V
TP101	GND	Ground
TP102	CGND	Ground
TP103	Vcc	+5 V

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 COVER REMOVAL



Tray Cover

1. Remove the tray cover [A] (1 screw).

Right Cover

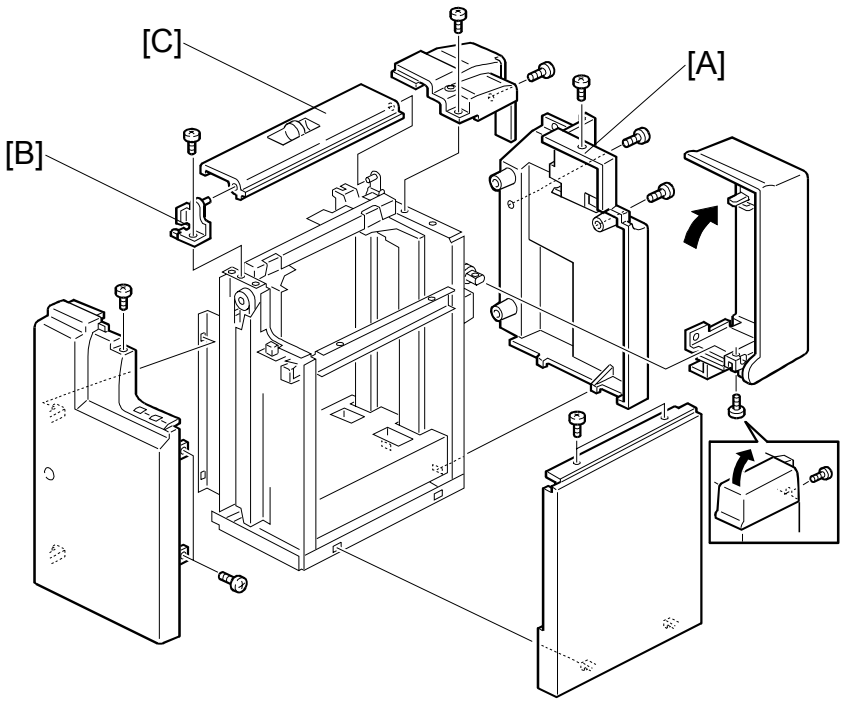
1. Remove the right cover [B] (2 screws).

Front Cover

1. Remove the right cover.
2. Remove the front cover [C] (3 screws).

Upper Rear Cover

1. Remove the upper rear cover [D] (2 screws).



Lower Rear Cover

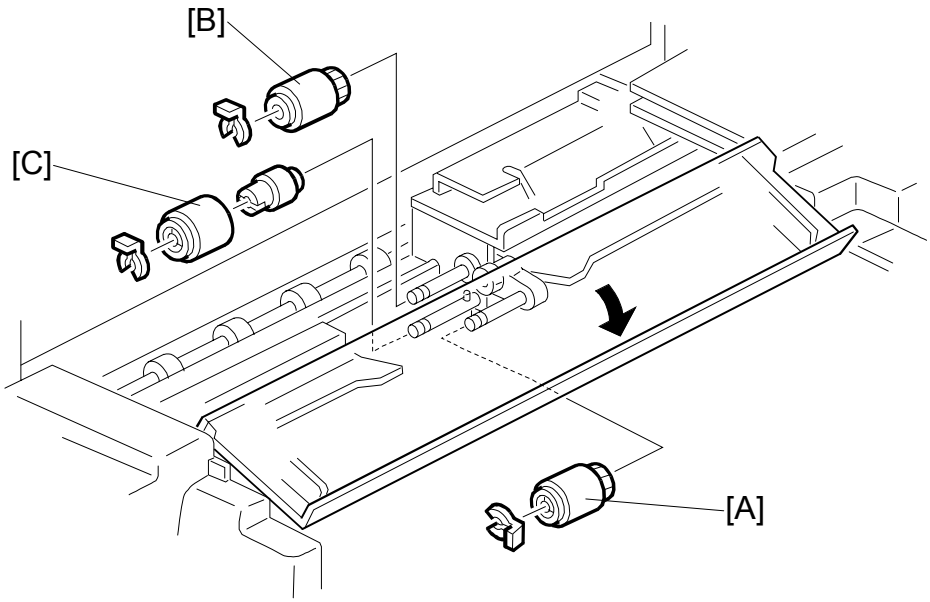
1. Remove the tray cover.
2. Remove the upper rear cover.
3. Remove the lower rear cover [A] (3 screws).

Feed Unit Cover

1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove the front hinge cover [B] (1 screw).
3. Remove the feed unit cover [C].

4.2 ROLLER REPLACEMENT

4.2.1 PAPER FEED, SEPARATION, AND PICK-UP ROLLERS



1. Push the down switch to lower the tray bottom plate.
2. Open the feed unit cover.

Pick-up Roller

3. Replace the pick-up roller [A] (1 snap ring).

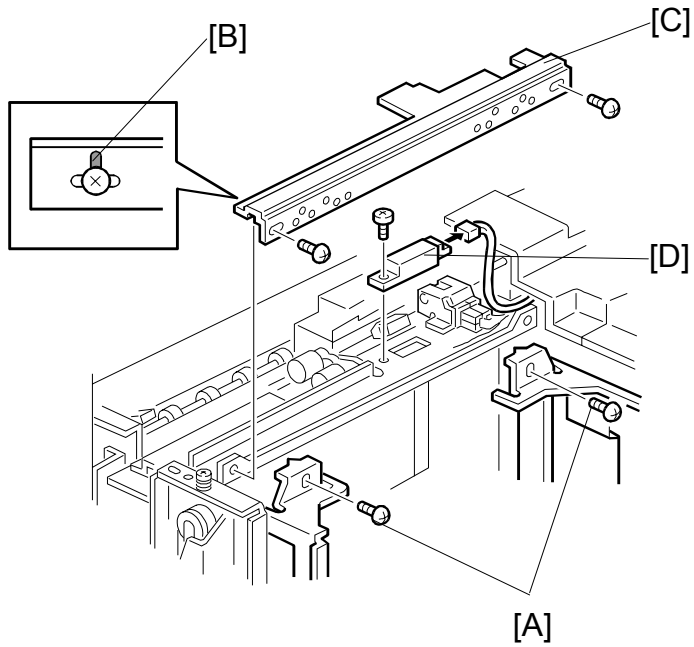
Paper Feed Roller

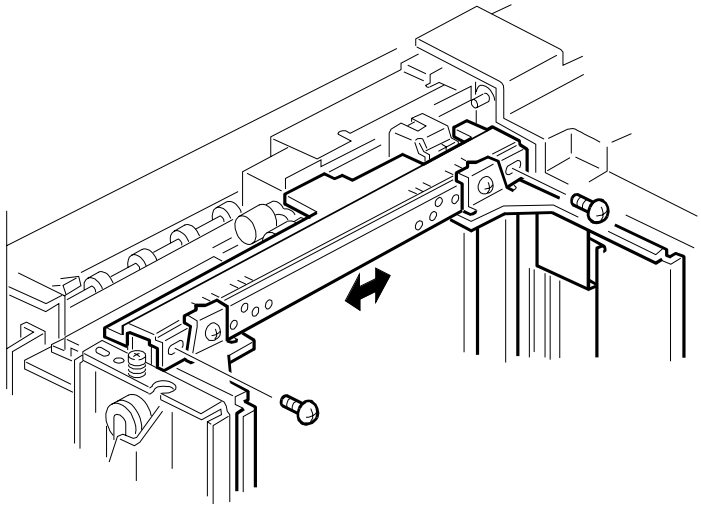
3. Replace the paper feed roller [B] (1 snap ring).

Separation Roller

3. Replace the separation roller [C] (1 snap ring).

4.3 PAPER END SENSOR REPLACEMENT

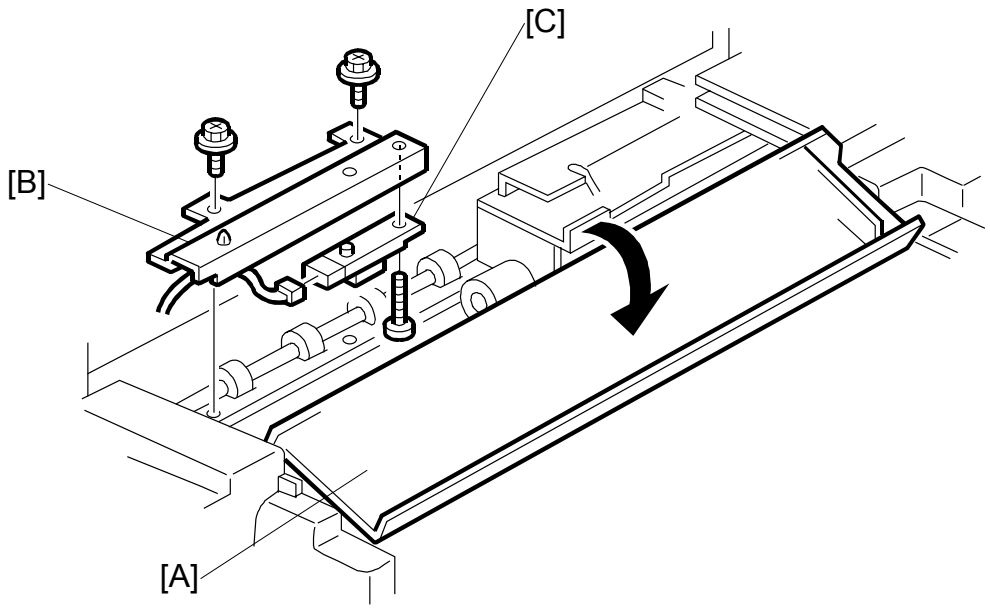




1. Push the down switch to lower the tray.
2. Remove the feed unit and tray cover.
3. Remove the side fence screws [A].
4. Mark the stay position [B]
5. Remove the stay [C] (2 screw).
6. Replace the paper end sensor [D] (1 screw, 1 connector).

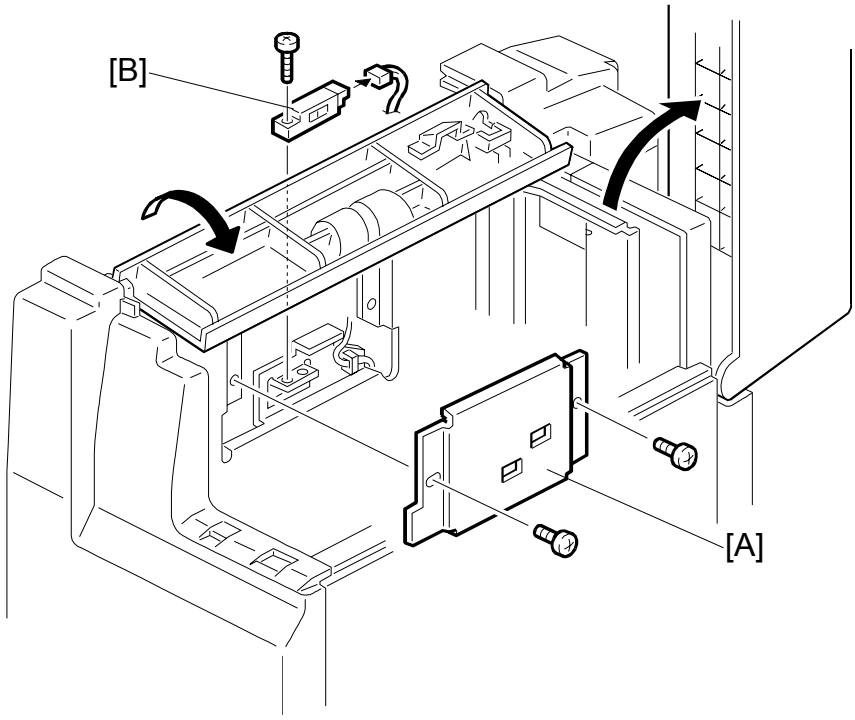
NOTE: When reinstalling the stay, make sure that the side-to side registration is correct (make a test copy). If it must be adjusted, move the stay across as shown in the above drawing (an SP can also be adjusted).

4.4 PAPER FEED SENSOR REPLACEMENT



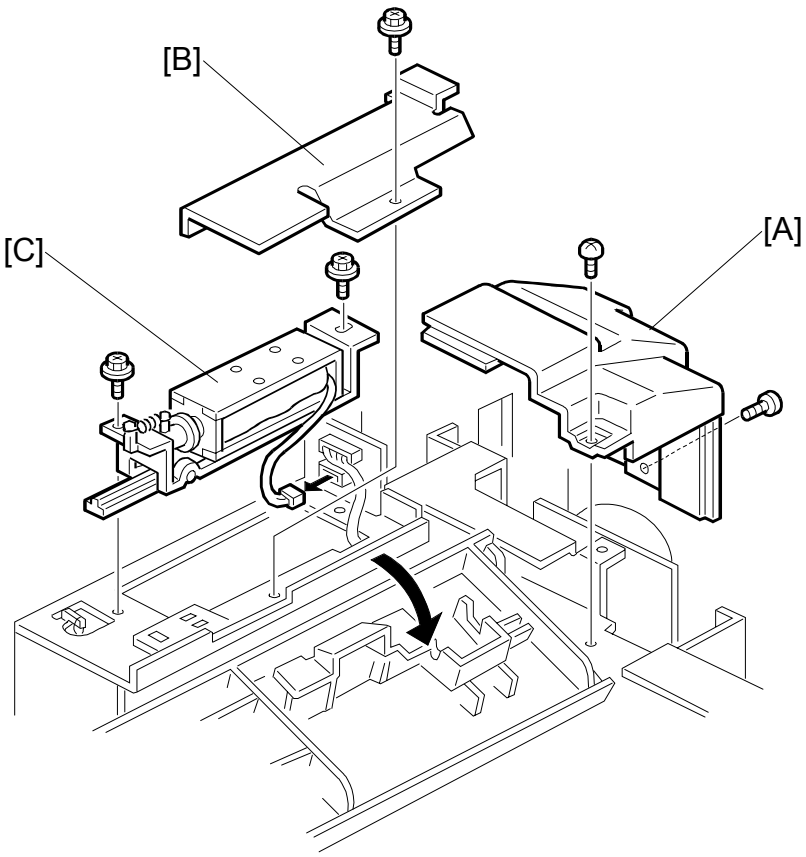
1. Open the feed unit cover [A].
2. Remove the paper feed sensor bracket [B] (2 screws).
3. Replace the paper feed sensor [C] (1 screw, 1 connector).

4.5 PAPER POSITION SENSOR REPLACEMENT



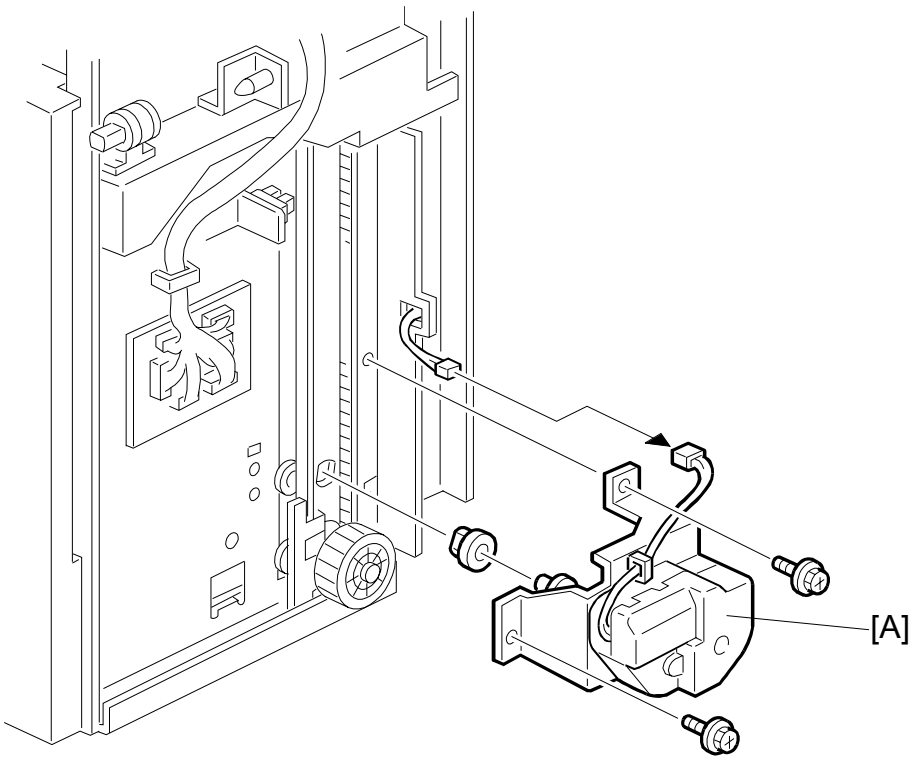
1. Remove the LCT.
2. Open the tray cover and feed unit cover.
3. Remove the sensor cover [A] (2 screws).
4. Replace the paper position sensor [B] (1 screw, 1 connector).

4.6 PICK-UP SOLENOID REPLACEMENT



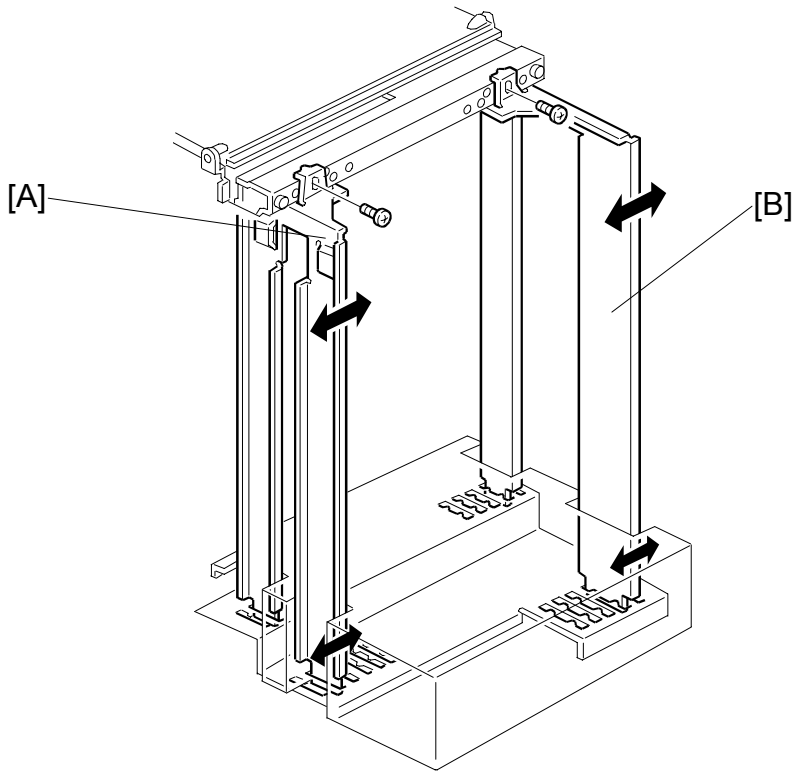
1. Open the feed unit cover.
2. Remove the upper rear cover [A] (2 screws).
3. Remover the solenoid cover [B] (1 screw).
4. Replace the pick-up solenoid [C] (2 screws, 1 connector).

4.7 LIFT MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the upper and lower rear covers.
2. Replace the lift motor [A] (2 screws, 1 connector).

4.8 SIDE FENCE POSITION CHANGE



1. Cover the paper position sensor.
2. Push the down switch to lower the tray bottom plate to its lowest position.
3. Open the tray cover.
4. Remove the right cover.
5. Remove the front and rear side fences [A, B] (1 screw each).
6. Install the side fences in the correct position.
7. Input the paper size with SP5-019.

3,000-SHEET FINISHER
B302

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

The punch unit is an option for this machine.

Paper Size:

No punch mode
- Shift Tray: A3 to A5/DLT to HLT
- Upper Tray: A3 to A5, A6 lengthwise, B6 lengthwise/ DLT to HLT

Punch mode
- 2 holes: A3 to A5/DLT to HLT
- 3 holes: A3, B4, A4 sideways, B5 sideways DLT, LT sideways
- 4 holes (Europe): A3 to A5 DLT to LT, HLT sideways
- 4 holes (North Europe): A3 to B5, A5 sideways DLT to LT, HLT sideways

Staple Mode
- A3 to B5/DLT to LT

Paper Weight:

No punch mode
- No staple mode: 52 g/m^2 ~ 216 g/m^2, 14 ~ 42 lb
- Staple mode: 64 g/m^2 ~ 80 g/m^2, 17 ~ 21 lb

Punch mode
- 2 holes: 52 g/m^2 ~ 163 g/m^2, 14 ~ 42 lb
- 3 holes: 52 g/m^2 ~ 163 g/m^2, 14 ~ 42 lb
- 4 holes: 52 g/m^2 ~ 128 g/m^2, 14 ~ 34 lb

Paper Capacity:

Shift tray/no staple mode (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

	Punch mode	No punch mode
B5 sideways A4 sideways LT sideways	2,500 sheets	3,000 sheets
Other sizes	1,500 sheets	1,500 sheets

Shift tray/staple mode/punch mode (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

	Pages/set	Sets
B5 sideways A4 sideways LT sideways	2 to 9	150
	10 to 80	200 to 30
Other sizes	2 to 9	100
	10 to 40	150 to 30

Shift tray/staple mode/no punch mode (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

	Pages/set	Sets
B5 sideways A4 sideways LT sideways	2 to 9	150
	10 to 100	200 to 30
Other sizes	2 to 9	150
	10 to 50	150 to 30

Upper tray (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

	Punch mode	No punch mode
A4/LT or smaller	400 sheets	500 sheets
Larger than A4/LT	200 sheets	250 sheets

Stapler Capacity (pages/set, 80 g/m^2, 20 lb paper):

	Punch mode	No punch mode
B5 sideways A4 sideways LT sideways	80 sheets	100 sheets
Other sizes	40 sheets	50 sheets

Staple Position: 5 positions (4 positions shown, 1 position selectable(*) with in user tools)
1-staple: 3 positions (Front(*), Rear, Rear-Oblique)
2-staple: 2 position (double top, double rear(*))

Staple Replenishment: Cartridge (5,000 staples)

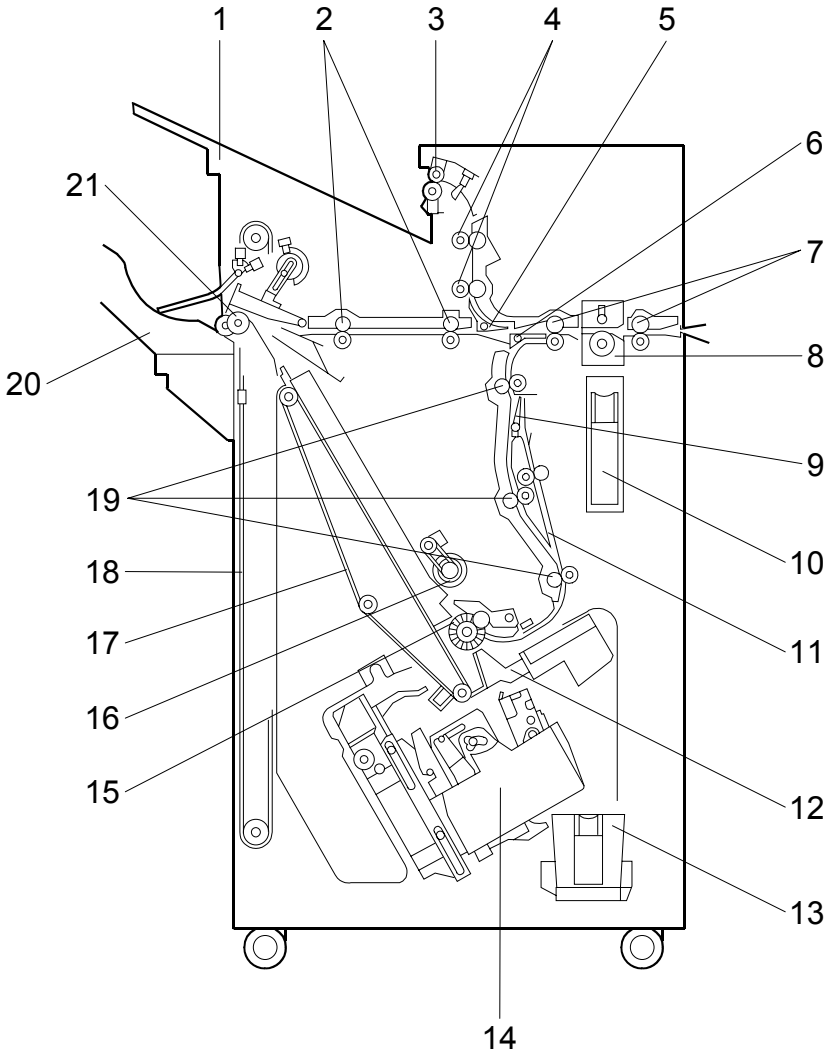
Power Source: 24 Vdc (from copier)

Power Consumption: 120 W

Weight: 60 kg

Size (W x D x H): 800 mm x 730 mm x 980 mm

1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



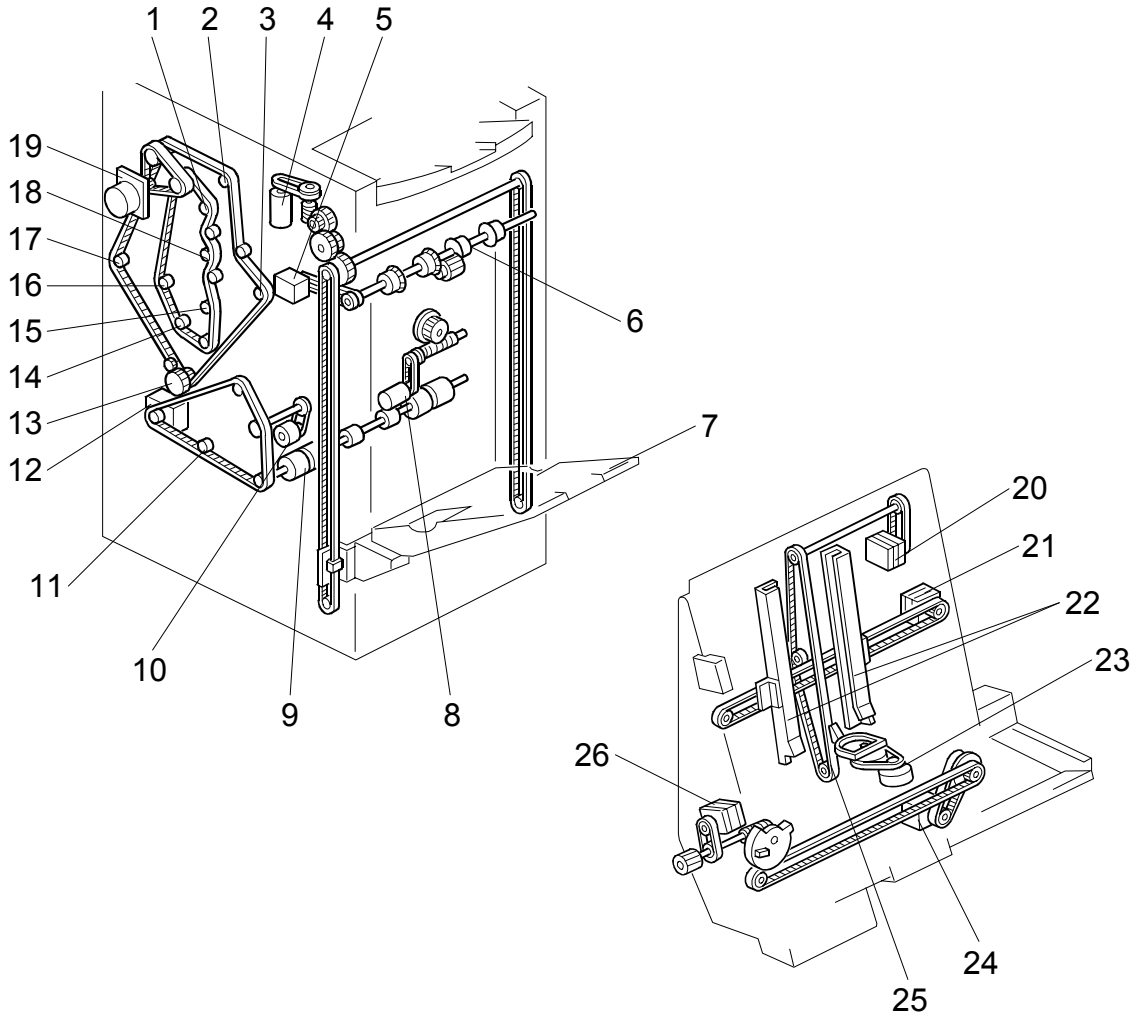
1. Upper Tray
2. Middle Transport Rollers
3. Upper Tray Exit Roller
4. Upper Transport Rollers
5. Tray Junction Gate
6. Stapler Junction Gate
7. Entrance Rollers
8. Punch Unit
9. Pre-stack Junction Gate
10. Punch Waste Hopper
11. Pre-stack Tray
12. Stack Plate
13. Staple Waste Hopper
14. Stapler
15. Alignment Brush Roller
16. Positioning Roller
17. Stack Feed-out Belt
18. Shift Tray Drive Belt
19. Lower Transport Rollers
20. Shift Tray
21. Shift Tray Exit Roller

1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

Symbol	Name	Function
Motors		
M1	Upper Transport	Drives the entrance rollers, the middle and upper transport rollers, and upper tray exit roller.
M2	Lower Transport	Drives the lower transport rollers, the alignment brush roller, and the positioning roller.
M3	Jogger	Moves the jogger fence.
M4	Stack Plate	Drives the stack plate.
M5	Stapler	Moves the staple unit from side to side.
M6	Stapler Rotation	Rotates the stapler 45 degrees.
M7	Staple Hammer	Drives the staple hammer.
M8	Stack Feed-out	Drives the stack feed-out belt.
M9	Exit Guide	Opens and closes the upper exit guide.
M10	Shift Tray Exit	Drives the exit roller for the shift tray.
M11	Shift	Moves the shift tray from side to side.
M12	Shift Tray Lift	Moves the shift tray up or down.
M13	Punch	Drives the punch shaft and roller.
Sensors		
S1	Entrance	Detects the copy paper entering the finisher and checks for misfeeds.
S2	Pre-stack Tray Paper	Determines when to turn off the pre-stack paper stopper solenoid.
S3	Stapler Tray Entrance	Detects the copy paper entering the stapler tray and checks for misfeeds.
S4	Jogger Fence HP	Detects the home position of the jogger fence.
S5	Stapler Tray Paper	Detects the copy paper in the stapler tray.
S6	Stack Plate HP	Detects the home position of the stack plate.
S7	Stapler HP	Detects the home position of the staple unit for side-to-side movement.
S8	Stapler Rotation HP	Detects the home position of the stapler unit for 45-degree rotation.
S9	Staple Hammer HP	Detects the home position of the staple hammer.
S10	Cartridge Set	Detects the staple cartridge in the stapler.
S11	Staple End	Detects the staples in the cartridge.
S12	Staple Waste Hopper	Detects when the staple waste hopper is full.
S13	Stack Feed-out Belt HP	Detects the home position of the stack feed-out belt.
S14	Exit Guide Open	Detects whether the guide plate is opened or not.
S15	Shift Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds at the shift tray.
S16	Stack Height 1	Detects when the top of the copy paper stack in the shift tray is at the correct position.
S17	Stack Height 2	Detects when the top of the copy paper stack in the shift tray has become too high.
S18	Upper Tray Exit	Checks for misfeeds at the upper tray.

Symbol	Name	Function
S19	Upper Tray Paper Limit	Detects when the paper stack height in the upper tray is at its upper limit.
S20	Shift Tray Half-turn	Detects the return position for side-to-side movement of the shift tray.
S21	Shift Tray Lower Limit 1	Detects when the shift tray is nearly at its lower limit.
S22	Shift Tray Lower Limit 2	Detects when the shift tray is at its lower limit.
S23	Punch Waste Hopper	Detects when the punch waste hopper is full and detects when the punch tray is set.
S24	Punch HP	Detects the home position of the punch shaft and roller.
S25	Stapler Return	Detects the on timing of the stapler return solenoid.
Switches		
SW1	Front Door Safety	Cuts the dc power when the front door is opened.
SW2	Shift Tray Upper Limit	Cuts the power to the shift tray lift motor when the shift tray position is at its upper limit.
Solenoids		
SOL1	Stapler Junction Gate	Drives the stapler junction gate.
SOL2	Tray Junction Gate	Drives the tray junction gate.
SOL3	Pre-stack Junction Gate	Drives the pre-stack junction gate.
SOL4	Pre-stack Paper Stopper	Drives the pre-stack paper stopper.
SOL5	Positioning Roller	Moves the positioning roller against the stapling tray.
SOL6	Stapler Return	Returns the stapler to its guide from the user operation position.
PCBs		
PCB1	Main	Controls the finisher and communicates with the copier.
PCB2	Punch	Passes signals between the punch unit and the finisher main board.

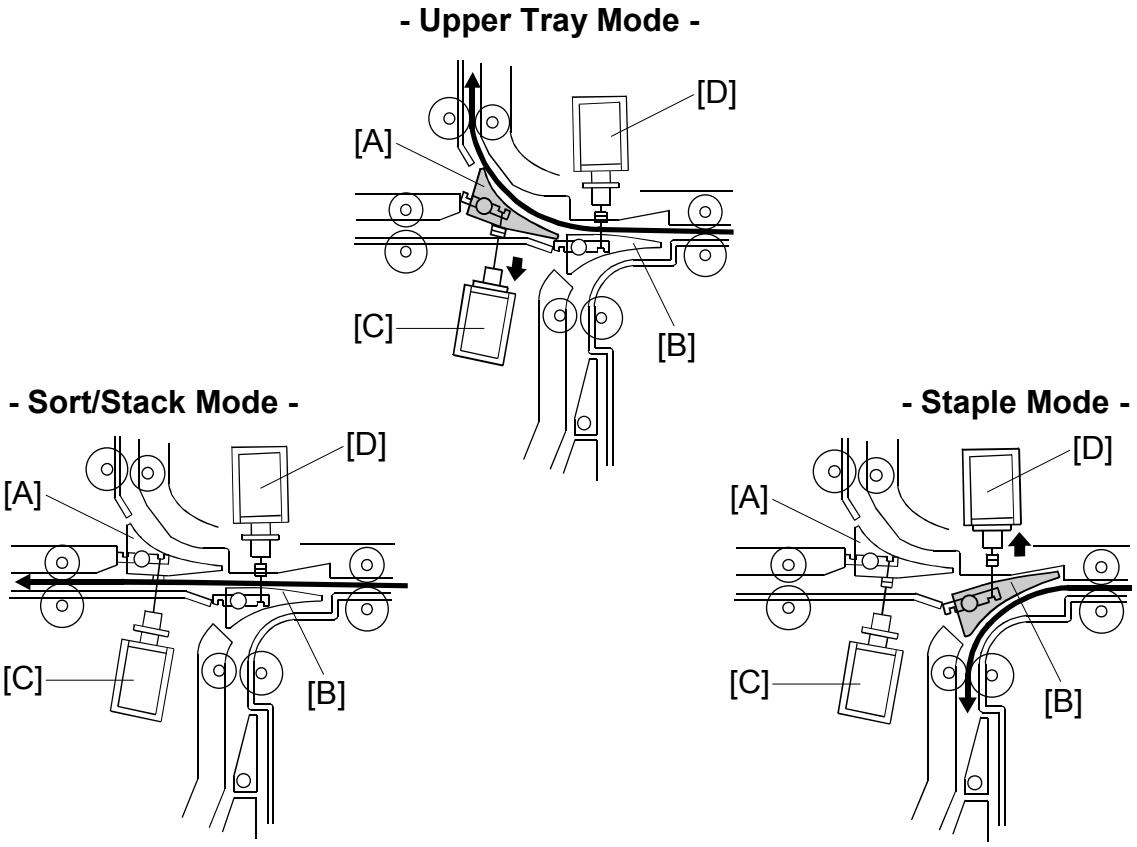
1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. Upper Transport Roller 2
2. Upper Tray Exit Roller
3. Lower Transport Roller 2
4. Shift Tray Lift Motor
5. Shift Tray Exit Motor
6. Shift Tray Exit Roller
7. Shift Tray
8. Shift Motor
9. Staple Tray Exit Roller
10. Positioning Roller
11. Lower Transport Roller 3
12. Lower Transport Motor
13. Lower Transport Rollers 2
14. Lower Transport Roller 1
15. Transport Roller 1
16. Entrance Roller 2
17. Entrance Roller
18. Upper Transport Roller 1
19. Upper Transport Motor
20. Stack Feed-out Motor
21. Jogger Motor
22. Jogger Fence
23. Stack Plate Motor
24. Stapler Motor
25. Stack Feed-out Belt
26. Stapler Rotation Motor

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATE



Depending on the finishing mode, the copies are directed up, straight through, or down by the combination of the tray junction gate [A] and stapler junction gate [B]. These gates are controlled by the tray junction gate solenoid [C] and stapler junction gate solenoid [D].

Upper Tray Mode

The stapler tray junction gate solenoid remains off and the tray junction gate solenoid turns on. The copies go up to the upper tray.

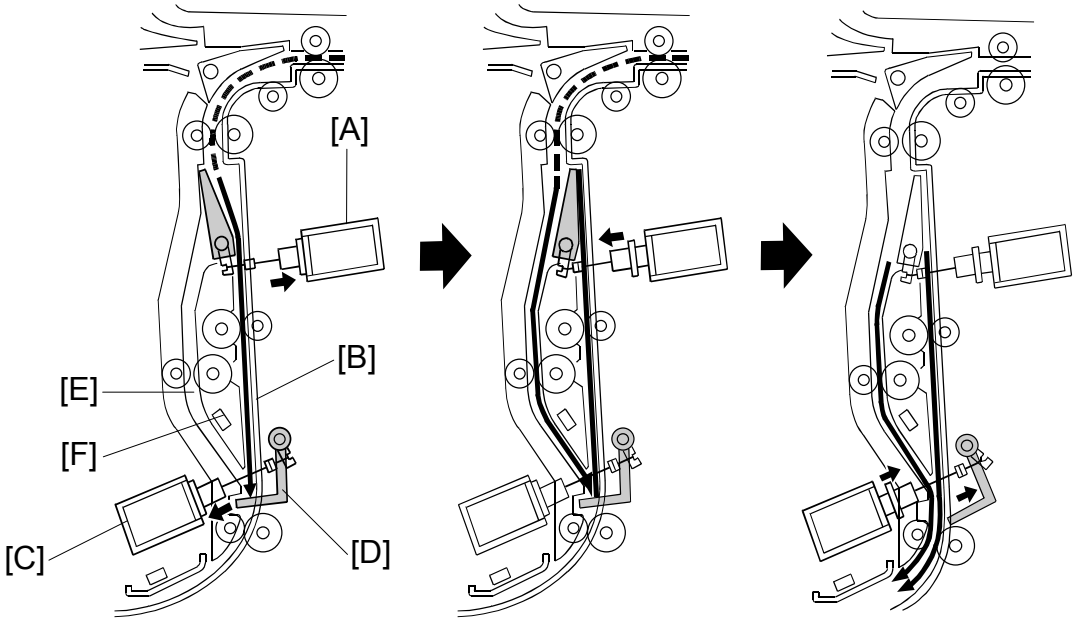
Sort/Stack Mode

The tray junction gate solenoid and the stapler junction gate solenoid remain off. The copies are sent to the shift tray directly.

Staple Mode

The stapler junction gate solenoid turns on. The copies go downwards to the jogger unit.

2.2 PAPER PRE-STACKING



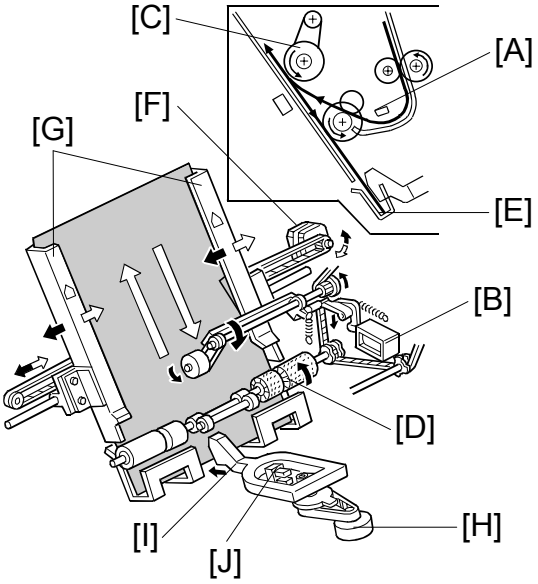
This mechanism improves productivity in staple mode. It is only used when copying on A4, LT, or B5 (all sideways).

During stapling, the copier has to wait. This mechanism reduces the wait by holding the first two sheets of a job while the previous job is still being stapled. It only works during the second and subsequent sets of a multi-set copy job.

The pre-stack junction gate solenoid [A] turns on about 230 ms after the 1st sheet of paper turns on the entrance sensor, and this directs the sheet to the pre-stack tray [B]. (This sheet cannot be fed to the stapler yet, because the first set is still being stapled.) The pre-stack paper stopper solenoid [C] turns on about 680 ms after the 1st sheet turns on the entrance sensor. The pre-stack paper stopper [D] then stops the paper.

The pre-stack junction gate solenoid turns off 450 ms after the trailing edge of the 1st sheet passes through the entrance sensor, and the 2nd sheet is sent to the paper guide [E]. The pre-stack paper stopper is released about 50 ms after the 2nd sheet turns on the pre-stack stopper sensor [F], and the two sheets of copy paper are sent to the stapler tray. All sheets after the 2nd sheet go to the stapler tray via the paper guide [E].

2.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING



In staple mode, each sheet of copy paper is vertically and horizontally aligned when it arrives in the jogger unit.

Vertical Paper Alignment

Approximately 60 ms after the trailing edge of the copy passes the staple tray entrance sensor [A], the positioning roller solenoid [B] is energized to push the positioning roller [C] into contact with the paper. The positioning roller and alignment brush roller [D] rotate to push the paper back and align the trailing edge of the paper against the stack stopper [E].

Horizontal Paper Alignment

When the print key is pressed, the jogger motor [F] turns on and the jogger fences [G] move to the waiting position, which is approximately 7 mm wider on both sides than the selected paper.

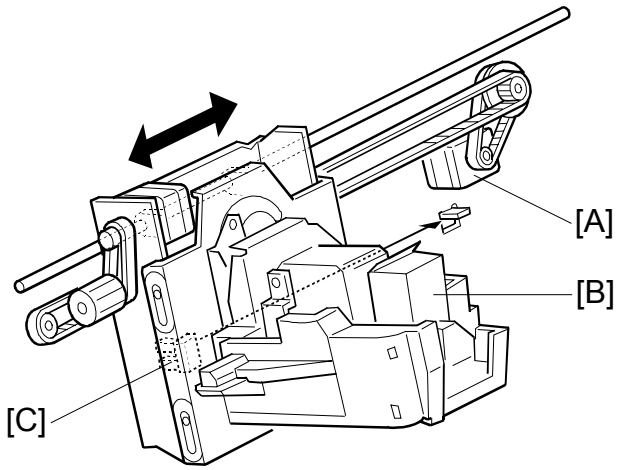
When the trailing edge of the paper passes the staple unit entrance sensor, the jogger motor turns on for approximately 32 ms (4.7 mm) to move the jogger fences approximately 5 mm towards the paper. After a short time, the jogger motor turns on again approximately 18 ms (3.0 mm) for the horizontal paper alignment then goes back to the waiting position.

Paper Stack Correction

After the paper is aligned in the stapler tray, the stack plate motor turns [H] on for short time to correct the paper stack and the stack plate [I] push the paper against the staple tray.

When the next copy paper turns on the stapler tray entrance sensor, the stack plate motor turns on gain to return to its home position. The home position is detected by stack plate HP sensor [J].

2.4 STAPLER UNIT MOVEMENT

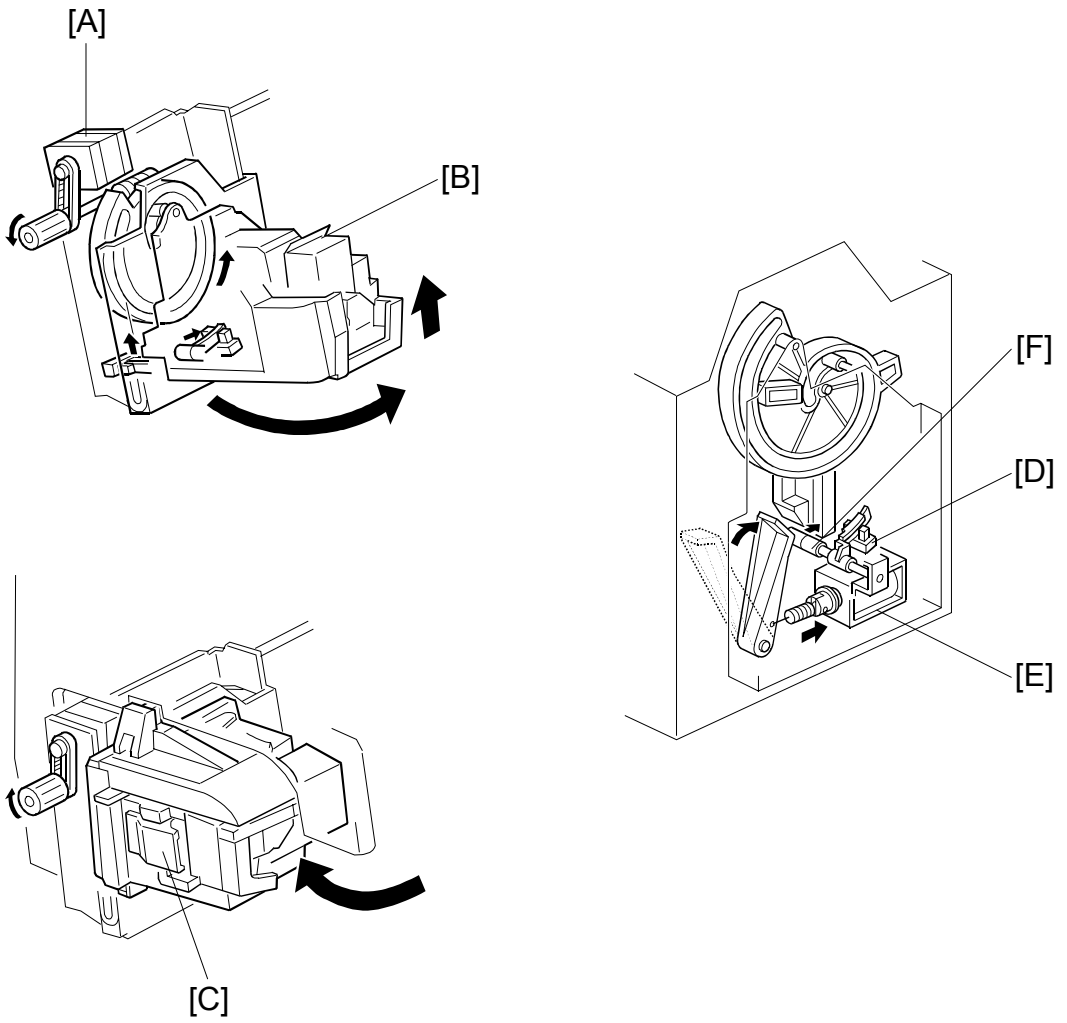


Side-to-Side

The stapler motor [A] moves the stapler [B] from side to side. After the start key is pressed, the stapler moves from its home position to the stapling position.

If two-staple-position mode is selected, the stapler moves to the front stapling position first, then moves to the rear stapling position. However, for the next copy set, it staples in the reverse order (at the rear side first then at the front side).

After the job is completed, the stapler moves back to its home position. This is detected by the stapler HP sensor [C].



Rotation (1)

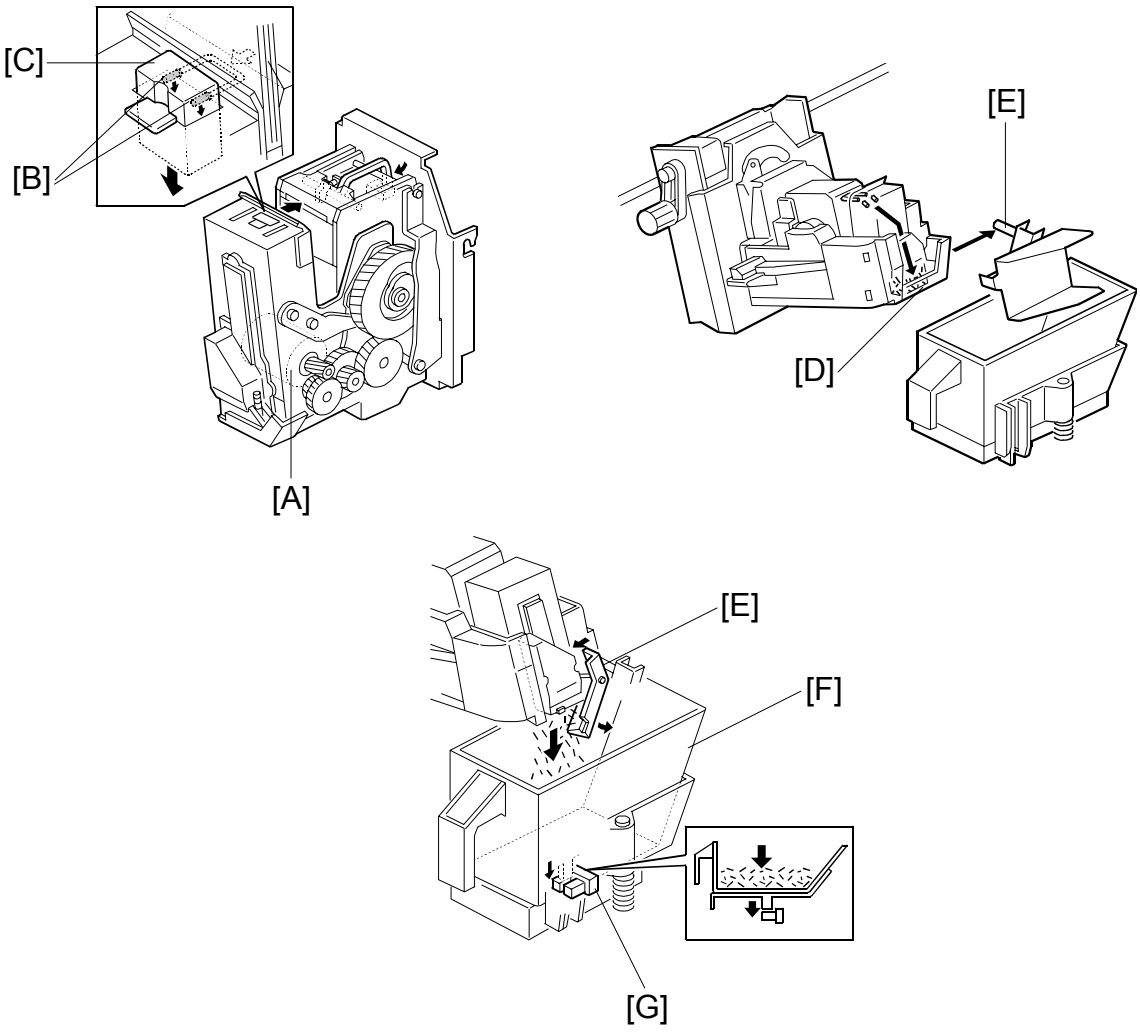
In the oblique staple position mode, the stapler rotation motor [A] rotates the stapler units [B] 45° to counterclockwise after it moves to the stapling position.

Rotation (2)

When the staple end condition arises, the stapler motor moves the stapler to the front and the stapler rotation motor rotates the stapler unit to clockwise to remove the staple cartridge [C]. This allows the user to add new staples.

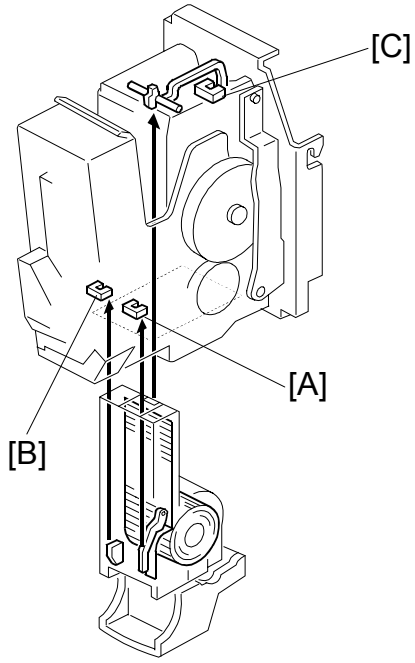
Once the staples have been installed, and the front door closed, the stapler unit returns to its home position. As the stapler unit is returning to the home position, the stapler return sensor [D] is activated, the return solenoid [E] turns on and it assists the guide roller [F] to return to its guide (this guide directs the stapler during rotation).

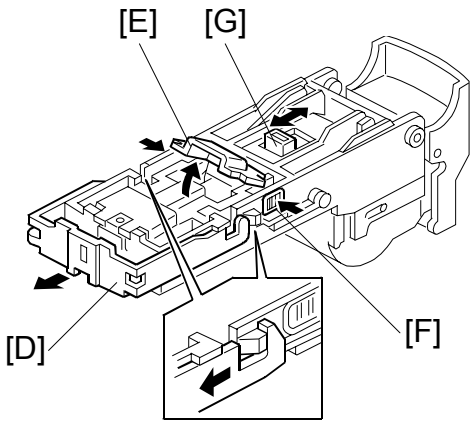
2.5 STAPLER



When the aligned copies are brought to the stapling position by the positioning roller and jogger fences, the staple hammer motor [A] starts stapling.

During stapling, the stapler trims off the excess length [B] of the staples by lowering the cutter [C]. This excess length depends on the number of copies in the set; there will be very little for a stack containing 100 sheets. The staple waste drops into the tray [D] in the stapler. When the stapler unit returns to its home position, the tray hits the shaft [E] and the tray opens. The staple waste drops into the staple waste hopper [F]. When the staple waste hopper is full, the actuator on its base activates the staple waste hopper sensor [G]. An SC is displayed.





The stapler has a staple end sensor [A], cartridge set sensor [B] and staple hammer HP sensor [C].

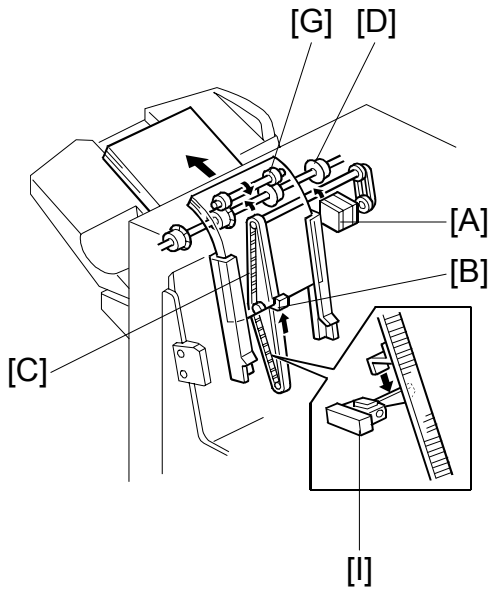
When a staple end or no cartridge condition is detected, a message is displayed advising the operator to install a staple cartridge. If this condition is detected during a copy job, the indication will appear, and the copy job will stop.

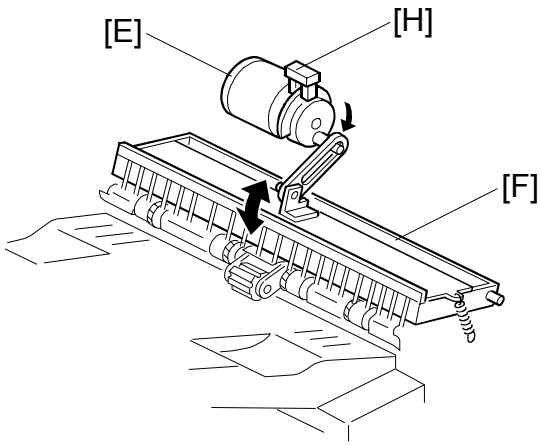
The staple cartridge has a clinch area [D], in which jammed staples are left. Operators can remove the jammed staples from this area.

When the operator lifts the release lever [E], the clinch area is released from the cartridge by pushing the holders [F]. The jammed staples can be removed.

The staple sheet can be feed manually by sliding the knob [G].

2.6 FEED-OUT



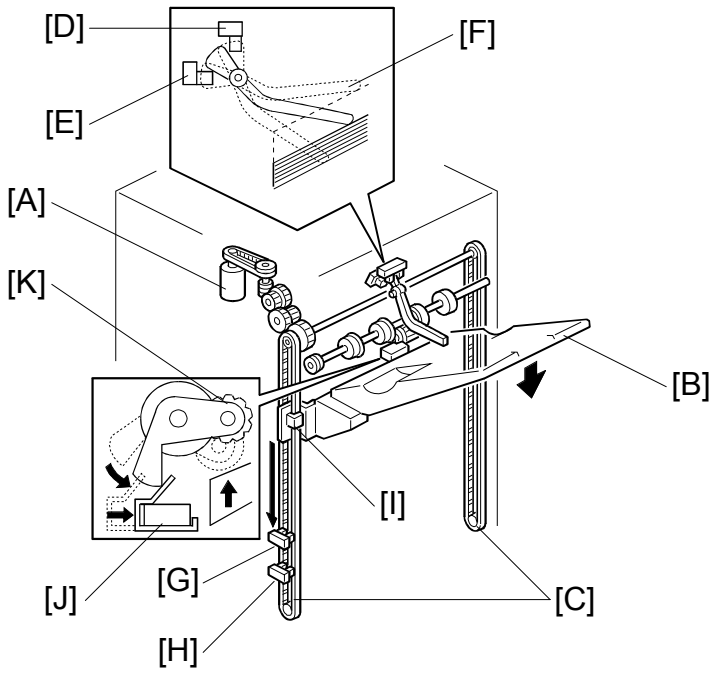


After the copies have been stapled, the stack feed-out motor [A] starts. The pawl [B] on the stack feed-out belt [C] transports the set of stapled copies up and feeds it to the shift tray exit roller [D]. When stapling starts, the exit guide motor [E] opens the upper exit guide [F], which includes the upper shift tray exit roller [G], in order to feed out the leading edge of the copy set smoothly. The exit guide motor turns on again a certain time after stapling is complete, and the upper exit guide plate is lowered. Then the shift tray exit roller takes over the stack feed-out.

The on-off timing of the exit guide motor is detected by the exit guide open sensor [H].

The stack-feed-out motor turns off when the pawl actuates the stack feed-out belt home position sensor [I].

2.7 SHIFT TRAY UP/DOWN MOVEMENT



The shift tray lift motor [A] controls the vertical position of the shift tray [B] through gears and timing belts [C]. When the main switch is turned on, the tray is initialized at the upper position. The tray is moved up until stack height sensor 1 [D] is de-actuated.

In sort/stack mode, if stack height sensor 2 [E] is actuated for 2 seconds, the shift tray lift motor lowers the shift tray for 20 ms.

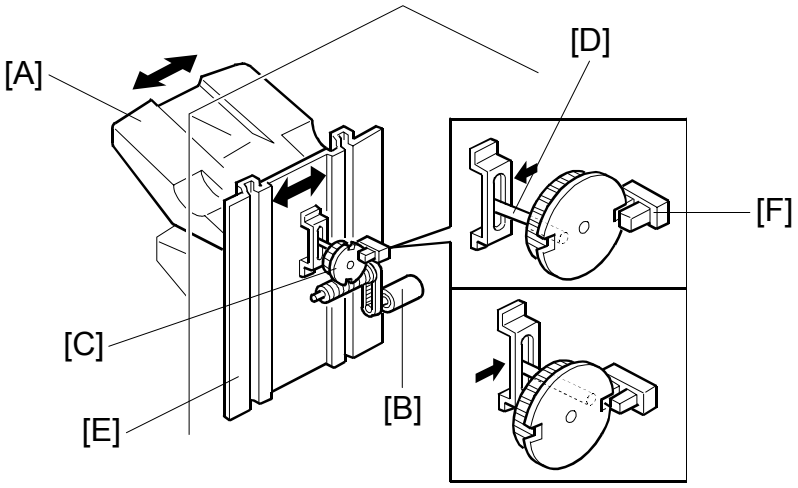
In staple mode, when the pawl on the stack feed-out belt reaches the upper position of the staple unit, the shift tray lift motor lowers the shift tray for 400 ms and stops for 200 ms. Then, it lifts the shift tray until stack height sensor 1 is de-actuated by the feeler [F]. This means the tray lowers earlier in staple mode, to prevent the next copy suddenly exceeding the space currently available on the tray.

For both modes, the shift tray will rise until stack height sensor 1 is de-actuated when the user takes the stack of paper from the shift tray.

This machine has two shift tray lower limit sensors 1 [G], 2 [H]. Shift tray lower limit sensor 1 detects the near lower limit and sensor 2 detects the lower limit. When the actuator [I] enters sensor 1, a message will be displayed and copying will continue. When the actuator enters sensor 2, a message will be displayed and copying will stop.

The shift tray upper limit switch [J] prevents the drive gear from being damaged if stack height sensor 1 fails. When the shift tray pushes up the shift tray positioning roller [K], the switch will cut the power to the shift tray lift motor.

2.8 SHIFT TRAY SIDE-TO-SIDE MOVEMENT

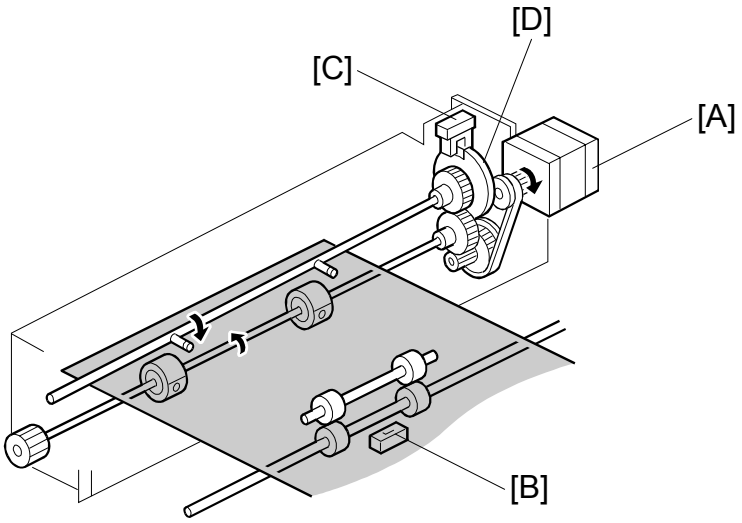


In sort/stack mode, the shift tray [A] moves from side to side to separate the sets of copies.

The horizontal position of the shift tray is controlled by the shift motor [B] and shift gear disk [C]. After one set of copies is made and delivered to the shift tray, the shift motor turns on, driving the shift gear disk and the shaft [D]. The end fence [E] is positioned by the shaft, creating the side-to-side movement.

When the shift gear disk has rotated 180 degrees (when the shift tray is fully shifted across), the cut-out in the shift gear disk turns on the shift tray half-turn sensor [F] and the shift motor stops. The next set of copies is then delivered. The motor turns on, repeating the same process and moving the tray back to the previous position.

2.9 PUNCH UNIT DRIVE



The punch unit makes 2 or 3 holes (depending on the type of punch unit) at the trailing edge of the paper.

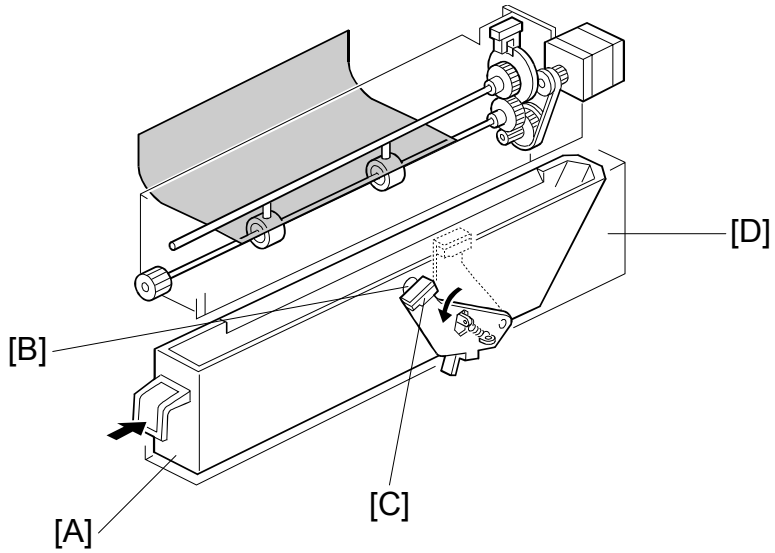
The punch unit is driven by the punch motor [A]. The punch motor turns on 78 ms after the trailing edge of the paper passes through the entrance sensor [B], and makes the punch holes.

The home position is detected by the punch HP sensor [C]. When the cut-out in the punch shaft gear disk [D] enters the punch HP sensor, the punch motor stops.

The punch position is adjusted as follows:

- Right to left: SP mode
- Front to rear: Spacers

2.10 PUNCH WASTE COLLECTION



The punch waste is collected in the punch waste hopper [A], which is under the punch unit.

When the punch waste covers the hole [B] in the hopper, the punch waste hopper sensor [C] turns on and a message will be displayed in the operation panel LCD. Then, the copy job will be stopped. After emptying the punch waste and returning the punch waste hopper [A] to the finisher, the copy job will be resumed.

The punch waste hopper sensor also works as the hopper set sensor. If the punch waste hopper is not set, the sensor stays away from the hole in the hopper holder [D] and a message is displayed. This message is the same as for the hopper full condition.

2.11 JAM CONDITIONS

1. The entrance sensor does not turn on when the copier has fed paper 426 ms after the copier exit sensor turned off.
2. The entrance sensor does not turn off when the upper transport motor has fed paper 1.5 times the paper's length after it turned on.
3. The upper tray exit sensor does not turn on when the upper transport motor has fed paper 574 ms after the entrance sensor turned on.
4. The upper tray exit sensor does not turn off when the upper transport motor has fed paper 1.5 times the paper's length after it turned on.
5. In sort/stack mode, the shift tray exit sensor does not turn on when the upper transport motor has fed paper 783 ms after the entrance sensor turned on.
6. In sort/stack mode, the shift tray exit sensor does not turn off when the upper transport motor has fed paper 1.5 times the paper's length after it turned on.
7. In staple mode, the stapler tray entrance sensor does not turn on when the upper and lower transport motor have fed paper 835 ms after the entrance sensor turned on.
8. In staple mode, the stapler tray entrance sensor does not turn off when the upper transport motor has fed paper 1.5 times the paper's length after it turned on.
9. In staple mode, the stapler tray paper sensor does not turn off within 250 pulses of the stack feed-out motor after it started.
10. In staple mode, the shift tray exit sensor does not turn off within 1,260 ms after the stack feed-out motor started.

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 DIP SWITCHES

DPS100				Description
1	2	3	4	
0	0	0	0	Default
1	0	0	0	Free run: A4 sideways, staple mode
0	1	0	0	Free run: staple and tray shift

NOTE: Do not use any other settings.

3.2 TEST POINTS

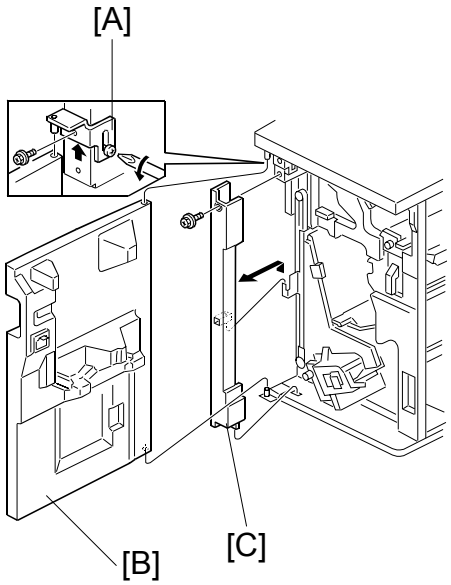
No.	Label	Monitored Signal
TP100	(5V)	+5 V
TP101	(GND)	Ground
TP102	(RXD)	RXD
TP103	(TXD)	TXD

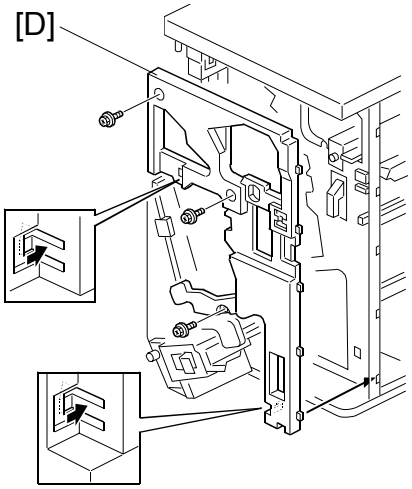
3.3 FUSES

No.	Function
FU100	Protects 24 V.

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 COVER REPLACEMENT





Front Door

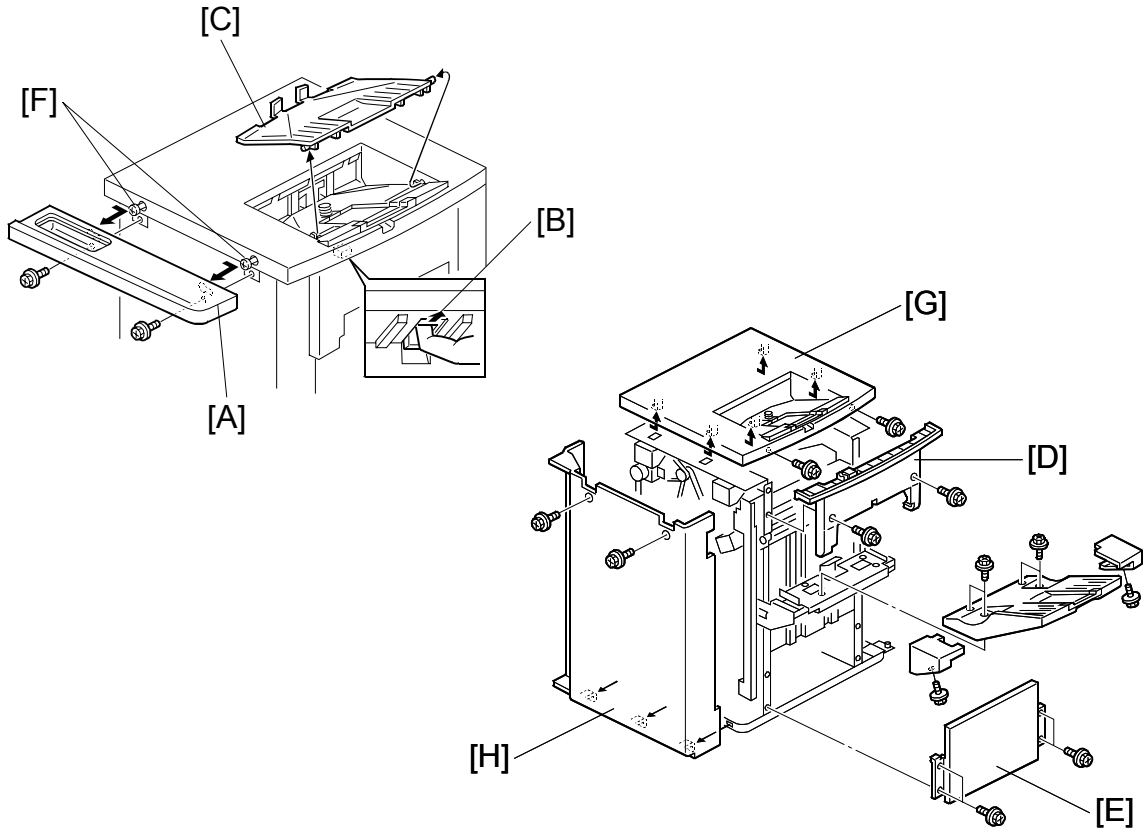
1. Remove one screw and loosen the other screw of the upper hinge for the front door [A].
2. Remove the front door [B].

Left Inner Cover

1. Remove the front door.
2. Remove the left inner cover [C] (1 screw).

Inner Cover

1. Remove the three screws and unhook the pawls.
2. Remove the inner cover [D].



Table

1. Slide the table [A] to the right and remove it (2 screws).

Upper Tray

1. Click the release lever [B].
2. Remove the upper tray [C].

Left Upper Cover

1. Remove the left upper cover [D].

Left Lower Cover

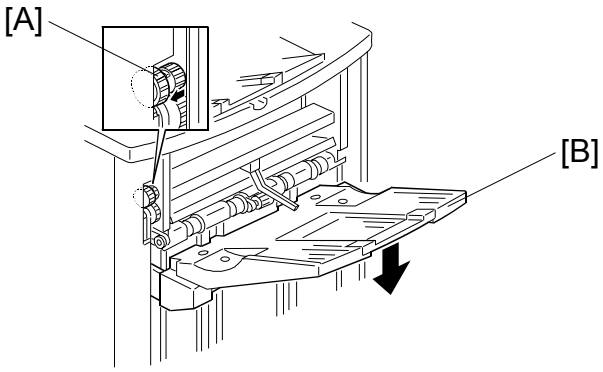
1. Remove the left lower cover [E].

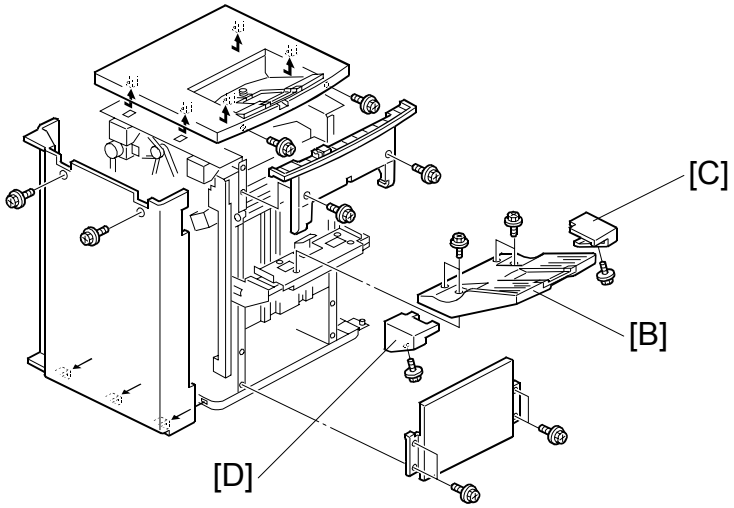
Upper Cover

1. Remove the table.
2. Remove two stepped screws [F].
3. Remove the left upper cover.
4. Slide across the right cover [G] and remove it (2 screws).

Rear Cover

1. Remove the rear cover [H] (2 screws).





Shift Tray

1. Remove the left upper cover.
2. Rotate the shift tray lift gear [A] manually to lower the shift tray [B]
3. Remove the shift tray (4 screws).

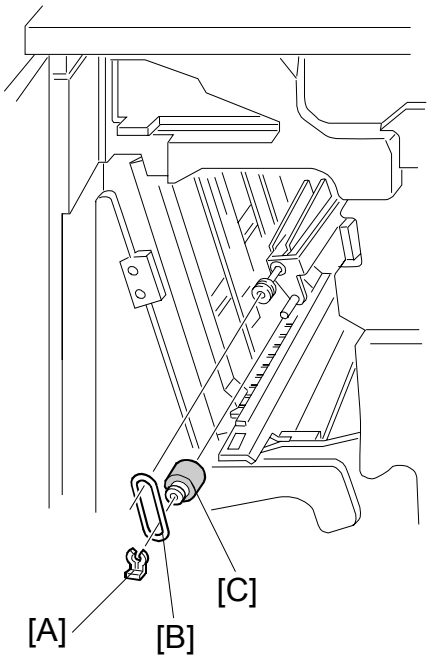
Front Shift Tray Cover

1. Remove the front shift tray cover [C] (1 screw).

Rear Shift Tray Cover

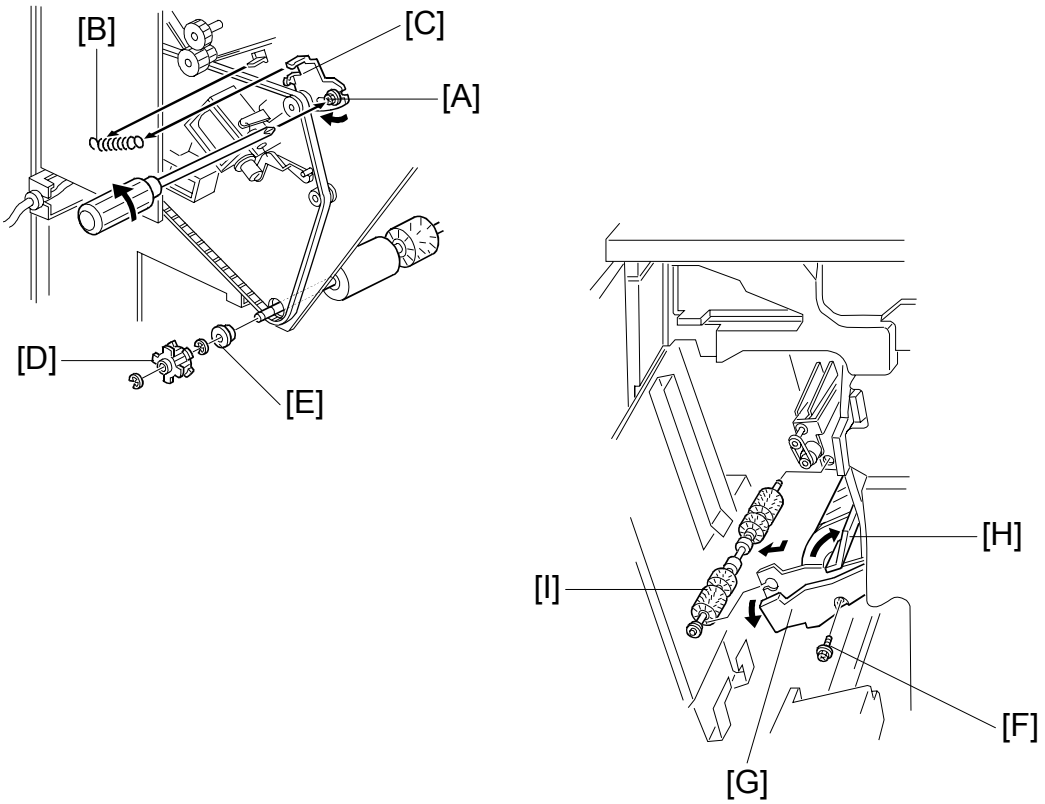
1. Remove the rear shift tray cover [D] (1 screw).

4.2 POSITIONING ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the snap ring [A].
3. Release the rubber belt [B].
4. Replace the positioning roller [C].

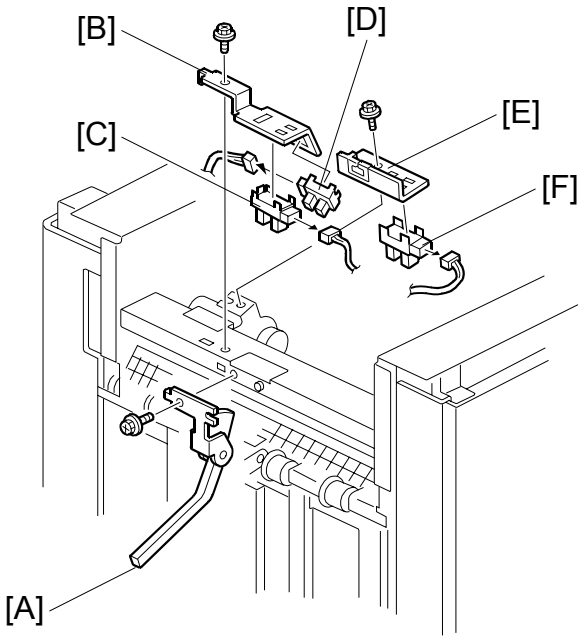
4.3 ALIGNMENT BRUSH ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Open the front door and pull out the staple unit.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Remove the screw [A] and a tension spring [B] for the tension bracket [C], and release the tension of the timing belt.
4. Remove the pulley [D] and ball bearing [E] (1 E-ring each).
5. Remove screw [F] of the inner cover [G].
6. Open the guide [H] and a part of the inner cover, and remove the alignment brush roller assembly [I] (1 E-ring).
7. Replace the alignment brush roller (1 E-ring, 1 ball bearing).

4.4 SENSOR REPLACEMENT

4.4.1 STACK HEIGHT 1, 2 AND EXIT GUIDE OPEN SENSOR



1. Remove the upper cover.

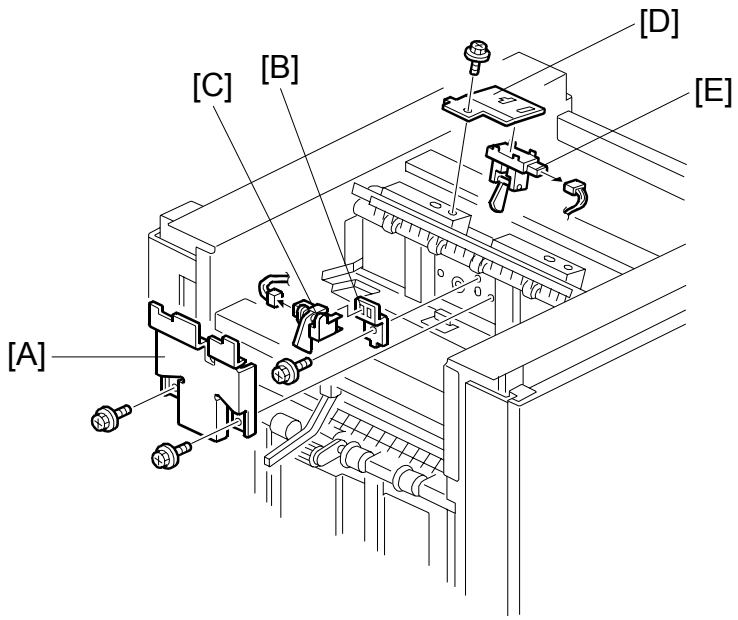
Stack Height Sensors 1 and 2

2. Remove the sensor feeler [A] (1 screw).
3. Remove the sensor bracket [B] (1 screw).
4. Replace the stack height sensor 1 [C] or 2 [D] (1 connector each).

Exit Guide Open Sensor

2. Remove the sensor bracket [E] (1 screw).
3. Replace the exit guide open sensor [F] (1 connector).

4.4.2 UPPER TRAY PAPER LIMIT AND EXIT SENSOR



1. Remove the upper cover.

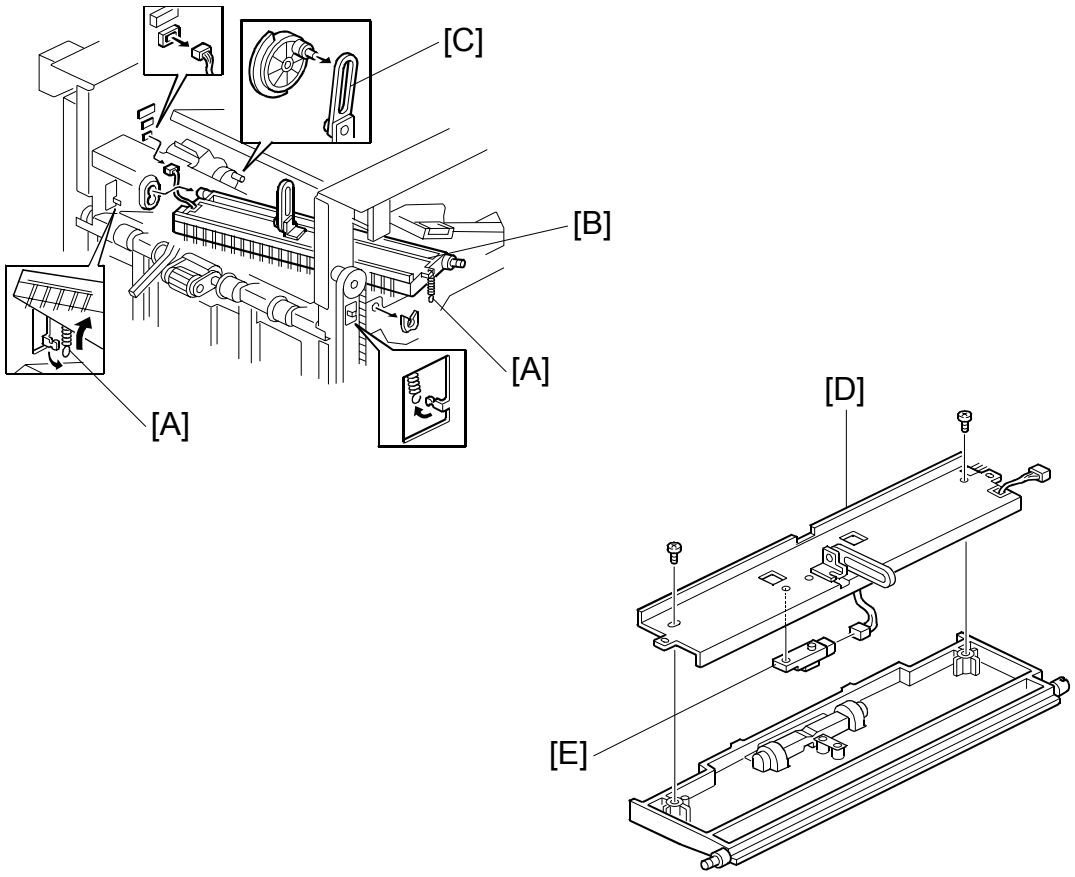
Upper Tray Paper Limit Sensor

2. Remove the sensor cover [A] (2 screws).
3. Remove the sensor bracket [B] (1 screw).
4. Replace the upper tray paper limit sensor [C] (1 connector).

Upper Tray Exit Sensor

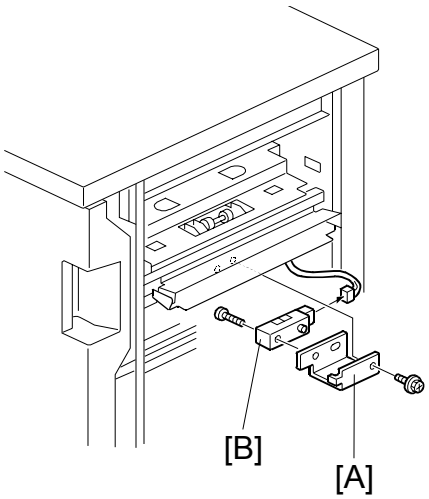
2. Remove the sensor bracket [D] (1 screw).
3. Replace the upper tray exit sensor [E] (1 connector).

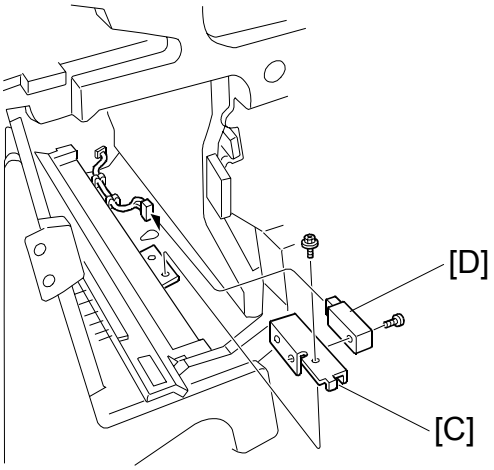
4.4.3 SHIFT TRAY EXIT SENSOR



1. Remove the upper cover.
2. Open the front door.
3. Remove the inner cover.
4. Release two springs [A] of the upper exit guide [B].
5. Release the link [C] from the cam and remove the upper exit guide (1 plastic clip, 1 connector).
6. Remove the guide stay [D] (2 screws).
7. Replace the shift tray exit sensor [E] (1 screw, 1 connector).

4.4.4 ENTRANCE AND STAPLER TRAY ENTRANCE SENSORS





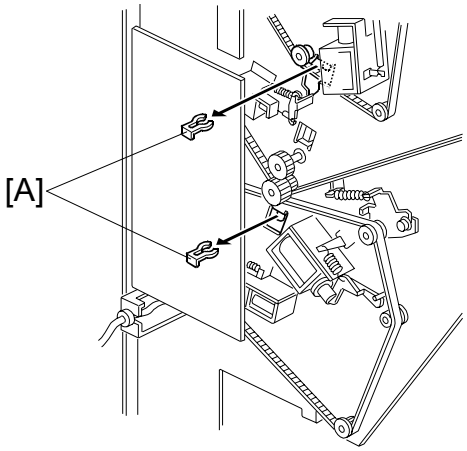
Entrance Sensor

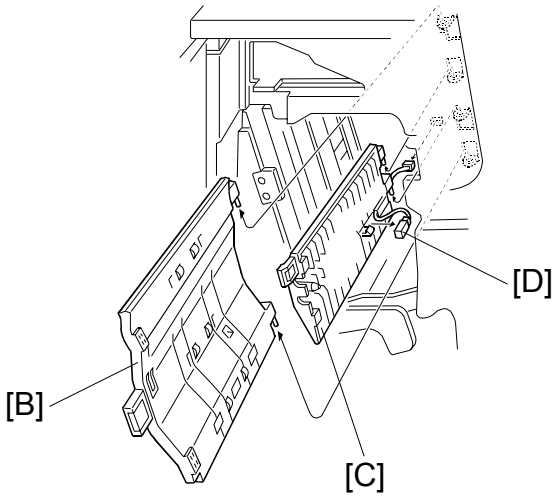
1. Remove the finisher from the copier.
2. Remove the sensor bracket [A] (1 screw).
3. Replace the entrance sensor [B] (1 screw, 1 connector).

Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor

1. Open the front door.
2. Remove the sensor bracket [C] (1 screw).
3. Replace the stapler tray entrance sensor [D] (1 screw, 1 connector).

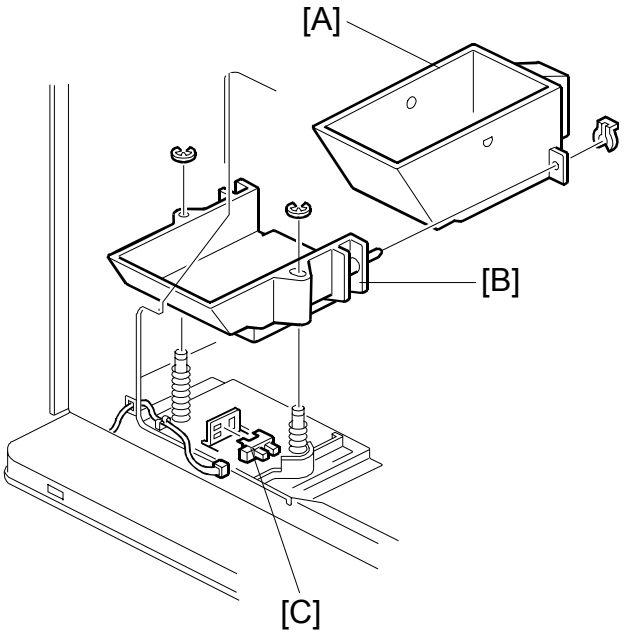
4.4.5 PRE-STACK STOPPER SENSOR





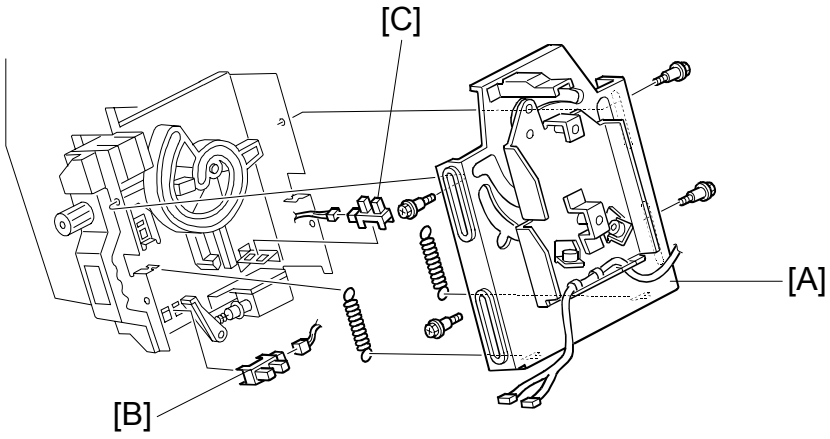
1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Remove two plastic clips from the guide [A].
3. Open the front door.
4. Remove the left vertical transport guide [B].
5. Remove the middle vertical transport guide [C] (1 connector).
6. Replace the pre-stack paper sensor [D] (1 connector).

4.4.6 STAPLE WASTE HOPPER SENSOR



1. Open the front door and pull out the stapler unit.
2. Remove the staple waste hopper [A] (1 plastic clip).
3. Remove the hopper holder [B] (2 E-rings).
4. Replace the staple waste hopper sensor [C] (1 connector).

4.4.7 STAPLER ROTATION HP AND STAPLER RETURN SENSORS



1. Remove the stapler unit.
2. Remove the stapler bracket [A] (4 screws, 2 springs).

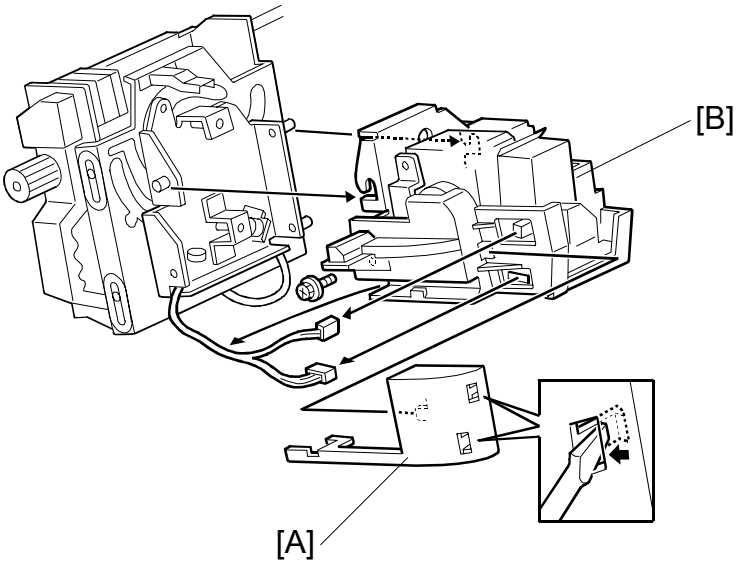
Stapler Rotation HP Sensor

3. Replace the stapler rotation HP sensor [B] (1 connector).

Stapler Return Sensor

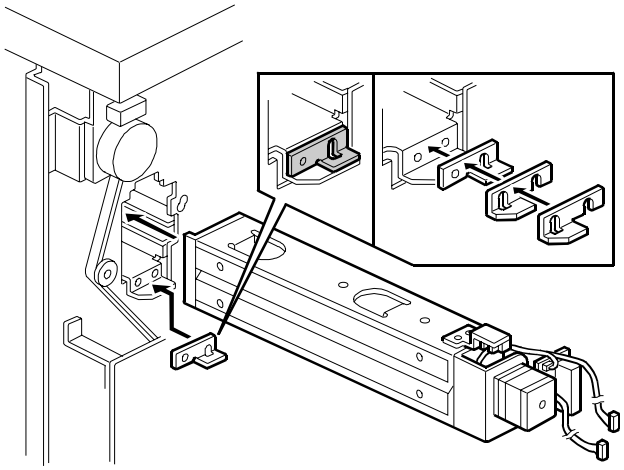
3. Replace the stapler return sensor [C] (1 connector).

4.5 STAPLER REMOVAL



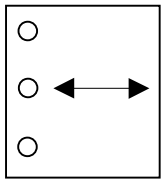
1. Open the front door and pull out the staple tray.
2. Remove the stapler unit harness cover [A].
3. Remove the stapler [B] (1 screw, 2 connectors).

4.6 PUNCH POSITION ADJUSTMENT



Right to Left

This position is adjusted by SP modes.

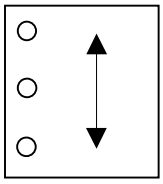


Front to Rear

The optional punch units have the following 3 spacers as accessories.

1 mm thickness: 2 pcs
2 mm thickness: 1 pc

The punch position can be adjusted by up to 4 mm by combinations of the 3 spacers.



4.7 ROM HISTORY

4.7.1 FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

<table>
<tr><th colspan="6">B302 FINISHER FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="5">DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION</th><th>FIRMWARE LEVEL</th><th>SERIAL NUMBER</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">First Production</td><td>B3025103 B</td><td>From 1st production</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Corrects the following:
• SP6-120 Staple Jogger Adjustment was missing. The staple jogger positions for each paper size can be adjusted by SP6-120. This modification becomes effective when the mainframe firmware is updated to version 7.23.2 (F) or later.</td><td>B3025103 C</td><td>February ’00 production</td></tr>
<tr><td>6-120</td><td colspan="4">Staple Jogger Adjustment</td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>1</td><td>A3</td><td>S</td><td>Adjusts the staple jogger positions for each paper size.</td><td colspan="2">+1.5 ~ -1.5
0.5 mm/step
0 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>2</td><td>B4</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>3</td><td>A4 L</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>4</td><td>A4 S</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>5</td><td>B5 L</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>6</td><td>B5 S</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>7</td><td>DLT L</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>8</td><td>LG L</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>9</td><td>LT L</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>10</td><td>LT S</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>11</td><td>Others</td><td></td><td></td><td colspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Corrects the following:
• Door open is indicated after a staple job
• After a staple job, the Staple Unit does not move to the staple supplying position in the staple end condition.
• Stapled sheets of paper fed out incorrectly when the interrupt function is used during printing.
• (A295 w/B302 only) Mistake-stapling, mistake-jogging, R2 Jam, R6 Jam.</td><td>B3025103 D</td><td>March ’00 production</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="5">Corrects the following:
• (A295 w/B302 only) Tab paper stack failure, exit paper jam in different paper length paper shift.</td><td>B3025103 E</td><td>April ’00 production</td></tr>
</table>

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETINS

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 001 **06/01/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT



SERVICE MANUAL

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

• 2-36	Updated Information (Drum Unit)
• 2-50	Updated Information (Development Mechanism)
• 2-79	Updated Information (Duplex Tray Feed Mechanism)
• 2-80	Updated Information (Basic Duplex Feed Operation)
• 4-79	Updated Information (Download NVRAM Data to the BICU)
• 5-2 and 5-4	Updated Information (PM Table)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

2.5 DRUM UNIT

2.5.1 PROCESS CONTROL

Overview

The drum potential will gradually change because of the following factors.

⟹ • Dirty charge corona casing and grid plate

• Changes in drum sensitivity

To maintain good copy quality, the machine does the following just after the main switch has been turned on (if the fusing temperature is less than 100 °C and SP3-901 is on).

1) Potential Sensor Calibration

2) V_{SG} Adjustment

3) V_G(Grid Voltage) Adjustment

4) LD Power Adjustment

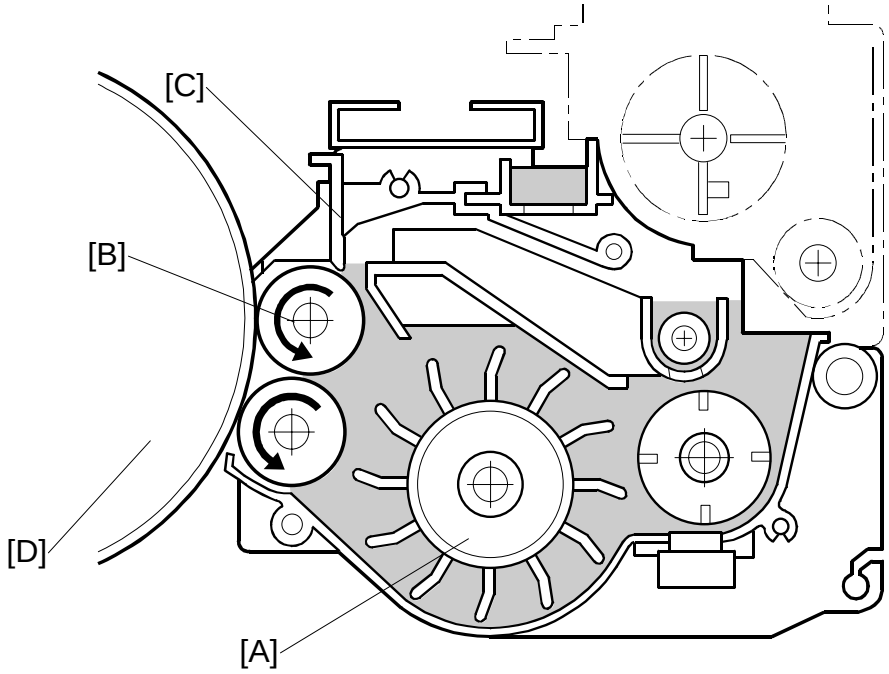
5) V_{REF} Update

6) Density Adjustment

This process is known as ‘Process Control Initial Setting’. The rest of this section will describe these steps in more detail.

Processes 1, 3, and 4 in the above list compensate for changes in drum potential. Processes 2 and 5 are for toner density control; see the “Development and Toner Supply” section for more details.

2.6.2 DEVELOPMENT MECHANISM



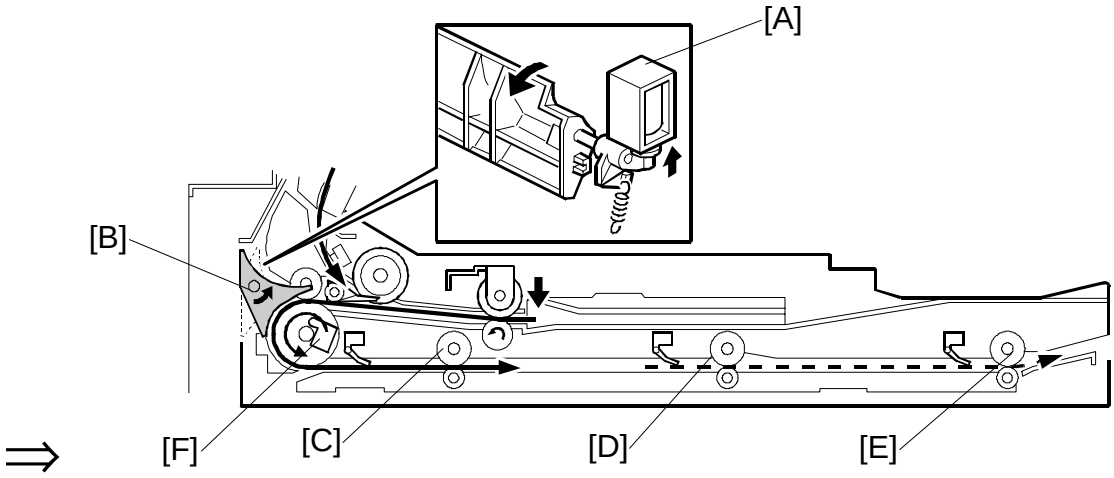
The paddle roller [A] picks up developer and transports it to the upper development roller [B]. Internal permanent magnets in the development rollers attract the developer to the development roller sleeve. The upper development roller carries the developer past the doctor blade [C]. The doctor blade trims the developer to the desired thickness and creates backspill to the cross mixing mechanism.

In this machine, black areas of the latent image are at a low negative charge (about –120 V) and white areas are at a high negative charge (about –900 V).

⟹ The development roller is given a negative bias (-550 V) to attract negatively charged toner to the black areas of the latent image on the drum.

The development rollers continue to turn, carrying the developer to the drum [D]. When the developer brush contacts the drum surface, the low-negatively charged areas of the drum surface attract and hold the negatively charged toner. In this way, the latent image is developed.

2.10.3 DUPLEX TRAY FEED MECHANISM



In duplex mode, after the paper leaves the inverter, the duplex inverter solenoid [A] switches the junction gate [B] to direct the paper to the duplex tray. The paper is fed through the duplex tray by duplex transport rollers 1 [C] and 2 [D], and the duplex feed roller [E].

If duplex mode is not selected, the solenoid does not switch the junction gate, and the paper goes to the output tray or finisher face down.

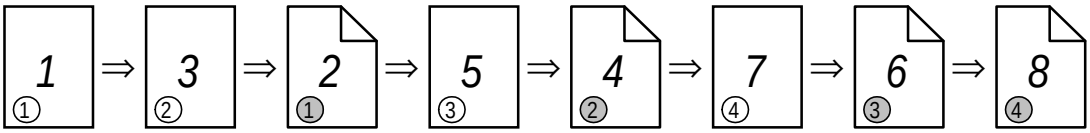
The inverter exit sensor [F] controls the on/off timing of the inverter exit clutch which stops paper coming into the duplex unit for a while. If image processing for the page coming out of the duplex unit is taking a long time, this mechanism prevents the paper entering the duplex unit from slipping over the paper at the duplex unit exit and accidentally being fed out of the unit first. The mechanism maintains the maximum productivity of printing while preventing this type of duplex feed error. When the clutch is on, paper stops.

2.10.4 BASIC DUPLEX FEED OPERATION

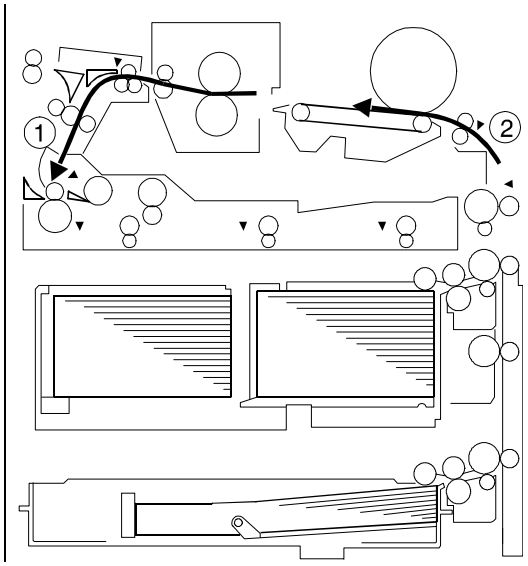
⟹ *Longer than A4 / Letter lengthwise (8.5 x 11 L)*

The duplex unit can process two sheets of copy paper

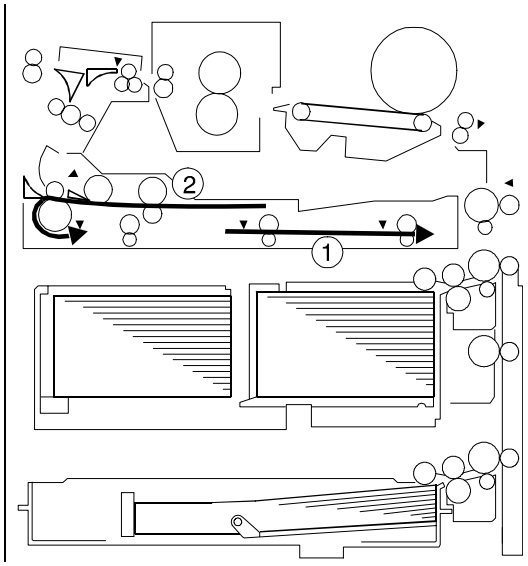
Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of copy paper (if shaded, this indicates the second side).



1. The first 2 sheets are fed and printed.
   1) 1st sheet printed (1st page)
   2) 2nd sheet printed (3rd page)

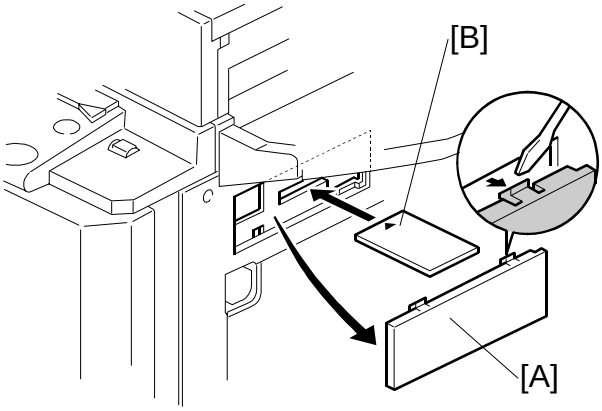


2. The first 2 sheets go into the duplex unit



4.3.4 DOWNLOAD NVRAM DATA TO THE BICU

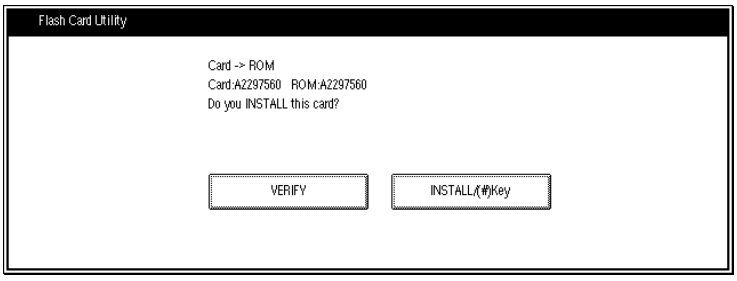
1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the flash memory card cover [A].
3. Plug the flash memory card [B] into the card slot.
   NOTE: Make sure that the surface printed “A” faces upwards.
4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Enter SP Mode.



⇒ 6. Open the front door.
NOTE: Do not close the front door until the download finishes.

⇒ 7. Select SP5-825-***.
001: All data
002: User tools (UP mode) data

NOTE: 1) Data of SP7-003, SP7-006, and SP7-007 are not downloaded.
2) When you select “001”, no data is downloaded if the serial number on the BICU is not the same as the one on the flash card.



8. Press “Start”.
9. Exit SP Mode.
10. Turn off the main switch.
11. Pull out the flash memory card.

Service Tables

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
PAPER FEED						
Registration Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Relay Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Dust Remover		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Registration Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Relay Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
⇒ Paper Feed Rollers Pick-Up Rollers Separation Rollers		C	C	C	300	Replace pick-up, feed and separation roller as a set. Check the counter value for each paper tray station (SP7-204). If the value has reached 300K, replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816).
Paper Feed Guide Plate		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Vertical Transport Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Feed Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
TRANSFER BELT UNIT						
Transfer Belt		C	C	C	450	Dry cloth
Cleaning Roller Cleaning Blade				C	450	
Transfer Entrance Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Belt Drive/Guide/ Bias Roller/Cleaning Roller		C	C	C		Alcohol
Transfer Exit Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
FUSING/PAPER EXIT						
Hot Roller		I	I	I	200	
Hot Roller Bearings		I	I	I	600	
Pressure Roller		I	I	I	450	Replace as a set.
Pressure Roller Bearings		I	I	I	450	
Fusing Thermistor	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Hot Roller Strippers	C	C	C	C	300	Water or alcohol
Oil Supply Roller Bushings	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller and Bushings		R	R	R		Replace as a set.
Oil Supply Roller		R	R	R		
Oil Supply Cleaning Roller		R	R	R		
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates		C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol
Transport/Exit Rollers			C			Water
Exit Anti-static Brush			I			

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
3,000-SHEET FINISHER (50-SHEET STAPLER): (B312)						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	I	I	I	I	2,400	
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I		Empty the hopper.

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
3,000-SHEET FINISHER (100-SHEET STAPLER): (B302)						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
⇒ Brush Roller	I	I	I	I	600	Check the counter value for the total copies by copy mode for staple (SP7-304-9). If the value has reached 600K, replace the brush roller.
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Punch Waste Hopper	I	I	I	I		Empty the hopper.

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
FINISHER: (A763)						
Rollers	C	C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol.
Brush Roller	I	I	I	I		
Discharge Brush	C	C	C	C		Clean with a dry cloth.
Sensors	C	C	C	C		Blower brush
Jogger Fences	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 002 **07/13/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

NOTE: *The following updates to the SP Mode Table require ROM ver 2.94.*

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 4-18 through 21 Updated Information (SP Tables)
- 4-47 through 53B Updated Information (SP Tables)
- 4-65 Updated Information (SP Tables)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-906	Vcont Manual Setting				
	1	Setting	*	**Factory use only.**	**9.7 V**
	2	Vctr	*	Store the VREF value at developer initialization.	
2-909	Main Scan Magnification				
	1	Copier	*	Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction for copy mode. *See "Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	- 2.0 ~+ 2.0 0.1 %/step **+ 0.0 %**
	2	Printer	*	Adjusts the magnification in the main scan direction when printing from a personal computer. *See "Replacement and Adjustment - Copy Image Adjustments" for details.*	- 2.0 ~+ 2.0 0.1 %/step **+ 0.0 %**
2-911	Transfer Current On/Off Timing				
	1	La(ON)	*	Adjusts the transfer current on timing at the leading edge.	-30 ~ +30 1 mm/step **0 mm**
	3	Lc(OFF)	*	Adjusts the transfer current off timing (for example: –5 mm is 5 mm after the trailing edge).	-30 ~ +30 1 mm/step **0 mm**
2-912	Drum Reverse Rotation Interval				
			*	**This SP mode is for designer use only. Do not change the value..**	0 ~ 20 1/step **2**
2-913	Test Pattern ID Adjustment				
				Adjusts the image density for printing test patterns (with SP2-902). Usually this SP mode is only used by designers. *The value is cleared when the main power switch is turned off and on.*	0 ~ 15 1/step **15**
2-920	LD Off Check				
				Checks whether the LD turns off or on when the front door is opened. 0 : On 1: Off ***Factory use only.***	
⇒ 2-921	Designer use only				

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-930	Transfer Belt Cleaning – DPI Change				
			*	**When resolution changes from 400 to 600 dpi, the LD writes a pattern on the drum. Toner is applied, and this must be cleaned off the belt. This SP mode determines whether bias is applied to the transfer belt cleaning bias roller at this time.**	**0 : No** 1 : Yes
2-961	Developer Initialization (Factory)				
				Factory use only.	
2-962	Auto Process Control				
			*	Automatically adjusts the following process control factors. 1. ID sensor 2. Drum potential sensor 3. Charge grid voltage (by changing V_D) 4. LD power (by changing V_H) 5. Image density adjustment Before using this SP, auto process control should be on (SP3-901) *After changing the drum, ID sensor, drum potential sensor, LD unit, or toner density sensor, this SP should be used.*	Start
2-963	Toner Supply From Toner Bottle				
				When installing a new machine, the following two process are done automatically. 1. Developer initialization 2. Forced toner supply (sends toner to the toner hopper) *Do not use this SP after replacing the developer. Use SP2-801 (developer initialization)*	Start
2-964	Blade Protection				
	1	Pattern Interval	*	Selects the interval for applying a strip of toner across drum and transfer belt to prevent the drum cleaning blade and belt cleaning blade from peeling off.	0 ~ 50 1 /step **0 (not applied)**
	2	Pattern Density	*	Selects the LD power for making the toner strip on the drum and transfer belt to prevent the drum cleaning blade and belt cleaning blade from peeling off.	0 ~ 15 1 /step **1**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-965	Toner Pump Adjustment				
	1	First Toner Waste Adjustment	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 100 1g /step **3 g**
	2	After First Toner Waste	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 100 1 g /step **3 g**
	3	Pump Clutch On Time	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 5 1 /step **2 s**
	4	Pump Motor On Time	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 20 1 s/step **6 s**
	5	Return to First Toner Waste	*	**Factory use only**	0 ~ 50 1 time/step **30 times**
2-965	Toner Pump Adjustment				
	6	Aggregate of Toner Waste	*	**Factory use only**	
2-966	Periodical Auto Process Control				
				When both the following conditions exist, auto process control and charge corona wire cleaning will be done automatically. 1. The main switch was not turned off since 24 hours after the last auto process control was done. 2. A copy job has finished.	**OFF: No** ON: Yes
2-967	Auto Image Density Adjustment				
				During the auto process control after the main switch is turned on, the toner amount in the development unit is checked and adjusted using the ID sensor.	**OFF: No** ON: Yes
2-970	Transfer Belt Resistance Value Display				
				XX.XM Unit is Ω Very High → 190 ← High → 90 ← Standard → 25 ← Low → 15 ← Very Low	
2-971	Output Value Measured Between Copies				
	1	Voltage		Displays the measurement condition of value in SP2-970.	
	2	Current			

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
3-001	ID Sensor PWM Setting				
	1	ID Sensor PWM Setting	*	This SP mode is added to recover the machine when an SC condition occurs because ID Sensor Initial Setting is not done after doing an NVRAM Clear or replacing the NVRAM. Reset this SP to the factory setting in this case. *The PWM data is stored when ID Sensor Initial Setting is done.*	0 ~ 255 1/step **90**
	2	Initialization	*	Performs the ID sensor initial setting. The ID sensor output for the bare drum (V_{SG}) is adjusted to 4.0 ± 0.2V. *This SP mode should be performed after:* *1. Replacing or cleaning the ID sensor* *2. Replacing the NVRAM or doing an NVRAM clear* *3. Replacing the BICU board*	Start
3-103	ID Sensor Output Display				
			*	Displays the current V_{SG} and V_{SP} output. V_{SP}= x.xx V V_{SG}= x.xx V *If the ID sensor does not detect the ID pattern, "V_{SP}=5.0V/V_{SG}=5.0V" is displayed and an SC code is generated.* *If the ID sensor does not detect the bare area of the drum, "V_{SP}=0.0V/V_{SG}=0.0V" is displayed and an SC code is generated.*	
3-901	Auto Process Control				
			*	Decides whether or not the machine checks and corrects the drum potential (V_D) and LD power when the fusing temperature is lower than 100°C at power-up.	**ON** OFF
3-902	Process Control Data Display				
	1	Auto Process Control	*	Displays whether auto process control is on or off. (O: OFF, 1: ON)	
	2	V_D	*	Displays the drum potential.	
	3	Half Tone V_H	*	Displays the drum potential in areas illuminated by the laser.	
	4	V_G	*	Displays the charge grid voltage which resulted from the latest V_D adjustment.	
	5	LD Power (Correction)	*	Displays the LD power correction value which resulted from the latest V_H adjustment.	
	6	V_{ID}	*	Displays the latest drum surface voltage measured on the ID sensor pattern.	
	7	V_{QL}	*	Displays the drum potential after quenching.	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-118	Disable Copying				
			*	Selects whether the copy function is disabled or not when printer controller is installed.	**0: No** 1: Yes
5-120	M/C Option Counter Removal				
			*	**This SP is for Japan only. Do not change the value.**	0 ~ 2 1/step **0**
5-121	Counter Up Timing				
			*	Determines whether the optional key counter counts up at paper feed-in or at paper exit. *The total counter is not affected by this SP mode.*	**0: Feed-in** 1: Exit
5-127	APS Mode				
			*	Selects whether the APS function is enabled or not.	No **Yes**
5-131	Paper Size Type Selection				
			*	Selects the paper size type (for originals and copy paper). (Only needs to be adjusted if the optional printer controller is installed) • *After changing the value, turn the main power switch off and on.* • *If the paper size type of the archive files stored in the HDD is different, abnormal copies will be made. So, after changing this setting, perform SP5-822 and ask the user to restore the archive files.*	0: Japan **1: North America** 2: Europe 3: China
⇒ 5-212	Adjust Position on 2nd side Duplex Copying				
	3	Adjust Position (Sub Scan direction)		Adjusts the position (sub scan direction) of "Page Numbering" on 2nd side when making duplex copy	-10 ~ +10mm 1 mm step **0 mm**
	4	Adjust Position (Main Scan direction)		Adjusts the position (main scan direction) of "Page Numbering" on 2nd side when making duplex copy	-10 ~ +10mm 1 mm step **0 mm**
⇒ 5-513	Japanese Market only				
⇒ 5-514	Japanese Market only				
5-501	PM Alarm Interval				
			*	Sets the PM interval, with an alarm. *When set to "0", the alarm is disabled.*	0 ~ 255 1k copies/step **0 k copies**
5-504	Jam Alarm Level(RSS function)				
	1	Jam Alarm Level	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0: No 1: L 2: M **3: H**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-504	Jam Alarm Level(RSS function)				
	2	Jam Auto Call (RSS function)	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0: Off **1: On**
5-505	Error Alarm Level				
			*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	0 ~ 255 100 copies/step
5-507	Paper Supply Call Level				
	128	Others	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	250 ~ 10000 1 page/step **1000 pages**
	132	A3	*		
	133	A4	*		
	134	A5	*		
	141	B4	*		
	142	B5	*		
	160	DLT	*		
	164	LG	*		
	166	LT	*		
	172	HLT	*		
5-590	Auto Call Setting				
	1	Original Count	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	**0: Off** 1: On
	2	Door Open	*		
	3	Paper Supply	*		
	4	Stapler Supply	*		
	5	Toner Supply	*		
5-801	Memory All Clear				
				Resets all correction data for process control and all software counters. Also, returns all modes and adjustments to the default settings. See the "Memory All Clear" section for how to use this SP mode correctly. Touch “Start” for over 3 seconds, then turn the main power switch off and on.	Start
				Normally, this SP mode should not be used. *It is used only after replacing the NVRAM, or when the copier malfunctions due to a damaged NVRAM.* The LCD coordinates are also cleared, see “LCD Touch Panel Calibration”.	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-802	Printer Free Run				
			*	Performs a free run. The scanner scans once and the printer prints for the number of copies requested. *To perform the free run, select "ON"* *1) Select "ON".* 2) *Select "Exit".* 3) *Select "Copy Mode".* 4) *Make the required settings (such as the number of copies.).* 5) *Press the Start key.* *After finishing the free run, return this SP to "OFF"*	**Off** On
5-803	Input Check				
	1 ~ 14			Displays the signals received from sensors and switches. See the "Input Check" section for details.	
5-804	Output Check				
	1 ~ 97			Turns on the electrical components individually for test purposes. See the "Output Check" section for details.	On Off
5-807	Option Connection Check				
	1	ADF		Checks the connectors to the optional peripherals.	0: Not connected 1: Connected
	2	Bank			
	3	LCT			
	4	Finisher			
5-811	Machine Serial Number				
			*	Use to input the machine serial number. (Normally done at the factory.) *This serial number will be printed on the system parameter list.* *Use the " •" key to input "A".*	
5-812	Service Tel. No. Setting				
	1	Service Telephone Number at SC Condition	*	Use this to input the telephone number of the service representative (this is displayed when a service call condition occurs.) *Press the " •" key to input a pause.* *Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number.*	
	2	Service Fax Number for Counter Printing	*	Use this to input the fax number of the service representative (this is printed on the Counter Report – UP mode, System No.19) *Press the " •" key to input a pause.* *Press the "Clear modes" key to delete the telephone number.*	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
5-816	CSS Function				
	1	Function Setting	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	**Off** On
	2	CE Call	*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the values.**	**Off** On
5-821	CSS PI Device Code				
			*	**Japanese version only.** **Do not change the value.**	0 ~ 4 1/step **0**
5-822	Server Data Clear				
			*	Clears all archive file data stored in the HDD. (A printer controller is required for the archive file feature.) *Before (or after) performing SP5-131, do this SP mode. After this, ask the user to restore the archive files.*	Start
5-823	Paper Supply Call Tray				
	1	1st Tray		***This SP is for Japan only. Do not change the value.***	**0: Call** 1: Not Call
	2	2nd Tray			
	3	3rd Tray			
	4	4th Tray			
	5	LCT			
	6	By-pass Tray			
5-824	Upload NVRAM Data				
				Uploads the NVRAM data to the flash memory card. *When uploading this SP mode data, the front door should be opened.*	Start
5-825	Download NVRAM Data				
	1	All Data		*Downloads the NVRAM data from flash memory card to NVRAM.* *The following data are not downloaded when selecting 'All Data'.* *SP7-003-**** *SP7-006-**** *SP7-007-**** *When the serial number of NVRAM and flash memory card are not the same, you cannot download the data.*	Start
	2	Mode Data			
5-826	Program Upload				
				Uploads the machine program to the flash memory card.	Start
5-829	Stamp Data Download				
				Downloads the stamp data from the flash memory card.	Start

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)			Function	Settings
5-907	Plug & Play (Brand Name and Production Name Setting)			
			Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows 95 Plug & Play. This information is stored in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective, these names should be registered again.	
			After selecting, press the "Original Type" key and "#" key at the same time. When the setting is completed, the beeper sounds five times.	
5-914	Printer Counter Display			
		*	Selects whether or not the total printer counter is displayed in the UP mode.	**Off** On
5-915	Mechanical Counter Detection			
			Checks whether the mechanical counter inside the inner cover is connected or not.	0: Not detected 1: Detected 2: Unknown
5-920	Low Power Mode Recovery Time			
		*	Determines the recovery time from low power mode. 170°C: Approx. 30s 177°C: Approx. 20s	170 ~ 185 1°C /step **170°C (55cpm)** **177°C (70cpm)**
5-921	Data Port Change			
			Changes the connector for sending the key card data.	**0: Key card connector** 1: Key counter connector
5-922	Counter Operation Setting			
			Selects the counter operation for the optional counter. **0: No Interleaf** (Productivity is slow in duplex mode.) 1: Interleaf (Productivity is high in duplex mode.)	
			When using a "count down type" key card and duplex mode, the last copy will sometimes be free if "1" is selected.	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
6-006	4	Reading Edge (Duplex-rear)	*	Adjusts the original stop position against the original left scale in two-sided original mode.	-29 ~ +29 0.1 mm/step **+ 0.0 mm**
6-007	ADF Input Check				
	1	Group 1		Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the ADF. See the "Input Check" section for details.	
	2	Group 2		Displays the signals received from sensors and switches of the ADF. See the "Input Check" section for details.	
6-008	ADF Output Check				
				Turns on the electrical components of the ADF individually for test purposes. See the "Output Check" section for details.	
6-009	ADF Free Run (Two-sided original)				
	1			Performs an ADF free run in two-sided original mode. Press “1” to start.	**Off** On
				This is a general free run controlled from the copier. For more detailed free run modes, see the ‘Test Points/Dip Switches/LEDs’ section.	
⇒ 6-016	Adjust Motor Speed				
				Adjust the speed of the feed-in, transport and feed-out motors. Perform this SP when replacing the Main Board or above motors.	
6-020	ADF Speed Adjustment				
			*	When the customer points out noise form the ADF, use this to adjust the ADF speed to low.	High speed: 70 cpm Low Speed: 55 cpm
6-105	Stapling Position Adjustment				
			*	Adjusts the stapling position in the main scan direction	- 3.5~ +3.5 0.5 mm/step **+0.0 mm**
				A larger value causes the stapling position to shift outward.	
6-113	Punch Hole Adjustment				**Rev. 06/2000**
	1	2-Holes		Adjusts the punch hole position in the sub-scan direction for the punch unit with two punch holes.	- 7.5 ~ + 7.5 0.5 mm/step **0 mm**
				A larger value shifts the punch holes towards the edge of the paper.	
	2	3-Holes		Adjusts the punch hole position in the sub-scan direction for the punch unit with three punch holes.	- 7.5 ~ + 7.5 0.5 mm/step **0 mm**
				A larger value shifts the punch holes towards the edge of the paper.	

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
6-116	Thick Paper Count				
				Multiply the normal limit by this number to determine the staple limit number for thick paper mode.	1 ~ 3 1 sheet/step 3 sheets
⇒ 6-119	Enable Punch for Thick Paper				
				This SP functions with the B302 Finisher. Set this SP to "1" to enable the punch for thick paper. NOTE: 1. Before enabling SP6-119, please be sure that the customer is aware of the specific range of paper weights that can be used with this mode. 2. Do not enable this mode if the customer is using OHP transparencies.	Range: **0 Disabled** 1 Enabled
⇒ 6-120	Adjust Jogger Fence Position of the Staple Tray				
	001	A3			0.0 ~ 1.5 mm 0.5mm/step **0.0mm**
	002	B4			
	003	A4 lengthwise			
	004	A4 sideways			
	005	B5 lengthwise			
	006	B5 sideways			
	007	DLT			
	008	LG			
	009	LT lengthwise			
	010	LT sideways			
	011	Others			
6-801	Copy Connect I/F Test				
				Checks the copy connect kit connection.	
6-901	Original Exchange Time Adjustment				
	1	Normal Paper	*	Adjusts the original exchange time. This is based on the time that the machine estimates (from DF sensor outputs) that the paper has arrived on the exposure glass and stopped for scanning. If a higher value is set, 1-to-1 copying will be slower. If a lower value is set, scanning may start before the original has stopped on the glass.	500 ~ 700 ms 10 ms/step **620 ms**
	2	Thin Paper	*		500 ~ 700 ms 10 ms/step **520 ms**
6-902	Saddle Stitch Adjustment				
	1	A3/DLT	*	Adjusts the fold position.	–3.0 ~ +3.0 mm 0.5 mm/step **0.0 mm**
	2	B4	*		–2.0 ~ +2.0 mm 0.5 mm/step **0.0 mm**
	3	A4/LT			–1.5 ~ +1.5 mm 0.5 mm/step **0.0 mm**

This page intentionally left blank.

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)		Function	Settings
7-906	Clear Original Number of Each size		
		Resets all counters of SP7-202.	Start
7-907	Clear Job Number of Each size		
		Resets all counters of SP7-306.	Start
7-908	Document : Clear Original Number		
		Resets all counters of SP7-002-2.	Start
7-920	Document Server : Clear Scanned Storage		
		Resets the counter of SP7-320.	Start
7-921	Document Server : Clear Original Number of Each Size		
		Resets all counters of SP7-321.	Start
7-923	Document Server : Clear Print Number of Each Copy		
		Resets all counters of SP7-323	Start
7-924	Document Server : Clear Print Job Logging		
		Resets all counters of SP7-324	Start
7-925	Document Server : Clear Print Job Page Distribution		
		Resets all counters of SP7-325	Start
7-926	Document Server : Clear Print Job File Distribution		
		Resets all counters of SP7-326	Start
7-927	Document Server : Clear Print Job Set Distribution		
		Resets all counters of SP7-327.	Start
7-928	Document Server: Clear Copy Number of Each Job		
		Resets all counters of SP7-328	Start
⇒ 7-990	Display the detail information for SC990		
	001 Filename 002 Line Number 003 Value	Displays the detail information for SC990.	

Service Tables

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 003 **07/17/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: LOW IMAGE DENSITY

SYMPTOM:

Low image density on copies for units with low copy volume (20K to 30K after installation).

CAUSE:

The Fusing Fan Motor stops when the low power timer is met (60 secs). The copier enters Energy Saver Mode and because the Fusing Lamp remains on to maintain the Hot Roller temperature, the temperature of the areas surrounding the unit also rises. The resulting heat can damage the toner that is stored in the bottle above the fusing unit causing some of the toner's ingredients to separate. The altered toner is then sent to the Development Unit and is mixed in with the developer causing developer chargeability to drop. This results in low image density. The heat damage is especially susceptible on low copy volume machines because the toner remains in the bottle for an extended periods of time.

SOLUTION:

The BICU Firmware has altered the off-timing of the Fusing Fan Motor. The off-timing has been delayed so the Fusing Fan will have time to remove the hot air around the Toner Bottle.

- On newly installed machines, upgrade the BICU Firmware to version 3.5.1 (Level "E") during installation.
- On field machines that do not exhibit a low image density symptom, upgrade the BICU Firmware to version 3.5.1 (Level "E") during the next visit.
- On field machines that exhibit a low image density symptom perform the following procedure:
  1. Upgrade the BICU Firmware to version 3.5.1 (Level "E").
  2. Replace the developer.
  3. Replace the Toner Bottle.
  4. Clean the toner from the Toner Hopper.

The BICU Firmware revision E (file name A292REVE.EXE) can be downloaded through the Ricoh Technical Services FTP Site http://tsc.ricohcorp.com.

NOTE: *Refer to Facts Line Bulletin # FL002 for more information about the FTP Internet Web Site.*

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 004 **08/23/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- viii — Updated Information (Table of Contents)
- 2-17 — Updated Information (SBU)
- 4-46 — Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-66 — Updated Information (Test pattern Printing)
- 4-79 — Updated Information (Download NVRAM Data to the BICU)
- 6-24, 24A, 24B and 25 — New and Updated Information (Laser Unit)
- 6-73 — Updated Information (Touch Screen Calibration)
- 7-18 — Updated Information (Service Codes)

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

6.11 BOARDS AND OTHER ITEMS 6-67
6.11.1 BICU BOARD 6-67
6.11.2 I/O BOARD 6-68
6.11.3 PSU 6-69
6.11.4 PAPER FEED CONTROL BOARD (PFC) 6-69
6.12 COPY IMAGE ADJUSTMENTS: PRINTING/SCANNING.....6-70
6.12.1 PRINTING.....6-70
Registration - Leading Edge 6-70
Registration – Side-to-Side 6-70
Tray 1.....6-71
Tray 2.....6-71
Tray 3.....6-72
By-pass Tray.....6-72
6.13 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION 6-73

TROUBLESHOOTING

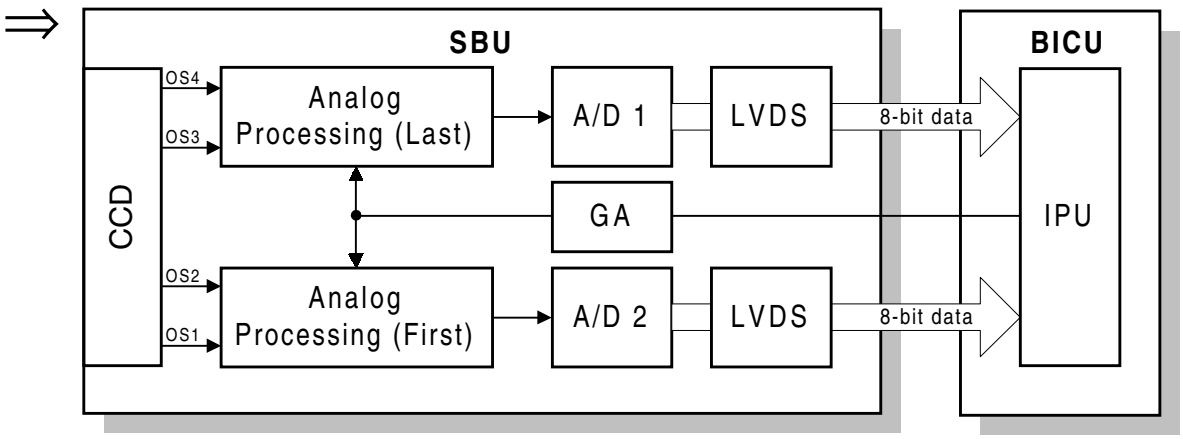
7. TROUBLESHOOTING 7-1
7.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 7-1
7.1.1 SUMMARY 7-1
7.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS 7-2
7.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS.....7-40
7.2.1 SENSORS 7-40
7.2.2 SWITCHES.....7-44
7.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS 7-45

3,000-SHEET FINISHER B302

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION 8-1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....8-1
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT.....8-3
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION.....8-4
1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT 8-6

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 8-7
2.1 TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATE 8-7
Upper Tray Mode.....8-7
Sort/Stack Mode 8-7
Staple Mode.....8-7
2.2 PAPER PRE-STACKING.....8-8
2.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING.....8-9
Vertical Paper Alignment 8-9
Horizontal Paper Alignment 8-9
Paper Stack Correction.....8-9

2.3.2 SBU



The CCD converts the light reflected from the original into an analog signal. The CCD line has 7,500 pixels and the resolution is 600 dpi (23.6 lines/mm).

The CCD has four output lines: OS1, OS2, OS3, and OS4. OS1 and OS2 are for the first half of the scan line (Non-operation side), and OS3 and OS4 are for the last half of the scan line (Operation side). There are two analog processing ICs; one handles the first half line (OS 1 and OS2) and the other handles the last half line (OS3 and OS4). The analog processing IC performs the following operations:

1) Combines the odd and even signals into one line signal.
2) Adjust the black reference level of each CCD output channel.
3) Amplifies the analog signal from the CCD.

After the above processing, the analog signals are converted to 8-bit signals by the A/D converter. This gives a value for each pixel on scale of 256 grades. Then, the two 8-bit signals are sent to the BICU board through the LVDS (Low Voltage Differential Signaling). The LVDS is a noise-resistant interface.

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-912	Text/Photo Separation Setting				
	17	Half Tone Separation Level	*	Selects the dot screen detection level. 0. Setting of SP4-921-008 ~015 1. Letter priority – strong 2. Letter priority – weak 3. Standard 4. Photo priority – weak 5. Photo priority – strong *Do not use '0'; this is for factory use only.*	0 ~ 5 1/step **3**
	18	Effective Magnification Ratio	*	Selects the maximum magnification that can be used with dot screen detection.	100 ~ 400 1/step **109**
5-009	Language Selection				
⇒			*	Selects the operation panel language.	
5-019	Tray Paper Size Selection				
	5	LCT	*	Selects the paper size in the optional LCT.	A4 LT B5
5-024	mm/inch Display Selection				
			*	Selects what unit is used.	**0: mm** 1: inch
				After selecting the unit, turn the main power switch off and on.	
5-104	A3/DLT Double Count				
			*	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/11"x17" paper.	**No** Yes
				If "1" is selected, the total counter and the current user code counter count up twice when A3/11"x17" paper is used.	
5-106	ID Shift Level				
	6	ADS Level Selection	*	Selects the image density level that is used in ADS mode.	1 ~ 7 1 notch /step **4**
5-112	Non-standard Paper Selection				
			*	Selects whether a non-standard paper size can be input for tray 2 (universal tray) or not.	**No** Yes
				If "1" is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using a UP mode.	
5-113	Optional Counter Type				
			*	**Select the option counter type.** 0. None 1. Key card (Japan only) 2. Key card (Count down type) 3. Pre-paid card 4. Coin lock 5. Key card (Japan only)	0 ~ 5 1/step **0**

4.2.3 TEST PATTERN PRINTING (SP2-902)

NOTE: Do not operate the machine until the test pattern is printed out completely. Otherwise, an SC may occur.

1. Access the SP mode which contains the test pattern you need.
2. Touch the “Copy Mode” key on the operation panel to access the copy mode display.
3. Select the paper size.
4. Press the “Start” key to print the test pattern.
5. After checking the test pattern, exit copy mode by touching the “SP Mode” key.
6. Exit the SP mode.

Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-2: Test Pattern Printing – IPU)

⟹

No.	Test Pattern	No.	Test Pattern
0	None	7	Vertical Strips
1	Vertical Lines (1-dot)	8	Grayscale (Vertical)
2	Vertical Lines (2-dots)	9	Grayscale (Horizontal)
3	Horizontal Line (1-Dot)	10	Cross Pattern
4	Horizontal Line (2-Dots)	11	Argyle Pattern
5	Alternating Dot Pattern	12	Frequency (Horizontal)
6	Grid Pattern (1-Dot)	13	Frequency (Vertical)

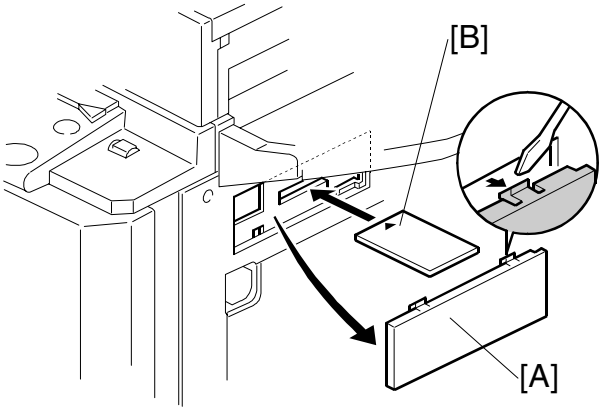
Test Pattern Table (SP2-902-3: Test Pattern Printing – Printing)

⟹

No.	Test Pattern	No.	Teat Pattern
0	None	13	16 Grayscales (Vertical)
1	Vertical Line (1-dot)	14	16 Grayscales (Vert./Hor.)
2	Horizontal Line (1-dot)	15	16 Grayscales (Vert./Hor Overlay)
3	Vertical Line (2 dot)	16	Hound’sTooth Check (1-Dot, 600dpi)
4	Horizontal Line (2-dot)	17	Hound’sTooth Check (1-Dot, 400dpi)
5	Grid Pattern (Single-dot)	18	Horizontal Line (1-Dot)(Reverse Order ofLD1 & LD2)
6	Grid Pattern (Double-dot)	19	Grid Pattern (1-Dot)(Reverse Order of LD1 & LD2)
7	Independent Pattern (1-Dot)	20	Grid Pattern (2-Dot)(Reverse Order of LD1 & LD2)
8	Full Dot Pattern	21	Independent Pattern (1-Dot)(Reversed Order of LD1 & LD2)
9	Black Band	22	Blank Page
10	Trimming Area	23	Grid Pattern (1-dot) (Overlaying Outside Data)
11	Argyle Pattern	24	Trimming Area (Overlaying Outside Data)
12	16 Grayscales (Horizontal)		

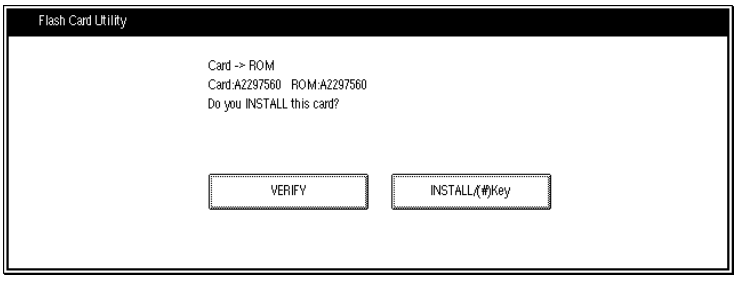
4.3.4 DOWNLOAD NVRAM DATA TO THE BICU

1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Remove the flash memory card cover [A].
3. Plug the flash memory card [B] into the card slot.
   NOTE: Make sure that the surface printed "A" faces upwards.
4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Enter SP Mode.



6. Open the front door.
   NOTE: Do not close the front door until the download finishes.
7. Select SP5-825-***.
   001: All data
   002: User tools (UP mode) data

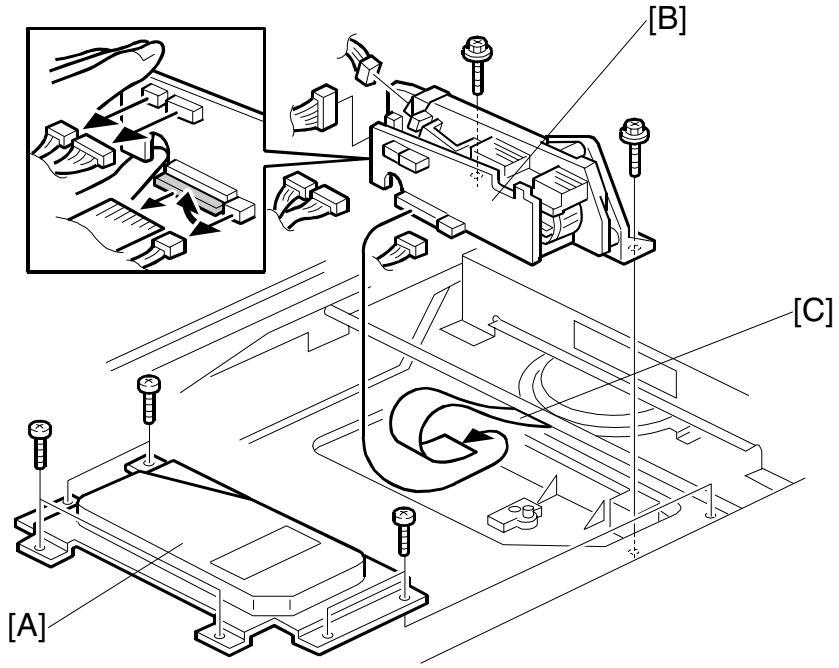
⇒ **NOTE:** 1) Data of SP7-003 and SP7-006 are not downloaded.
2) When you select "001", no data is downloaded if the serial number on the BICU is not the same as the one on the flash card.



8. Press "Start".
9. Exit SP Mode.
10. Turn off the main switch.
11. Pull out the flash memory card.

Service Tables

6.4.2 LD UNIT REPLACEMENT



⚠WARNING

Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting this procedure. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

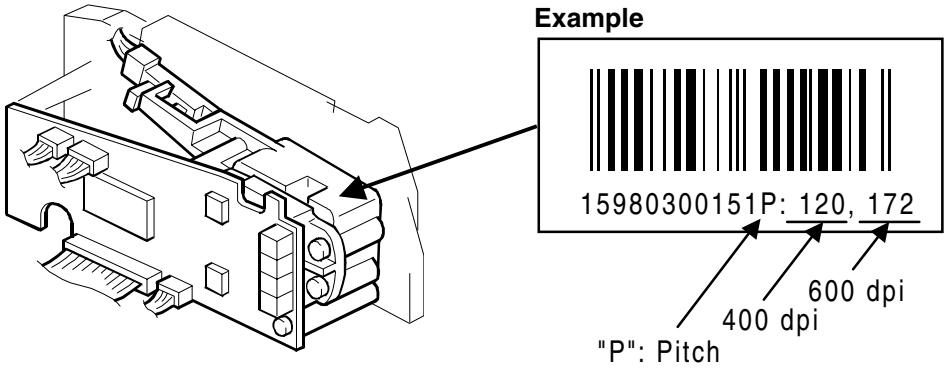
1. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
2. ⟹ Remove the LD cover [A] (6 screws).
3. Replace the LD unit [B] (2 screws and 6 connectors).
   NOTE: When disconnecting the cables, hold the LD unit.
4. When reinstalling, make sure that the flat cable [C] is mounted above the LD unit, and that the rotation of the unit is not interrupted.
5. ⟹ Do SP 2-962 (process control initialization).
   NOTE: Be sure that the cable does not block LD unit rotation after replacing the LD unit. If the LD unit cannot rotate smoothly to change the resolution, SC329 (LD unit home position error) may occur.

⇒ 6.4.3 LASER BEAM PITCH ADJUSTMENT

There are two laser beam pitch adjustment procedures: one for 400 dpi, and one for 600 dpi. These adjustments use the following SP modes.

- SP2-109-1: Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment – 400 dpi
- SP2-109-2: Laser Beam Pitch Adjustment – 600 dpi
- SP2-109-3: Laser Beam Pitch Initial Setting – 400 dpi
- SP2-109-4: Laser Beam Pitch Initial Setting – 600 dpi
- SP2-902-3, no.17: Hound's Tooth Check (1-dot) – Cross Stitch – 400 dpi
- SP2-902-3, no.16: Hound's Tooth Check (1-dot) – Cross Stitch – 600 dpi

1. Perform SP2-109-8 (Beam Pitch Data Reset).
2. Input the value for 400 dpi that is printed on the LD unit into SP2-109-1. Use the value printed after "P" on the new LD unit as shown below.



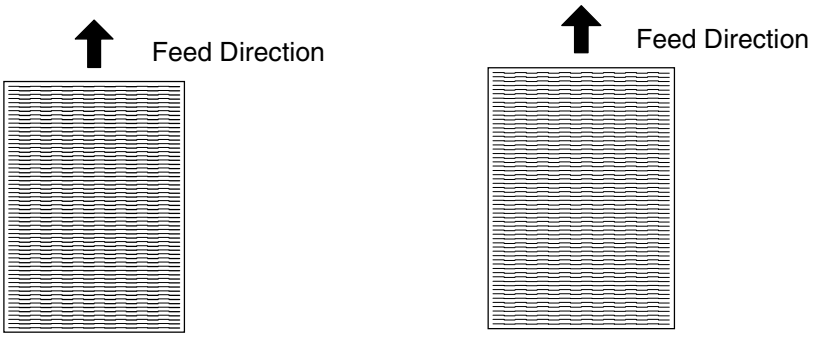
NOTE: Do not use values printed after a "V".

3. Press the "Enter" key.
4. Perform SP2-109-3.
5. Print the 400-dpi test pattern onto A3 (11"x17") paper using SP2-903-3 no.17 (cross stitch). (See Service Tables - Test Pattern Printing).
6. Write the value of SP2-109-1 on the test pattern which was input at step 2.
7. Change the value of SP2-109-1 and print another test pattern, repeating steps 2 to 5. Print about 5 patterns with different values for SP2-109-1 (e.g. "48", "96", "192", "240").
8. Check this test pattern. If the laser beam pitch is not correct, the image looks like a black vertical stripe pattern.
   NOTE: If the laser beam pitch is correct, the vertical stripe is not so noticeable. If the value is not correct, the vertical stripe pattern is darker.

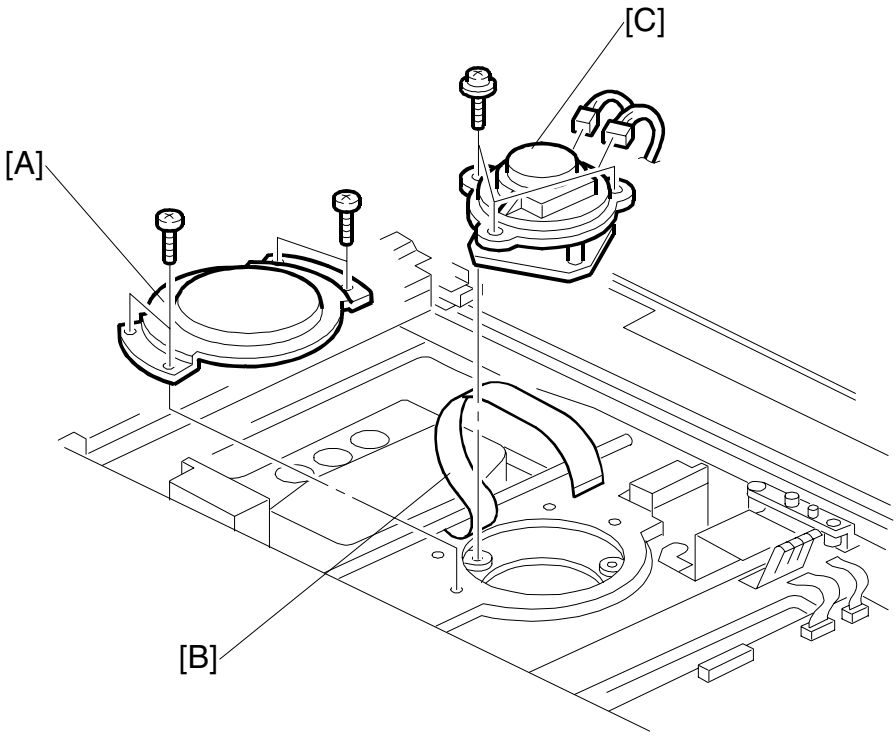
⇒ 9. Adjust the laser beam pitch position until the thin lines are of uniform thickness (no striping effect should appear on the printout), doing steps 2, 3, and 4. (In step 2, input a value which is estimated to be correct, then do steps 3 and 4, then if necessary go back to step 2 and try another value.)

10. After adjusting the laser beam pitch for 400 dpi, adjust the laser beam pitch for 600 dpi, using the same procedure as for 400 dpi (use the SP modes for 600 dpi).

Adjustment not complete **Adjustment complete**



⇒ 6.4.4 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine.
2. Remove the exposure glass. (See Exposure Glass Removal.)
3. Remove the lens cover. (See Lens Block Assembly Replacement.)
4. Remove the lens block assembly. (See Lens Block Assembly Replacement.)
5. Remove the polygon mirror motor cover [A] (2 screws).
6. Disconnect the LD unit flat cable [B].
7. Replace the polygon mirror motor [C] (3 screws and 2 connectors.)

NOTE: When reinstalling, make sure that the polygon mirror opening faces the right. Also, do not pull on the LD flat cable.

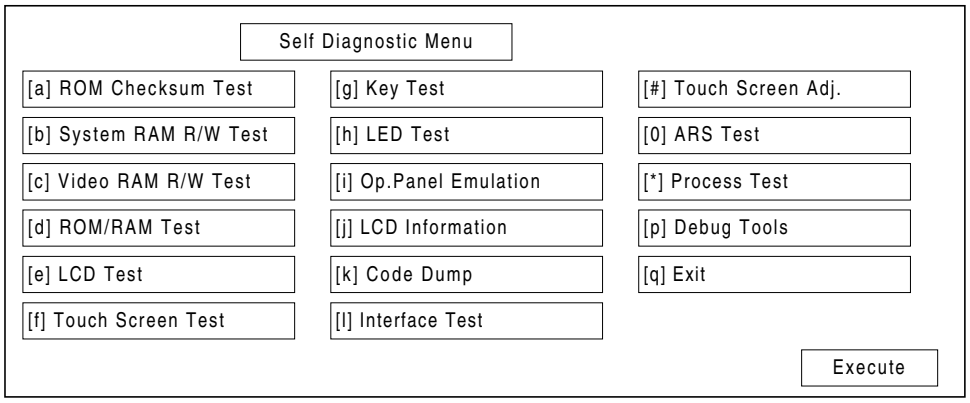
8. Do the scanner and printer copy adjustments. (See Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image Adjustments.)

6.13 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION

⟹ After doing a memory all clear or when the touch panel detection mechanism is not working properly, calibrate the touch screen as follows.

1. Press the following keys in sequence to enter touch screen calibration mode.

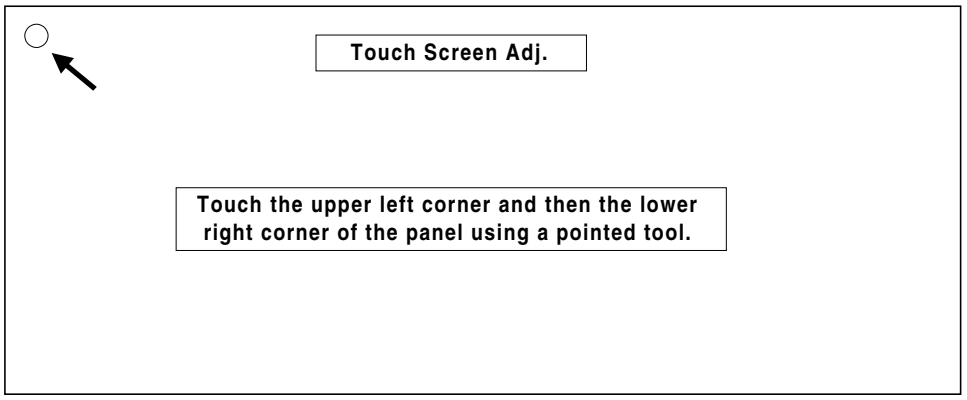
   [#/▽] [1] [9] [9] [3] [C/▽] x5 (#)



⚠CAUTION

Do not execute any of the other items in the self diagnostic menu.

2. The “Self Diagnostics Menu” screen will appear.
   Press the # key to select the “Touch Screen Adj.” Mode.



3. The “Touch Screen Adj.” calibration screen will appear. Touch the upper left corner then the lower right corner of the panel using a pointed (but not sharp!) tool.
4. Touch a few spots on the LCD touch panel, and confirm that the marker (a small circle) appears on the screen at exactly the same location as where it is touched. If it does not, touch “Cancel” on the adjustment screen. Then repeat the calibration procedure.
5. Touch “Ok” on the adjustment screen.
6. Touch “[q] Exit” and “Execute” to exit the self diagnostics menu.

SC380: Data transmission time out (video input)

-Definition- [B]

Data input to the IC which controls data transfer and compression is not completed within 20 seconds.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective
- SBU defective
- Printer controller defective

SC382: Data transmission time out (video output)

-Definition- [B]

Data output from the IC which controls the data transfer and compression is not completed within 20 seconds.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective
- LD board defective

SC384: Data transmission time out (connect copy)

-Definition-

Data transmission to the memory does not finish properly within 20 seconds after the start of data transmission.

-Possible cause-

- Defective connection board
- Defective or disconnected interface cable
- Defective SBICU

SC386: Data transmission time out (Hard disk write)

-Definition- [B]

Data input to the IC which controls the data transfer and compression is not completed with in 20 seconds.

-Possible cause-

- BICU defective
- SBU defective
- Printer controller defective



TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 005 **08/25/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

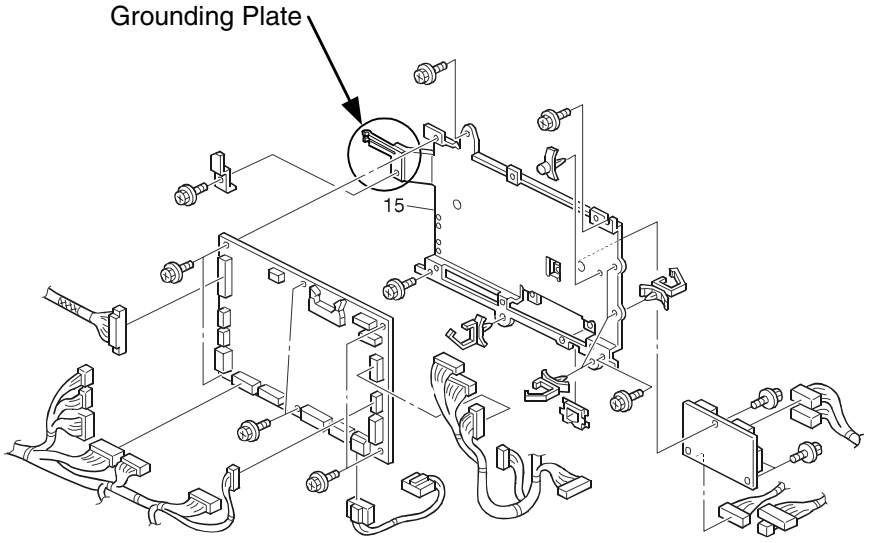
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Bracket – I/O Board –** To ensure proper grounding, a grounding plate has been added to the I/O Board Bracket. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2935850	A2935845	Bracket – I/O Board	1	1	129	15

UNITS AFFECTED:

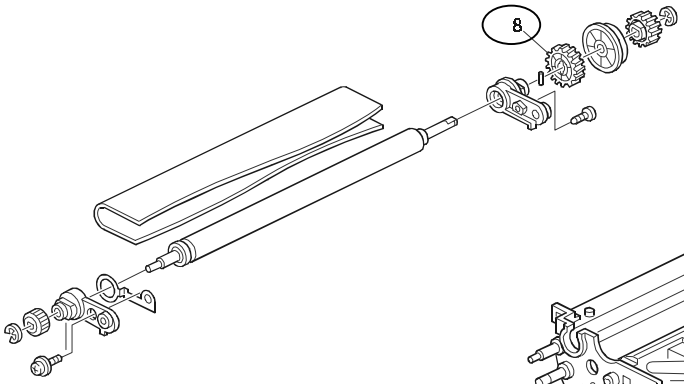
A292/A293 Serial Number cut-ins were not available at time of publication.

Continued…

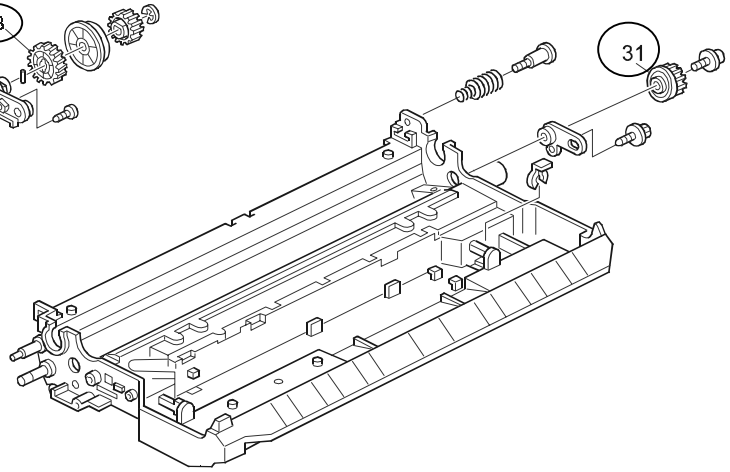
© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **UPDATE 2:** **Cleaning Roller Gears –** To improve uneven density in half tone areas, the number of teeth on the Cleaning Roller Gears have been changed. The Gears must be replaced as a set. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.

Transfer Section 1 - Page 92



Transfer Section 2 - Page 94



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AB014104	AB014175	Cleaning Roller Gear – 50Z	1	3/S	93	8
AB014093	AB014176	Cleaning Roller Gear – 37Z	1	3/S	95	31

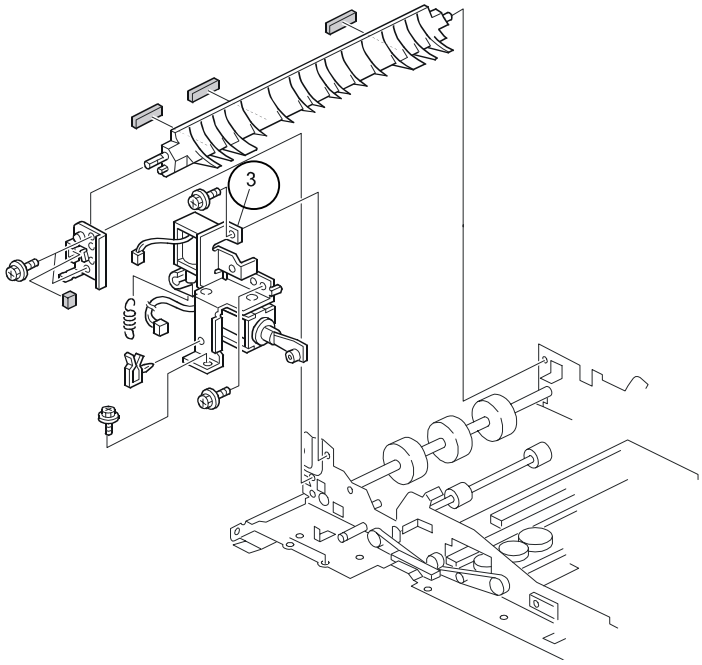
UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-ins were not available at time of publication.

Continued…

- **UPDATE 3:** **DC Solenoid Ass'y –** To prevent "dog ears" when using Legal paper, the Bracket for the DC Solenoid has been modified. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.

Inverter & Duplex Unit 4 – Page 108



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2934781	A2934782	DC Solenoid Ass'y	1	1	109	3

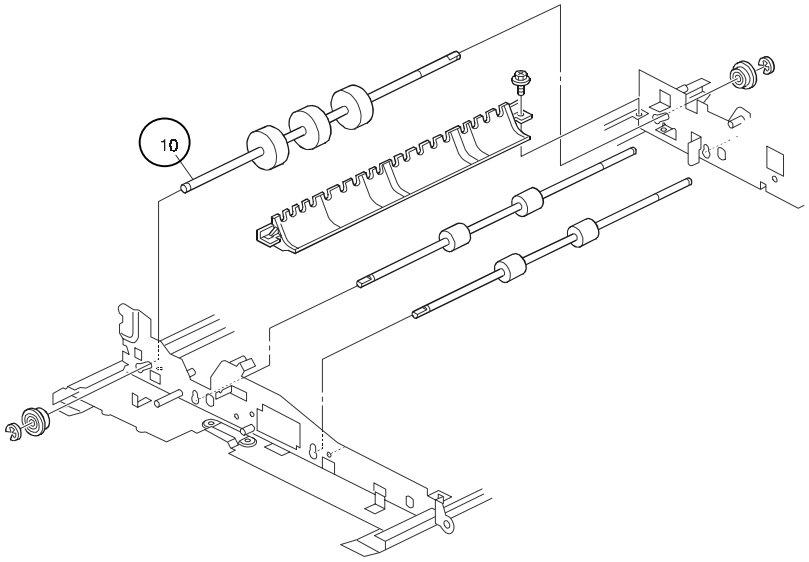
UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-ins were not available at time of publication.

Continued…

- **UPDATE 4:** **Duplex Roller –** To prevent the edges of the copy from being dirty when making a duplex copy, the material of the Duplex Roller has been changed. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.

Inverter & Duplex Unit 5 – Page 110



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AF020498	AF020533	Duplex Roller	1	1	111	10

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-ins were not available at time of publication.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 005 REISSUE ★ **10/18/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

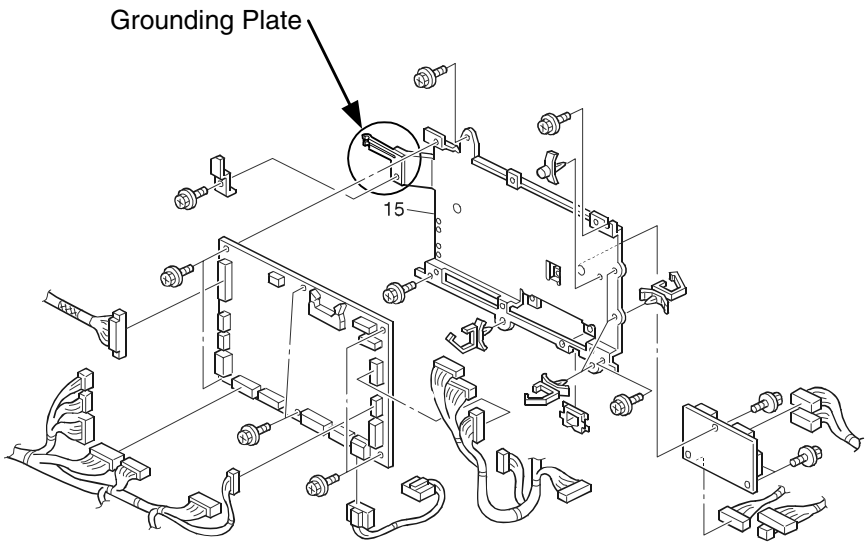
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Bracket – I/O Board –** To ensure proper grounding, a grounding plate has been added to the I/O Board Bracket. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2935850	A2935845	Bracket – I/O Board	1	1	129	15

UNITS AFFECTED:

★ All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Bracket – I/O Board installed during production.

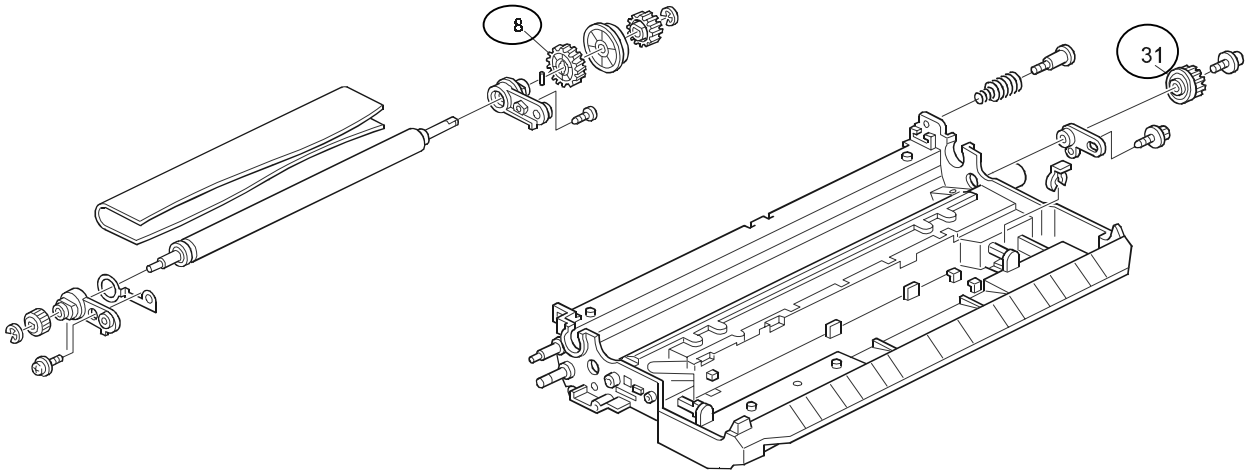
MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705300449
Gestetner 3370	H4805300002
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4705300389
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4805200624
Savin 2055DP	H4705300449
Savin 2070DP	H4805300002

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **UPDATE 2:** **Cleaning Roller Gears –** To improve uneven density in half tone areas, the number of teeth on the Cleaning Roller Gears have been changed. The Gears must be replaced as a set. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.

Transfer Section 1 - Page 92 **Transfer Section 2 - Page 94**



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AB014104	AB014175	Cleaning Roller Gear – 50Z	1	3/S	93	8
AB014093	AB014176	Cleaning Roller Gear – 37Z	1	3/S	95	31

UNITS AFFECTED:

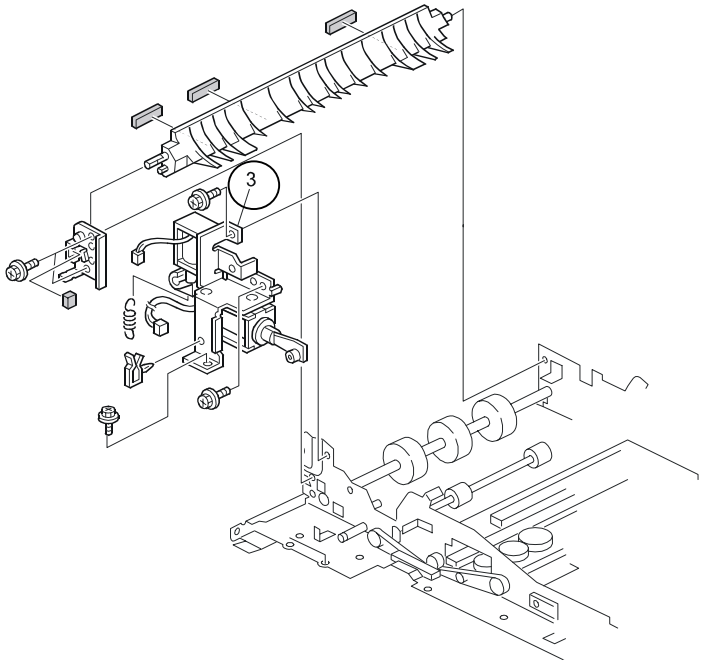
★ All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Cleaning Roller Gears installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705500301
Gestetner 3370	H4805500001
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4705400515
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4805500001
Savin 2055DP	H4705500301
Savin 2070DP	H4805500001

Continued…

- **UPDATE 3:** **DC Solenoid Ass'y –** To prevent "dog ears" when using Legal paper, the Bracket for the DC Solenoid has been modified. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.

Inverter & Duplex Unit 4 – Page 108



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2934781	A2934782	DC Solenoid Ass'y	1	1	109	3

UNITS AFFECTED:

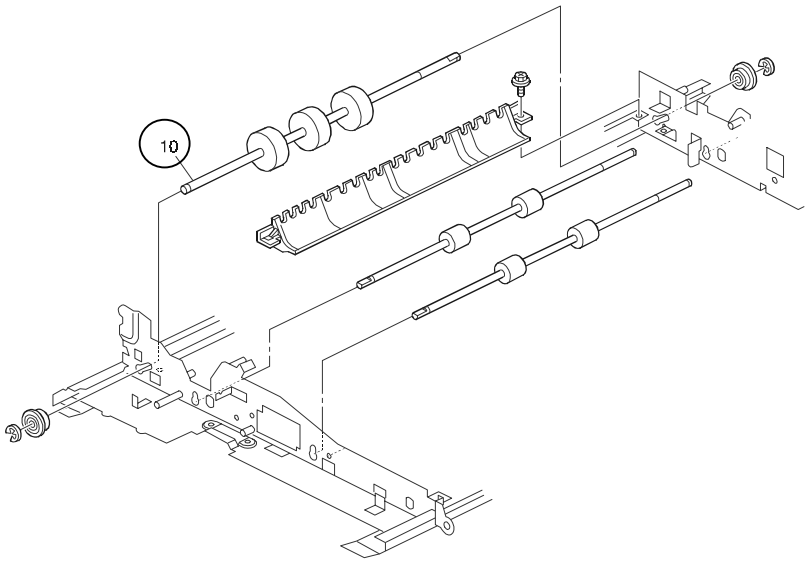
★ All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style DC Solenoid Assembly installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705300393
Gestetner 3370	H4805300002
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4705300001
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4805200623
Savin 2055DP	H4705300393
Savin 2070DP	H4805300002

Continued…

- **UPDATE 4:** **Duplex Roller –** To prevent the edges of the copy from being dirty when making a duplex copy, the material of the Duplex Roller has been changed. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.

Inverter & Duplex Unit 5 – Page 110



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AF020498	AF020533	Duplex Roller	1	1	111	10

UNITS AFFECTED:

★ All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Duplex Roller installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705200160
Gestetner 3370	H4805200255
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4705300001
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4805200578
Savin 2055DP	H4705200160
Savin 2070DP	H4805200255

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 006 **08/25/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

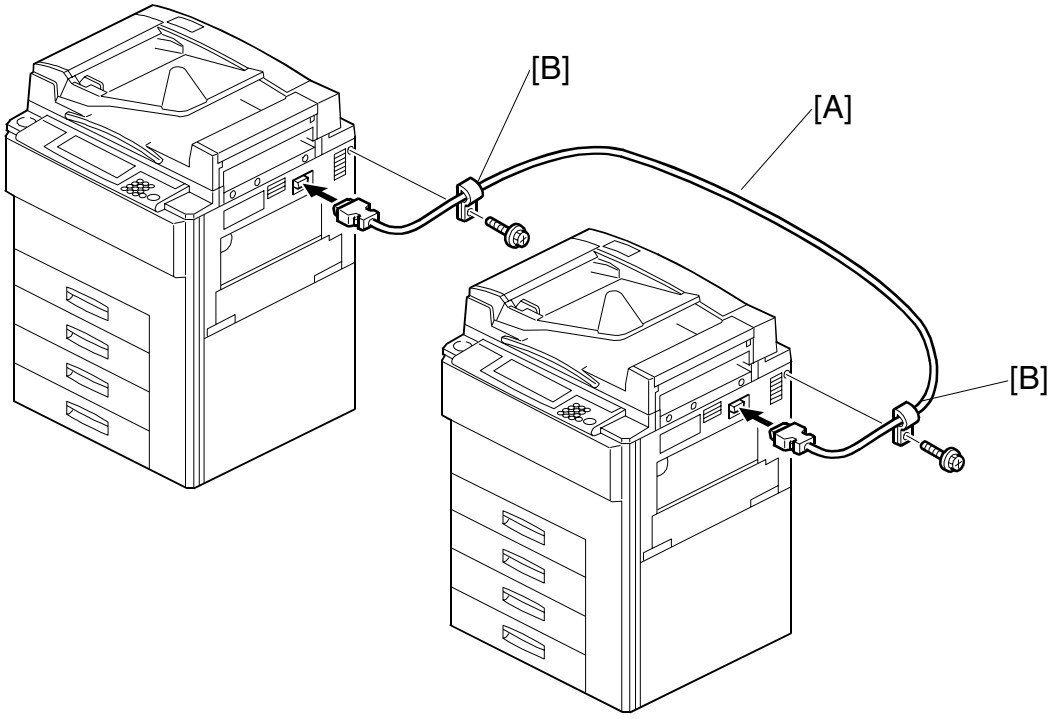
- 3-38 Updated Information (Copy Connector Kit Installation)
- 6-73 through 78 Updated Information (Copy Image Adjustments)

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



■ SERVICE MANUAL

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.



12. Install the other copy connector kit in the other machine.
13. Connect the two machines with the cable [A] and secure it with clamps [B] (1 screw each).
14. Check the operation.

⟹ **NOTE:** To enable the Connect Copy Feature:
1. Select User Tools.
2. Select Copy/Document Server Features
3. Select Count Manager
4. Set Connect Copy Master to YES.

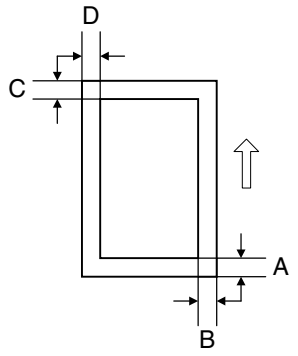
⟹ *Blank Margin*

NOTE: If the leading edge/side-to-side registration can not be adjusted within the specifications, adjust the leading/left side edge blank margin.

1. Check the trailing edge and right side edge blank margins using the Trimming Area Pattern, and adjust them using the following SP modes if necessary.

	SP mode	Specification
Trailing edge	SP2-101-2	More than 1.0 mm
Right edge	SP2-101-4	More than 0.5 mm
Leading edge	SP2-101-1	3 ± 2 mm
Left edge	SP2-101-3	2 ± 1.5 mm

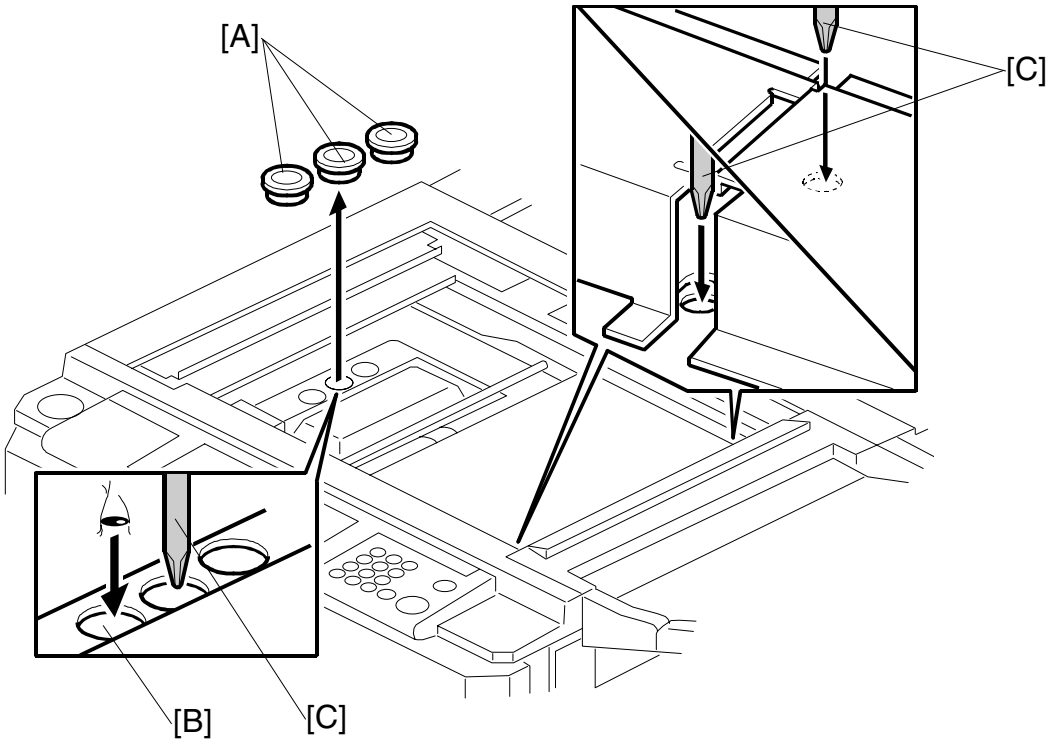
A: Trailing Edge Blank Margin
B: Right Edge Blank Margin
C: Leading Edge Blank Margin
D: Left Edge Blank Margin



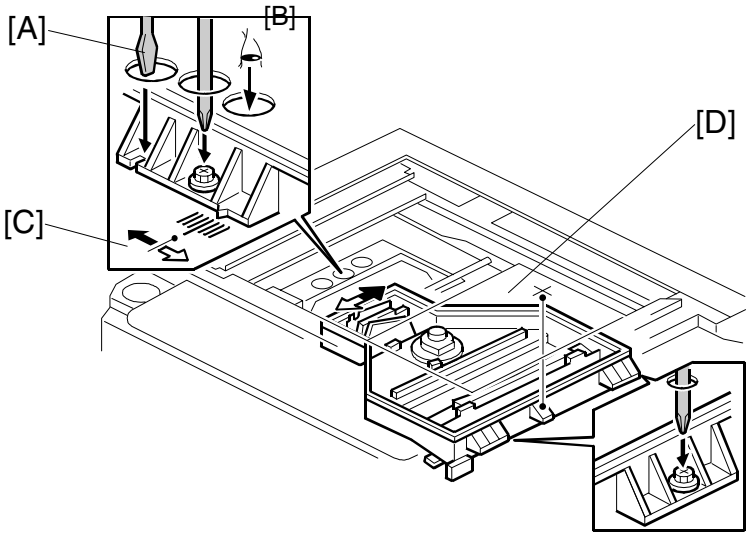
⟹ 6.12.2 PARALLELOGRAM IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

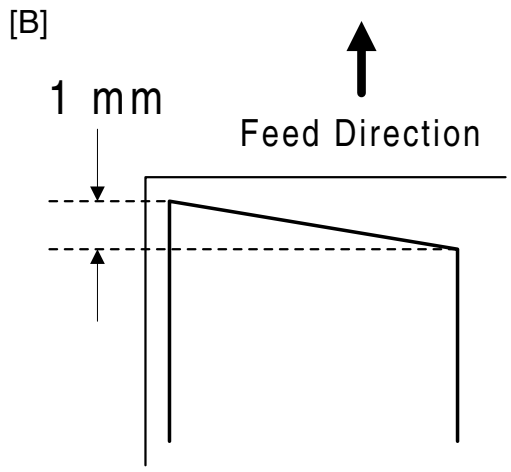
Do the following procedure if a parallelogram type image is printed while using a trimming area pattern to adjust the printing registration or the printing margin.

NOTE: 1) The following procedure should be done after adjusting the side-to-side registration for each paper tray.
2) This adjustment is only effective for a parallelogram image caused by the printer. It should not be applied if the skew is caused by the scanner.



1. Check whether a parallelogram image appears as shown on the next page when printing a trimming area pattern (SP2-902-3, No. 10). If it appears, do the following.
2. Remove the exposure glass (see Replacement and Adjustment – Exposure Glass Removal).
3. Remove the three caps [A].
4. Make a note of the position of the laser unit using the scale through the hole [B].
5. Loosen the three screws [C] that hold the laser unit.





6. Adjust the laser unit position using a flat screwdriver [A] as shown.
   If the right side of the trimming area pattern is down by about 1 mm as shown [B], the laser unit should be rotated about one tick mark in the direction of the black arrow as shown [C]. If the opposite side is down, adjust in the opposite direction.
   NOTE: The laser unit rotates around the point [D].
7. Tighten the three screws to secure the laser unit.
8. Replace the caps and exposure glass.
9. Print the trimming area pattern to check the image. If it is still skewed, repeat steps 2 to 8.

⟹ 6.12.3 SCANNING

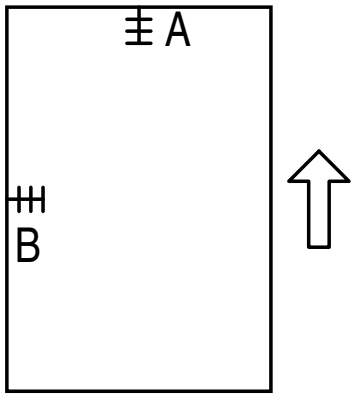
NOTE: 1) Before doing the following scanner adjustments, check the printing registration/side-to-side adjustment and the blank margin adjustment.
2) Use an OS-A3 test chart to perform the following adjustments.

Registration: Platen Mode

1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration, and adjust them using the following SP modes if necessary.

	SP mode
Leading Edge	SP4-010
Side-to-side	SP4-011

A: Leading Edge Registration
B: Side-to-side Registration

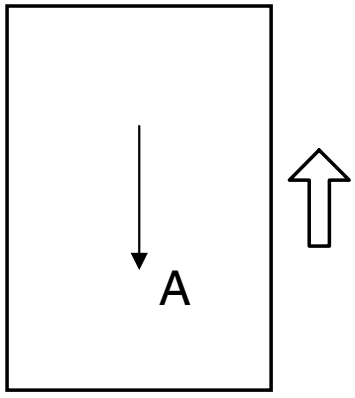


Magnification

NOTE: Use an OS-A3 test chart to perform the following adjustment.

Scanner Sub Scan Magnification

A: Sub Scan Magnification

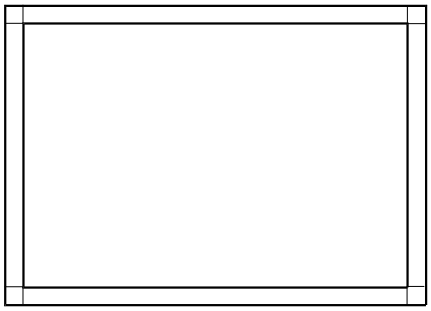


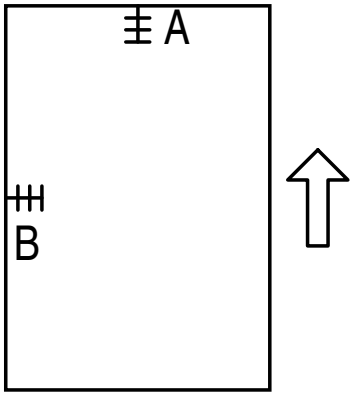
1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio, and adjust it using the following SP mode if necessary. The specification is ±1%.

	SP mode
Scanner Sub Scan Magnification	SP4-008

⟹6.12.4 ADF IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

Registration





A: Leading Edge Registration
B: Side-to-side Registration

NOTE: Make a temporary test chart as shown above left using A3/DLT paper.

1. Place the temporary test chart on the ADF and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the registration, and adjust using the following SP modes if necessary.

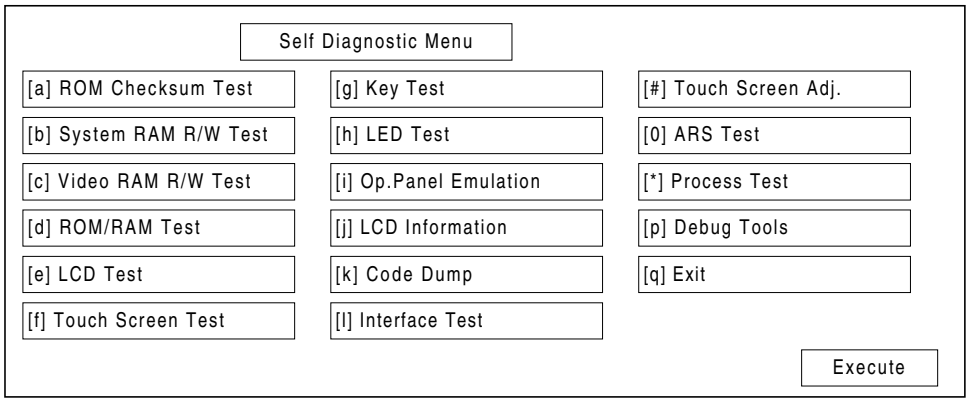
	SP mode
Side-to-side Registration	SP6-006-1
Leading Edge Registration (Thin original mode)	SP6-006-2
Leading Edge Registration (Single-sided/Duplex: front)	SP6-006-3
Leading Edge Registration (Duplex: rear)	SP6-006-4

⇒ 6.13 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION

After doing a memory all clear or when the touch panel detection mechanism is not working properly, calibrate the touch screen as follows.

1. Press the following keys in sequence to enter touch screen calibration mode.

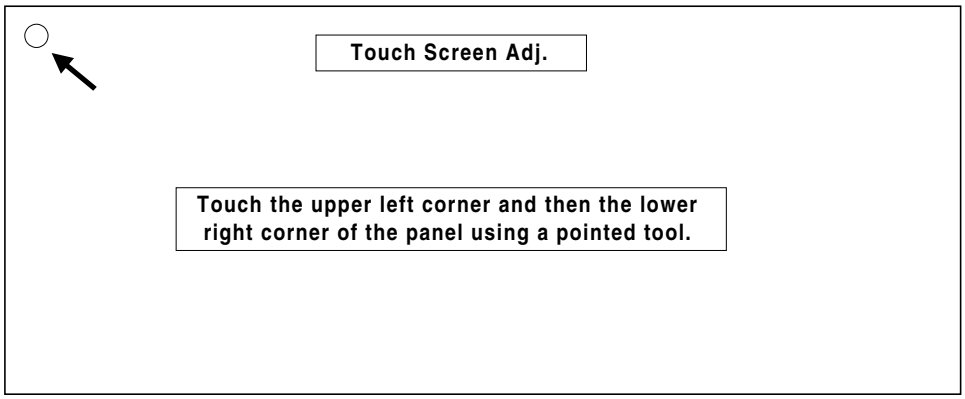
   [⊛/▽] [1] [9] [9] [3] [C/▽] x5 [#]



⚠CAUTION

Do not execute any of the other items in the self diagnostic menu.

2. The “Self Diagnostics Menu” screen will appear.
   Press the # key to select the “Touch Screen Adj.” Mode.



3. The “Touch Screen Adj.” calibration screen will appear. Touch the upper left corner then the lower right corner of the panel using a pointed (but not sharp!) tool.
4. Touch a few spots on the LCD touch panel, and confirm that the marker (a small circle) appears on the screen at exactly the same location as where it is touched. If it does not, touch “Cancel” on the adjustment screen. Then repeat the calibration procedure.
5. Touch “Ok” on the adjustment screen.
6. Touch “[q] Exit” and “Execute” to exit the self diagnostics menu.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 007 **09/13/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT



SERVICE MANUAL

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 4-96 and 97 Updated Information (Test Points/Dip Switches/LEDs)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.5.4 VARIABLE RESISTORS

ADF Main Board

Number	Function
VR100	Adjusts the original stop position for the single-sided original at no skew correction mode.
VR101	Adjusts the original stop position for the double-sided original.

4.5.5 LEDS

BICU

Number	Monitored Signal
LED101	Blinking : Normal Stays on or off : CPU defective
LED103	Turns on when the main power switch on.
LED104	Blinking : Normal Stays on or off : HDD abnormal

Paper Feed Board

Number	Monitored Signal
LED101	Turns on 500ms interval : Normal (software) Turns on 200ms interval : Software error Stays on of off : Paper feed board defective

ADF Main Board ❍: ON ☆: Blinking

⇒

LED100	LED101	LED102	
❍	—	—	Entrance Sensor Jam
—	❍	—	Registration Sensor Jam
❍	❍	—	Exit Sensor Jam
—	—	❍	Inverter Sensor Jam
❍	—	❍	Jammed paper not removed: Between entrance sensor + registration sensor
❍	❍	❍	Jammed paper not removed: On the exposure glass
☆	—	—	Feed-in Motor Abnormal
—	☆	—	Transport Motor Abnormal
—	—	☆	Feed-out Motor Abnormal
☆	☆	—	Pick-up Motor Abnormal
—	☆	☆	Bottom Plate Motor Abnormal
☆	☆	☆	DF Position (Open)
☆	—	☆	APS Sensor ON
☆	—	—	Normal

⇒4.6 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

4.6.1 SPECIAL TOOLS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A2309352	Flash Memory Card – 4MB	1
A2309351	Case – Flash Memory Card	1
A0069104	Scanner Positioning Pin (4 pcs/set)	1
54209516	Test Chart – OS-A3 (10 pcs/Set)	1
A0299387	Digital Multimeter – FLUKE 87	1

4.6.2 LUBRICANTS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A0289300	Grease Barrierta JFE 5 5/2	1
52039502	Silicone Grease G-501	1
G0049668	Grease: KS660: SHIN ETSU	1

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 008 **09/18/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT



■ SERVICE MANUAL

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

• vi and viii	Updated Information (Table of Contents)
• 4-98 through 100	New Information (Firmware History)
• 7-34 through 51	Updated Information (Service Call Conditions)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

6.11 BOARDS AND OTHER ITEMS 6-67
6.11.1 BICU BOARD 6-67
6.11.2 I/O BOARD 6-68
6.11.3 PSU 6-69
6.11.4 PAPER FEED CONTROL BOARD (PFC) 6-69
6.12 COPY IMAGE ADJUSTMENTS: PRINTING/SCANNING.....6-70
6.12.1 PRINTING.....6-70
Registration - Leading Edge 6-70
Registration – Side-to-Side 6-70
Tray 1.....6-71
Tray 2.....6-71
Tray 3.....6-72
By-pass Tray.....6-72
6.13 TOUCH SCREEN CALIBRATION 6-73

TROUBLESHOOTING

7. TROUBLESHOOTING 7-1
7.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS 7-1
7.1.1 SUMMARY 7-1
7.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS 7-2
7.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS.....7-40
7.2.1 SENSORS 7-40
7.2.2 SWITCHES.....7-44
7.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS 7-45

3,000-SHEET FINISHER B302

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION 8-1
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....8-1
1.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT.....8-3
1.3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DESCRIPTION.....8-4
1.4 DRIVE LAYOUT 8-6

2. DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS 8-7
2.1 TRAY AND STAPLER JUNCTION GATE 8-7
Upper Tray Mode.....8-7
Sort/Stack Mode 8-7
Staple Mode.....8-7
2.2 PAPER PRE-STACKING.....8-8
2.3 JOGGER UNIT PAPER POSITIONING.....8-9
Vertical Paper Alignment 8-9
Horizontal Paper Alignment 8-9
Paper Stack Correction.....8-9

⇒ 4.7 FIRMWARE HISTORY

4.7.1 A292/A293 FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
Initial Production	A2937553 **B**	Initial Production	3.0
Note: 1) The LCDC ROM A2935203C is required for BICU firmware version 3.1 (A2937564, A2937565 and A2937566). 2) Version 3.1 requires the printer controller. **1. Language** The following items have been changed from English to the language selected: 1) Stamp Setting Note: For Portuguese and Polish, the Stamp setting is still displayed in English. The correction for this will be included in the next software update. **2)** Language Priority button **2. A3/DLT Double Count corrected for Copy counter and Printer counter** When making A3/DLT copies, the Copy and Printer Counters do not count up by 2, even if A3/DLT Double Count has been set. **Note**: The Total Counter correctly counts up by 2. **3. Key counter in connect copy mode**. When the key counter is removed from the machine during a copy job in connect copy mode, both copiers will stop and display “paper jam”. **4. Slip-Sheet Mode** It is possible to select “Copy” or “Blank” from the operation panel in Slip-Sheet Mode.	A2937553 **C**	Not Available	3.1

Continue …

⇒

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
5. Mailbox Software modified so that the correct picture indicator is displayed when the mailbox door is open. **Note:** Incorrect indicator was displayed when the Mailbox was the only option installed. **6. Conditions for reverse drum rotation** To reduce the load on the units around the drum, the cycle for reverse drum rotation has been changed as follows: New: The drum is turned in reverse at the end of a copy job if the cumulative running time for the drum has reached or exceeded 4 minutes. Old: The drum turns in reverse at the end of every copy job. **7. New SP Mode for B302 Finisher: SP6119** SP6119 has been added to enable the punch function for Thick Paper Mode. **Note:** 1. Before enabling SP6119, please be sure that the customer is aware of the specific range of paper weights that can be used with this mode. **2.** Do not enable this mode if the customer is using OHP transparencies.			

Mode No.	Function			Setting
6119	Punch Function Enabled (Thick Paper)			
		*	Selects whether the punch function is enabled or not in thick paper mode.	**No: Disable** Yes: Enable

8. 8K/16K Paper Size (China/Taiwan) 8K/16K paper size can be fed from Trays 2 and 3 by selecting **3:CH** in SP5131 "Paper Size Type Selection". Note: The factory default for SP5131 is 3:CH in models for China and Taiwan.			

Mode No.	Function			Setting
	Paper Size Type Selection			
		*	Refer to service manual.	0: JP **1: NA** **2: EU** **3: CH**

Continue …

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
9. New SP Mode added to enable Margin Per Original function (SP5924) The settings for this mode are as follows:			

Mode No.		Function			Setting
5924	Margin Per Original				
	1	Margin Per Original	*	Selects whether or not Margin Per Original is enabled. **No** : Images are shifted with a binding margin during image writing. **Yes**: The margin is applied during scanning. **NOTE**: *After **Yes** has been selected, the "per original" key is displayed. This key must be pressed to activate the mode.*	**No** Yes
	2	Per Original Priority	*	Selects whether or not Margin Per Original is enabled as default. This setting is given priority over 5924-1.	**On** Off

NOTE: 1) When this mode is enabled, the ADF feed interval is longer.
2) Although it is possible to "adjust" the margins on the operation panel for Sample Copies, the adjustment itself is not applied to the samples.
3) The following modes cannot be used with Margin Per Original: Booklet, Magazine, Combine, Double copy, Image repeat.

SC736: Finisher paper exit guide plate motor error

-Definition- [B]

It occurs 2 times consecutively that the paper exit guide plate HP sensor is not activated within 750 ms after the paper exit guide plate motor starts.

-Possible cause-

- Paper exit guide plate sensor defective or poor connection
- Paper exit guide plate motor defective
- Finisher main board defective
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

SC737: Finisher staple waste full

-Definition- [A]

The box for staple waste becomes full.

-Possible cause-

- Box is full of staple waste
- Staple waste sensor defective

SC738: Finisher shift tray lift motor error

-Definition- [B]

It occurs 2 times consecutively that;

1) The stack height sensor is not activated within 50 seconds after the motor starts lifting the tray.
2) The stack height sensor is still activated 5 seconds after the motor starts lowering the tray.

-Possible cause-

- Stack height sensor defective or poor connection
- Shift tray lift motor defective
- Finisher main board defective
- Too much load on the drive mechanism

⟹ SC740: 1,000-sheet finisher error in finisher area

- Definition – [B]

Note: When this SC is displayed, check SP7-902 (SC detail). The first 2 digits indicate the type of error.

Example: 740 **01**00000000000000

⇒

01: Shutter movement error

1) The shutter position switch does not turn on within 1 s after the transport motor starts to turn in reverse.
2) The shutter sensor does not deactivate within 1 s after the transport motor starts to turn in reverse.
3) The shutter position switch is off when the shift tray safety switch is off.

- Possible causes -

- Transport motor defective
- Shutter position switch defective
- Shift tray safety switch defective

02: Exit motor error

1) After the exit motor turns on, the exit motor sensor does not send the proper signal to the finisher board.
2) The exit motor sensor does not send the clock signal to the finisher board for certain period while the exit motor is on.

- Possible causes -

- Exit motor defective
- Exit motor sensor defective

03: Upper exit plate movement error

1) The upper exit guide 2 switch does not turn on within 1s after the guide plate motor turns on.
2) The upper exit guide sensor does not activate within 1s after the guide plate motor turns on.
3) The upper exit guide 2 switch does not turn on when the shift tray safety switch is off.

- Possible causes -

- Guide plate motor defective
- Upper exit guide 2 switch defective
- Upper exit guide sensor defective
- Shift tray safety switch defective

⇒

04: Jogger motor error

1) After the jogger motor turns on to move the jogger fence from its home position, the jogger HP sensor does not deactivate within 2s.
2) After the jogger motor turns on to return the jogger fence to its home position, the jogger HP sensor does not activate within 2s.

- Possible causes -

- Jogger motor defective
- Jogger HP sensor defective

05: Stapler motor error

1) After the stapler motor turns on to move the stapler unit from its home position, the stapler unit HP sensor does not deactivate within 4s.
2) After the stapler motor turns on to return the stapler unit to its home position, the stapler unit HP sensor does not activate within 4s.

- Possible causes -

- Stapler motor defective
- Stapler unit HP sensor defective

06: Staple hammer motor error

1) The staple hammer HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.5s after the staple hammer motor turns on.
2) The staple hammer HP sensor does not activate within 0.5s after the staple hammer motor turns on.

- Possible causes -

- Staple hammer motor defective
- Staple hammer HP sensor defective

⇒

07: Tray lift motor error

1) The tray lift motor does not stop within 15s after being turned on.
2) The shift tray HP sensor does not activate within 15s after the tray lift motor turns on.
3) The shift tray upper limit switch turns on while the shift tray is being raised.
4) Lift motor sensors 1 & 2 do not send the clock signals to the finisher board every 200ms while the tray lift motor is on.

- Possible causes -

- Tray lift motor defective
- Lift motor sensor 1 defective
- Lift motor sensor 2 defective
- Shift tray HP sensor defective
- Shift tray upper limit switch defective

08: Shift tray height sensor error

1) Abnormal communication data between finisher board and shift tray height sensor.
2) No communication between finisher board and shift tray height sensor for a certain period.
3) The finisher board detects a connection error with the connector for the shift tray height sensor.
4) Adjustment error during shift tray height sensor adjustment.

- Possible causes -

- Shift tray height sensor defective
- Finisher board defective

09: Back-up RAM error

The check sum is abnormal when the main switch is turned on.

- Possible causes -

- Finisher board defective

⇒ **0A: Communication error**

Communication error between finisher board and booklet unit board.

- Possible causes -

- Finisher board defective
- Booklet unit board defective
- Poor connection of the interface harness

⇒ **SC741: 1,000-sheet finisher error in saddle stitching area**

- Definition – [B]

Note: When this SC is displayed, check SP7-902 (SC detail). The first 2 digits indicate the type of error.

Example: 741 **01**00000000000000

01: Positioning plate motor error

1) After the positioning plate motor turns on to move the positioning plate from its home position, the positioning plate HP sensor does not deactivate within 1.25s.
2) After the positioning plate motor turns on to return the positioning plate to its home position, the positioning plate HP sensor does activate within 1s.

- Possible causes -

- Positioning plate motor defective
- Positioning plate HP sensor defective

02: Folder roller motor error

1) The folder roller motor sensor doesn't send the clock pulse to the booklet unit board within a certain period after the folder roller motor turns on.

- Possible causes -

- Folder roller motor defective
- Folder roller motor sensor defective

⇒

03: Shutter guide motor error

1) After the shutter guide motor turns on to move the shutter guide from its home position, the shutter guide HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.4s.
2) After the shutter guide motor turns on to return the shutter guide to its home position, the shutter guide HP sensor does not activate within 1s.

- Possible causes -

- Shutter guide motor defective
- Shutter guide HP sensor defective

04: Booklet jogger motor error

1) After the booklet jogger motor turns on to move the booklet jogger plate from its home position, the booklet jogger HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.5s.
2) After the booklet jogger motor turns on to return the booklet jogger plate to its home position, the booklet jogger HP sensor does not activate within 1s.

- Possible causes -

- Booklet jogger motor defective
- Booklet jogger HP sensor defective

05: Stapler motor error

1) The front staple hammer HP switch does not turn off within 0.5s after the front stapler motor turns on.
2) The front staple hammer HP switch does not turn on within 0.5s after the front stapler motor turns on during jam recovery.
3) The rear staple hammer HP switch does not turn off within 0.5s after the rear stapler motor turns on.
4) The rear staple hammer HP switch does not turn on within 0.5s after the rear stapler motor turns on during jam recovery.

- Possible causes -

- Front stapler motor defective
- Front staple hammer HP switch defective
- Rear stapler motor defective
- Rear staple hammer HP switch defective

⇒

06: Folder plate motor error

1) After the folder plate motor turns on to return the folder plate to its home position, the folder plate HP sensor does not activate within 0.3s.
2) After the folder plate motor turns on to move the folder plate from its home position, the folder plate HP sensor does not deactivate within 0.3s.
3) After the folder plate motor turns on to return the folder plate to its home position, the folder plate return sensor does not deactivate within 0.3s.
4) The folder plate return sensor does not activate within 0.3s after the HP sensor deactivates.
5) The pulse count from the folder plate motor sensor is lower than the target minimum.

- Possible causes -

- Folder plate motor defective
- Folder plate HP sensor defective
- Folder plate return sensor defective
- Folder plate motor sensor defective

07: Connector error

1) The connector of the shutter guide HP sensor is not connected.
2) The connector of the folder plate HP sensor is not connected.
3) The connector of the folder plate return sensor is not connected.

- Possible causes -

- Poor connection or no connection of the shutter guide HP sensor connector
- Poor connection or no connection of the folder plate HP sensor connector
- Poor connection or no connection of the folder plate return sensor connector

⇒

08: Switch error

1) When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the booklet entrance guide safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.
2) When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the lower door safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.
3) When the booklet entrance guide sensor, lower door sensor and booklet exit cover sensor are all activated (doors closed), the booklet exit cover safety switch does not turn on within 1s after a copy job or warm-up idling begins.

- Possible causes -

- Booklet entrance guide safety switch defective
- Lower door safety switch defective
- Booklet exit cover safety switch defective

SC900: Electrical total counter error

-Definition- [A]

The total counter contains something that is not a number.

- Possible causes -

- NVRAM defective

SC901: Mechanical total counter error

-Definition- [B]

The mechanical counter is not connected.

-Possible cause-

- Mechanical total counter defective
- Mechanical total counter connector not connected

SC951: F-gate signal error 2

-Definition- [B']

When the IPU has already received the F-gate signal (laser writing start trigger signal), the IPU receives another F-gate signal.

- Possible causes -

- SBICU defective

⟹ **SC953: Scanner image setting error**

-Definition- [B']

The settings that are required for image processing using the scanner are not sent from the IPU.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC954: Printer image setting error

-Definition- [B']

The settings that are required for image processing using the printer controller are not sent from the IPU.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC955: Memory setting error

-Definition- [B']

The settings that are required for image processing using the memory are not sent from the IPU.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC956: Scanner setting ID error

-Definition- [B]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for scanner parameter setting is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC957: Scanner return ID error

-Definition- [B]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the scanner return signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

⇒

SC958: Scanner ready ID error

-Definition- [B]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the scanner ready signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC959: Printer setting ID error

-Definition- [B]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the printer setting signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC960: Printer return ID error

-Definition- [B]

The ID that is sent from the IPU for the printer return signal is different from expected.

-Possible cause-

- Software error

SC961: Printer ready ID error

-Definition- [B']

The ID that is sent from the printer controller in the printer controller printing ready condition is incorrect.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC962: Memory setting ID error

-Definition- [B']

The ID that is sent from the memory when the IPU sent the memory ready signal is incorrect.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

⇒

SC963: Memory finishing ID error

-Definition- [B']

The ID that is sent from the memory when the IPU sent the memory finish signal is incorrect.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC964: Printer ready error

-Definition- [B']

The print ready signal is not generated for more than 17 seconds after the IPU received the print start signal.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

SC970: Scanner ready error

-Definition- [B']

The MCU does not send the ready signal for 10 seconds after the scanning start command is sent to the MCU.

-Possible cause-

- Communication error between BICU and MCU
- MCU software defective
- Buffer is full

SC980: HDD access error

-Definition- [B]

Incorrect parameter is sent from the BICU to the HDD controller.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective
- BICU defective

SC982: HDD construction error

-Definition- [B']

A HDD that does not have the correct specifications has been installed.

- Possible causes -

- Insufficient memory
- Incorrect hard disk type

⇒

SC984: HDD response error

-Definition- [B']

The HDD controller does not generate any response when the BICU sends a read/write signal to the HDD controller.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective
- HDD defective or poor connection

SC990: Software performance error

-Definition- [B']

The software performs an unexpected function.

- Possible causes -

- Software defective

NOTE: When this SC occurs, the file name, address, and data will be stored in the NVRAM. This data can be checked by entering SP mode then pressing "0".

Note the above data and the situation in which this SC occurs. Then report the data and conditions to your technical control center.

⇒ 7.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

7.2.1 SENSORS

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Scanner Home Position (S1)	CN555-2 (MCU)	Stays On	SC121 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC120 is displayed.
Original Width (S2)	CN555-6, 7, 8 (MCU)	Stays On	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Stays Off	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
Original Length-1 (S3)	CN555-11 (MCU)	Stays On	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Stays Off	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
Original Length-2 (S4)	CN555-14 (MCU)	Stays On	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
		Stays Off	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and ARE do not function correctly.
LD Unit Home Position (S5)	CN202-8 (IOB)	Stays On	SC328 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed.
		Stays Off	SC327 is displayed when the laser beam pitch is changed.
Drum Potential Sensor (S6)	CN206-A12 (IOB)	Open	The machine quits auto process control and enters fixed toner supply mode.
		Shorted	
Toner Density (TD) (S7)	CN211-B9 (IOB)	Stays On	SC340 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC340 is displayed.
Image Density (ID) (S8)	CN206-B11 (IOB)	Open	SC352 is displayed after copying.
		Shorted	SC350 is displayed after copying.
Toner End (S9)	CN211-B5 (IOB)	Open	“Toner End” is displayed even if there is enough toner in the toner hopper.
		Shorted	“Toner End” is not displayed even if there is no toner in the toner hopper.
Toner Collection Motor (S10)	CN270-7 (PFB)	Stays On	SC495 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC495 is displayed.
Toner Recycling (S11)	CN207-B2 (IOB)	Stays On	SC495 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC495 is displayed.
1st Paper Feed (S12)	CN271-2 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
2nd Paper Feed (S13)	CN273-A2 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
3rd Paper Feed (S14)	CN273-B2 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
1st Tray Lift (S15)	C271-8 (PFB)	Stays On	SC501 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC501 is displayed.
2nd Tray Lift (S16)	CN273-A8 (PFB)	Stays On	SC502 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC502 is displayed.
3rd Tray Lift (S17)	CN273-B8 (PFB)	Stays On	SC503 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC503 is displayed.
1st Paper End (S18)	CN271-5 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper End” is displayed even if there is paper in the 1st paper tray.
		Stays Off	“Paper End” is not displayed even if there is no paper in the 1st paper tray.
2nd Paper End (S19)	CN273-A5 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper End” is displayed even if there is paper in the 2nd tray.
		Stays Off	“Paper End” is not displayed even if there is no paper in the 2nd tray.
3rd Paper End (S20)	CN273-B5 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper End” is displayed even if there is paper in the 3rd tray.
		Stays Off	“Paper End” is not displayed even if there is no paper in the 3rd tray.
By-pass Paper End (S21)	CN211-A5 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper End” is displayed even if there is paper in the by-pass tray.
		Stays Off	“Paper End” is not displayed even if there is no paper in the by-pass tray.
1st Paper Near End (S22)	CN265-B6 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper Near End” is not displayed even if the tray is almost empty.
		Stays Off	“Paper Near End” is displayed even if there is enough paper in the paper tray.
2nd Paper Near End (S23)	CN263-2 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper Near End” is not displayed even if the tray is almost empty.
		Stays Off	“Paper Near End” is displayed even if there is enough paper in the paper tray.
3rd Paper Near End (S24)	CN263-7 (PFB)	Stays On	“Paper Near End” is not displayed even if the tray is almost empty.
		Stays Off	“Paper Near End” is displayed even if there is enough paper in the paper tray.
Rear Fence HP (S25)	CN266-5 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC515 is displayed.

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Rear Fence Return (S26)	CN266-9 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC515 is displayed.
Front Side Fence Open (S27)	CN265-A3 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display.
		Stays Off	SC515 may display.
Front Side Fence Close (S28)	CN265-A6 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display.
		Stays Off	SC515 may display.
Rear Side Fence Open (S29)	CN265-A9 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display.
		Stays Off	SC515 may display
Rear Side Fence Close (S30)	CN265-A12 (PFB)	Stays On	SC515 may display
		Stays Off	SC515 may display
Right Tray Down (S31)	CN265-B3 (PFB)	Stays On	The bottom plate is not lowered when paper on the left tray shift to the right tray, and paper is set in the improper position. When the main switch turn on, no paper is indicated on the display even if there is paper on the right tray.
		Stays Off	The bottom plate lift lower locks at the lowest position.
Right Tray Paper (S32)	CN265-B9 (PFB)	Stays On	The bottom plate rises and falls even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	The bottom plate close not rise even if there is paper on the tray.
Left Tandem Tray Paper (S33)	CN266-11 (PFB)	Stays On	The rear fence moves back and forth continuously.
		Stays Off	The paper on the left tray is not moved to the right tray. No paper is indicated event if there is paper on the left tray.
Duplex Entrance (S34)	CN208-B14 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Duplex Inverter (S35)	CN208-B17 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Duplex Transport 1 (S36)	CN208-B5 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
Duplex Transport 2 (S37)	CN208-B8 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Duplex Transport 3 (S38)	CN208-B11 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
Duplex Jogger HP (S39)	CN208-B2 (IOB)	Stays On	SC521 is displayed.
		Stays Off	SC520 is displayed.
Relay (S40)	CN211-A8 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Registration (S41)	CN211-A1 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
Guide Plate Position (S42)	CN209-6 (IOB)	Stays On	A paper jam will occur when the guide plate is opened.
		Stays Off	“Guide Plate Close” is displayed after the front door is closed even if the guide plate is closed.
Fusing Exit (S43)	CN207-B8 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
1st Exit (S44)	CN204-B2 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
2nd Exit (S45)	CN204-B5 (IOB)	Stays On	“Paper Jam” is displayed whenever a copy is made.
		Stays Off	“Paper Jam” is displayed even if there is no paper.
Tray Paper Limit (S46) (Option)	CN204-B8 (IOB)	Stays On	Paper jams may occur.
		Stays Off	“Paper Full on Exit Tray” is displayed.

⇒ 7.2.2 SWITCHES

Component (Symbol)	Connector No.	Condition	Symptom
Main Power (SW1)	CN101-1, 2 CN111-1, 2	Open	The machine does not turn on.
		Shorted	The machine does not turn off.
Front Door Safety (SW3,5)	CN403-1, 3 (LDU)	Open	SC322 is displayed.
		Shorted	-
Front Door Safety (SW4)	CN152-3, 6, 7 (CNB)	Stays On	"Close the Door" is displayed even if the front cover is closed. SC440, 441, or 531 is displayed.
		Stays Off	"Close the Door" is not displayed even if the front cover is opened.
Lower Front Door Safety (SW6)	CN268-1 (PFB)	Open	SC506 is displayed.
		Shorted	-
Toner Collection Bottle Set (SW7)	CN268-10 (PFB) CN270-10	Open	SC 496 is displayed.
		Shorted	No caution is displayed on the operation panel even if the toner collection bottle is set incorrectly.
Toner Overflow (SW8)	CN270-12 (PFB)	Open	"Full Used Toner Bottle" is displayed even if the toner collection bottle is not full.
		Shorted	"Full Used Toner Bottle" is not displayed even if the toner collection bottle is full.
Paper Size (SW9)	CN262-8,9,10,11,12 (PFB)	Open	The CPU cannot detect the proper paper size, and misfeeds may occur when a copy is made.
		Shorted	

⇒ 7.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

Fuse	Rating		Symptom when turning on the main power switch
	115V	210 ~ 230V	
Power Supply Board			
FU101	12A/250V	6.3A/250V	No response
FU102	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	Nothing is displayed on LCD.
FU103	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC101 is displayed.
FU104	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	The ADF does not work.
FU105	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC520 is displayed.
FU106	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC530 is displayed after the start key is pressed.
FU107	6.3A/125V	6.3A/125V	SC542 is displayed.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 009 **09/20/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

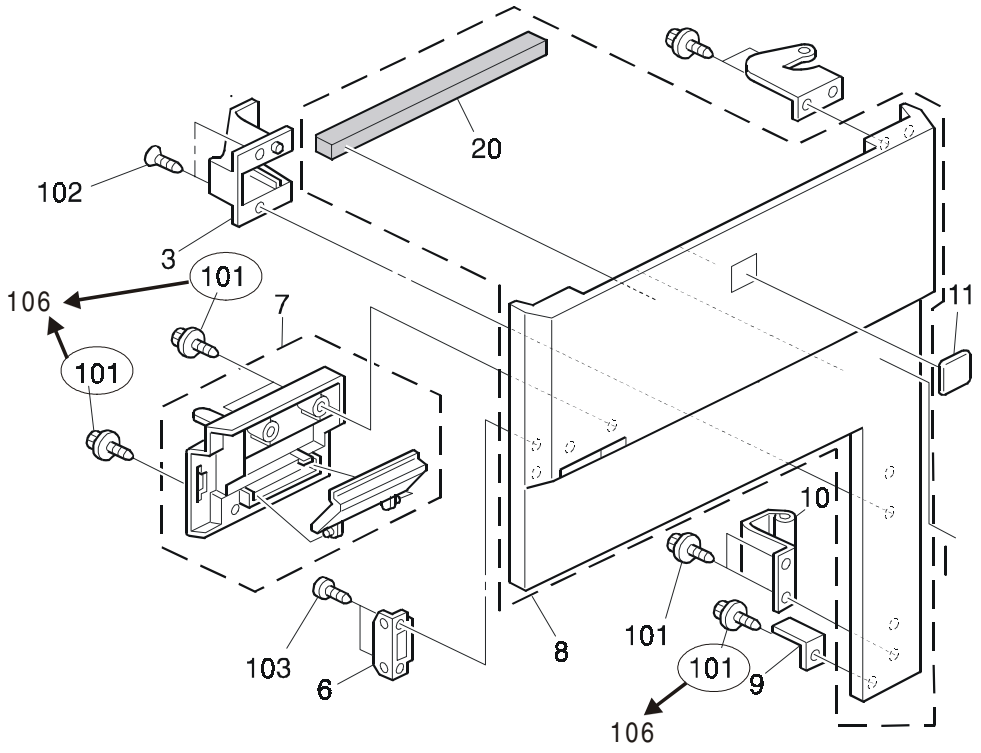
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Tapping Screws –** Correct the illustration as shown below. Please update your parts catalogs with the following information.



				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
04340080	04340082W	Tapping Screw – M4x8	-	15	103
---	04503008B	Tapping Screw – M3x8	-	15	106

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

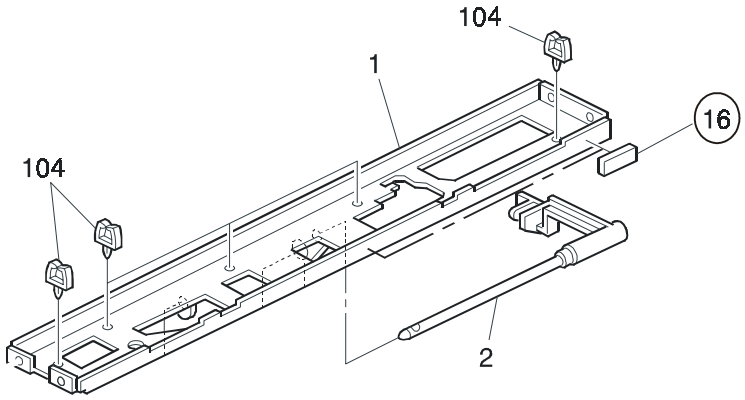
- **UPDATE 2:** **Philips Pan Head Screw – M3x6 –** Please update your parts catalogs with the following information.

				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
03530060B		Philips Pan Head Screw - M3x6	-	33	103
	03530030B	Philips Truss Head Screw - M3x3	-		

- **UPDATE 3:** **Cushion – 0.5 –** Please update your parts catalogs with the following information.

				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
54421924		Exposure Glass Cushion	2	41	16
	AA161137	Cushion – 0.5			

- **UPDATE 4:** **Exposure Glass Cushion –** Please update your parts catalogs with the following information.

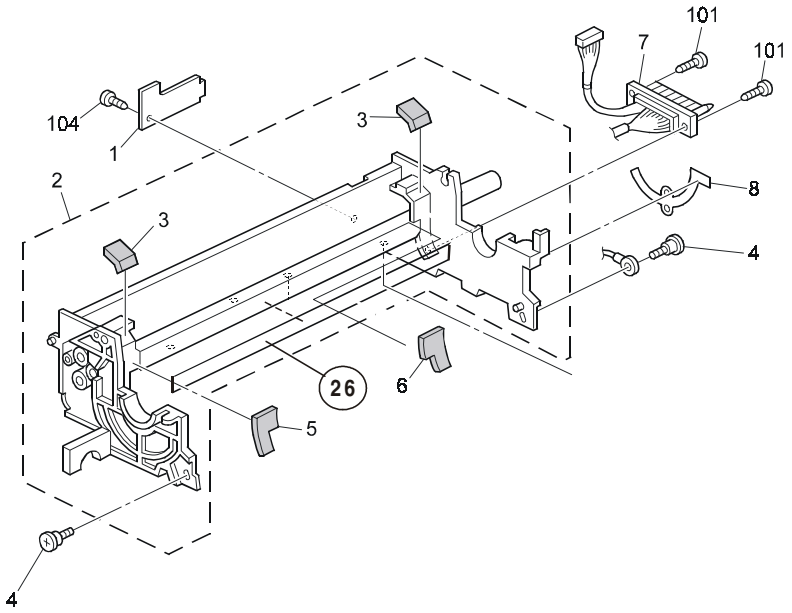


			REFERENCE	
PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
54421924	Exposure Glass Cushion	2	65	16 *

* Denotes new item number.

Continued…

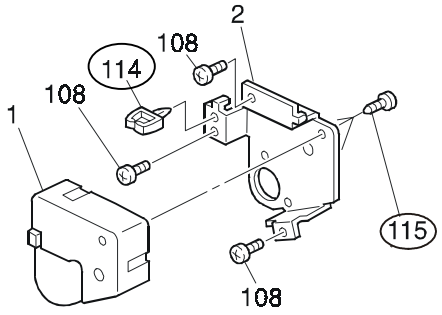
- **UPDATE 5:** **Cleaning Entrance Seal – 3x345x2–** Please update your parts catalogs with the following information.



			REFERENCE	
PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AA153088	Cleaning Entrance Seal – 3x345x2	1	91	26 *

* Denotes new item number.

- **UPDATE 6:** **Tapping Bind Screw – M4x12 & Clamp–**. Items 114 and 115 were omitted from the parts listing. Please update your parts catalogs with the following information



			REFERENCE	
PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
11050199	Clamp	-	127	114
04140120B	Tapping Bind Screw – M4x12	-	127	115

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 010 **10/05/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

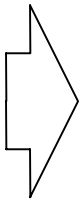
GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **NV-RAM Minus Counter –** The NV-RAM Minus Counter (P/N A2939099) (Counter = 9990000) has been registered as a service part in place of IC-SRAM M48Z128Y-85PM (P/N 14075050). The table for the BICU Board has been changed as shown in the tables below. Please update your parts catalog with the following information.

BICU BOARD (A292/A293)

SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC111	142
IC112	140
IC113	126
IC114	132
IC115	133
IC116	***117***
IC117	132
IC118	127
IC119	139
IC120	145



SYMBOL NO.	INDEX NO.
IC111	142
IC112	140
IC113	126
IC114	132
IC115	133
IC116	***224 => 5***
(Socket)	***117***
IC117	132
IC118	127
IC119	139
IC120	145

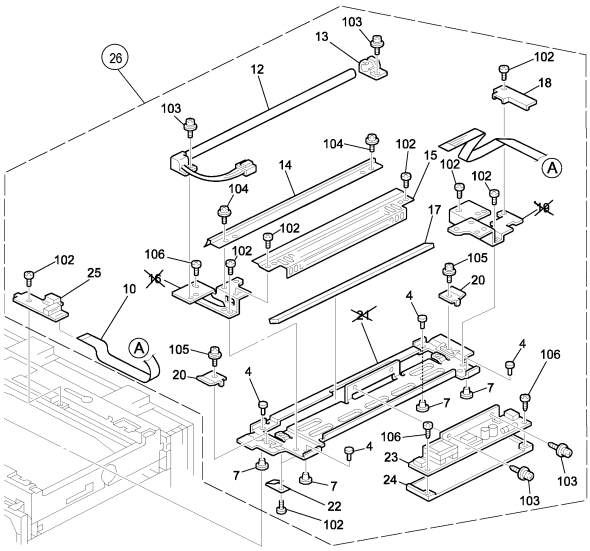
					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
14075050	-	IC-SRAM M48Z128Y-85PM	1→0	-	159	224
-	A2939099	NV-RAM Minus Counter	1	1	157	5 *

* Denotes new item number.

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

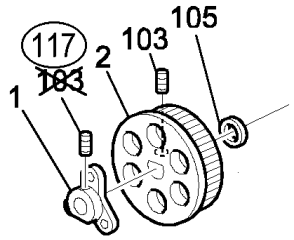
- **UPDATE 2:** **1st Scanner Unit–** Due to a request from the vendor, the Scanner Frame and the Front and Rear Side Plates for the 1st Scanner are no longer available. If any of these parts should fail, replace the 1st Scanner Unit Assembly (P/N A2931731). Please update your parts catalog with the following information.



				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2931732	-	1st Scanner Frame	1→0	45	21
A2931733	-	Front Side Plate – 1st Scanner	1→0	45	16
A2931734	-	Rear Side Plate – 1st Scanner	1 →0	45	19
-	A2931731	1st Scanner Unit Assembly	1	45	26 *

* Denotes new item number.

- **UPDATE 3:** **Hexagon Headless Set Screw – M4x4 –** The parts illustration incorrectly identified the Set Screw for the Flange Fly Wheel as item 103. Please correct the illustration and update your parts catalog with the following information.

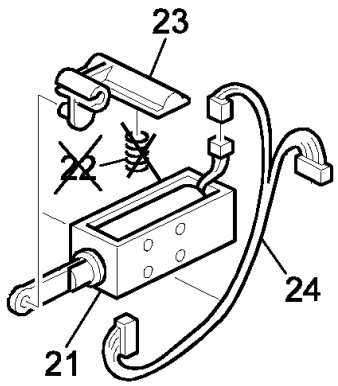


			REFERENCE	
PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
05740040E	Hexagon Headless Set Screw – M4x4	n	121	117 *

* Denotes new item number.

Continued…

- **UPDATE 4:** **Compression Spring–** To ensure that the Transfer Belt releases from the Drum, the Compression Spring has been removed. Please update your parts catalog with the following information.



				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AA063485	-	Compression Spring	1 → 0	95	22

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the Compression Spring removed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner	H4705100281
Gestetner	H4805100181
Ricoh	H4705000001
Ricoh	H4805000001
Savin	H4705100281
Savin	H4805100181

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 011 **10/05/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



SERVICE MANUAL

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 4-101 through 103 Updated Information (Firmware History)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
⇒ **Corrections / Updates:**	A2937553 **E**	Not Available	3.5.1

1. New Copy Feature and SP Mode (SP5971) Added

1) New Copy Feature: Enhance Density Mode

This feature has been added to ensure that image density does not drop while making multiple copies of originals with a high percent of solid black areas.

To set effective original density and number of copies for multi-copy mode, use SP5971 (see below).

To add the Enhance Density Key to the display panel and to control the level, perform the following procedure:

(1) Press the User Tools/Counter key.
(2) Press the Copy/Document Server Features Key.
(3) Open General Features, screen 3/3.
(4) Select one of the Shortcut Keys from F1 – F5.
(5) Register the Enhance Density Key.
(6) Open General Features, screen 1/3.
(7) Select the setting for Enhance Density Level.
High: Vt+0.6
Medium: Vt+0.4 (default)
Low: Vt+0.2

2) New SP Mode: SP5971 (Enhance Copy Setting):

The following settings apply to Enhance Density Mode:

Mode No.	Function				Setting
5971	Enhance Copy Setting				
	2	Effective Original Density	*	Selects the original image ratio at which the mode is activated (calc. from setting).	1 ~ 60% 1% step **4%**
	3	Effective Multiple Copy	*	Selects the sheet number at which mode is activated with multi-copy jobs (calc. from setting).	1 ~ 50sheets 1 sheet step **3 sheets**

Continue …

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
⇒ **2. Paper jam in finisher (B302) + Printer Mode** Depending on the Printer Mode settings, jams can occur in the Finisher when continuous print jobs are shifted alternately between the proof and shift trays. The machine is not able to switch fast enough between the two paper paths in these cases. The interval between jobs has been slightly increased to allow the machine time enough to make the switch. **3. Fusing Unit Fan Motor Off-Timing Change** To ensure that the hot air around the toner bottle is properly removed, the fusing unit fan motor will be kept on whenever the 24V is being supplied. Therefore, it will turn off only when the main switch or operation switch is turned off or when the machine is shut down by the Auto-Off function. **4. Word Correction** Some display language words and phrases have been corrected or improved.			
Corrections / Updates: **1. New SP Mode (SP5970) for EB-70 (Printer controller)** The following setting applies when the EB-70 printer controller is installed.	A2937553 **F**	Not Availbale	3.6

Mode No.	Function			Setting
5970	Printer Installed			
			Selects whether the EB-70 printer controller is installed or not.	**0: No** 1: Yes

2. Some Part of Image Missing in Tab Stock when Printing from Document Server **<Symptom>** When files in the Document Server are printed onto Tab Stock, the image is not rotated even though tab stock can be set sideways only. This is because the documents are saved lengthwise only in the Document Server. **<Modification>** The error has been corrected.			Continue …

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
⇒ **3. Malfunction with Printer Dot Edge Parameter Setting when Printing from Document Server** **<Symptom>** When edge smoothing is off, the line thickness is not changed when the printer dot edge parameter setting (SP2114) is changed. **<Modification>** The error has been corrected.			

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 012 **10/11/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



SERVICE MANUAL

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual page listed below must be replaced with the page supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 4-74 Updated Information (NVRAM – Ram Replacement)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.2.7 MEMORY ALL CLEAR (SP5-801)

NOTE: Memory All Clear mode resets all the settings stored in the NVRAM to their default settings except the following:

- Electrical total counter value (SP7-003-1)
- Machine serial number (SP5-811)
- Plug & Play Brand Name and Production Name Setting (SP5-907)

Among the settings that are reset are the correction data for process control and all the software counters.

Normally, this SP mode should not be used. This procedure is required only after replacing the NVRAM or when the copier malfunctions due to a damaged NVRAM.

⇒

NV-RAM is not defective	NV-RAM is defective
1. Print out all SMC data lists (SP 5-990-1).	1. If possible, print out all SMC data lists (SP 5-990-1).
2. Upload the NVRAM data from the BICU to the flash memory card (SP 5-824).	2. Turn the main power switch off.
	3. Replace the NV–RAM Minus Counter.
3. Turn the main power switch off.	4. Replace the developer because the TD initial data is missing if the NV-RAM is defective.
4. Replace the NV–RAM Minus Counter.	5. Perform memory all clear (SP 5-801).
5. Perform memory all clear (SP 5-801). NOTE 1	6. Turn the main power switch off and on.
6. Turn the main power switch off and on.	7. Calibrate the LCD touch panel.
7. Calibrate the LCD touch panel.	8. Perform the TD initial setting (SP 2-963). Note: Do this step before the machine automatically starts the Auto Process Control (within approximately 2 minutes after the main switch is turned on).
8. Input the machine serial number (SP 5-811).	9. Input the machine serial number (SP 5-811).
9. Download the NVRAM data from the flash memory card to the BICU (SP 5-825). Or, referring to the SMC data lists, re-enter any value which has been changed from its factory setting.	10. Adjust the laser beam pitch (SP 2-109).
	11. Perform the printer and scanner registration adjustments. (See Replacement and Adjustment – Copy Image - Adjustments)
10. Download the stamp data from the flash memory card (SP5-829).	12. Referring to the SMC data lists, re-enter any value which has been changed from its factory setting.
11. Check the copy quality and the paper path and do any necessary adjustments.	13. Download the stamp data from the flash memory card (SP5-829).
NOTE 1: Hold down the “Start” key for over 3 seconds. At this time the beeper will sound.	14. Perform SP 3-001-2 (ID Sensor Initial Setting) and SP 4-911-1 (HDD media test). Note: Be sure that the customer is aware that the HDD media test will delete copy server and stamp data on the hard drives.
	15. Check the copy quality and the paper path and do any necessary adjustments.

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 013 **10/18/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

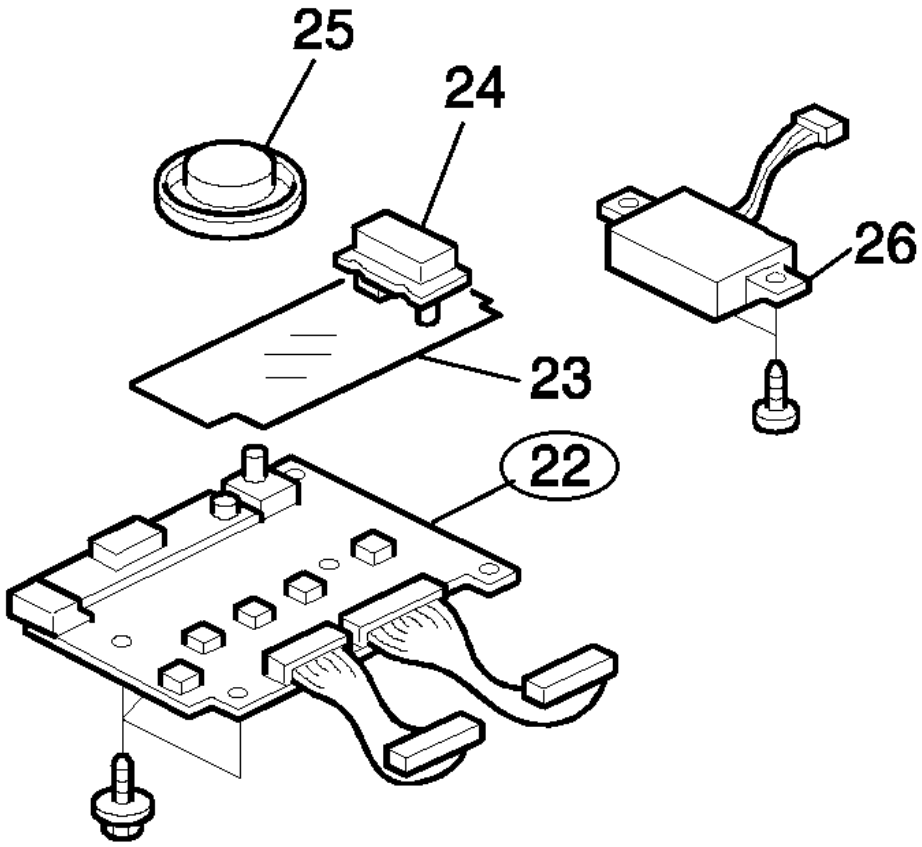
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: APPLICATION BOARD

GENERAL:

The part number for the Application Board was incorrect in the Parts Catalog. The following part correction is being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.



				REFERENCE	
INCORRECT PART NO.	CORRECT PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
A2291463	A2931463	Application Board	1	19	22

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

CONTROL NO. 063ABW

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 014 **10/30/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



SERVICE MANUAL

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

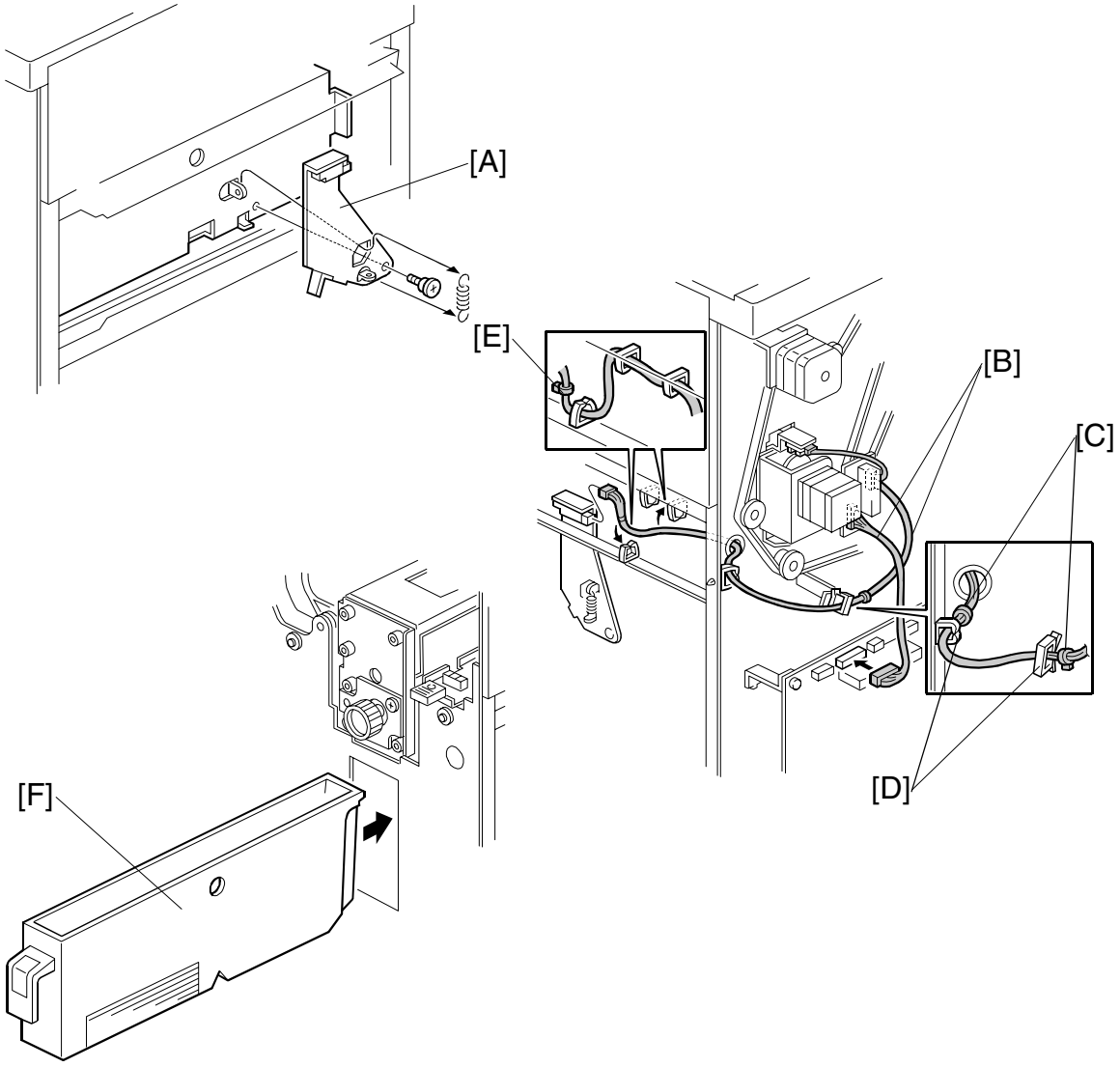
The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 3-27 Updated Information (Punch Unit Installation)
- 4-61 Updated Information (Service Program Mode)
- 10-1 Updated Information (A763 Specifications)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.



8. Install the sensor bracket [A] (1 short stepped screw, 1 spring).
9. Connect the cables [B].

NOTE: 1) The cable binders [C] must not be between the cable clamps [D].
2) The cable binder [E] must be positioned to the left of the cable clamp.

10. **When a three-punch-hole-unit is installed:** Change switch 1 of DIP SW 100 on the punch drive board to ON.

⟹

11. Slide the hopper [F] into the finisher.
12. Reassemble the finisher and attach it to the copier. Then check the punch unit operation.

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-504	Copy Jam Counter by Jam Location				
	26	Upper Tray Exit Sensor – Fin.	*		
	27	Shift Tray Exit Sensor – Fin.	*		
	28	Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor – Fin.	*		
	29	Stapler Tray Paper Sensor – Fin.	*		
	30	Entrance Sensor - PP	*		
	31	Proof Tray Exit Sensor - PP	*		
	32	Relay Sensor – PP	*		
	33	Exit Sensor - PP	*		
	34	By-pass Tray	*		
	35	Stapler Tray Entrance Sensor	*		
	37	Entrance Sensor (Booklet FIN)-Late	*		
	38	Transport Sensor (Booklet FIN)	*		
	39	Entrance Sensor (Booklet FIN)-Early	*		
	40	Staple	*		
	41	SR750	*	Booklet Exit Sensor (ON check)	
	42	SR750	*	Booklet Exit Sensor (OFF check)	
	43	SR750	*	Booklet Staple Jam	
	53	1st Paper Tray	*	These are jams when the paper stays at the sensor. (1st Paper Feed Sensor)	
	54	2nd Paper Tray	*	(2nd Paper Feed Sensor)	
	55	3rd Paper Tray	*	(3rd Paper Feed Sensor)	
	56	4th Paper Tray	*	(Not Used)	
	57	LCT Relay Sensor	*		

Service Tables

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Paper Size:

Tray	Modes		Sizes
Proof tray			A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
Shift tray	No staple mode		A3 to A5, DLT to HLT
	Staple Mode	Top or bottom	A3 to B5 lengthwise, DLT to HLT
		2 staple	A3, A4 sideways, B5 sideways, DLT to HLT sideways
Booklet tray			A3 to B5, DLT to LT

Paper Weight:

Tray	Weight
Stack mode	52 g/m^2 to 163 g/m^2, 14 to 42 lb
Staple mode	64 g/m^2 to 80 g/m^2, 17 to 21 lb
Saddle stitch mode	64 g/m^2 to 80 g/m^2, 17 to 21 lb 64 g/m^2 to 128 g/m^2, 17 to 34 lb (Cover sheet only)

Paper Capacity (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

⇒

Tray	Modes	Paper size	Capacity
Proof tray		A4-S, LT-S or shorter	150 sheets
		A4-L, LT-L or longer	75 sheets
Shift tray	No staple	A4-S, LT-S or shorter	147mm stack height or 1000 sheets (*)
		A4-L, LT-L or longer	74mm stack height or 500 sheet (*)
	Staple	A4-S, LT-S or shorter	110mm stack height or 30 sets or 750 sheets (*)
		A4-L, LT-L or longer	74mm stack height 0r 30 sets or 500 sheets(*)
Staple tray	One size Mixed sizes	1-5 sheets	25 sets
		6-10 sheets	15 sets
		11-15 sheets	10 sets

(-L": Lengthwise ,-S: Sideways)

Staple Capacity (80 g/m^2, 20 lb):

Modes	Paper size	Total capacity
Staple	A4-S, LT-S or shorter	2-50 sheets
	A4-L, LT-L or longer	2-30 sheets
Saddle stitch		2-15 sheets

(-L": Lengthwise, -S: Sideways)

* The machine will inform the operator that the tray is full when any of the conditions are met (whichever occurs first).

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 015 **11/06/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: ADF MAIN CONTROL BOARD

GENERAL:

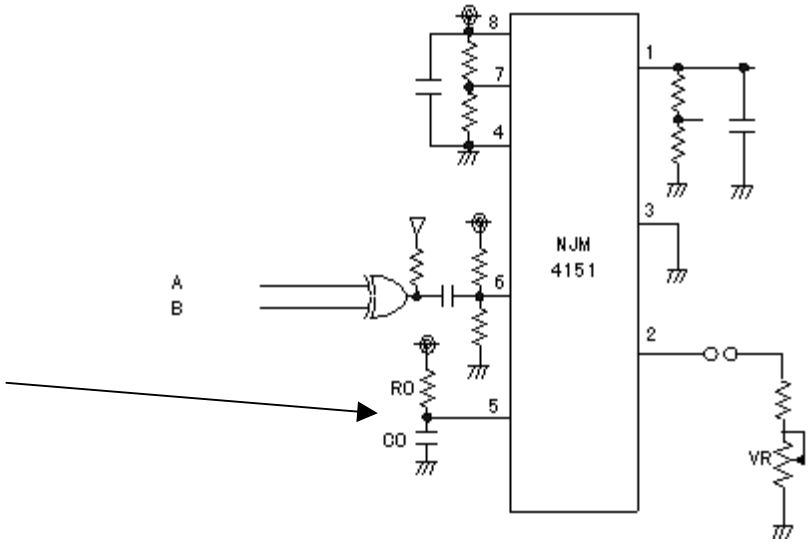
The following changes have been made to the ADF Main Control Board:

1. If the Motor locks, a surge of current flows through the Motor Driver Circuit on the ADF Main Control Board, which may cause damage to the circuit. The current capacitance of the circuit has been increased to protect the circuit in the event of a surge.

2. During the production process, it was found that some ADF Main Control Boards had a relatively narrow adjustment range for the Transport Drive Motor speed. In some cases, the Motors could not reach the target adjustment speed. The defective boards were not installed in the ADF Units. Therefore, the same symptom will not occur on production machines released from the factory. To ensure the proper functionality of the ADF Main Control Board, IC #NJM4151 on the ADF Main Control Board has been modified as follows:

Old
R_0 ; 6.2kΩ±5%
C_0 ;0.0047μF±10%

New
R_0; 8.2kΩ±5%
C_0; 0.0022μF±10%



Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
B3015500	B3015510	ADF Main Control Board	1	1	37	22

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-ins were not available at time of publication.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 015 REISSUE ★ **11/17/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: ADF MAIN CONTROL BOARD

GENERAL:

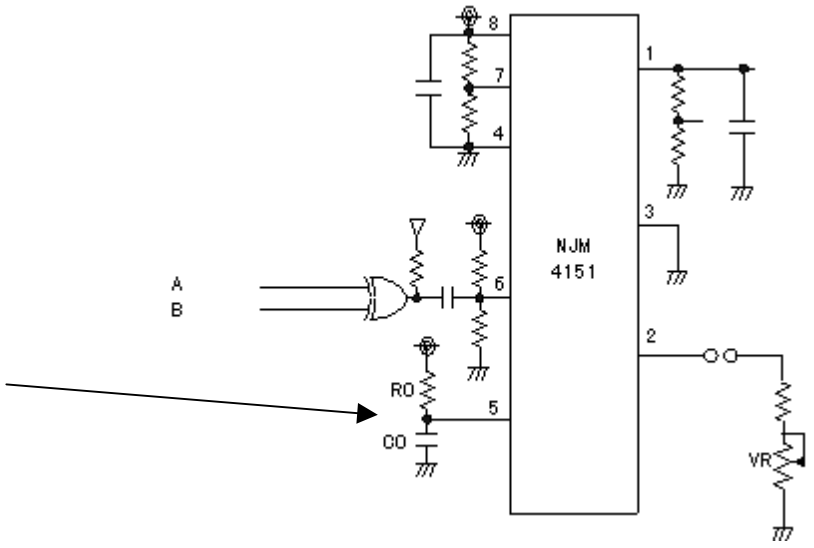
The following changes have been made to the ADF Main Control Board:

1. If the Motor locks, a surge of current flows through the Motor Driver Circuit on the ADF Main Control Board, which may cause damage to the circuit. The current capacitance of the circuit has been increased to protect the circuit in the event of a surge.

2. During the production process, it was found that some ADF Main Control Boards had a relatively narrow adjustment range for the Transport Drive Motor speed. In some cases, the Motors could not reach the target adjustment speed. The defective boards were not installed in the ADF Units. Therefore, the same symptom will not occur on production machines released from the factory. To ensure the proper functionality of the ADF Main Control Board, IC #NJM4151 on the ADF Main Control Board has been modified as follows:

Old
R_0; 6.2kΩ±5%
C_0 ;0.0047μF±10%

New
R_0; 8.2kΩ±5%
C_0; 0.0022μF±10%



Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
B3015500	B3015510	ADF Main Control Board	1	1	37	22

UNITS AFFECTED:

★ All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style ADF Main Control Board installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705600353
Gestetner 3370	H4805600003
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4705600064
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4805600101
Savin 2055DP	H4705600353
Savin 2070DP	H4805600003

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 016 **11/06/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT



■ SERVICE MANUAL

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- iv Updated Information (Table of Contents)
- 3-39 & 40 Updated Information (Copy Tray Type 700 Installation)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

2.10.4 BASIC DUPLEX FEED OPERATION 2-80
Longer than A4 / Letter lengthwise 2-80
2.11 ENERGY SAVER MODES 2-83
2.11.1 LOW POWER MODE 2-83
Entering low power mode 2-83
What happens in low power mode 2-83
Return to stand-by mode 2-83

INSTALLATION

3. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-1
3.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS 3-1
3.1.1 ENVIRONMENT 3-1
3.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL 3-1
3.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS 3-2
3.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS 3-2
3.2 COPIER (A229/A293) 3-3
3.1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-3
3.1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-4
3.3 LCT (A698) 3-14
3.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-14
3.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-15
3.4 3,000-SHEET FINISHER (B312) 3-20
3.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-20
3.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-21
3.5 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (A812) FOR B312 FINISHER 3-24
3.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-24
3.5.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION 3-25
3.6 FINISHER (B302) 3-28
3.6.1 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE 3-28
3.7 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION (A812) FOR B302 FINISHER 3-31
3.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK 3-31
3.1.2 PUNCH UNIT INSTALLATION 3-32
3.8 KEY COUNTER INSTALLATION 3-35
3.9 COPY CONNECTOR KIT INSTALLATION 3-36
3.10 COPY TRAY TYPE 700 INSTALLATION 3-39

SERVICE TABLES

4. SERVICE TABLES 4-1
4.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS 4-1
4.1.1 DRUM 4-1
4.1.2 DRUM UNIT 4-1
4.1.3 TRANSFER BELT UNIT 4-2
4.1.4 SCANNER UNIT 4-2
4.1.5 LASER UNIT 4-2
4.1.6 CHARGE CORONA 4-3

⇒ 3.10 COPY TRAY TYPE 700 INSTALLATION

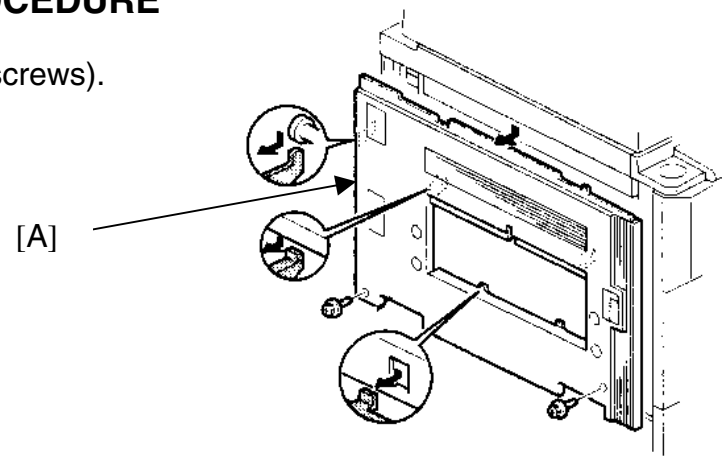
3.10.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the accessories in the box against the following list.

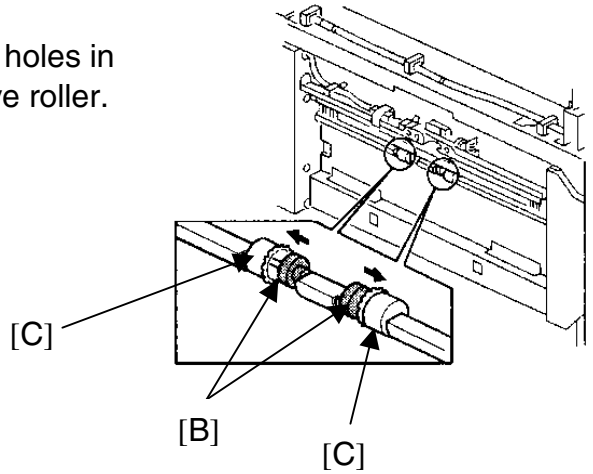
Description	Q'ty
1. Copy Tray	1
2. Tray Paper Limit Sensor Assembly	1
3. Cap - ϕ22	4
4. Connector Cap	1
5. Philips Tapping Screw – M4x8	2

3.10.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

1) Remove the left cover [A] (2 screws).

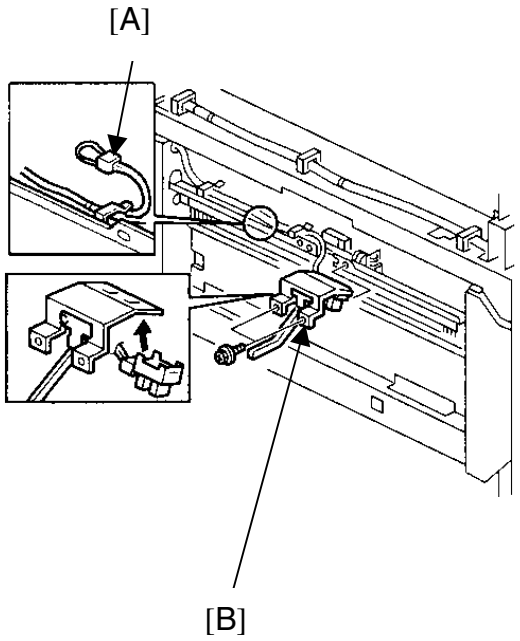


2) Slide the collars (black) [B] into the holes in the rubber rollers [C] of the exit drive roller.

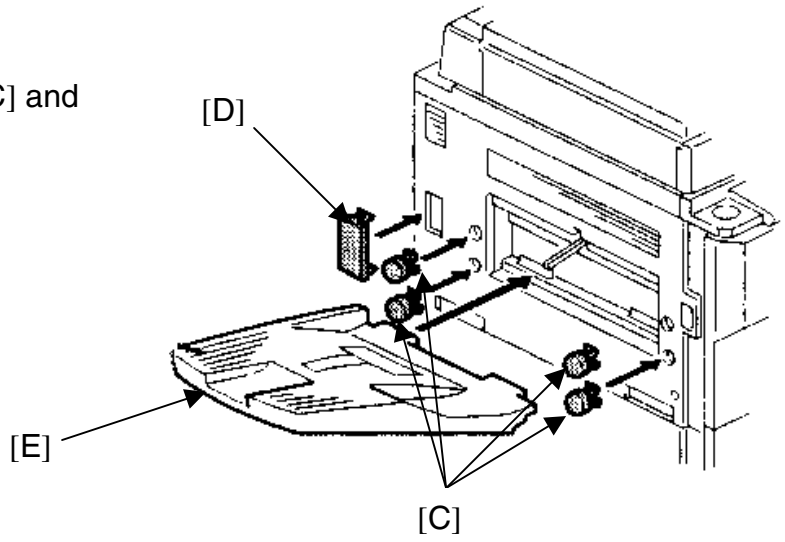


⇒

3) Remove the shorting connector [A].
4) Install the tray paper limit sensor assembly [B].



5) Reinstall the left cover.
6) Install the four caps (ϕ22) [C] and the connector cap [D].
7) Install the copy tray [E].



TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 017 **11/17/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT



■ SERVICE MANUAL

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 4-11 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-15 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-28 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-40 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-41 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-42 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-44 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-45 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-46 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-64 Updated Information (SP Mode)
- 4-65 Updated Information (SP Mode)

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
1-007	By-pass Feed Paper Size Display				
				Displays the paper width sensor data for the by-pass feed table. 132 : A3 133 : A4 Lengthwise 134 : A5 Lengthwise 141 : B4 Lengthwise 142 : B5 Lengthwise 160 : DLT 164 : LG 166 : LT Lengthwise 172 : HLT Lengthwise	
⇒ 1-008	Duplex Fence Position Adjustment				
				Adjusts the position of the fence (side-to-side position with reference to paper feed).	0 ~ -2 0.5 mm/step **-1.0 mm**
1-103	Fusing Idling				
			*	Selects whether fusing idling is done or not. *If fusing is incomplete on the 1st and 2nd copies, change the setting to a longer time. This may occur if the room is cold.* *Refer to "Detailed Section Descriptions - Fusing Temperature Control" for more details.*	**0: 5 1/2** min. 1: 10 min. 2: 15 min. 3: No idling
1-104	Fusing Temperature Control				
			*	Selects the fusing temperature control mode. After changing the setting, turn the main switch off and on.	**On/Off control** Phase control
1-105	Fusing Temperature Adjustment				
	1	By-pass	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for paper fed from a by-pass tray.	170 ~ 200 1°C/step **185°C**
	2	OHP	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for OHP sheets fed from the by-pass feed unit.	+10 ~ -10°C 1°C/step **0 (165°C)**
	3	Thick Paper	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for thick paper fed from the by-pass feed unit.	+5 ~ -10°C 1°C/step **0 (195°C)**
1-106	Fusing Temperature Display				
				Displays the fusing temperature.	
⇒					

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
2-201	Development Bias Adjustment				
	3	OHP Sheet	*	Adjusts the development bias for copying onto OHP sheets.	-200 ~ -700 10 V/step **-300 V**
	4	Development Performance	*	Adjusts the development potential for making the ID sensor pattern for Vsp measurement. Do not adjust.	-140 ~ -380 1 V/step **-280 V**
2-207	Forced Toner Supply				
				Forces the toner bottle to supply toner to the toner supply unit for 7 seconds. *This mode finishes automatically after the toner is supplied 7 times (1 s for each time). This process is not normally needed in the field for this model.*	Start
2-208	Toner Supply Mode				
			*	Selects the toner supply mode. *Use image pixel count mode only as a temporary countermeasure if the ID or TD sensor is defective.*	**Sensor Control** Image Pixel Count
2-209	Toner Supply Rate				
			*	Adjusts the toner supply rate. *Increasing this value reduces the toner supply clutch on time. Use a lower value if the user tends to make lots of copies that have a high proportion of black.*	50 ~ 2000 5 mg/s/ step **850 mg/s**
⇒ 2-210	ID Sensor Interval				
				Changes the interval for making the ID sensor pattern (VSP/VSG detection). *If the user normally makes copies with a high proportion of black, reduce the interval.*	0 ~ 200 1 copy/step **10 copies**
2-220	VREF Manual Setting				
			*	Adjusts the TD sensor reference voltage (VREF). *Change this value after replacing the development unit with another one that already contains toner.* *For example, when using a development unit from another machine for test purposes, do the following:* *1. Check the value of SP2-220 in both the machine containing the test unit and the machine that you are going to move it to.* *2. Install the test development unit, then input the VREF for this unit into SP2-220.* *3. After the test, put back the old development unit, and change SP2-220 back to the original value.*	1.0 ~ 4.0 0.01V/step **3.0 V** (When perform SP2801, SP2963) **2.5 V** (When SP2967 is on)

Service Tables

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	10	Pre-filter Type (Text mode 25% ~ 49%)	*	Selects the pre-filter type. 0: None 1: Smoothing (Normal) 2: Smoothing (Weak) 3 ~ 5: Special smoothing filters which reduce moiré but do not weaken the edges of low contrast text. A suitable filter should be selected depending on the original type. 6: MTF (Weak) 7: MTF (Normal) 8 ~ 10: Special smoothing filters only for the main scan direction. These filters should be used if the edges of lines that are parallel to the sub scan line are weakened when a filter from 3 ~ 5 is selected. A suitable filter should be selected depending on the original type. This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.	0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	11	Pre-filter Type (Text mode 50% ~ 154%)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **0**
	12	Pre-filter Type (Photo mode)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	13	Pre-filter Type (Text/Photo mode 25% ~ 49%)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	14	Pre-filter Type (Text/Photo mode 50% ~ 154%)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **0**
	15	Pre-filter Type (Pale mode)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
	16	Pre-filter Type (Generation mode)	*		0 ~ 10 1/step **1**
⇒					
⇒					
	20	Filter Level-25% ~ 49% (Main Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the main scan direction for 25% ~ 49% reduction for text mode. Settings 0 to 6 are MTF filters, and settings 7 to 13 are moiré erase filters. 0: Weak 6: Strong 7: Weak 13: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 13 1/step **13**
	21	Filter Level-25% ~ 49% (Sub Scan Direction-Text)	*	Selects the MTF filter coefficient in the sub scan direction for 25% ~ 49% reduction for text mode. 0: Weak 6: Strong *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 6 1/step **6**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-903	Filter Setting				
	85	Scanner Gamma Selection - Text/Photo Mode		Selects the scanner and printer gamma settings used when 'Service Mode' for Text/Photo mode is selected. 0: Scanner gamma for 'Photo Priority' is used. 1: Scanner gamma for 'Normal' is used. 2: Scanner gamma for 'Text Priority' is used.	0 ~ 2 1/step **1**
4-904	IPU Setting -1				
	1	Laser Pulse Positioning in Text and Text/Photo	*	Selects whether or not laser pulse positioning control is used in text and text/photo modes ***Do not change the value.***	0: Off **1: On**
	2	Gradation Processing Selection - Photo	S	Selects the gradation processing procedure. 0: Three-gradation error diffusion 1: Four-gradation error diffusion 2: 8" x 8" dither matrix 3: 6" x 6" dither matrix 4: 4" x 4" dither matrix *A larger dither matrix gives coarser reproduction of halftones. This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'Service Mode' in UP mode.*	0 ~ 4 **1**
⇒					
	4	Forced Binary Mode	S	1: Binary processing is done for all image modes.	**0: No** 1: Yes
⇒					
	6	Smoothing Filter Level in Photo Mode	S	Selects the smoothing filter level in photo mode. 0: None 1: Weak 5: Strong	0 ~ 5 **2**
	7	Texture Erase Filter Level in Text Mode	S	Selects the strength of the filter for erasing texture from the image in text/photo mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Strong	0 ~ 2 **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-904	IPU Setting -1				
⇒					
⇒					
⇒					
⇒					
	20	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Text		Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for text mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 3: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**
	22	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Text/Photo		Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for text/photo mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 3: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**
	23	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Pale		Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for pale mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 3: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-904	IPU Setting -1				
	24	Thin Line Mode in Laser Writing - Generation		Selects thin line mode level in laser writing for generation mode. 0: None 1: Weak 2: Medium 2: Strong	0 ~ 3 **2**
4-905	Image Data Path				
	1	Image Data Path – Filtering/Magnification		Selects one of the following video data outputs, which will be used for printing. 0: Magnification → Filtering 1: Filtering → Magnification 2: Pre-filtering → Magnification → Filtering 3: Pre-filtering → Filtering → Magnification 4**: Normal operation** ***Do not change the value.***	
⇒					
	4	Printout Type Selection		Selects one of the following video data outputs, which will be used for the printer controller. **0: Normal operation** 1: Black/white conversion 2: Not printed out 3: Direct printing of data from the application ***Do not change the value.***	
4-906	Image Processing Priority in Text/Photo Mode				
			*	Selects either text priority or photo priority for text/photo mode. Photo priority: Background erase is off Letter priority: Background erase is on. *This SP is ignored unless the user selects 'SP Mode Changed' in UP mode.*	1: Photo priority **0: Letter priority**
⇒					
⇒					

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
4-911	HDD				
	1	HDD Media Check		Checks for bad sectors on the hard disk that develop during machine use. This takes 4 minutes. *This SP mode should be done when an abnormal image is printed. There is no need to do this at installation as the hard disk firmware already contains bad sector information, and damage is not likely during transportation.* *Bad sectors detected with this SP mode will be stored in the NVRAM with the bad sector data copied across from the firmware.* *If the machine detects over 50 bad sectors, SC361 will be generated. At this time, use SP4-911-2.*	Start
	2	HDD Formatting		Formats the hard disk. This takes 4 minutes. **Do not turn off the main power switch during this process.**	
	6	HDD Bad Sector Information Reset		Resets the bad sector information which is stored in the NVRAM. *This SP should be used when the hard disk is replaced.*	Start
	7	HDD Bad Sector Display	*	Displays the number of bad sectors there are on the hard disk. *If the machine detects a total of over 50 bad sectors on the disk, SC361 will be generated. At this time, use SP4-911-2.*	Total: 0 Copy: 0 Printer: 0 Copy Server: 0
	8	HDD Model Name Display		Displays the model name of the HDD. *If the HDD is not installed or the HDD connector is not connected, SC360 will be displayed. However, the user can make single copies.*	

⇒

⇒

This page intentionally left blank.

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
⇒					
5-009	Language Selection				
			*	Selects the operation panel language.	
5-019	Tray Paper Size Selection				
	5	LCT	*	Selects the paper size in the optional LCT.	A4 LT B5
5-024	mm/inch Display Selection				
			*	Selects what unit is used.	**0: mm** 1: inch
				After selecting the unit, turn the main power switch off and on.	
5-104	A3/DLT Double Count				
			*	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/11"x17" paper.	**No** Yes
				If "1" is selected, the total counter and the current user code counter count up twice when A3/11"x17" paper is used.	
5-106	ID Shift Level				
	6	ADS Level Selection	*	Selects the image density level that is used in ADS mode.	1 ~ 7 1 notch /step **4**
5-112	Non-standard Paper Selection				
			*	Selects whether a non-standard paper size can be input for tray 2 (universal tray) or not.	**No** Yes
				If "1" is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using a UP mode.	
5-113	Optional Counter Type				
			*	**Select the option counter type.** 0. None 1. Key card (Japan only) 2. Key card (Count down type) 3. Pre-paid card 4. Coin lock 5. Key card (Japan only)	0 ~ 5 1/step **0**

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
7-808	Counters Reset				
				Resets the counter except following counters: Press “Start” to reset. • All counters of SP7-003 • All counters of SP7-006 • All counters of SP7-206 • All counters of SP7-101-132	Start
7-810	Access Code Clear				
				Resets both the key operator code and the weekly timer code (Key operator code for off setting). Press “Start” to reset.	Start
7-816	Copy Counter Reset – Paper Tray				
	1	Paper Tray 1		Resets the total copy counter by paper tray. Use these SP modes when replacing the pick-up, feed, and separation rollers in the paper feed stations. (Tray 4 is not used)	Start
	2	Paper Tray 2			
	3	Paper Tray 3			
	4	Paper Tray 4			
	5	LCT			
	6	By-pass Tray			
7-817	ADF Counter Reset				
				Resets the counter of SP7-205.	
7-822	Copy Counter Reset - Magnification				
				Resets all counters of SP7-301.	Start
7-825	Total Counter Reset				
				Resets the electrical total counter.	Start
				Usually, this SP mode is done at installation. *This SP mode works only once when the counter value is negative*	
7-828	Punch Counter Reset				
				Resets the counter of SP7-207.	
⇒					
7-902	SC Details				
				Displays details about latest SCs. Not all SCs have these details.	
7-904	Copy Counter Reset – Copy Mode				
				Resets all counters of SP7-304.	Start
7-905	Copy Counter Reset – Multiple Copy Mode				
				Resets all counters of SP7-305.	Start

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)		Function	Settings
7-906	Clear Original Number of Each size		
		Resets all counters of SP7-202.	Start
7-907	Clear Job Number of Each size		
		Resets all counters of SP7-306.	Start
7-908	Document : Clear Original Number		
		Resets all counters of SP7-002-2.	Start
7-920	Document Server : Clear Scanned Storage		
		Resets the counter of SP7-320.	Start
7-921	Document Server : Clear Original Number of Each Size		
		Resets all counters of SP7-321.	Start
7-923	Document Server : Clear Print Number of Each Copy		
		Resets all counters of SP7-323	Start
7-924	Document Server : Clear Print Job Logging		
		Resets all counters of SP7-324	Start
7-925	Document Server : Clear Print Job Page Distribution		
		Resets all counters of SP7-325	Start
7-926	Document Server : Clear Print Job File Distribution		
		Resets all counters of SP7-326	Start
7-927	Document Server : Clear Print Job Set Distribution		
		Resets all counters of SP7-327.	Start
⇒			
7-990	Display the detail information for SC990		
	001 Filename 002 Line Number 003 Value	Displays the detail information for SC990.	

Service Tables

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 018 **11/20/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

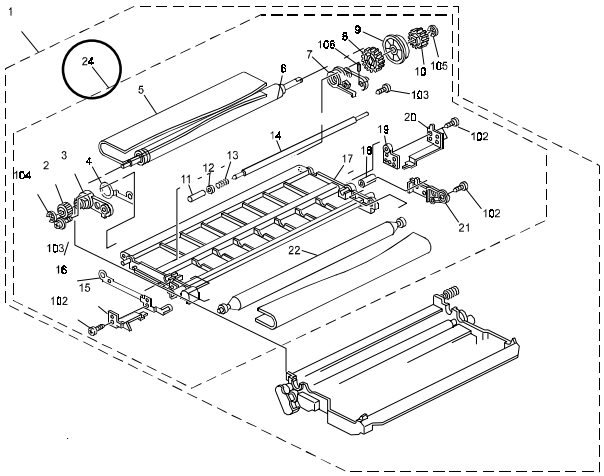
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

GENERAL:

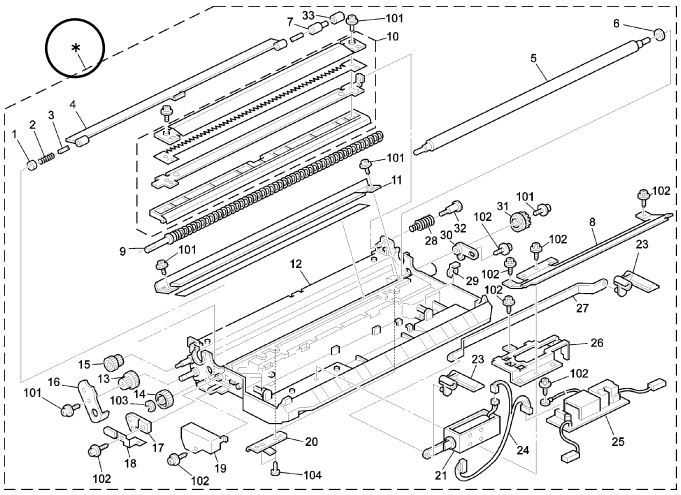
The following parts updates are being issued for all A292 and A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Transfer Unit –** To improve uneven density in half tone areas the Cleaning Roller Gears (Item No. 8 page 93 & Item No. 31 page 95) were changed. Please refer to Technical Service Bulletin A292/A293 – 005, since these gears were part of an assembly the part number for the Transfer Belt Unit and Transfer Casing Unit have been changed.

Transfer Section 1 – Page 92



Transfer Section 2 – Page 94



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2933850	A2833851	Transfer Belt Unit	1	3/S	93	24
A2933900	A2933910	Transfer Casing Unit	1	3/S	95	*

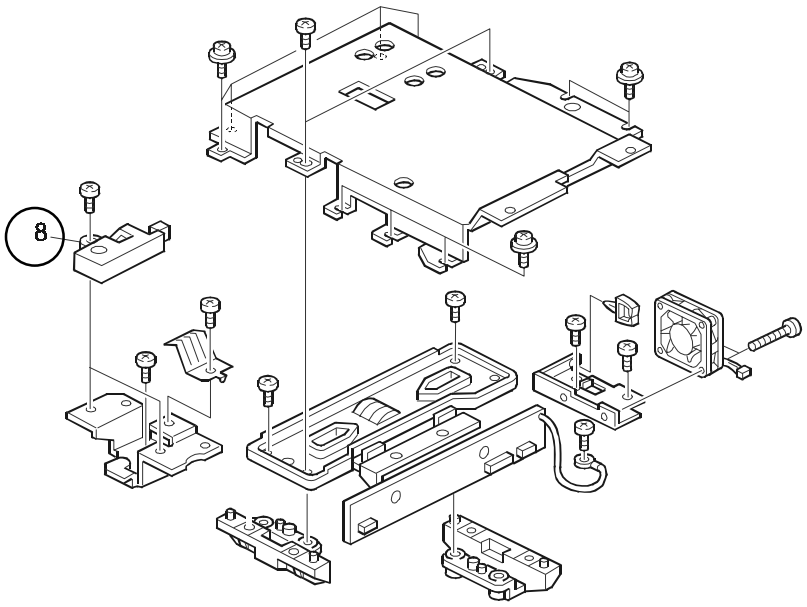
UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **UPDATE 2:** **Original Length Sensor –** To ensure the detection of the original length, a filter has been added to the sensor.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AW010078	A2941843	Photosensor with Filter – H50	2	1	41	8

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 019 **11/20/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: LOW IMAGE DENSITY

SYMPTOM:

Low image density on copies caused by low copy volume made on machine around 20 to 30K after installation.

CAUSE:

The Fusing Fan Motor stops when the low power timer runs out (60 sec) and the machine enters Energy Saver Mode. Because the Fusing Lamp remains on in order to maintain hot roller temperature, the temperature of the areas surrounding the unit rises. The resulting heat can damage the toner that is stored in the bottle above the Fusing Unit, causing some of the toner's constituents to separate out. The altered toner is then sent to the Development Unit and is mixed in with the developer, causing developer chargeability to drop. This results in low image density on copies.

This heat damage occurs on low copy volume machines, as the toner remains in the bottle for extended period of time.

SOLUTIONS:

Firmware:

The off timing of the Fusing Fan Motor has been delayed to remove the hot air around the Toner Bottle.

Hardware:

As an added measure, a Heat Insulator will be installed between the front frame of the Scanner Unit and Toner Bottle to ensure that the toner is not damaged, even if the internal temperature should rise.

Newly Installed Machines:

Upgrade the BICU firmware to ver 3.5.1 or later at installation.

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

Field machines which have no low ID problem:

Please upgrade the BICU firmware to ver 3.5.1 at the next field visit.

The PCB ROM revision **'F' version 3.6** (file name A292REVF.EXE) can be downloaded through the Technology Solution Center FTP Site http://tsc.ricohcorp.com.

NOTE: *Refer to Publication Bulletin # 023 for more information about the FTP Internet Web Site.*

Field machines which have low ID problem:

1. Upgrade the BICU firmware to ver 3.5.1.
2. Replace the developer.
3. Replace the toner bottle.
4. Remove and clean the toner in the Toner Hopper.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 020 **11/28/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

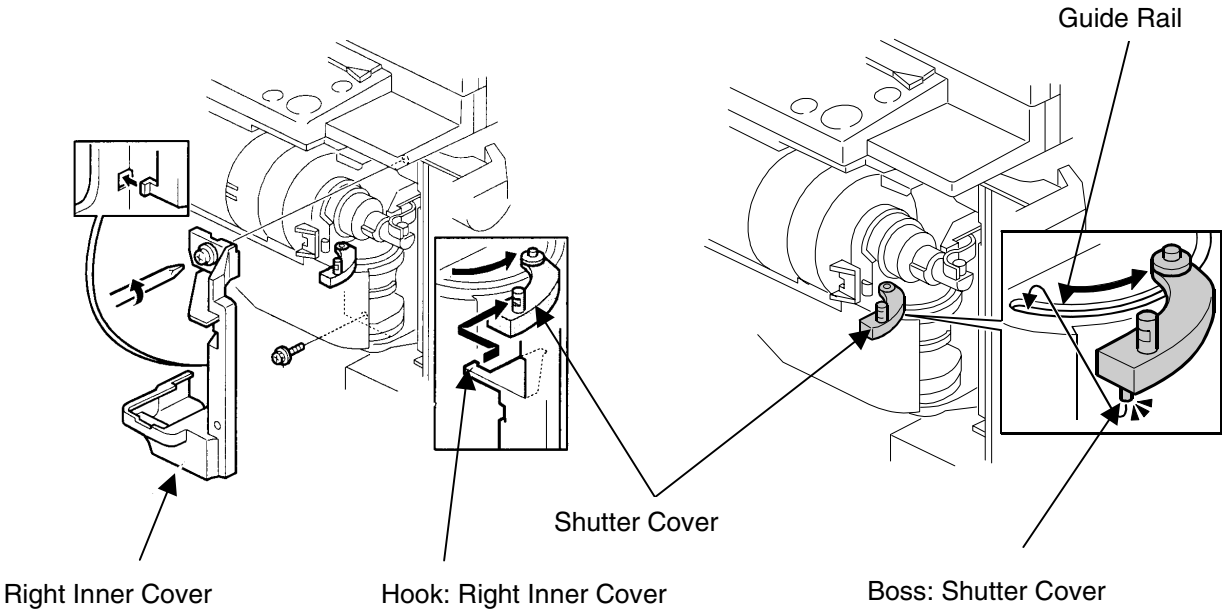
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Toner Bottle Holder –** If the Shutter Cover is not hung on the hook of the Right Inner Cover, machine vibration may cause the Inner Shutter to move and cover the entrance to the Toner Hopper. To secure the Shutter Cover in place, a boss (ϕ2, h=2) has been added to the Cover. When installing the Right Inner Cover, be sure to place the boss in the Guide Rail as shown in the illustration below. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2933201	A2933205	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (NRG/SVN)	1	1	77	1
A2933202	A2933206	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (RIC LT)	1	1	77	1
A2933203	A2933207	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (RIC EU)	1	1	77	1
A2933204	A2933208	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (INF/LAN) *	1	1	77	1

* See Update 2 for further changes to P/N A2933208.

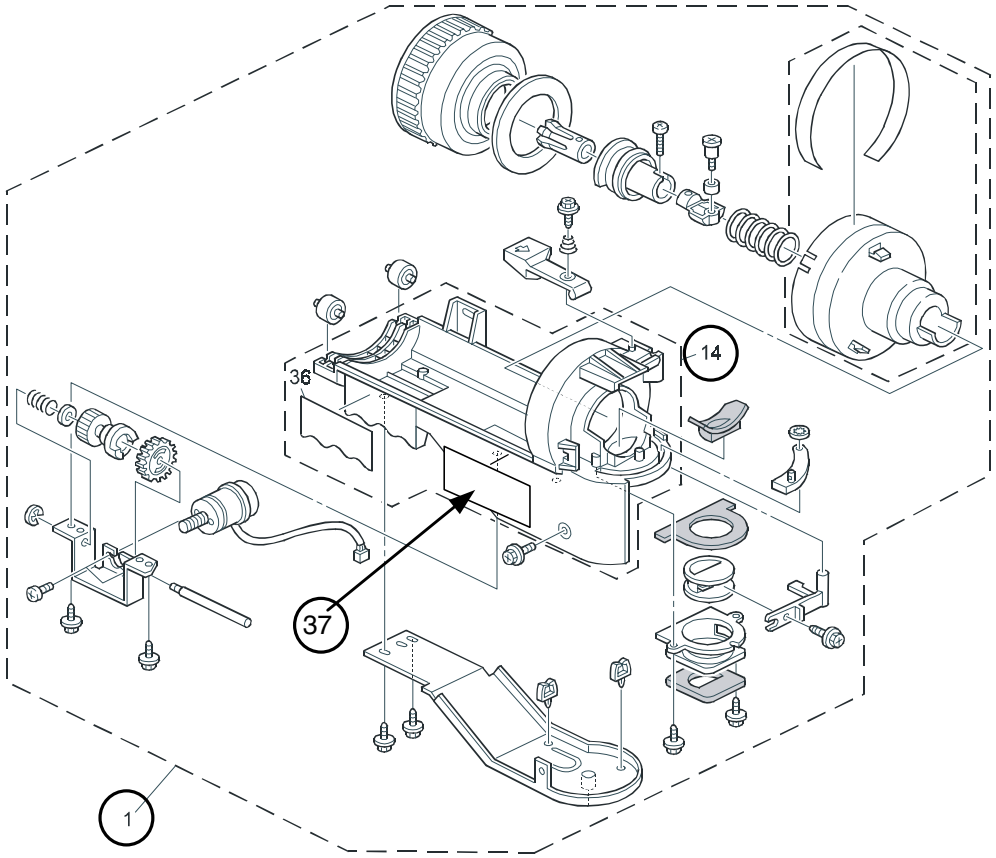
Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

- **UPDATE 2:** **Caution Decal –** A Caution Decal has been added to the Toner Bottle Holder Assembly. The Decal has been applied to the change made in Update 1 and affects P/N A2933208. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2933208	A2933209	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y	1	1	77	1
A2293223	A2933237	Bottle Holder	1	1	77	14
-	A2933238	Decal - Caution	1	-	77	37 *

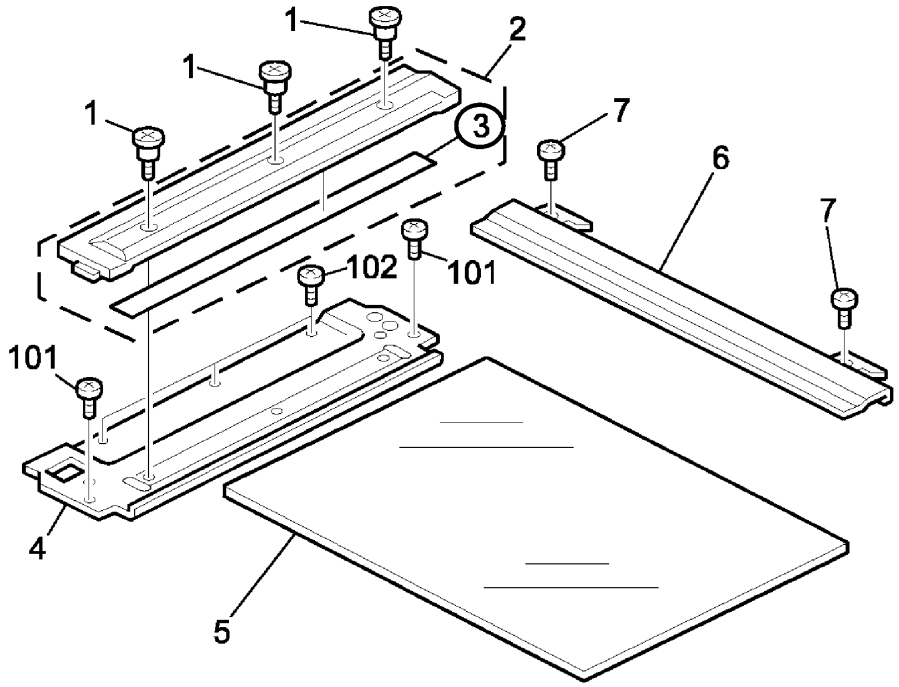
* Denotes new item number.

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

Continued…

- **UPDATE 3:** **Left Scale Sheet –** To ensure that the Left Scale fits the exposure glass correctly, the width of the Left Scale Sheet has been changed from 15.5 mm to 14.5 mm. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



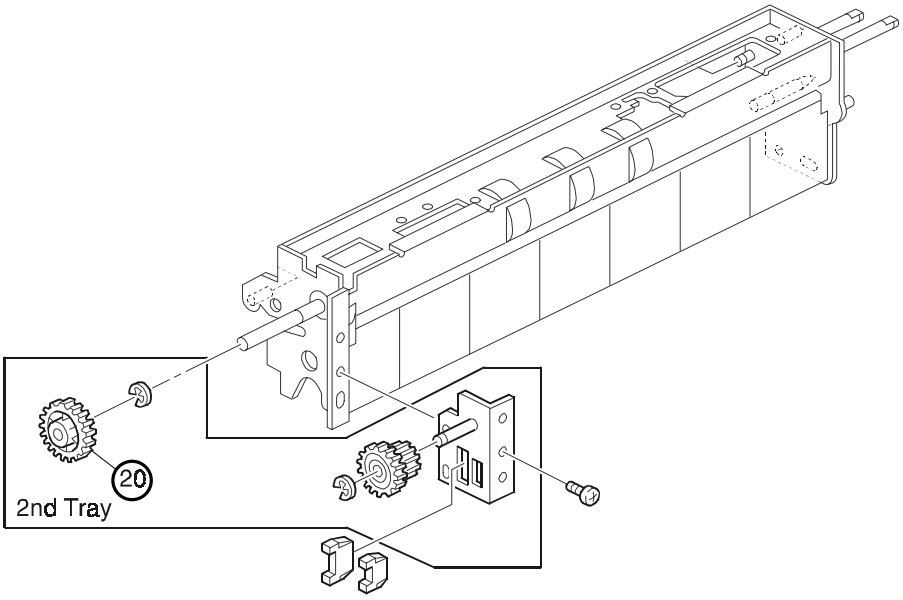
					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A1931752		Left Scale Guide	1	1	41	3
	▶ A2931793	Left Scale Sheet				

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

Continued…

- **UPDATE 4:** **Gear- 32Z –** To improve the reliability, Gear-32Z with the one-way clutch has been changed. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AB014155	AB013778	Gear – 32Z	1	1	63	20

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 020 REISSUE ★ **12/22/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

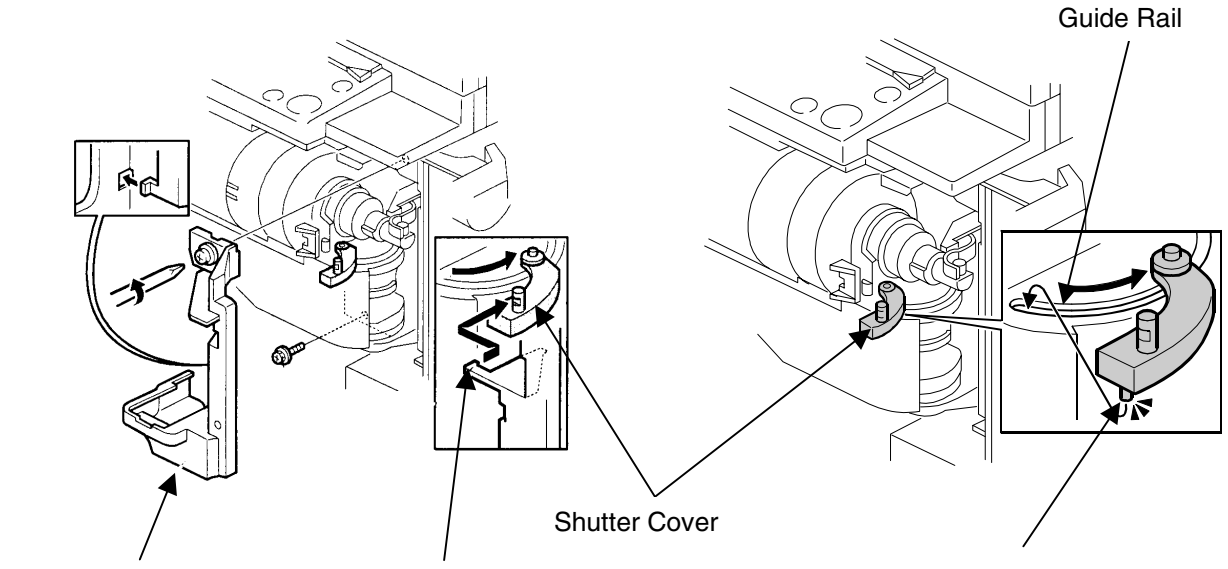
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Toner Bottle Holder –** If the Shutter Cover is not hung on the hook of the Right Inner Cover, machine vibration may cause the Inner Shutter to move and cover the entrance to the Toner Hopper. To secure the Shutter Cover in place, a boss (ϕ2, h=2) has been added to the Cover. When installing the Right Inner Cover, be sure to place the boss in the Guide Rail as shown in the illustration below. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2933201	A2933205	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (NRG/SVN)	1	1	77	1
A2933202	A2933206	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (RIC LT)	1	1	77	1
A2933203	A2933207	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (RIC EU)	1	1	77	1
A2933204	A2933208	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y (INF/LAN) *	1	1	77	1

* See Update 2 for further changes to P/N A2933208.

Continued…

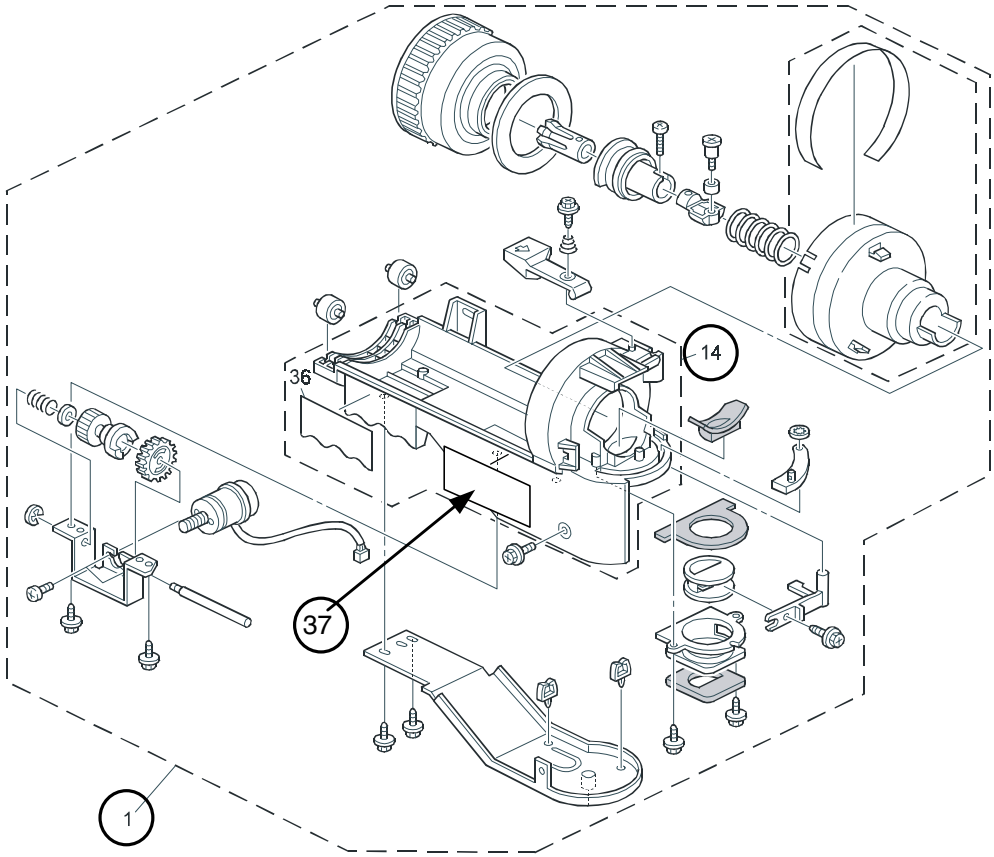
© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

★ UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705400242
Gestetner 3370	H4805400429
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4705400391
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4805500001
Savin 2055DP	H4705400242
Savin 2070DP	H4805400429

- **UPDATE 2:** **Caution Decal –** A Caution Decal has been added to the Toner Bottle Holder Assembly. The Decal has been applied to the change made in Update 1 and affects P/N A2933208. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2933208	A2933209	Toner Bottle Holder Ass'y	1	1	77	1
A2293223	A2933237	Bottle Holder	1	1	77	14
-	A2933238	Decal - Caution	1	-	77	37 *

* Denotes new item number.

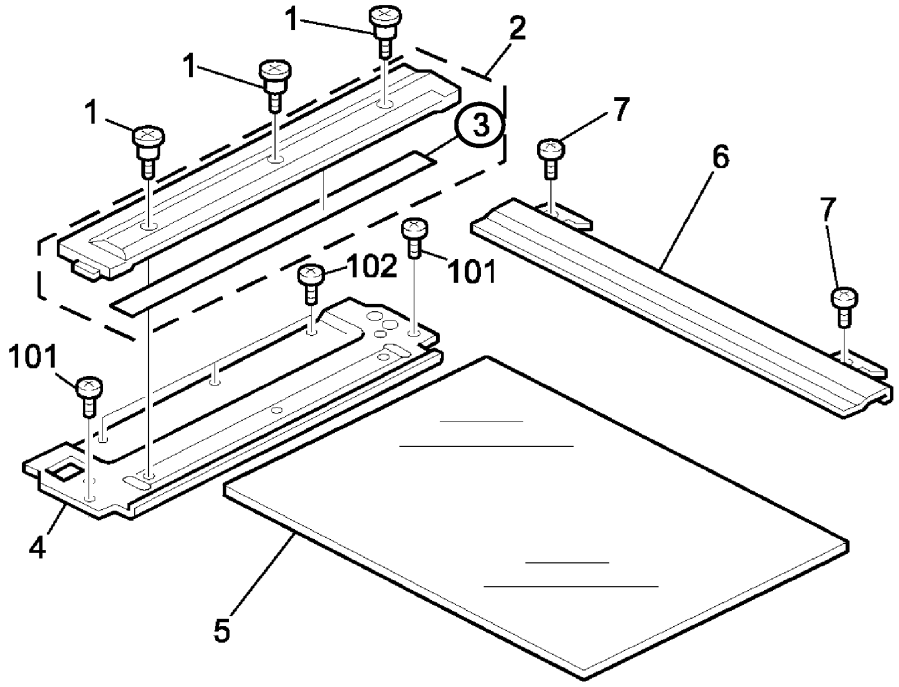
Continued…

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

- **UPDATE 3:**

Left Scale Sheet – To ensure that the Left Scale fits the exposure glass correctly, the width of the Left Scale Sheet has been changed from 15.5 mm to 14.5 mm. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A1931752		Left Scale Guide	1	1	41	3
	▶ A2931793	Left Scale Sheet				

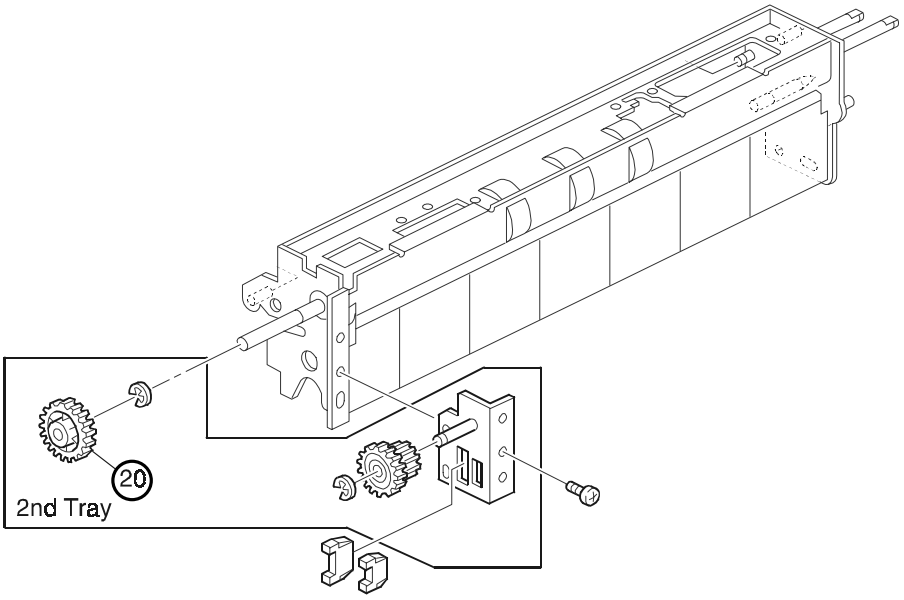
★ UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Left Scale Guide installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705700002
Gestetner 3370	H4805700001
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4705700331
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4805600339
Savin 2055DP	H4705700002
Savin 2070DP	H4805700001

Continued…

- **UPDATE 4:** **Gear- 32Z –** To improve the reliability, Gear-32Z with the one-way clutch has been changed. Please update your Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AB014155	AB013778	Gear – 32Z	1	1	63	20

★ UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Gear – 32Z installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705600638
Gestetner 3370	H4805600004
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4705600648
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4805600101
Savin 2055DP	H4705600638
Savin 2070DP	H4805600004

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 021 **11/28/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: IMAGE QUALITY OF HALF TONES AND GRAY SCALES

SYMPTOM:

The image quality of half tones or gray scale areas on printouts are not clear or sharp enough.

SOLUTION:

1. Recommend customers to set the Edge Smoothing function to the OFF position in the printer driver when printing. The default setting of the Edge Smoothing function for each driver language and printer controller type is as follows:

Driver Language	Controller Type A	Controller Type B
PCL5e	ON	OFF
PCL6	ON	OFF
PostScript3	OFF	OFF

2. Change the Printer Dot Edge parameter in the printer SP mode (Printer SP – Settings – Printer Dot Edge Parameter) from “Normal” (default) to “SP Mode”.

NOTE: *With this change, the print line width can be thickened. This change is valid only when the Edge Smoothing function is set to “OFF”.*

3. Change Copy SP2114 (Printer Dot Edge parameter setting) to the original settings.

SP Number	Original Setting
SP2114-1	7
SP2114-2	7
SP2114-3	11
SP2114-4	7

4. If the customer likes even thicker line width, change Copy SP2114 (Printer Dot Edge parameter setting) from the original settings to the thicker settings.

SP Number	Original Setting	Thicker Setting
SP2114-1	7	10
SP2114-2	7	10
SP2114-3	11	15
SP2114-4	7	10

NOTE: *Do not set any other combinations of the four settings other than in the above table. Otherwise an unexpected image appears on printouts. This SP is only valid when the Edge Smoothing function is set to “OFF” and the Printer Dot Edge Parameter in the printer SP Mode is set to “SP Mode”.*

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 022 **01/15/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL: A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE CODE 337

SYMPTOMS:

SYMPTOM 1: A Service Code 337 occurs intermittently during a copy/print job or at power up.

SYMPTOM 2: A Service Code 337 is not displayed but is recorded in the service code logging data.

CAUSES:

CAUSE 1: A Capacitor had failed on the BICU Board.

CAUSE 2: When the Main Switch is turned "OFF" the 24vdc is removed before the 5vdc. This may cause a Service Code 337 to occur. Since this occurs when the machine is being turned "OFF", there is no Service Code 337 displayed, but the code is still recorded in the logging data.

SOLUTIONS:

SOLUTION 1: Replace the BICU Board (P/N: A2937552).

NOTE *The part number has not changed.*

SOLUTION 2: Update the firmware to level "H" version 3.11.1 or higher.

NOTE ***SYMPTOM 2 does not require the replacement of the BICU Board. System 2 only requires the firmware to be updated to Level "H" version 3.11.1 or higher.***

The firmware revision "H" version 3.11.1 (file name A292REVH.EXE) can be downloaded through the Technology Solution Center FTP Site http://tsc.ricohcorp.com.

NOTE *Refer to Facts Line Bulletin # FL002 and Publication Bulletin #023 for more information about the FTP Internet Web Site and EPROM / Flash Card Exchange program.*

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style BICU Board installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4705500174 to H4705500177, H4705500179, H4705500182, H4705500184, H4705500185, H4705500188, H4705500189 to H4705500206, H4705500210 to H4705500216, H4705500230, H4705500234, H4705500236, H4705500237, H4705500240, H4705500249, H4705500257, H4705500260, H4705500263, H4705500266, H4705500267, H4705500282, H4705500284, H4705500291, H4705500294, H4705500296, H4705500297, H4705500299, H4705500526 to H4705500716. H4705600001 to H4705600196, H4705600198, H4705600199, H4705600201, H4705600203, H4705600205, H4705600228, H4705600232, H4705600234, H4705600240, H4705600264, H4705600272, H4705600647 to H4705600860. H4705700331 to H4705700775. H4705800301 to H4705800800, H4705800901 to H4705801050. H4705900166, H4705900169 to H4705900220, H4705900222 to H4705900225, H4705900227 to H4705900241, H4705900244 to H4705900255, H4705900257 to H4705900319, H4705900321 to H4705900324, H4705900326 to H4705900462, H4705900464 to H4705900598, H4705900601 to H4705900615, H4705900617 to H4705900629, H4705900631 to H4705900635, H4705900637 to H4705900639, H4705900641, H4705900644, H4705900646 to H4705900650, H4705900652 to H4705900663, H4705900665 to H4705900668, H4705900670 to H4705900678, H4705900680, H4705900682, H4705900684 to H4705900701, H4705900703 to H4705900706, H4705900708 to H4705900710, H4705900712, H4705900714 to H4705900717, H4705900719 to H4705900725, H4705900727, H4705900729, H4705900731, H4705900732, H4705900734, H4705900735, H4705900737, H4705900738, H4705900740 to H4705900754, H4705900756 to H4705900780, H4705900782 to H4705900789, H4705900791 to H4705900798, H4705900800 to H4705900816, H4705900819 to H4705900821, H4705900824, H4705900825, H4705900827 to H4705900831, H4705900834 to H4705900845, H4705900850, H4705900852, H4705900854 to H4705900856, H4705900858, H4705900860 to H4705900868, H4705900871 to H4705900873, H4705900878, H4705900897, H4705900906, H4705900916, H4705900983, H4705901060, H4705901062, H4705901088, H4705901099, H4705901105, H4705901120, H4705901125.
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4805500046 to H4805500427, H4805500429, H4805500431 to H4805500472, H4805600101 to H4805600201, H4805600203 to H4805600207, H4805600209 to H4805600499, H4805700311 to H4805700328, H4805700330 to H4805700615, H4805800001 to H4805800155, H4805800326 to H4805800705.
Savin 2055DP Gestetner 3355	H4705500301 to H4705500308, H4705500311 to H4705500331, H4705500333, H4705500431, H4705500435, H4705500440, H4705500443, H4705500452, H4705500465, H4705500476, H4705500477, H4705500484, H4705500487, H4705500489, H4705500525, H4705600417 to H4705600420, H4705600423 to H4705600439, H4705600441 to H4705600446, H4705600448 to H4705600646, H4705700001 to H4705700330, H4705800001 to H4705800300, H4705800801 to H4705800900, H4705900001 to H4705900164.

Continued…

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Savin 2055DP Gestetner 3355	H4705500301 to H4705500308, H4705500311 to H4705500331, H4705500333, H4705500431, H4705500435, H4705500440, H4705500443, H4705500452, H4705500465, H4705500476, H4705500477, H4705500484, H4705500487, H4705500489, H4705500525, H4705600417 to H4705600420, H4705600423 to H4705600439, H4705600441 to H4705600446, H4705600448 to H4705600646, H4705700001 to H4705700330, H4705800001 to H4705800300, H4705800801 to H4705800900, H4705900001 to H4705900164.
Savin 2070DP Gestetner 3370	H4805500473 to H4805500652, H4805600001 to H4805600100, H4805700001 to H4805700125, H4805700127 to H4805700144, H4805700146 to H4805700150, H4805700152 to H4805700154, H4805700156 to H4805700191, H4805700193 to H4805700198, H4805700200 to H4805700202, H4805700205 to H4805700208, H4805700211 to H4805700213, H4805700219 to H4805700221, H4805700223, H4805700225, H4805700227 to H4805700232, H4805700235 to H4805700238, H4805700240 to H4805700257, H4805700259 to H4805700269, H4805700271 to H4805700277, H4805700279 to H4805700310, H4805800156 to H4805700163, H4805800165 to H4805800170, H4805800172 to H4805800187, H4805800189, H4805800191, H4805800192, H4805800194, H4805800195, H4805800197 to H4805800199, H4805800201 to H4805800256, H4805800258 to H4805800325, H4805900002, H4805900005 to H4805900007, H4805900009 to H4805900027, H4805800029, H4805900031, H4805900033, H4805900034, H4805900036, H4805900039, H4805900041 to H4805900057, H4805900059 to H4805900063, H4805900065 to H4805900075, H4805900077, H4805900079, H4805900080, H4805900083, H4805900084, H4805900086 to H4805900090, H4805900092, H4805900093, H4805900095 to H4805900100, H4805900103, H4805900105, H4805900109 to H4805900112, H4805900114, H4805900116 to H4805900130, H4805900132 to H4805900149, H4805900151 to H4805900189, H4805900191 to H4805900195, H4805900197, H4805900199, H4805900200, H4805900202, H4805900206, H4805900209, H4805900210, H4805900212 to H4805900214.

Continued…

RETURN PROCESS:

The Technology Solutions Center has established an assertive program for the return of all BICU Boards that exhibit the SC337 phenomenon. The program is simple but requires the cooperation of each location to ensure a smooth flow of returned boards. In an effort to meet the demand for replacement BICU Boards we request your cooperation to identify priority machines exhibiting the Service Code 337 - Symptom 1 problem. Please indicate machines that are a priority by marking an **"X"** in the priority column on the BICU Board Return Authorization form.

RETURN AUTHORIZATION:

Fax the completed form to **714-566-2680** to obtain a Material Return Authorization Number.

REPLACEMENT BICU BOARDS:

Ricoh Electronics Inc. will contact your location by fax with the MRA number and automatically ship replacement BICU Boards based on the count submitted on the attached MRA Form.

FINAL RETURNS:

Package all BICU Boards for return to the address provided. Ricoh Electronics INC. will maintain a balance between what was shipped as replacements and what was actually returned. Include a copy of the MRA Form inside and outside of the return package.

RETURN TO:

Ricoh Electronics Inc.
Mr. Minh C La
1101 Bell Ave
Tustin, Ca 92780-6428

BILLING:

The servicing location is required to return all defective BICU Boards within 14 business days of receiving replacement boards or they will be billed for the parts. If the quantity of returned boards is less than the quantity shipped to your location, REI will begin the billing process for the normal cost for the BICU Boards within 14 days.

DEADLINE:

This program expires on 12/31/01.

Continued…

MRA FORM FOR THE BICU BOARD EXCHANGE

MRA #_____

INSTRUCTIONS:

Fill in the serial numbers for each affected machine and fax the form to 714-566-2680. Upon receipt of your MRA number, return each BICU Board to the address listed below:

Ricoh Electronics Inc.
Attn: Mr. Minh C La
1101 Bell Ave
Tustin, Ca 92780-6428
714-566-2680

Include A Copy of the MRA Form inside And Out Side of the Returned Package

BICU BOARD MATERIAL RETURN AUTHORIZATION FORM

Dealership:_____ **Contact:**_____

Ship to Address:_____ **Main Phone #**_____

_____ **Fax Phone #:**_____

Account #:_____

Please indicate machines that are a priority by marking an "x" in the priority column.

	Priority	Copier Serial Numbers (FOR DEALER USE ONLY)	Boards Sent Out From REI (For REI USE ONLY)	Boards Returned From Dealer (For REI USE ONLY)
1.				
2.				
3.				
4.				
5.				
6.				
7.				
8.				
9.				
10.				
11.				
12.				
13.				
14.				
15.				

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 023 **03/19/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – Aficio 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: NVRAM REMOVAL, REPLACEMENT AND HANDLING PROCEDURE

SYMPTOM:

NVRAM data is erased or pins are damaged during removal and replacement.

CAUSE:

Improper removal and handling of the NVRAM.

SOLUTION:

The following steps should be followed to help avoid damaging the NVRAM during the removal and replacement process.

CAUTION: The NVRAM contains an internal battery, so please observe the following guidelines when removing, handling and replacing the NVRAM:

NVRAM REMOVAL:

NOTE: *Before NVRAM removal, please review the NVRAM download procedure in the field service manual on page 4-79 and 4-80.*

1. Before NVRAM replacement, the main power switch machine must be turned **'OFF'** and must be left plugged in to the wall outlet. The machine is left plugged in to ensure that the frame of the machine is electrically grounded.

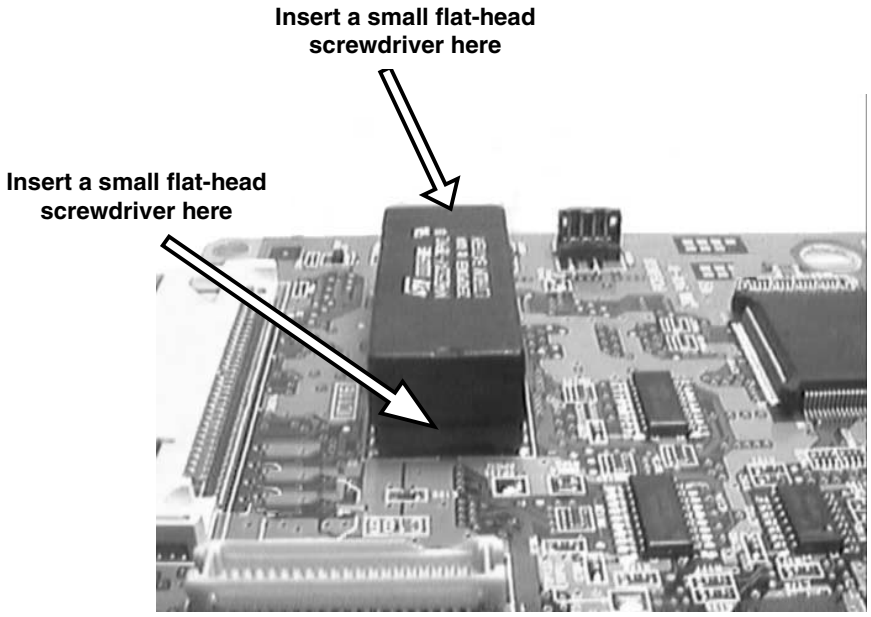
2. To eliminate the possibility of electrical static discharge (ESD) buildup in the body, touch a metal portion of the machine prior to handling any electronic components.

3. Remove the BICU Board from the machine, placing it on a non-conductive surface. If not, this may result in the loss of all the data stored inside the NVRAM.

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

4. Insert a small flat-head (standard) screwdriver into the space between the NVRAM casing and the NVRAM socket (at both ends where there are no pins) and lift it up on both ends with the screwdriver. Then, remove it by hand.



CAUTION: **Use extreme care NOT to touch any of the NVRAM pins with the screwdriver or insert the screwdriver too far under the NVRAM where the BICU Board could be damaged. Since the NVRAMs casing is made of a resin (plastic), it is necessary to take extra care when removing it so that the casing doesn't break.**

NVRAM REPLACEMENT:

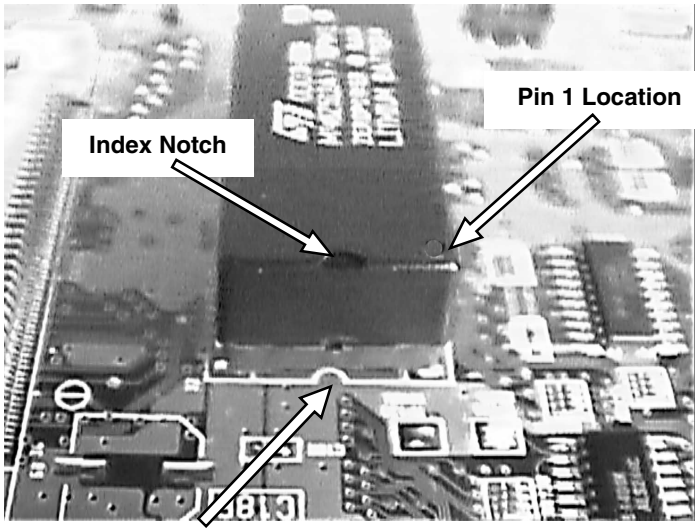
NOTE: *It is important to pay close attention to the following steps when Inserting the NVRAM.*

1. Before handling and installing the NVRAM, to eliminate the possibility of electrical static discharge (ESD) buildup in the body, touch a metal portion of the machine prior to handle NVRAM.

1. Ensure the NVRAM is oriented correctly on the BICU Board and in the socket by locating the Index Notch on both the NVRAM and BICU Board (see photo to the right).

2. Ensure that all of the pins on both sides of the NVRAM have been properly set in their holes before fully seating it into the socket.

3. Press downward on the NVRAM chip using even pressure, to ensure a proper fit and to avoid damaging to the pins.



Index Notch Location on the BICU Board

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 024 **05/31/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

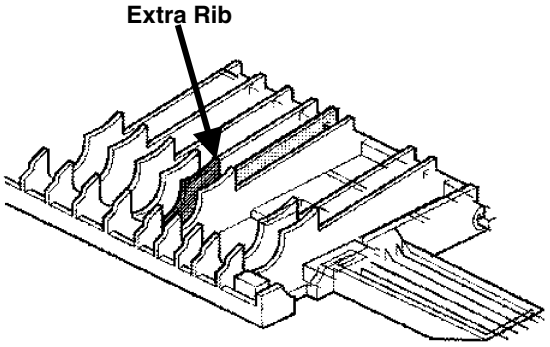
SUBJECT: PAPER JAM IN THE INVERTER SECTION

SYMPTOM:

During copying, a jam occurs in the inverter section.

CAUSE:

Defective upper exit guide plate (A2294472)
An extra rib was added to some of the guide plates during the molding process at the factory. The extra rib may interfere with the exit guide pawl causing the inverter section to jam.



SOLUTION:

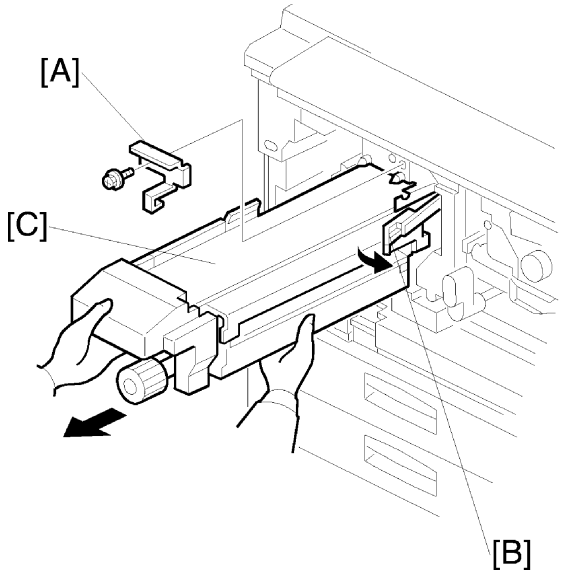
PRODUCTION COUNTERMEASURE:

The mold of the exit guide plate has been changed.

FIELD COUNTERMEASURE PROCEDURE:

1. Turn off the main power switch.
2. Open the front cover.
3. Remover the stopper [A](1 screw).
4. While releasing the lever [B], pull out the fusing unit [C] as shown.

NOTE: *Hold the bottom of the fusing unit as shown.*



Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

5. Open the upper exit guide plate (Lever E2) and inspect the guide plate.
    - If the guide plate does not have the extra rib, no further action is required.
    - If the guide plate has the extra rib then performed the field modification in step 6.

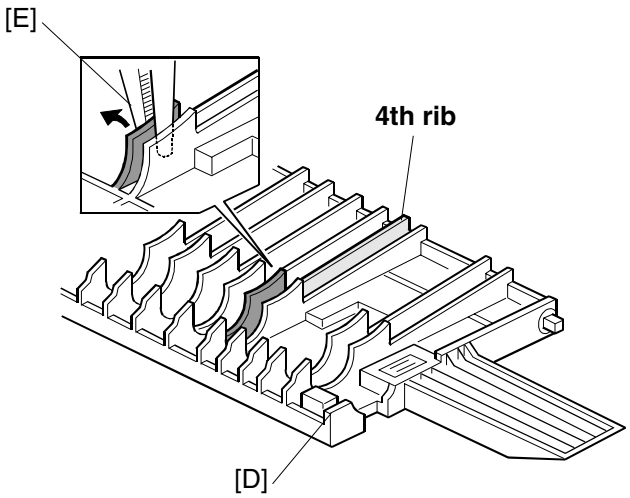
Good
This guide plate does not have the extra rib, no further action is required.



Bad
This guide plate has the extra rib, the field modification in step 6 must be Performed.



6. With a pair of needle-nose pliers, bend the high-end [E] (dark shaded area as shown) of the 4th rib from, front to back at its base, breaking off & removing this portion of the rib.
7. Reassemble the machine.



Continued…

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style upper exit guide plate installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4715001857 ~
Gestetner 3370	H4815001141 ~
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4715001857 ~
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4815001141 ~
Savin 2055DP	H4715001857 ~
Savin 2070DP	H4815001141 ~

UNITS AFFECTED WITH EXTRA RIB:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured with the Serial Numbers listed below may have the upper exit guide plate installed with the extra rib during production.

Model Name	Serial Number
Gestetner 3355	H4706001191 ~ 1300, H4714900561 ~ 0940 H4715000397 ~ 0916
Gestetner 3370	H4814900186 ~ 0405, H4815000001~0300
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4706000276 ~ 1190, H4714900001~0560 H4714900941 ~ 1637, H4715000001~0396 H4715000917 ~ 1856
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4806000191 ~ 440, H4814900001 ~ 0185 H4814900406 ~ 0980, H4815000301 ~ 1140
Savin 2055DP	H4706001191 ~ 1300, H4714900561 ~ 0940 H4715000397 ~ 0916
Savin 2070DP	H4814900186 ~ 0405, H4815000001 ~ 0300

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 025 **07/13/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

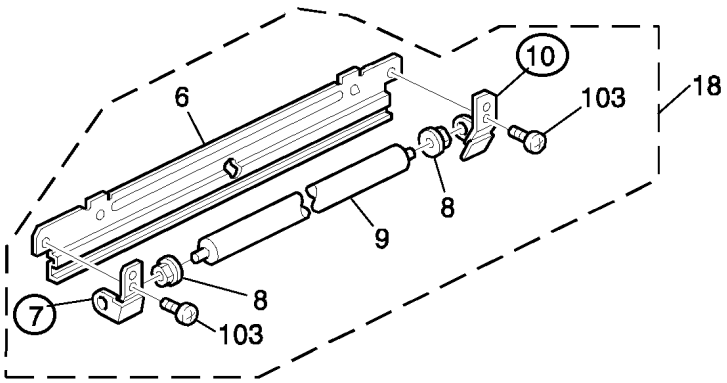
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Left/Right Holders –** To prevent the left or right holder from breaking in the middle, the shape of the pressure roller cleaning rollers have been changed. The strength of the holders have been increased by a factor of 1.65. Please update your A292/A293 Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A0974126	A2944077	Left Holder (120 V)	1	0	97	10
A0974129	A2944078	Right Holder (120 V)	1	0	97	7

NOTE: *These parts can be replaced individually but the modification is effective only when both holders are replaced as a pair.*

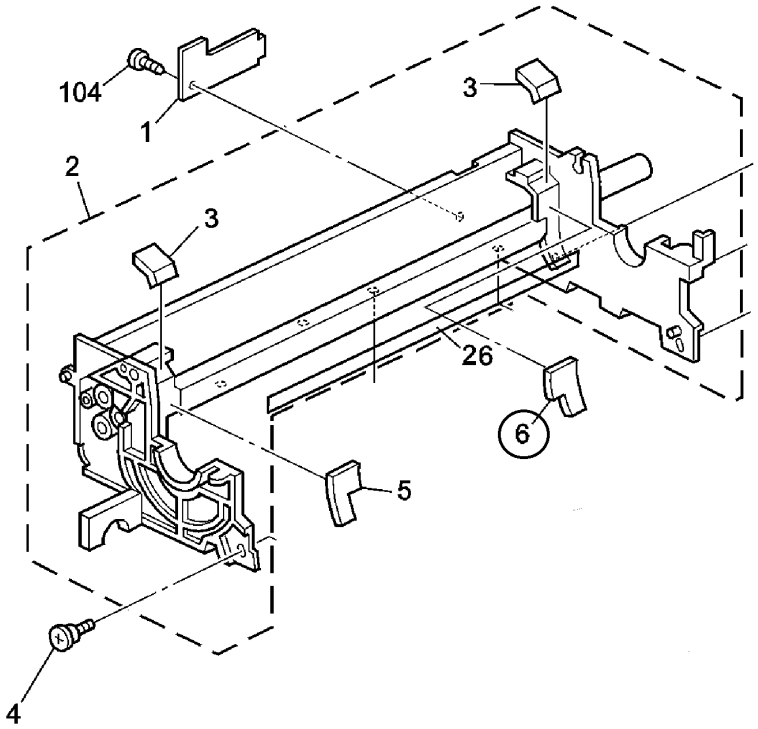
UNITS AFFECTED:

A92/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **UPDATE 2:** **Rear Drum Seal –** To standardize the rear drum seal with other models, the rear drum seal has been changed. Please update your A292/A293 Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A134 2392	A294 3572	Rear Drum Seal	1	0	91	6

UNITS AFFECTED:

A92/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 025 REISSUE ★ **08/21/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

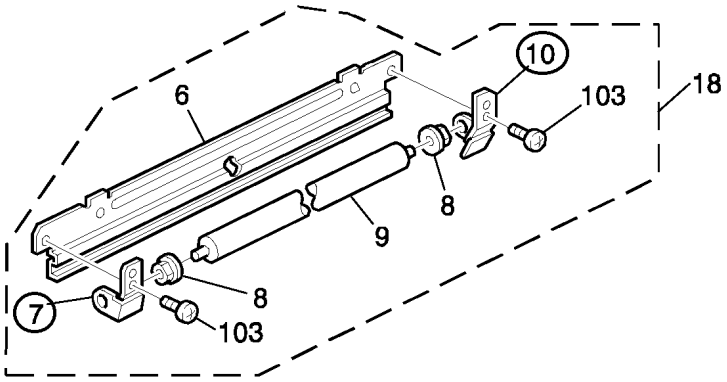
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Left/Right Holders –** To prevent the left or right holder from breaking in the middle, the shape of the pressure roller cleaning rollers have been changed. The strength of the holders have been increased by a factor of 1.65. Please update your A292/A293 Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A0974126	A2944077	Left Holder (120 V)	1	0	97	10
A0974129	A2944078	Right Holder (120 V)	1	0	97	7

NOTE: *These parts can be replaced individually but the modification is effective only when both holders are replaced as a pair.*

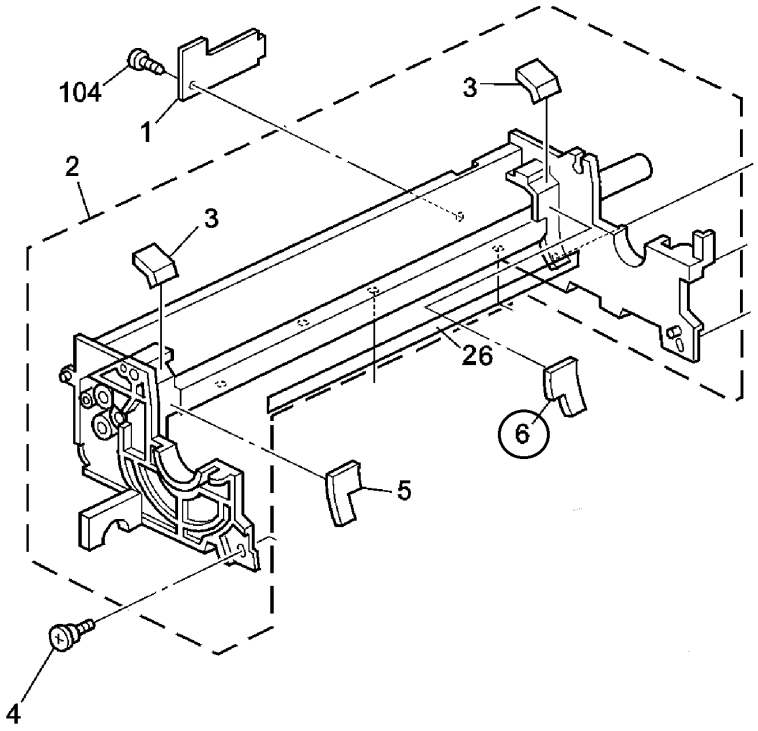
UNITS AFFECTED:

A92/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

Continued…

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **UPDATE 2:** **Rear Drum Seal –** To standardize the rear drum seal with other models, the rear drum seal has been changed. Please update your A292/A293 Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A134 2392	A294 3572	Rear Drum Seal	1	0	91	6

UNITS AFFECTED:

★ All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style rear drum seal installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4715200832
Gestetner 3370	H4815200918
Ricoh AFICIO 551	H4715200411
Ricoh AFICIO 700	H4815200192
Savin 2055DP	H4715200832
Savin 2070DP	H4815200918

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 026 **09/05/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT



SERVICE MANUAL

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 4-94 Updated Information (Dip Switches – Main Board)

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.5 TEST POINTS/DIP SWITCHES/LEDS

4.5.1 DIP SWITCHES

ADF Main Board

⇒

DPS100				Description
1	2	3	4	
0	0	0	0	Normal operating mode
0	0	0	1	Motor Test: Transport motor – Forward
0	0	1	0	Motor Test: Transport motor – Reverse
0	0	1	1	Motor Speed Adjustment (Automatic)
0	1	0	0	Original stop position adjustment – Single-sided original mode (No original skew correction)
0	1	0	1	Original stop position adjustment – Double sided original mode
1	0	0	0	Free Run: Single-sided original mode with skew correction
1	0	1	0	Free Run: Single-sided original mode without skew correction
0	1	1	0	Free Run: Double-sided original mode
Others				Do not select

"SADF" LED turns on when one of the DIP switches is on.

MCU: All the dip switches should be OFF. Do not change the settings.

4.5.2 TEST POINTS

BICU

Number	Monitored Signal
TP113	GDN
TP123	5 V_E
TP136	Not used
TP143	Not used

Paper Feed Board

Number	Monitored Signal
TP101	Ground
TP102	+24 V
TP103	Ground
TP104	+5 V

I/O Board

Number	Monitored Signal
TP104	+12 V
TP154	+5 V
TP155	Ground
TP162	+24 V
TP163	Ground
TP172	–12 V
TP173	+24 V_{INT}

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 027 **09/06/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: TANDEM TRAY ENHANCEMENT KIT

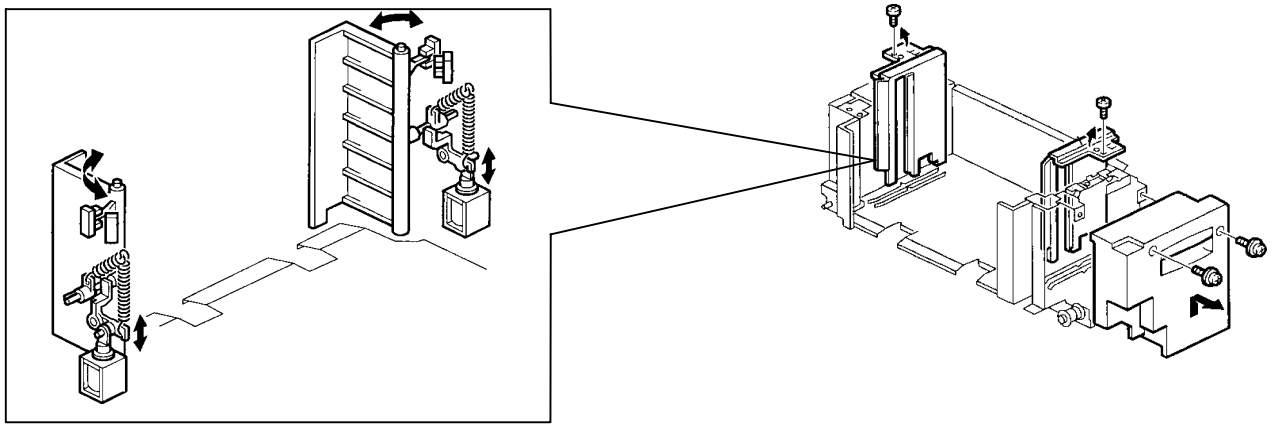
SYMPTOMS:

- Right tray does not lift up.
- Left tray back fence is damaged.

CAUSES:

Right Tray Does Not Lift Up:

The side fences re-open after the tray has been closed, causing the tray not to lift up (even when paper has been loaded).
This has a tendency to happen when the tray is forcibly closed, in which case the paper in the tray will shift to the left from this shock (causing the side fences to re-open). This can also occur if the customer mis-loads the paper in the right tray.

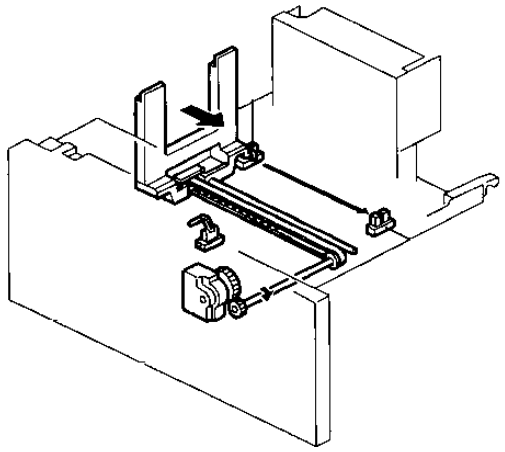


Continued…

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

Left Tray Back Fence Is Damaged:

The shock of closing the left tray (or paper mis-load) causes the right tray side fences to open, which in turn causes the left back fence to move to the right (attempting to shift the paper over to the right tray). When there is paper in the right tray, the left back fence is damaged from the resulting resistance.



SOLUTIONS:

PRODUCTION COUNTERMEASURE:

Right Tray Does Not Lift Up:

A cushion (shock absorber) has been added to the right rear inner cover of the right tray.

Left Tray Back Fence Is Damaged:

The mask ROM software for the tandem tray has been changed so that the left tray back fence does not move, even when the right tray side fences are open.

Continued…

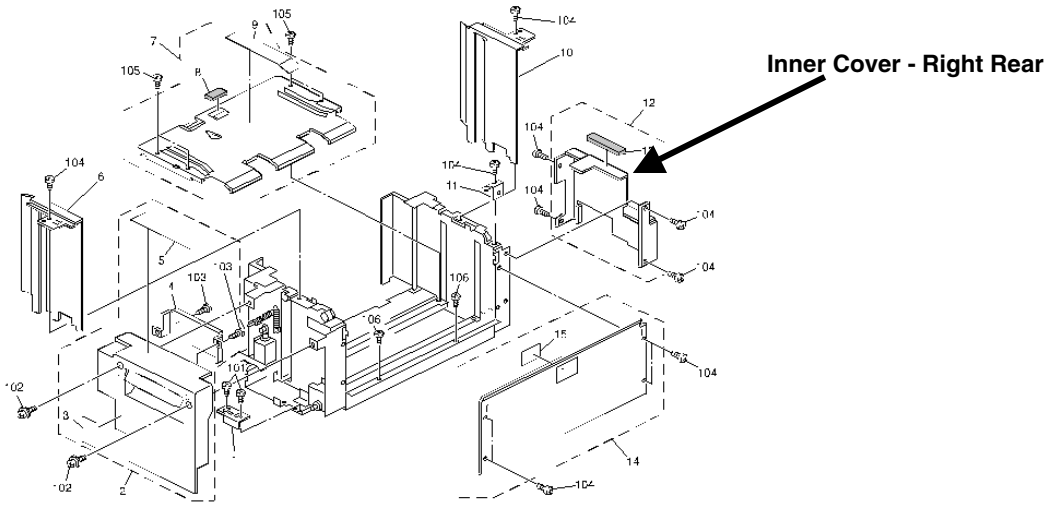
FIELD COUNTERMEASURE:

Install the Tandem Tray Enhancement Kit (P/N A2939900), which contains the following parts:

- Inner Cover – Right Rear (with cushion)

The shape of this part has been changed. In addition, a cushion has been added to this part for shock absorption.

When the tray is closed, the cushion contacts the rear side plate. As a result, even if the tray is forcefully pushed in, the cushion will absorb the shock and prevent the side fences from re-opening.



- IC – HD6433294C82P (On the Paper Feed Control Board)

The left tray can only move when the right tray is in its lowest position and there is no paper in the right tray.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new parts installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4715400151 H4715500222
Gestetner 3370	H4815400001 H4815500001
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4715301184 H4715500127
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4815400341 H4815500122
Savin 2055DP	H4715400151 H4715500222
Savin 2070DP	H4815400001 H4815500001

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 027 REISSUE ★ **10/25/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: TANDEM TRAY ENHANCEMENT KIT

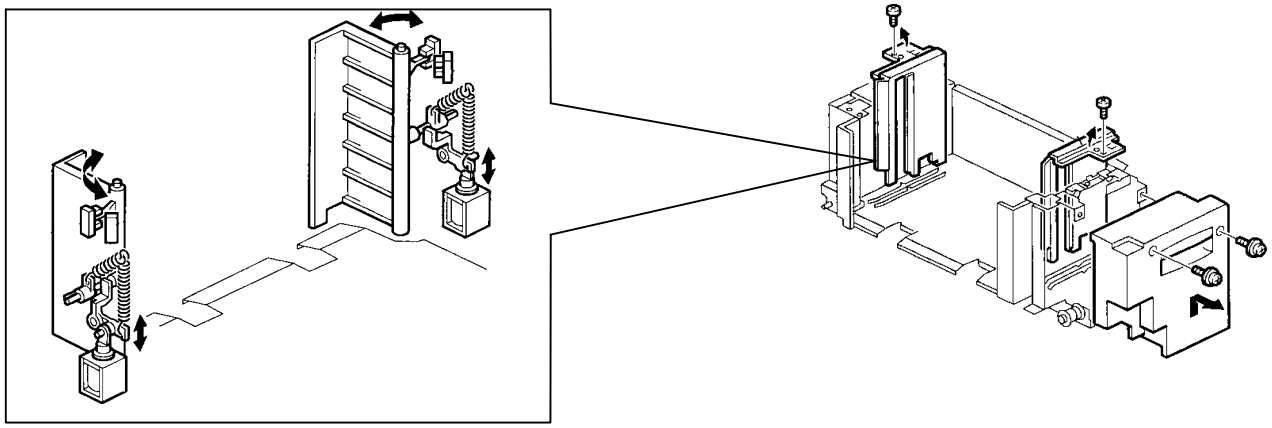
SYMPTOMS:

- Right tray does not lift up.
- Left tray back fence is damaged.

CAUSES:

Right Tray Does Not Lift Up:

The side fences re-open after the tray has been closed, causing the tray not to lift up (even when paper has been loaded).
This has a tendency to happen when the tray is forcibly closed, in which case the paper in the tray will shift to the left from this shock (causing the side fences to re-open). This can also occur if the customer mis-loads the paper in the right tray.

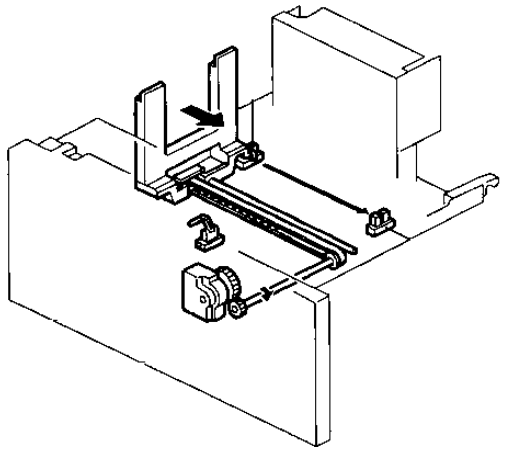


Continued…

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

Left Tray Back Fence Is Damaged:

The shock of closing the left tray (or paper mis-load) causes the right tray side fences to open, which in turn causes the left back fence to move to the right (attempting to shift the paper over to the right tray). When there is paper in the right tray, the left back fence is damaged from the resulting resistance.



SOLUTIONS:

PRODUCTION COUNTERMEASURE:

Right Tray Does Not Lift Up:

A cushion (shock absorber) has been added to the right rear inner cover of the right tray.

Left Tray Back Fence Is Damaged:

The mask ROM software for the tandem tray has been changed so that the left tray back fence does not move, even when the right tray side fences are open.

Continued…

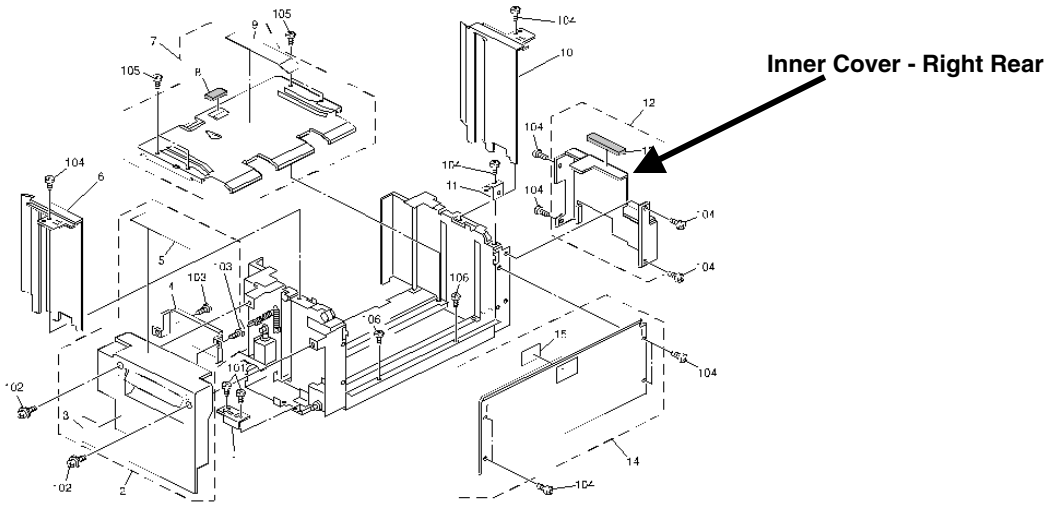
FIELD COUNTERMEASURE:

Install the Tandem Tray Enhancement Kit (P/N A2939900), which contains the following parts:

- Inner Cover – Right Rear (with cushion)

The shape of this part has been changed. In addition, a cushion has been added to this part for shock absorption.

When the tray is closed, the cushion contacts the rear side plate. As a result, even if the tray is forcefully pushed in, the cushion will absorb the shock and prevent the side fences from re-opening.



- IC – HD6433294C82P (On the Paper Feed Control Board)

The left tray can only move when the right tray is in its lowest position and there is no paper in the right tray.

★ UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new parts installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4715400151 (Tray Kit) H4715500222 (Mask ROM)
Gestetner 3370	H4815400001 (Tray Kit) H4815500001 (Mask ROM)
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4715301184 (Tray Kit) H4715500127 (Mask ROM)
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4815400341 (Tray Kit) H4815500122 (Mask ROM)
Savin 2055DP	H4715400151 (Tray Kit) H4715500222 (Mask ROM)
Savin 2070DP	H4815400001 (Tray Kit) H4815500001 (Mask ROM)

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 028 **09/19/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

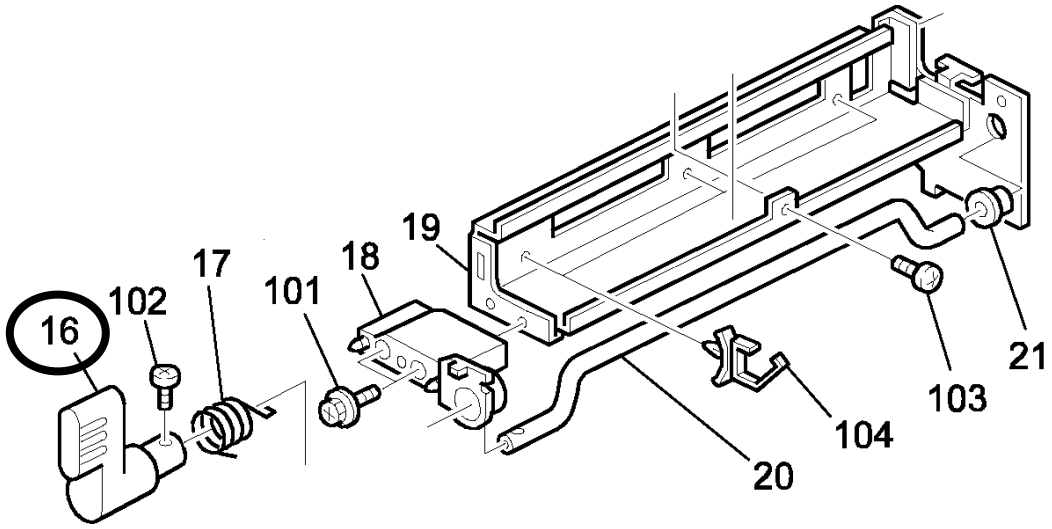
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following part catalog updates are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:** **Belt Unit Knob –** To improve ease of operation, a cover has been added to the belt unit knob.

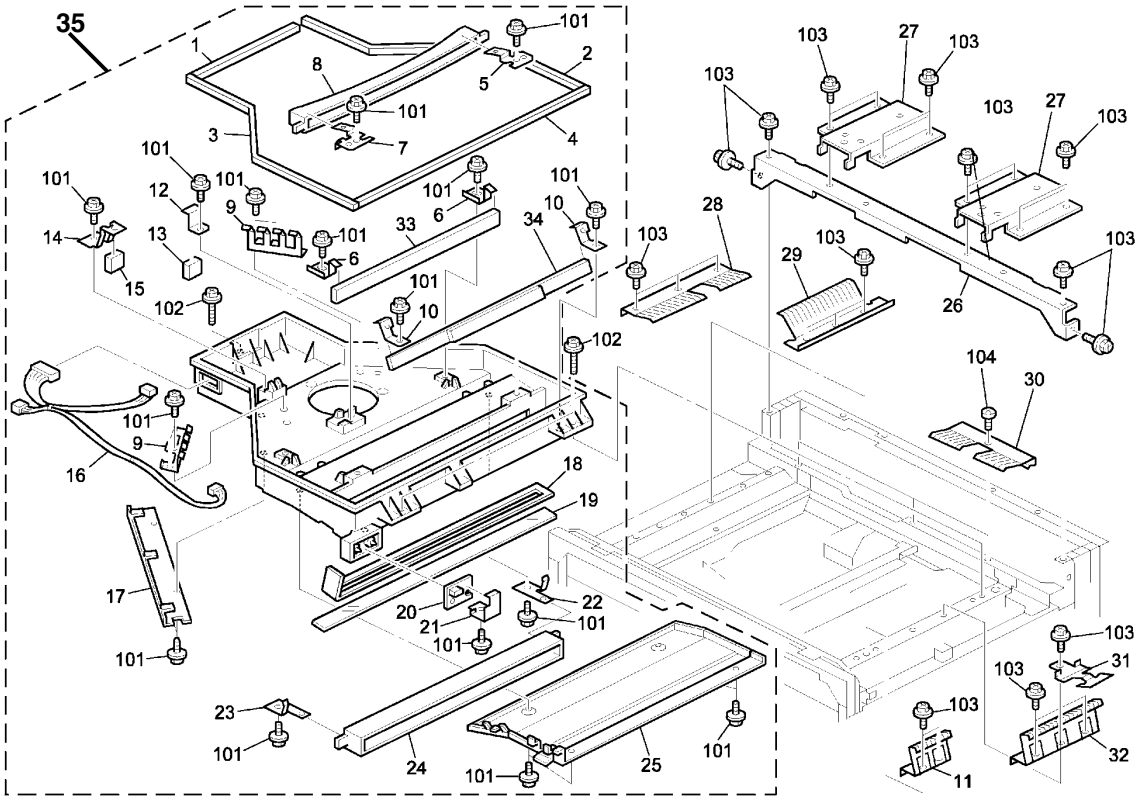


					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A0963960	A2933960	Belt Unit Knob	1	1	139	16

Continued…

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **UPDATE 2:** **Optical Housing Assembly –** As per field request, the optical housing assembly has been registered as a service part.



			REFERENCE	
NEW PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2931871	Optical Housing Assembly	1	49	35*

***DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 029 **09/28/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - 3355/3370
RICOH - AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN - 2055DP/2070DP

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- vi — Table of Content Page
- 5-5 to 5-10 — New Section 5.2 PM Counter

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



■ SERVICE MANUAL

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.5.2 TEST POINTS 4-94
4.5.3 FUSES 4-95
4.5.4 VARIABLE RESISTORS 4-96
4.5.5 LEDS 4-96
4.6 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS 4-96
4.6.1 SPECIAL TOOLS 4-96
4.6.2 LUBRICANTS 4-96
4.7 FIRMWARE HISTORY 4-100

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE 5-1
5.1 PM TABLE 5-1
5.2 PM COUNTER 5-5

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

6. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 6-1
6.1 EXTERIOR 6-1
6.1.1 FILTERS 6-1
Ozone Filter: Duct 6-1
Filter Vacuum 6-1
6.2 DOCUMENT FEEDER 6-2
6.2.1 COVER REMOVAL 6-2
6.2.2 FEED UNIT REMOVAL AND SEPARATION ROLLER REPLACEMENT 6-4
6.2.3 FEED BELT REPLACEMENT 6-5
6.2.4 PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT 6-6
6.2.5 SENSOR REPLACEMENT 6-7
Entrance and Registration Sensors 6-7
Width Sensor 6-8
Exit Sensor and Inverter Sensor 6-9
6.2.6 TRANSPORT BELT REPLACEMENT 6-10
6.3 SCANNER UNIT 6-11
6.3.1 EXPOSURE GLASS 6-11
6.3.2 LENS BLOCK 6-12
6.3.3 ORIGINAL SIZE SENSORS 6-13
6.3.4 EXPOSURE LAMP 6-14
6.3.5 SCANNER MOTOR / MCU 6-15
Scanner Motor 6-15
MCU 6-15
6.3.6 SCANNER WIRES 6-16
Rear Scanner Drive Wire 6-19
Front Scanner Drive Wire 6-20
Reinstallation 6-21
6.4 LASER UNIT 6-23
6.4.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS 6-23
6.4.2 LD UNIT REPLACEMENT 6-24

⇒5.2 PM COUNTER

Each PM part has a counter which counts up at the appropriate time. (For example, the counter for the hot roller counts up every copy, and the counter for a feed roller counts up when paper is fed from the corresponding tray.) These counters should be used as references for part replacement timing.

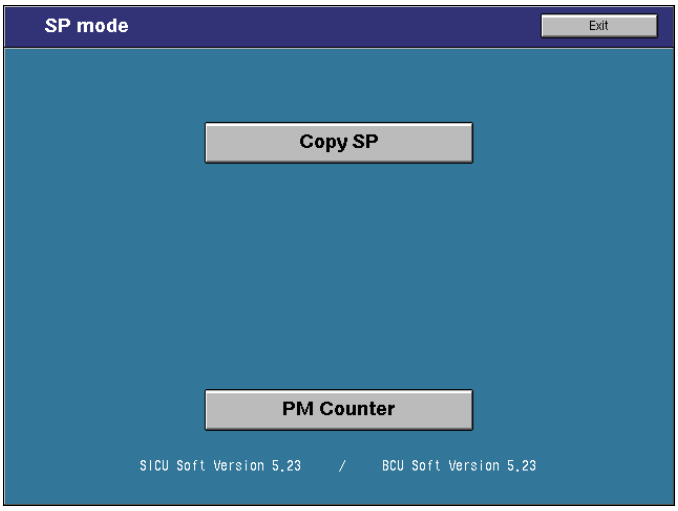
5.2.1 PM COUNTER ACCESS PROCEDURE

1) Press the following keys in sequence.

C/⊘ → 1 → 0 → 7 → C

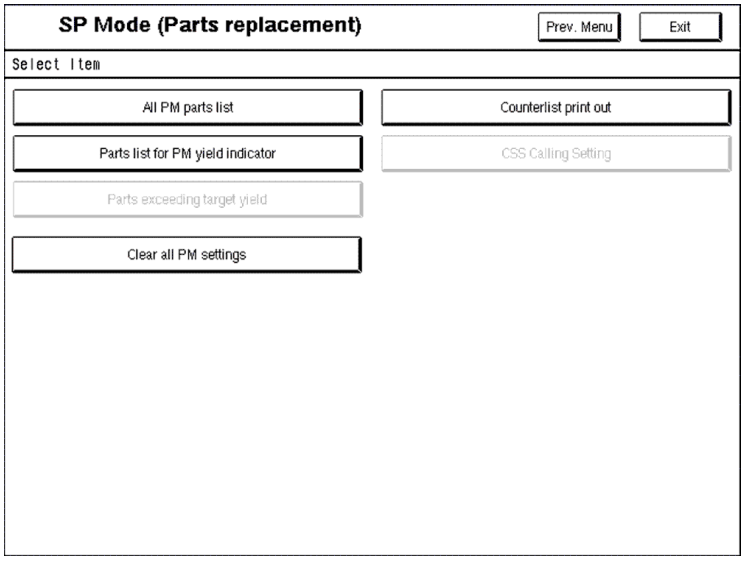
Hold the C key for more than 3 seconds

The SP mode menu is displayed.



2) Press [PM Counter] on the display.

3) The following menu appears on the display.

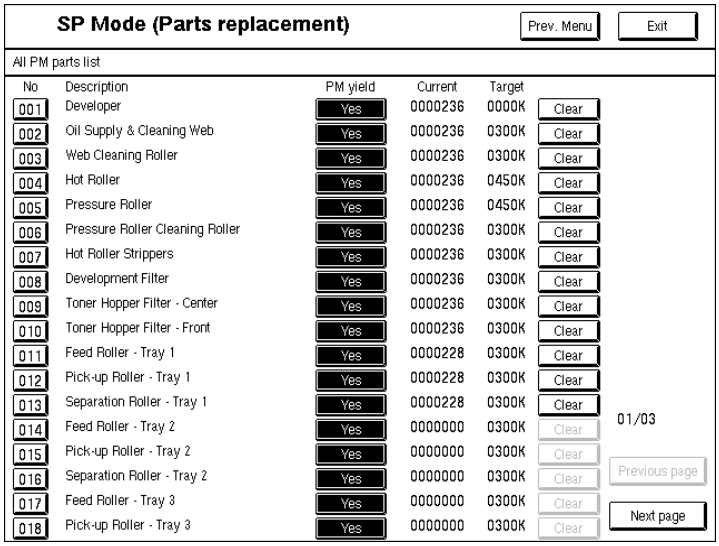


1. All PM Parts List

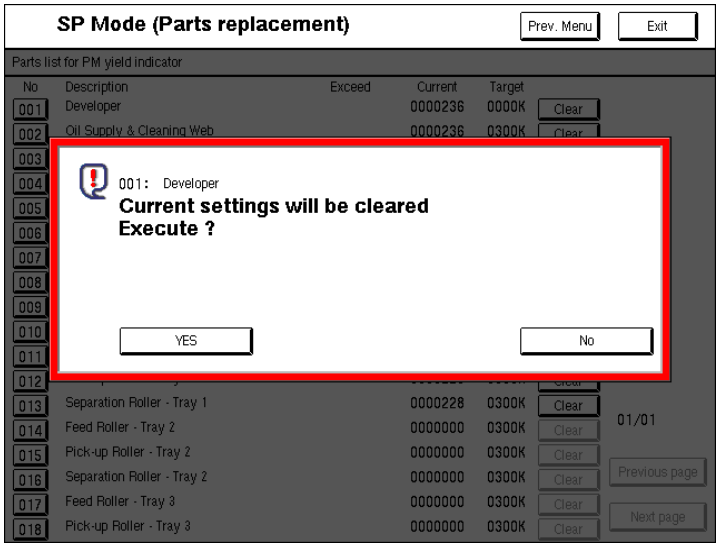
Displays all the counters for PM parts.

On this screen, the current counter and the target yield of each PM part can be checked.

Additionally, the PM yield indicator setting can be changed. To change the setting press the [Yes/No] key in the “PM yield” column. When “Parts list for PM yield” is selected in the parts replacement menu, only the parts with [Yes] in the “PM yield” are listed.

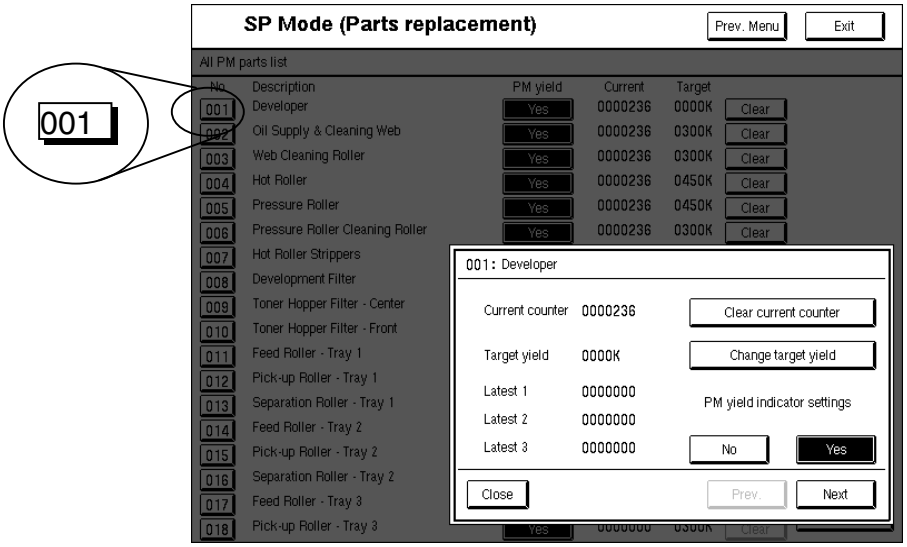


To clear a counter, press [Clear] on the display. The following appears.



Then press [Yes] to clear the counter.

If one of the keys in the “No” column is pressed, the following appears on the display.

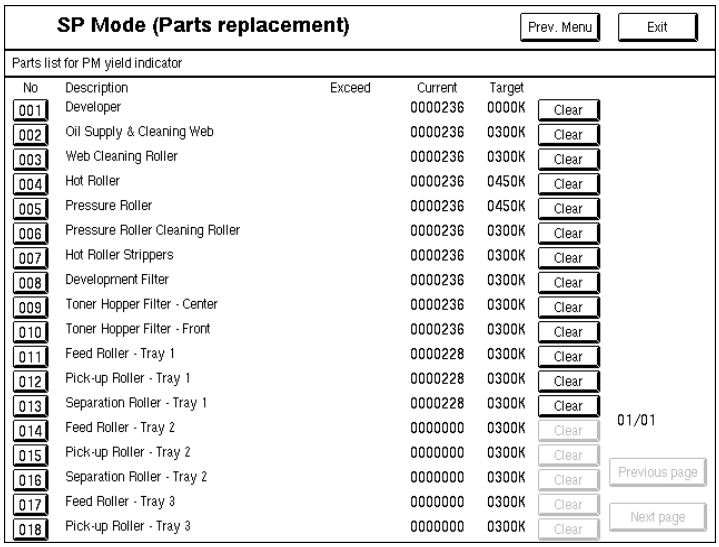


On this screen, the records of the last three part replacements are displayed. When ‘Clear current counter’ is pressed, the current counter is cleared, the current counter is overwritten to “Latest 1”, the Latest 1 counter is overwritten to “Latest 2”, and the Latest 2 counter is overwritten to “Latest 3”.

Additionally, the target yield can be changed on this screen. To change the target yield setting, do the following:

1) Press [Change target yield] on the screen.
2) Input the target yield using the ten-key pad.
3) Press the # key.

2. Parts List for PM Yield Indicator



On this screen, only the parts selected in the “All PM parts list” screen are displayed. Normally, the PM parts counters should be checked on this screen.

If the current counter exceeds the target yield, there is a * mark in the “Exceed” column.

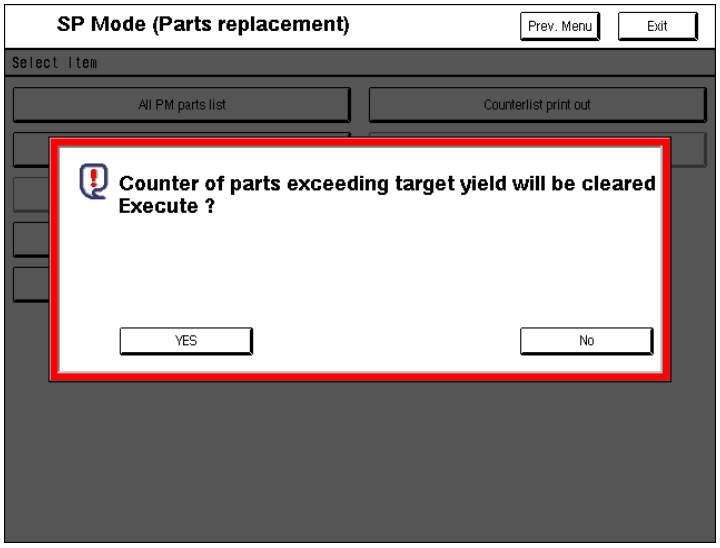
Each counter can also be cleared on this screen. To clear all counters on this screen at once, see ‘Counter Clear for Parts Exceeding Target Yield’ on the next page.

3. Parts Exceeding Target Yield

Only the parts whose counters are exceeding the target yield are displayed. If none of the PM counters is exceeding the target yield, this item cannot be selected from the parts replacement menu.

4. Counter Clear for Parts Exceeding Target Yield

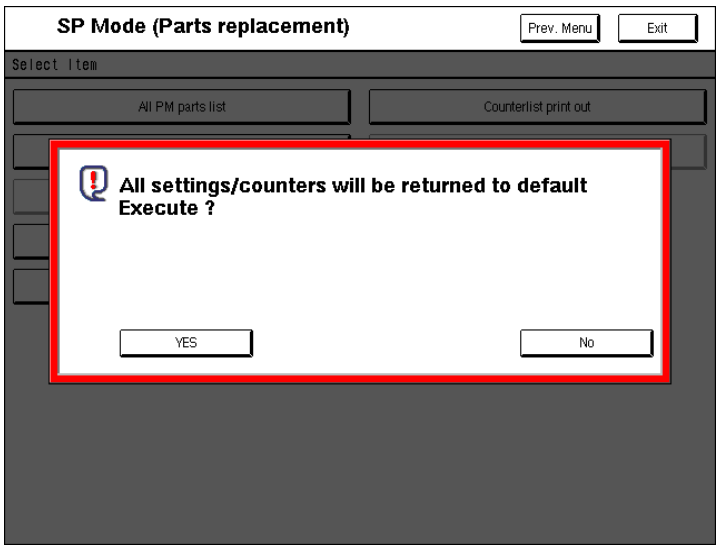
Clears all the counters which are exceeding the target yield. When this item is selected, the following appears on the display.



Press [Yes] to clear the counters.

5. Clear All PM Settings

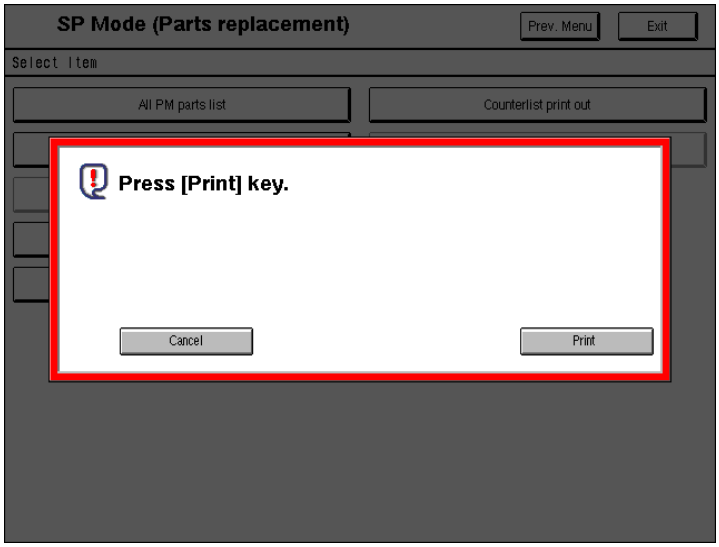
Clears all the PM counters and returns all the settings (PM parts list and target yield) to the defaults. When this item is selected, the following appears.



Press [Yes] to clear the settings.

6. Counter List Print Out

Prints a list of all the PM part counters. When this item is selected, the following appears on the display.



Press [Print] to print out the counter list.

7. CSS Calling Setting (RSS Function)

This function is for Japanese machines only.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 030 **10/08/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER - 3355/3370
RICOH - AFICIO 551/700/551P/700P
SAVIN - 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT



■ SERVICE MANUAL

GENERAL:

Ricoh is pleased to announce the immediate availability of the Ricoh Aficio 551P & 700P (Printer Versions) Digital Imaging Systems with an embedded Fiery EB-70 Controller. These systems are designed to deliver increased productivity for the most demanding workgroup or production-oriented environments.

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied.
Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

- LEGEND Service Manual - Additional models added (Aficio 551P/700P)
- LEGEND Parts Catalog - Additional models added (Aficio 551P/700P)

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved. **CONTROL NO. 106ABW**

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY		
	GESTETNER	RICOH	SAVIN
A292	3355	Aficio 551	2055DP
A293	3370	Aficio 700	2070DP
A292 w/G594 Controller	--	Aficio 551P	--
A293 w/G594 Controller	--	Aficio 700P	--

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	5/2000	Original Printing

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY		
	GESTETNER	RICOH	SAVIN
A292	3355	Aficio 551	2055DP
A293	3370	Aficio 700	2070DP
A292 w/G594 Controller	--	Aficio 551P	--
A293 w/G594 Controller	--	Aficio 700P	--
A698	Large Capacity Tray - RT37		
B302	3,000 Sheet Finisher -SR810		
B312	3,000 Sheet Finisher - SR740		
A763	Booklet Finisher - SR750		
B333/B322	Copy Tray/Connector Kit Type 700		
A812	Punch Unit Type 850		
B375	LG Kit		
G594	EB70 Pinter Controller		

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENT
*	05/2000	First Printing

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 031 **10/25/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055/2070P

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: MOTOR JOINT GEAR

NOTE *This bulletin is a duplicate of the original which had an invalid number so please disregard A292/A293-091*

SYMPTOM:

The Motor Joint Gear for the toner bottle holder gets worn down, causing noise and uneven rotation.
NOTE *This symptom has a high tendency to occur after the total counter reaches 1000K.*

CAUSE:

The amount of grease applied to the gear during production was not enough to prevent premature wearing.

SOLUTION:

An increased amount of grease has been applied to the gear at the factory since the first lot of May 2001 production.

For Field Machines Produced Before May '2001 Production:

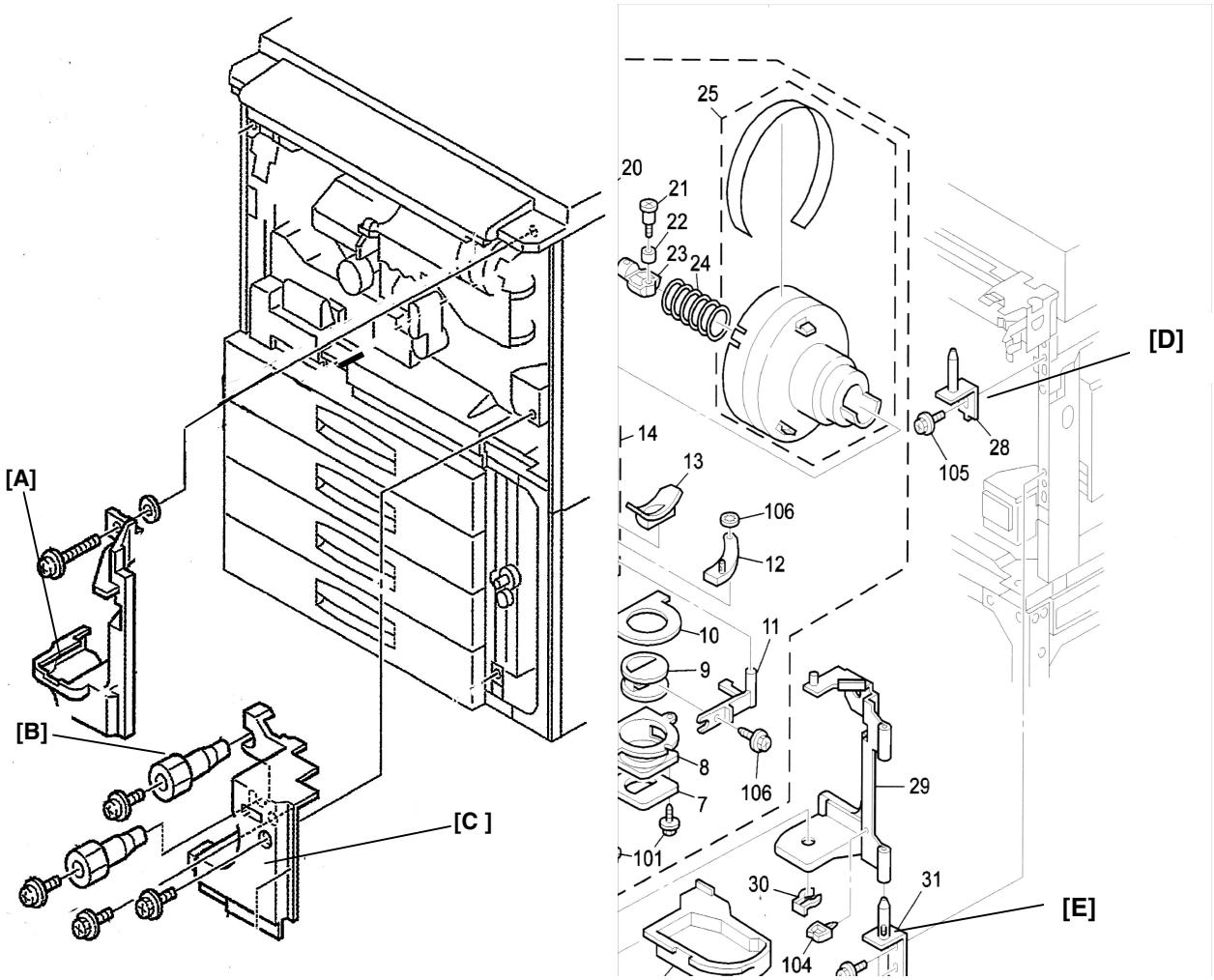
As preventative action for this symptom, grease should be applied to the entire contact surface of the Motor Joint Gear (see *Application Procedure* on next page). As a result, this countermeasure will ensure that the gear will reach its specified life cycle.

NOTE *Please make sure that grease is applied at the next PM visit or inspection.*

Continued…

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

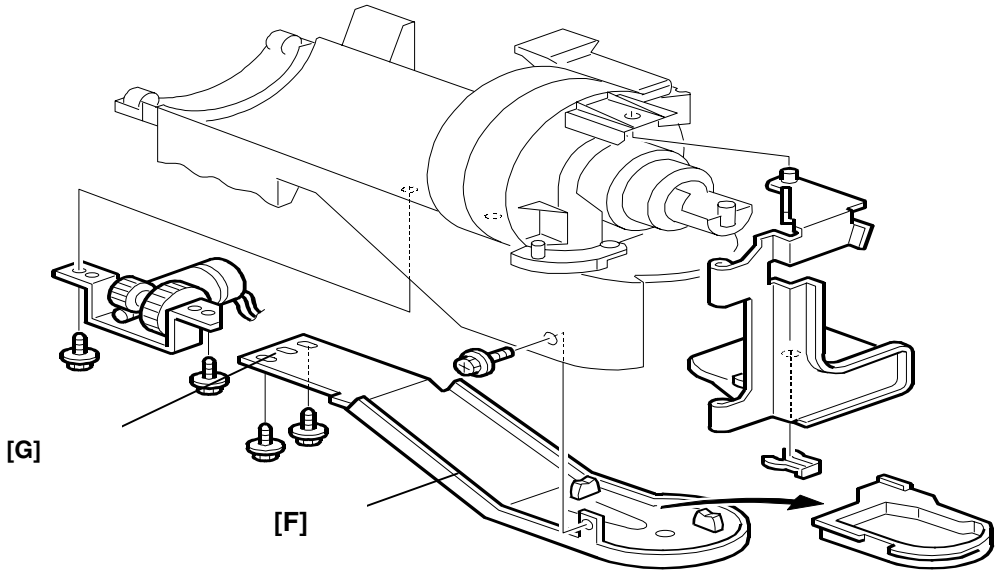
<< Grease Application Procedure >>



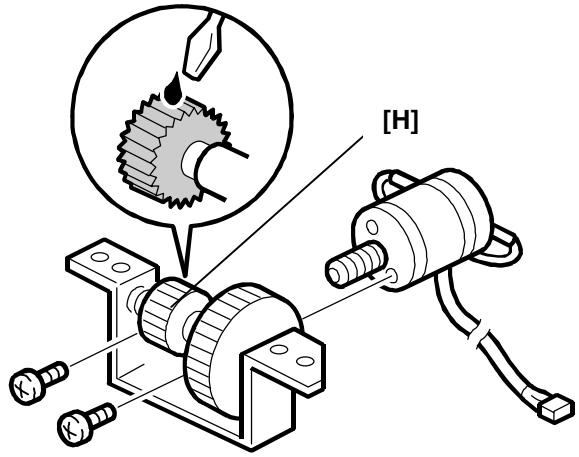
Place a sheet of paper on the floor before performing the following. When removing the toner bottle holder, please be careful to ensure that toner does not spill out.

1. Remove the toner bottle.
2. Remove the right inner cover [A] (1 screw, 1 nut).
3. Remove the registration roller knob [B] (1 screw).
4. Remove the right lower inner cover [C] (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the DC motor connector.
6. Remove the contact point stay [D] (1 screw).
7. Remove the lower hinge [E] (2 screws).
8. Remove the toner bottle holder assembly.

Continued…



9. Remove the turn bracket [F] (3 screws).
10. Remove the toner bottle bracket [G] (2 screws).



11. Apply the grease to the contact surface of Motor Joint Gear [H].
12. Re-assemble the removed parts.

NOTE *Please make sure to apply a liberal amount of grease to the entire contact surface of the gear.*

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 032 **01/22/2002**

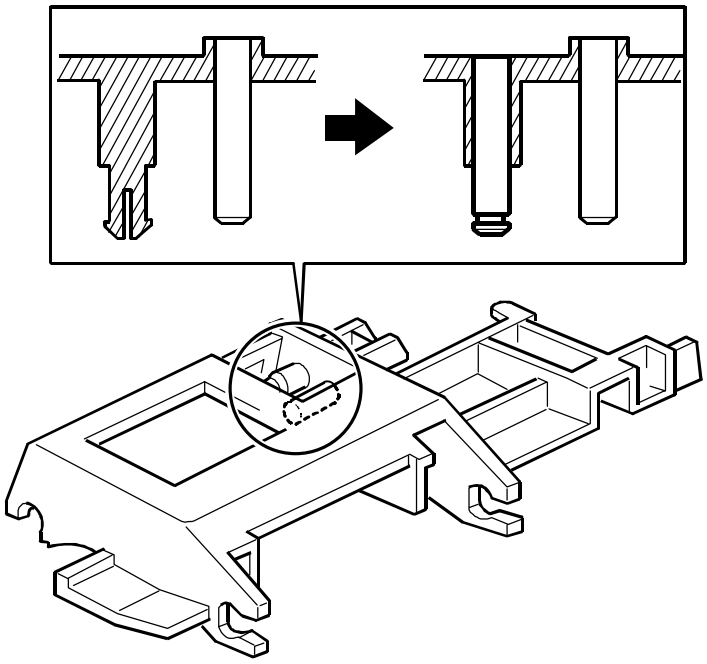
APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: PICK-UP ROLLER BRACKET

GENERAL:

The pick-up roller bracket has been changed for purposes of parts standardization. As shown below, the new bracket contains a metallic shaft for the timing pulley (A8062151) to improve the bracket's strength and durability**.** The following part correction is being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A8061314	B3011314	Pick-up Roller Bracket	1	1	25	17

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 033 **01/22/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – Aficio 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.



SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

An arrow has highlighted the revised areas ⇒.

PAGES:

- vi Updated Information (TOC)
- 4-103 Updated Information (BICU Firmware Modification History)
- 4-104 Updated Information (BICU Firmware Modification History)
- 4-105 Updated Information (BICU Firmware Modification History)
- 4-106 Updated Information (BICU Firmware Modification History)
- 4-107 Updated Information (BICU Firmware Modification History)
- 4-108 Updated Information (BICU Firmware Modification History)
- 4-109 Updated Information (BICU Firmware Modification History)

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

4.5.2 TEST POINTS 4-94
4.5.3 FUSES....4-95
4.5.4 VARIABLE RESISTORS 4-96
4.5.5 LEDS 4-96
4.6 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS 4-96
4.6.1 SPECIAL TOOLS 4-96
4.6.2 LUBRICANTS....4-96
4.7 FIRMWARE HISTORY 4-98

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE 5-1
5.1 PM TABLE....5-1
5.2 PM COUNTER 5-5

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

6. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT..... 6-1
6.1 EXTERIOR 6-1
6.1.1 FILTERS....6-1
Ozone Filter: Duct....6-1
Filter Vacuum....6-1
6.2 DOCUMENT FEEDER 6-2
6.2.1 COVER REMOVAL 6-2
6.2.2 FEED UNIT REMOVAL AND SEPARATION ROLLER REPLACEMENT....6-4
6.2.3 FEED BELT REPLACEMENT 6-5
6.2.4 PICK-UP ROLLER REPLACEMENT 6-6
6.2.5 SENSOR REPLACEMENT....6-7
Entrance and Registration Sensors 6-7
Width Sensor 6-8
Exit Sensor and Inverter Sensor 6-9
6.2.6 TRANSPORT BELT REPLACEMENT....6-10
6.3 SCANNER UNIT....6-11
6.3.1 EXPOSURE GLASS....6-11
6.3.2 LENS BLOCK 6-12
6.3.3 ORIGINAL SIZE SENSORS 6-13
6.3.4 EXPOSURE LAMP 6-14
6.3.5 SCANNER MOTOR / MCU....6-15
Scanner Motor 6-15
MCU....6-15
6.3.6 SCANNER WIRES 6-16
Rear Scanner Drive Wire 6-19
Front Scanner Drive Wire 6-20
Reinstallation 6-21
6.4 LASER UNIT 6-23
6.4.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS....6-23
6.4.2 LD UNIT REPLACEMENT....6-24

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
3. Malfunction with Printer Dot Edge Parameter Setting when Printing from Document Server **<Symptom>** When edge smoothing is off, the line thickness is not changed when the printer dot edge parameter setting (SP2114) is changed.			
⇒ **1. SP5009 (Language Selection) Deleted** This SP Mode is no longer necessary since the display language can be selected using Language Priority inside User Tools. **2. SC990 Misdetection Taiwan machines only** **<Symptom Corrected>** SC990 occurs when the document server key is pressed. The cause was determined to be a bug with the software. **3. New Items Added to Output Checks (SP5804)** The following items have been added to the output check for the tandem tray: **No** / **Description** 22 / Right Tray Lock 23 / Left Tray Lock **4. Incorrect the Drum Unit Setting** **<Feature Changed>** There is no response when the Start key is pressed, and the machine displays “copying”. This was because the drum unit had not been set properly. The new software version allows the machine to start the job even if the drum has not been set properly, however this will be indicated by an image quality problem on the printout. Therefore if this occurs, check to see if the drum has been set properly. **5. Page Numbering for Duplex Copy** **<Feature added>** Even when Center has been selected for the page numbering position and fine adjustments are made left/right, the actual printing positions on the front and rear sides will match.	A2937553 **G**	Not Available	3.11

Service Tables

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
6. Scanning Speed Increased The Document Server scanning speed has been increased from 60 to 70spm. **7. SC Display Error (SC740 instead of SC720)** **<Symptom Corrected>** For a finisher motor failure, the machine displays SC740 when it should display SC720. In addition, a SC740 occurrence is logged in the machine history. Note: SC740 is an SC error code for the A763 Booklet Finisher. **8. Paper Exit Orientation Error** **<Symptom Corrected>** Normally when switching from platen to DF mode, the copy paper exit orientation will be changed so that the front side faces up. However, when switching over to Batch (SADF) mode, the machine does not make the change (i.e. paper is still exited with the rear side facing up). **9. Error when fusing temperature has been set to 175□ or lower.** **<Symptom Corrected>** If the fusing temperature has been set to 175 or lower and thick paper feed is set for the bypass tray, the machine displays “copying” but the job does not start. **10. Display Deletion** **<Symptom Corrected>** “Tab Stock” was displayed in the Tray 2 Special Paper Indication menu (User Tools → System Settings) when the Mailbox was connected. **11. Word Correction** Some words and phrases have been corrected or improved. For example: System Setting - Auto Tray Switching			

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
⇒ **Note:** The pre-paid card and key counter have not been fully tested with the Aficio 700/551 by Ricoh, because they are not official options for the Aficio 700/551. However, the following items (1 and2) have been improved as per a field request. **1. Error when connecting the pre-paid card connector to the mainframe 4-pin key counter connector:** **<Symptoms>** 1) The copier only counts up once for every 2 copies made. 2) When the key card has been set in the machine and the main switch turned on, the machine does not detect the card unless the card is taken out and set again. * Other symptoms are possible. The actual symptom can vary depending on the type of card used. **2. Counter error after key counter is removed and jam occurs** **<Symptom>** If a jam occurs after the key counter is removed during a copy job, the counter value is less than actual number by 1 when copying starts again. **3. SC337 Miss-log** **<Symptom>** SC337 is not displayed but is recorded in the logging data. **< Cause:>** There are cases where the 24V is cut before the 5V when the main switch is turned off, causing SC337 to occur. Since this occurs when the machine is being turned off, there is no SC337 display; an error is miss-logged. **< Solution:>** To prevent SC337 from occurring at power off, both the display and logging of the error will be performed at a fixed time after occurrence (200ms). This will allow time for all power lines to drop to 0V, thus preventing miss logging of SC337.	A2937553 **H**	Not Available	3.11.1

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
⇒ **. SC990 when printing out SMC sheet: Polish language only** **<Symptoms>** When SP5590-1/-3 is used to print out the SMC sheet and Polish has been selected as the display language, the wrench symbol lights up and an SC990 error is logged. **2. SC990 at copy start when ID sensor Vsg=0V** **<Symptom>** SC990 occurs if copying is initiated when the ID sensor Vsg is at 0V. The condition is cleared when process control initialization is performed, however when the power is turned off and then on again, it will always occur when copying is initiated. **3. Diagonal white lines/image shifting with SMC sheet** **<Symptom>** When printing out the SMC sheet or counter data printout onto 81/2 x 11 lengthwise paper, diagonal white lines appear on the copy or the image data is shifted. **4. PM alert display not displayed at PM timing** **<Symptom>** The PM alert is not displayed when the PM counter reaches its set value.	A2937553 **J**	NA	3.13
			Continued

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
5. Margin adjustment setting error - Interrupt key **<Symptom>** When the interrupt key is pressed and the margin adjustment settings are changed for the new job, the machine returns to the original copy job modes/settings, but does not return to the original margin settings. **6. Default setting error when performing Memory All Clear on models for China** **<Symptom>** When SP5801 (Memory All Clear) is performed on models for China, the default for the third paper was displayed as B4, instead of what it should have been (A3). The default value (A3) will now be correctly set. **7. New SP Mode (SP5972: Document Server Counter Selection)** When copy/print files on the document server are printed out, this SP mode allows them to be counted separately as copies and prints, or all together as copies.	A2937553 **J**	NA	3.13

Mode No.	Function			Setting
5972	Document Server Counter Selection			
			Select the counter	**0: Copy** 1: Copy or Printer

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
⇒ **1. Fusing jam reset conditions changed** **<Symptoms>** To ensure that fusing "D" jams are properly cleared, the software has been changed so that the jam condition does not clear unless the fusing unit is removed and re-inserted. Previously, the condition could be reset with power Off/On if the sensor inside the unit did not detect the jammed paper. **Note:** Please instruct customers that after removing the jammed paper around the fusing unit, it is also necessary to remove and reinsert the fusing unit and check for any jammed paper inside the unit as well. **2. PM Call Display Error** **<Symptoms>** If the main power is turned Off/On while a PM call message is displayed, the message and PM alert condition are cleared. **3. LCT paper size selections added to SP5019 (Tray Paper Size Selection): A4R and LTR** **<Field Request>** To enable selection of these sizes, it is necessary to install the LG Kit and change the size settings of the side and end fences. **4. OHP/Finisher Hole-Punch Change (B312)** **<Field Request>** Software changed so that OHP transparencies cannot be used with the hole-punch feature of the Finisher (B312). When selecting OHP transparencies with the # key (bypass tray feed) and then the hole-punch function, the machine inhibits operation and a warning display appears on the panel. **5. SC 337 detection conditions changed** SC 337 detection conditions changed so that it will not be triggered by such factors as electrical noise while in standby mode.	A2937553 **K**	NA	3.16
			Continued

A292/A293 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
6. SC300 detection conditions changed: To minimize unnecessary SC300 occurrences, the SC300 detection method for charge leaks has been changed as follows: **Old:** Counter for number of leaks is cumulative for the entire ON → OFF charge output interval. **New:** Counter is reset every 500ms. **7. Printing Doesn't Start in Interrupt and Low Power Modes** **<Symptoms>** Copying not possible when the machine enters Low Power Mode from the Copy Interrupt screen, and then recovers back to Ready status (same screen). **Order of operation:** Copying in interrupt mode → Machine enters low power mode → Auto-response brings machine out of low power mode (still in interrupt) → Original set in DF, Start key pressed and original fed → Start key alternates between green and red, copies cannot be made			
⇒ **1. Display error: Cover/Slip Sheets settings** **<Symptom>** In the Cover/Slip Sheets settings screen for Trays 1/2 (User Tools → System Settings), the display for the Duplex and Simplex buttons was reversed, causing Duplex to be activated when Simplex is selected (and vice-versa). **Note:** This only occurs with the Danish, Finnish and Hungarian display languages. **2. Page numbering error in Cover/Slip Sheet mode** **<Symptom>** The page numbering printed on copies in Cover/Slip Sheet mode is incorrect when Type 4 numbering is selected (e.g. 1-1, 1-2) and the copy job has been set to begin from the 2nd page onward.	A2937553 **L**	NA	3.17

Service Tables

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 034 **02/11/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – Aficio 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SCANNER SLAMMING & SC124

SYMPTOM:

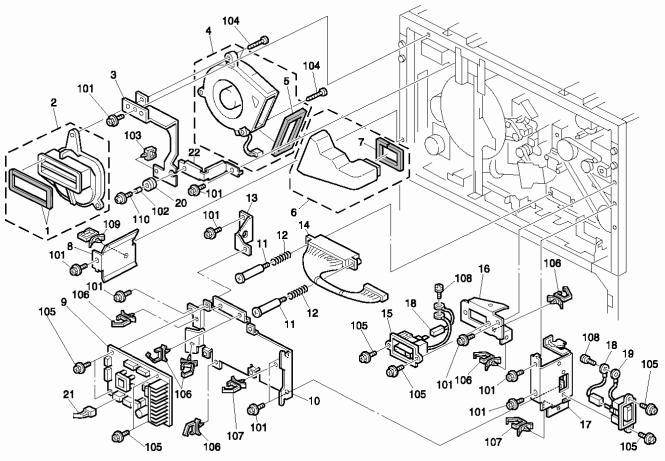
Scanner slamming occurs and/or service code 124's.

CAUSES:

1. Faulty MCU Board.
2. Scanner pulley screws are fractured and/or scanner belt tension is loose.

SOLUTION 1 - MCU BOARD:

The MCU board has been modified to more quickly detect any abnormal movement of the scanner so that SC124 will be displayed earlier than before.
The following parts correction is being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.



OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	REFERENCE PAGE	REFERENCE ITEM
A2945053	A2935180	MCU Board	1	1	131	9
					149	*

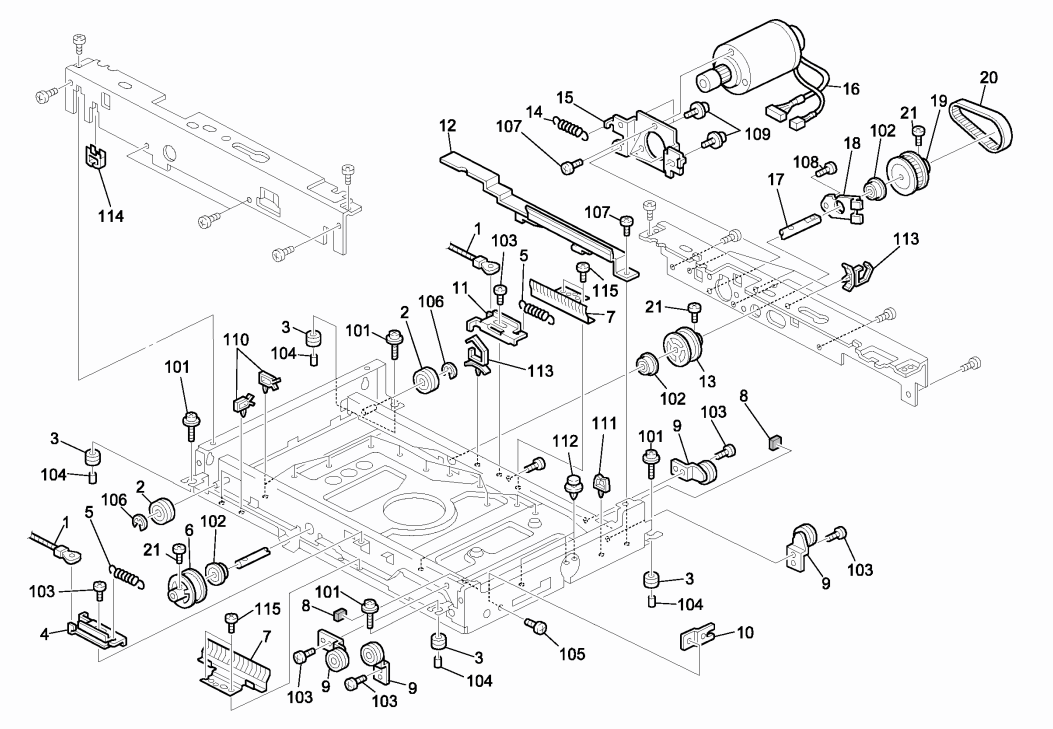
Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

SOLUTION - 2 SCANNER PULLEY SCREWS:

The scanner pulley screws have been changed to a hexagonal headless type. The strength of the new screws has been increased to 34.9kgfcm, from 20.5kgfcm to prevent them from fracturing.
The following parts correction is being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

NOTE: *Also check the scanner drive belt (index#20). A loose belt may cause SC124 and inconsistent scanner operation.*



OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	REFERENCE PAGE	REFERENCE ITEM
A2941765		Sems Screw M3x8	3	1	47	21
	A2931713	Hexagon Headless Set Screw - M3x8	3	1	47	21

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new MCU board installed during production. The serial number cut-in is not available at time of publication for the Hexagon Headless set Screws.

MODEL NAME	MCU BOARD SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4715600263
Gestetner 3370	H4815600001
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4715600780
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4815700062
Savin 2055DP	H4715600263
Savin 2070DP	H4815600001

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 035 **03/19/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: FUSING UNIT

GENERAL:

1. As per a request from the field, the Lower Drum Unit and the Fusing Unit are available as spare parts. The Fusing Unit listed below includes all components listed on pages 97, 99 and 101 (section titles "Fusing Unit 1", "Fusing Unit 2", "Fusing Unit 3").

			REFERENCE	
NEW PART NO.	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2932320	Lower Drum unit	1	89	*
A2934050	Fusing Unit – 120V	1	97	*

*DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

2. Item number correction:
Page 45 16. Optics Section 3:

			REFERENCE	
PART NO.	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**CORRECT ITEM**
A2931765	2nd Mirror	1	45	9
A2931767	3rd Mirror	1	45	2

3. Omitted part number:
Page 69 28. Vertical Transport Section:

			REFERENCE	
NEW PART NO.	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
12042355	Micro Switch - AM51632A531	n	69	107*

*DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 036 **03/19/2002**

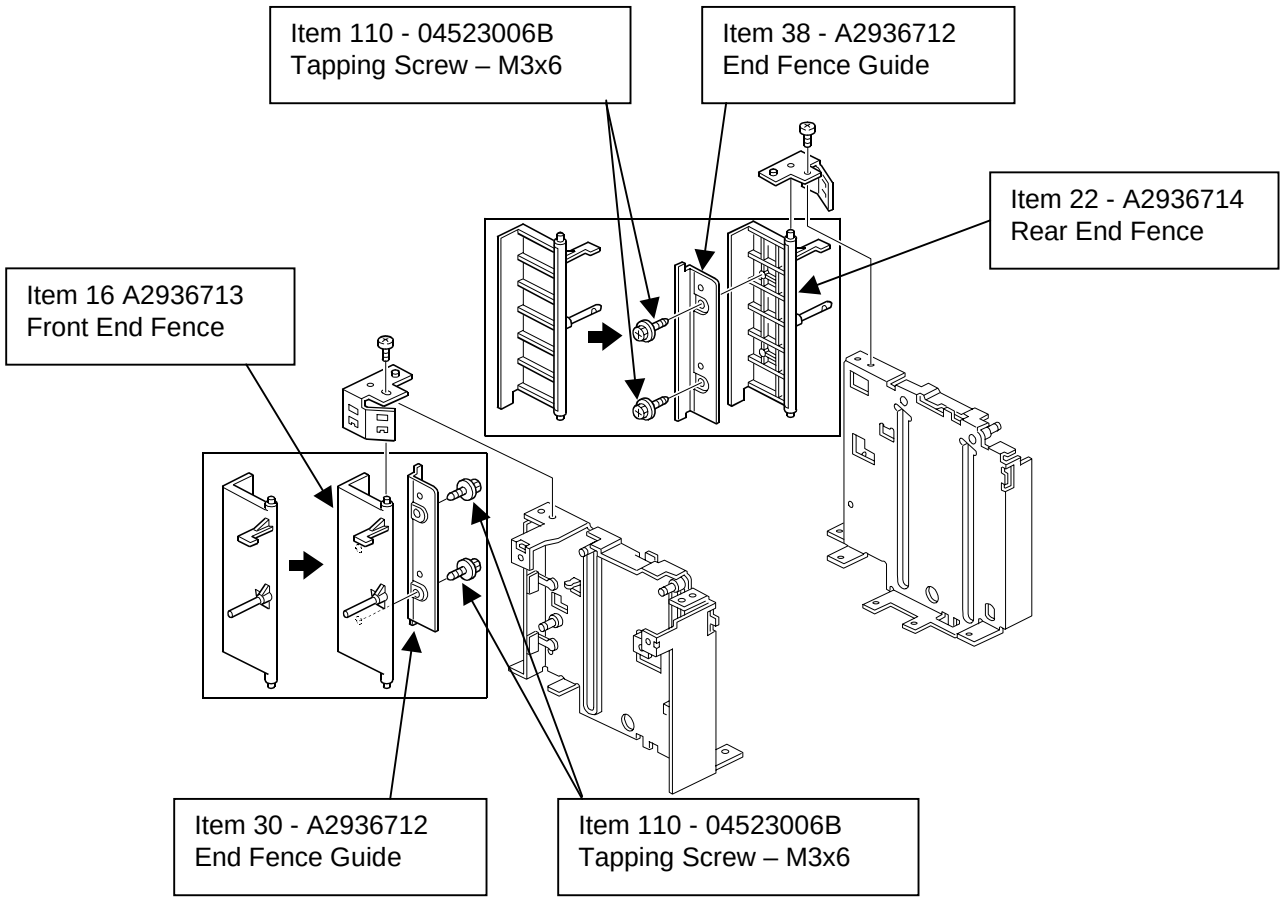
APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: END FENCE GUIDE

GENERAL:

Please add the following components, which were omitted from the Parts Catalog:



			REFERENCE	
NEW PART NO.	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2936712	End Fence Guide	2	57	38*
04523006B	Tapping Screw – M3x6	n	57	110*

***DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved. **CONTROL NO 125ABW**

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 - 037 **03/19/2002**

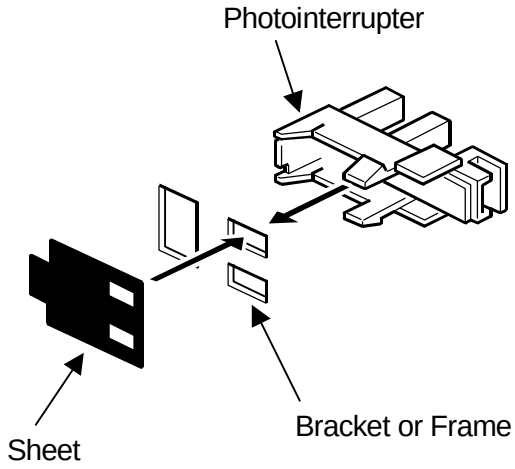
APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SHEET - PHOTOINTERRUPTER

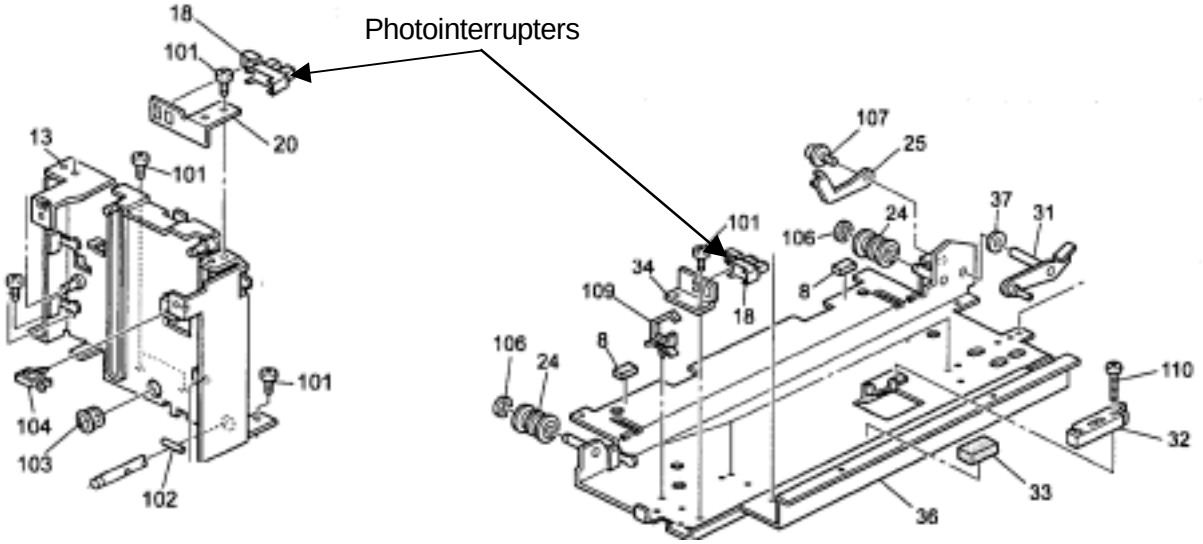
GENERAL:

Sheets have been added to ensure that the photointerrupters stay properly attached to the brackets.



Note: The sheet is used on the following photointerrupters:

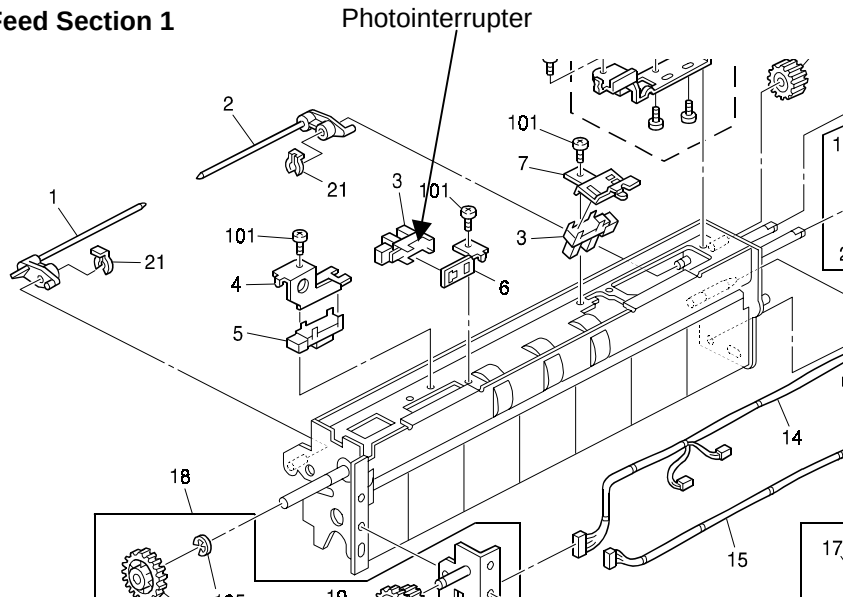
Page 56 22. Tandem LCT3



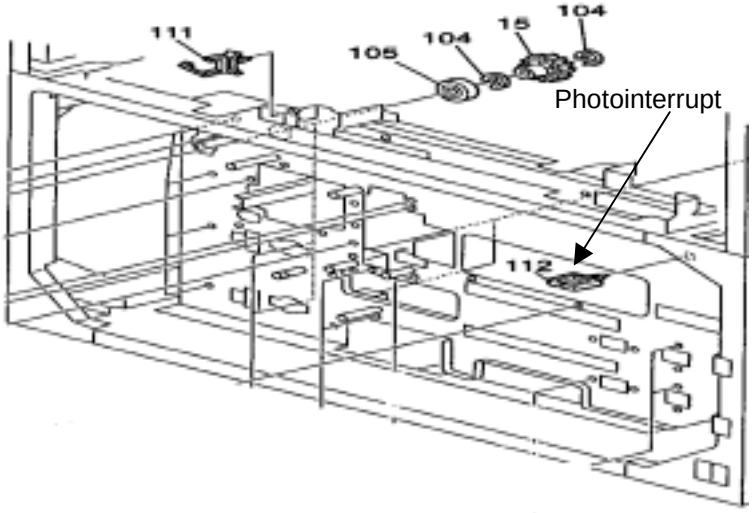
Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

Page 62 **25. Paper Feed Section 1**



Page 126 **57. Drive Section 5**



			REFERENCE	
NEW PART NO.	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2671820	Sheet - Photointerrupter	2	57	39*
A2671820	Sheet - Photointerrupter	1	63	24*
A2671820	Sheet - Photointerrupter	2	127	30*

*DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER

UNITS AFFECTED:

A292/A293Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 038 **04/30/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: POWER SUPPLY

SYMPTOM:

One of the following SCs is activated when the power is turned on by the weekly timer or by the operation switch (upper right of panel):

SC124: Scanner motor encoder error
SC335: Polygonal mirror motor error 1
SC362: Hard disk detector error
SC493: Exhaust fan motor lock
SC494: Fusing exhaust fan motor lock
SC501: 1st tray lift malfunction
SC502: 2nd tray lift malfunction
SC503: 3rd tray lift malfunction
SC520: Duplex jogger motor error 1

CAUSE:

When the power is turned on, the supply of voltage through the 24V line is slow.

FIELD ACTION:

The occurrence rate is predicted to be extremely low because the range of tolerance for the start-up current in the PSU for 120 V machines is approximately +/- 20%. If you receive reports of any of the SCs mentioned above, please perform the following procedure:

1. Set the machine to turn off by the weekly timer.
2. After the machine has turned off, turn the operation switch on and off at least ten times.
3. When any of the SCs listed above is activated, please replace the PSU board.

Note: The PSU boards themselves cannot be modified in the field. Therefore, all PSUs now in Service Parts stock are either modified units or previous units that were found to have no problems (see next page for details). The part number for the PSU has not been changed.

Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

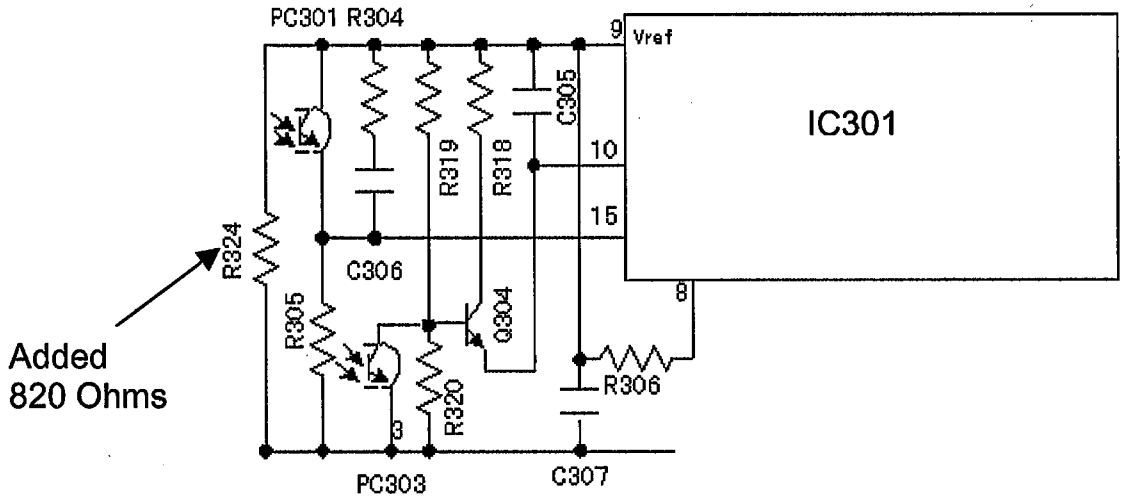
SOLUTION:

Temporary countermeasure:

The PSUs in Service Parts stock have been checked and the units with defective boards have been sorted out using the IC301-9 output signatures.

Permanent countermeasure:

An 820 Ohms (1/4W) resistor has been added to the PSU board. In order to accomplish this, the board pattern was changed.



UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style PSU's installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4705800301
Gestetner 3370	H4705700487
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4705800301
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4805700487
Savin 2055DP	H4705800301
Savin 2070DP	H4805700487

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 039 **05/23/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

GENERAL:

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

PAGES:

The revised areas have been highlighted by an arrow ⇒.

- 4-11 Updated Information (SP Mode Tables)

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

■ SERVICE MANUAL

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

CONTROL NO. 133ABW

Mode No. (Class 1 , 2 & 3)				Function	Settings
1-007	By-pass Feed Paper Size Display				
				Displays the paper width sensor data for the by-pass feed table. 132 : A3 133 : A4 Lengthwise 134 : A5 Lengthwise 141 : B4 Lengthwise 142 : B5 Lengthwise 160 : DLT 164 : LG 166 : LT Lengthwise 172 : HLT Lengthwise	
1-008	Duplex Fence Position Adjustment				
				Adjusts the position of the fence (side-to-side position with reference to paper feed).	0 ~ -2 0.5 mm/step **-1.0 mm**
1-103	Fusing Idling				
			*	Selects whether fusing idling is done or not. *If fusing is incomplete on the 1st and 2nd copies, change the setting to a longer time. This may occur if the room is cold.* *Refer to "Detailed Section Descriptions - Fusing Temperature Control" for more details.*	**0: 5 1/2** min. 1: 10 min. 2: 15 min. 3: No idling
1-104	Fusing Temperature Control				
			*	Selects the fusing temperature control mode. After changing the setting, turn the main switch off and on.	**On/Off control** Phase control
1-105	Fusing Temperature Adjustment				
	1	Trays except By-Pass tray	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for paper fed from trays except the by-pass tray.	170 ~ 200 1°C/step **185°C**
	2	OHP	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for OHP sheets fed from the by-pass feed unit.	+10 ~ -10°C 1°C/step **0 (165°C)**
	3	Thick Paper	*	Adjusts the fusing temperature for thick paper fed from the by-pass feed unit.	+5 ~ -10°C 1°C/step **0 (195°C)**
1-106	Fusing Temperature Display				
				Displays the fusing temperature.	

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 040 **05/31/2002**

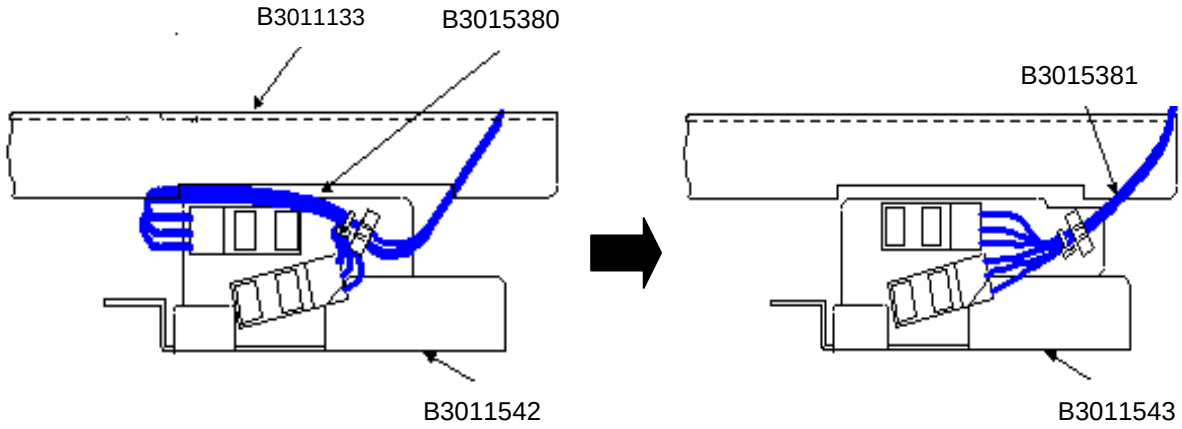
APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SENSOR BRACKET

GENERAL:

To prevent contact with the Right Stay (B3011133**),** the routing of the DF Position Sensor Harness has been changed as shown below. In addition, the length of the harness has been increased.
This Technical Service Bulletin has been reissued to include previously missing information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
B3011542	B3011543	Sensor Bracket	X/O	3/s	39	1
B3015380	B3015381	DF Position Sensor Harness	X/O	3/s	39	14

***DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

UNITS AFFECTED:

. A292/A293 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 041 **05/31/2002**

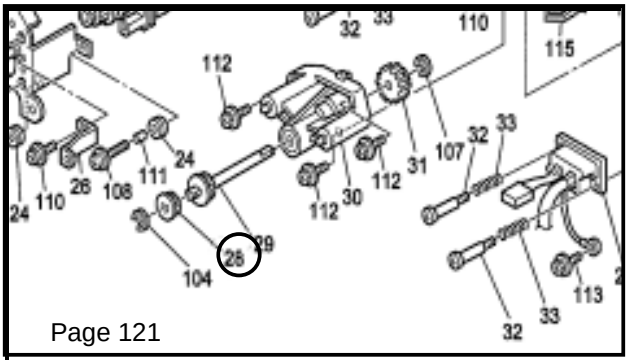
APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

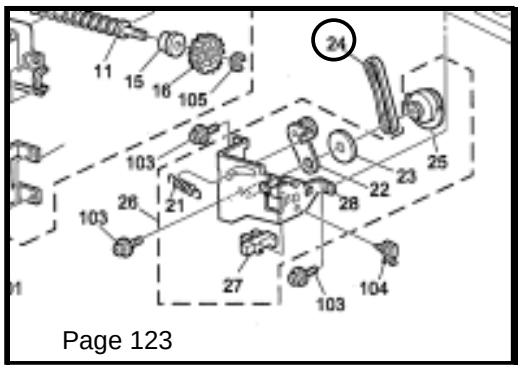
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: TONER-RECYCLING PUMP

GENERAL:

To ensure that toner blocks do not occur in the Toner Pump Unit, the rotation speed of the pump has been increased from 225rpm to 400rpm. In accordance with this change, the following changes have been made.





					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
AB030458	AB030720	Pulley		3/s	121	28
AA043415	AA043573	Timing Belt		3/s	123	24

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 042 **05/31/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: GEAR 25Z and 28Z

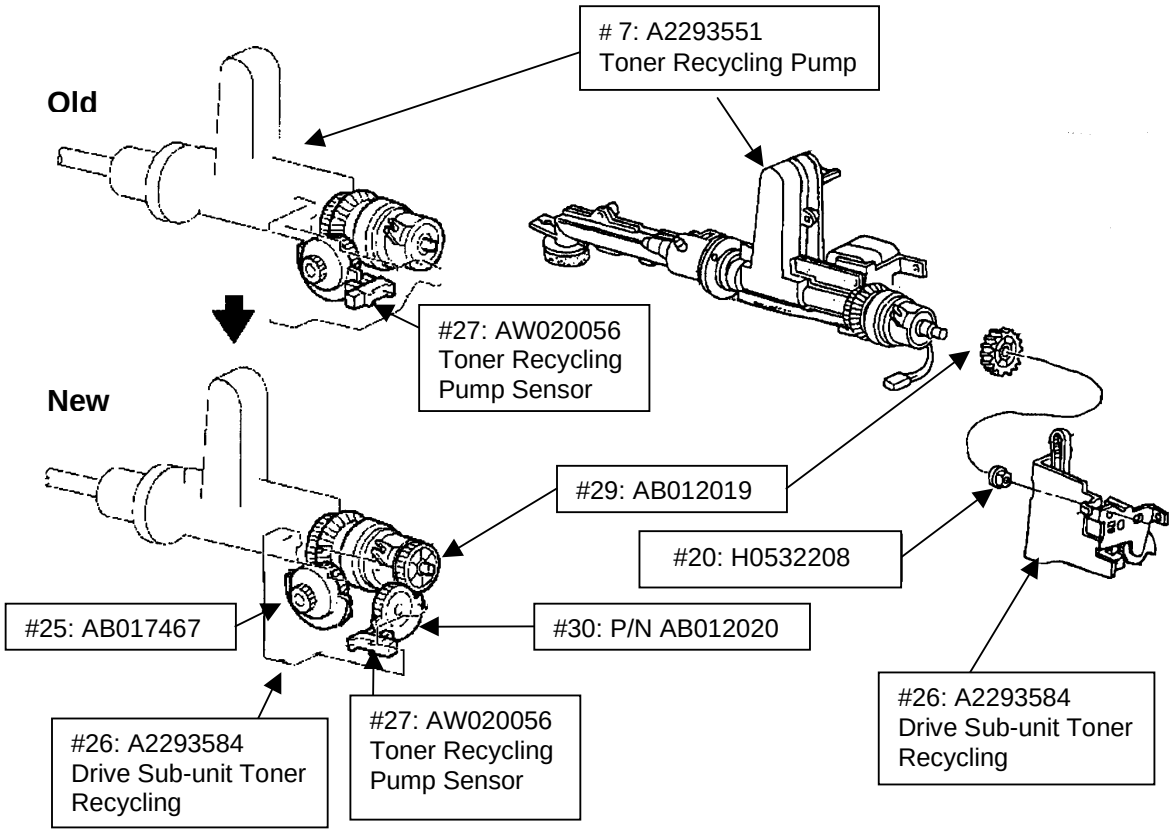
GENERAL:

To improve the detection of the toner pump lock, the Toner Recycling unit has been changed as follows:

1. Changed the position of the Toner Recycling Pump Motor Sensor on the Bracket - Toner Recycling Drive. Note: The bracket now contains an additional hole for the new sensor position, but the part number for the bracket has not been changed (A2293585).

2. Added two gears (index #29, 30 below).

Note: The part number for the Drive Sub-unit – Toner recycling (A2293584) has not been changed.



Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

The following parts additions are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.

				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
-	AB012019	Gear – 25Z	1	123	29*
-	AB012020	Gear – 28Z	1	123	30*

***DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 043 **10/29/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

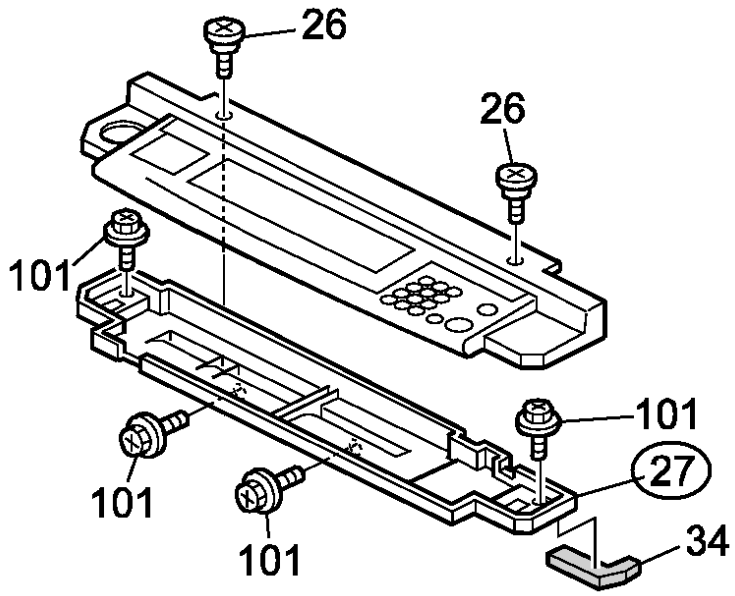
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: OPERATION PANEL UPPER COVER

GENERAL:

The Operation Panel Upper Cover part number has changed to standardize with other models. The following part update is being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2291327	A2931327	Operation Panel Upper Cover	1	1	17	27

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 044 **10/30/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370/5502
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP/2555

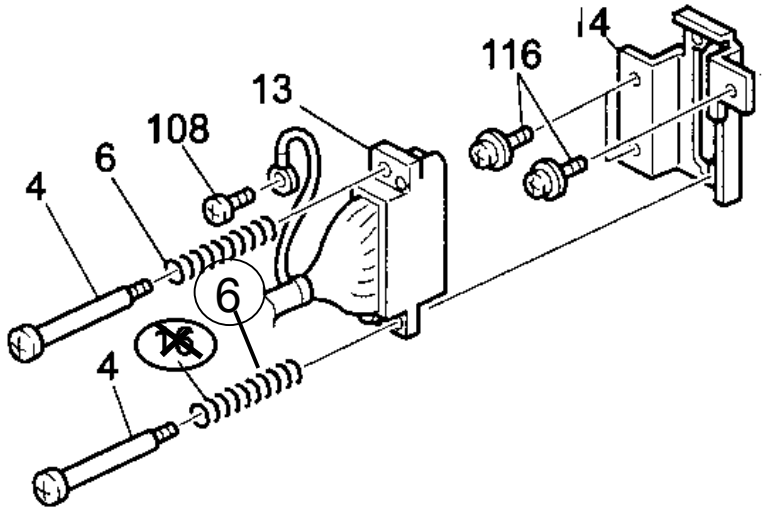
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SPRING & CONNECTOR GUIDE PIN

GENERAL:

To standardize with other models, the following part numbers and descriptions on page 127 of the parts catalog have been changed. In the parts catalog, the illustration on page 126 for item 16, Connector Spring should be corrected to item 6 as shown in the graphic below. The following part updates are being issued for all A292/A293/B098 Parts Catalogs.

Page 126



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
~~AA063609~~		Spring - Tandem LCT	1→2	3/S	127	6
	→ AA063880	Spring				
~~AA143483~~		Stepped Screw	2	3/S	127	4
	→ AA143452	Connector Guide Pin				
-	AA063268	Connector Spring	1→0	-	127	16

Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293/B098 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Spring and Guide Pin installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	Service Parts Only
Gestetner 3370	Service Parts Only
Gestetner 5502	From 1st Production
Ricoh Aficio 551	Service Parts Only
Ricoh Aficio 700	Service Parts Only
Ricoh Aficio 1055	From 1st Production
Savin 2055DP	Service Parts Only
Savin 2070DP	Service Parts Only
Savin 2555	From 1st Production

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 045 **11/04/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – Aficio 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: SCANNER BUMPS and/or SC101, SC120 or SC129

SYMPTOM:

The A292/A293 scanner bumps the right frame and/or an SC101, SC120, or SC129 occurs. In the worst case, this may result in damage to the first mirror, scanner drive screw or scanner drive shaft.

CAUSE:

The Scanner Motor connector pins may have been damaged during the assembly process, caused in some cases by oxidization of the pins. This in turn caused electrical resistance in these areas to increase, preventing the MCU Board signals from being properly sent to the Scanner Motor.

FIELD COUNTERMEASURE:

Check the Scanner Motor connector pins are properly connected and show no signs of oxidation.

PRODUCTION COUNTERMEASURE:

1) An inspection process for the Scanner Motor connectors was added starting with the July '01 production.
2) The MCU Board has been modified from July '01 (see Additional Improvements below).

ADDITIONAL IMPROVEMENTS

In addition to inspecting the connector, to further ensure that the damage described above does not occur, the MCU Board was changed for a more precise detection of an SC124, a scanner error condition that halts all machine operation. Refer to TSB A292/A293 – 034. The new style MCU Board part number is described below.

Note: If poor contact does exist with the MCU connector pins, the symptom is most likely to occur just after installation. Therefore, even for machines with the previous style of MCU board (before July '01), the occurrence rate in the field is expected to be very low.

A292/A293 only				REFERENCE	
PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2935180	MCU Board	1	1	131/149	9/*

Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style MCU Board installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H4715600263
Gestetner 3370	H4815600001
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4715600780
Ricoh Aficio 700	H4815700062
Savin 2055DP	H4715600263
Savin 2070DP	H4815600001

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 046 **02/25/2003**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 5502
RICOH – AFICIO 1055
SAVIN – 2555

SUBJECT: FIRMWARE MODIFICATION

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

GENERAL:

The latest firmware version can be downloaded at the Technology Solution Center FTP Site http://tsc.ricohcorp.com. Be sure to check the README file for important notes and explanations.

NOTE: *Refer to Facts Line Bulletin # FL002 and Publication Bulletin #023 for more information about the FTP Internet Web Site and EPROM/Flash Card Exchange program.*

BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
Changes the following: **Target yield for the PM parts** The target yields for the following PM parts have been increased from 300K to 1,000K. **Note:** 1) Machines containing Firmware version 0.15 at install have been fitted with the new PM parts. 2) At PM parts replacement, be sure to confirm the target yield setting and change it as follows if necessary, depending on whether the part to be installed is old or new. Color of the roller **New type**: Light blue **Old type**: Gray Please check the following table for proper yield and part number for the desired part.	B0987553 **C**	December 2002 Production	0.15

TARGET YIELD FOR PM PARTS

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

No.	Description	New Type (Yield: 1,000K)	Old Type (Yield: 300K)
		Part Number	**Part Number**
004	Feed Roller – Tray 1	AF03 1080	AF03 1040
005	Pick-up Roller – Tray 1	AF03 0080	AF03 0040
006	Separation Roller – Tray 1	AF03 2080	AF03 2040
007	Feed Roller – Tray 2	AF03 1080	AF03 1040
008	Pick-up Roller – Tray 2	AF03 0080	AF03 0040
009	Separation Roller – Tray 2	AF03 2080	AF03 2040
010	Feed Roller – Tray 3	AF03 1080	AF03 1040
011	Pick-up Roller – Tray 3	AF03 0080	AF03 0040
012	Separation Roller – Tray 3	AF03 2080	AF03 2040
013	Feed Roller – Tray 4	AF03 1080	AF03 1040
014	Pick-up Roller – Tray	AF03 0080	AF03 0040
015	4Separation Roller – Tray 4	AF03 2080	AF03 2040
017	Feed Roller – LCT	AF03 1081	AF03 1064
018	Pick-up Roller – LCT	AF03 0080	AF03 0050
019	Separation Roller – LCT	AF03 2080	AF03 2050
020	Feed Roller – Bypass Feed	AF03 1081	AF03 1041
021	Pick-up Roller – Bypass Feed	AF03 0080	AF03 0041
022	Separation Roller – Bypass Feed	AF03 2080	AF03 2041

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 047 **02/25/2003**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 5502
RICOH – AFICIO 1055
SAVIN – 2555

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

GENERAL:

Due to Firmware Modification 0.15 the following changes have been implemented. See Bulletin A292/A293/B098 - 046; for B098 Firmware Modification.

The target yields for the following PM parts have been increased from 300K to 1,000K.

TARGET YIELD FOR PM PARTS

No.	Description	New Type (Yield: 1,000K)	Old Type (Yield: 300K)
		Part Number	Part Number
004	Feed Roller – Tray 1	AF031080	AF031040
005	Pick-up Roller – Tray 1	AF030080	AF030040
006	Separation Roller – Tray 1	AF032080	AF032040
007	Feed Roller – Tray 2	AF030080	AF031040
008	Pick-up Roller – Tray 2	AF030080	AF030040
009	Separation Roller – Tray 2	AF032080	AF032040
010	Feed Roller – Tray 3	AF030080	AF031040
011	Pick-up Roller – Tray 3	AF030080	AF030040
012	Separation Roller – Tray 3	AF032080	AF032040
013	Feed Roller – Tray 4	AF030080	AF031040
014	Pick-up Roller – Tray	AF030080	AF030040
015	4Separation Roller – Tray 4	AF032080	AF032040
017	Feed Roller – LCT	AF030081	AF031064
018	Pick-up Roller – LCT	AF030080	AF030050
019	Separation Roller – LCT	AF032080	AF032050
020	Feed Roller – Bypass Feed	AF031081	AF031041
021	Pick-up Roller – Bypass Feed	AF030080	AF030041
022	Separation Roller – Bypass Feed	AF032080	AF032041

NOTE:
1) Machines containing Firmware version 0.15 at install have been fitted with the new PM parts.
2) At PM parts replacement, be sure to confirm the target yield setting and change it as follows if necessary, depending on whether the part to be installed is old or new.
   THE COLOR OF THE ROLLER
   New type: Light blue
   Old type: Gray

Continued…

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

An arrow has highlighted the revised areas ⇒.

PAGES:

- 5-1 Updated Information P.M Table
- 5-2 Updated Information Paper feed
- 5-3 Updated Information LCT
- 5-6 Updated Information All PM parts list
- 5-7 Updated Information PM Counter
- 5-8 Updated Information Parts List for PM yield Indicator

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

5.1 PM TABLE

NOTE: The amounts mentioned as the PM interval indicate the number of prints, unless stated otherwise.

⇒ Symbol key: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricate, I: Inspect, * =1000K Life

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
SCANNER/OPTICS						
1st, 2nd, 3rd Mirror		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Reflectors		C	C	C		Optics cloth
White Reference Plate		I	I	I		Water
Scanner Guide Rails		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Exposure Glass	C	C	C	C		Dry cloth or alcohol
Toner Shield Glass		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Optics Dust Filter		I	R	I		Blower brush
AROUND THE DRUM						
Charge Corona Wire		C	C	C	300	Dry Cloth
Charge Corona Casing		C	C	C		Damp cloth
Corona Wire Cleaner		C	C	C	300	
Drum Potential Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Charge Corona Grid		C	C	C	300	Blower brush
ID Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush; initialize with SP3-001-2 after cleaning.
Quenching Lamp		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Pick-off Pawls		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary.
Cleaning Blade					300	
Cleaning Brush					300	
Cleaning Brush Seal			C			Dry cloth
Cleaning Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth
Cleaning Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary
DEVELOPMENT UNIT						
Developer			R			
Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth or blower brush
Development Filter		R	R	R		
Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush
Air Filter – Large/ Small		R	R	R		
Drive Gears		C	C	C		Blower brush
Toner Bottle Holder		C	C	C		Dry cloth or vacuum cleaner
Toner Hopper Entrance		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Development Roller Shaft		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
PAPER FEED						
Registration Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Relay Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Dust Remover		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Registration Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Relay Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
⇒ Paper Feed Rollers Pick-Up Rollers Separation Rollers * = New type parts with 1000K yield are Light Blue		C	C	C	300 or (* 1000K)	Replace pick-up, feed and separation roller as a set. Check the counter value for each paper tray station (SP7-204). If the value has reached 300K,or * replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816).
Paper Feed Guide Plate		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Vertical Transport Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Feed Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
TRANSFER BELT UNIT						
Transfer Belt		C	C	C	450	Dry cloth
Cleaning Roller Cleaning Blade				C	450	
Transfer Entrance Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Belt Drive/Guide/ Bias Roller/Cleaning Roller		C	C	C		Alcohol
Transfer Exit Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
FUSING/PAPER EXIT						
Hot Roller:A292/A293		I	I	I	200	
B098		I	I	I	150	
Hot Roller Bearings		I	I	I	600	
Pressure Roller		I	I	I	450	Replace as a set.
Pressure Roller Bearings		I	I	I	450	
Fusing Thermistor	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Hot Roller Strippers	C	C	C	C	300	Water or alcohol
Oil Supply Roller Bushings	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller and Bushings		R	R	R		Replace as a set.
Oil Supply Roller		R	R	R		
Oil Supply Cleaning Roller		R	R	R		
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates		C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol
Transport/Exit Rollers			C			Water
Exit Anti-static Brush			I			

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
DUPLEX						
Entrance Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Reverse Roller		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Separation Rollers		C	C	C		
Duplex Roller		C	C	C		
Feed Rollers		C	C	C		
Entrance Anti-static Brush		I	I	I		
Reverse Junction Gate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
OTHERS						
Ozone Filter: PCU			R			
Ozone Filter: Duct			R			
Filter: Vacuum		R	R	R		Blower brush
Used Toner Tank	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary (about 1,000k copies).

	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
ADF (the PM interval is for the number of originals that have been fed)					
Transport Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Feed Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Separation Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Sensors	C	C	C	C	Belt brush
Drive Gears		L	L	L	Grease G501

⇒

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
LCT (A698/B587)					* =1000	
Paper Feed Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	Check the counter value for the LCT (SP7-204-5). If the value has reached 300K, replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816-5).
Pick-up Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	
Separation Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	
Bottom Plate Pad		C	C	C		Dry or damp cloth
Paper Feed Clutch					1,200	
Relay Clutch					1,200	
Pick-up Solenoid					2,400	

NOTE: New type parts are light Blue = 1000K yield

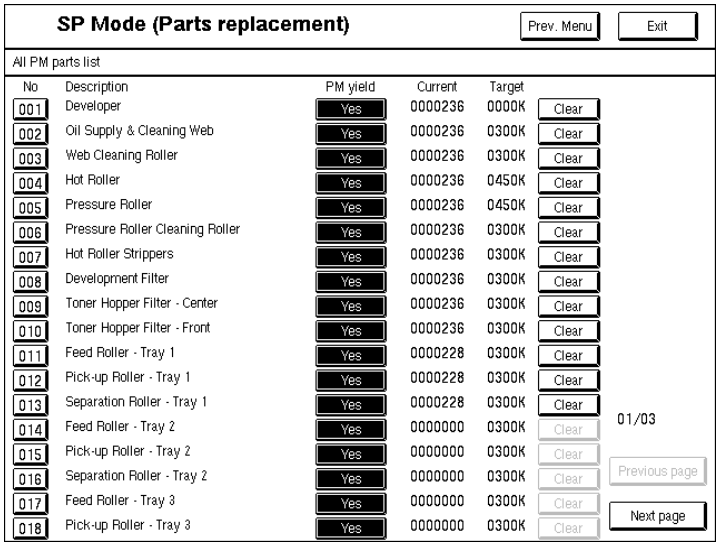
1. All PM Parts List

Displays all the counters for PM parts.

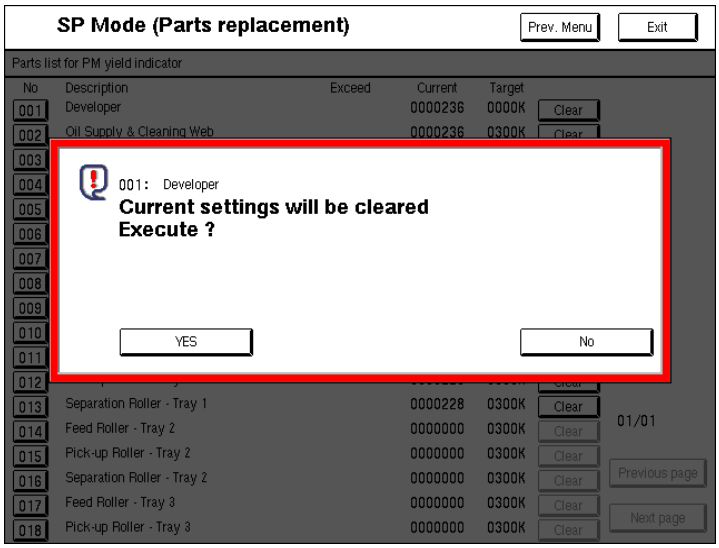
On this screen, the current counter and the target yield of each PM part can be checked.

Additionally, the PM yield indicator setting can be changed. To change the setting press the [Yes/No] key in the “PM yield” column. When “Parts list for PM yield” is selected in the parts replacement menu, only the parts with [Yes] in the “PM yield” are listed.

⟹ **NOTE:** New parts yield 1000K are light Blue color.

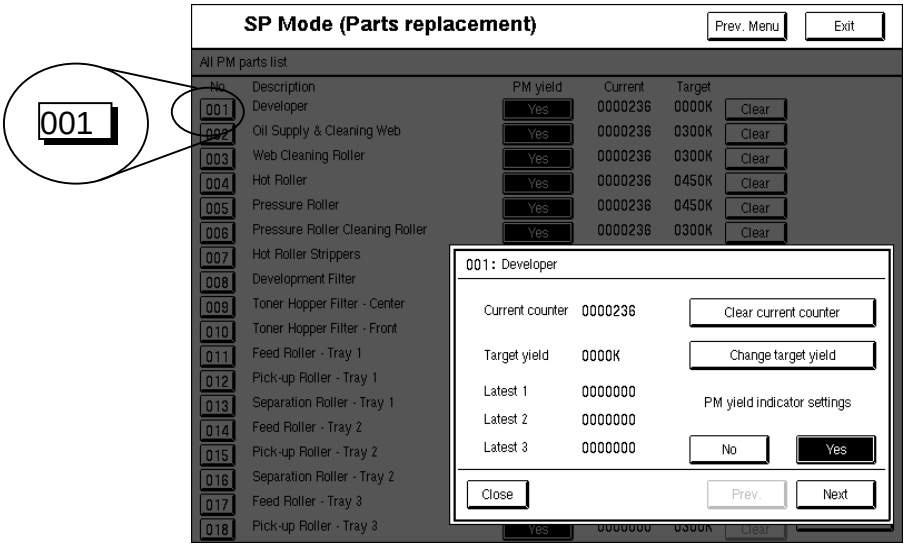


To clear a counter, press [Clear] on the display. The following appears.



Then press [Yes] to clear the counter.

If one of the keys in the “No” column is pressed, the following appears on the display.



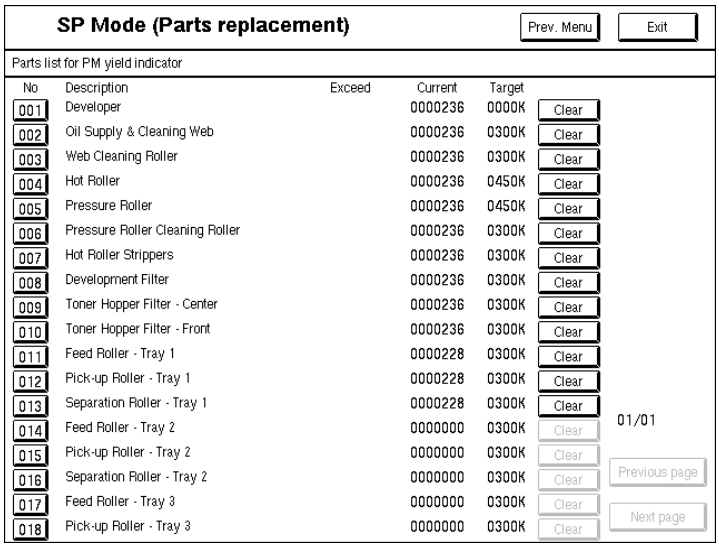
On this screen, the records of the last three part replacements are displayed. When ‘Clear current counter’ is pressed, the current counter is cleared, the current counter is overwritten to “Latest 1”, the Latest 1 counter is overwritten to “Latest 2”, and the Latest 2 counter is overwritten to “Latest 3”.

⇒ **NOTE:** New parts yield 1000K are light Blue color.

Additionally, the target yield can be changed on this screen. To change the target yield setting, do the following:

1) Press [Change target yield] on the screen.
2) Input the target yield using the ten-key pad.
3) Press the # key.

2. Parts List for PM Yield Indicator



On this screen, only the parts selected in the “All PM parts list” screen are displayed. Normally, the PM parts counters should be checked on this screen.

If the current counter exceeds the target yield, there is a * mark in the “Exceed” column.

Each counter can also be cleared on this screen. To clear all counters on this screen at once, see ‘Counter Clear for Parts Exceeding Target Yield’ on the next page.

3. Parts Exceeding Target Yield

Only the parts whose counters are exceeding the target yield are displayed. If none of the PM counters is exceeding the target yield, this item cannot be selected from the parts replacement menu.

⟹ To distinguish new from old parts:

New type parts = Light Blue = 1000K yield
Old type parts = Gray

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 047 REISSUE ★ **03/10/2003**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 5502
RICOH – AFICIO 1055
SAVIN – 2555

SUBJECT: SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

GENERAL:

Due to Firmware Modification 0.15 the following changes have been implemented. See Bulletin A292/A293/B098 - 046; for B098 Firmware Modification.

The target yields for the following PM parts have been increased from 300K to 1,000K.

TARGET YIELD FOR PM PARTS

★ No.	Description	New Type (Yield: 1,000K)	Old Type (Yield: 300K)
		Part Number	Part Number
004	Feed Roller – Tray 1	AF031080	AF031040
005	Pick-up Roller – Tray 1	AF030080	AF030040
006	Separation Roller – Tray 1	AF032080	AF032040
007	Feed Roller – Tray 2	AF031080	AF031040
008	Pick-up Roller – Tray 2	AF030080	AF030040
009	Separation Roller – Tray 2	AF032080	AF032040
010	Feed Roller – Tray 3	AF031080	AF031040
011	Pick-up Roller – Tray 3	AF030080	AF030040
012	Separation Roller – Tray 3	AF032080	AF032040
013	Feed Roller – Tray 4	AF031080	AF031040
014	Pick-up Roller – Tray	AF030080	AF030040
015	4Separation Roller – Tray 4	AF032080	AF032040
017	Feed Roller – LCT	AF031081	AF031064
018	Pick-up Roller – LCT	AF030080	AF030050
019	Separation Roller – LCT	AF032080	AF032050
020	Feed Roller – Bypass Feed	AF031081	AF031041
021	Pick-up Roller – Bypass Feed	AF030080	AF030041
022	Separation Roller – Bypass Feed	AF032080	AF032041

NOTE:
1) Machines containing Firmware version 0.15 at install have been fitted with the new PM parts.
2) At PM parts replacement, be sure to confirm the target yield setting and change it as follows if necessary, depending on whether the part to be installed is old or new.
   THE COLOR OF THE ROLLER
   New type: Light blue
   Old type: Gray

Continued…

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

SERVICE MANUAL - INSERT

The Service Manual pages listed below must be replaced with the pages supplied. Each bulletin package contains 1 set of replacement pages.

An arrow has highlighted the revised areas ⇒.

PAGES:

- 5-1 Updated Information P.M Table
- 5-2 Updated Information Paper feed
- 5-3 Updated Information LCT
- 5-6 Updated Information All PM parts list
- 5-7 Updated Information PM Counter
- 5-8 Updated Information Parts List for PM yield Indicator

5. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

5.1 PM TABLE

NOTE: The amounts mentioned as the PM interval indicate the number of prints, unless stated otherwise.

⇒ Symbol key: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricate, I: Inspect, * =1000K Life

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
SCANNER/OPTICS						
1st, 2nd, 3rd Mirror		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Reflectors		C	C	C		Optics cloth
White Reference Plate		I	I	I		Water
Scanner Guide Rails		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Exposure Glass	C	C	C	C		Dry cloth or alcohol
Toner Shield Glass		C	C	C		Optics cloth
Optics Dust Filter		I	R	I		Blower brush
AROUND THE DRUM						
Charge Corona Wire		C	C	C	300	Dry Cloth
Charge Corona Casing		C	C	C		Damp cloth
Corona Wire Cleaner		C	C	C	300	
Drum Potential Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Charge Corona Grid		C	C	C	300	Blower brush
ID Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush; initialize with SP3-001-2 after cleaning.
Quenching Lamp		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Pick-off Pawls		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary.
Cleaning Blade					300	
Cleaning Brush					300	
Cleaning Brush Seal			C			Dry cloth
Cleaning Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth
Cleaning Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth Replace if necessary
DEVELOPMENT UNIT						
Developer			R			
Side Seals		I	I	I		Dry cloth or blower brush
Development Filter		R	R	R		
Entrance Seal		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush
Air Filter – Large/ Small		R	R	R		
Drive Gears		C	C	C		Blower brush
Toner Bottle Holder		C	C	C		Dry cloth or vacuum cleaner
Toner Hopper Entrance		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Development Roller Shaft		C	C	C		Dry cloth or blower brush

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
PAPER FEED						
Registration Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Relay Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Dust Remover		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Registration Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Relay Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
⇒ Paper Feed Rollers Pick-Up Rollers Separation Rollers * = New type parts with 1000K yield are Light Blue		C	C	C	300 or (* 1000K)	Replace pick-up, feed and separation roller as a set. Check the counter value for each paper tray station (SP7-204). If the value has reached 300K,or * replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816).
Paper Feed Guide Plate		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Vertical Transport Rollers		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Paper Feed Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
TRANSFER BELT UNIT						
Transfer Belt		C	C	C	450	Dry cloth
Cleaning Roller Cleaning Blade				C	450	
Transfer Entrance Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
Belt Drive/Guide/ Bias Roller/Cleaning Roller		C	C	C		Alcohol
Transfer Exit Guide Plate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
FUSING/PAPER EXIT						
Hot Roller:A292/A293		I	I	I	200	
B098		I	I	I	150	
Hot Roller Bearings		I	I	I	600	
Pressure Roller		I	I	I	450	Replace as a set.
Pressure Roller Bearings		I	I	I	450	
Fusing Thermistor	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Hot Roller Strippers	C	C	C	C	300	Water or alcohol
Oil Supply Roller Bushings	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary.
Pressure Roller Cleaning Roller and Bushings		R	R	R		Replace as a set.
Oil Supply Roller		R	R	R		
Oil Supply Cleaning Roller		R	R	R		
Fusing Entrance and Exit Guide Plates		C	C	C		Clean with water or alcohol
Transport/Exit Rollers			C			Water
Exit Anti-static Brush			I			

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
DUPLEX						
Entrance Sensor		C	C	C		Blower brush
Reverse Roller		C	C	C		Water or alcohol
Separation Rollers		C	C	C		
Duplex Roller		C	C	C		
Feed Rollers		C	C	C		
Entrance Anti-static Brush		I	I	I		
Reverse Junction Gate		C	C	C		Dry cloth
OTHERS						
Ozone Filter: PCU			R			
Ozone Filter: Duct			R			
Filter: Vacuum		R	R	R		Blower brush
Used Toner Tank	I	I	I	I		Replace if necessary (about 1,000k copies).

	EM	80K	160K	240K	NOTE
ADF (the PM interval is for the number of originals that have been fed)					
Transport Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Feed Belt	C	R	R	R	Belt cleaner
Separation Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Pick-up Roller	C	R	R	R	Dry or damp cloth
Sensors	C	C	C	C	Belt brush
Drive Gears		L	L	L	Grease G501

⇒

	EM	150 K	300 K	450 K	Expected Life K	NOTE
LCT (A698/B587)					* =1000	
Paper Feed Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	Check the counter value for the LCT (SP7-204-5). If the value has reached 300K, replace the rollers. After replacing the rollers, reset the counter (SP7-816-5).
Pick-up Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	
Separation Roller		C	C	C	300 or *	
Bottom Plate Pad		C	C	C		Dry or damp cloth
Paper Feed Clutch					1,200	
Relay Clutch					1,200	
Pick-up Solenoid					2,400	

NOTE: New type parts are light Blue = 1000K yield

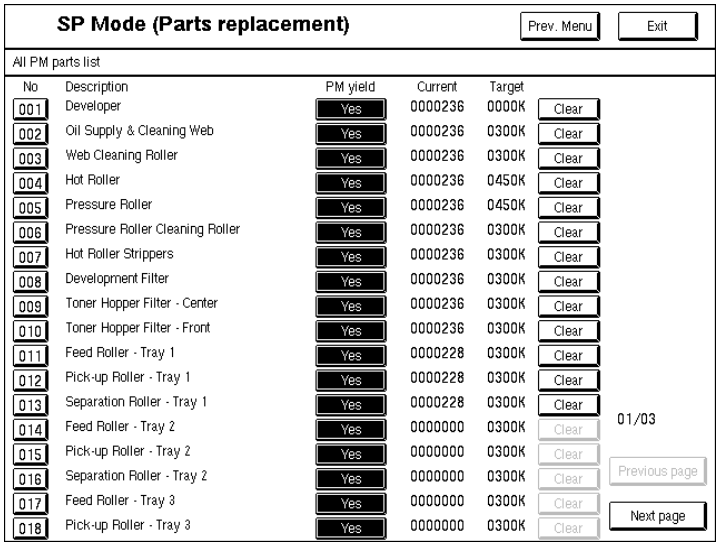
1. All PM Parts List

Displays all the counters for PM parts.

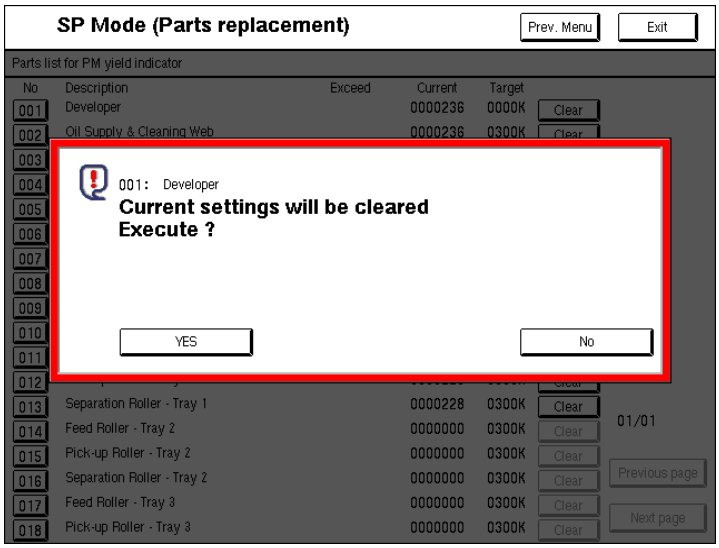
On this screen, the current counter and the target yield of each PM part can be checked.

Additionally, the PM yield indicator setting can be changed. To change the setting press the [Yes/No] key in the “PM yield” column. When “Parts list for PM yield” is selected in the parts replacement menu, only the parts with [Yes] in the “PM yield” are listed.

⟹ **NOTE:** New parts yield 1000K are light Blue color.

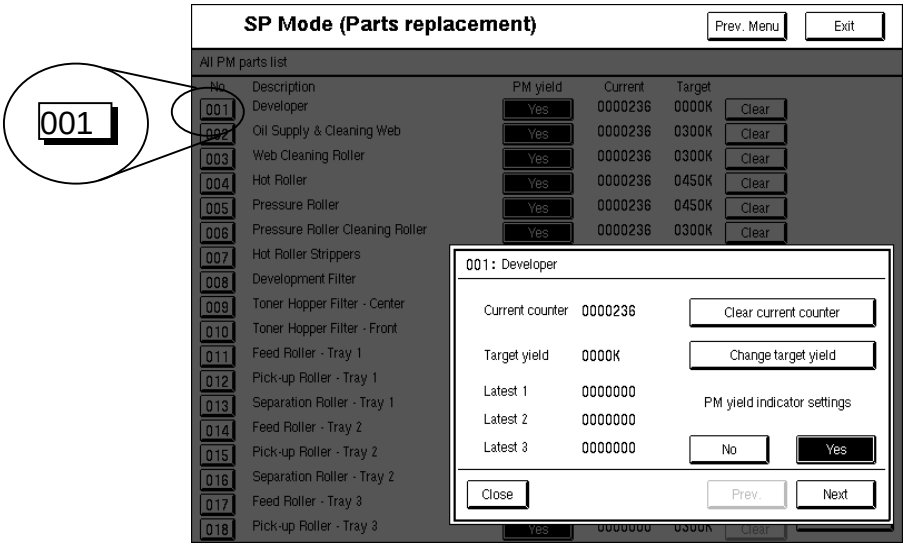


To clear a counter, press [Clear] on the display. The following appears.



Then press [Yes] to clear the counter.

If one of the keys in the “No” column is pressed, the following appears on the display.



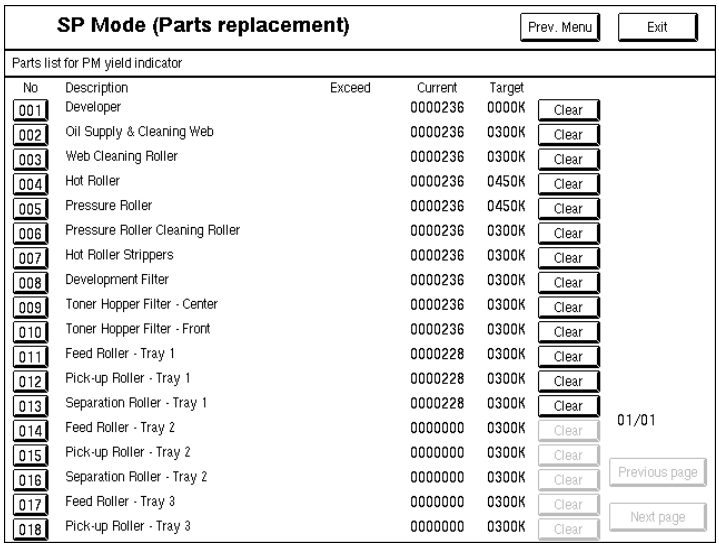
On this screen, the records of the last three part replacements are displayed. When ‘Clear current counter’ is pressed, the current counter is cleared, the current counter is overwritten to “Latest 1”, the Latest 1 counter is overwritten to “Latest 2”, and the Latest 2 counter is overwritten to “Latest 3”.

⇒ **NOTE:** New parts yield 1000K are light Blue color.

Additionally, the target yield can be changed on this screen. To change the target yield setting, do the following:

1) Press [Change target yield] on the screen.
2) Input the target yield using the ten-key pad.
3) Press the # key.

2. Parts List for PM Yield Indicator



On this screen, only the parts selected in the “All PM parts list” screen are displayed. Normally, the PM parts counters should be checked on this screen.

If the current counter exceeds the target yield, there is a * mark in the “Exceed” column.

Each counter can also be cleared on this screen. To clear all counters on this screen at once, see ‘Counter Clear for Parts Exceeding Target Yield’ on the next page.

3. Parts Exceeding Target Yield

Only the parts whose counters are exceeding the target yield are displayed. If none of the PM counters is exceeding the target yield, this item cannot be selected from the parts replacement menu.

⟹ To distinguish new from old parts:

New type parts = Light Blue = 1000K yield
Old type parts = Gray

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 048 **02/25/2003**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

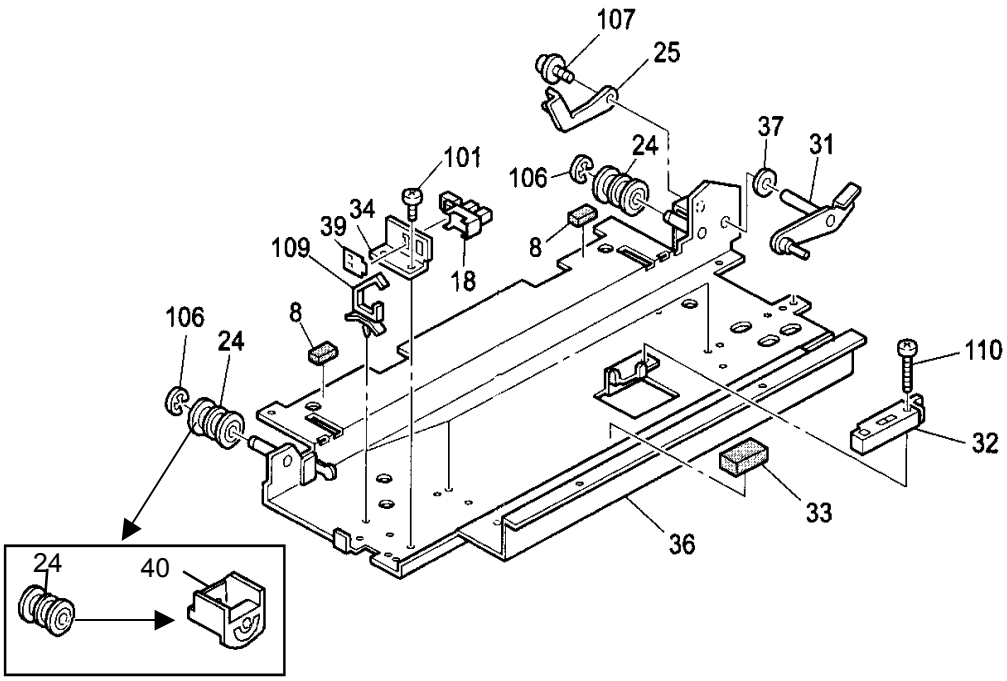
GESTETNER – 3355/3370/5502
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP/2555

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: ROLLER – SLIDE RAIL

GENERAL:

The Slide Rail Roller can sometimes come off the rail when the customer pulls out the right tray. This may cause damage to other components if the tray is pushed back in this condition. To ensure that the rollers re-engage the rail when the tray is pushed back in (even if they derail), one of the two Slide Rail Rollers has been deleted, and a Slide Rail Front Roller has been added.
The following parts corrections are being issued for all A292/A293 Parts Catalogs.



				REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
AF022105	AF022105	Roller – Slide Rail	2→1	57	24
	A2946655	Roller – Slide Rail Front	1	57	*40

***DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

Continued…

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293 copiers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Roller – Slide Rail Front installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355	H47250XXXXX
Gestetner 3370	H48250XXXXX
Gestetner 5502	From first production
Ricoh Aficio 551	H4724901217
Ricoh Aficio 700	H48250XXXXX
Ricoh Aficio 1055	From first production
Savin 2055 DP	H47250XXXXX
Savin 2555	From first production
Savin 2070DP	H48250XXXXX

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 049 **03/25/2003**

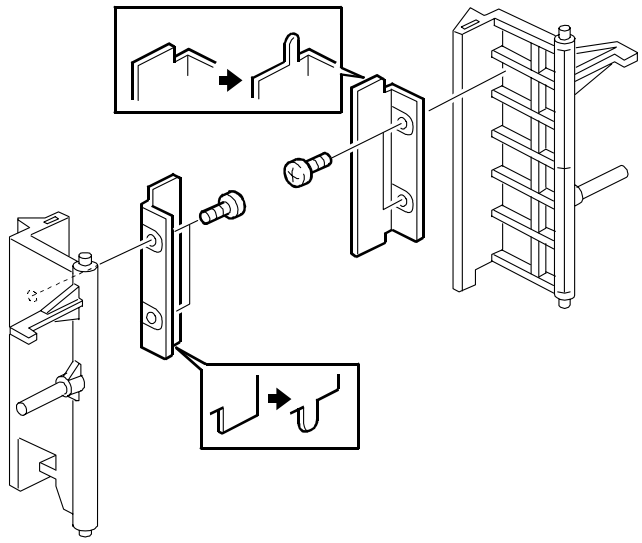
APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370
LANIER – 5455/5470
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP

SUBJECT: END FENCE GUIDE

SYMPTOM:

The shape of the End Fence Guide has been changed so that it does not contact the left tandem tray bottom plate when the right tray is pushed back in, which can cause the end fence to open and become damaged. This occurs when the customer loads the paper incorrectly (not flush against left tray back fence), or when the right tray has slipped off its rail. Please update your A292/A293 Parts Catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
A2936712	B0656712	End Fence Guide (A292/A293)	2	1	57	38

UNITS AFFECTED:

The End Fence Guide is available as a service part only.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 050 **05/02/2003**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370/5502
LANIER – 5455/5470/LD055
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP/2555

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293/B098 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:**

Paper Feed Rollers The paper feed rollers have been changed due to parts standardization and to increase their target yield from 300K to 1000K.
Note:
1) At PM parts replacement, be sure to confirm the target yield setting and change it in SP mode if necessary, depending on whether the part to be installed is old or new.
2) For each tray, be sure to replace the feed rollers together in sets.
3) Color of the rollers:
New type: Light blue
Old type: Gray

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
B0986200	B0986201	Pape Feed Unit:Paper Bank Ass'y	1 - 1	0	63	*
B0986210	B0986211	Paper Feed Unit: No.3: Ass'y	1 - 1	0	63	*
B0986220	B0986221	Paper Feed Unit: No.1: Ass'y	1 - 1	0	63	*
AF030040		Pick-up Roller	3 - 3	3	65	4
	AF030080	Paper Feed Roller: Pick-up				
AF031040		Feed Roller	3 - 3	3	65	5
	AF031080	Paper Feed Roller: Feed				
AF032040		Separation Roller	3 - 3	3	67	3
	AF032080	Paper Feed Roller: Separate				
AF030041		Pick-up Roller - Bypass Feed	1 - 1	3	71	14
	AF030080	Paper Feed Roller: Pick-up				
AF031041		Feed Roller - Bypass Feed	1 - 1	3	71	16
	AF031081	Paper Feed Roller: Manual Feed				
AF032041		Separation Roller – Bypass Feed	1 - 1	3	73	5
	AF032080	Paper Feed Roller: Separate				

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293/B098 copiers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Feed Roller installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 5502 Savin 2555	J5330100201
Gestetner 3355/3370 Savin 2055DP/2070DP	Service parts only
Lanier LD055	J5330100201
Lanier 5455/5470	Service parts only
Ricoh Aficio 1055	J5330100201
Ricoh 551/700	Service parts only

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 051 **06/13/2003**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370/5502
LANIER – 5455/5470/LD055
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP/2555

SUBJECT: PARTS CATALOG UPDATES

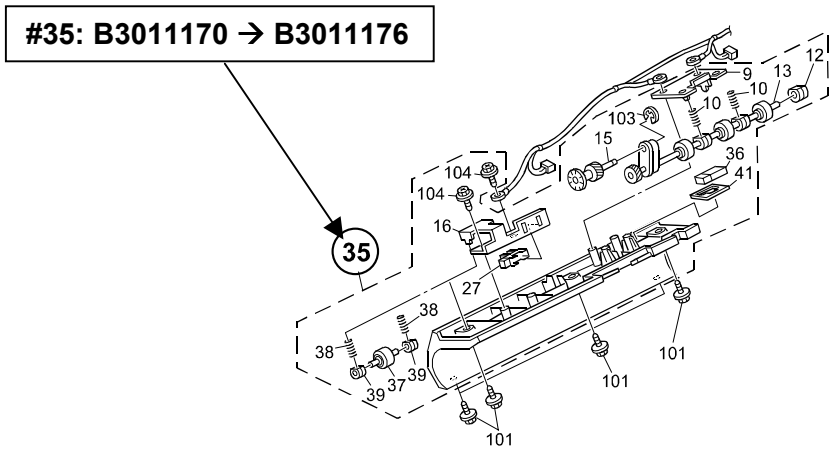
GENERAL:

The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293/B098 Parts Catalogs.

- **UPDATE 1:**

Turn guide plate – Section 5. ORIGINAL FEED SECTION 1:
Item 35 has an Incorrect part number.

			REFERENCE		
	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	QTY	PAGE	ITEM
Incorrect	B3011170	Turn guide plate	1	23	35
Correct	B3011176	Turn guide plate	1	23	35

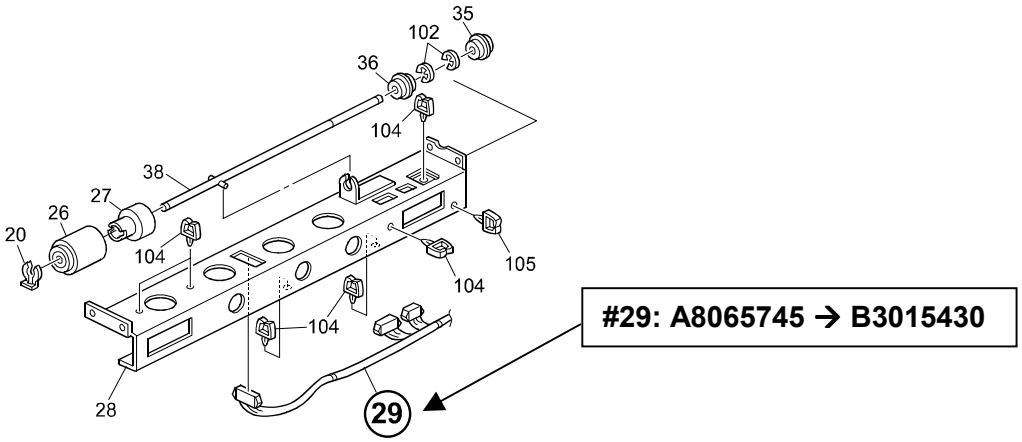


Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

- **UPDATE 2:**

DC Harness: Section 6. ORIGINAL FEED SECTION 2:
Item #29 has an Incorrect part number and part description.

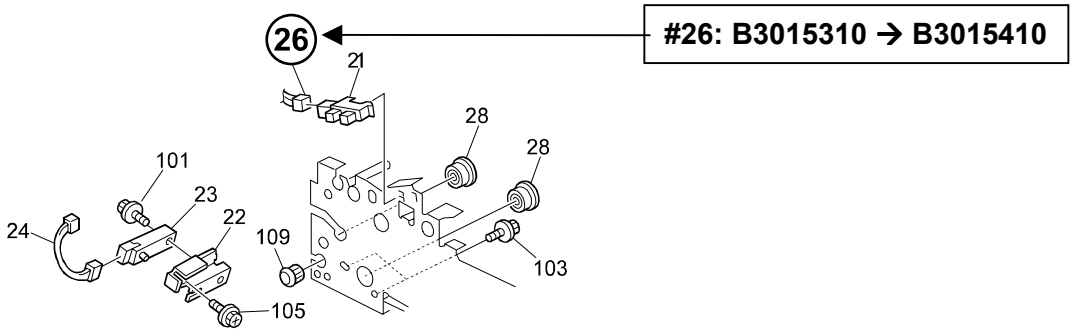
			REFERENCE		
	PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
Incorrect	A8065745	Paper Size Sensor Harness	1	25	29
Correct	B3015430	DC Harness	1	25	29



- **UPDATE 3:**

Harness: Connecting: Paper Feed: Section 7. ORIGINAL FEED SECTION 3:
Incorrect part description and part number.

			REFERENCE		
	PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
Incorrect	B3015310	DC Relay Harness	1	27	26
Correct	B3015410	Harness: Connecting: Paper Feed	1	27	26

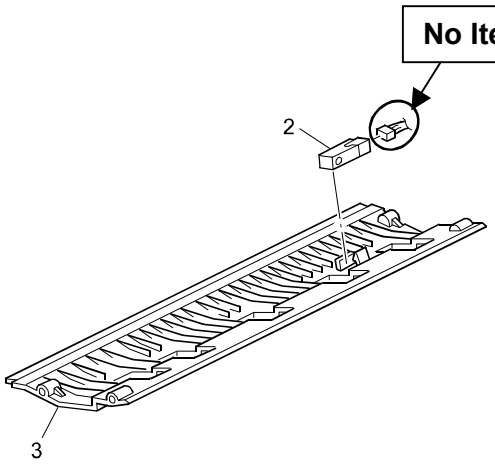


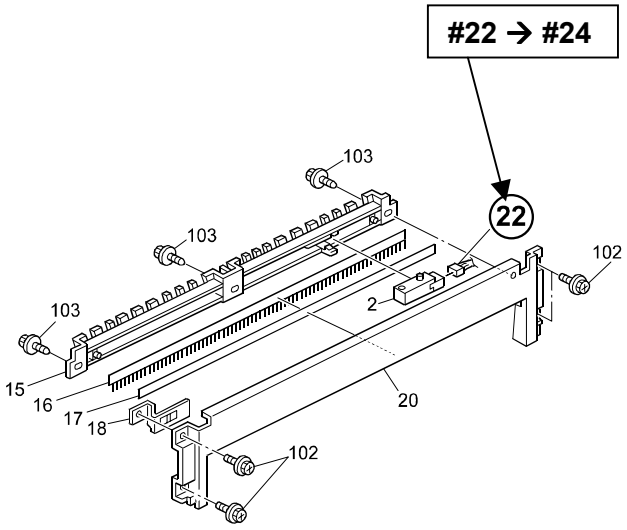
- **UPDATE 4:**

DC Relay Harness – Section 7. ORIGINAL FEED SECTION 3:
Missing Item and item number in exploded diagram for DC Relay Harness plus new part number.

			REFERENCE		
	PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
Incorrect	B3015455	DC Relay Harness	1	31	22
Correct	B3015455	DC Relay Harness	1	31	22
	B3015460	DC Relay Harness	1	31	*24

*New Item number



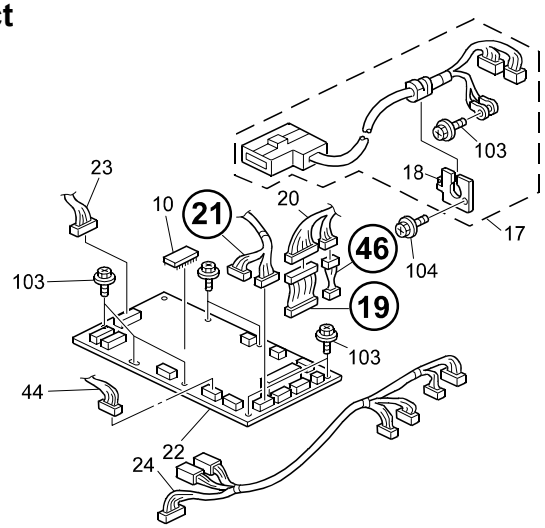


- **UPDATE 5:**

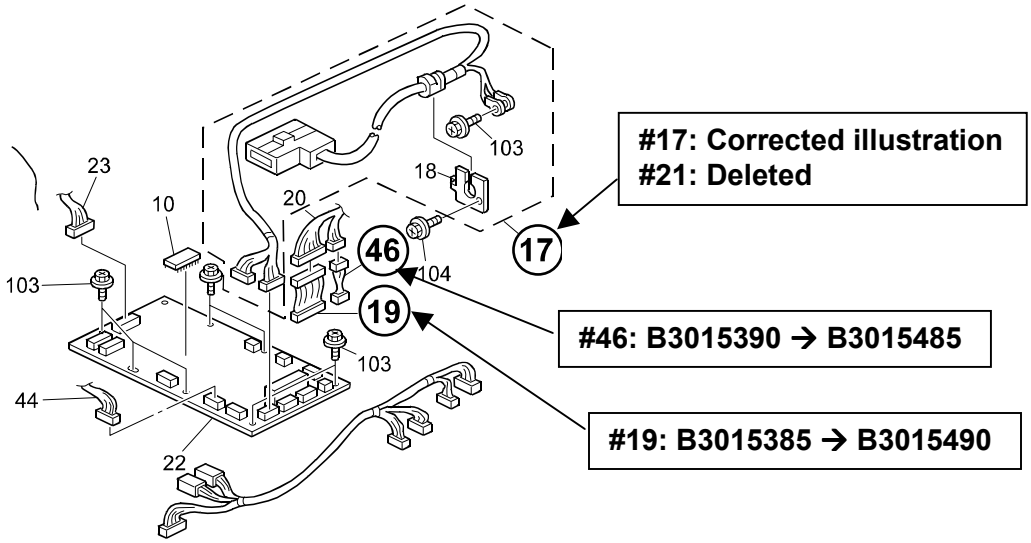
DC Relay Harness – Section 7. ORIGINAL FEED SECTION 3:
Incorrect Item number for Harness plus new part number and descriptions.

			REFERENCE		
	PART NUMBER	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
Incorrect	B3015385	Relay Harness	1	37	19
	B3015430	DC Harness	1	37	21
	B3015390	Relay Harness	1	37	46
Correct	B3015340	DF Harness	1	37	17
	B3015490	Harness: Connecting: Sensor: Base	1	37	19
	B3015485	Harness: Connecting: Spring Clutch	1	37	46

Incorrect



Correct



TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 052 **07/07/2003**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370/5502
LANIER – 5455/5470/LD055
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP/2555

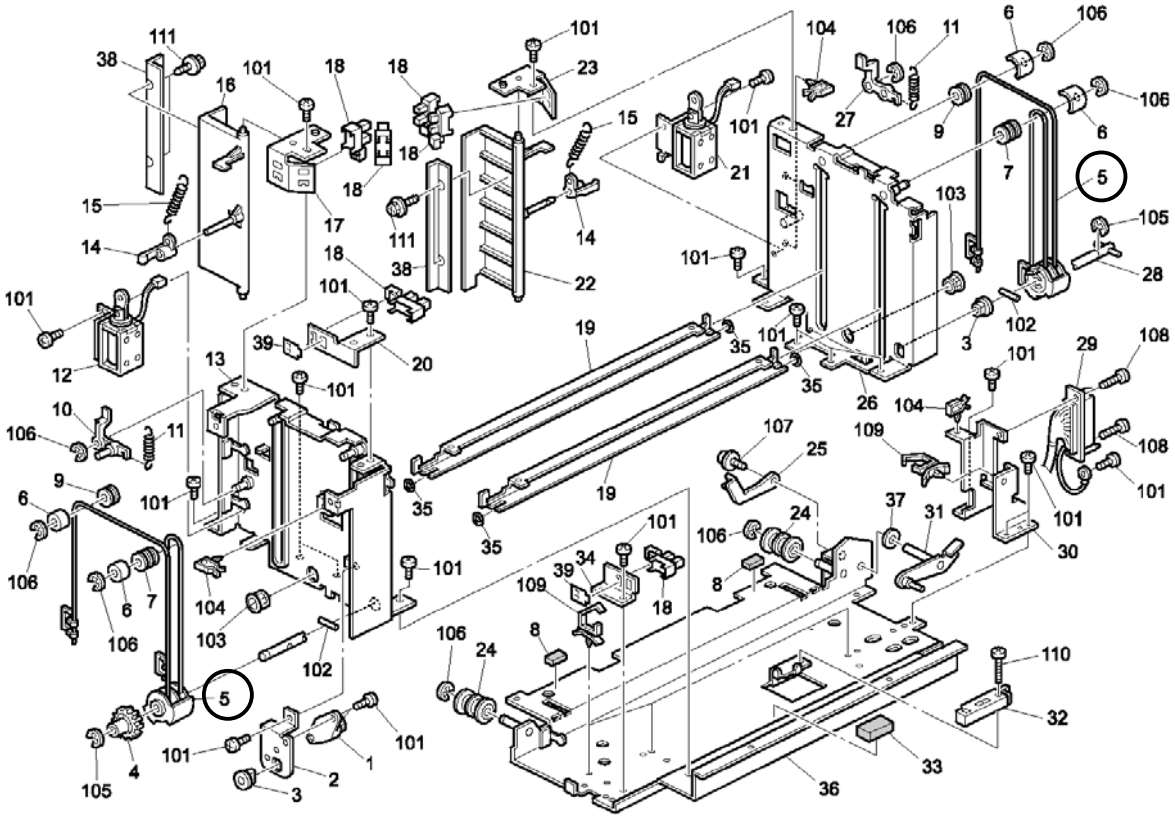
SUBJECT: PULLEY DRIVE WIRE ASS'Y

GENERAL:

The length of the Pulley Drive Wire (right tray) has been decreased as follows to ensure that a pulley flange overrun does not occur.

Long wire: 495mm→ 475mm
Short wire: 409mm→ 389mm

22.TANDEM LCT 3 (A292/A293/B098)



A292/A293/B098 56 Parts Location and List

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

The following part update is being issued for all A292/A293/B098 Parts Catalogs.

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A2486684		Pulley Drive Wire Ass'y	-	-	-	-
	A2936684	Pulley: Drive Wire: Ass'y	2 - 2	1	57	5

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293/B098 copiers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Pulley Drive Wire Ass'y installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 5502 Savin 2555	J5320901719
Gestetner 3355 Savin 2055DP	Service parts only
Gestetner 3370 Savin 2070DP	Gestetner3355 Savin2055DP
Lanier 5455AG	Service parts only
Lanier LD055	J5320901719
Lanier LD5470 AG5	Service parts only
Ricoh AFICIO 1055	J5320901719
Ricoh AFICIO 551	Service parts only
Ricoh AFICIO 700	Service parts only

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293/B098 – 053 **07/21/2003**

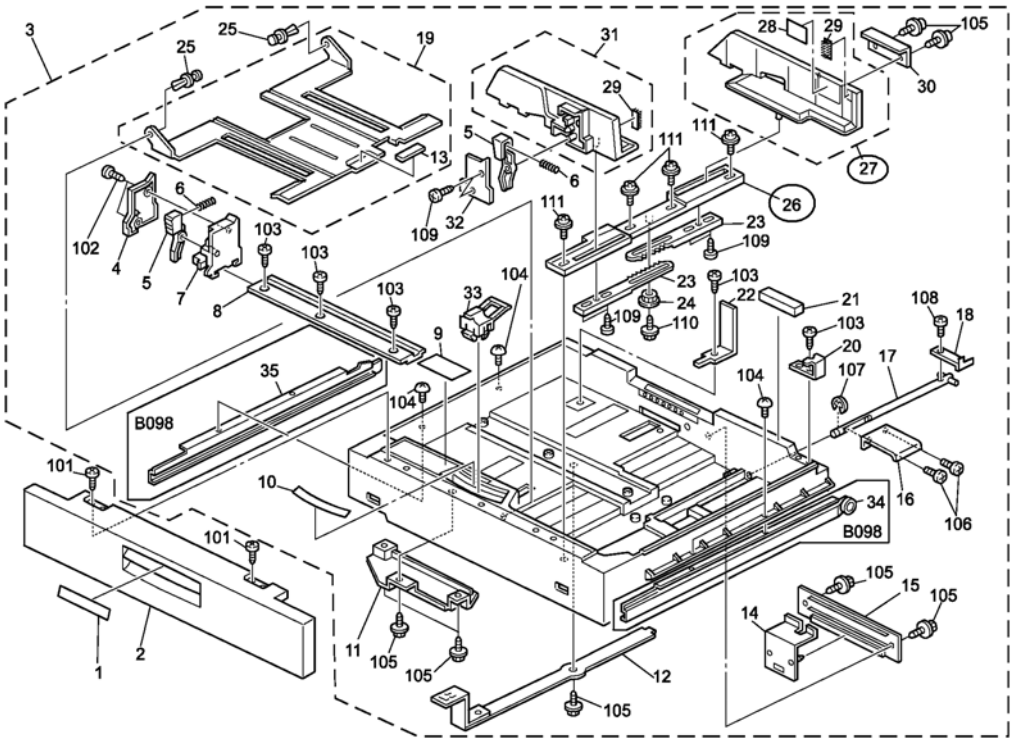
APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370/5502
LANIER – 5455/5470/LD055
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP/2555

SUBJECT: REAR SIDE FENCE

GENERAL:

A support rib has been added to the Rear Side Fence to ensure that the fence is not damaged when the tray is pushed in hard. The following parts updates are being issued for all A292/A293/B098 Parts Catalogs.



OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	REFERENCE PAGE	REFERENCE ITEM
A2296541		Rear Side Fence	1	3/S	59	27 *
	A2936541	Side Fence: Universal: Rear: Adhesion				
A2296545		Side Fence Plate - LT	1	3/S	59	26 *
	A2936545	Positioning Plate - LT				
A2296544		Side Fence Plate - A4	1	3/S	59	26
	A2936544	Positioning Plate - A4				

* These parts should be replaced as a set.

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All A292/A293/B098 copiers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Rear Side Fence installed during production..

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner 3355 Ricoh Aficio 551 Savin 2055DP	Service Parts only
Lanier 5455	L0711100001
Gestetner 3370 Ricoh Aficio 700 Savin 2070DP	Service Parts only
Lanier 5470	L0721100109
Gestetner 5502 Lanier LD055 Ricoh Aficio 1055 Savin 2555	From 1st Production

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: B322 - 001 **08/28/2000**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

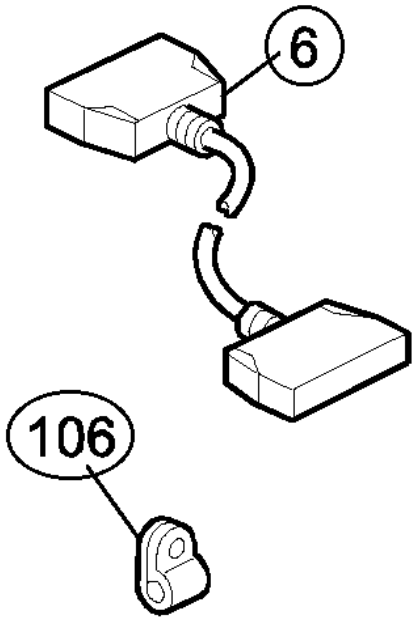
GESTETNER – COPY CONNECTOR TYPE 700 for 3355/3370
RICOH – COPY CONNECTOR TYPE 700 for AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – COPY CONNECTOR TYPE 700 for 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: INTERFACE CABLE

GENERAL:

To meet UL standards, the Interface Cable has been changed. The Clamp has also changed. The following parts updates are being issued for all B322 Parts Catalogs.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
B3285050	B3225070	Interface Cable	1	3/S	3	6
11050389	11050034	Clamp	2	3/S	3	106

UNITS AFFECTED:

B322 Serial Number cut-in not available at time of publication.

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

© 2000 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: A292/A293 – 031 **10/25/2001**

APPLICABLE MODEL:
GESTETNER – 3355/3370
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – 2055/2070P

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: MOTOR JOINT GEAR

NOTE *This bulletin is a duplicate of the original which had an invalid number so please disregard A292/A293-091*

SYMPTOM:

The Motor Joint Gear for the toner bottle holder gets worn down, causing noise and uneven rotation.
NOTE *This symptom has a high tendency to occur after the total counter reaches 1000K.*

CAUSE:

The amount of grease applied to the gear during production was not enough to prevent premature wearing.

SOLUTION:

An increased amount of grease has been applied to the gear at the factory since the first lot of May 2001 production.

For Field Machines Produced Before May '2001 Production:

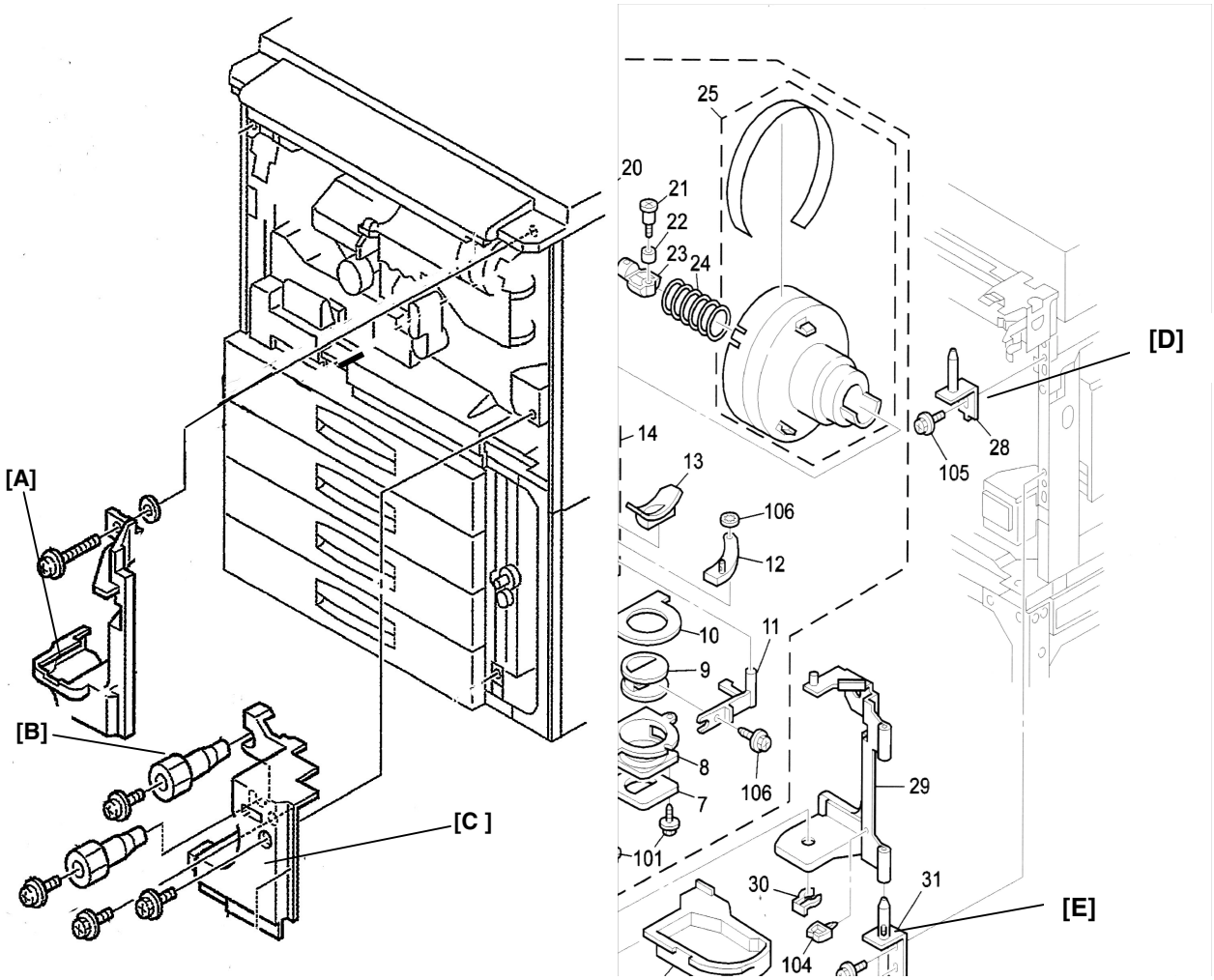
As preventative action for this symptom, grease should be applied to the entire contact surface of the Motor Joint Gear (see *Application Procedure* on next page). As a result, this countermeasure will ensure that the gear will reach its specified life cycle.

NOTE *Please make sure that grease is applied at the next PM visit or inspection.*

Continued…

Copyright © 2001 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

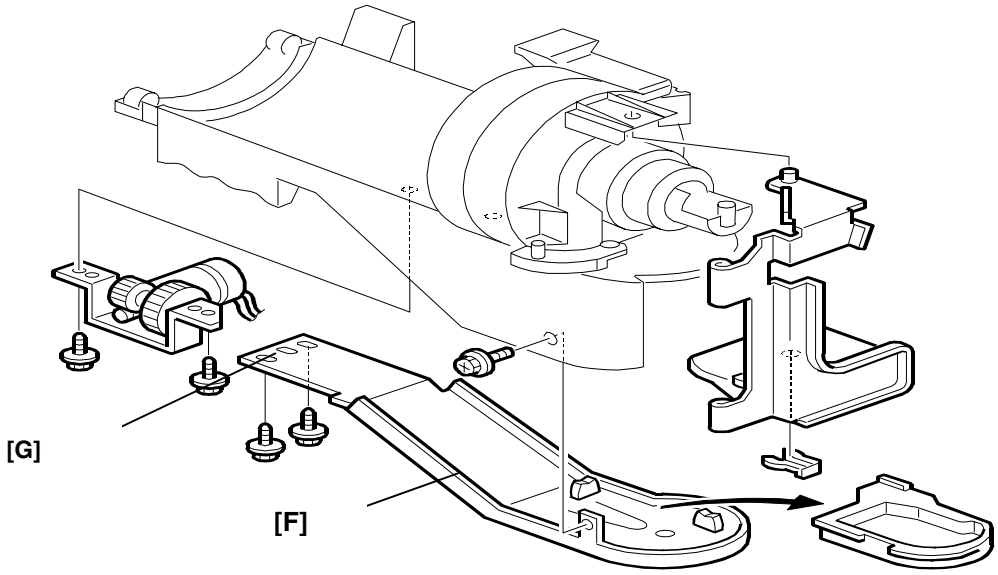
<< Grease Application Procedure >>



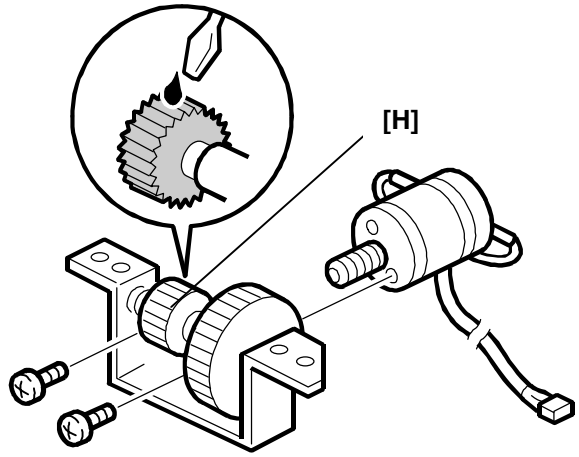
Place a sheet of paper on the floor before performing the following. When removing the toner bottle holder, please be careful to ensure that toner does not spill out.

1. Remove the toner bottle.
2. Remove the right inner cover [A] (1 screw, 1 nut).
3. Remove the registration roller knob [B] (1 screw).
4. Remove the right lower inner cover [C] (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the DC motor connector.
6. Remove the contact point stay [D] (1 screw).
7. Remove the lower hinge [E] (2 screws).
8. Remove the toner bottle holder assembly.

Continued…



9. Remove the turn bracket [F] (3 screws).
10. Remove the toner bottle bracket [G] (2 screws).



11. Apply the grease to the contact surface of Motor Joint Gear [H].
12. Re-assemble the removed parts.

NOTE *Please make sure to apply a liberal amount of grease to the entire contact surface of the gear.*

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: B312 – 001 **04/18/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

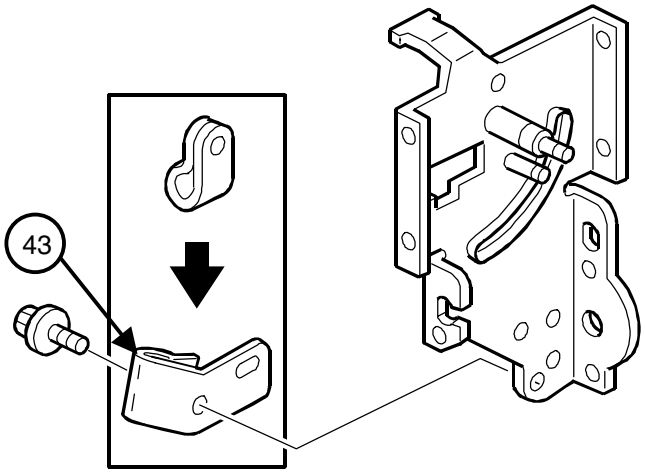
GESTETNER – SR740 Finisher for 3355/3370
RICOH – SR740 Finisher for AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – SR740 Finisher for 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: HARNESS CLAMP

GENERAL:

The shape of the clamp for the stapler harness has been changed, as shown below, to ensure proper orientation of the harness.



The following parts corrections are being issued for all B312 Parts Catalogs.

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
11050062		Nylon Clamp – 6n	1	1	19	104
	B3124160	Harness Clamp	1	1	19	*43

***DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

UNITS AFFECTED:

All B312 finishers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Harness Clamp installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner SR740	H4901100001
Ricoh SR740	H4901100001
Savin SR740	H4901100001

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: B312 – 002 **04/18/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – SR740 FINISHER for 3355/3370
RICOH – SR740 FINISHER for AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – SR740 FINISHER for 2055DP/2070DP

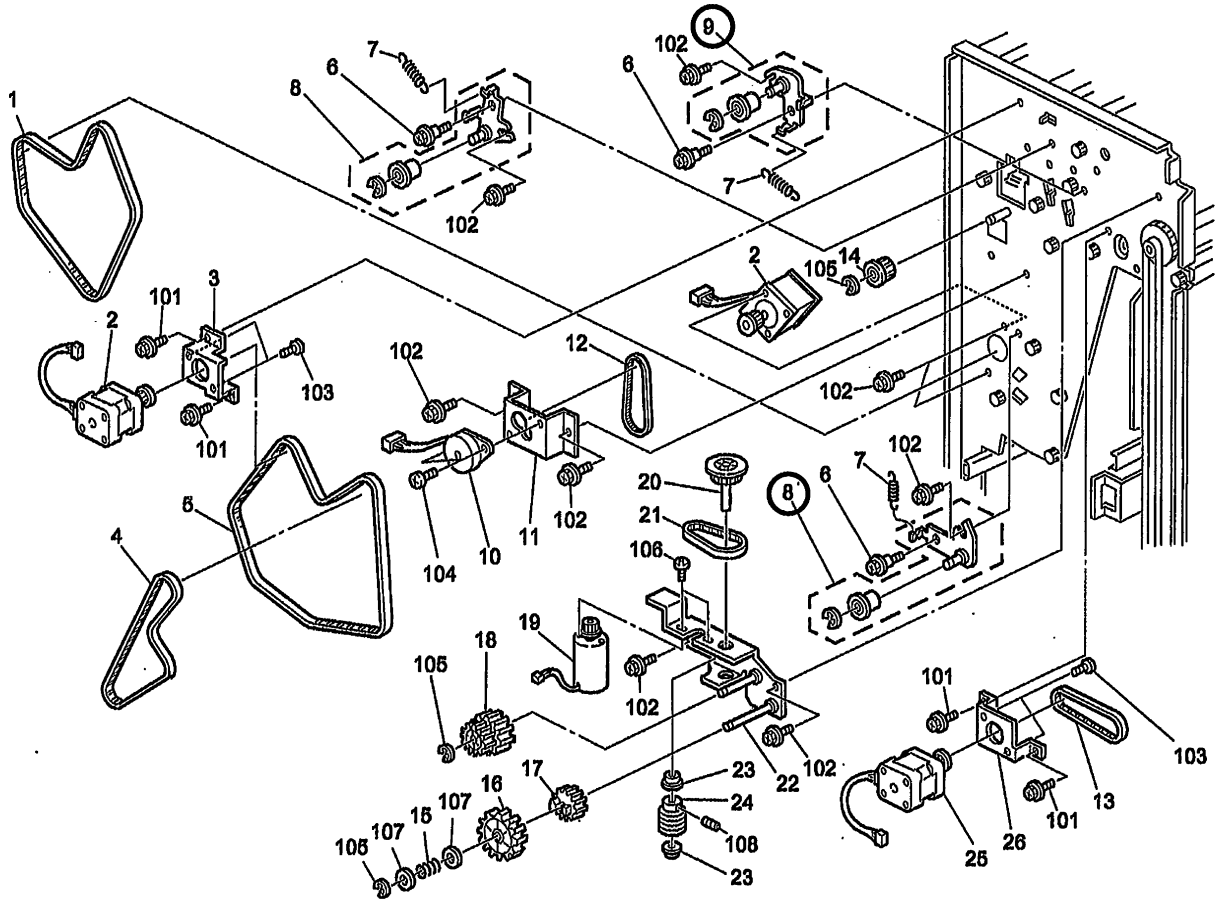
Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

SUBJECT: TIGHTENER

GENERAL:

To prevent the noise coming from the shaft of the tightener, a bearing has been inserted between the shaft and pulley.

The following parts corrections are being issued for all B312 Parts Catalogs.



Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
A6971625	B3121600	Tightener	1	1	31	8
A6971601	B3121610	Tightener	1	1	31	9

***DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

UNITS AFFECTED:

All B312 Finishers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Tightener's installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner SR740	H4910200001
Ricoh SR740	H4910200001
Savin SR740	H4910200001

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

Gestetner RICOH SAVIN

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: B312 – 003 **04/18/2002**

APPLICABLE MODEL: - A292/A293
GESTETNER – SR740 FINISHER for 3355/3370
RICOH – SR740 FINISHER for AFICIO 551/700
SAVIN – SR740 FINISHER for 2055DP/2070DP

Note: This copy is intended as a master original for reproduction of additional bulletins.

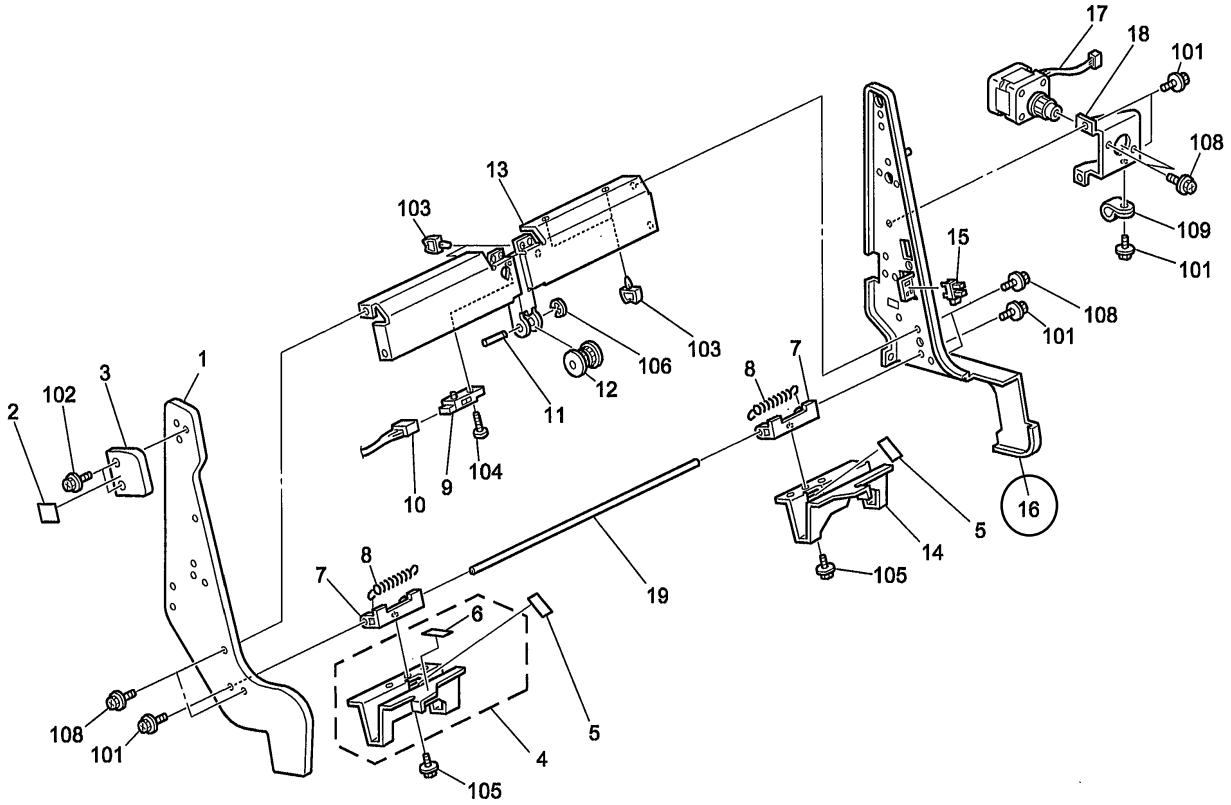
SUBJECT: REAR SIDE FENCE – SHIFT TRAY

GENERAL:

If the Staple Tray Unit is pulled out with the Staple Tray Upper Entrance Guide (A6972130) already opened, the hook (rear) of the Upper Entrance Guide spring can contact the Staple Tray Rear Side Fence (B3124100), which can cause damage to the Upper Entrance Guide.

The shape of the Staple Tray Rear Side Fence has been changed so that the 2 parts do not contact one another, even under the above conditions.

The following parts corrections are being issued for all B312 Parts Catalogs.



Continued…

Copyright © 2002 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	**NEW PART NO.**	**DESCRIPTION**	**QTY**	**INT**	**PAGE**	**ITEM**
B3124100	B3124101	Rear Side Fence – Shift Tray	1	1	17	16

UNITS AFFECTED:

All B312 finishers manufactured after the Serial Numbers listed below will have the new style Rear Side Fence – Shift Tray installed during production.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
Gestetner SR740	H4910100001
Ricoh SR740	H4910100001
Savin SR740	H4910100001

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

TECHNICAL SERVICE BULLETIN

BULLETIN NUMBER: B312/B586 – 004 **06/24/2003**

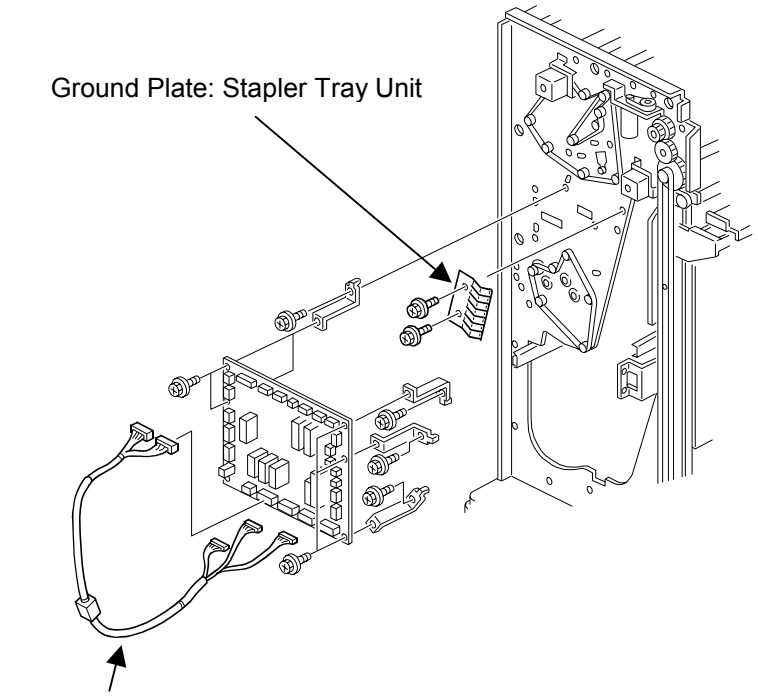
APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – SR740/SR870 for 3355/3370/5502
LANIER – SR740/SR870 for 5455/5470/LD055
RICOH – SR740/SR870 for AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – SR740/SR870 for 2055DP/2070DP/2555

SUBJECT: STAPLER TRAY MOTOR HARNESS & GROUND PLATE

GENERAL:

To minimize the effects of electrical noise, a Ground Plate and Ferrite Core (added to the Motor Harness) have been added to the Stapler Tray. The following parts updates are being issued for all B312/B586 Parts Catalogs. Please update your parts catalog with the following information.



					REFERENCE	
OLD PART NO.	NEW PART NO.	DESCRIPTION	QTY	INT	PAGE	ITEM
-	B5861165	Ground Plate: Stapler Tray Unit	1	-	33	26 *
B3125304		Motor harness – Stapler Tray	1	1	33	2
-	B5865306	Harness: Stapler Tray: Motor				
04513006B	-	Tapping Screw - M3x6	-	-	33	105

*** DENOTES NEW ITEM NUMBER**

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

UNITS AFFECTED:

All SR870 finishers manufactured after the serial numbers listed below will have the new style Motor Harness and Ground Plate installed during production. The Ground Plate and Motor Harness are available as service parts for the SR740.

MODEL NAME	SERIAL NUMBER
SR740	Service parts only
SR870	J5630100001

INTERCHANGEABILITY CHART:

0	OLD and NEW parts can be used in both OLD and NEW machines.	2	NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines. OLD parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines.
1	NEW parts can be used in OLD and NEW machines. OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines.	3	OLD parts CAN NOT be used in NEW machines. NEW parts CAN NOT be used in OLD machines.
3/S	Must be installed as a set on units manufactured prior to the S/N cut-in. On units manufactured after the S/N cut-in or previously modified, use the new part numbers individually.		

FIRMWARE HISTORY

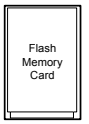
FIRMWARE HISTORY

PUBLISHED DATE: 04/02/2003

PRODUCT CODE: A292/A293/B098

APPLICABLE MODEL:

GESTETNER – 3355/3370/5502
LANIER – 5455/5470/LD055
RICOH – AFICIO 551/700/1055
SAVIN – 2055DP/2070DP/2555



GENERAL:

The latest firmware version can be downloaded at the Technology Solutions Center FTP Site at http://tsc.ricohcorp.com. Be sure to check the README file for important notes and explanations.

NOTE: *Refer to Facts Line Bulletin # FL002 and Publication Bulletin #023 for more information about the FTP Internet Web Site and EPROM/Flash Card Exchange program.*

Copyright © 2003 RICOH Corporation. All rights reserved.

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
Initial Production	A2937553 **B**	Initial Production	3.0
Note: 1) The LCDC ROM A2935203C is required for BICU firmware version 3.1 (A2937564, A2937565 and A2937566). 2) Version 3.1 requires the printer controller. **1. Language** The following items have been changed from English to the language selected: 1) Stamp Setting Note: For Portuguese and Polish, the Stamp setting is still displayed in English. The correction for this will be included in the next software update. **2)** Language Priority button **2. A3/DLT Double Count corrected for Copy counter and Printer counter** When making A3/DLT copies, the Copy and Printer Counters do not count up by 2, even if A3/DLT Double Count has been set. **Note**: The Total Counter correctly counts up by 2. **3. Key counter in connect copy mode**. When the key counter is removed from the machine during a copy job in connect copy mode, both copiers will stop and display “paper jam”. **4. Slip-Sheet Mode** It is possible to select “Copy” or “Blank” from the operation panel in Slip-Sheet Mode.	A2937553 **C**	Not Available	3.1

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
5. Mailbox Software modified so that the correct picture indicator is displayed when the mailbox door is open. **Note:** Incorrect indicator was displayed when the Mailbox was the only option installed. **6. Conditions for reverse drum rotation** To reduce the load on the units around the drum, the cycle for reverse drum rotation has been changed as follows: New: The drum is turned in reverse at the end of a copy job if the cumulative running time for the drum has reached or exceeded 4 minutes. Old: The drum turns in reverse at the end of every copy job. **7. New SP Mode for B302 Finisher: SP6119** SP6119 has been added to enable the punch function for Thick Paper Mode. **Note:** 1. Before enabling SP6119, please be sure that the customer is aware of the specific range of paper weights that can be used with this mode. **2.** Do not enable this mode if the customer is using OHP transparencies.			

Mode No.	Function			Setting
6119	Punch Function Enabled (Thick Paper)			
		*	Selects whether the punch function is enabled or not in thick paper mode.	**No: Disable** Yes: Enable

8. 8K/16K Paper Size (China/Taiwan) 8K/16K paper size can be fed from Trays 2 and 3 by selecting **3:CH** in SP5131 "Paper Size Type Selection". Note: The factory default for SP5131 is 3:CH in models for China and Taiwan.			

Mode No.	Function			Setting
5131	Paper Size Type Selection			
		*	Refer to service manual	**0: JP** **1: NA** **2: EU** **3: CH**

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
9. New SP Mode added to enable Margin Per Original function (SP5924) The settings for this mode are as follows:			

Mode No		Function			Setting
5924	Margin Per Original				
	1	Margin Per Original	*	Selects whether or not Margin Per Original is enabled. **No** : Images are shifted with a binding margin during image writing. **Yes**: The margin is applied during scanning. **NOTE**: *After **Yes** has been selected, the "per original" key is displayed. This key must be pressed to activate the mode.*	**No** Yes
	2	Per Original Priority	*	Selects whether or not Margin Per Original is enabled as default. This setting is given priority over 5924-1.	**On** Off

NOTE: 1) When this mode is enabled, the ADF feed interval is longer.
2) Although it is possible to "adjust" the margins on the operation panel for Sample Copies, the adjustment itself is not applied to the samples.
3) The following modes cannot be used with Margin Per Original: Booklet, Magazine, Combine, Double copy, and Image repeat.

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
Corrections / Updates:	A2937553 **E**	Not Available	3.5.1

1. New Copy Feature and SP Mode (SP5971) Added

1) New Copy Feature: Enhance Density Mode

This feature has been added to ensure that image density does not drop while making multiple copies of originals with a high percent of solid black areas.

To set effective original density and number of copies for multi-copy mode, use SP5971 (see below).

To add the Enhance Density Key to the display panel and to control the level, perform the following procedure:

(1) Press the User Tools/Counter key.
(2) Press the Copy/Document Server Features Key.
(3) Open General Features, screen 3/3.
(4) Select one of the Shortcut Keys from F1 – F5.
(5) Register the Enhance Density Key.
(6) Open General Features, screen 1/3.
(7) Select the setting for Enhance Density Level.
High: Vt+0.6
Medium: Vt+0.4 (default)
Low: Vt+0.2

2) New SP Mode: SP5971 (Enhance Copy Setting):

The following settings apply to Enhance Density Mode:

Mode No.		Function			Setting
5971	Enhance Copy Setting				
	2	Effective Original Density	*	Selects the original image ratio at which the mode is activated (calc. from setting).	1 ~ 60% 1% step **4%**
	3	Effective Multiple Copy	*	Selects the sheet number at which mode is activated with multi-copy jobs (calc. from setting).	1 ~ 50sheets 1 sheet step **3 sheets**

Continued…

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
2. Paper jam in finisher (B302) + Printer Mode Depending on the Printer Mode settings, jams can occur in the Finisher when continuous print jobs are shifted alternately between the proof and shift trays. The machine is not able to switch fast enough between the two paper paths in these cases. The interval between jobs has been slightly increased to allow the machine time enough to make the switch. **3. Fusing Unit Fan Motor Off-Timing Change** To ensure that the hot air around the toner bottle is properly removed, the fusing unit fan motor will be kept on whenever the 24V is being supplied. Therefore, it will turn off only when the main switch or operation switch is turned off or when the machine is shut down by the Auto-Off function. **4. Word Correction** Some display language words and phrases have been corrected or improved.			

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
Corrections / Updates: **1. New SP Mode (SP5970) for EB-70 (Printer controller)** The following setting applies when the EB-70 printer controller is installed.	A2937553 **F**	Not Available	3.6

Mode No.	Function			Setting
5970	Printer Installed			
			Selects whether the EB-70 printer controller is installed or not.	**0: No** 1: Yes

2. Some Part of Image Missing in Tab Stock when Printing from Document Server **<Symptom>** When files in the Document Server are printed onto Tab Stock, the image is not rotated even though tab stock can be set sideways only. This is because the documents are saved lengthwise only in the Document Server. **<Modification>** The error has been corrected.			
3. Malfunction with Printer Dot Edge Parameter Setting when Printing from Document Server **<Symptom>** When edge smoothing is off, the line thickness is not changed when the printer dot edge parameter setting (SP2114) is changed.			

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY

DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	FIRMWARE LEVEL	SERIAL NUMBER	FIRMWARE VERSION
1. SP5009 (Language Selection) Deleted This SP Mode is no longer necessary since the display language can be selected using Language Priority inside User Tools. **2. SC990 Misdetection Taiwan machines only** **<Symptom Corrected>** SC990 occurs when the document server key is pressed. The cause was determined to be a bug with the software. **3. New Items Added to Output Checks (SP5804)** The following items have been added to the output check for the tandem tray: **No** / **Description** 22 Right Tray Lock 23 Left Tray Lock **4. Incorrect the Drum Unit Setting <Feature Changed>** There is no response when the Start key is pressed, and the machine displays “copying”. This was because the drum unit had not been set properly. The new software version allows the machine to start the job even if the drum has not been set properly, however this will be indicated by an image quality problem on the printout. Therefore if this occurs, check to see if the drum has been set properly. **5. Page Numbering for Duplex Copy <Feature added>** Even when Center has been selected for the page numbering position and fine adjustments are made left/right, the actual printing positions on the front and rear sides will match.	A2937553 **G**	Not Available	3.11

Continued…

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
6. Scanning Speed Increased The Document Server scanning speed has been increased from 60 to 70spm. **7. SC Display Error (SC740 instead of SC720)** **<Symptom Corrected>** For a finisher motor failure, the machine displays SC740 when it should display SC720. In addition, a SC740 occurrence is logged in the machine history. Note: SC740 is an SC error code for the A763 Booklet Finisher. **8. Paper Exit Orientation Error** **<Symptom Corrected>** Normally when switching from platen to DF mode, the copy paper exit orientation will be changed so that the front side faces up. However, when switching over to Batch (SADF) mode, the machine does not make the change (i.e. paper is still exited with the rear side facing up). **9. Error when fusing temperature has been set to 175□ or lower.** **<Symptom Corrected>** If the fusing temperature has been set to 175 or lower and thick paper feed is set for the bypass tray, the machine displays “copying” but the job does not start. **10. Display Deletion** **<Symptom Corrected>** “Tab Stock” was displayed in the Tray 2 Special Paper Indication menu (User Tools → System Settings) when the Mailbox was connected. **11. Word Correction** Some words and phrases have been corrected or improved. For example: System Setting - Auto Tray Switching			

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
Note: The pre-paid card and key counter have not been fully tested with the Aficio 700/551 by Ricoh, because they are not official options for the Aficio 700/551. However, the following items (1 and2) have been improved as per a field request. **1. Error when connecting the pre-paid card connector to the mainframe 4-pin key counter connector:** **<Symptoms>** 1) The copier only counts up once for every 2 copies made. 2) When the key card has been set in the machine and the main switch turned on, the machine does not detect the card unless the card is taken out and set again. * Other symptoms are possible. The actual symptom can vary depending on the type of card used. **2. Counter error after key counter is removed and jam occurs** **<Symptom>** If a jam occurs after the key counter is removed during a copy job, the counter value is less than actual number by 1 when copying starts again. **3. SC337 Miss-log** **<Symptom>** SC337 is not displayed but is recorded in the logging data. **< Cause:>** There are cases where the 24V is cut before the 5V when the main switch is turned off, causing SC337 to occur. Since this occurs when the machine is being turned off, there is no SC337 display; an error is miss-logged. **< Solution:>** To prevent SC337 from occurring at power off, both the display and logging of the error will be performed at a fixed time after occurrence (200ms). This will allow time for all power lines to drop to 0V, thus preventing miss logging of SC337.	A2937553 **H**	Not Available	3.11.1

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
1. SC990 when printing out SMC sheet: Polish language only **<Symptoms>** When SP5590-1/-3 is used to print out the SMC sheet and Polish has been selected as the display language, the wrench symbol lights up and an SC990 error is logged. **2. SC990 at copy start when ID sensor Vsg=0V** **<Symptom>** SC990 occurs if copying is initiated when the ID sensor Vsg is at 0V. The condition is cleared when process control initialization is performed, however when the power is turned off and then on again, it will always occur when copying is initiated. **3. Diagonal white lines/image shifting with SMC sheet** **<Symptom>** When printing out the SMC sheet or counter data printout onto 81/2 x 11 lengthwise paper, diagonal white lines appear on the copy or the image data is shifted. **4. PM alert display not displayed at PM timing** **<Symptom>** The PM alert is not displayed when the PM counter reaches its set value.	A2937553 **J**	NA	3.13

Continued….

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
5. Margin adjustment setting error - Interrupt key **<Symptom>** When the interrupt key is pressed and the margin adjustment settings are changed for the new job, the machine returns to the original copy job modes/settings, but does not return to the original margin settings. **6. Default setting error when performing Memory All Clear on models for China** **<Symptom>** When SP5801 (Memory All Clear) is performed on models for China, the default for the third paper was displayed as B4, instead of what it should have been (A3). The default value (A3) will now be correctly set. **7. New SP Mode (SP5972: Document Server Counter Selection)** When copy/print files on the document server are printed out, this SP mode allows them to be counted separately as copies and prints, or all together as copies.			

Mode No.	Function			Setting
5972	Document Server Counter Selection			
			Select the counter	**0: Copy** 1: Copy or Printer

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
1. Fusing jam reset conditions changed **<Symptoms>** To ensure that fusing "D" jams are properly cleared, the software has been changed so that the jam condition does not clear unless the fusing unit is removed and re-inserted. Previously, the condition could be reset with power Off/On if the sensor inside the unit did not detect the jammed paper. **Note:** Please instruct customers that after removing the jammed paper around the fusing unit, it is also necessary to remove and reinsert the fusing unit and check for any jammed paper inside the unit as well. **2. PM Call Display Error** **<Symptoms>** If the main power is turned Off/On while a PM call message is displayed, the message and PM alert condition are cleared. **3. LCT paper size selections added to SP5019 (Tray Paper Size Selection): A4R and LTR** **<Field Request>** To enable selection of these sizes, it is necessary to install the LG Kit and change the size settings of the side and end fences. **4. OHP/Finisher Hole-Punch Change (B312)** **<Field Request>** Software changed so that OHP transparencies cannot be used with the hole-punch feature of the Finisher (B312). When selecting OHP transparencies with the # key (bypass tray feed) and then the hole-punch function, the machine inhibits operation and a warning display appears on the panel. **5. SC 337 detection conditions changed** SC 337 detection conditions changed so that it will not be triggered by such factors as electrical noise while in standby mode.	A2937553 **K**	NA	3.16

Continued…

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
6. SC300 detection conditions changed: To minimize unnecessary SC300 occurrences, the SC300 detection method for charge leaks has been changed as follows: **Old:** Counter for number of leaks is cumulative for the entire ON → OFF charge output interval. **New:** Counter is reset every 500ms. **7. Printing Doesn't Start in Interrupt and Low Power Modes** **<Symptoms>** Copying not possible when the machine enters Low Power Mode from the Copy Interrupt screen, and then recovers back to Ready status (same screen). **Order of operation:** Copying in interrupt mode → Machine enters low power mode → Auto-response brings machine out of low power mode (still in interrupt) → Original set in DF, Start key pressed and original fed → Start key alternates between green and red, copies cannot be made			
1. Display error: Cover/Slip Sheets settings **<Symptom>** In the Cover/Slip Sheets settings screen for Trays 1/2 (User Tools → System Settings), the display for the Duplex and Simplex buttons was reversed, causing Duplex to be activated when Simplex is selected (and vice-versa). **Note:** This only occurs with the Danish, Finnish and Hungarian display languages. **2. Page numbering error in Cover/Slip Sheet mode** **<Symptom>** The page numbering printed on copies in Cover/Slip Sheet mode is incorrect when Type 4 numbering is selected (e.g. 1-1, 1-2) and the copy job has been set to begin from the 2nd page onward.	A2937553 **L**	NA	3.17

A292/A293/B098 BICU FIRMWARE MODIFICATION HISTORY			
DESCRIPTION OF MODIFICATION	**FIRMWARE LEVEL**	**SERIAL NUMBER**	**FIRMWARE VERSION**
1. Off Line Indication **<Symptom>** "Off Line" is indicated in the message area of the sample print display screen. **2. Convert Paper Size and Wide A4 menu addition** The "Convert Paper Size" and "Wide A4" have been added to the Printer Features Menu. **Note:** To enable both features, printer controller firmware ver. 0.54 must be installed.	A2937553 **M**	NA	3.18